Solid Edge fundamentals

Publication Number
mt01413-s-1040

Solid Edge fundamentals

Publication Number
mt01413-s-1040

Proprietary and restricted rights notice

This software and related documentation are proprietary to Siemens Product Lifecycle Management Software Inc.

© 2011 Siemens Product Lifecycle Management Software Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Siemens and the Siemens logo are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. **Solid Edge** is a trademark or registered trademark of Siemens Product Lifecycle Management Software Inc. or its subsidiaries in the United States and in other countries. All other trademarks, registered trademarks or service marks belong to their respective holders.

Contents

Sketching 1-1

3D sketching overview 1-2
Sketch plane locking 1-11
Drawing synchronous sketches of parts 1-15
Drawing ordered sketches of parts 1-35
Drawing commands 1-41
Sketch geometric relationships 1-62
Dimensioning sketches 1-89
Sketches in PathFinder 1-93
Sketch plane origin 1-96
Sketch consumption and dimension migration 1-101
Moving sketches 1-106
Projecting elements onto a sketch plane 1-115
Sketching instructional activities 1-118
Sketch projects 1-144
Course review 1-150
Answers 1-151
Course summary 1-153

Constructing base features 2-1

What is a base feature? 2-2
Creating base features 2-3
Creating additional features 2-29
Constructing features using the feature construction commands 2-49
Model Dimensions 2-51
Coordinate systems 2-69
Sets 2-82

Moving and rotating faces 3-1

Part modification by moving and rotating faces and planes 3-2
Moving synchronous faces 3-3
Selecting faces 3-39
Move face command bar options 3-67
Working with Live Sections 3-112

Working with face relationships 4-1

Face relationships overview 4-2
Creating face relationships 4-3
Detected face relationships 4-59
Using variables 4-86
Miscellaneous commands 4-110

Contents

Constructing treatment features 5-1

Treatment features 5-2
Lesson review 5-4
Answers 5-5
Lesson summary 5-6
Rounding and blending 5-7
Chamfer command 5-35
Adding draft to parts 5-48
Thickening and thinning parts 5-60
Activity: Model an oil pan 5-71

Constructing functional features 6-1

Procedural features 6-2
Hole command (synchronous environment) 6-3
Pattern features 6-38
Feature libraries 6-126
Detaching and attaching faces and features 6-167
Cutting, copying, and pasting model elements 6-191
Mirror 6-214
Replace Face command 6-224
Plastics design features 6-225

Modeling synchronous and ordered features 7-1

Modeling synchronous and ordered features 7-2
Modeling ordered features activities 7-23

Modeling assemblies 8-1

Solid Edge Assembly 8-2
More Assembly Relationships 8-82
The Assemble command 8-110
Designing in the context of an assembly 8-133

Creating detailed drawings 9-1

Drafting 9-2
Drawing Production Overview 9-3
Activity: Drawing view placement 9-103
Activity: Assembly drawing creation 9-124
Activity: Quicksheet 9-136
Activity: Broken view creation 9-147
Activity: Broken-out section creation 9-157
Lesson review 9-167
Answers 9-168
Lesson summary 9-169
Dimensions, Annotations, and PMI 9-170
Activity: Retrieving and placing dimensions 9-284
Activity: Placing annotations 9-311
Activity: Placing a parts list 9-326
Summary 9-336

Practicing your skills with projects 10-1

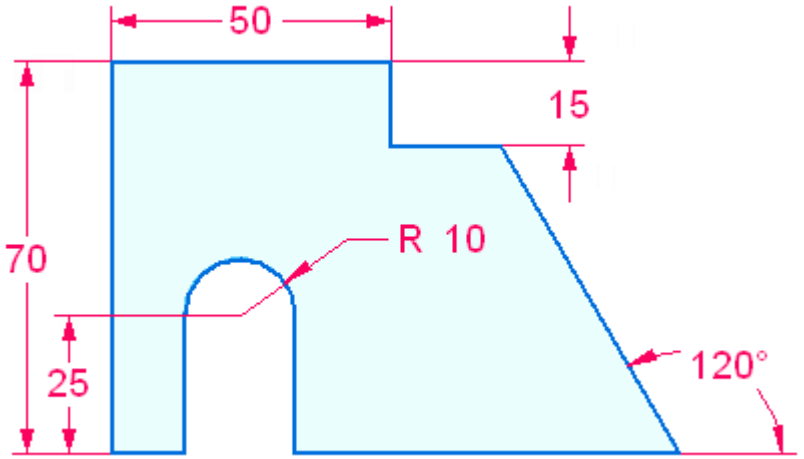
Additional modeling projects 10-2

Activity: Construct a bicycle hand tool 10-42
Activity: Construct an intercom speaker cover 10-48
Activity: Construct a bicycle saddle shell 10-52

Lesson

1 Sketching

3D sketching overview



2D sketch geometry defines the cross-sectional shape used to create a base solid body or the shape used to create a feature on an existing solid body. Sketches are drawn in 3D on either a planar face or a reference plane. You lock onto a planar face or reference plane to draw sketch geometry.

Both open and closed sketches can be used to create a model feature. A sketch that forms a closed area (from sketch elements or a combination of sketch elements and model edges on the sketch plane) produces a selectable region. When a region is selected, the protrusion feature command is started. To use an open sketch, choose a protrusion command (Extrude or Revolve) in the Solids group which requires a step to define the material side of the open sketch.

Sketches do not drive features. Geometric relationships applied to the sketch geometry do not migrate to the feature created. The system can detect, on the resulting feature, tangent, parallel, coplanar and concentric faces. Dimensional relationships do migrate from the sketch geometry to the edges of the body as a feature is created.

Sketch geometry used in creating a feature is consumed and placed in a “Used Sketches” collector in PathFinder. Any remaining sketch geometry not consumed remains in the “Sketches” collector.

By default, all sketch geometry placed on a sketch plane merge into a single sketch. This is controlled by the sketch option “Merge with Coplanar Sketches”. If separate sketches are required on a sketch plane, the “Merge with Coplanar Sketches” option can be turned off. This sketch option is primarily used in an Assembly Layout design workflow.

Sketch workflow

1. On the Sketching tab® Draw group, choose a sketching command.

2. Start drawing or lock to a sketch plane (reference plane or planar face) to draw sketch geometry on.

3. (Optional) Draw a sketch in the active view orientation or rotate the view normal to the sketch plane by choosing the View tab® Views group® Sketch View command .

4. Draw sketch geometry or perform any sketch related operation (for example: placing relationships, dimensions).

5. Finish or draw another sketch. If the sketch plane is locked and you need another sketch plane, unlock the plane. Repeat steps 2–4.

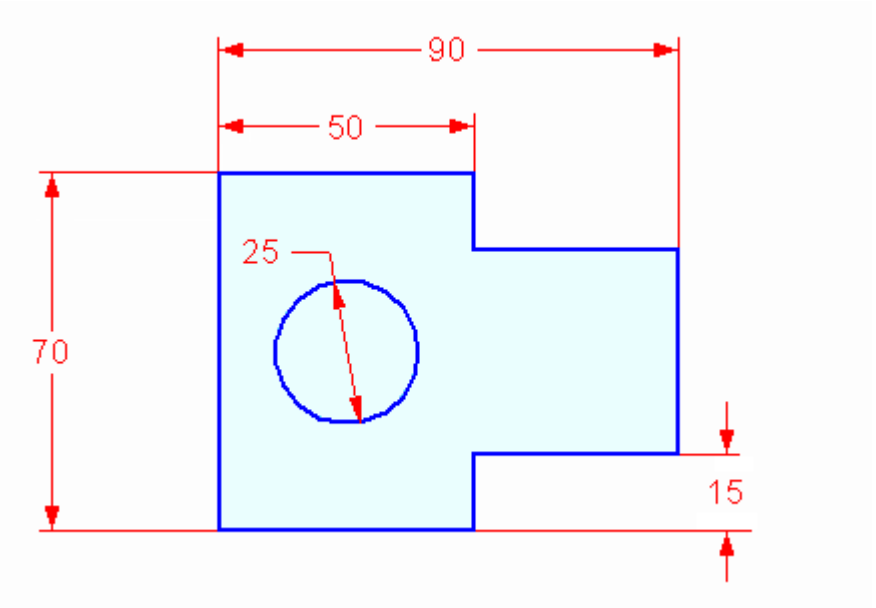
   If the new sketch area is on the same plane, continue sketching geometry.

   Note

   You can only have one sketch on a plane, but the sketch may contain as many regions and separate elements as you need. If separate sketches are required on a sketch plane, turn off the “Merge with Coplanar Sketches” option.

Activity: Draw a simple sketch

This activity guides you through the process of drawing a simple a sketch. You will add relationships and dimensions.



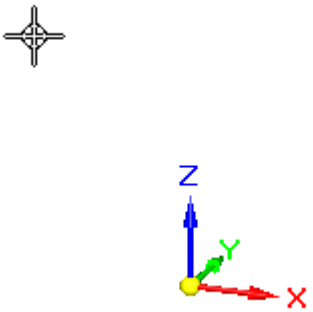
Activity: Draw a simple sketch

Open a part file

- Start Solid Edge.
- Click the Application button® New® ISO Part.

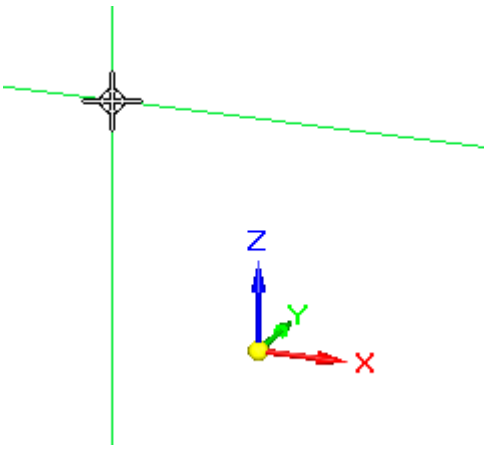
Choose a sketch command

- On the Sketching tab® Draw group, choose the Line command .
- Position the cursor as shown to place first point of line.

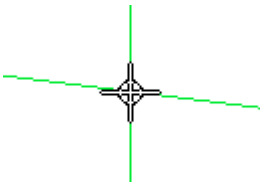


Draw the sketch shape with line segments

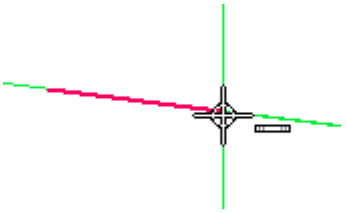
- The line command requires two points to create a line. Click to place the first point of a line.



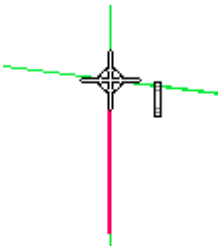
Notice the alignment lines connected to the cursor. These lines assist you in aligning sketch geometry.



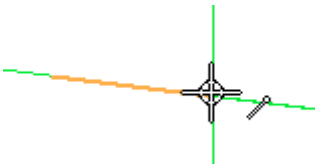
When a line alignment is horizontal, you see the horizontal indicator.



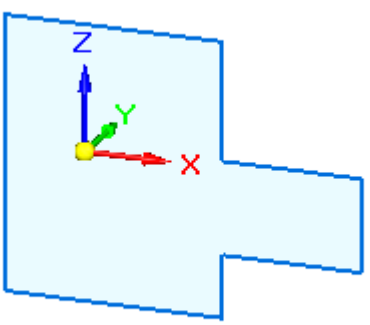
When a line alignment is vertical, you see the vertical indicator.



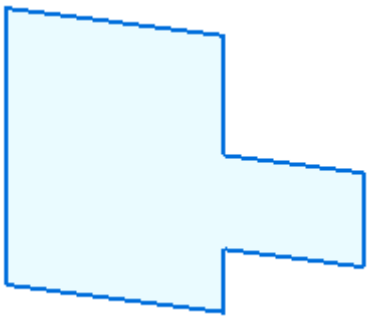
When you are at the endpoint of another line you see the endpoint indicator.



- Draw eight lines to form the basic shape shown. Be sure to make all of the lines horizontal or vertical, but do not worry about the line lengths at this time.

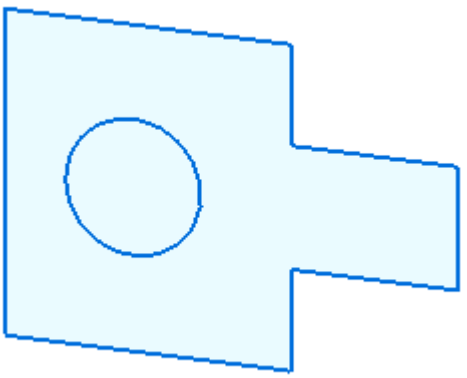


- In PathFinder, click the check box for Base to turn off the display of coordinate systems.

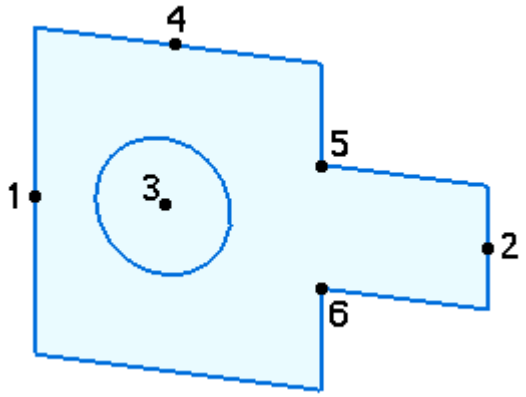


Add a circle to the sketch

- Place a circle as shown.

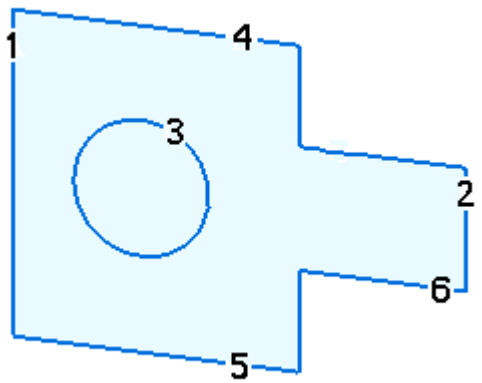


Place sketch geometry relationships



- On the Sketching tab® Relate group, choose the Horizontal/Vertical command .
- Align midpoint (2) with midpoint (1). Make sure you get the midpoint indicator before clicking.
- Align circle center (3) with midpoint (1). Make sure you get the center point indicator before clicking.
- Align circle center (3) with midpoint (4). Make sure you get the center point indicator before clicking.
- Align point (5) with point (6).

Place sketch dimensions



Numbers denote the select location for dimensioning the sketch elements.

- On the Sketching tab® Dimension group, choose the Smart Dimension command .

- Dimension the circle by clicking at (3).

  In the dimension value edit box, type 25.

- Dimension the length of line (4) by clicking at (4).

  In the dimension value edit box, type 50.

- Dimension the length of line (1) by clicking at (1).

  In the dimension value edit box, type 70.

- On the Sketching tab® Dimension group, choose the Distance Between command .

- Dimension the distance between line (1) and line (2) by clicking line (1) and then line (2).

  In the dimension value edit box, type 90.

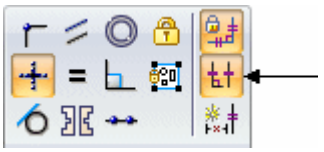
- Dimension the distance between line (5) and line (6) by clicking line (5) and then line (6).

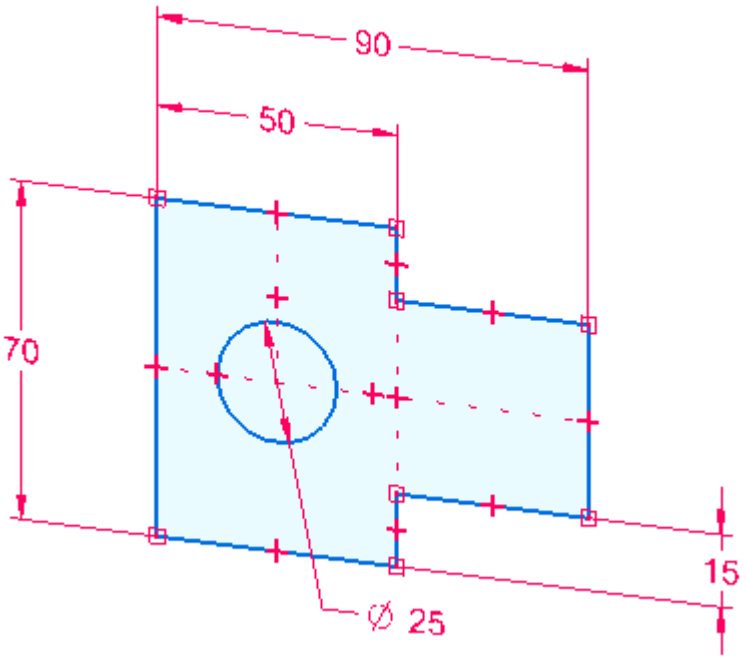
  In the dimension value edit box, type 15.

Sketch complete

The sketch is complete. Turn on the relationships handle display to see the sketch relationships.

- On the Sketching tab® Relate group, choose the Relationship Handles command.





- Turn off the relationship handles.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create a sketch. Dimensional and geometric relationships can be added at any time during the sketch creation. Extruded or revolved features in Solid Edge require sketches for creation.

Practice

- Try changing dimensions and adding sketch geometry for practice. Otherwise, close the file and do not save.

Sketch plane locking

Many commands in Solid Edge use a 2D plane for placement of geometry in 3D model space. For example, when drawing 2D sketch elements, such as lines, arcs, and circles, the 2D elements reside on a coordinate system plane, reference plane, or planar face on the model. This 2D plane is called the sketch plane. Only one sketch plane is available at a time.

There are two methods for locking input to the sketch plane:

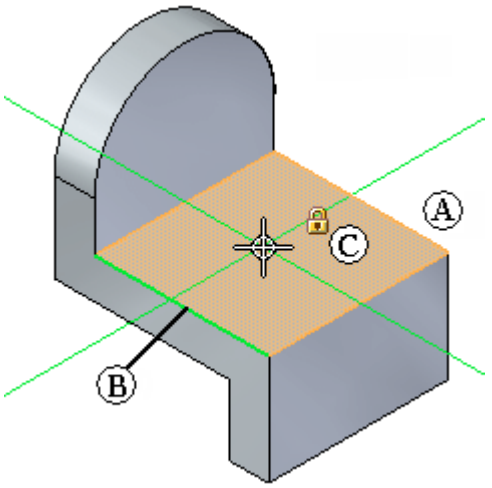
- Automatic locking, where the active command locks the sketch plane for you, and unlocks the sketch plane when you restart the command, or you start another command.

- Manual locking, where you lock the sketch plane, and unlock it later yourself.

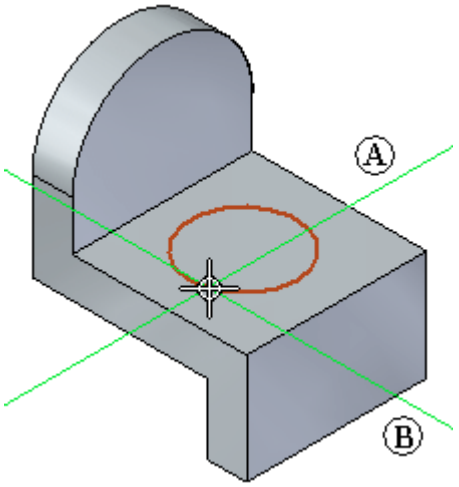
Sketch plane locking makes it easy to draw on several reference planes or planar faces quickly.

Automatic sketch plane locking

When you start a command that uses a sketch plane, and then position the cursor over a reference plane or planar face, the plane or face highlights (A), and an edge on the plane (B) is highlighted to indicate x-axis of the current sketch plane. The alignment lines, which extend outward from the cursor, also align themselves to the plane under the cursor. A lock symbol (C) is also displayed if you want to manually lock the sketch plane, which is discussed later.

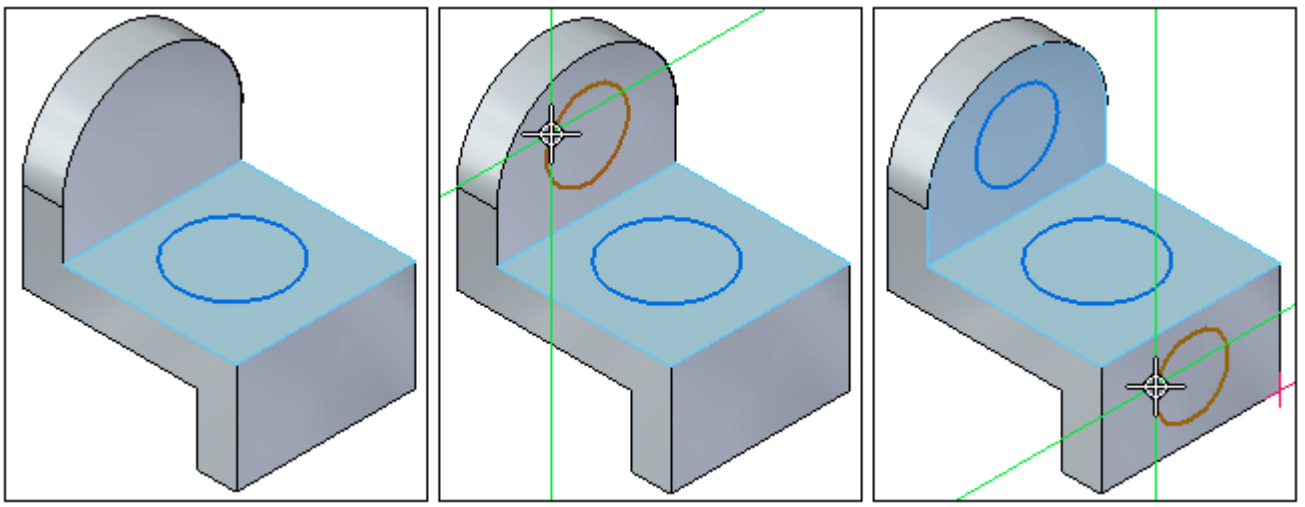


When you click to position the starting point for the sketch element, the sketch plane is automatically locked to the highlighted plane or face. The alignment lines (A) (B) remain displayed as you draw to indicate the current sketch plane's X and Y axes.



The sketch plane remains locked until you right-click to restart the current command, or start another command. This ensures all sketch input lies on the current sketch plane.

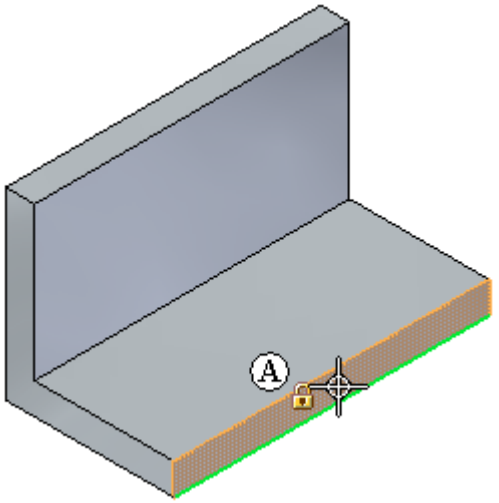
Sketch plane locking makes it easy to draw on several faces of the model quickly. For example, after drawing the first circle, you can right-click to restart the command, then draw a circle on a second face, right click again, and draw a circle on a third face.



Manual sketch plane locking

You can also manually lock the sketch plane. This is useful when the sketch geometry is complex or will extend beyond the outer edges of the planar face or reference plane on which you want to draw.

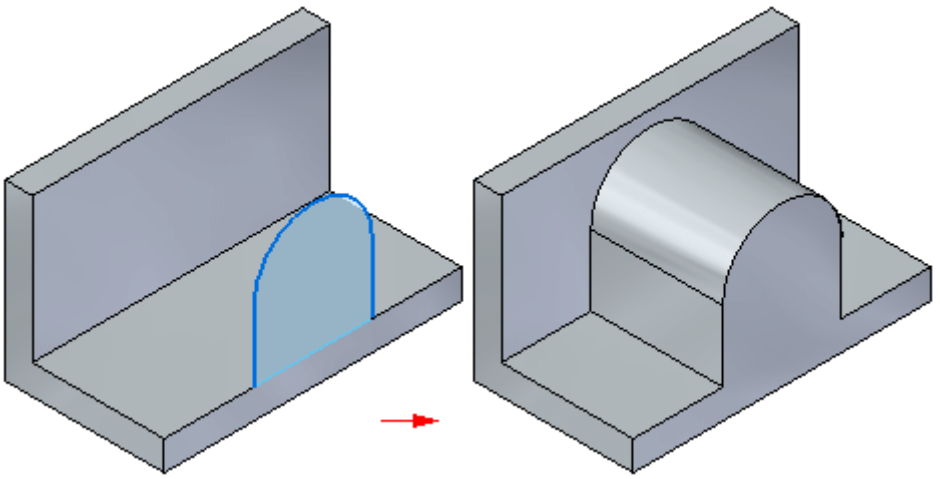
When you are in a command that supports manual sketch plane locking, a lock symbol is displayed near the cursor (A) when you are over a planar face or reference plane. You can click this symbol to manually lock the plane.



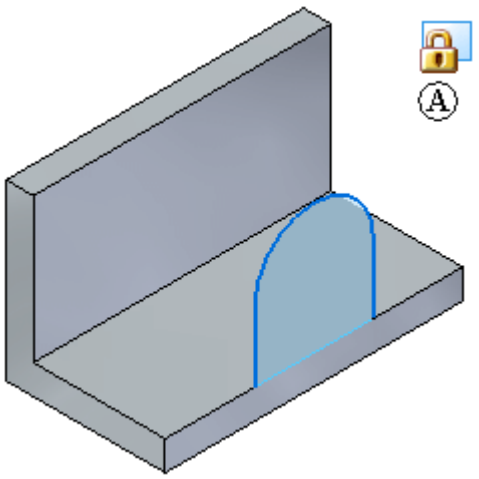
Tip

You can also lock and unlock the sketch plane by pressing the F3 key when you are in any command that supports sketch plane locking.

The sketch plane remains locked regardless of the cursor position until you manually unlock the plane. This makes it easy to draw beyond the outer edges of the planar face.



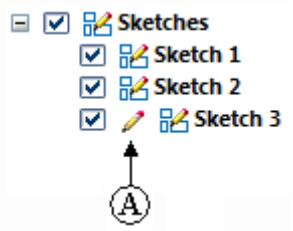
When the sketch plane has been locked manually, a locked plane indicator symbol (A) is displayed in the top-right corner of the graphics window.



When you want to unlock the sketch plane, you can click the locked plane indicator symbol in the graphics window to unlock the plane, or you can press the F3 key.

Plane locking and PathFinder

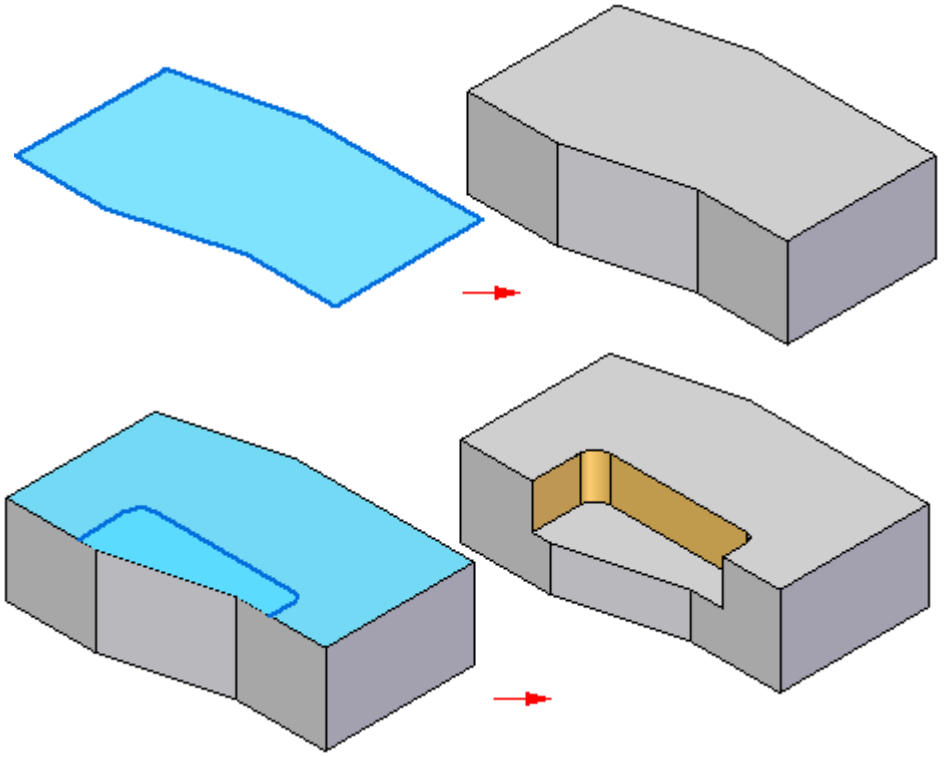
Whether you lock the sketch plane automatically or manually, a locked plane indicator (A) appears in PathFinder adjacent to the sketch which is locked.



If there are existing sketches in the model, you can lock and unlock the sketch plane using the Lock Sketch Plane command on the PathFinder shortcut menu when your cursor is over a sketch entry.

Drawing synchronous sketches of parts

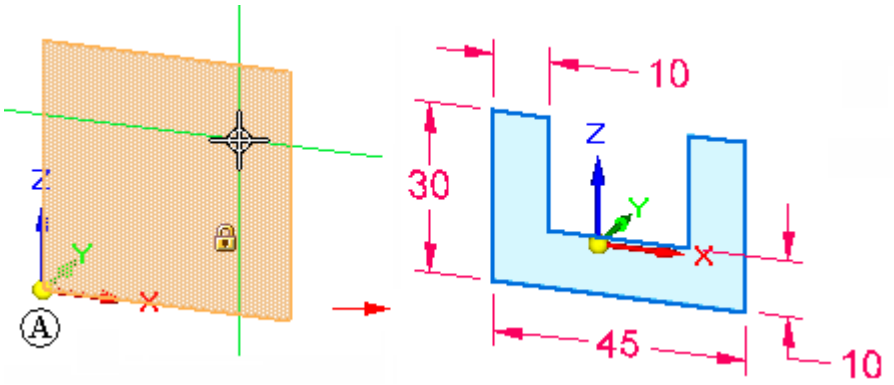
You draw synchronous sketches to establish the basic shape requirements of a part before you construct any features. You can draw a synchronous sketch on a principal plane of the base coordinate system, a planar face on the model, or a reference plane. You can then use these sketches to create sketch-based features, such as extruded features which add or remove material.



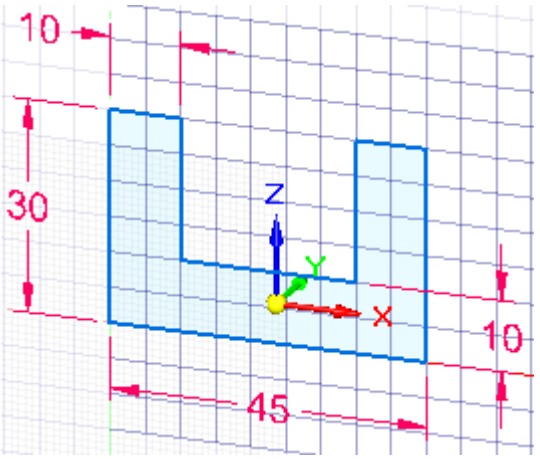
Visual sketching aids

There are a variety of visual sketching aids available to you. The triad in the center of the graphics window is the base coordinate system.

The principal planes on the base coordinate system are typically used to draw the first sketch for the base feature on a new part.



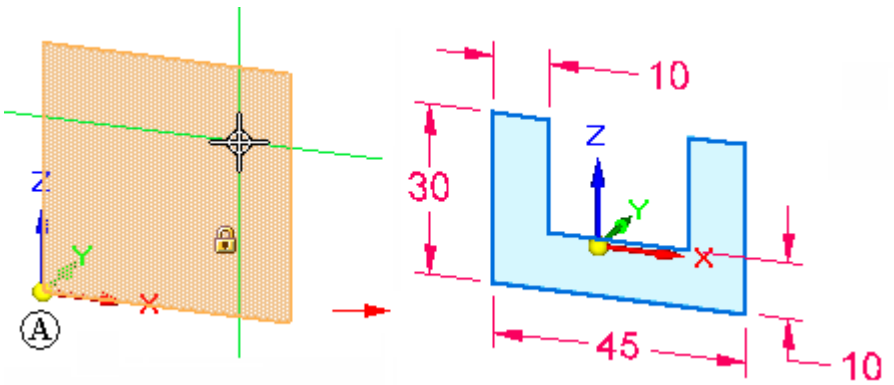
You can also independently display the sketching grid, alignment lines, and coordinate readouts using the Grid Options command.



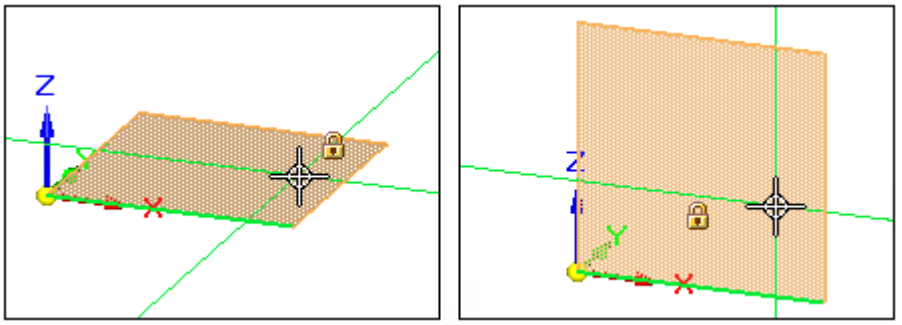
Getting started with sketching

Getting started with sketching is easy. When you sketch elements, they will go on the coordinate system plane, planar face, or reference plane that is directly under your cursor when you start placing the element.

When starting a new part, you would typically draw a sketch on one of the three principal planes of the base coordinate system. For example, you can draw the first sketch for a new part on the XZ principal plane of the base coordinate system (A).



You can see which plane of the coordinate system you will draw on because the plane under the cursor highlights, and the alignment lines, which extend out from the cursor, adjust dynamically depending on what plane your cursor is over.



When you click to define the first endpoint of an element, such as a line, sketch input is locked to the current plane.

Note

- If there is not a coordinate system plane, model face, or reference plane under your cursor, the element will fall on one of the three principal planes of the document. The system will automatically choose the one that is flattest to the view.

- See the Help topic, Start a sketch, to learn how to get started.

Sketch plane locking

Many of the sketching commands require a locked sketch plane for placement of 2D geometry in 3D model space.

There are two methods for locking the sketch plane:

- Automatic locking, where the active command locks the sketch plane for you, and unlocks the sketch plane when you start another command. This makes it easy to get started.

- Manual locking, where you lock the sketch plane, and unlock it later yourself. This is useful for complex sketches or for sketches where the sketch geometry extends beyond the boundary of the sketch plane.

Note

To learn more, see: Sketch plane locking.

Synchronous sketches locked to faces

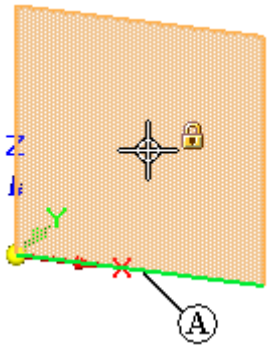
A synchronous sketch drawn on a model face is automatically locked to the face. As the face moves, the sketch moves with the face. By default, the Live Rules option “Maintain Sketch Planes” is on.

To unlock the sketch from the model face, turn off the “Maintain Sketch Planes” option in Live Rules.

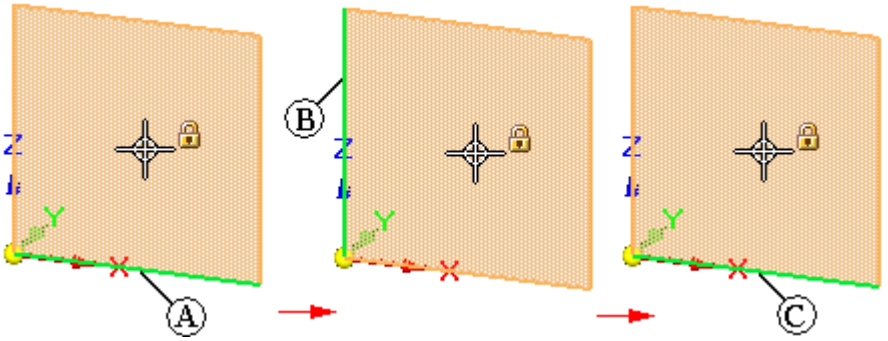
If a sketch is drawn on a model face that is coplanar to a base reference plane, the sketch is not locked to the model face.

Sketch plane X-axis orientation

When you highlight a coordinate system plane, planar face, or reference plane on which you want to draw a sketch, a default X-axis orientation is displayed automatically (A).

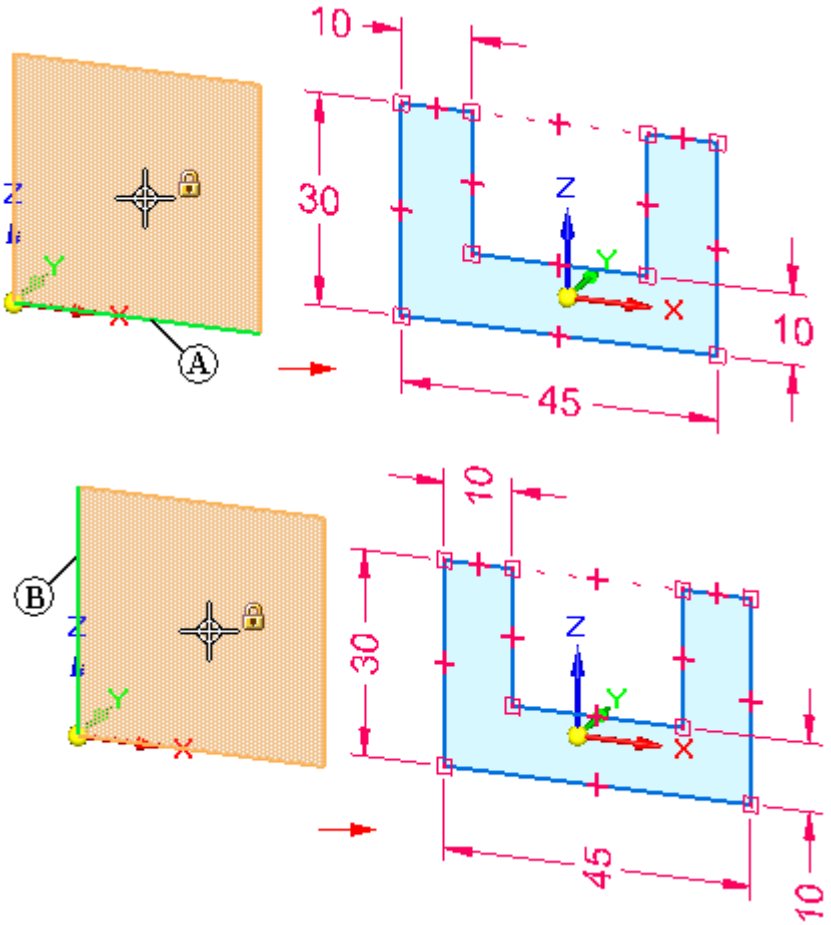


While you are defining the sketch plane and the default X-axis is highlighted (A), you can use the shortcut keys to change the X-axis orientation. For example, you can press the N key to select the next linear edge (B), or the B key to select the previous linear edge (C).



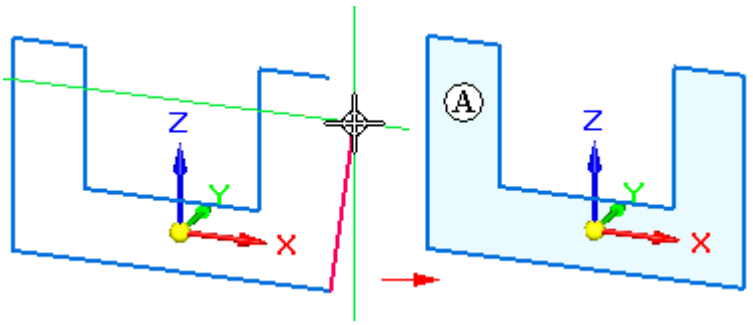
The valid shortcut keys for defining the X-axis orientation of a sketch plane are displayed in PromptBar when you are defining the sketch plane.

The X-axis orientation (A) (B) of a sketch controls the dimension text alignment for dimensions, and determines the horizontal and vertical axes for horizontal and vertical relationships.

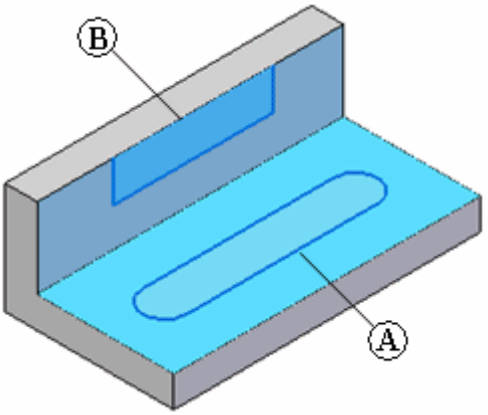


Sketch regions

In a part or sheet metal document, when you draw 2D sketch elements that form a closed area, the closed area is automatically displayed as a sketch region (A). When working in a shaded view, the closed region also displays as shaded.



In a part or sheet metal document, you can use sketch regions to construct features using the Select tool. Sketch regions are formed automatically when a series of sketch elements close on themselves (A), or when sketch elements and one or more model edges form a closed area (B).



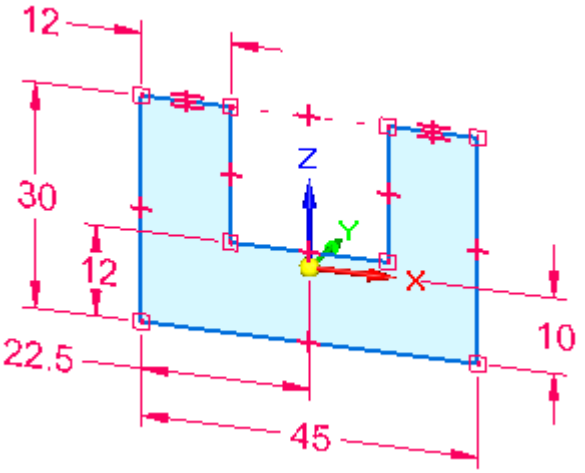
As you draw, you may want to disable sketch regions. You can do this by clearing the Enable Regions command, which is located on the shortcut menu when you select a sketch in PathFinder.

You can use the Enable Regions command to turn region selection on again.

The Enable Regions command is not available in an assembly document.

Adding dimensions and geometric relationships

You can add dimensions and geometric relationships to control the size, shape, and position of the sketch elements. You can also place dimensions and geometric relationships relative to the primary axes of the coordinate system. This can be especially useful for symmetric parts during later design modifications. For example, the 10 mm and 22.5 mm dimensions were placed relative to the X and Z axes of the base coordinate system.



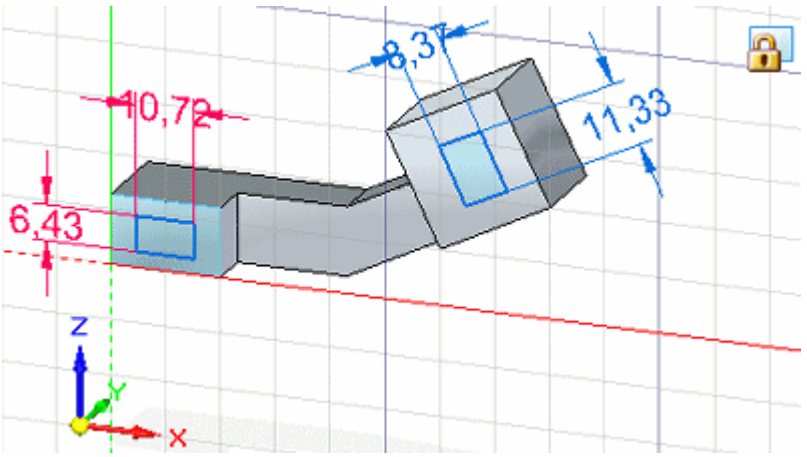
Note

You can display and hide geometric relationships using the Relationship Handles command.

You can also define functional relationships using the Variables command.

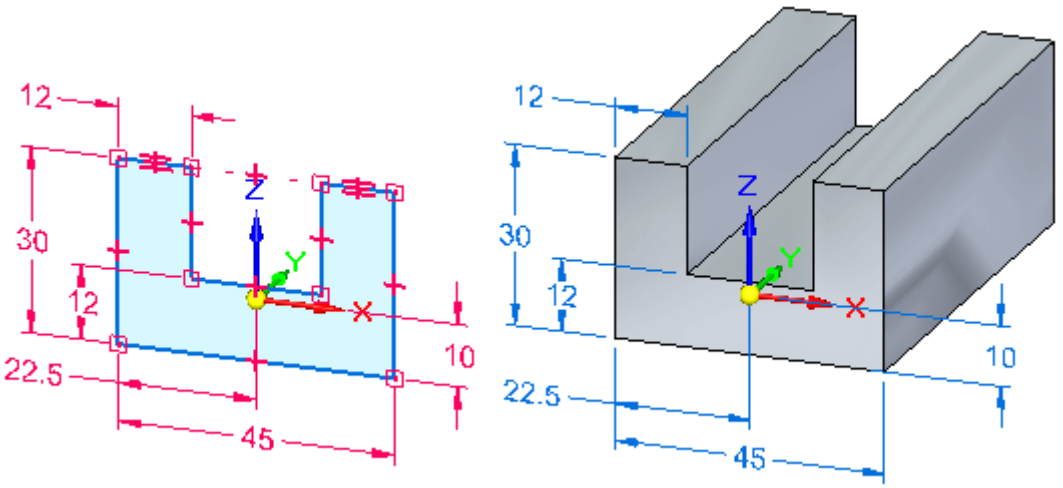
Keeping dimensions horizontal and vertical to the sketch geometry

To keep dimensions horizontal and vertical to the sketch geometry, you can move the sketch plane origin and reorient the sketch plane X-axis using the Reposition Origin command on the Sketching tab. This makes it possible to draw and dimension on different coplanar faces in the same sketch, yet keep dimension text and relationships oriented to an edge on the face, as shown.



Using sketches to construct features

When you use a sketch to construct a feature in a part or sheet metal document, by default, the sketch elements are automatically consumed and transferred to the Used Sketches collection in PathFinder and the dimensions on the sketch are automatically migrated to the appropriate model edges when possible.



Note

After you construct a feature in a synchronous model, the original sketch geometry does not drive the feature.

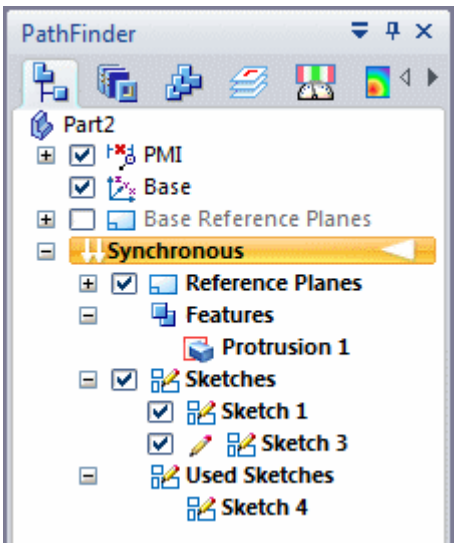
You can use the Migrate Geometry and Dimensions command on the shortcut menu when a sketch is selected in PathFinder to control whether sketch elements are consumed and dimensions are migrated when you construct features using the sketch.

Editing sketches

You can move and resize sketch elements using the Select tool. You also can edit sketch elements using commands such as Extend To Next, Trim, Mirror, Scale, Rotate, Stretch, and so forth. With these commands, you select the command first, then follow the prompts to edit the sketch elements you want.

Sketching and PathFinder

The sketches you draw are listed in PathFinder. PathFinder also lists the base coordinate system, PMI dimensions, the base reference planes, features you construct, used sketches, and so forth.



You can display or hide individual sketches or all the sketches in the document using the check box options in PathFinder and commands on the PathFinder shortcut menu.

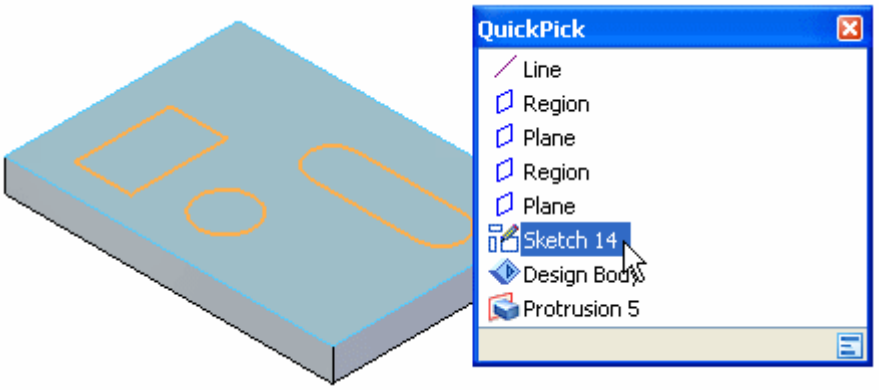
When a sketch name is selected in PathFinder, you can use shortcut commands to:

- Delete a sketch.
- Cut, copy, and paste a sketches.
- Rename a sketch.

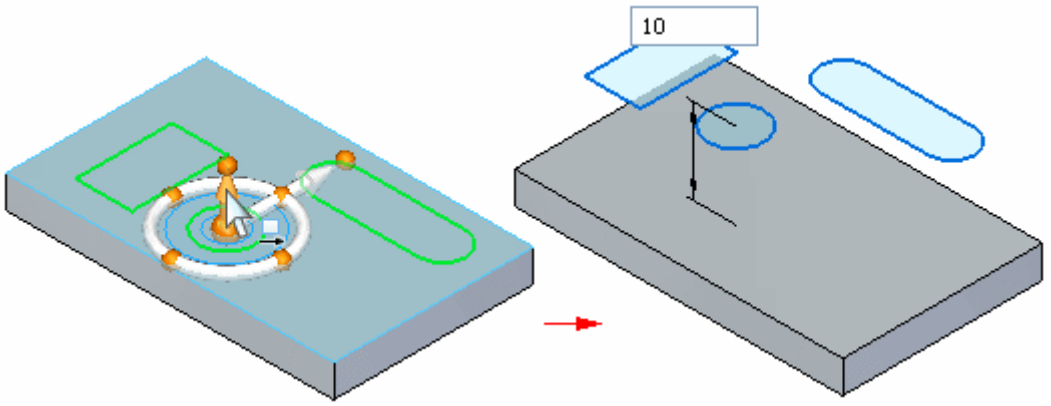
Moving sketches

Sometimes you may want to move or rotate an entire sketch to a new position in space. By default, when you use the Select tool to select sketch elements in the graphics window, only a sketch region or the selected sketch element is selectable.

To select an entire sketch, you can select the sketch entry in PathFinder, or you can use QuickPick to select the sketch in the graphics window.



You can then use the steering wheel to move or rotate the sketch to a new position in space.



If the sketch in moved such that it becomes coplanar to another sketch, the two sketches are combined into one sketch, unless the Merge Coplanar sketches option has been cleared for one of the sketches.

Sketches and associativity

Sketch geometry is not directly associative to the plane or face on which it is drawn. If you move the plane or face on which the sketch is drawn, the sketch geometry does not move unless it is also in the select set. This does not apply to sketches drawn on the principal planes of the base coordinate system or the base reference planes, as these planes are fixed in space.

You can apply 2D geometric relationships between sketch elements and model edges. If the model edges move, the sketch elements and geometric relationships update.

Restoring sketches

To restore a sketch to its original location on the model, use the Restore command on the shortcut menu when a used sketch is selected. This can be useful if you want to use the sketch to construct another feature elsewhere on the model or if you deleted the feature that the used sketch described.

Projecting elements onto a sketch

You can use the Project to Sketch command on the Sketching page to project model edges or sketch elements onto the current sketch plane. The sketch elements you project are associative to the parent element. If the parent element is modified, the projected element updates.

Note

The associative link between the parent element and the projected element is discarded when you construct a feature using the projected elements.

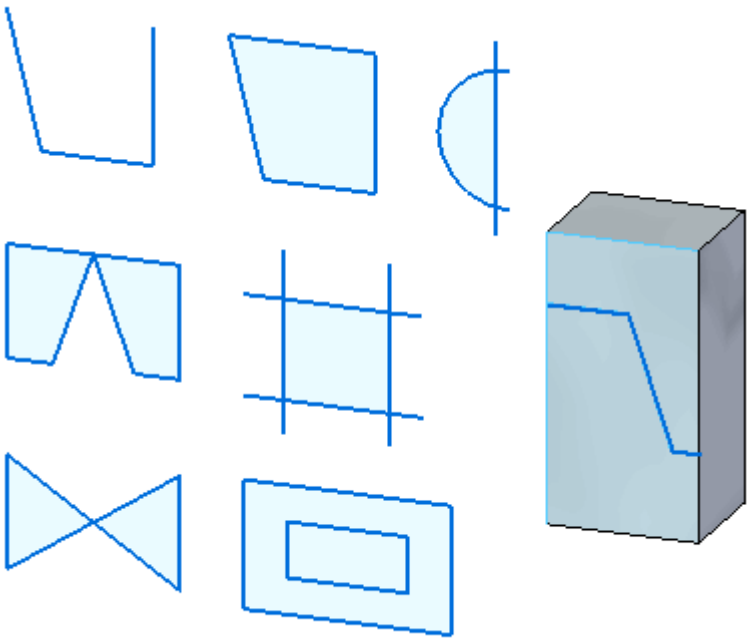
Regions

Definition

A helper object used to create a solid feature consisting of planar and non-planar faces. A region is a closed area formed by sketch elements or a combination of sketch elements and part edges.

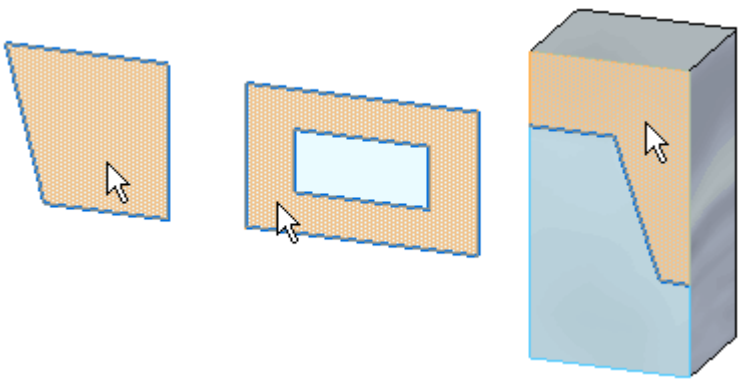
Regions are formed by the placement of 2D sketch geometry on sketch planes or part faces. Regions are created when a series of sketch elements or model edges form a closed area. Regions are a by-product of a closed sketch. Unselected regions appear with a shaded light blue color.

Region examples

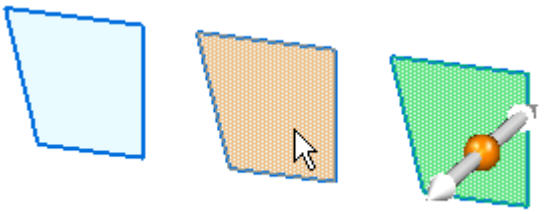


Selecting a region

As the cursor moves over a region, the region appears with a shaded tan color.



When the region is selected, the region appears with a shaded green color.



Regions can be selected in both object-action and action-object workflows.

Activity: Create regions

Draw a sketch and observe when regions are formed and how to select them.

Activity: Create regions

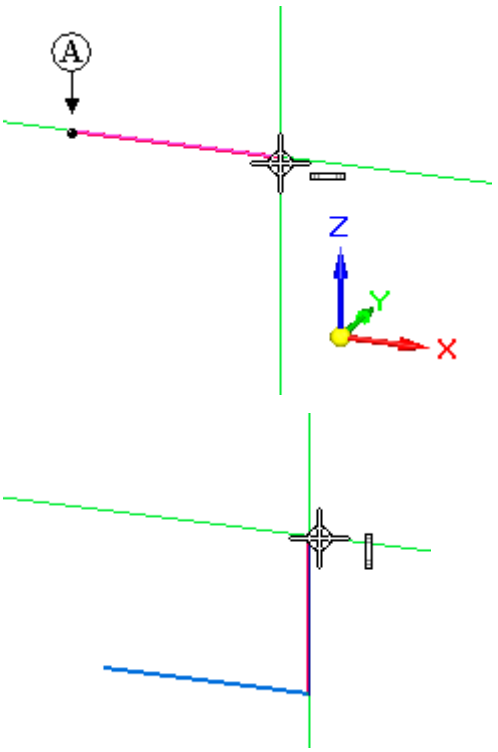
This activity guides you through the process of drawing a sketch to observe when regions are formed. You will also learn how to select regions.

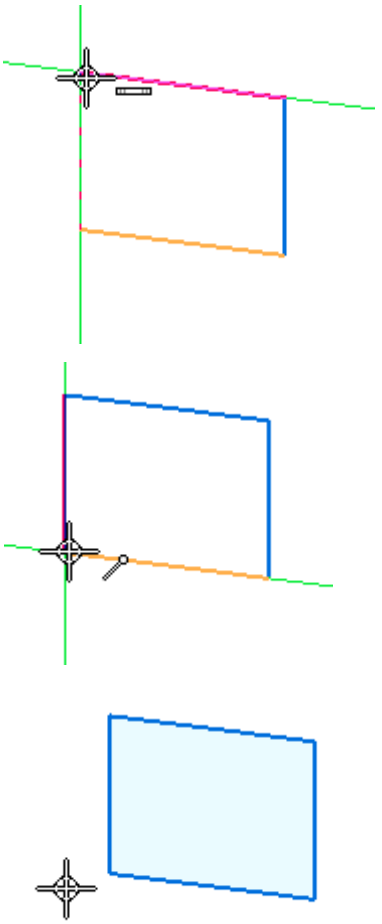
Open a part file

- Start Solid Edge.
- Click the Application button® New® ISO Part.

Draw a rectangle

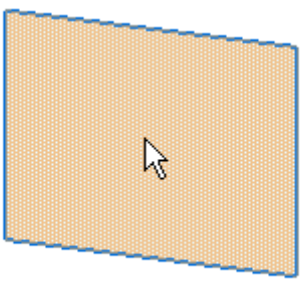
- On the Sketching tab® Draw group, choose the Line command .
- Draw a rectangle. Notice that as soon as the last line connects to the first line, a region forms. (A) denotes the first point.



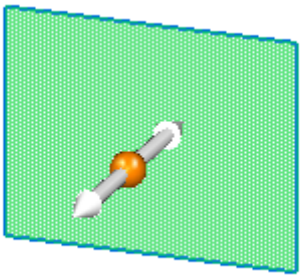


Select the region

- On the Home tab® Select group, choose the Select tool command .
- Move cursor over rectangle and notice the color change. Closed sketches (regions) and faces highlight as the cursor moves over them.

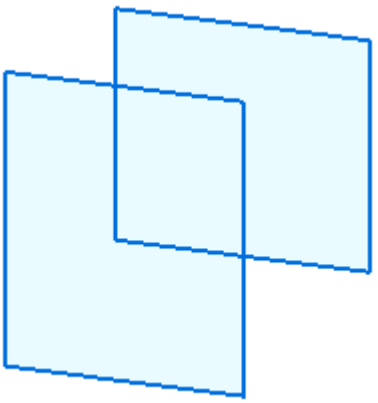


- Select the region and notice the color change. The region can extrude or revolve. This is covered in the Base Feature Creation course. Press the Esc key to end the select command.



Create nested regions

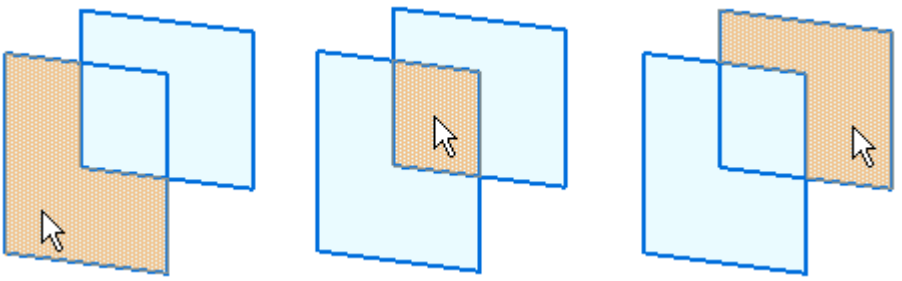
- On the Sketching tab® Draw group, choose the Rectangle command .
- Draw two rectangles that overlap as shown.



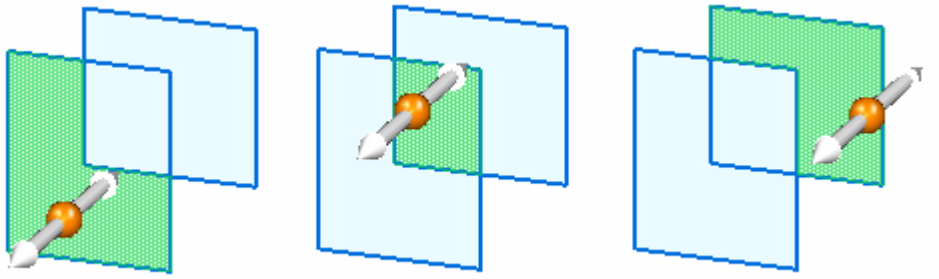
Select multiple regions

The two overlapping rectangles forms three regions.

- Move the cursor over the overlapping rectangles and notice the regions formed.



- Select each region and notice that the previously selected region is deselected.

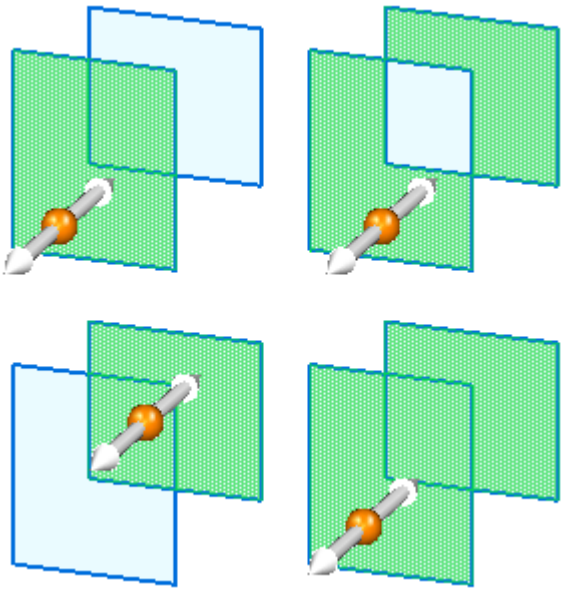


- To select multiple regions, select a region and then press the Spacebar.

  Note

  The Spacebar sets the select mode to add/remove . If you select an element already selected, it is deselected. If you select an element not already selected, it is selected.

- Create the following select sets. Press Esc after each select set is created.



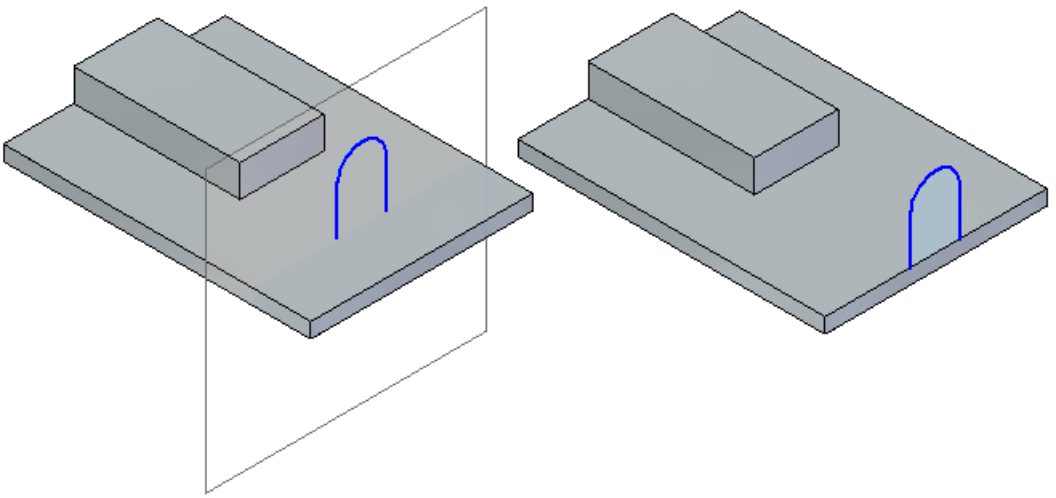
Summary

In this activity you learned how to create and select regions. Creating a synchronous feature in Solid Edge requires a region.

Practice

- Try creating other regions for practice. Otherwise, close the file and do not save.

Open sketches



An open sketch that is not coplanar with a body face or is coplanar with a body face but does not touch or cross a face edge does not create a region. A region is created if an open sketch is connected to or crosses a coplanar face edge.

Note

Open sketches use the extrude command to create a body feature. Define the side of the open sketch to add material to and the sketch automatically extends to next face to create a body feature.

Synchronous sketch behavior in the ordered environment

Synchronous sketches are used to create both synchronous and ordered features. Ordered sketches cannot be used to create a synchronous feature because while in the synchronous environment, ordered elements are not available for selection.

Synchronous sketches can only be selected when creating an ordered feature by using the “Select from Sketch” option in the Profile step.

Editing an ordered feature created with a synchronous sketch

Ordered features are driven by sketches. To edit the cross section definition of an ordered feature, edit the driving sketch.

The following are the methods available for editing a synchronous sketch which drives an ordered feature.

Directly edit the synchronous sketch

Step 1: Turn on the display of the driving synchronous sketch.

Step 2: Select a sketch element to edit.

You can move the selected sketch element and/or change the element properties on command bar.

Step 3: Edit sketch dimensions.

Note

You cannot edit or add synchronous sketch relationships using this method.

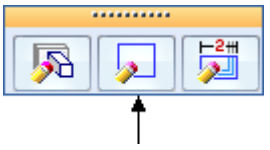
Note

As the synchronous sketch is edited, the ordered feature dynamically updates.

Feature edit (Edit Profile)

Step 1: Select the ordered feature to edit.

Step 2: Choose the Edit Profile command on the Feature Edit box.



Step 3: The modeling environment switches to synchronous. You can now fully edit the synchronous sketch.

Step 4: When the synchronous sketch edits are complete, switch to the ordered environment to observe the feature edits.

Feature edit (Dynamic Edit)

Step 1: Select the ordered feature to edit.

Step 2: Choose the Dynamic Edit command on the Feature Edit box.

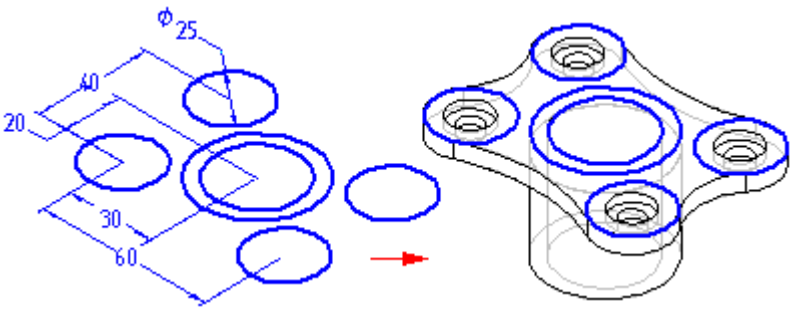
Step 3: The driving synchronous sketch appears. Make edits to synchronous sketch.

Synchronous sketch behavior in ordered modeling

- Synchronous sketch dimensions are not migrated to ordered features.
- Synchronous sketches are not consumed when creating an ordered feature.
- Synchronous sketches can drive ordered features.
- Synchronous sketches appear while in the ordered environment.
- Regions are disabled.
- Synchronous sketches appear in the synchronous sketch style and colors.
- When using the Select Tool in the ordered environment, synchronous sketch elements locate as individual elements.
- Synchronous sketches can be moved using the steering wheel handle. The entire sketch moves (not single elements).
- In the ordered environment, synchronous sketch geometry or relationships commands are not available.
- Synchronous and ordered sketches cannot be copied while in ordered environment.

Drawing ordered sketches of parts

Drawing ordered sketches allows you to establish the basic functional requirements of a part before you construct any features. You can draw a sketch on any reference plane using the Sketch command in the Part and Sheet Metal environments. Then you can use these sketches to create profile-based features.



Sketching a part before modeling it gives you several advantages:

- Allows you to draw multiple profiles on one reference plane.
- Allows you to define relationships, such as tangency or equality, between profiles on different reference planes.
- Allows you to draw the profiles you want without creating the subsequent features until later.

Drawing ordered sketches

When you click the Sketch button and then select a reference plane or planar face, a profile view is displayed. You can then use the drawing commands to draw 2D geometry.

The sketch elements you draw are assigned to the active layer. For example, when working with a complex sketch that will be used to construct a lofted feature, you may want to arrange the elements on multiple layers.

> **Note**
>
> For more information about 2D drawing in Solid Edge, see the following related topics: Drawing in Solid Edge and Drawing Profiles.

You can add dimensions and relationships to control the positions and sizes of the profiles. You can also define functional relationships using the Variables command. You can use the Save and Save All commands to save the sketch while you create them. When you have finished drawing, close the profile view using the Return button on the command bar.

For more information on drawing sketches, see the Drawing 2D elements Help topic.

Sketches and PathFinder

Sketches are represented in the PathFinder tab just like features are. You can display or hide them from the feature tree with the PathFinder Display: Sketches command on the shortcut menu. You can use PathFinder to reorder or rename a sketch just as you would any feature.

Displaying sketches

You can control the display of all the sketches in a document or individual sketches. To display or hide all sketches, use the Show All: Sketches and Hide All: Sketches commands. To display or hide individual sketches, select a sketch in the application window or PathFinder, then use the Show and Hide commands on the shortcut menu.

You can also control the display of elements in a sketch by assigning the sketch elements to a logical set of layers, and then display or hide the layers to control the display of the sketch elements.

When a sketch is active, it is displayed using the Profile color. When a sketch is not active, it is displayed using the Construction color. You can set the colors you want using the Options command.

Using sketches to construct features

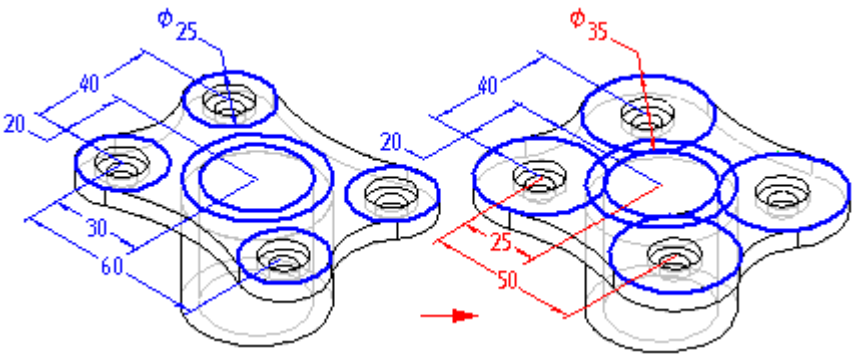
You can use sketches to construct features in the following ways:

- Directly, by clicking the Select From Sketch button on the feature command bar.
- Indirectly, by clicking the Draw button on the feature command bar and then associatively copying sketch geometry onto the active profile plane using the Include command.

Using sketches directly

You can use sketch profiles directly if no modifications to the profile are required. When constructing an ordered feature, click the Select From Sketch button on the feature command bar. You can then select one or more sketch profiles. When you click the Accept button on the command bar, the profiles you selected are checked to make sure they are valid for the type of feature you are constructing. For example, if you are constructing an ordered base feature, the profile you select must be closed. If you select an open profile or more than one profile, an error message is displayed. You can then select the Deselect (x) button on the command bar to clear the selected profiles.

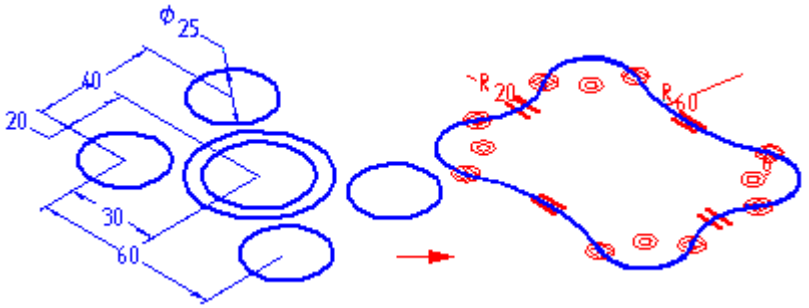
Ordered features constructed using sketched profiles are associative to the sketch and will update when the sketch is edited.



Using sketches indirectly

If the sketch profile requires modification before using it to construct a feature, you must first copy it to the active profile plane using the Include command. When you click the Draw Profile button on the feature command bar, and define the profile plane you want, a profile view is displayed. You can then use the Include command to copy elements from sketch profiles to the active profile plane.

After you have copied sketch elements, you can use the drawing commands to modify them. For example, you may need to add elements to the profile not contained in the sketch. You can also add dimensions and relationships between the elements on the active profile plane and the sketch.



The sketched elements you copy are associative to the sketch and will update if the sketch dimensions are edited.

Editing and modifying sketches

You can modify sketch elements using the command bar or the element's handles. When you modify an element, other elements may also change.

Selecting Elements

You can use the Select Tool to select elements in several ways:

- To select an individual element, position the cursor over the element and click when the element highlights.
- To select multiple elements, press the Ctrl or the Shift key while you select the elements.
- To select all 2D elements, press Ctrl+A. The Select Tool command does not need to be active for this to work.
- To deselect an element, press the Shift or Ctrl key and click the element.
- To select multiple elements using a fence, drag the cursor to define a rectangular fence. You can use the Selection Options button on the Select Tool command bar to specify the selection criteria you want.

Command bars

After you select an element, you can modify it by changing its values on a command bar. For example, you can change the length of a line by typing a new value in the Length box on the command bar.

Element handles

You can use an element's handles to modify an element. An element handle is represented by a solid square on the element, such as the end of a line or the center of an arc. You can dynamically drag a handle to modify an element. First, select the element, then drag the handle to modify it.

- Lines - Drag a handle to modify the length or angle of a line.
- Arcs - Drag an endpoint, midpoint, or center point handle to modify an arc.
- Fillets and Chamfers - Drag the handle to modify the size of a fillet or chamfer.

Sketches and revolved features

Sketches that are used for constructing revolved ordered features must have an axis defined in the sketch. If you select a sketch profile that does not have an axis, an error message is displayed. You will have to cancel the revolved feature you are constructing, then open the sketch to define the axis.

Sketches and the swept and loft commands

Drawing sketches can be especially useful when constructing swept and lofted features. Because the Sketch command allows you to define relationships between profiles on separate planes, you can more easily define the relationships you need to control these features properly. Additionally, the ability to exit a sketch profile window without creating a feature can be especially useful when drawing the profiles for swept and lofted features.

Converting 2D drawing view data to a 3D sketch

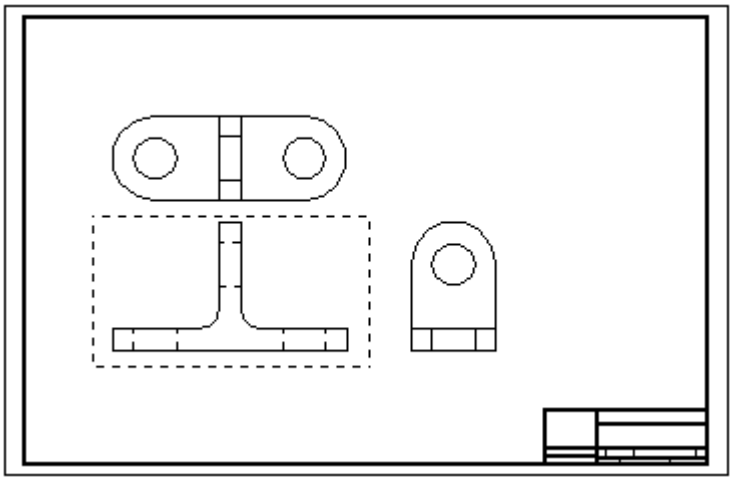
You can use the Create 3D command to convert two-dimensional drawing view data into a three-dimensional sketch.

The command displays the Create 3D dialog box that prompts you for the drawing view elements you want to include in the sketch.

Before selecting the elements that you want to include in the sketches, you need to select a template to create a part, assembly, or sheet metal file. After you select a template file, specify the projection angle that you want to use when the sketches are created in the new document. After you specify the projection angle, select the view type of the elements you want to include in the sketch:

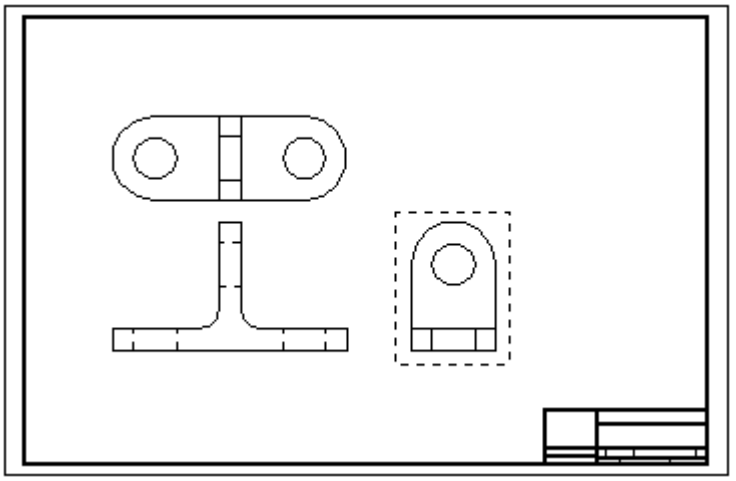
- Folded principal views are orthogonal or aligned with the primary view. You can select this view type to define the primary view.
- Folded auxiliary views are true auxiliary views that are generally derived from principal views and require a fold line to determine the edge or axis around which you want to fold the view.
- Copy views are not orthogonal and they may not actually align with the primary view. These views are placed as sketches on the same plane as the last principal view defined in the draft file.

After you define this information, you are ready to select the geometry to create the sketches. You can include lines, arcs, circles, curves, and polylines and line strings created with imported data. You can drag the mouse to fence elements or press the Shift key and click each element to select more than one element.

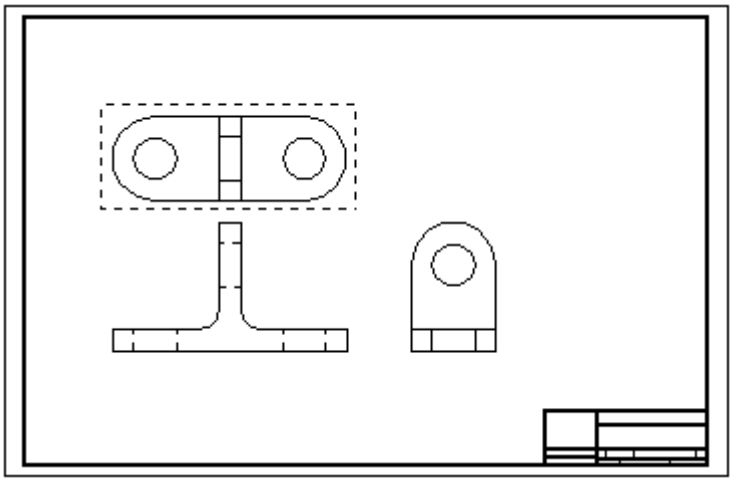


If you select the Fold Principal Views option or Fold Auxiliary Views option and it is not the primary view, you can click the Fold Line button after you select all of the elements for the view. The Fold Line button allows you to define a line or point in an orthogonal or auxiliary view on which to fold the primary view.

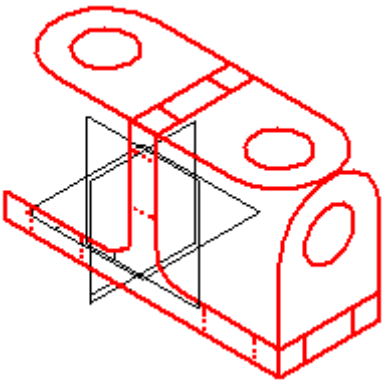
If you want to define another view, click the New View button and select the next view.



Continue this process to define any additional views.

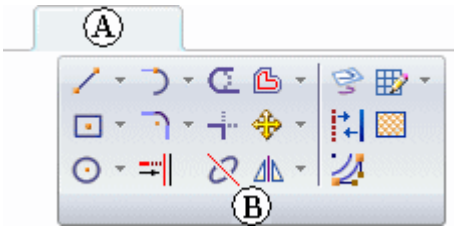


After you define all views, click the Finish button to launch the Part or Sheet Metal environment to create the model file in which the views are placed as sketches.



Drawing commands

The commands for creating and manipulating sketch elements are located on the Sketching tab (A) in the Draw group (B).



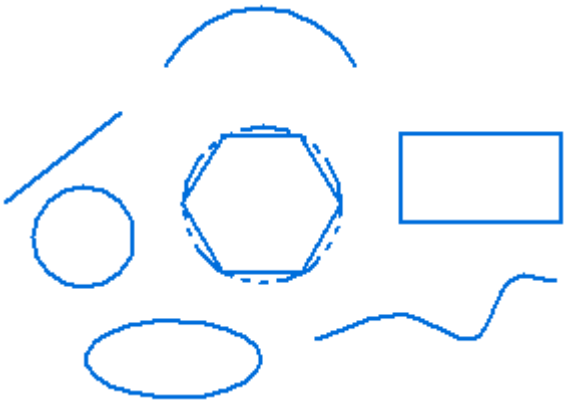
Drawing 2D elements

In Solid Edge, you can draw 2D elements to help you complete a variety of tasks. For example, you can use 2D elements to construct features in the Part environment and to draw layouts in the Assembly environment.

In the Draft environment, you can use 2D drawing tools to complete a variety of tasks such as drawing sketches from scratch on the 2D Model sheet or in 2D views, creating background sheet graphics, and defining cutting planes for section views. The drawing commands, relationships, and dimensions work similarly in all environments.

Drawing commands and tools

You can draw any type of 2D geometric element in Solid Edge, such as lines, arcs, circles, B-spline curves, rectangles, and polygons.



You can also use Solid Edge to do the following:

- Move, rotate, scale, and mirror elements
- Trim and extend elements
- Add chamfers and fillets
- Create precision graphics from a freehand sketch
- Change the color of elements

Tools that work with the drawing commands—IntelliSketch, Intent Zones, and Grid—allow you to easily relate elements to each other, define your drawing intentions as you sketch, and provide precise coordinate input relative to any key position in the drawing.

Drawing command input

Use Solid Edge drawing commands to provide input by clicking in the graphics window, or by typing values in command bar boxes. No strict input order is required.

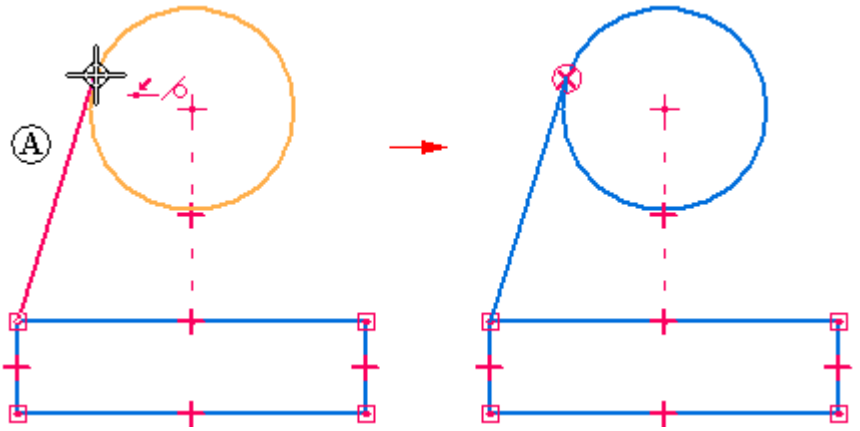
It is often productive to use a combination of graphics window and command bar input. For example, you can type a line length in the command bar, press the Enter or Tab key to lock the value, then set the orientation angle of the line in the graphics window. Or you can use the drawing command dynamics to get a graphic idea of

the size and orientation you want, then type values in the command bar boxes to provide more precise input.

You can use the Line Color option on the element command bar to apply colors to 2D elements. You can click the More option on the Colors dialog box to define custom colors.

Drawing dynamics

As you draw, the software shows a temporary, dynamic display of the element you are drawing (A). This temporary display shows what the elements will look like if you click at the current cursor position.



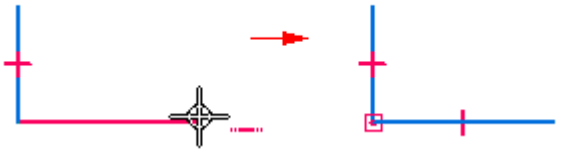
Until you click the point that completely defines the element that you are drawing, values in the command bar boxes update as you move the cursor. This gives you constant feedback on the size, shape, position, and other characteristics of the elements you draw.

When you lock a value by typing it into a command bar box, the dynamic display of the element you are drawing shows that the value is locked. For example, if you lock the length of a line, the length of the dynamic line does not change as you move the cursor to set the angle. If you want to free the dynamics for a value, you can clear the value box by double-clicking in the box and pressing the Backspace or Delete key.

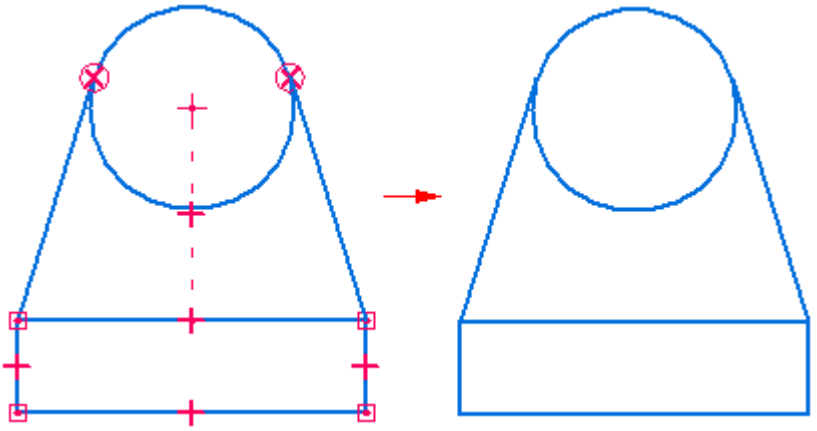
Applying and displaying relationships

As you draw, IntelliSketch recognizes and applies 2D relationships that control element size, shape, and position. When you make changes, relationships help the drawing retain the characteristics you do not want altered.

When a relationship indicator is displayed at the cursor, you can click to apply that relationship. For example, if the horizontal relationship indicator is displayed when you click to place the end point of a line, the line will be drawn exactly horizontal. You can also apply relationships to elements after you draw them.



Relationship handles displayed on the 2D geometry show you how elements are related. You can remove any relationship by deleting its handle. You can display or hide the relationship handles with the Relationship Handles command.



Maintaining relationships

You can draw and modify 2D elements in the way that best suits your design needs. You can make your assembly layouts and drawings associative by applying relationships, or you can draw them freely, without relationships. When you draw 2D elements in a part document, 2D relationships are maintained.

Maintaining relationships between 2D elements makes the elements associative (or related) to each other. When you modify a 2D element that is related to another 2D element, the other element updates automatically. For example, if you move a circle that has a tangent relationship with a line, the line also moves so that the elements remain tangent.

You can draw elements freely, or non-associatively. When you modify a non-associative portion of an assembly sketch or drawing, the changed elements move freely, without changing other portions of the design. For example, if you move a circle that is tangent to a line (but does not have a tangent relationship with the line) the line does not move with the circle.

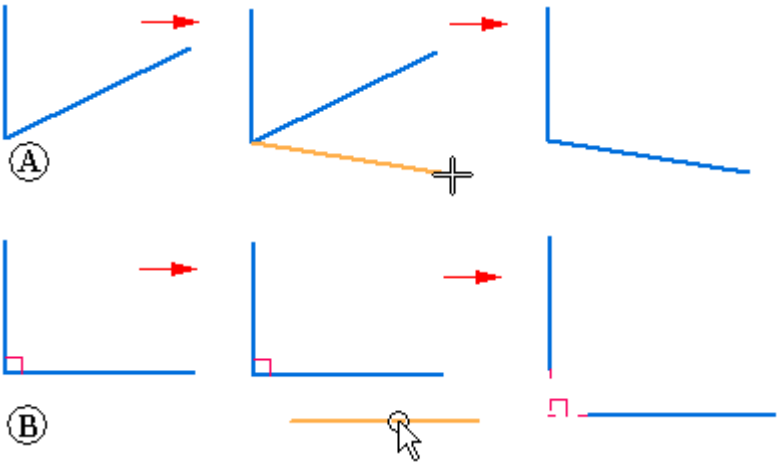
To control whether you draw and modify 2D elements freely or associatively in layouts and drawings, use the Maintain Relationships command in the Assembly and Draft environments.

Note

When you construct a synchronous feature using the 2D elements, the sketch elements are moved to the Used Sketches collector in PathFinder.

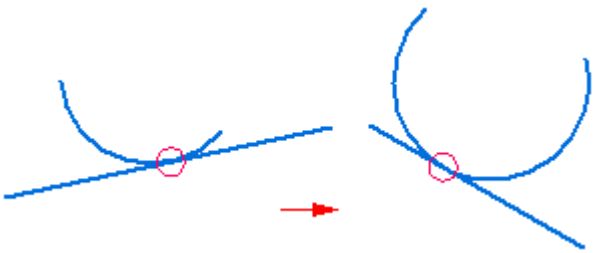
How 2D relationships work

An element that has no relationships applied can be moved and changed in various ways. For example, when there are no relationships between two lines (A), the lines can be moved and changed without affecting each other. If you apply a perpendicular relationship between the two lines (B), and move one line, the lines remain perpendicular.

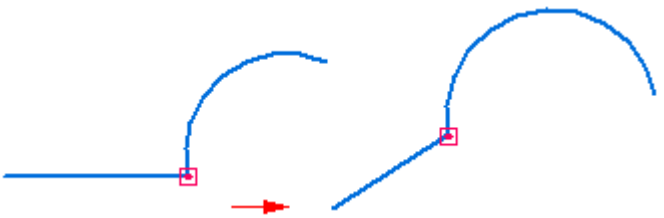


When you apply a relationship between elements, the relationship is maintained when you modify either element. For example:

- If a line and an arc share a tangent relationship, they remain tangent when either is modified.



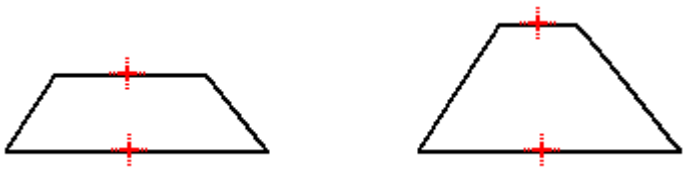
- If a line and arc share a connect relationship, they remain connected when either is modified.



Relationships also maintain physical characteristics such as size, orientation, and position.

- You can make the size of two circles equal with an equal relationship.
- You can make the orientation of two lines parallel with a parallel relationship.
- You can connect a line and an arc with a connect relationship.

A relationship can also maintain a physical characteristic of an individual element. For example, you can make a line horizontal. The line remains horizontal even if you change its position and length.



Construction elements

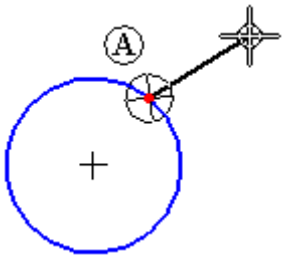
For 2D elements you draw in a part or assembly document, you can specify that the element is a considered a construction element. The Construction command on the Sketching tab allows you to specify that an element is a construction element. Construction elements are not used to construct features—they are used only as drawing aids. The line style for a construction element is dashed.

Intent Zones

Solid Edge uses intent zones to interpret your intentions as you draw and modify elements. Intent zones allow you to draw and modify elements many ways using few commands. You do not need to select a different command for every type of element.

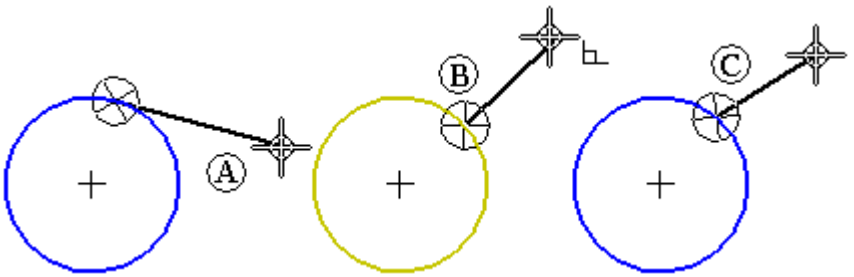
How intent zones work

When you click to begin drawing certain elements, the software divides the region around the clicked position into four intent zone quadrants. For example, when drawing a line that is connected to a circle, four intent zones are displayed around the point you clicked (A).



Two of these intent zones allow you to draw the line tangent to the circle. The other two intent zones allow you to draw the line perpendicular to, or at some other orientation relative to the circle.

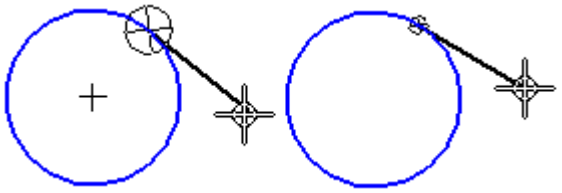
By moving the cursor through one of these intent zones on the way to your next click location, you can tell the software what you want to do next. This allows you to control whether the line is tangent to the circle (A), perpendicular to the circle (B), or at some other orientation (C).



The last intent zone you move the cursor into is the active zone. To change the active intent zone, move the cursor back into the zone circle, and then move the cursor out through the intent zone quadrant to the position where you want to click next.

Intent zone size

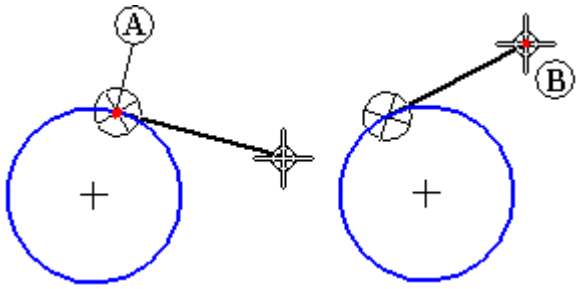
You can change the size of the intent zones with the IntelliSketch command. The Intent Zone option on the Cursor tab on the IntelliSketch dialog box allows you to set the intent zone size.



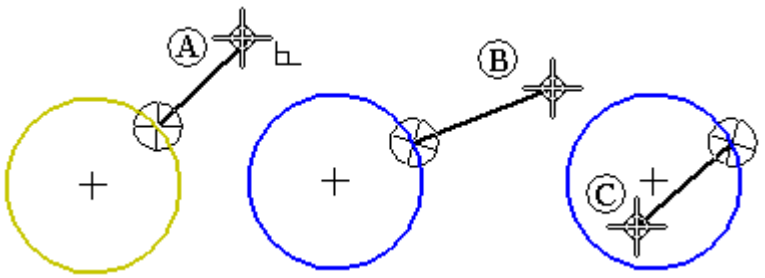
Drawing lines tangent or connected to curved elements

Using intent zones with the Line command, you can draw a line tangent to a circle or arc. Or you can draw a line that is connected to the circle or arc, but not tangent to it.

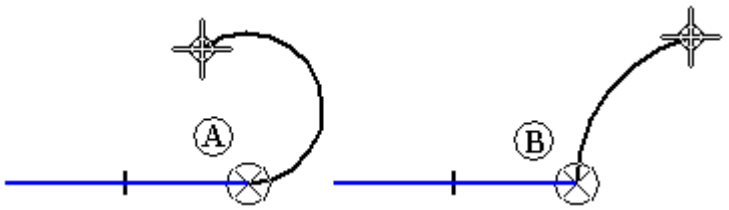
To draw an line tangent to a circle, first click a point on the circle (A) to place the first end point of the line. Then move the cursor through the tangent intent zone. As you move the cursor, the line remains tangent to the circle. Position the cursor where you want the second end point of the line (B), then click to place the second end point.



If you do not want the line to be tangent to the circle, you can move the cursor back into the intent zone region and out through one of the perpendicular zones (A) before clicking to place the second end point of the line. When you move the cursor through the perpendicular zones, you can also draw the line such that it is not perpendicular to the circle (B) and (C).



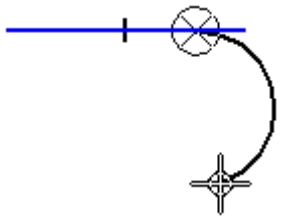
The Line command also allows you to draw a connected series of lines and arcs. You can use the L and A keys on the keyboard to switch from line mode to arc mode. When you switch modes, intent zones (A) and (B) are displayed at the last click point.



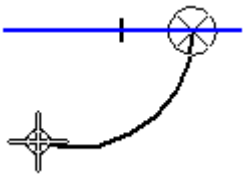
The intent zones allow you to control whether the new element is tangent to, perpendicular to, or at some other orientation to the previous element.

Drawing tangent or perpendicular arcs

You can use intent zones to change the result of the Tangent Arc command. To draw an arc tangent to a line, first click a point on the line to place the first end point of the arc. Then move the cursor through the tangent intent zone and click to place the second end point of the arc.

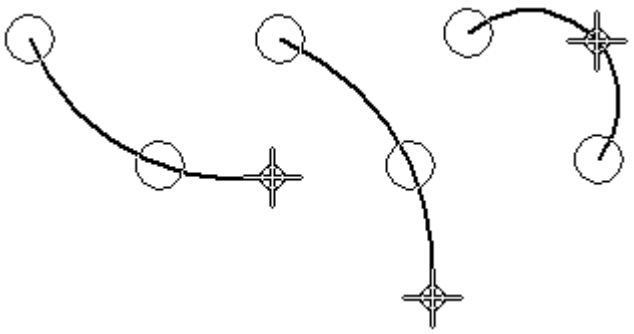


If you do not want the arc to be tangent to the line, you can move the cursor back into the intent zone region and out through the perpendicular zone before clicking to place the second end point of the arc.



Drawing arcs by three points

When you use the Arc By 3 Points command, intent zones allow you to input the three points in any order. You can also use intent zones to change the arc direction. The intent zone used with the Arc By 3 Points command is not divided into quadrants.

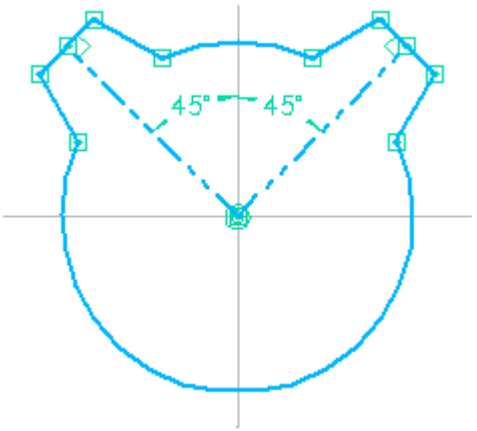


Construction Geometry

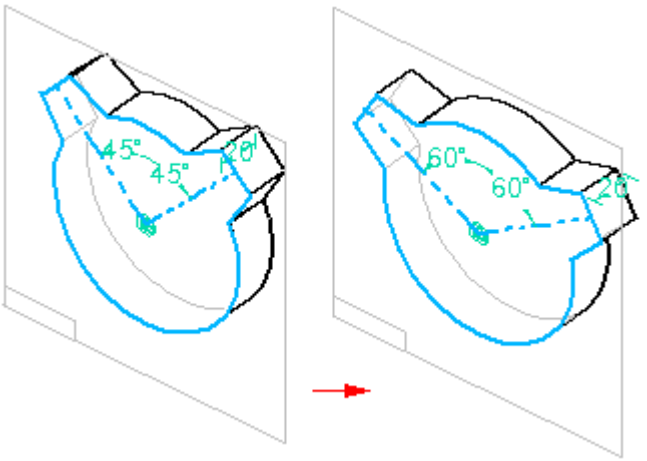
You can use construction geometry to help you draw and constrain a profile, but the construction geometry is not used to construct the surfaces for the feature. When the feature is created, the construction geometry is ignored. The Construction command is used to change a profile element or sketch element into a construction element.

- Construction elements use the double-chain line style so you can distinguish them from other elements.

- For example, you can use 45 degree construction lines to control the location of the tabs on the profile or sketch.



- The construction lines make it easier to edit the location of the tabs, but the construction lines are not used to produce the solid model.

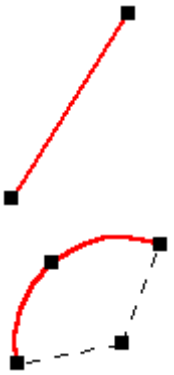


Modifying 2D elements

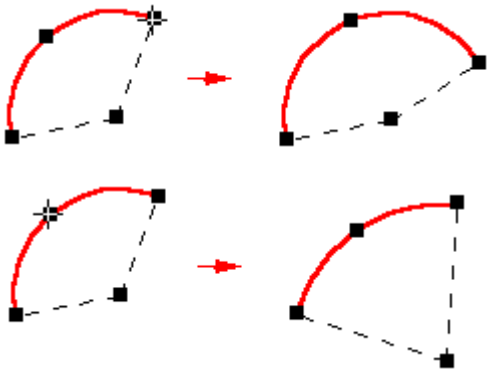
Solid Edge provides a wide range of tools for modifying 2D elements. 2D drawing and modification tools work together smoothly, so that you can modify your profiles, sketches, and 2D drawings as you work.

Using element handles

You can change the size, position, or orientation of an element with the cursor. When you select an element with the Select tool, its handles are displayed at key positions.

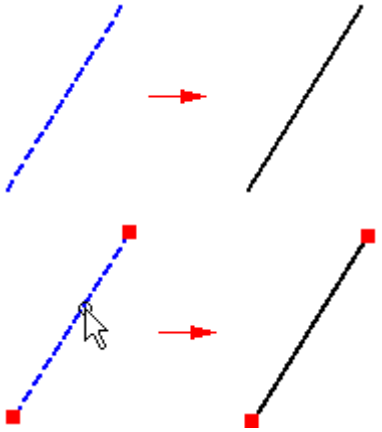


You can change the shape of a selected element by dragging one of its handles. The first figure shows the effect of dragging an end point handle. The second figure shows the effect of dragging the midpoint handle.

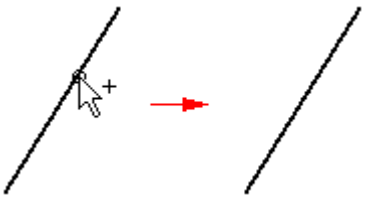


Moving and copying elements with the mouse

You can also drag a selected element to move it without changing its shape. Position the cursor so it is not over a handle, then drag the element to another location.

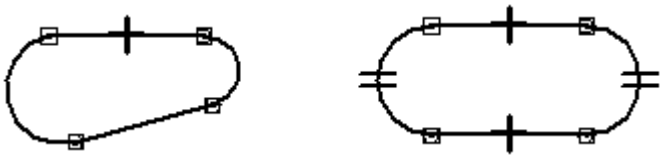


To copy an element, hold the Ctrl key while you drag.

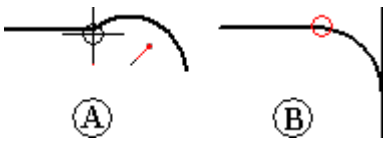


Applying relationships between elements

You can apply geometric relationships as you draw or after you draw. To apply a geometric relationship onto an existing element, select a relationship command and then select the element to which you want to add the relationship. When you apply a relationship to an element, the element is modified to reflect the new relationship.



If a line and arc are not tangent (A), applying a tangent relationship modifies one or both elements to make them tangent (B).



When you use relationship commands, the software allows you to select only elements that are valid input for that command. For example, when you use the Concentric command, the command allows you to select only circles, arcs, and ellipses.

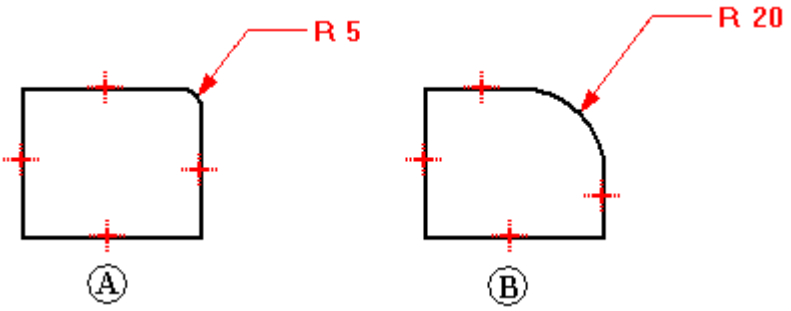
Changing relationships

You can delete a relationship as you would delete any other element by selecting a relationship handle, then press the Delete key on the keyboard.

Dimensions as relationships

Driving dimensions are relationships that allow you to maintain characteristics such as the size, orientation, and position of elements. When you place a driving dimension on or between elements, you can change the measured elements by editing the dimensional value. You do not have to delete or redraw elements at different sizes.

For example, you can dimension the radius of an arc to maintain its size (A), and then edit the value of the radius dimension to change its size (B).



To create dimensional relationships, select a dimension command and click the elements you want to control.

Changing elements with relationships

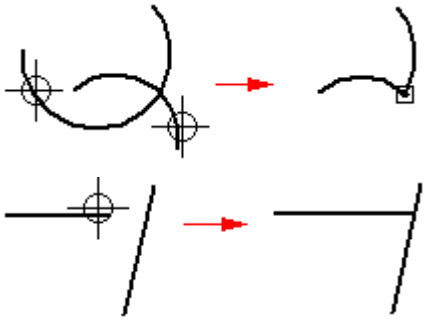
When you modify 2D elements, elements with maintained relationships automatically update to honor the relationship. For example, if you move an element that shares a parallel relationship with another element, the other element moves as needed to remain parallel. If a line and an arc share a tangent relationship, they remain tangent when either is modified.

If you want to change an element by adding or removing a relationship, and the element does not change the way you expect, it may be controlled by a driving dimension. You can toggle the dimension from driving to driven, then make the change.

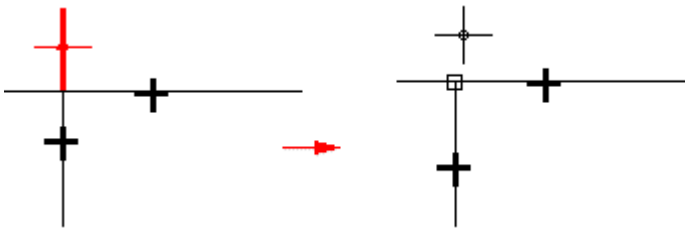
Element modification: trimming, extending, splitting, filleting, chamfering, offsetting, and stretching

Whether your sketching technique is to start big and whittle away or to start small and build up, relationships make it possible to sketch and evolve, rather than draw every element to its exact measurements. Solid Edge modification tools allow you to change a sketch and still maintain applied relationships.

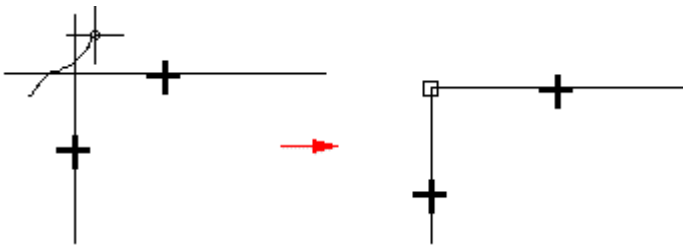
Solid Edge provides commands to trim, extend, or split elements.



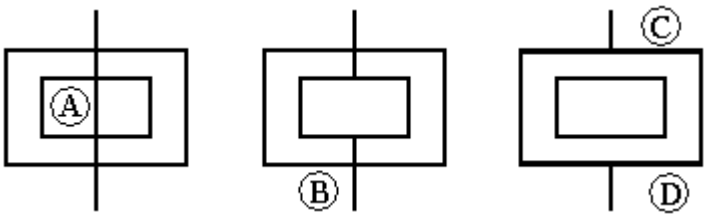
The Trim command trims an element back to the intersection with another element. To use the command, click on the part to trim.



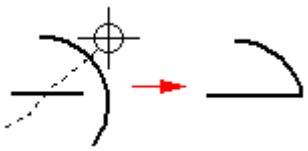
You can trim one or more elements by dragging the cursor across the part to trim.



You can also select the elements you want to trim to. This selection overrides the default option of trimming to the next element only. To select an element to trim to, press the Ctrl key while selecting the element to trim to. For example, in normal operations, if you selected line (A) as the element to be trimmed, it would be trimmed at the intersection of the next element (B). However, you can select the edges (C) and (D) as the elements to trim to and the element will be trimmed at the intersection of those edges.

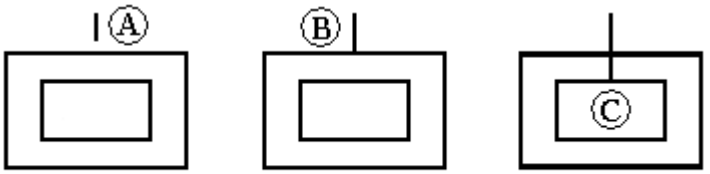


The Trim Corner command creates a corner by extending two open elements to their intersection.

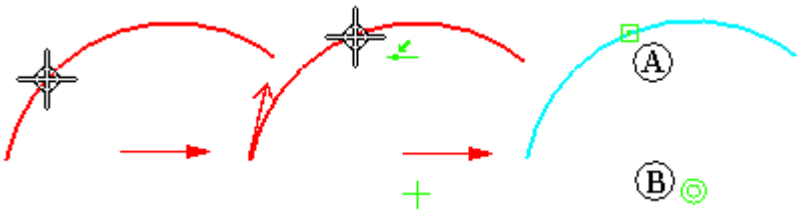


The Extend to Next command extends an open element to the next element. To do this, select the element and then click the mouse near the end to extend.

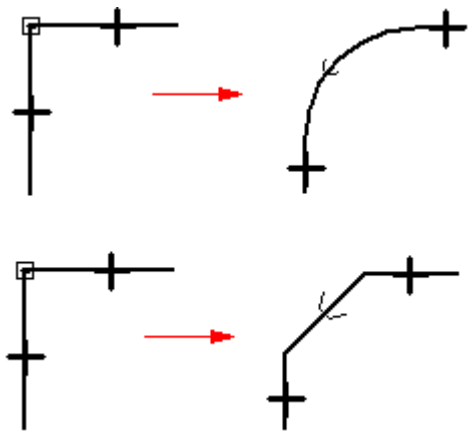
You can also select an element to extend to. This selection overrides the default option of extending to the next element only. To select an element to extend to, press the Ctrl key while selecting the element to extend to. For example, in normal operations, if you selected line (A) as the element to be extended, it would be extended to the intersection of the next element (B). However, you can select edge (C) to extend the line to that edge.



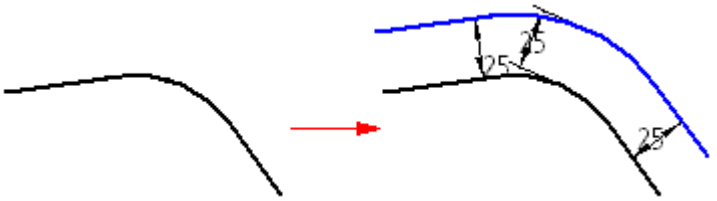
The Split command splits an open or closed element at the location you specify. When splitting elements, appropriate geometric relationships are applied automatically. For example, when splitting an arc, a connect relationship (A) is applied at the split point, and a concentric relationship (B) is applied at the center point of the arcs.



Fillet and Chamfer commands combine drawing and trimming operations.

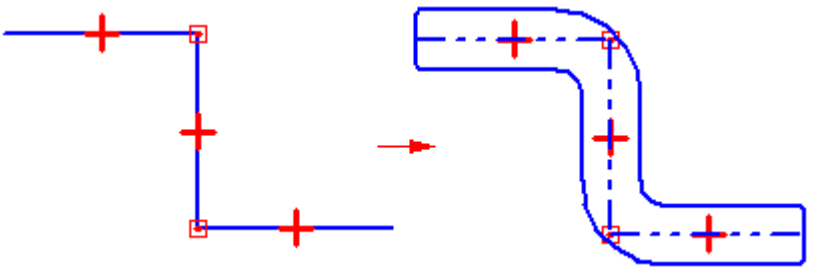


The Offset command draws a uniform-offset copy of selected elements.

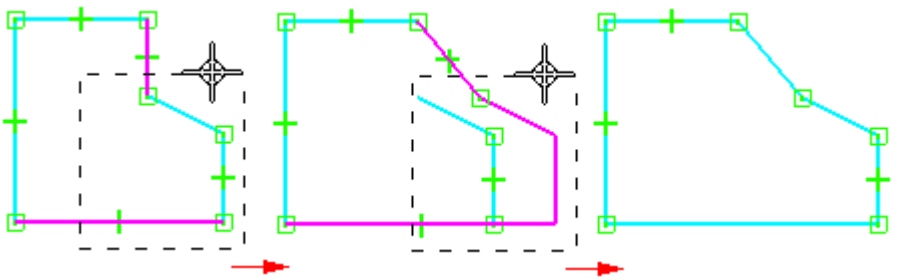


You cannot select model edges with this command. If you want to offset model edges, use the Include command.

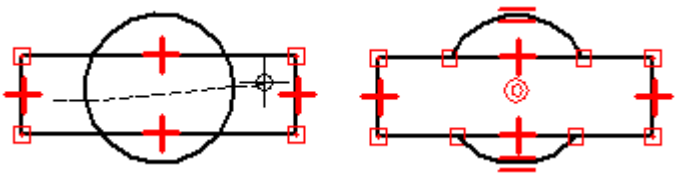
The Symmetric Offset command draws a symmetrically offset copy of a selected center line.



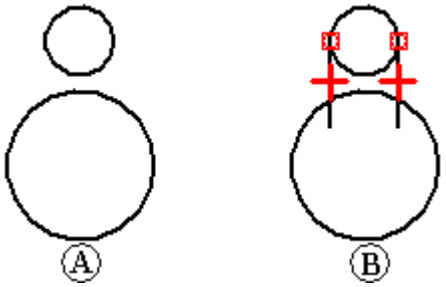
The Stretch command moves elements within the fence and stretches elements that overlap the fence.



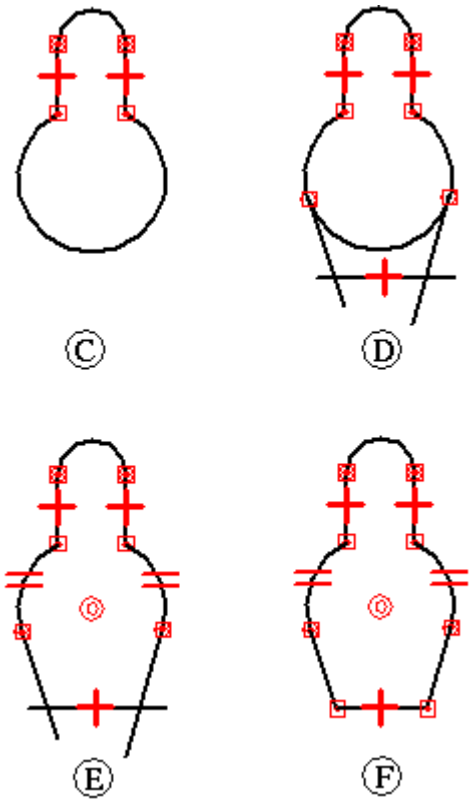
Relationships are added or removed as necessary during element modification. If you trim part of a circle and more than one arc remains, concentric and equal relationships are applied between the remaining arcs.



For example, you typically begin designing with key design parameters. You would draw known design elements in proper relation to one another (A) and then draw additional elements to fill in the blanks (B).

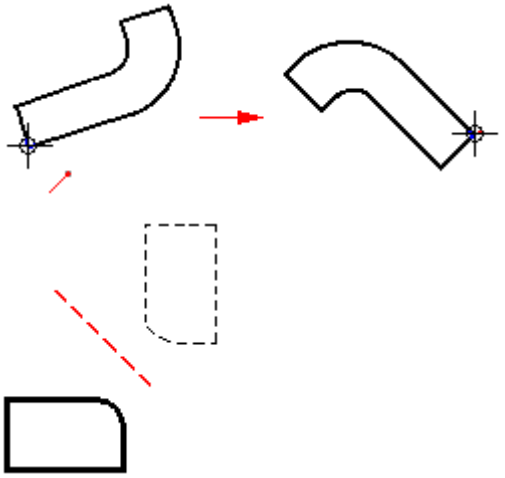


As you draw, you may need to modify elements to create a valid profile, or to make a drawing look the way you want it to (C-F). You can use modification commands such as Trim and Extend to modify the elements. The relationships are maintained and additional relationships are applied.



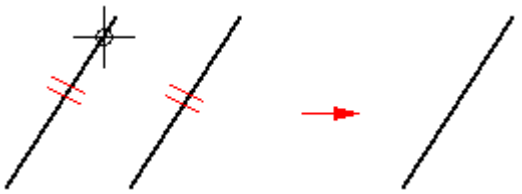
Element manipulation: rotating, scaling, mirroring, copying, and deleting

Tools are provided for moving, rotating, scaling, and mirroring elements. These tools can also be used for copying. For example, you can make a mirror copy, or you can cut or copy 2D elements from another application and paste them into the profile window, the assembly sketch window, or a drawing.

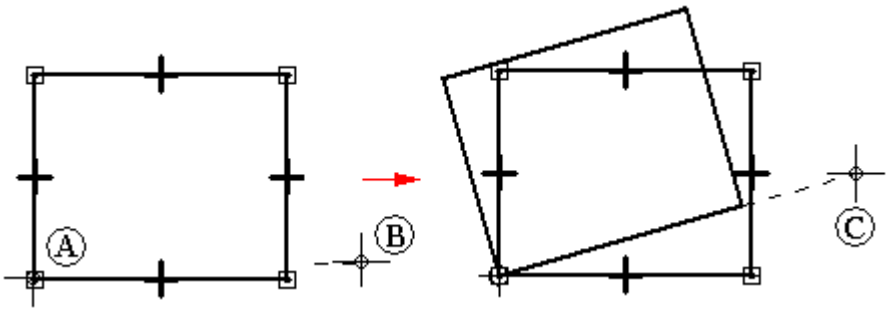


When you manipulate elements that have relationships, the relationships are retained when possible. For example, if you make a copy of two related elements, the relationship is also copied. However, if you copy one of two elements that are related to each other, the relationship is not copied.

Relationships that are no longer applicable after a manipulation are automatically deleted. For example, if you delete one of a pair of parallel lines, the parallel relationship is deleted from the remaining line.

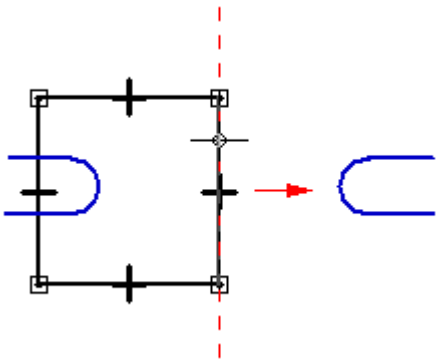


The Rotate command turns or turns and copies 2D elements about an axis. The command requires you to specify a center point for the rotation (A), a point to rotate from (B), and a point to rotate to (C).

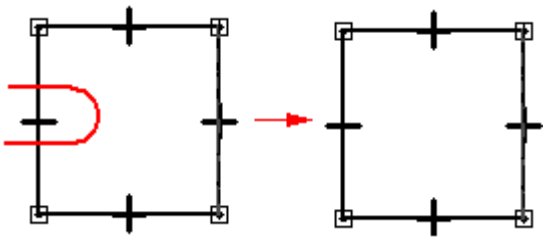


The Scale command uses a scale factor to proportionally scale or scale and copy 2D elements.

The Mirror command mirrors or mirror copies 2D elements about a line or two points.

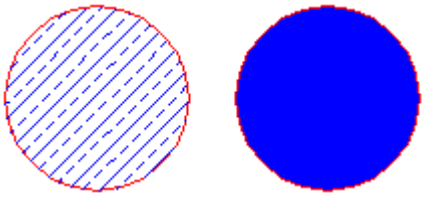


The Delete command removes 2D elements from the profile or sketch window.



Applying colors and patterns to closed boundaries

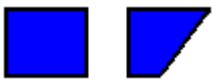
A boundary in a Solid Edge drawing, sketch, or profile can be filled with a pattern or solid color.



A fill is like other elements in that you can format it and move it around, but the fill is always associated with a boundary. The boundary can be made up of more than one element.

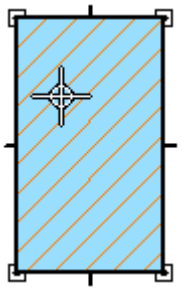
Modifying fills

A fill can exist only inside a closed boundary. A fill is associative, which means it maintains its original orientation to an element regardless of the way you manipulate the element. For example, if you move the boundary, the fill moves with it. If you change the boundary, the fill changes to conform to the new boundary area. You can delete a fill the same way you would delete an element.

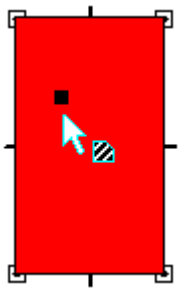


Fill insertion point

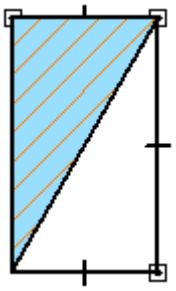
- When you click inside an object to fill it, the cursor location designates the fill insertion point.



- The fill insertion point is also the fill handle. You can select the fill handle and drag the fill to another object.



- If you use the Redo Fill option to refill the area based on a new boundary, the insertion point designates which side of the object will be refilled.



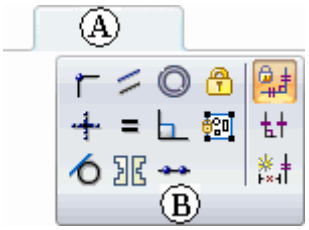
Formatting fills

Formatting a fill is similar to applying formats to an element. You can apply unique formats to fills with the Properties command or by setting options on the Fill command bar. To make several fills look the same, you can apply a fill style by selecting the style on the command bar.

The software provides fill styles for various engineering standards, such as ANSI, ISO, and AIA. You can modify an existing fill style or create a new one with the Style command.

Sketch geometric relationships

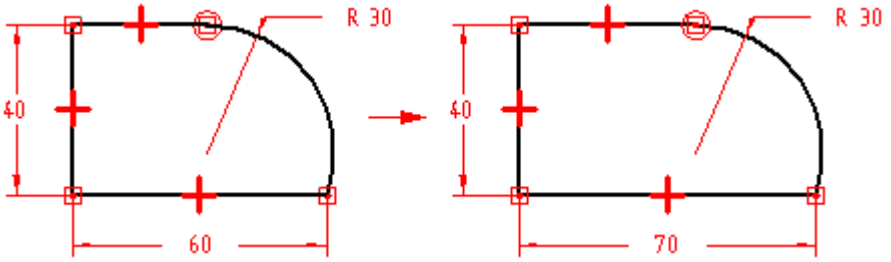
The sketch relationship commands are located on the Sketching tab (A) in the Relate group (B).



Sketch relationships do not migrate to the feature created from them.

Geometric Relationships

Geometric relationships control the orientation of an element with respect to another element or reference plane. For example, you can define a tangent relationship between a line and an arc. If the adjoining elements change, the tangent relationship is maintained between the elements.



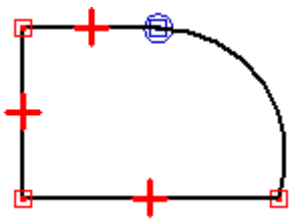
Geometric relationships control how a sketch changes when edits are made. IntelliSketch displays and places geometric relationships as you draw. After you complete the sketch, you can use the various relationship commands and the Relationship Assistant to apply additional geometric relationships.

Relationship Handles

Relationship handles are symbols used to represent a geometric relationship between elements, keypoints, and dimensions, or between keypoints and elements. The relationship handle shows that the designated relationship is being maintained.

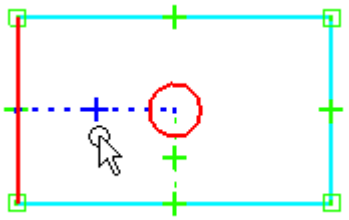
Relationship	Handle
Collinear	
Connect (1 degree of freedom)	
Connect (2 degrees of freedom)	
Concentric	
Equal	
Horizontal/Vertical	
Tangent	
Tangent (Tangent + Equal Curvature)	
Tangent (Parallel Tangent Vectors)	
Tangent (Parallel Tangent Vectors + Equal Curvature)	
Symmetric	
Parallel	
Perpendicular	
Fillet	
Chamfer	
Link (local)	
Link (peer-to-peer)	
Link (sketch to sketch)	
Rigid Set (2-D elements)	

In some cases, more than one relationship may be required and displayed at the same location on the profile. For example, a connect relationship and a tangent relationship can be used where an arc meets a line.

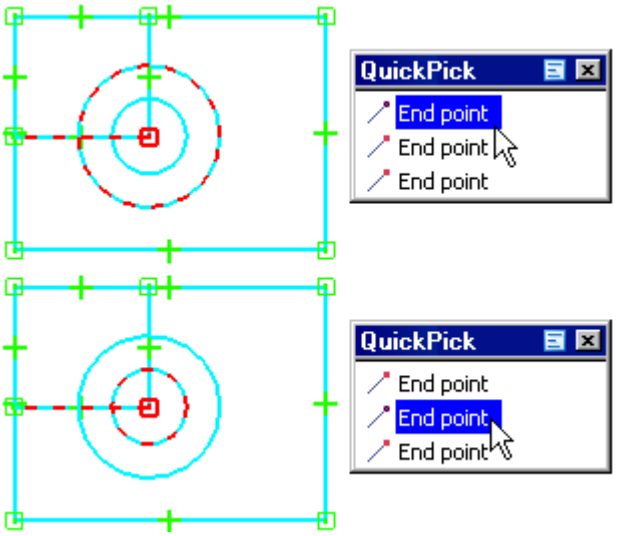


Displaying Parents for a Relationship

When modifying a profile or sketch, it can be useful to determine the parent elements for a relationship. When you select a geometric relationship, the parents highlight. For example, when you select the horizontal relationship shown in the first illustration, the left vertical line and the circle are highlighted as the parent elements.

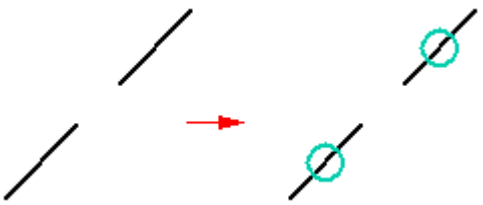


This can be useful when multiple relationships are in the same location and you need to delete one relationship. In this situation, you can use QuickPick to highlight the relationship, and the parent elements are displayed using a dashed line style.



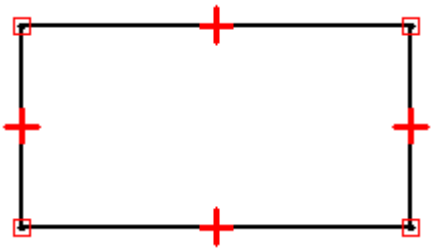
Collinear

The Collinear command forces two lines to be collinear. If the angle of one of the lines changes, the second line changes its angle and position to remain collinear with the first.

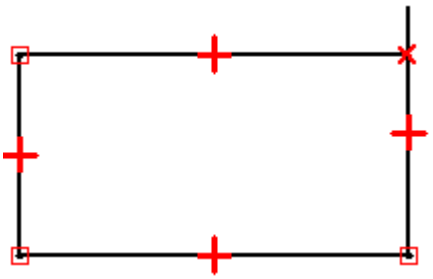


Connect

The Connect command joins a keypoint on one element to another element, or element keypoint. For example, you can apply a connect relationship between the endpoints of two elements. Establishing a connect relationship between element endpoints helps you draw a closed sketch. The symbol for connected endpoints displays a dot at the center of a rectangle.



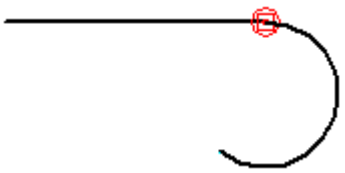
You can also use the Connect command to connect the endpoint of an element to any point on another element, not necessarily an endpoint or keypoint. This is called a point-on-element connection, and the symbol resembles an X. For example, the endpoint of the top horizontal line on the right side of the profile is connected to the vertical line, but not at an endpoint.



When drawing profiles, pay close attention to the relationship indicator symbols that IntelliSketch displays, and try to draw the elements as accurately as possible. Otherwise, you may accidentally apply a connect relationship in the wrong location, which can result in an invalid profile. For example, for a base feature you may accidentally create an open profile, rather than the required closed profile.

Tangent

The Tangent command maintains tangency between two elements or element groups.



When you apply a tangent relationship, you can use the Tangent command bar to specify the type of tangent relationship you want:

- Tangent
- Tangent + Equal Curvature
- Parallel Tangent Vectors

- Parallel Tangent Vectors + Equal Curvature

A simple tangent relationship is useful when you want a line and an arc, or two arcs to remain tangent. The other options are useful in situations where a b-spline curve must blend smoothly with other elements. The Tangent + Equal Curvature, Parallel Tangent Vectors, and Parallel Tangent Vectors + Equal Curvature options require that the first element you select is a b-spline curve.

Note

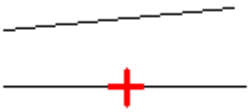
You can also apply a tangent or connect relationship to an end-point connected series of elements to define a profile group. For more information on profile groups, see the Working With Profile Groups topic.

Perpendicular

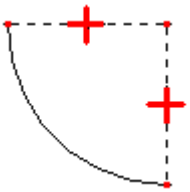
The Perpendicular command maintains a 90-degree angle between two elements.

Horizontal/Vertical

The Horizontal/Vertical command works in two modes. In one mode, you can fix the orientation of a line as either horizontal or vertical by selecting any point on the line that is not an endpoint or a midpoint.

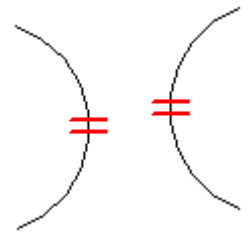


In the second mode, you can apply vertical/horizontal relationships between graphic elements by aligning their midpoints, center points, or endpoints so that their positions remain aligned with respect to each other.



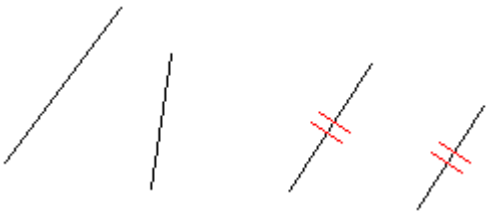
Equal

The Equal command maintains size equality between similar elements. When this relationship is applied between two lines, their lengths become equal. When applied between two arcs, their radii become equal.



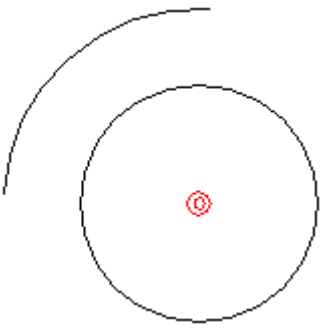
Parallel

The Parallel command makes two lines share the same angled orientation.



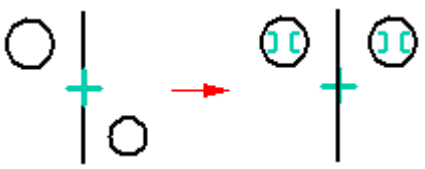
Concentric

The Concentric command maintains coincident centers for arcs and circles.



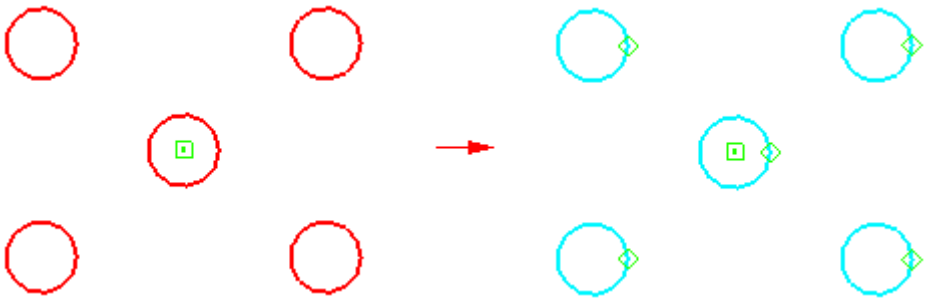
Symmetric

You can use the Symmetric command to make elements symmetric about a line or reference plane. The Symmetric command captures both the location and size of the elements.



Rigid Set

You can use the Rigid Set command to add a rigid set relationship to a group of 2-D elements.



Drawing Tools

Solid Edge provides tools to help you draw quickly and precisely in a variety of situations.

Grid

Grids help you draw with precision when the endpoints of elements you are drawing fit within regular intervals.

IntelliSketch

IntelliSketch helps you create, and optionally maintain, geometric relationships between elements. As you draw, IntelliSketch recognizes the opportunity to relate new elements to existing elements and displays visual cues that help make elements connected, tangent, collinear, perpendicular, parallel, and so forth.

Based on your preference, Solid Edge will either maintain the relationships that IntelliSketch creates or only use IntelliSketch to create new elements with precision, without maintaining relationships as you add and change geometry.

Projection Lines

Projection lines help you maintain alignment of key points, for example between related 2D Drawing Views of a model. Projection lines fulfill the function of the squares, triangles, and parallel rules used in classical drafting.

Working with grids

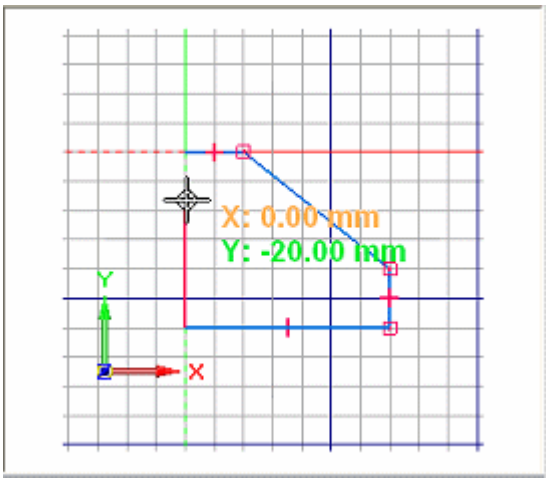
The grid helps you draw and modify elements relative to known positions in the working window. It displays a series of intersecting lines or points, and X and Y coordinates, which enable you to draw 2D elements with precision. You can use the grid with all sketching, dimensioning, and annotation functions. It also works with IntelliSketch and the Select command.

For example, you can use the grid to:

- Draw elements at known locations, draw elements known distances apart, and so forth. For an example, see Help topic Draw a line with a grid.

- Align dimensions and annotations by snapping them to grid points or lines. Only bolt hole circles and center marks cannot be snapped to a grid. For an example, see Help topic Place a dimension or annotation using a grid.

synchronous environment

ordered environment 

Displaying the grid and setting options

Use the Grid Options command to open the Grid Options dialog box, where you can turn the grid on and off. When the Show Grid option is set, the grid is displayed whenever you create or modify 2D elements.

You also can use the Grid Options dialog box to:

- Turn alignment lines on and off.
- Turn snap-to-grid on and off.
- Turn coordinate display on and off.
- Change grid spacing.
- Change grid line color.

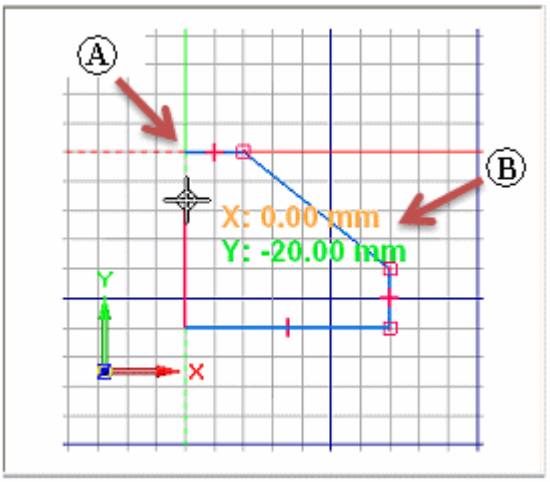
To change the grid origin line colors, you must change the Select and Highlight colors on the Colors page in the Solid Edge Options dialog box.

How grids work in the ordered environment

The grid is displayed in Draft and in profile and sketch mode as you draw, dimension, and annotate 2D elements. The X and Y coordinates it displays are relative to an origin point (A), which you can position anywhere in the window. The origin point is marked by the intersection of the X and Y origin lines.

As you move the cursor, the horizontal and vertical distance between the cursor position and the origin point is dynamically displayed (B).

If the Snap To Grid option is on when you add dimensions and annotations, they will snap to grid lines and points.



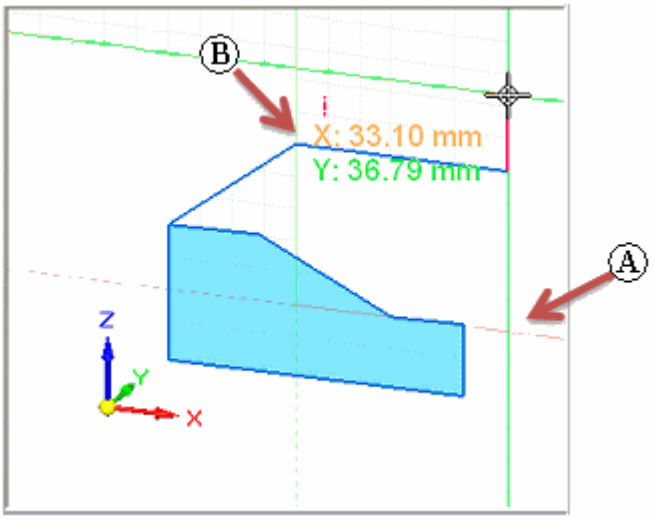
How grids work in the synchronous environment

The grid is available for drawing and editing 2D elements, and for adding 2D dimensions and annotations.

Grid visibility is somewhat different in Draft than in synchronous modeling environments. In Draft, when the grid is turned on, it is always visible. In synchronous modeling, the grid is visible only when a sketch plane is locked.

In 3D environments, the grid helps you draw horizontally and vertically with respect to part edges and model faces by displaying a series of intersecting lines or points, and by displaying alignment lines. The grid also helps you draw with precision by displaying X and Y coordinates that are relative to an origin point (A), which you can position anywhere in the window.

As you move the cursor, the horizontal and vertical distance (B) and orientation between the cursor position and the origin point is displayed and updated.

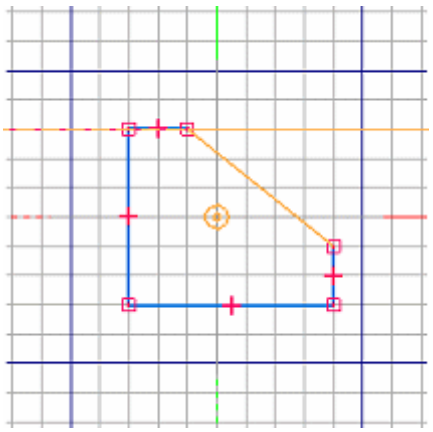


If the Snap To Grid option is on when you add dimensions and annotations, they will snap to grid lines and points.

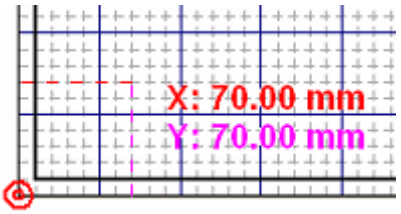
Recognizing the grid origin

The grid origin is marked by the intersection of the X and Y origin lines.

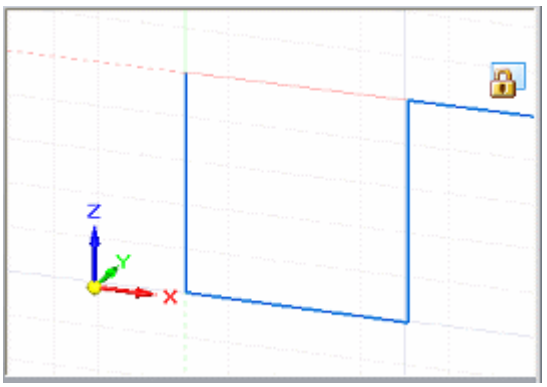
- In ordered profile and sketch, the default display mode is a red dashed line for the X axis and a green dashed line for the Y axis. The user-defined grid origin point is marked by a circle and dot. The default origin is at the center of the profile or sketch reference plane.



- In Draft, the default display mode is a red dashed line for the X axis and a magenta dashed line for the Y axis. The user-defined grid origin point is marked by a concentric circle and dot. The default origin is the (0,0) location of the drawing sheet.



- In the synchronous modeling environment, the default display color scheme matches that of the user-defined origin triad in the center of the graphics window. The X axis is a red line, and the Y axis is green. These lines are solid in the positive direction and dashed in the negative direction. There is no marker at the user-defined origin point. The default origin is the 0,0,0 center of the currently locked sketch plane.



Moving the grid origin

You can move the grid origin point using either of these commands:

- Use the Reposition Origin command to move the origin to a user-defined location. This is helpful when you want to do any of the following:
  - Add dimensions or constraints that are horizontal or vertical to a model edge.
  - Draw lines and other elements at a precise distance from another element at a known location.
  - Offset a series of elements by the same distance from a known location.
- To automatically reset the origin point to match the origin of the drawing sheet or working plane, use the Zero Origin command .

  Note

  The Reposition Origin and Zero Origin commands are available in synchronous modeling environments only when a sketch plane is locked.

See the Help topic, Reposition the grid origin point.

Changing the grid orientation

In ordered profile and sketch, the default orientation for the x-axis of the grid is horizontal to the profile or sketch reference plane. You can reorient the x-axis to any angle using the Angle option on the Grid Options dialog box.

In the synchronous modeling environment, the orientation of the grid axes matches the origin axes of the currently locked sketch plane. When you lock onto a different sketch plane, the origin axes reorient to the new plane. You can use the Reposition Origin command to do the following:

- Change the grid angle. See the Help topic, Reposition the sketch plane origin.
- Ensure that dimensions placed on coplanar geometry remain horizontal and vertical. See the Help topic, Set sketch plane horizontal and vertical for dimensioning.

In Draft, the default orientation for the X-axis of the grid is horizontal. You can reorient the X-axis to any angle using the Angle option on the Grid Options dialog box.

IntelliSketch

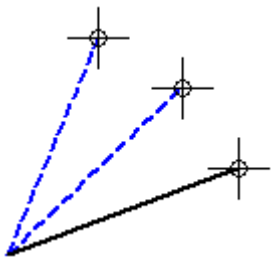
IntelliSketch is a dynamic drawing tool used for sketching and modifying elements. IntelliSketch allows you to sketch with precision by specifying characteristics of the design as you sketch.

For instance, IntelliSketch allows you to sketch a line that is horizontal or vertical, or a line that is parallel or perpendicular to another line or tangent to a circle. You can also draw an arc connected to the end point of an existing line, draw a circle concentric with another circle, draw a line tangent to a circle—the possibilities are too numerous to list.

IntelliSketch places dimensions and geometric relationships on any new 2D elements as you draw them. You can use another tool, the Relationship Assistant, to place dimensions and relationships automatically on existing profile elements.

How IntelliSketch works

As you draw, IntelliSketch tracks the movement of the cursor and shows a temporary, dynamic display of the element you are drawing. This temporary display shows what the new element will look like if you click at the current position.



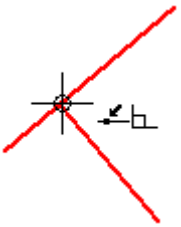
IntelliSketch gives you more information about the element you are drawing by displaying relationships between the temporary, dynamic element and the following:

- Other elements in the drawing
- Horizontal and vertical orientations
- The origin of the element you are drawing

When IntelliSketch recognizes a relationship, it displays a relationship indicator at the cursor. As you move the cursor, IntelliSketch updates the indicator to show new relationships. If a relationship indicator is displayed at the cursor when you click to draw the element, the software applies that relationship to the element. For example, if the Horizontal relationship indicator appears when you click to place the second end point of a line, then the line will be horizontal.

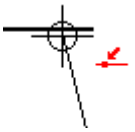
IntelliSketch relationships

You can set the types of relationships you want IntelliSketch to recognize on the Relationships page on the IntelliSketch dialog box. IntelliSketch can recognize one or two relationships at a time. When IntelliSketch recognizes two relationships, it displays both relationship indicators at the cursor.



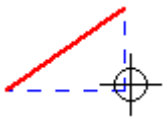
IntelliSketch locate zone

You do not have to move the cursor to an exact position for IntelliSketch to recognize a relationship. IntelliSketch recognizes relationships for any element within the locate zone of the cursor. The circle around the cursor crosshair or at the end of the cursor arrow indicates the locate zone. You can change the size of the locate zone with the IntelliSketch command on the Tools menu.



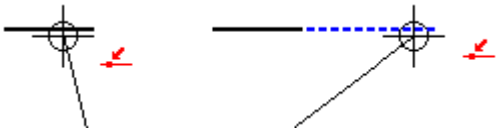
Alignment indicators

IntelliSketch displays a temporary dashed line to indicate when the cursor position is horizontally or vertically aligned with a key point on an element.



Infinite elements

IntelliSketch recognizes the Point On Element relationship for lines and arcs as if these elements were infinite. In the following example, IntelliSketch recognizes a Point On Element relationship when the cursor is positioned directly over an element and also when the cursor is moved off the element.



Center points

IntelliSketch displays an indicator at the center point of an arc or circle to make this keypoint easy to locate.

Snapping to points

When drawing and manipulating 2D elements, you can use shortcut keys with QuickPick to snap to keypoints and intersection points. This also applies the point coordinates as input to the command in progress.

Once you have highlighted the element you want to snap to with the cursor, you can use these shortcut keys to snap to points:

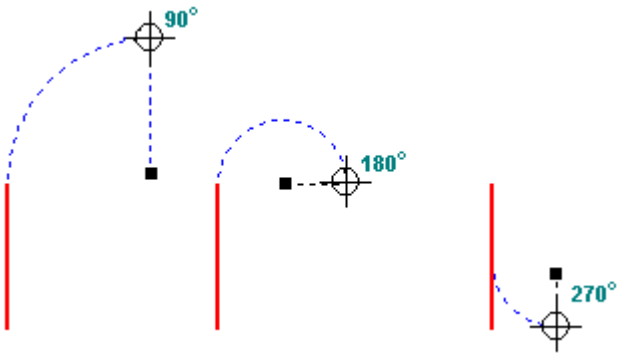
- Midpoint - press M.
- Intersection point - press I.
- Center point - press C.
- Endpoint - press E.

To learn more, see Selecting and snapping to points.

Sweep angle lock at quadrants

When you draw tangent or perpendicular arcs, the arc sweep angle locks at quadrant points of 0, 90, 180, and 270 degrees. This allows you to draw common arcs without typing the sweep value on the command bar.

A temporary dashed line appears from the arc endpoint to the center line of the arc to notify you that the arc is at a quadrant.



Automatic dimensioning

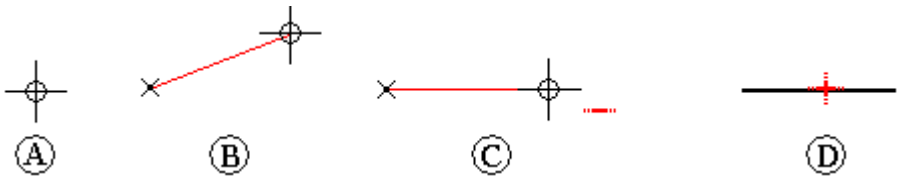
You can use options on the Auto-Dimension page in the IntelliSketch dialog box to automatically create dimensions for new geometry. The page provides several

options to control when the dimensions are drawn as well as whether to use dimension style mapping or not.

You can use the Auto-Dimension command as a quick way to turn automatic dimensioning on and off.

Example: Draw a horizontal line

You can use IntelliSketch to draw a line that is exactly horizontal. You can apply a horizontal relationship as you draw the line, or draw the line without a horizontal relationship.



1. Choose the IntelliSketch command on the Home tab or the Sketching tab.

2. In the IntelliSketch dialog box, on the Relationships tab, set the Horizontal Or Vertical option, and then click OK.

3. Choose the Line command.

4. Click where you want to place the first end point of the line, anywhere in the application window (A).

5. Move the cursor around in the window (B). Notice that the dynamic line display always extends from the end point you just placed to the current cursor position. You may also see IntelliSketch relationship indicators displayed at the cursor.

6. Move the cursor to make the dynamic line approximately horizontal.

7. When the IntelliSketch Horizontal relationship indicator is displayed at the cursor (C), click to place the second end point.

IntelliSketch places a horizontal relationship handle on the new line (D).

Tip

Relationship handles can be displayed or hidden with the Relationship Handles command.

Tip

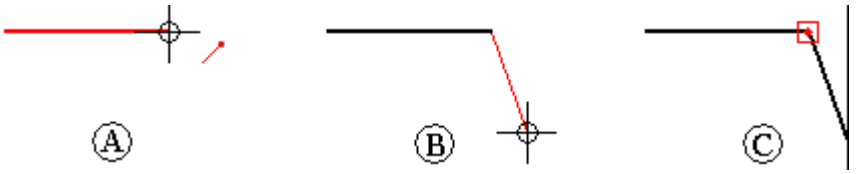
To snap to an intersection point or a keypoint, locate the element(s) with the cursor and then press one of these shortcut keys.

- Midpoint of a line or arc: press M.
- Intersection point of lines, circle, curves, and arcs: press I.
- Center point of a circle or arc: press C.
- Endpoint of a line, arc, or curve: press E.

For intersection points—If there are multiple eligible points located, then QuickPick opens and lists them. In QuickPick, click to select the point you want.

Example: Draw a line connected to another line

You can use IntelliSketch to connect an element you are drawing with an existing element. You can apply a connect relationship as you draw the lines, or draw the line without a connect relationship.



1. Choose the IntelliSketch command .
2. In the IntelliSketch dialog box, on the Relationships tab, set the End Point option, and then click OK.
3. Choose the Line command.
4. Move the cursor to the end of a line in the application window. As you move the cursor over it, the line is highlighted and IntelliSketch displays the End Point relationship indicator at the cursor.
5. While IntelliSketch displays the relationship indicator, click to place the first end point of the new line (A). This end point is connected to the end point of the previous line.

   Tip

   Rather than clicking, you can snap to the line end point nearest the cursor by pressing the E key.

6. Click where you want to place the second end point of the new line.
7. The new line and the previous line have connected end points (B).

IntelliSketch places a connect relationship handle at the point where the two lines connect (C).

Tip

Relationship handles can be displayed or hidden with the Relationship Handles command.

Tip

Relationships are maintained only if the Maintain Relationships command is set.

Tip

To snap to a keypoint or intersection point, locate the element(s) with the cursor and then press one of these shortcut keys.

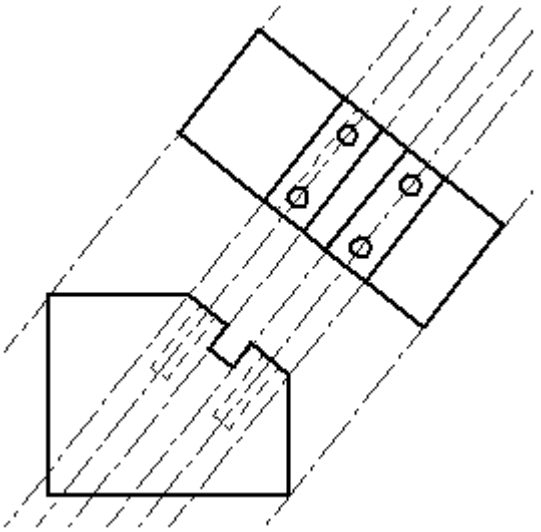
- Midpoint of a line or arc: press M.
- Intersection point of lines, circle, curves, and arcs: press I.
- Center point of a circle or arc: press C.
- Endpoint of a line, arc, or curve: press E.

For intersection points—If there are multiple eligible points located, then QuickPick opens and lists them. In QuickPick, click to select the point you want.

Projection lines

Projection lines are extensions of lines that assist in 2D drawing.

- You can use projection lines to help you create new geometry, and any constraints you create with them remain active even after you turn projection lines off. For example, in a drawing, you can use projection lines on an auxiliary view to enable creation of additional views with proper alignment and size.



- You can create a line with the projection line option set, or you can edit an existing line and set the projection line property later.

- You can place dimensions and annotations to projection lines. Dimensions and annotations connect to the defining segment of the projection line (the original 2D line on which the projection line is based).

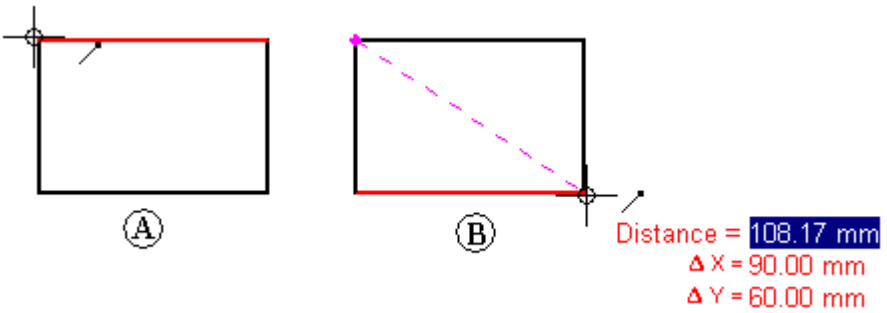
Projection lines are available as a line property on the Line command bar and on the Format page of the Element Properties dialog box.

Distance and area measurement

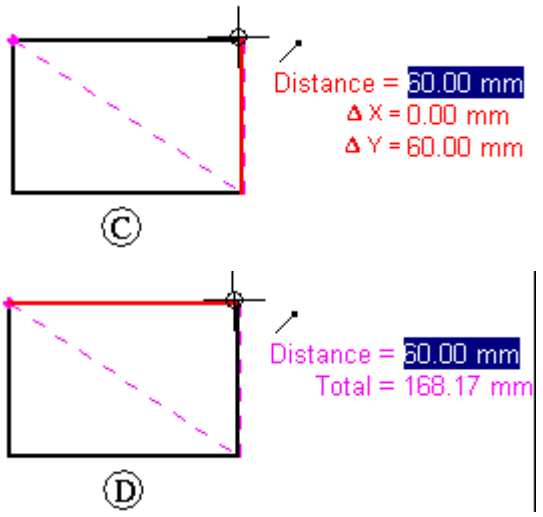
You can measure distances or areas, even when you are in the middle of another task. To set the units for measuring distances or areas, use the Properties command on the Application menu.

Measuring distances in 2D

In the Draft environment, you can measure distance using the Measure Distance command. These commands measure linear distances or measure the cumulative linear distance along a series of points. The first point you click establishes the origin of the measurement (A). After that, you can select any keypoint to see the distance between it and the origin, as well as the delta distance along each principal axis (B).

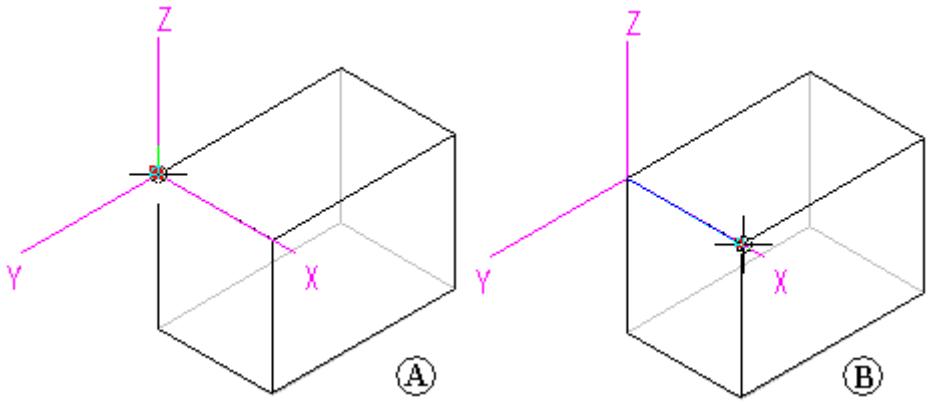


Clicking the keypoint adds it to a series of measurement points. Then you can select another point to see the new linear distance and deltas (C), or click it to see the distance between the last two points and the total cumulative distance from the origin to the last point (D). Click the right button to reset the command.

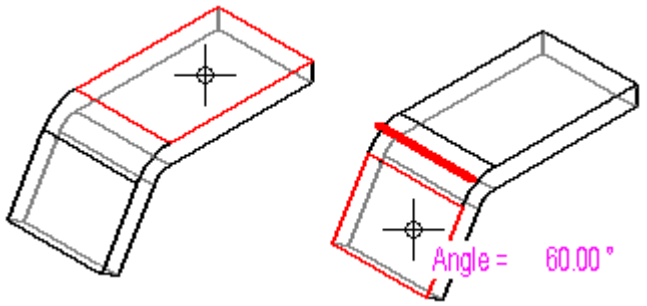


Measuring distances and angles in 3D

In the Part, Sheet Metal, and Assembly environments, the Measure Distance command measures linear distances. The first point you click establishes the origin of the measurement (A). After that, you can select any keypoint (B) to display the Measure Distance dialog box which displays the keypoint select type, the true distance, the apparent screen view distance, and the delta distance along each principal axis.



In the Part, Sheet Metal, and Assembly environments, the Measure Angle command measures angles. You can measure between any two faces or between any three points.



Measuring minimum distances

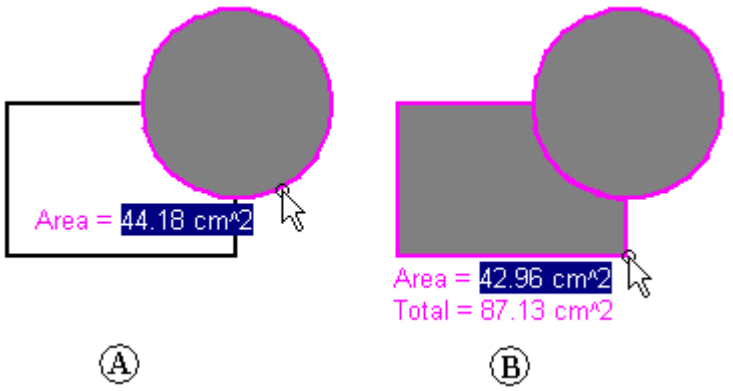
In the Part, Sheet Metal, and Assembly environments, you can use the Measure Minimum Distance command to measure the minimum distance between any two elements or keypoints. You can use the Select Type option on the Minimum Distance command bar to filter which type of elements you want to select. When working in the context of an assembly, you can also use the Activate Part option to activate the parts you want to measure.

Measuring normal distances

In the Part, Sheet Metal, and Assembly environments, the Measure Normal Distance command measures normal distances between a planar element or line and a keypoint. You can use the Element Types option on the Measure Normal Distance command bar to filter which type of elements you want to select. You can use the Key Point option to specify the type of keypoint you want to identify when measuring the distance. You can use the Coordinate System option to select a user-defined coordinate system to define one of the points. If you use a coordinate system, the returned values will be relative to the specified coordinate system. When working in the context of an assembly, you can also use the Activate Part option to activate the parts you want to measure.

Measuring areas

The Measure Area command, available only in the Draft environment and in 2D profiles and sketches, measures the area inside a closed boundary (A). You can also measure the cumulative area inside more than one closed boundary by holding the Shift key as you click elements (B). Each time you click, the area of the last element is displayed, along with the total area. Click another element without holding the Shift key to reset the command.



Measuring lengths

The Measure Total Length command measures the cumulative length of a select set of 2D geometry.

Measuring automatically

In addition to the individual distance, area, length, and angle commands, you can use the Smart Measure command in 2D and 3D environments to measure automatically based on what you select:

- Select a single 2D element or 3D object to measure its length or its angle or radius.
- Select two or more 2D elements or 3D objects to measure the distance or angle between them.

The Smart Measure command works like the Smart Dimension command, except that it does not place a dimension as a result.

Copying measurement values

You can copy the highlighted measurement value to the Clipboard by pressing Ctrl+C. You can then use the copied value as input for another command. For example, you can paste the copied value into the Line command bar to define the length of a line. Use the Tab key if you want to highlight a different value.

Measuring drawing view geometry

When you measure model geometry within a drawing view, or when you measure distances between model edges in two drawing views, you can select the Use Drawing View Scale check box on the command bar to specify that the measured value is displayed using the equivalent of the model distance.

Alternatively, you can apply a user-defined scale value by selecting it from the Scale list on the command bar.

Note

- You can show the scale of a drawing view using the General page (Drawing View Properties dialog box).

- User-defined scale values are defined in the Drawing View Scales section of the Custom.xml file, in the Solid Edge Program folder. See the Help topic, Add custom drawing view scales to Solid Edge.

Example: Measuring the length of a line

Even when you are in the middle of a task, you can measure distances with the Measure Distance command. For example, consider the following workflow.

1. Use the Line command to draw a line (A).

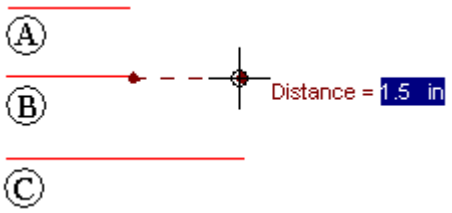
2. On the Inspect tab, click the Measure Distance command and measure a distance (B).

   Note

   You do not need to exit the Line command before measuring a distance.

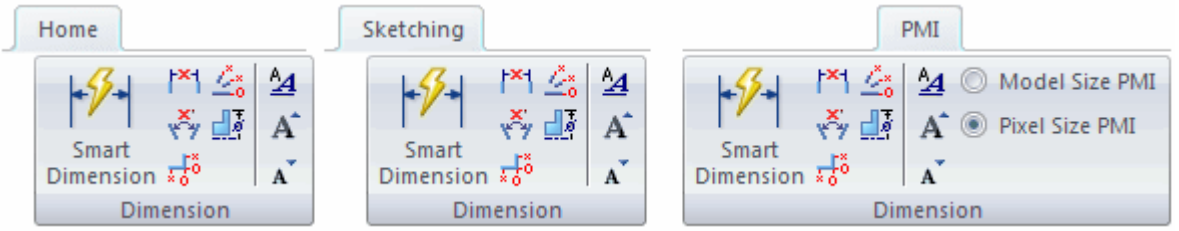
3. To exit the Measure Distance command, right-click. The Line command is still active-you can pick up where you left off.

4. Continue using the Line command (C).



Dimensioning sketches

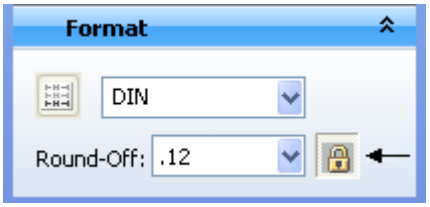
Dimensioning commands are located in three locations. They are located in the Dimension group on the Home, Sketching, and PMI tabs.

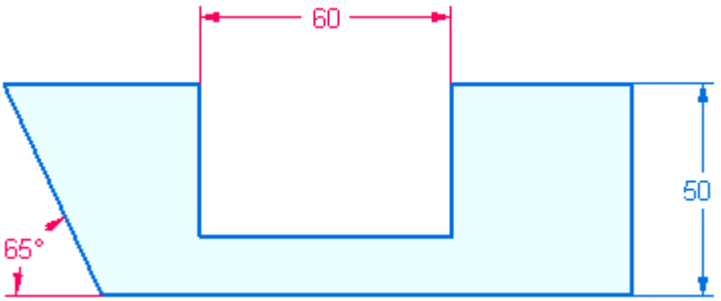


Locked dimensions

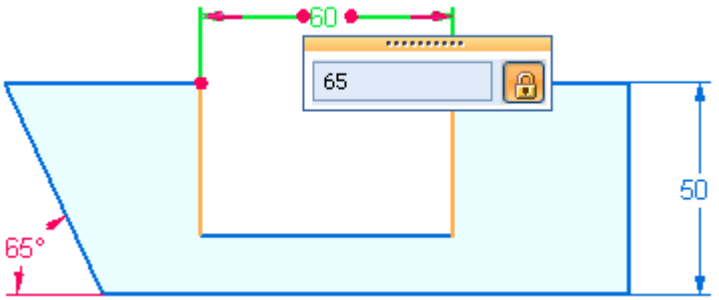
Sketch dimensions are placed as driving. A driving dimension is colored red. A driving dimension is also referred to as a locked dimension. A locked dimension cannot change unless it is edited directly. As sketch geometry is modified, a locked dimension does not change.

Change a dimension to driven (or unlocked) by selecting the dimension and then clicking the lock on the Dimension Value Edit QuickBar. A driven dimension is colored blue. A driven dimension value cannot be selected for editing. It must be changed to a locked dimension to change its value directly.



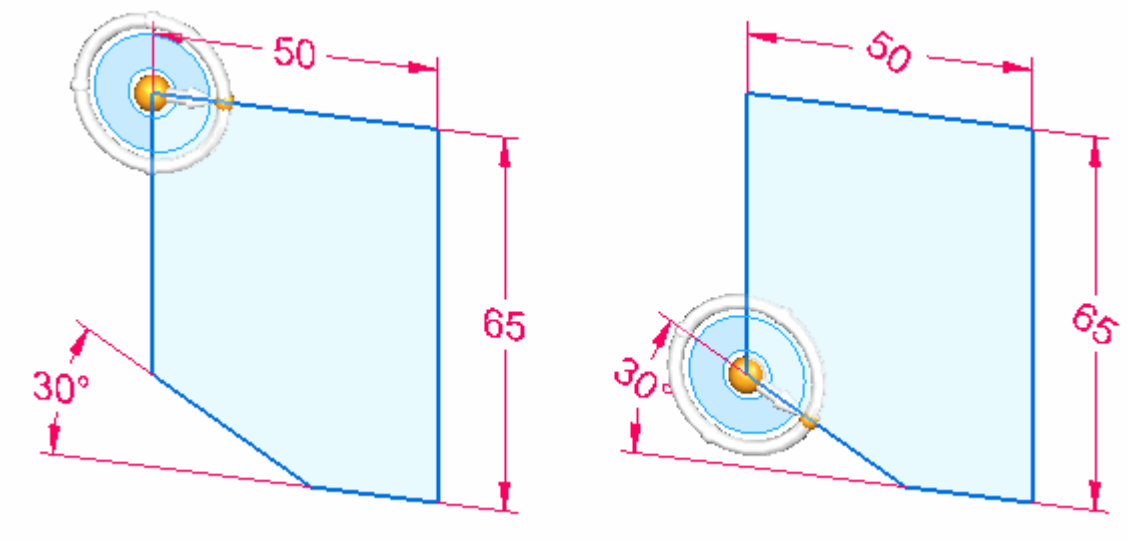


To change a dimension value of a locked dimension, click the dimension value and enter a new value.

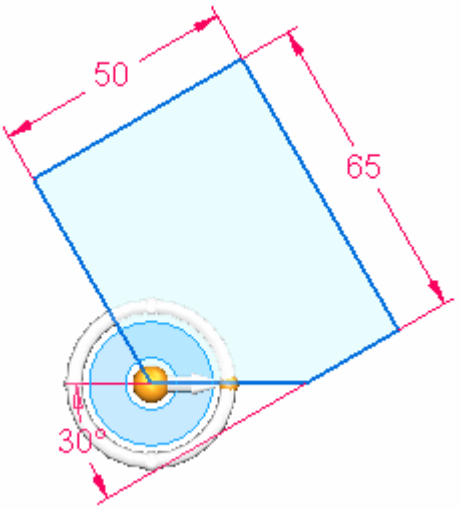


Dimension orientation

The orientation of a sketch dimension is controlled by the sketch plane origin. The sketch plane origin defines the horizontal/vertical direction.

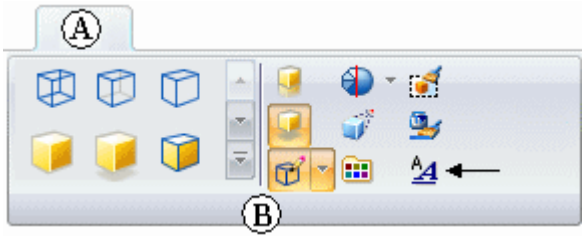


The Sketch View command orients the view to where the dimension text is horizontal.

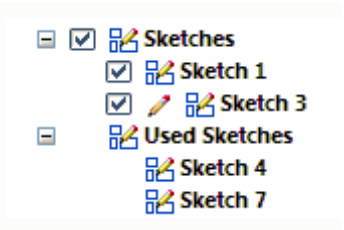


Dimension style

Modify the dimension style settings in the Style dialog box. The Style command is located on the View tab (A) in the Style group (B).

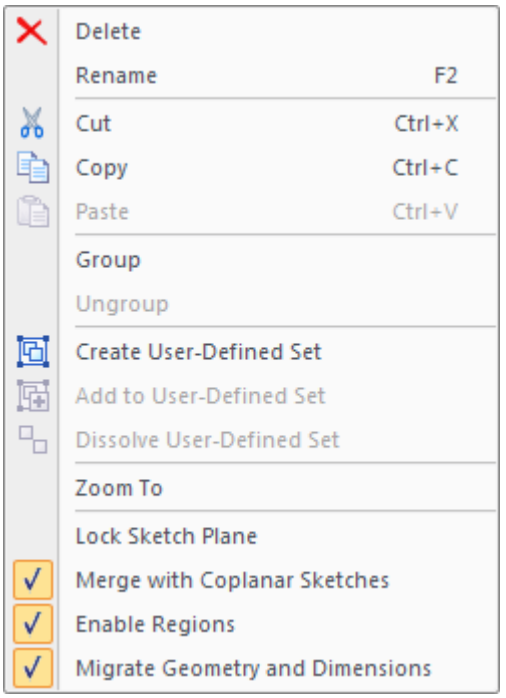


Sketches in PathFinder



- In PathFinder, there are two sketch collectors (Sketches and Used Sketches).
- Sketches are stored in a Sketches collector until they are consumed by body creation or deleted.
- The pencil symbol in front of a sketch denotes that its sketch plane is locked.
- Unconsumed sketches can be displayed or hidden with a check mark. All sketches or specific sketches can be hidden or shown.
- Sketch elements used to create a feature are removed from the Sketches collector and placed in the Used Sketches collector.
- Used sketches can be highlighted, deleted, renamed or restored.

Sketches context menu in PathFinder



The sketches context menu includes options on how a sketch responds to creation of regions and feature creation. These options are on a per sketch basis.

Merge with Coplanar Sketches

- If a sketch exists on the locked sketch plane, then any new sketch geometry merges with the existing sketch.

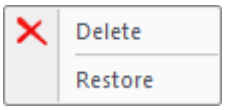
Enable Regions

- Locate regions as sketch geometry forms closed area(s).

Migrate Geometry and Dimensions

- Consume the sketch geometry used to create features and move into the geometry into the Used Sketches collector.
- Create the PMI dimensions on the body as the sketch geometry is used to create features.

Used Sketches context menu in PathFinder

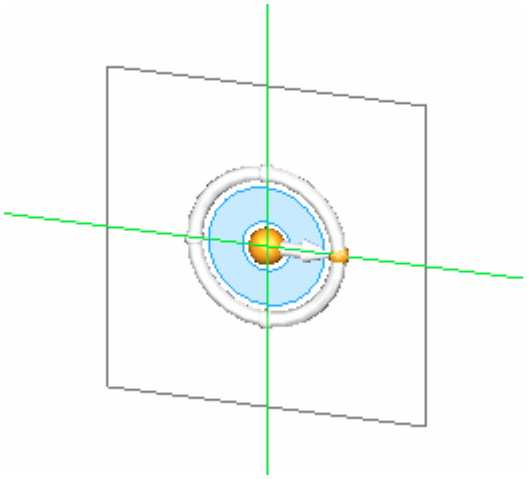


Right-click on a used sketch to bring up the context menu. The Restore command restores a consumed sketch to the Sketches collector. If a sketch plane exists that is the same as the used sketch plane, the restored sketch will merge with the existing sketch.

Sketch plane origin

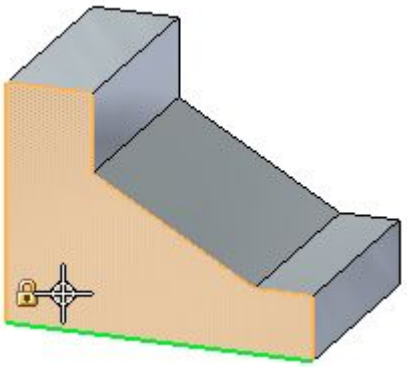
reference planes

The origin of a reference plane is system defined. The horizontal direction and the origin are positioned at the center of the reference plane. To change the reference origin, use the Reposition Origin command to define the new origin and horizontal direction.



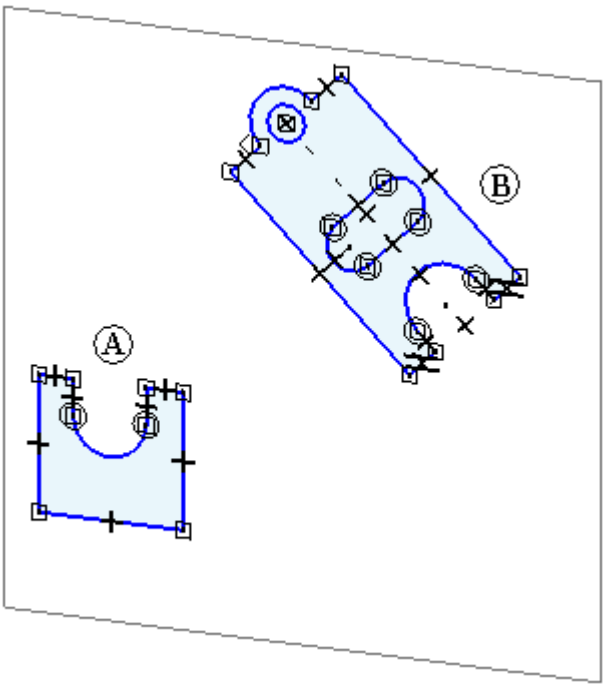
planar faces

The origin of a sketch on a planar face can be defined before locking the plane. The system determines a horizontal direction and origin. To change the system defined origin, cycle through the linear edges on the planar face. The edge displays green. Press (N) for next edge, (B) to go back to previous edge, (F) to flip the Y direction and (T) to toggle which end of the edge is used. Once the desired origin is displayed, click the lock to lock the sketch plane.



Reposition origin command

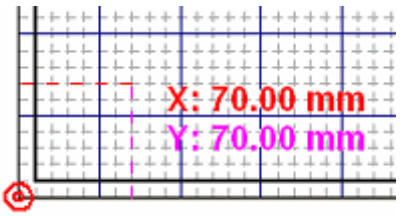
A sketch plane can only contain a single collection of sketch elements. However, there can be more than one sketch area per sketch plane. In the example, there are two sketch areas (A and B). Sketch area (A) orizontal/vertical directions are not the same as sketch area (B. The sketch plane origin can be repositioned to redefine the horizontal/vertical directions for a particular sketch area.



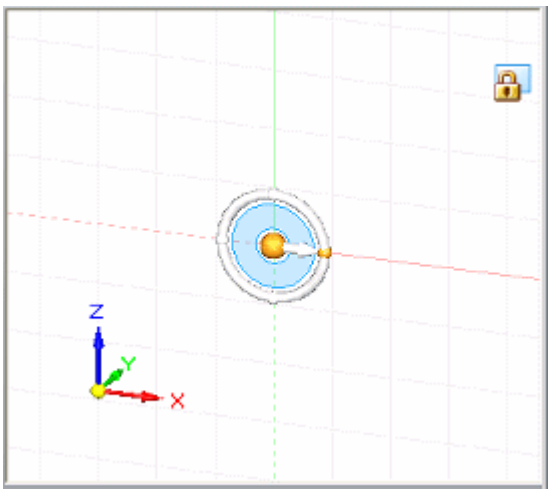
Zero Origin command

The Zero Origin command automatically resets the origin as follows:

- In Draft, the drawing grid origin is reset to the drawing sheet (0,0) coordinate.



- In the synchronous environment, both the drawing grid and the sketch plane origin are reset to the (0,0,0) coordinate and orientation at the center of the currently locked sketch plane.



Note

This command is available only when you have locked a sketch plane.

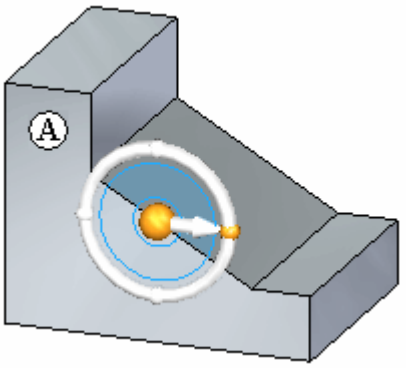
Reposition origin workflow

Workflow based on using a planar face for a sketch plane.

1. Lock the sketch plane.

2. In the Draw group, choose the **Reposition Origin** command.

   The reposition origin handle displays at the sketch plane origin on the locked plane (A.



3. Click and drag the handle origin to a new vertex or edge.

   This defines the new origin.

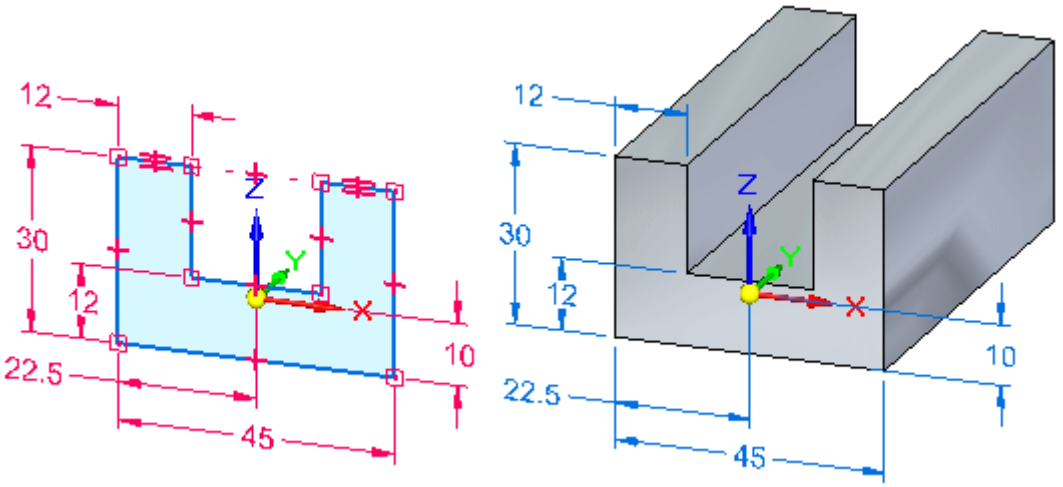
4. Click and drag the torus to position the horizontal direction. Select a keypoint or type in angle to lock the direction.

Sketch view

On the View tab® Views group, the Sketch View command orients the active view normal to the horizontal/vertical direction of the locked sketch plane.

Sketch consumption and dimension migration

In synchronous part and sheet metal environments, you typically draw 2D sketch geometry for the purpose of constructing features on a solid model. In the synchronous environment, when you use sketch elements to construct a feature, the sketch elements are consumed and the 2D dimensions you placed on the sketch migrate to the appropriate edges on the solid body, whenever possible.



You can use the Migrate Geometry and Dimensions command command on the shortcut menu when a sketch is selected in PathFinder to control whether sketch elements are consumed and dimensions are migrated.

Automatic sketch consumption and dimension migration

By default, the Migrate Geometry and Dimensions command is set for a new document. The sketch elements are automatically consumed and 2D dimensions are automatically migrated when you use them to construct features. After you construct a feature, the 2D sketch geometry is moved to the Used Sketches collector in PathFinder, and the 2D dimensions are migrated as 3D PMI model dimensions.

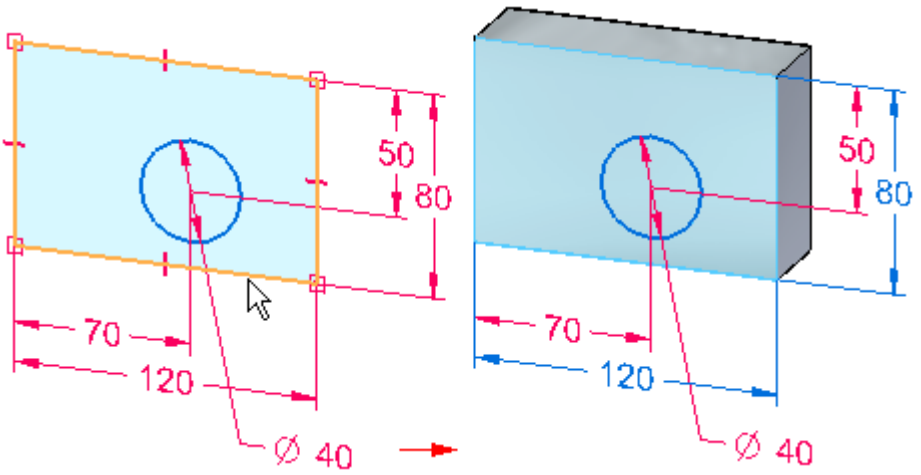
You can disable the automatic consumption of sketch elements and migration of 2D dimensions on a sketch-by-sketch basis by clearing the Migrate Geometry and Dimensions command on the shortcut menu when a sketch is selected in PathFinder.

All model dimensions, whether migrated from sketches or added to edges on the 3D model directly, are PMI dimensions. PMI dimensions are displayed on PathFinder in the PMI collection, Dimensions sub-collection.

To learn more about creating and using PMI, see the Help topic, PMI dimensions and annotations.

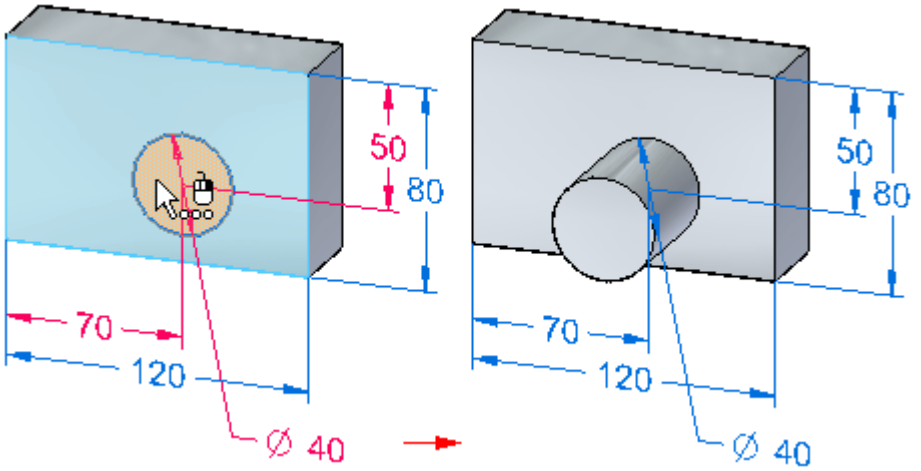
Partially migrated sketches and dimensions

In many cases, only some of the sketch elements on a single sketch are used to construct a feature. If this is the case, only the selected sketch elements and the associated 2D dimensions are consumed and migrated.



During this process, dimensions and constraints may be connected to both body edges and to remaining sketch geometry. If the sketch contains stacked dimensions, then some dimensions in the stack may migrate individually. Other dimensions, such as coordinate dimensions, do not migrate until all of the 2D geometry they are attached to has been used to construct a feature.

As you continue to construct features using the remaining sketch elements, sketch elements are consumed and dimensions are migrated.



Dimension locking status after migration

2D dimensions are locked by default. When they migrate to the 3D model, they remain locked.

Note

Dimension colors are determined by settings on the Colors page of the Options dialog box.

Dimension variable and formula migration

Sketch dimensions that use variables retain the variables after migration to PMI dimensions. If a sketch dimension is driven by a formula, the formula is maintained when the dimension is migrated to a PMI dimension. The PMI dimension is still driven by the formula, but must be driving for the formula to solve properly.

Working with combinable sketches

You can use the Merge Coplanar Sketches command on the shortcut menu to control whether a sketch is combined with another coplanar sketch in a synchronous part or assembly.

Although this command is available in synchronous part, sheet metal, and assembly documents, the merge property is most useful when working with assembly sketches, and it also plays a role when converting traditional parts and assemblies into synchronous documents.

When you set the Merge Coplanar Sketches option for a sketch, the following rules and conditions apply:

- New sketch elements that are drawn coplanar to the sketch in free space are added to the existing sketch. To create the new coplanar sketch elements as a separate sketch, you can select the existing sketch and clear the Merge with Coplanar Sketches command before you draw the new, coplanar sketch elements.
- The sketch will combine with another sketch if the two sketches become coplanar during a move operation.
- In part and sheet metal documents, sketch regions are automatically enabled for a combinable sketch. When sketch regions are enabled, you can use the Select tool to construct features using the sketch. You can clear the Enable Sketch Regions command on the shortcut menu to disable sketch regions.
- In part and sheet metal documents, sketch consumption is automatically enabled for the combinable sketch. When sketch consumption is enabled, sketch elements are consumed when you construct features from the sketch. You can clear the Migrate Geometry and Dimensions command on the shortcut menu to disable sketch consumption.

Unique symbols are used in PathFinder to indicate whether a sketch is a combinable sketch, noncombinable sketch, or the active sketch.

Legend

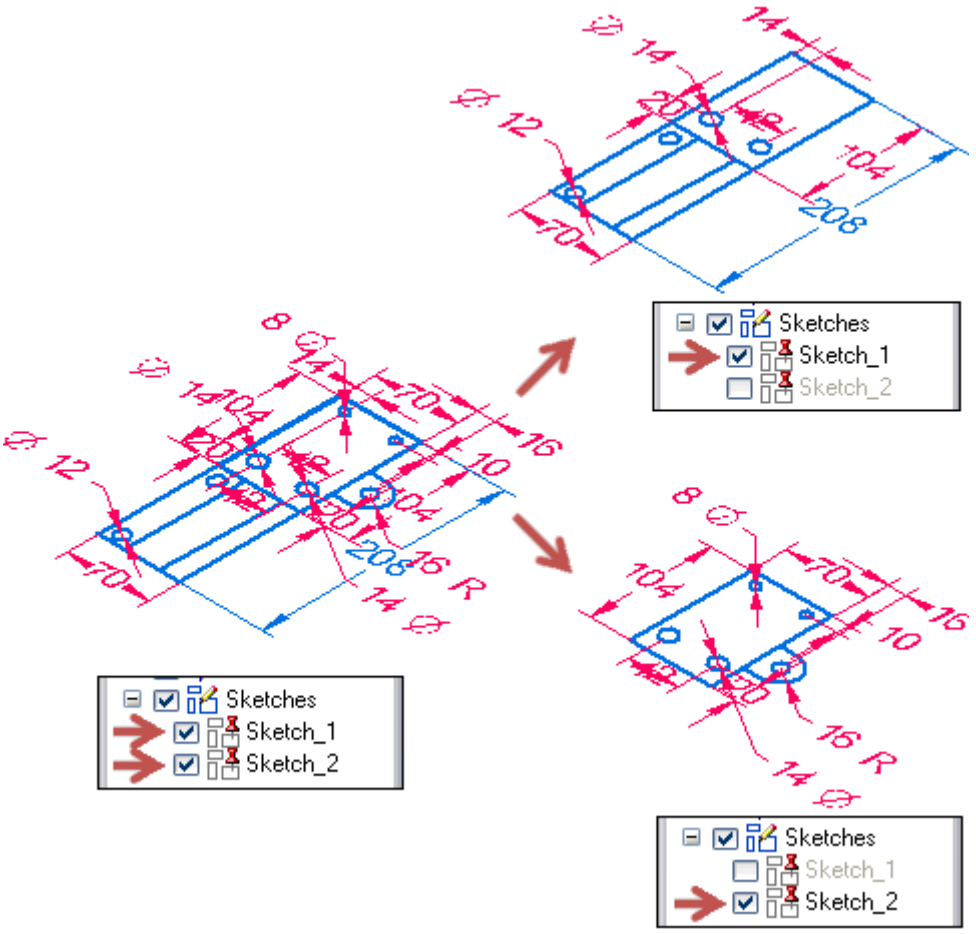
Combinable sketch

Noncombinable sketch

Active sketch (combinable active sketch shown)

Assembly sketches

A noncombinable sketch is most useful when creating layout sketches in an assembly. Noncombinable sketches make it possible to draw multiple sketches which are coplanar. This can be useful if you want to create separate, coplanar sketches that represent individual parts or subassemblies for a new assembly. Noncombinable sketches makes it possible to show, hide, or move a set of sketch elements easily.



For more information, see HELP topic Drawing sketches in assemblies.

Moving sketches

Sketches can be moved/copied in 2D or 3D. Sketches can be deleted or cut for pasting in 2D or 3D. This section covers three methods available for manipulating sketch geometry.

- Manipulating sketch elements in 2D
- Moving and copying sketch elements in 3D
- Copy, cut and paste sketch elements

Manipulating sketch elements in 2D

Planar sketch elements can be moved or copied with the 2D move command found on the Sketching tab, in the Draw group.

2D sketch element manipulation is confined to the selected sketch element's plane. If sketch elements in the select set are on different sketch planes, an error box appears when choosing any sketch manipulation command.

Error message: Selected sketch geometry must lie in the same plane.

Workflow for moving or copying a sketch

1. Select sketch elements to copy or move in the part window individually or with a select box. If the sketch elements form a region, disable regions for the sketch before using the select box.

2. Choose the Move command .

3. Select point (on any of the selected sketch elements) to move or copy from. You can use keypoints to define the move or copy from point.

4. Notice that there are options available in the Move (A) command bar.

If you want to move a copy, select the **copy** option (B) . You can also enter the X (D), Y (E) distances to move or copy to. You can also enter a step distance Step field (C).

5. Click a 'to' point to move or copy to. If you are moving, then the command ends once a to point is clicked. The select set is still active. If you are copying, each click places a copy. A right-click during a copy will end the command with the select set still active.

6. Press Esc to clear select set.

2D sketch manipulation commands

Two lists are available that contain 2D commands for manipulating sketch geometry.

Manipulation commands are move, rotate, mirror, scale and stretch.

These commands each have a set of options in command bar. Each command also can manipulate a copy of the selected sketch elements.

Moving and copying sketch elements in 3D

Sketch elements can be moved/copied in 3D. The select set of sketch elements are not required to lie all on the same plane. The 3D move requires the use of the graphic handle. See the Graphic handle section in the “Moving and rotating faces” course to learn how to use the graphic handle.

The selected sketch elements can be:

- moved or copied in the sketch plane
- moved or copied to a parallel plane
- rotated or copy rotated to another plane

Workflow for a synchronous 3D move or rotate of sketch elements

1. Select sketch geometry.

   Selection methods

   - Select entire sketch(s) in PathFinder
   - Select sketch elements individually in the part window.
   - Select sketch elements in the part window with a select box

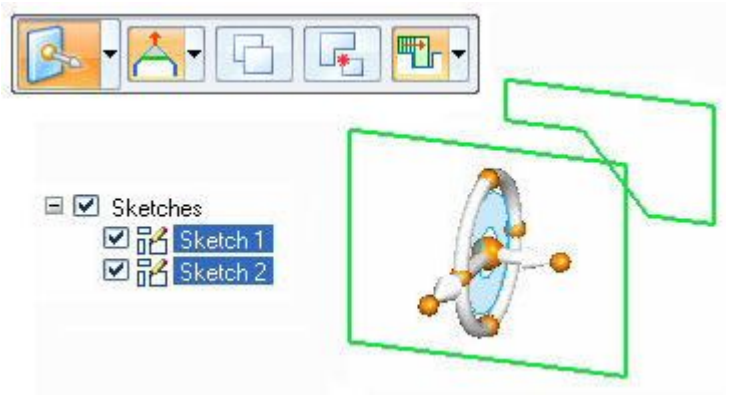
     Note

     If the sketch elements form a region, disable regions before using the select box.

     Note

     Select set can contain sketch elements on different planes.

2. If entire synchronous sketches are selected in PathFinder, the Move command starts.



   Use the secondary axis or handle plane to move sketch elements in a plane.

   To rotate, drag the handle origin to an edge that will be the axis of rotation. Then click the torus to define the angle of rotation.

   Click the Copy option on the command bar to move a copy of the selected sketch elements.

3. If sketch elements are selected in the part window, on the Modify command bar, choose the Move command from the drop list.

   Use the graphic handle as described in the previous step to move or rotate the selected sketch elements.

4. After sketches are manipulated and regions were disabled, you will need to remember to enable regions in order to create features from the sketches.

Copy, cut, and paste sketch elements

Sketch elements can be manipulated using the Microsoft clipboard behavior.

- Ctrl+C copies the selected sketch elements to the clipboard.
- Ctrl+X deletes the selected sketch elements from the model and adds them to the clipboard.
- Ctrl+V pastes the selected sketch elements in the model.

Paste behavior

A paste operation places the sketch elements (clipboard) onto the locked sketch plane at the location clicked. At this point, the paste elements are attached to the cursor and each click places another copy paste elements on the locked plane.

If there is no locked sketch plane, the sketch elements are placed onto the plane highlighted under the cursor at the location clicked. At this point, the paste elements are attached to the cursor and each click places another copy of the paste elements on the locked plane.

To select another plane to paste to, end the paste operation with the Esc key. Ctrl+V starts the paste operation again and then select the new plane.

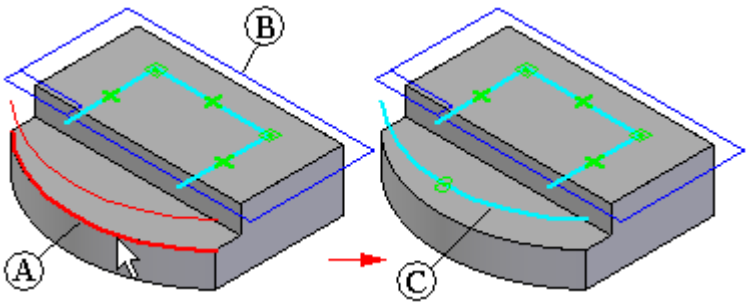
Projecting elements onto a sketch plane

Face edges, sketch elements and base eference plane edges can be projected onto a locked sketch plane.

- The Project to Sketch command is located on the Sketching tab® Draw group.
- The Project to Sketch command requires a locked sketch plane.
- Use the Project to Sketch command bar to refine the selection of elements to project and to set the project options.

Project to sketch command

Copies part edges or sketch elements onto the current sketch plane. For example, select a part edge (A) to project onto the current sketch plane (B). The projected edge (C) can then be used in the current sketch.



You can project elements associatively or non-associatively.

Projected elements and associativity

Special relationship symbols are used to indicate that an element is associatively linked to another element. The symbols indicate whether the element is associatively linked to an element in the same document (local) or another document (peer-to-peer).

Link (local)	
Link (peer-to-peer)	

A projected element from the current part is always projected associatively. A projected element from another document can be associative or non-associative.

You can break the associative link on projected elements by deleting the link relationship symbols.

You can trim and modify associative or non-associatively projected elements, and incorporate associatively projected elements into a sketch that contains newly created non-associative elements.

> **Note**
>
> When you use sketch elements to construct a feature in a part document, the sketch elements are transferred to the Used Sketches collection in PathFinder. For projected elements, the associative link between the parent element and the projected element is discarded.

You can also add relationships or dimensions to associatively projected elements, but if the relationship or dimension conflicts with the associative relationship to the parent element, a warning message is displayed.

You can project edges between part documents, but it is not associative. It is a copy only.

Projecting elements from other documents

When working in an assembly, you can use the Project to Sketch command to project part elements, such as part edges, into an assembly sketch. You cannot project elements between two parts in an assembly.

Sketching instructional activities

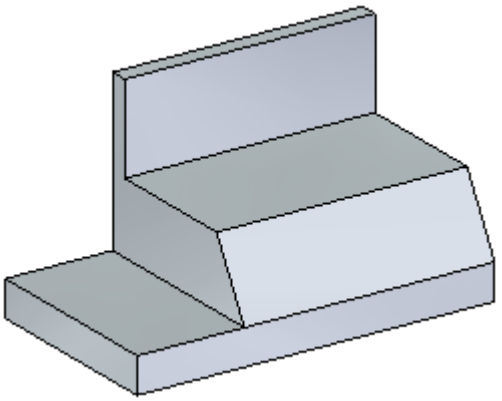
Part1

Activity covers plane locking, drawing sketch elements, placing dimensions, applying geometric relationships, showing relationship handles, reposition sketch plane origin and controlling sketch display.

Activity: Sketching (Part 1)

Open a part file

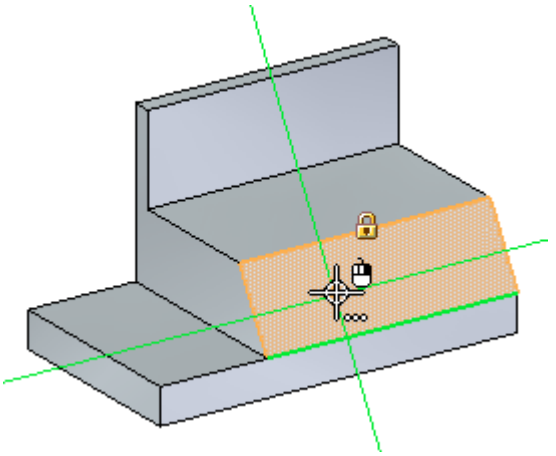
- Start Solid Edge.
- Click the Application button® Open.
- In the Open File dialog box, set the Look in: field to the folder where the training files reside.
- Click *sketch_A* and then click Open.



Start the sketching process

- Choose the Line command.

- Define the sketch plane. Pause the cursor over the angled sketch plane. Press the N key until the green edge highlights as shown. This defines the horizontal direction for the sketch plane.



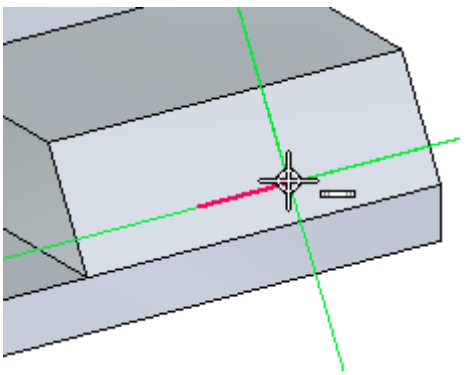
Note

While the plane highlights, you can begin sketching and you lock to the plane. If you move the cursor away from the plane before placing any geometry, you have to highlight the plane again. You could also click the lock on the highlighted plane to lock the plane. If you manually lock the plane, it remains locked until you unlock it.

Draw sketch geometry

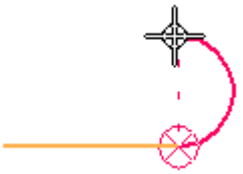
- Draw a slot shaped sketch consisting of two lines and two arcs. While the angled plane highlights, click to place the first point of the line.

- For the second point of the line, make sure the horizontal indicator displays and then click.

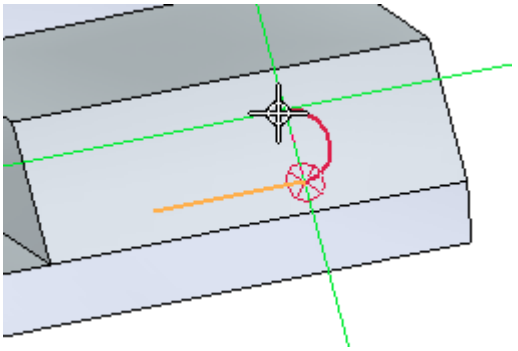


- Place a tangent arc. Press the A key to enter the place arc command.

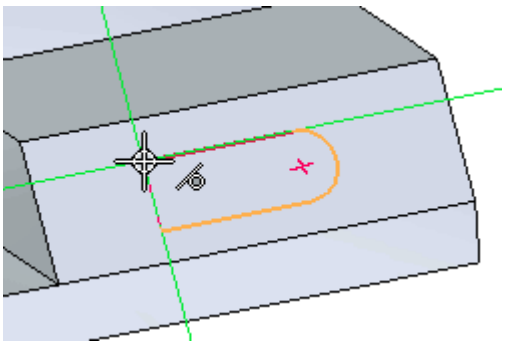
  Position the intent zone as shown.



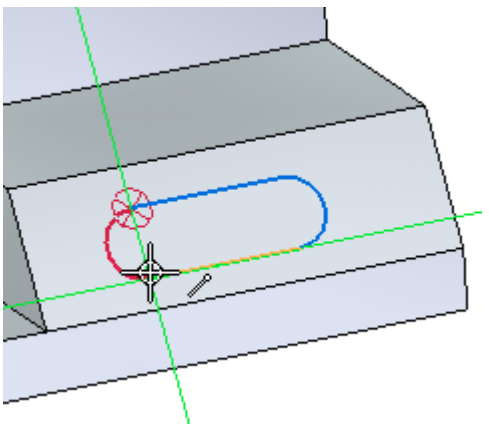
  Place the arc end point vertical from arc start point.



- Place the second line as shown. Make sure you get the tangent alignment symbol and the vertical alignment from the first point of the start line.

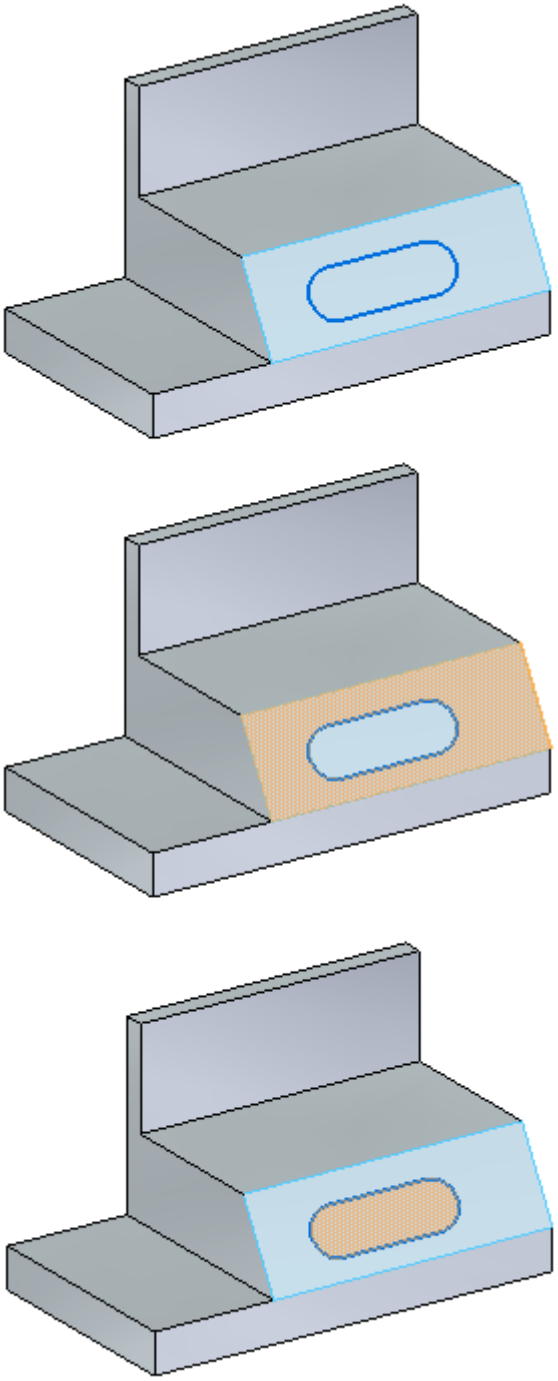


- Place the second tangent arc. Press A and then end the arc at the endpoint of the first line.



Regions formed

Notice the face changes to a blue color. This denotes the presence of regions. The sketch drawn on the face creates two regions.

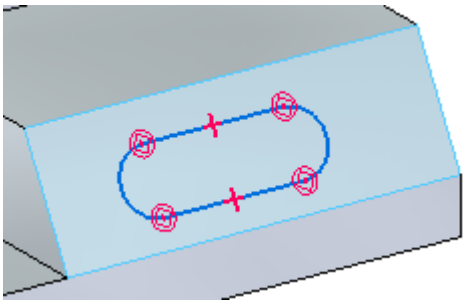


Place geometric relationships

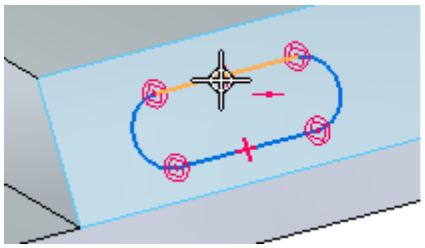
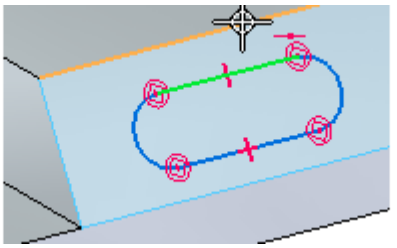
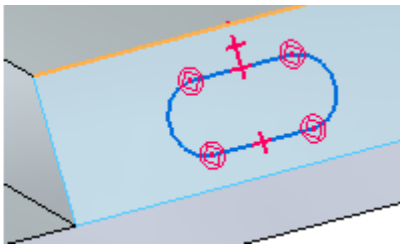
Center the slot sketch on the face using geometric relationships.

- Turn on the display of relationship handles. On the Sketching tab® Relate group, choose the Relationship Handles command.

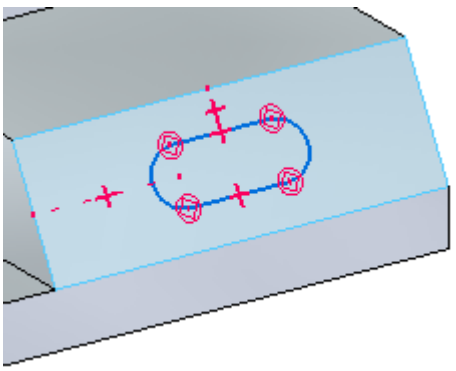
The handles show that the lines are horizontal and the arcs are tangent connected to the endpoints of the lines.



- Align the midpoint of one line to the midpoint of a face edge. In the Relate group, choose the Horizontal/Vertical command. Click the midpoint of the line and then click the midpoint of the face edge.

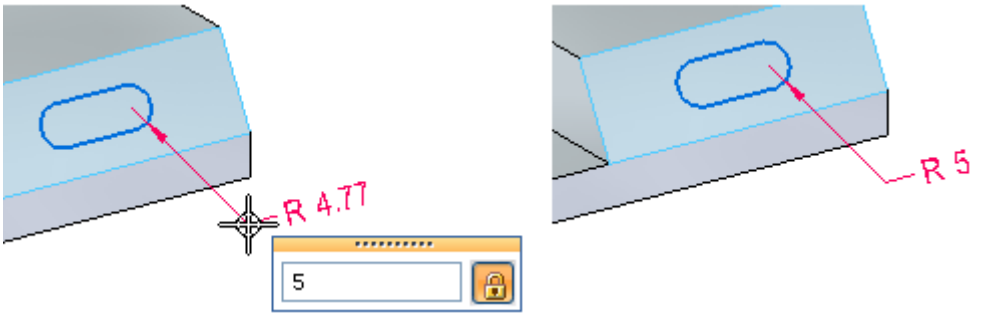
- Align the center of the arc to the midpoint of a face edge. Using the horizontal/vertical command, click the arc center and then the midpoint of the face edge. The slot is centered on the face.



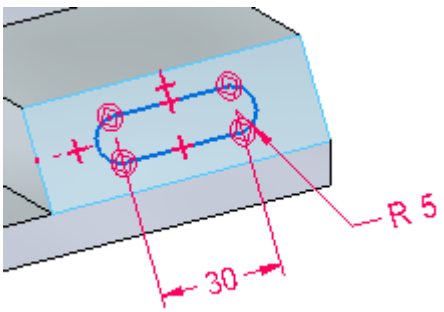
Add dimensions

Dimension the slot radius and distance between centers.

- On the Sketching tab® Dimension group, choose the Smart Dimension command. Click on one of the arcs and type 5 in the Dimension Value Edit dialog box.



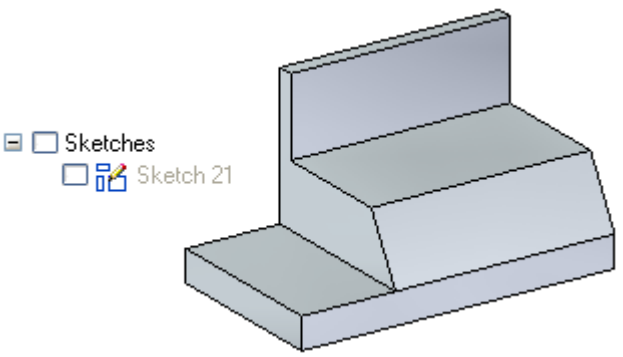
- On the Sketching tab® Dimension group, choose the Distance Between command. Select the center of each arc and type 30 in the edit box.



Turn off sketch

- If the sketch plane was manually locked, in PathFinder, right-click the on the sketch. On the short-cut menu, choose Lock Sketch Plane.

- Click the check box to turn off the sketch display.



- Activity is complete. Exit the file and do not save.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create a sketch on a part face. You learned how to apply relationships and dimensions to a sketch.

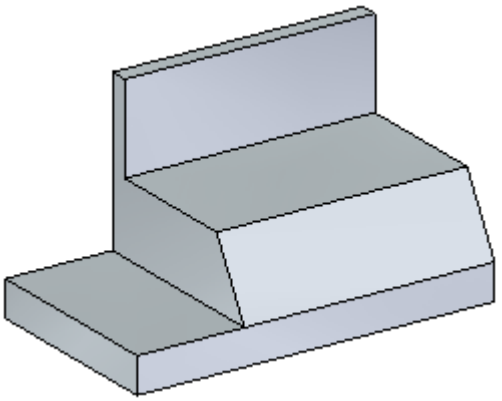
Part 2

Activity covers drawing a sketch on a reference plane, including edges from part faces, sketch associativity to part model edges and the sketch view command.

Activity: Sketching (Part 2)

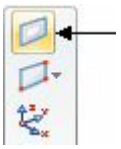
Open a part file

- Start Solid Edge.
- Click the Application button® Open.
- In the Open File dialog box, set the Look in: field to the folder where the training files reside.
- Click *sketch_B* and then click Open.

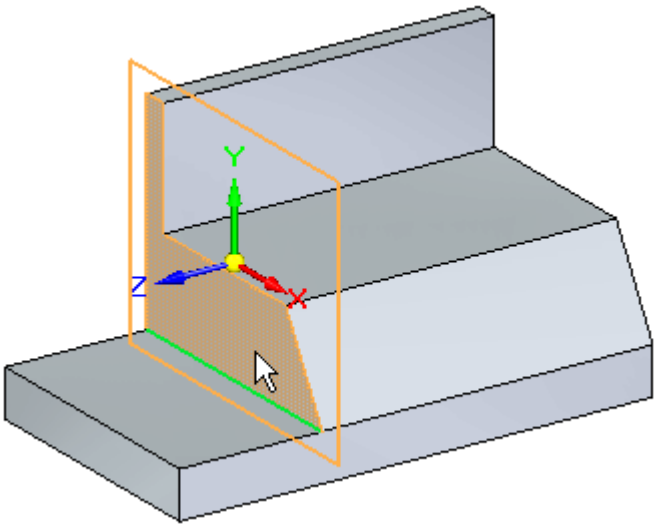


Create a sketch plane

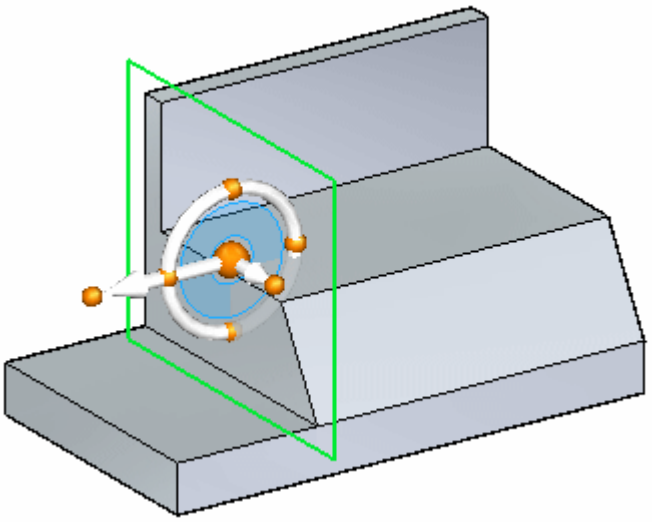
- On the Home tab® Planes group, choose the Coincident Plane command.



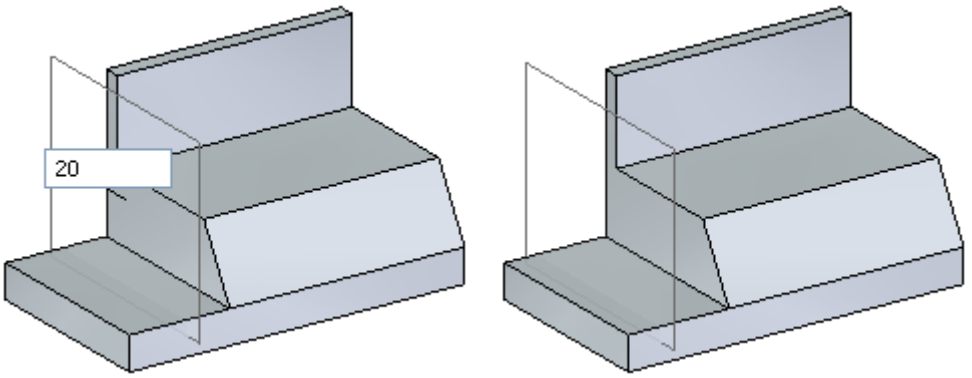
- Select the part face shown.



- Click the primary axis on the graphic move handle.

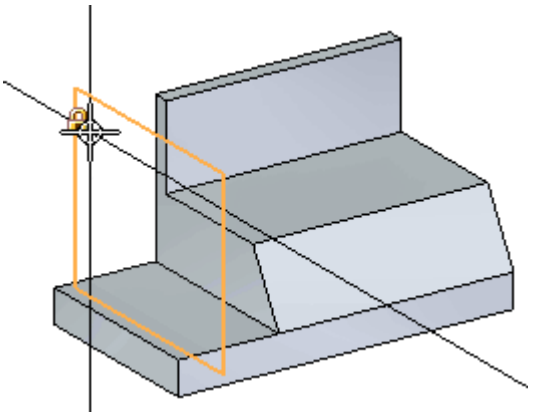


- In the distance edit box, type 20.

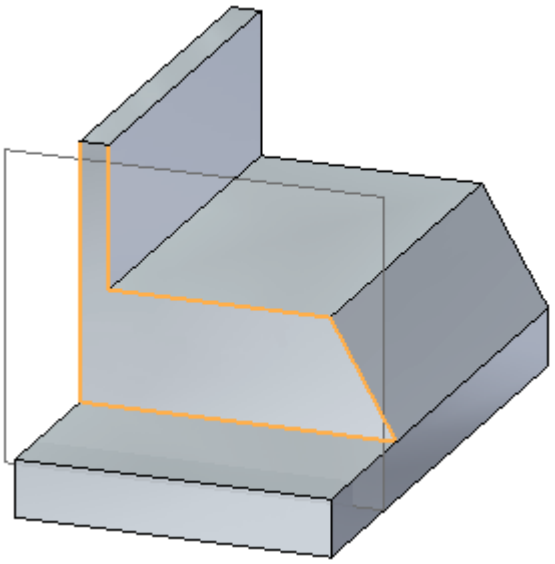


Start the sketching process

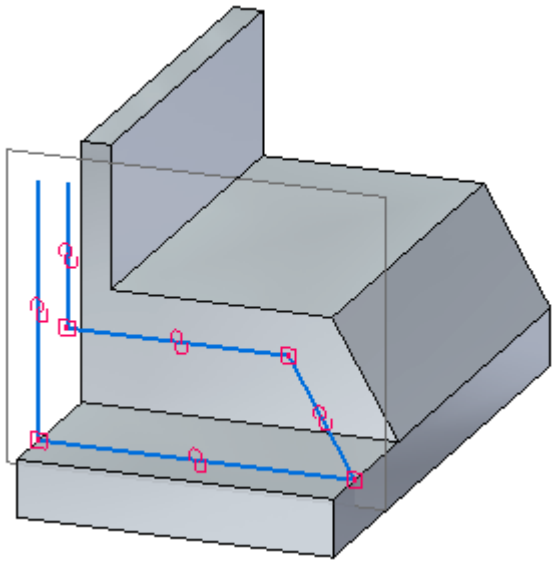
- You will use edges of the part in the sketch. On the Sketching tab® Draw group, choose the Project to Sketch command. The command requires a locked plane.
- Lock the sketch plane. Pause over the sketch plane created earlier and then click the lock.



- Select the edges shown.

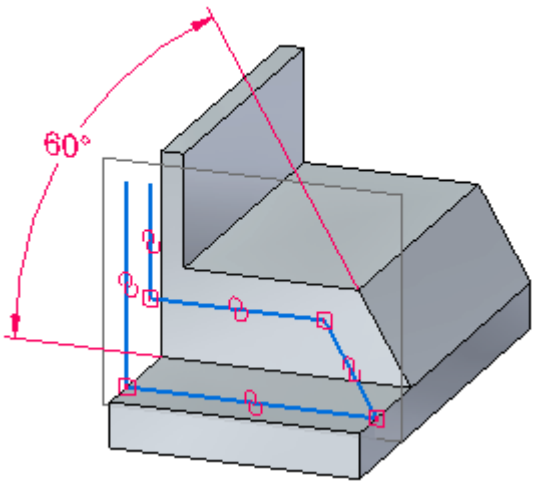


- Notice how these edges project to the locked sketch plane.



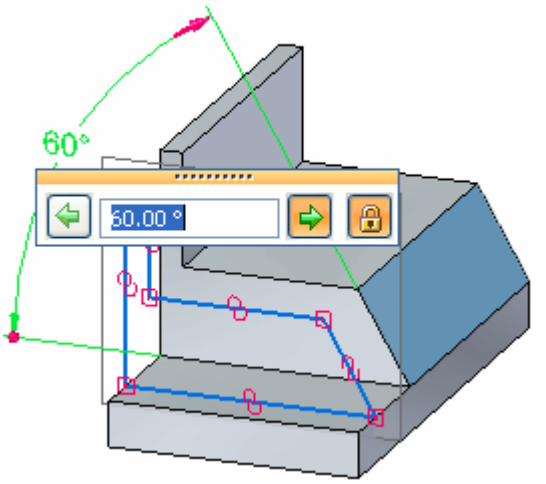
Observe sketch associativity

- Display PMI dimensions. In PathFinder, click the Dimensions check box.



- Click the 60° value on the dimension.

- Change the dimension (any value between 45° and 75°) and notice how the edge that was projected to the sketch plane follows the angle of the face. Make sure the direction arrow on the dimension matches the illustration. You can change the direction by clicking the arrow buttons in the dynamic edit box.

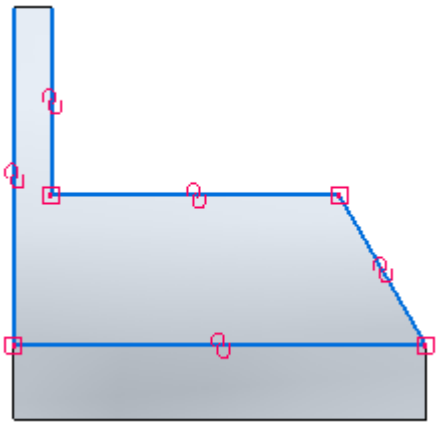


- Set dimension to 60° and turn off the PMI dimension display.

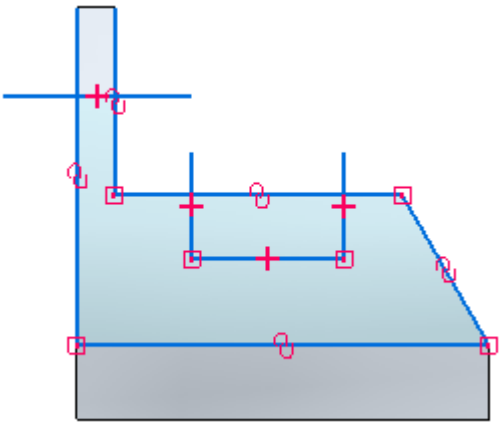
Draw sketch geometry

Add and modify sketch geometry.

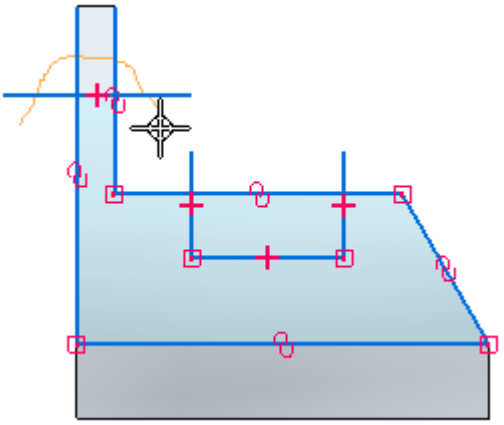
- Orient the sketch plane normal to the view. On the View tab® Views group, choose the Sketch View command.

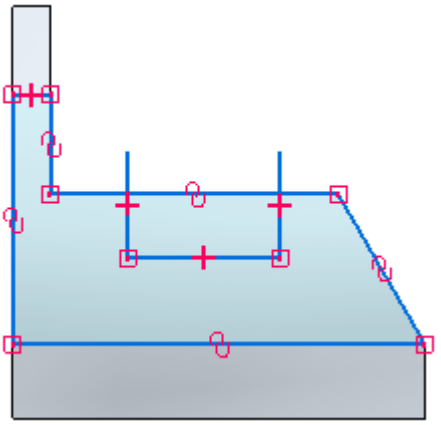


- Draw the sketch geometry as shown. Segment lengths and location are not important.

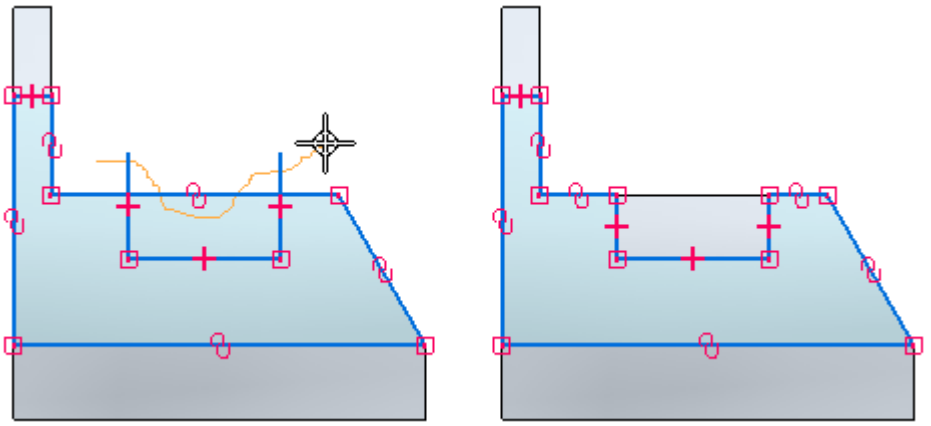


- Trim line segments. On the Sketching tab® Draw group, choose the Trim command .
- Click and drag the cursor over the line segments shown.



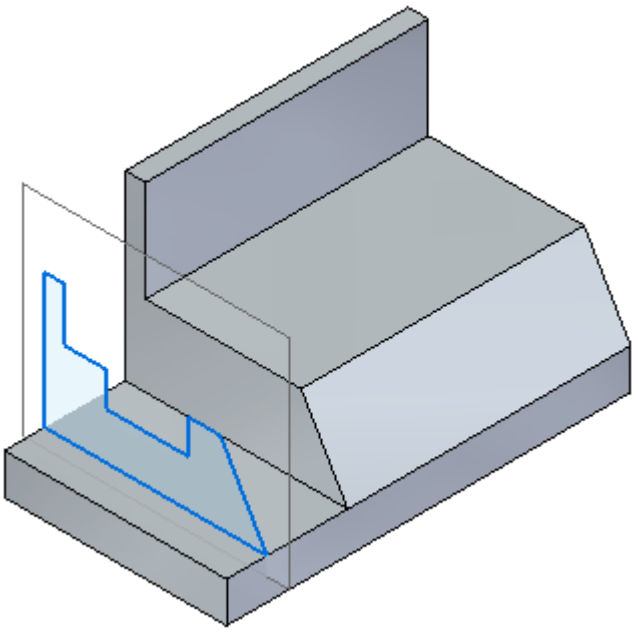


- Click and drag the cursor over the three line segments shown.



Edit display

- Turn off the Relationship Handles display.
- Switch to an isometric view. Type Ctrl+I.



- Close the file and do not save.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to draw a sketch on a reference plane and how to include edges from part faces. You observed sketch associativity to part model edges and used the Sketch View command.

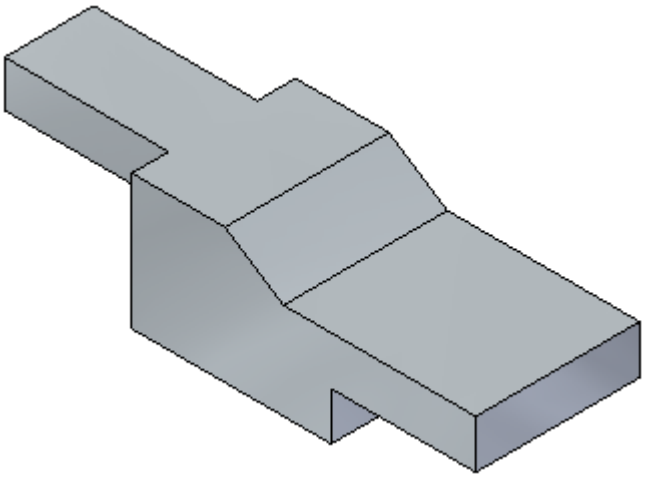
Part 3

Activity covers drawing a sketch on a face, copying the sketch to another face, rotating and moving the copied sketch.

Activity: Sketching (Part 3)

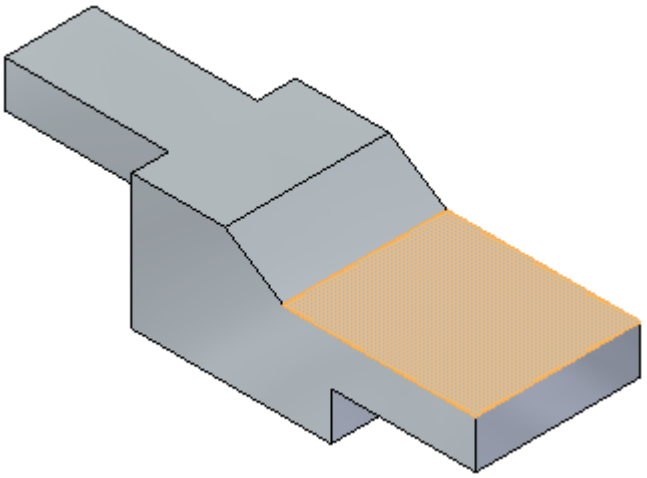
Open a part file

- Start Solid Edge.
- Click the Application button® Open.
- In the Open File dialog box, set the Look in: field to the folder where the training files reside.
- Click *sketch_C* and then click Open.

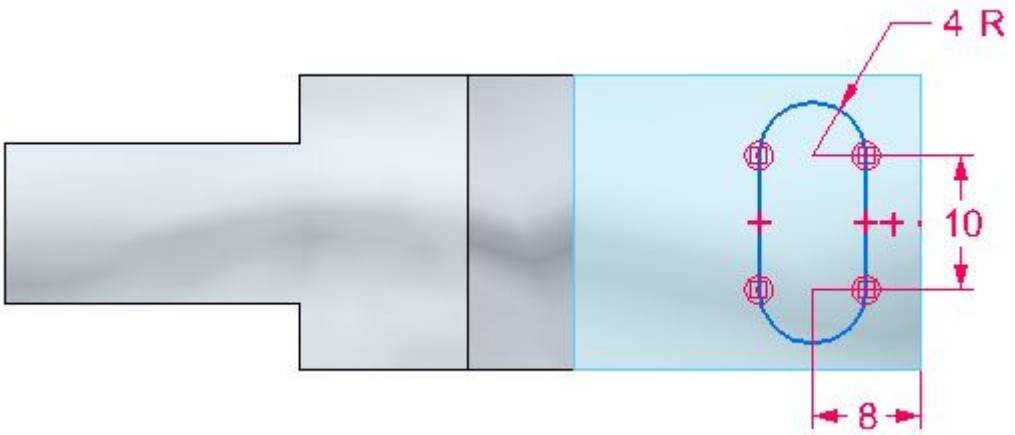


Draw a sketch on a face

- Lock to the face shown.



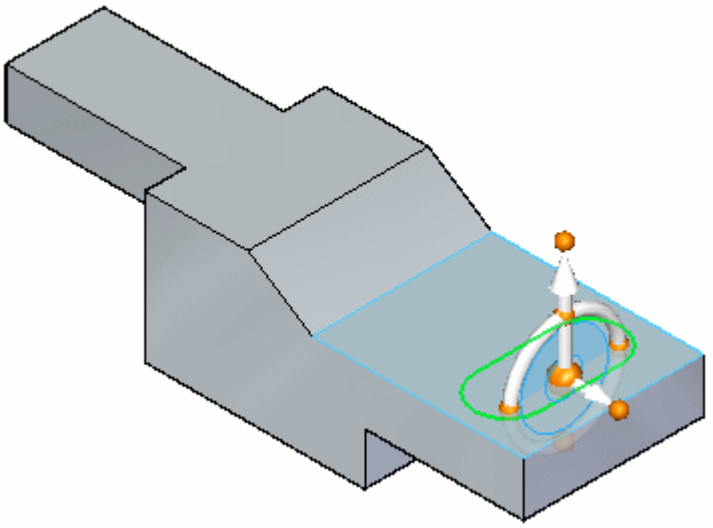
- Draw the following sketch.



- Delete the sketch dimensions. The dimensions were placed to only define the size.
- Change the view to an isometric view. Press Ctrl+I.

Copy the sketch

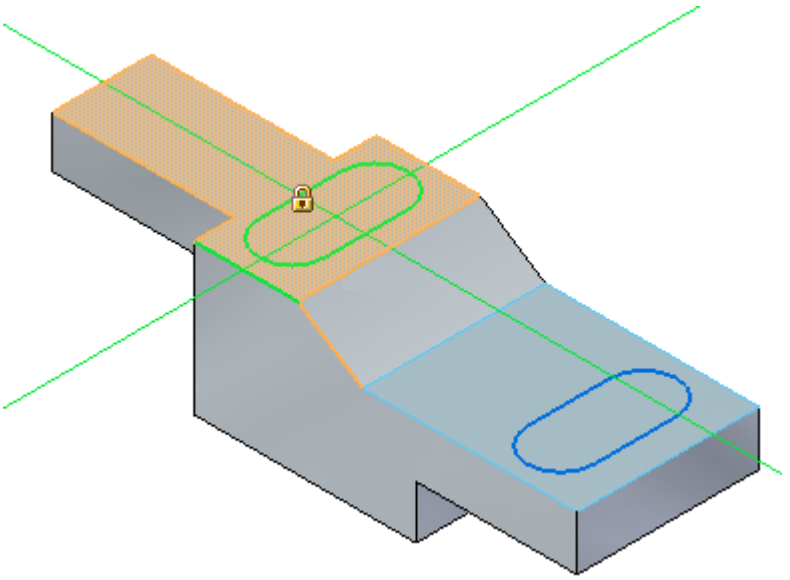
- Unlock the sketch plane.
- Select the sketch in PathFinder.



- Press Ctrl+C to copy the selected sketch. The sketch is added to the clipboard.

Paste the sketch

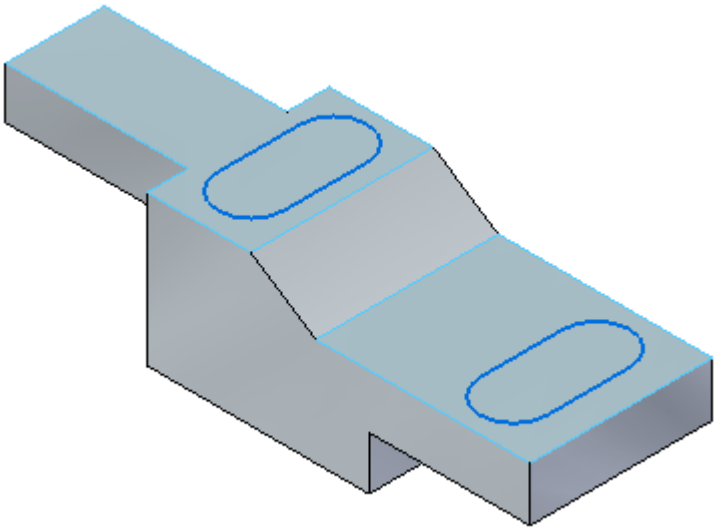
- Press Ctrl+V. The copied sketch attaches to the cursor. Pause the cursor over the face and then click to place the sketch as shown. You will position the sketch next.



Note

You can press the N or B keys to control the copied sketch orientation. However, in this activity, use the rotate command to position the sketch.

- Press the Esc key to end the paste operation.

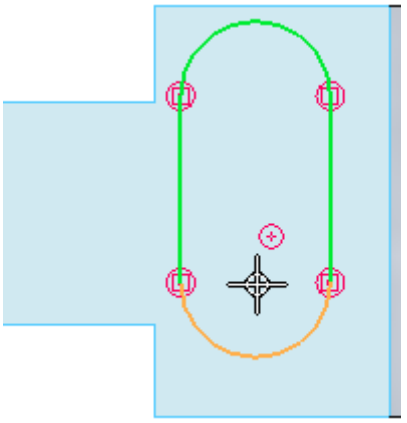


Rotate the copied sketch

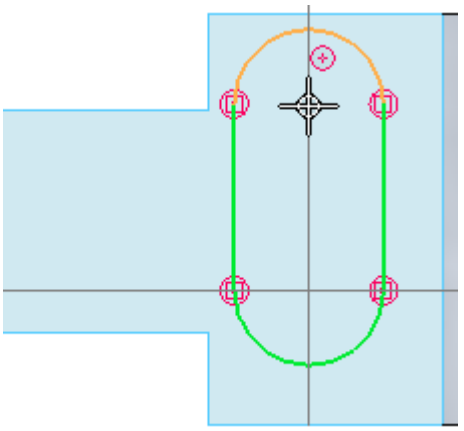
- In PathFinder, right-click the copied sketch and choose Lock Sketch Plane.

- Choose the Sketch View command.
- On the Move command drop list, choose the Rotate command.

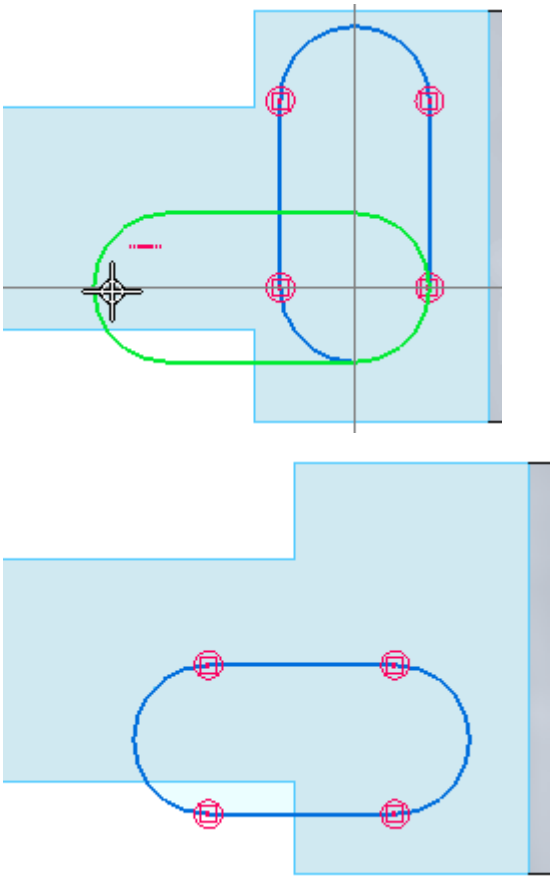
- On command bar, make sure the copy option is not on.
- While holding down the Ctrl key, click the two lines and two arcs. The elements turn green as they are selected.
- Select the arc center as center of rotation.



- Select the other arc center as the start point for rotation.

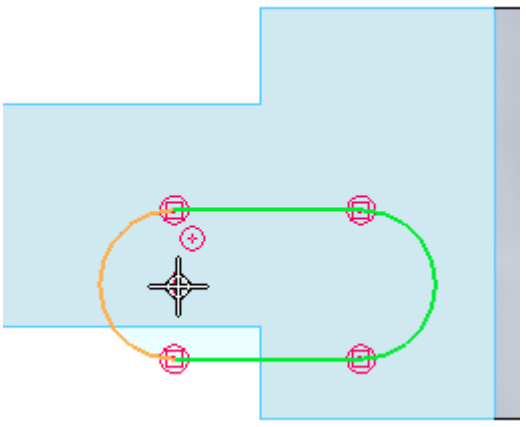


- Click when the horizontal indicator appears. This rotates the sketch 90°.

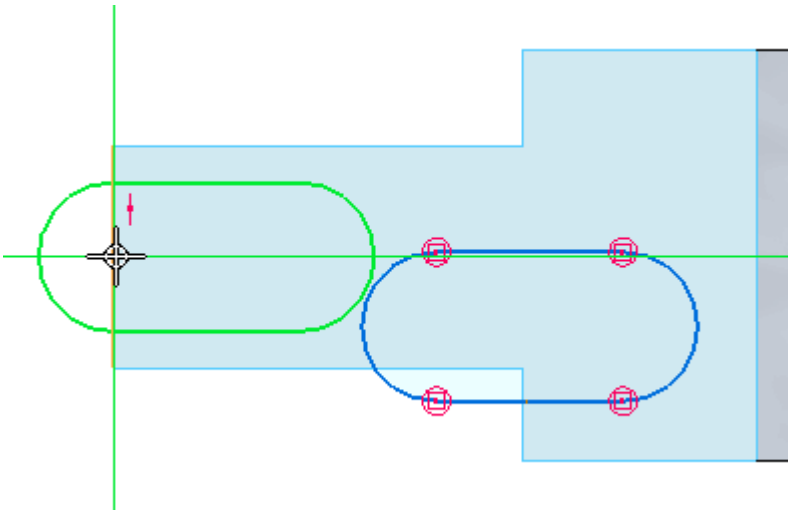


Move the copied sketch

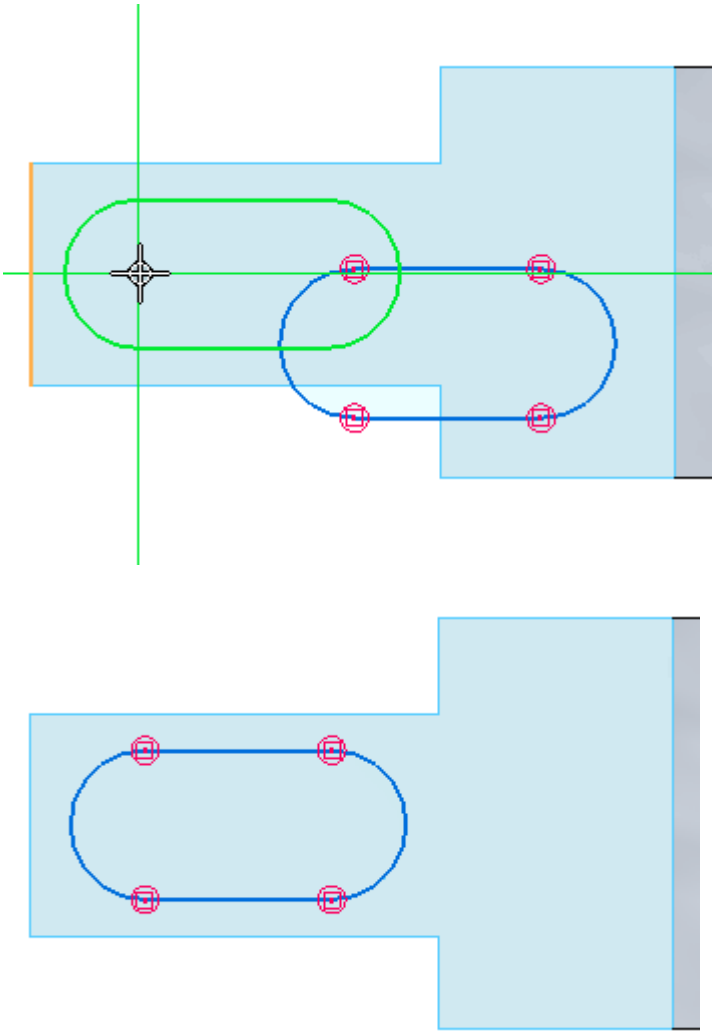
- Choose the Move command.
- Select the four elements again. For the move from point, select the center of an arc.



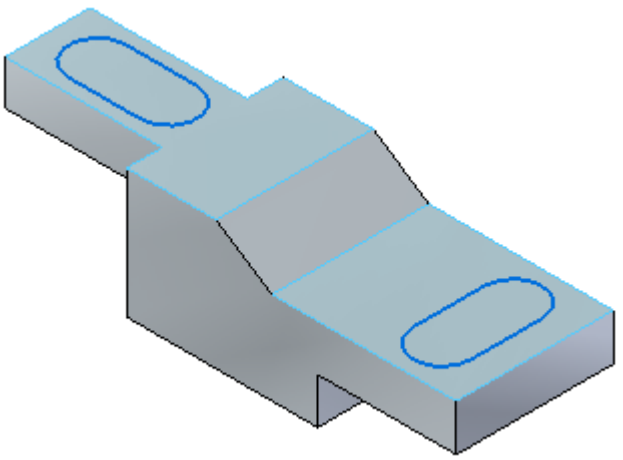
- For the to point, move the cursor over the midpoint of the top edge. The sketch will be centered to this point. Do not click.



- While maintaining midpoint alignment display, move the cursor down to the location shown and click.



- Press Ctrl+I.



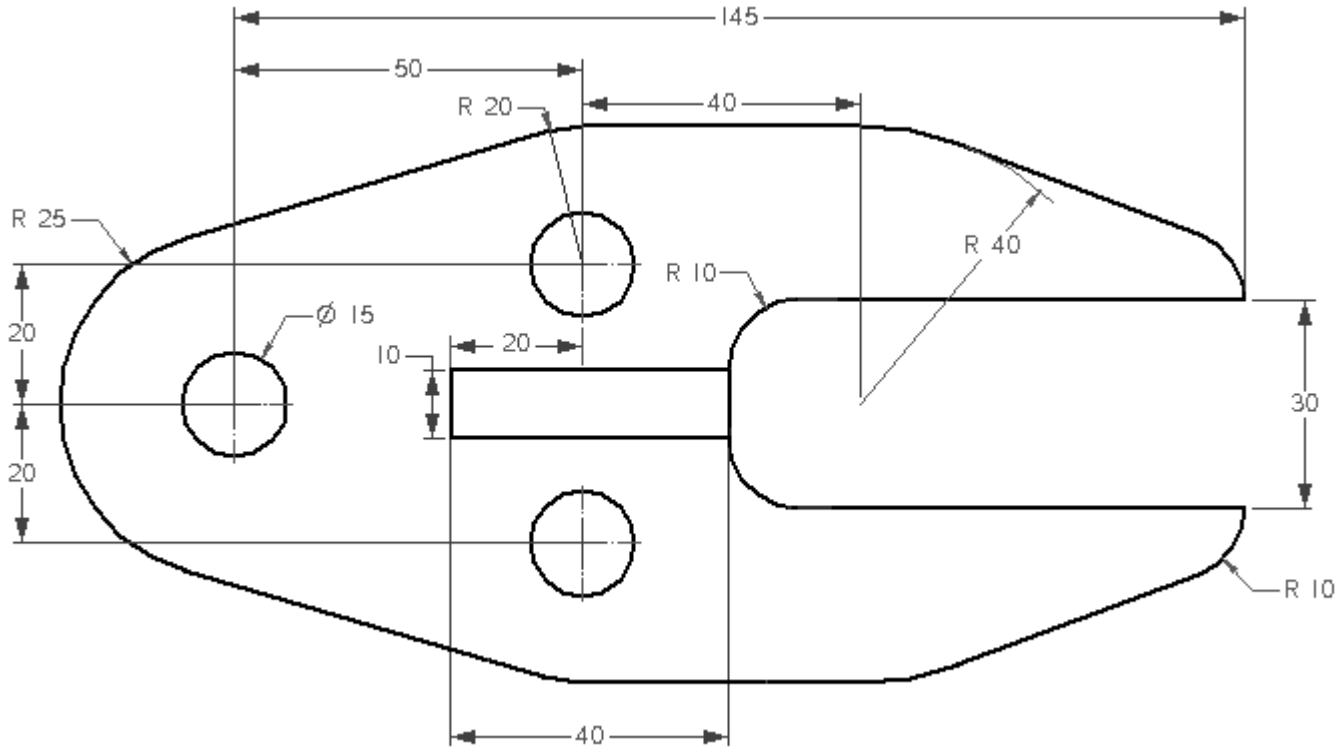
- Activity complete. Close the file and do not save.

Summary

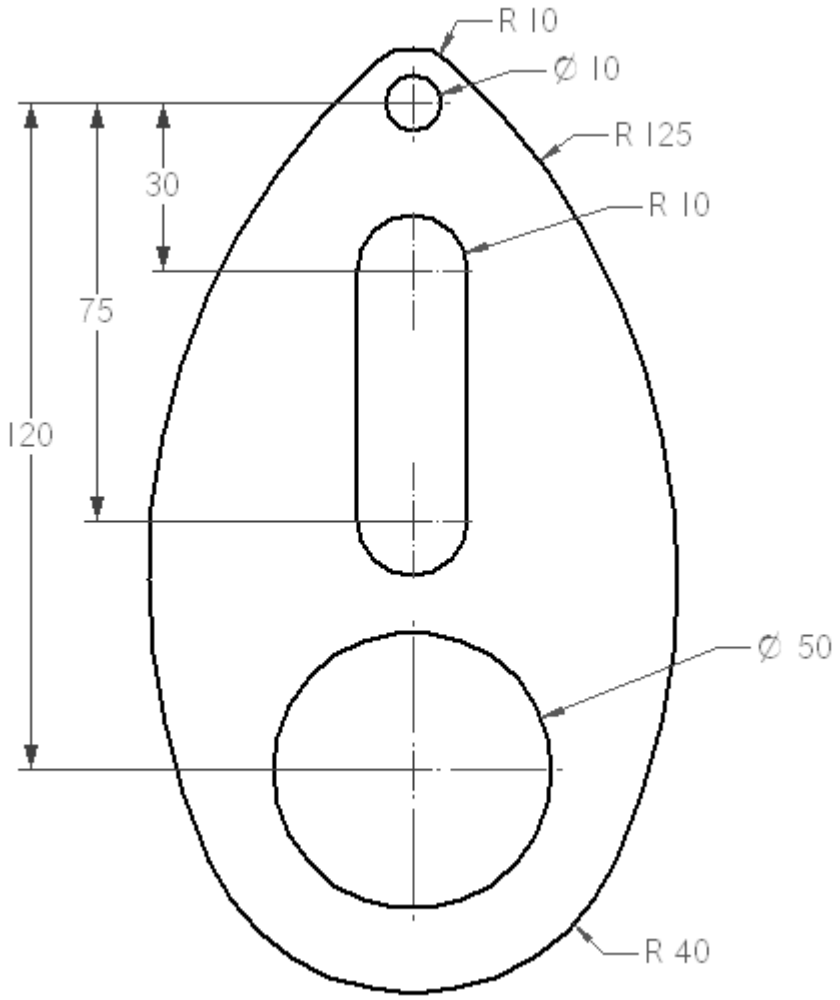
In this activity you drew a sketch on face and learned how to copy the sketch to another face. You also learned how to rotate and move a sketch.

Sketch projects

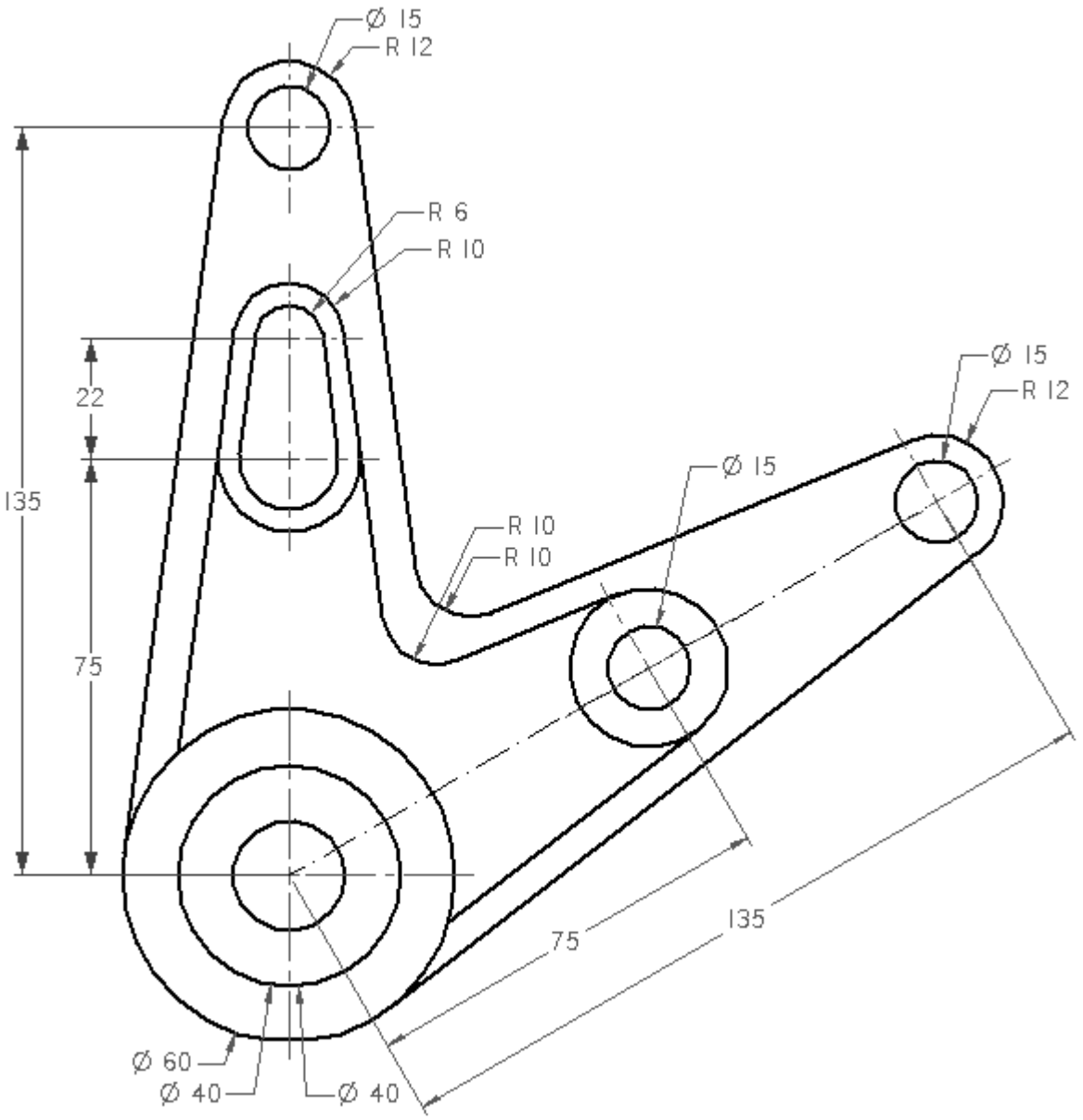
Drawing A



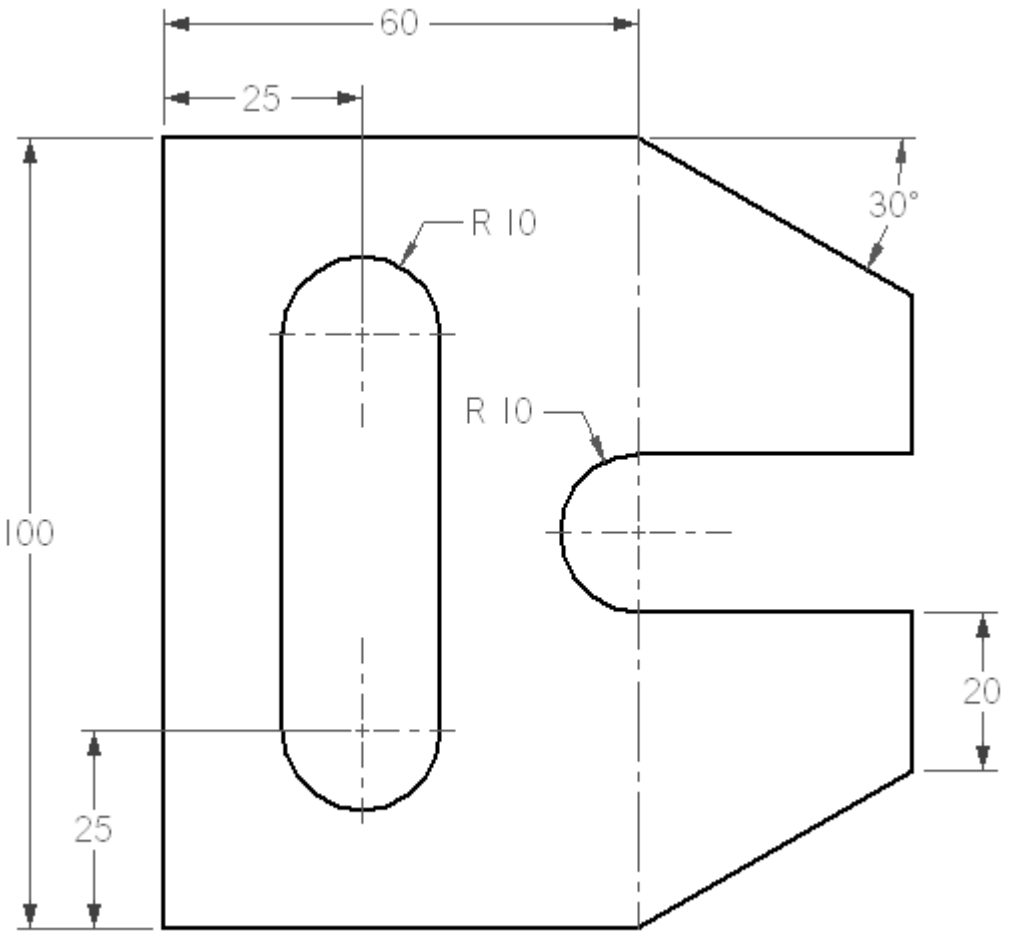
Drawing B



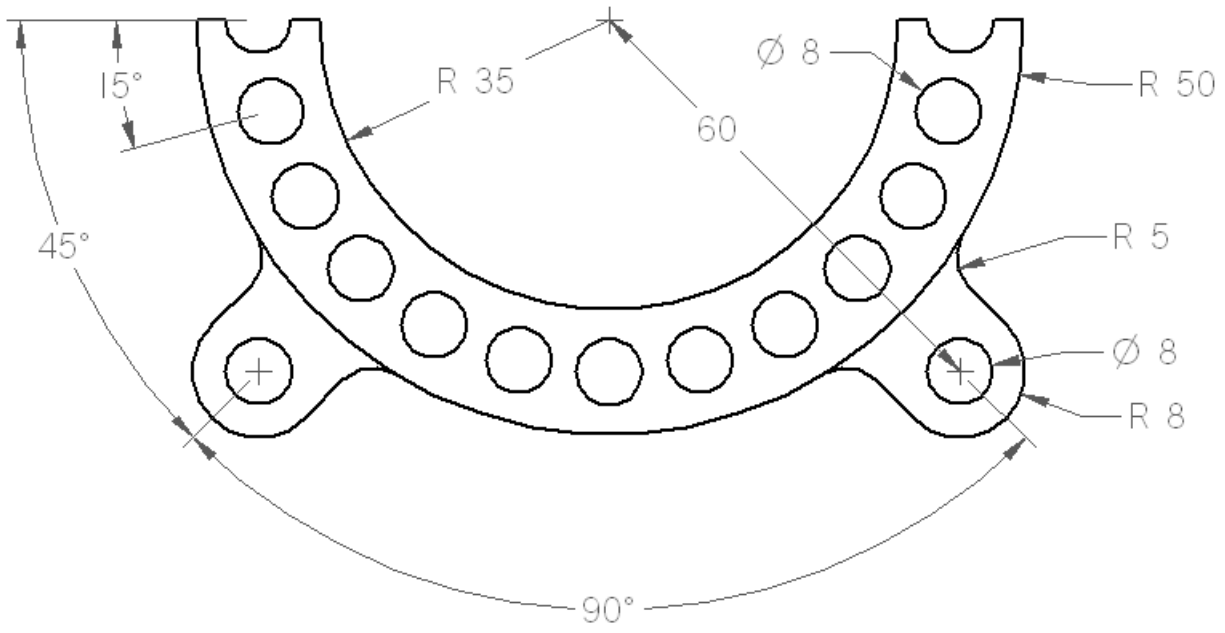
Drawing C



Drawing D



Drawing E



Course review

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the first step in creating a sketch?
   - Choose a command from the Draw group.
   - Select a sketch plane.
   - Switch to a sketch view.
   - Select the base coordinate system.
2. How do you lock a sketch plane?
   - Move cursor over a planar face or reference plane and select the lock icon.
   - Move cursor over a planar face or reference plane and press the F3 key.
   - Right-click on an existing sketch in PathFinder and choose Lock Sketch Plane.
   - None of the above.
   - All of the above.
3. How do you unlock a sketch plane?
   - Click the Lock icon in upper right corner of screen.
   - Press the F3 key.
   - Right-click on a locked sketch in PathFinder and choose Lock Sketch Plane.
   - None of the above.
   - All of the above.
4. What controls the horizontal/vertical direction of a sketch plane?
5. How do you know what sketch relationships exist?
6. How do you use the maintain relationships command?
7. What is a region?
8. Can an open sketch create a region?
9. What is the Used Sketches collector used for?
10. How do you reposition the sketch plane origin?
11. Explain what the Enable Regions command is used for.
12. Explain what the Merge with Coplanar Sketches command is used for.

Answers

1. What is the first step in creating a sketch?

   Choose a command from the Draw group.

2. How do you lock a sketch plane?

   All of the above.

3. How do you unlock a sketch plane?

   All of the above.

4. What controls the horizontal/vertical direction of a sketch plane?

   The green highlighted edge of a face defines the horizontal direction of a sketch plane. Use the N key to cycle through the linear edges of a face to define the horizontal direction. If a face has no linear edges, then the horizontal/vertical directions align with the base reference planes.

5. How do you know what sketch relationships exist?

   On the Sketching tab® Relate group, choose the Relationships Handles command to turn on the display all sketch relationships.

6. How do you use the maintain relationships command?

   On the Sketching tab® Relate group, choose the Maintain Relationships. When this is turned on, all relationships applied are remembered. If this is off, all relationships applied are not remembered.

7. What is a region?

   When sketch elements create a closed area, a region forms. The sketch elements do not have to be endpoint connected.

8. Can an open sketch create a region?

   Yes. If an open sketch is coplanar with a face and the open sketch touches or crosses a part edge on the face, then a region forms.

9. What is the Used Sketches collector used for?

   When a sketch is used to create a feature, all sketch elements that create feature edges are consumed and moved to the Used Sketch collector. You can turn off the sketch option *Migrate Geometry and Dimensions* to not consume the sketch during feature creation.

10. How do you reposition the sketch plane origin?

    On the Sketching tab® Draw group, on the Grid drop list, choose the Reposition Origin command. The 2D steering wheel appears and you can redefine the horizontal/vertical direction with the torus or by typing an angular value. Choose the Zero Origin command to reset the origin direction.

11. Explain what the Enable Regions command is used for.

When the Enable Regions options is on, a region highlights when the cursor moves over it. Select the region to create an extrusion or revolved extrusion. When the option is off, you cannot select a region.

12. Explain what the Merge with Coplanar Sketches command is used for.

    When this option is on, if you create a new sketch and there is an existing coplanar sketch plane, the new sketch merges with the existing sketch. When the option is off, the new sketch does not merge with the existing coplanar sketch.

Course summary

- Sketches that form closed areas are called regions.
- Use regions to define the cross section of a synchronous feature.
- Sketches do not drive the feature.
- Sketches move to the Used Sketch collector when used to create a feature.
- Lock to a sketch plane to create a sketch.
- Sketches relationships do not migrate to the feature. However Live Rules can detect if feature faces are coplanar. parallel, perpendicular, etc.

Lesson

2 Constructing base features

What is a base feature?

Note

This course presents the method for creating synchronous base features. To learn about the method for creating ordered base features, refer to the self-paced course *spse01536: Modeling synchronous and ordered features*.

When constructing a 3D model in Solid Edge, it is helpful to evaluate the basic shape of the part, and develop a plan as to how you want to construct the model. The part's overall shape can be captured in the very first feature, called the *base* feature.

How to define the shape of the base feature

1. Create a region (a series of sketch elements that create a closed area).

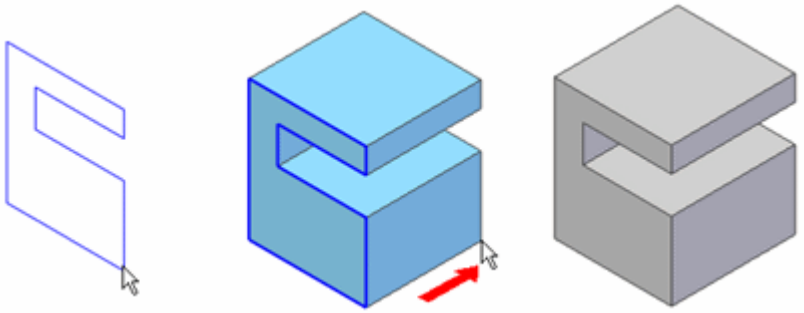
2. Select the region to construct the base feature using either the Extrusion or Revolved Extrusion command.

Once the base feature is created, material can be added or removed by the definition of other features.

Creating base features

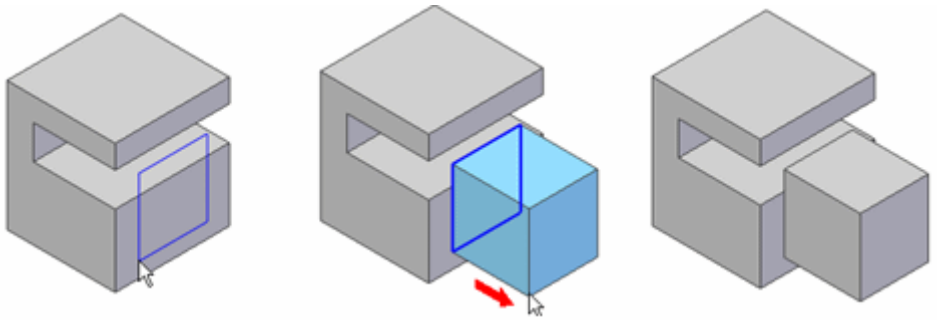
Intuitive commands based on context

Depending on the design context you are working in, you can add material to or subtract material from a base feature without choosing a command. Use the same workflow to create extrusions and cutouts, and the result of a particular operation is dependent on the defined extent direction. For a base feature, the result will be an extrusion, because there is no existing body (or material) to subtract from.

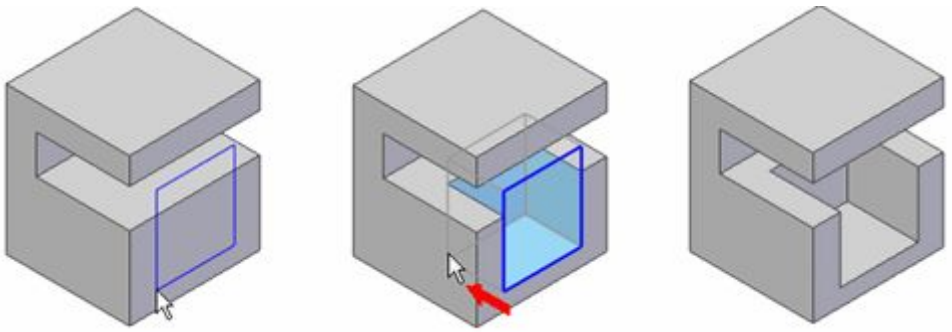


For features on an existing body, the extent direction defined by cursor position with respect to the sketch's planar surface or plane determines whether you create an extrusion or cutout.

- If the sketch extends away from the model volume, this creates an extrusion.



- If the sketch extends toward the volume of the model body, this creates a cutout.

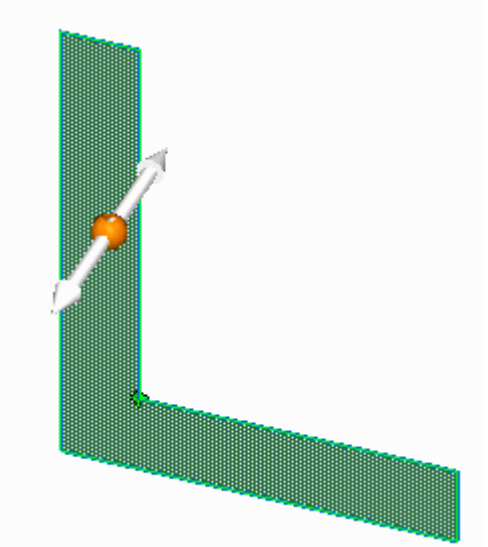


Two methods for constructing a base feature

Once a region exists, two workflows are available for creating a base feature.

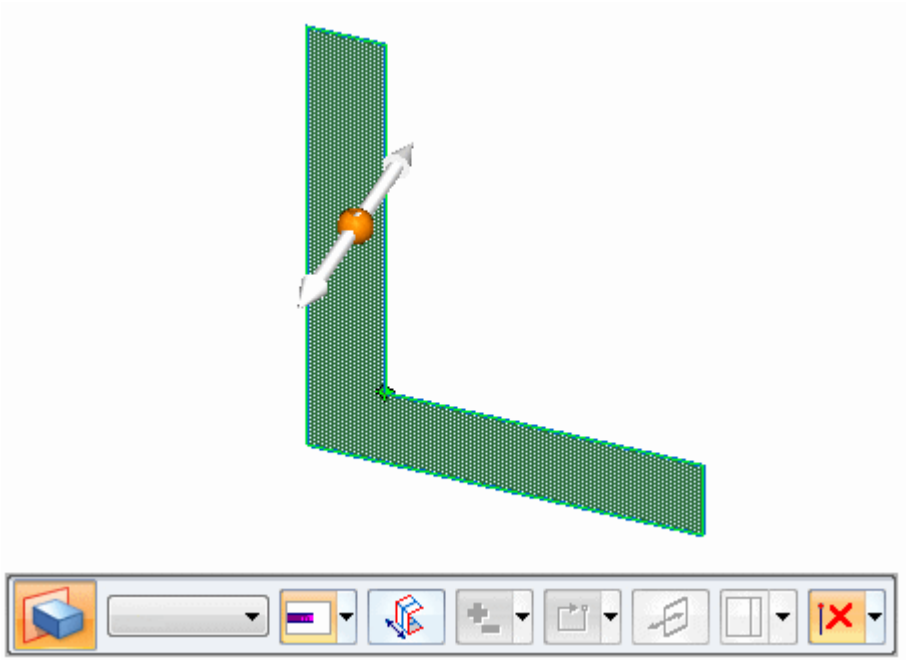
- **Selection workflow**

  Select a region. Click the extrude handle to create a solid from the sketch region.



- **Creation workflow**

  On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Extrude command. Select the sketch region to define the feature.



Note

You may find that the first method minimizes interaction with the command bar and lets you work faster. The creation workflow has other advantages that you learn about in a later section.

General workflow for constructing a base feature

Whether you use the selection workflow or the creation workflow, the basic steps for constructing a base feature are the same.

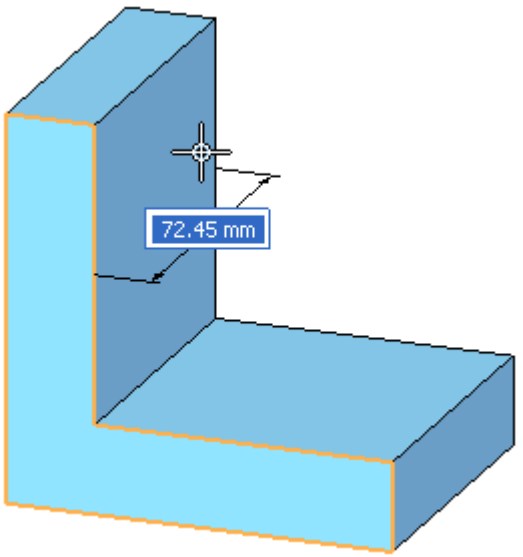
This topic shows the *extrude* and *revolve* workflows.

Extrude a region

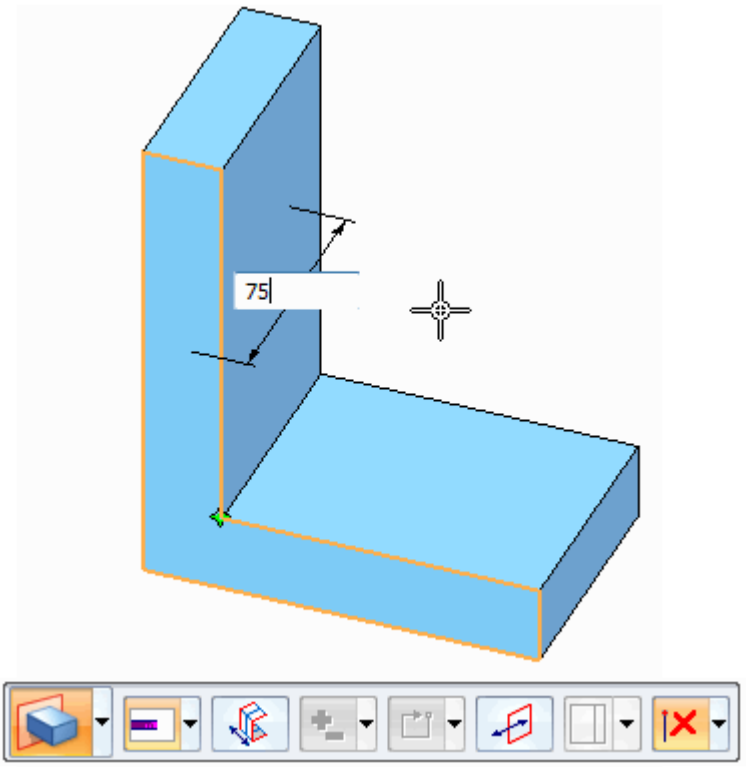
1. Begin by using the Select command to select a region. If you begin by choosing the Extrude command, the first step is to select the region to extrude.

2. (Optional) Set the Symmetric extent option to extrude the feature symmetrically on both sides of the region.

3. Click the extrude handle, move the cursor to define the extent, and click to create the solid,

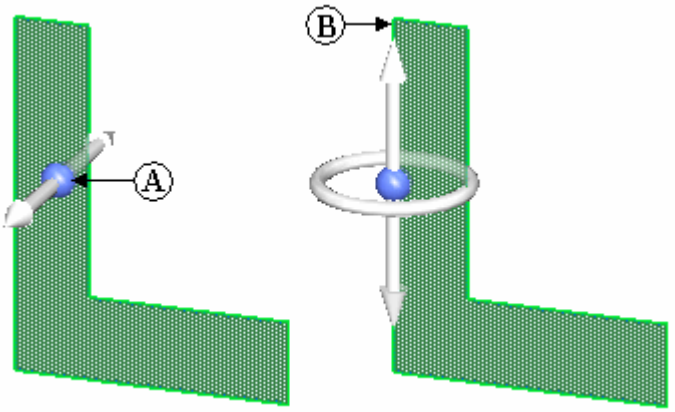


or you can type an extent in the dynamic input box and then click an extrude handle to define the direction and create the solid.

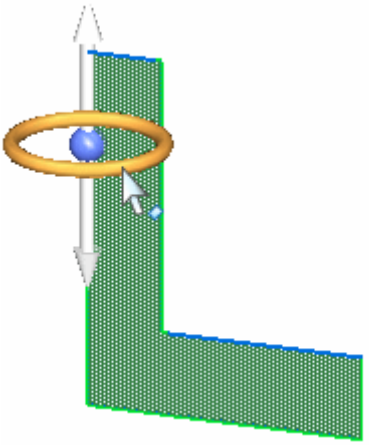


Revolve a region

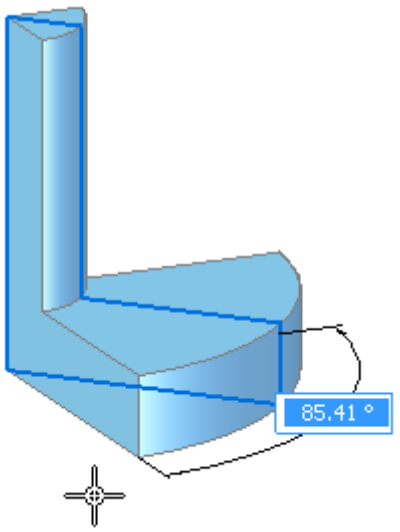
1. Begin by using the Select command to select a region.
2. Drag the extrude handle origin (A) to the edge (B) to define the axis of revolution.



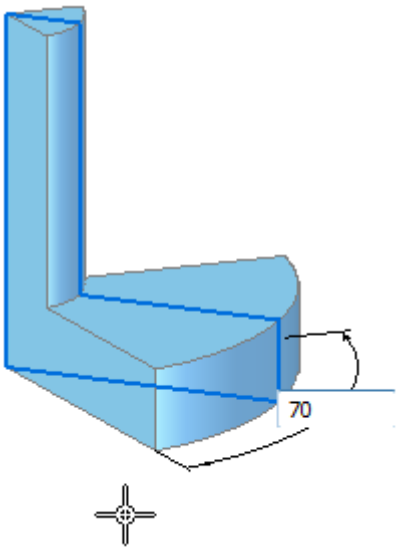
3. (Optional) Set the Symmetric option to revolve the feature symmetrically on both sides of the region.
4. On the revolve handle, click the torus to begin the revolve extent step.



5. Move the cursor to define the extent and then click to create the solid,



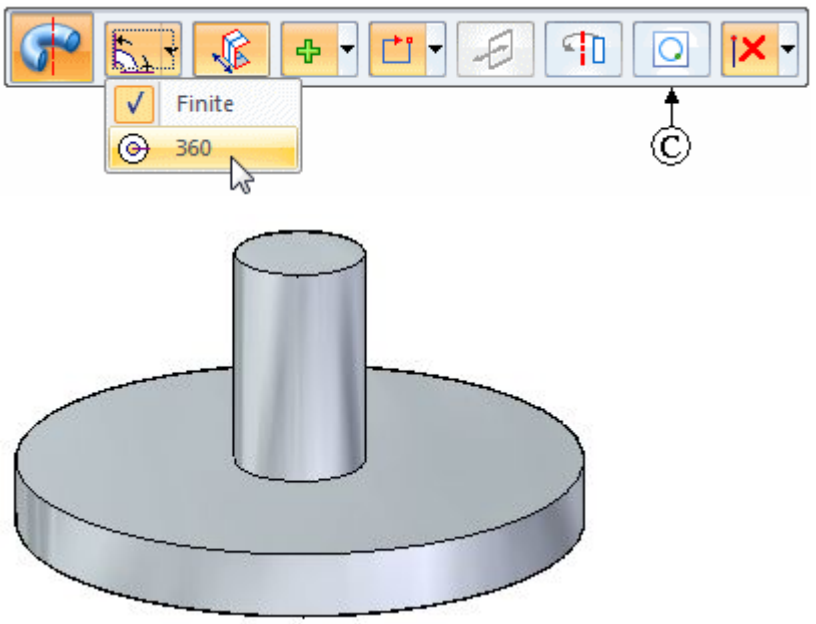
or type an extent in the dynamic input box and then click to one side or the other of the region to define the direction and create the solid,



or select the 360° option on the Extent type list.

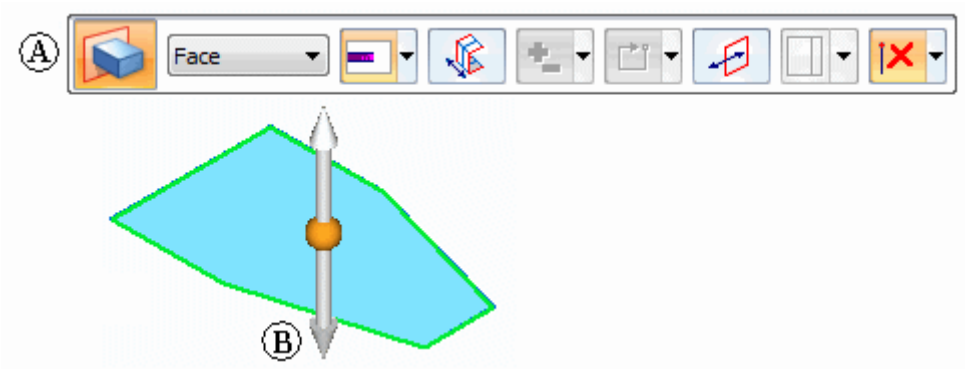
Note

Turn off the Create Live Section option (C).



Constructing synchronous extruded features using the Select tool

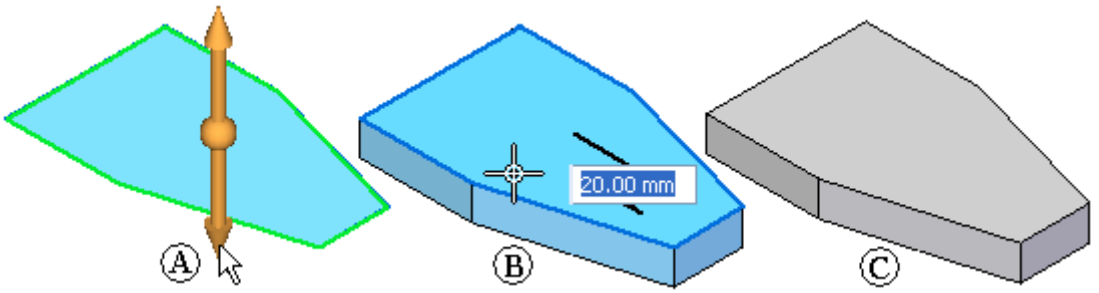
In the synchronous environment, you can use the Select tool to construct extruded features. When you select a valid sketch element, such as a sketch region, both the Extrude command bar (A) and the extrude handle (B) appear.



The command bar contains the options required to construct a wide variety of extruded features. To start the feature construction process, you position the cursor over the arrow on the extrude handle and click (A).

The cursor shape changes to a cross hair, and a dynamic representation of the feature is displayed, along with a dynamic input box, which allows you to type a precision value for the feature (B).

To finish defining the feature (C), you can click the mouse, or type a value and press the Enter key.



Note

The sketch elements used to define the feature are moved to the Used Sketches list in PathFinder and hidden. The sketch dimensions are migrated to the appropriate model edges.

Extent Options

Extents

Defines the depth of the feature or the distance to extrude the sketch to construct the feature. You can specify that the feature extends in one direction only or two directions symmetrically. The extent options are: Finite, Through All, Through Next, and From/To Extent.

Finite

Sets the feature extent so that the sketch is extruded a finite distance to either side of the sketch plane, or symmetrically to both sides of the sketch plane. You can type the distance into the dynamic input box or click to define the extent.

Through All

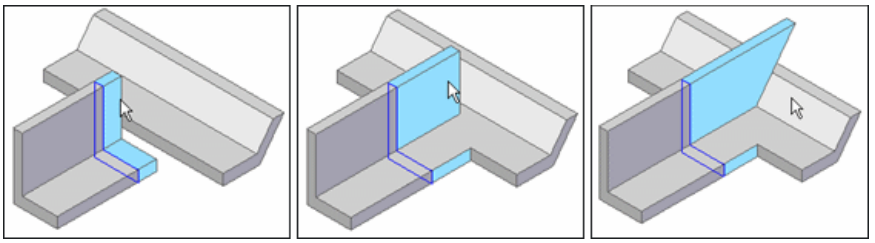
Sets the feature extent so that the sketch is extruded through all faces of the part, starting at the sketch plane. You can extrude the sketch to either side of the profile plane, or to both sides.

Through Next

Sets the feature extent so that the sketch is extruded through only the next closed intersection with the part on the selected side. You can extrude the sketch to either side of the sketch plane, or to both sides.

From/To Extent

Sets the feature extent so that the sketch is extruded from a specified face or reference plane to another specified face or reference plane. You can use the sketch plane as one of the extents, select the sketch plane handle, or right-click.



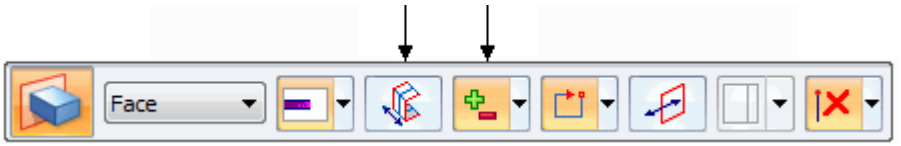
Note

If the region is selected first, the From extent surface can be redefined be dragging the extrude handle origin to another surface or plane. Click the extrude handle. Select the To surface or plane. Right-click extrudes to the profile plane. A PMI dimension is automatically added for the extent length.

Symmetric Extent

Specifies that the feature extent is to be applied symmetrically about the sketch plane. To ensure the appropriate operation is performed in each direction (for

example: whether material is added or removed) make sure you select Add or Cut on the command bar:

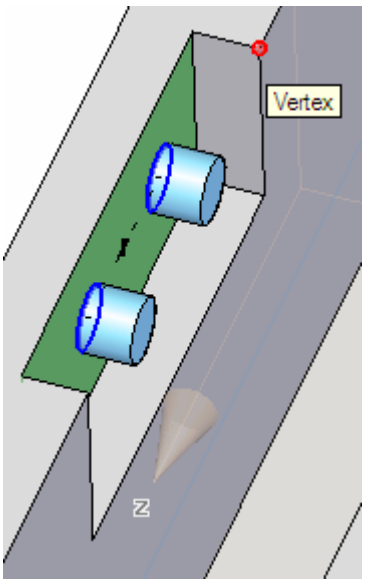


Keypoints

Sets the type of keypoint you can select to define the feature extent. You can define the feature extent using a keypoint on other existing geometry. The available keypoint options are specific to the command and workflow you use.

- all keypoints
- end point
- midpoint
- center point (arc or circle)
- tangency point (select a tangent point on an analytic curved face such as a cylinder, sphere, torus, or cone)
- silhouette point
- edit point on a curve
- no keypoint

In the following case, a vertex was chosen.

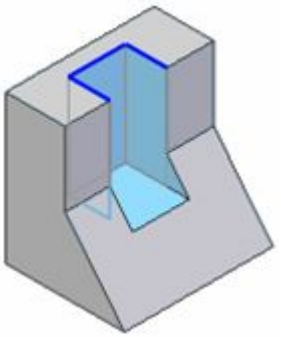


Open/Closed Sketch

Specifies whether adjacent model edges are considered part of the sketch region when an open sketch is attached to one or more model edges. This allows you to control how adjacent faces are trimmed in certain situations.

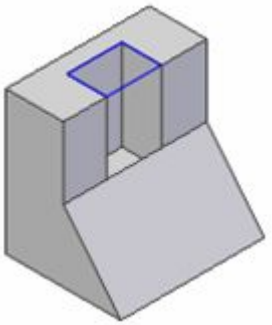
Open

Ignores adjacent model edges. When this option is set, additional faces may be modified, such as illustrated in the cutout example below.



Closed

Includes adjacent model edges. When this option is set, fewer faces may be modified, such as illustrated in the cutout example below.



Automatic

Specifies that whether model edges are included or ignored is determined automatically. This option is the preferred option in most cases.

To Extent Selector

Select the “To” surface when the From/To Extent option is set. The From surface is automatically set to the sketch plane when using the command bar to construct the feature. If you want to specify a different face as the From surface, use the command bar options to specify the From surface.

Note

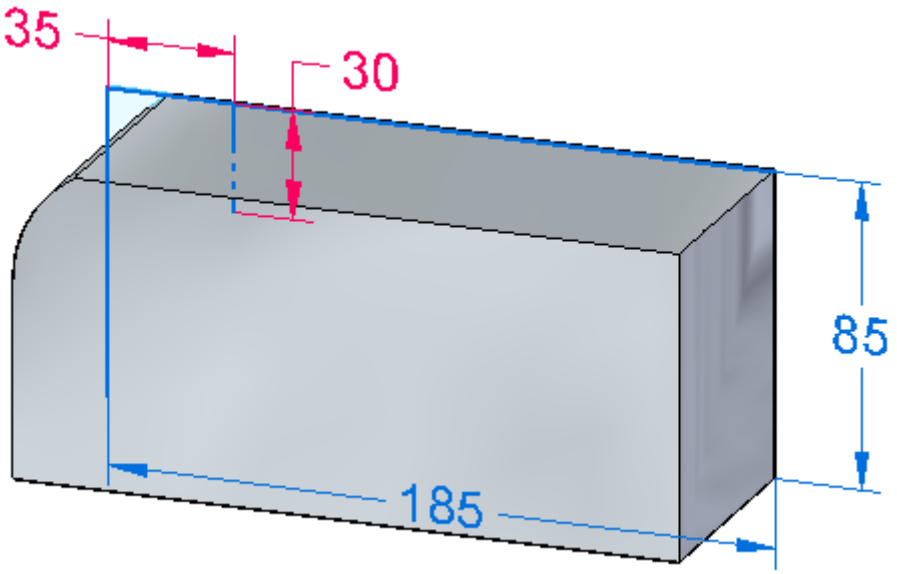
If the region is selected first, the From extent surface can be redefined be dragging the extrude handle origin to another surface or plane. Click the extrude handle. Select the To surface or plane. Right-click extrudes to the profile plane. A PMI dimension is automatically added for the extent length

Treatment Request

Define draft or crowning for the feature.

- Prompted to define treatment parameters after the extent for the feature is defined.
- When this option is cleared, not prompt is given to define treatment parameters after the extent for the feature is defined.

Activity: Create a base synchronous feature



Overview

This activity demonstrates the process of creating a base feature, the initial solid in a model.

Objectives

Create a vise base to become familiar with techniques used in the construction of a base feature.

In this activity you will

- Create regions consisting of sketch elements.
- Use the Select tool to define an initial solid shape.

Activity: Create a base synchronous feature

Create a new ISO Part file

Note

Note that you must be in the Synchronous environment to complete this activity.

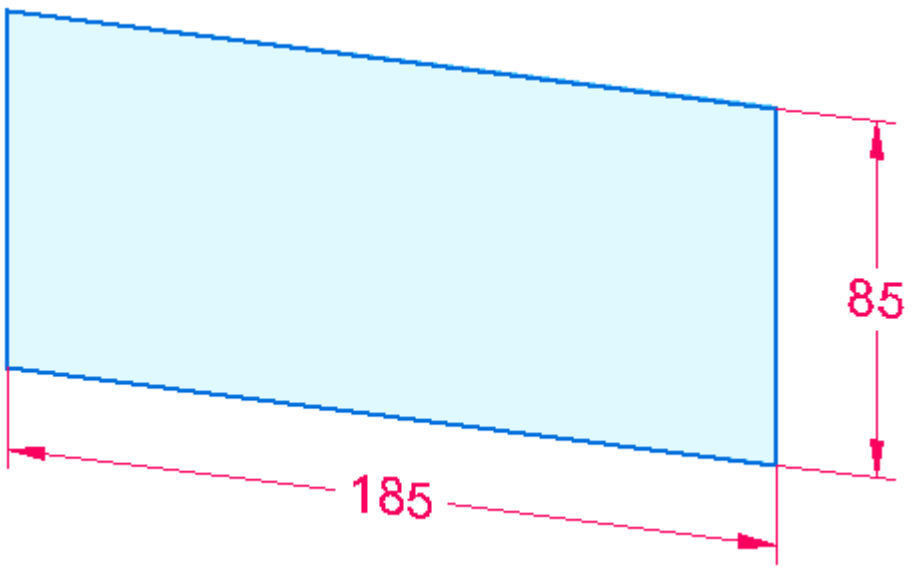
Note that the white Solid Edge background used in these instructions may differ from your display.

Draw the initial cross-sectional shape

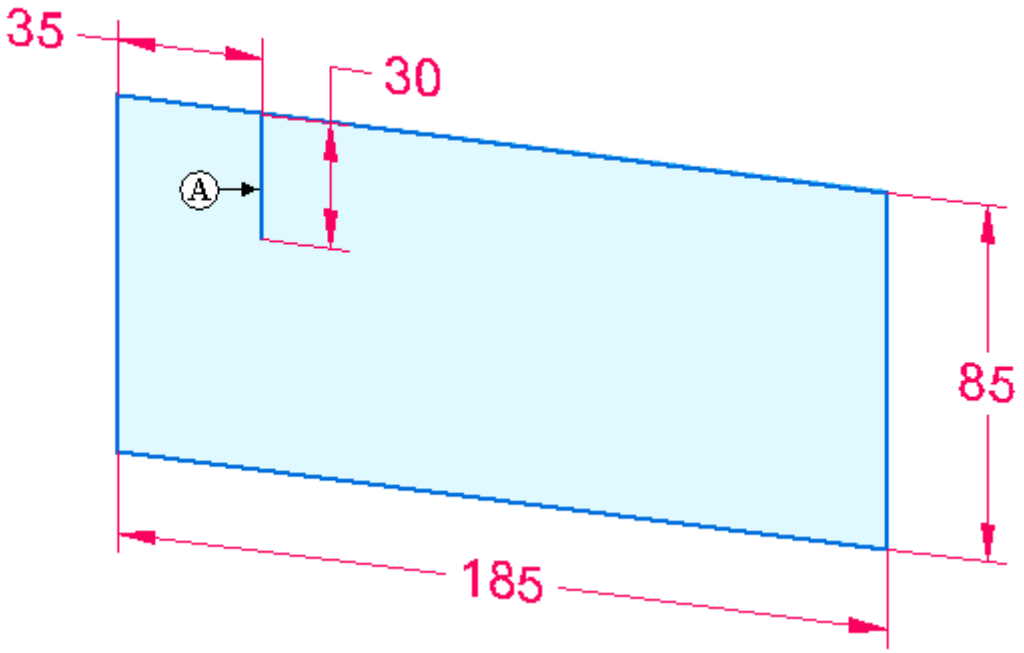
- On the Home tab® Draw group, choose the Rectangle by 2 Points command. Draw the sketch and place the dimensions shown.

Note

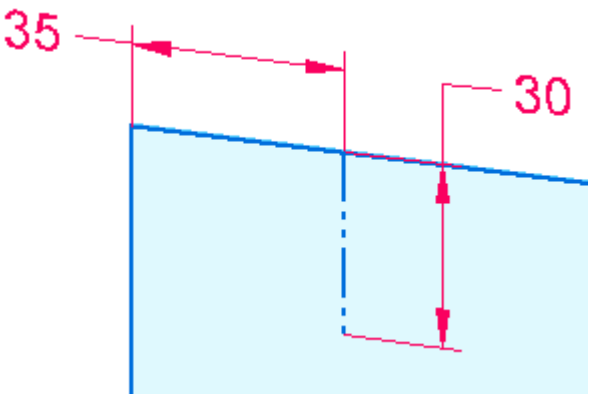
Select one of the base reference planes as the sketch plane.



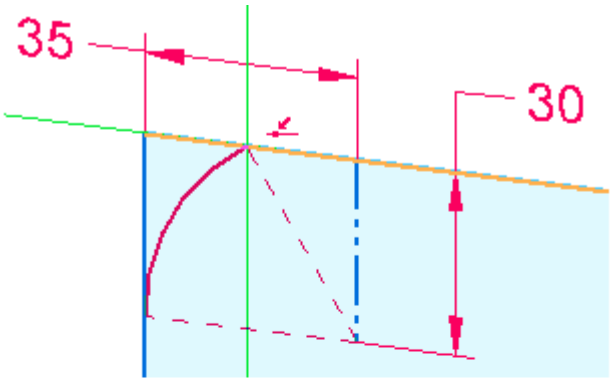
- On the Home tab® Draw group, choose the Line command to create a 30 mm line (A). Dimension the line 35 mm from the left edge of the rectangle.

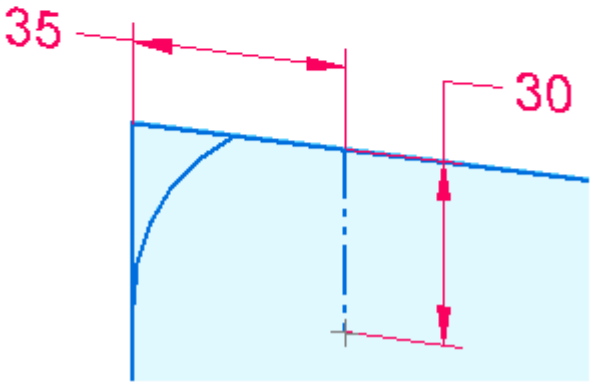


- On the Home tab® Draw group, choose the Construction command to convert the new line into a construction element.



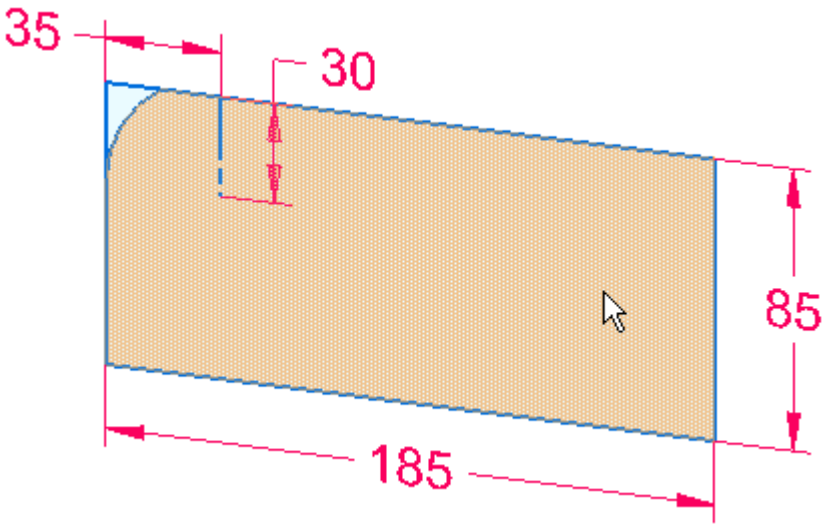
- On the Home tab® Draw group, choose the Arc by Center Point command to draw a 35 mm radius arc using the previous line's end point as the center.



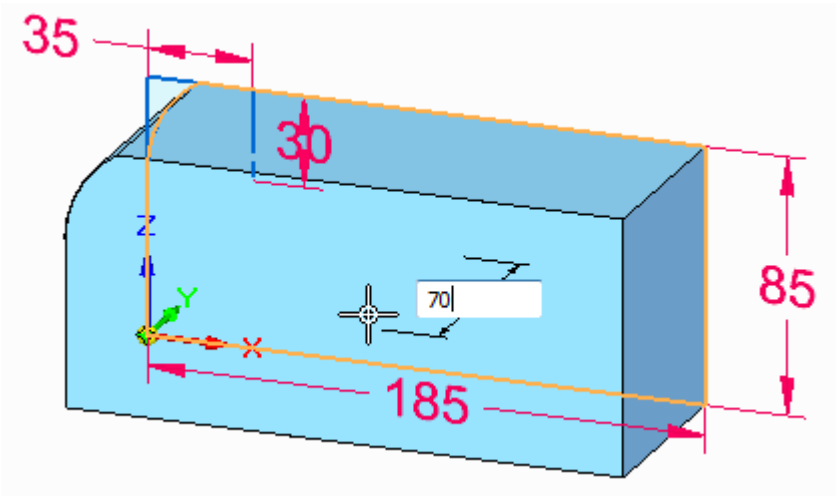


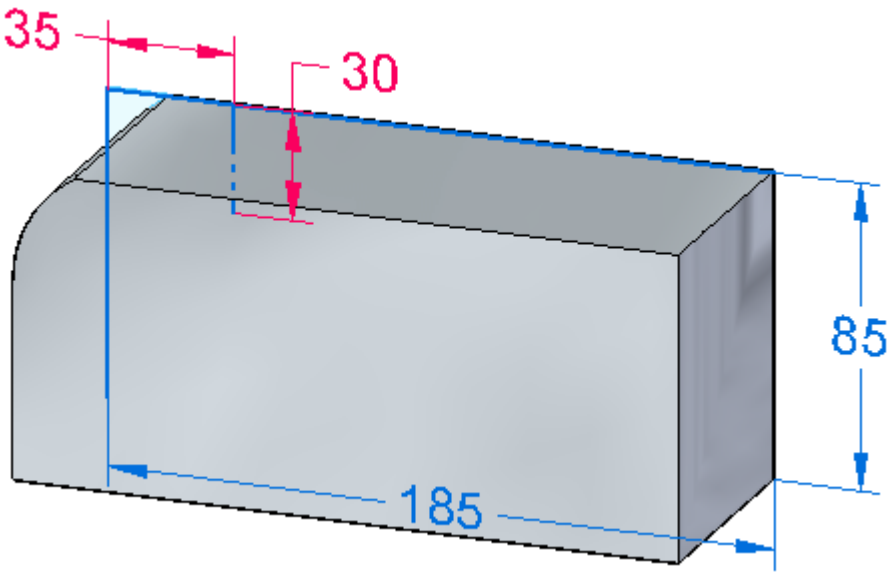
Create the base feature

- Select the region contained within the arc and four lines.



- Select the extrude handle. Define the protrusion extent by typing 70 mm into the dynamic input box.





- Left-click to finish.
- Save this file. You will continue to work in it as you progress through this course.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create a base feature. A sketch was created and dimensioned. A region was extruded and the sketch dimensions migrated to the base feature. The base feature is ready for material to be added or removed to create the desired part.

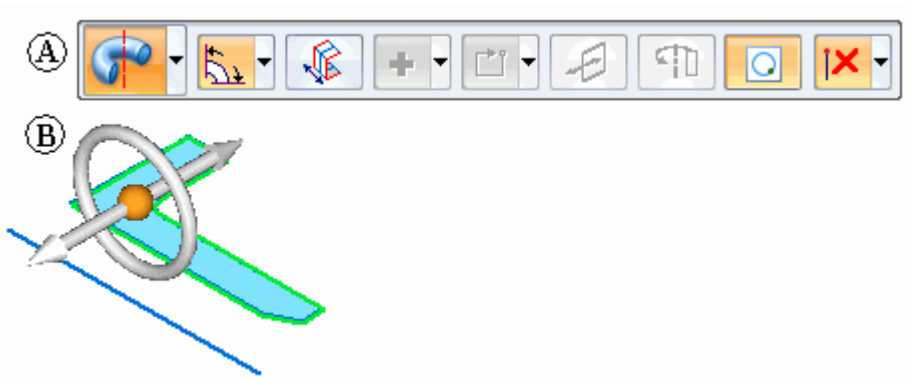
Constructing revolved features using the Select tool

In the synchronous environment, use the Select tool to construct revolved features. When you select a valid sketch element, such as a sketch region, the Extrude command bar and the extrude handle are displayed by default.

You can click the extrude handle origin and drag it to a linear sketch element that defines the axis of revolution. The extrude handle changes to a revolve handle.

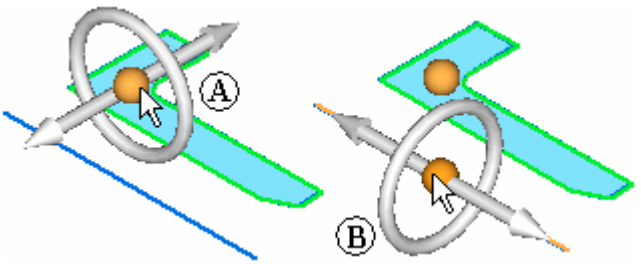
You can also construct a synchronous revolved feature by selecting the Revolve command on the command bar.

The command bar updates to display the options for constructing revolved features (A), and the revolve handle appears (B).

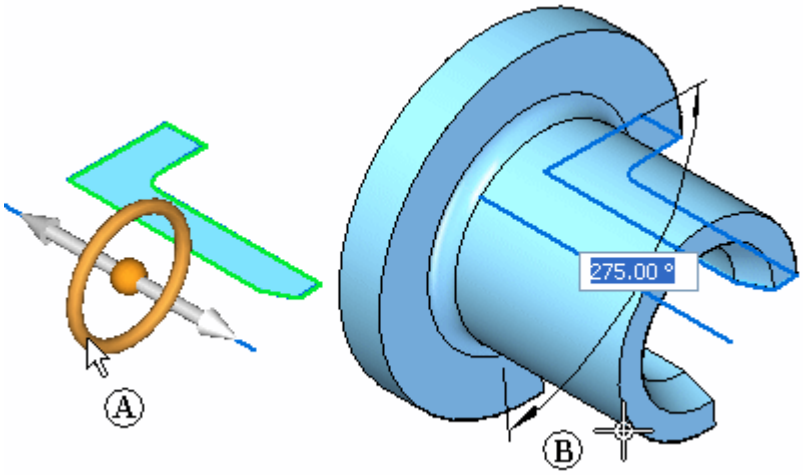


To construct a revolved feature, you move the revolve handle to a linear sketch element, model edge, or to the center of a cylindrical face that defines the axis about which you want to revolve the sketch. In the following example, the axis element is separate from the sketch region that defines the cross section of the revolved feature.

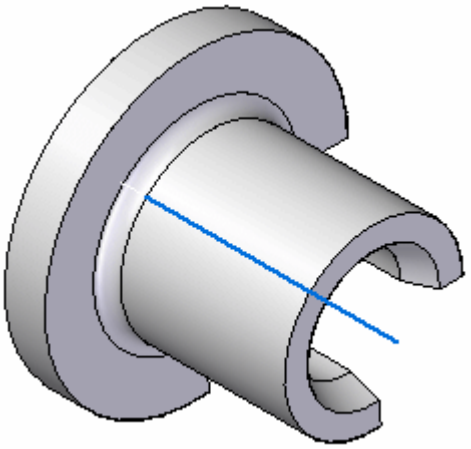
You can move the revolve handle by clicking the handle origin (A), which attaches it to the cursor. You can then position the handle over the axis element. The revolve handle snaps into alignment with any linear elements. When it is aligned with the proper element, you can click to accept the handle position (B).



You can construct a revolved feature that is equal to or less than 360 degrees using the options on the Revolve command bar. After you define the options you want on the command bar, you can click the torus element on the revolve handle (A) to begin constructing the feature. The cursor shape changes to a cross hair, and a dynamic representation of the feature is displayed, along with a dynamic input box, so you can type an angular value for the feature (B).



To finish defining the feature, you can click to define the feature extent, select a keypoint, or type a value and press the Enter key.



Note

The sketch elements used to define the feature are moved to the Used Sketches collector in PathFinder and hidden. The sketch dimensions are migrated to the appropriate model edges when possible.

Notice that since the axis element is separate from the sketch elements that define the cross section of the feature, that the axis element does not move to the Used Sketches list in PathFinder.

Create Live Section

On the command bar, use the Create Live Section option (A) to create a live section upon feature completion.

The option is on by default. All sketch dimensions migrate to the live section.

Activity: Create a vise screw

Overview

This activity demonstrates the process of creating a part model using the Revolved Protrusion command.

Objectives

Create a vise screw to become familiar with the Revolved Protrusion command for construction of base features.

In this activity you will

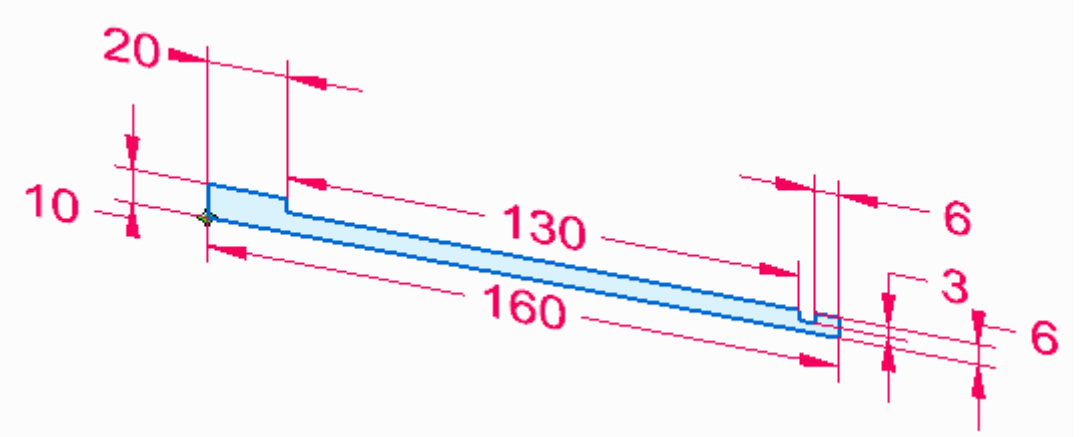
- Create a region consisting of sketch elements.
- Use the Select tool to invoke the Revolved Protrusion command.

Activity: Create a vise screw

Open a new ISO part file

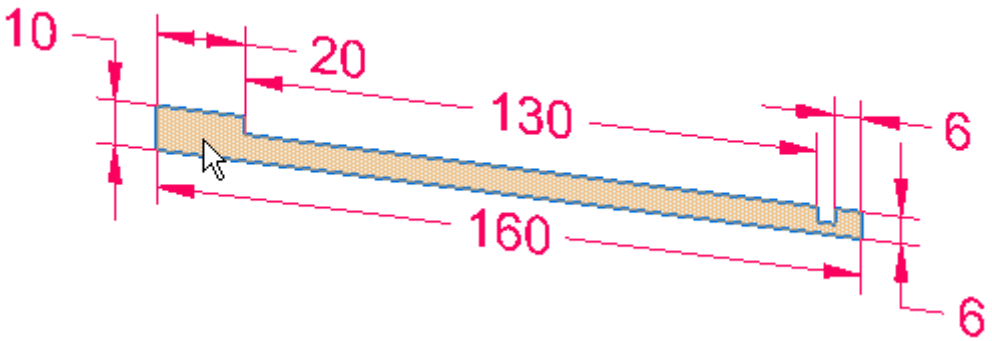
Sketch the initial basic shape

- Draw and dimension the following sketch.



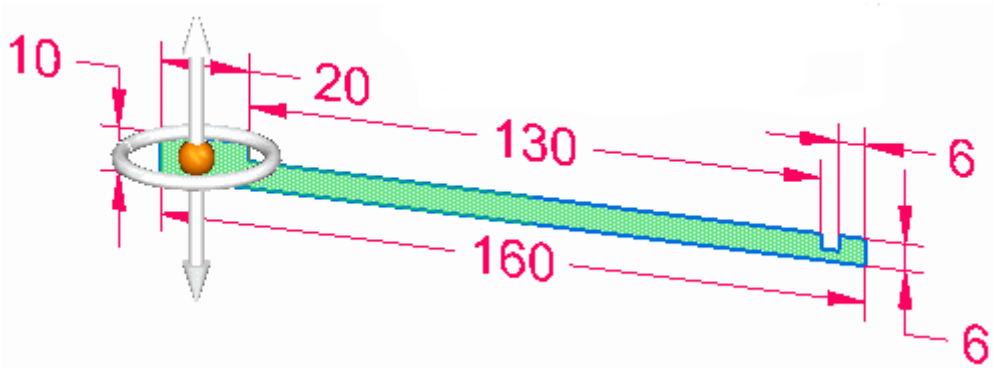
Create the base feature

- Select the region.

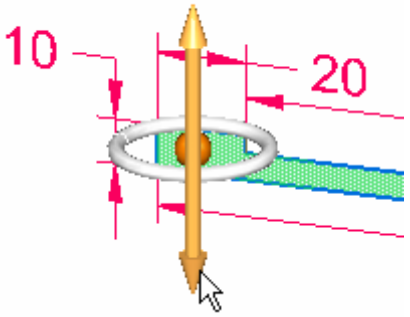


- Choose Revolve on the Extrude command bar.

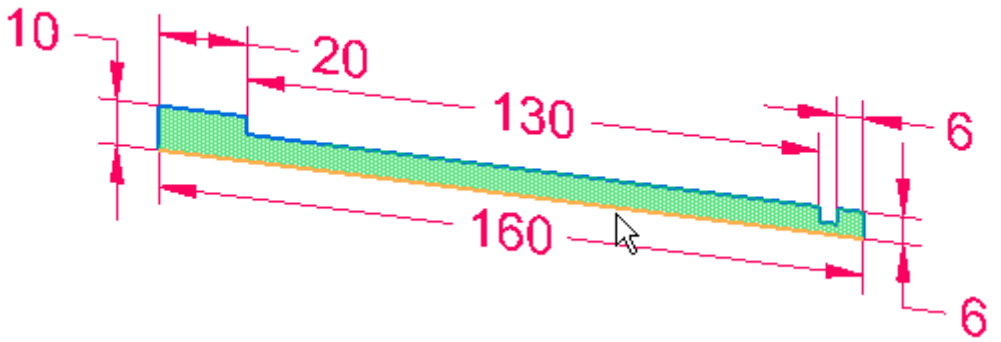
The extrude handle converts to a revolve handle.



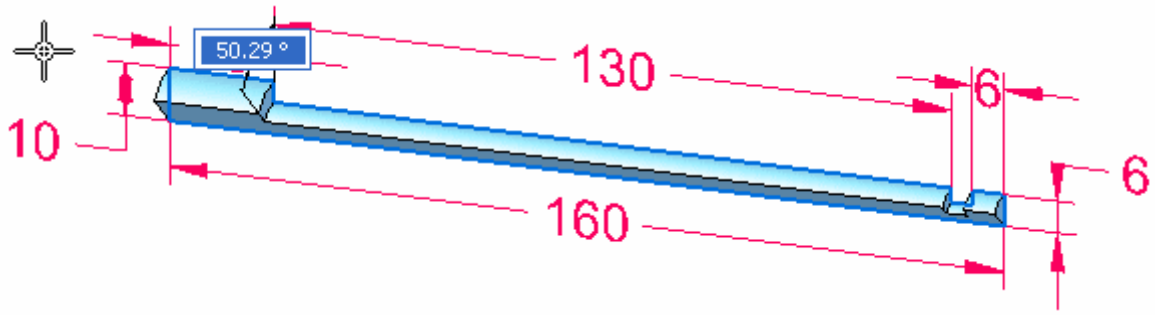
- Select the rotation axis in order to redefine it.



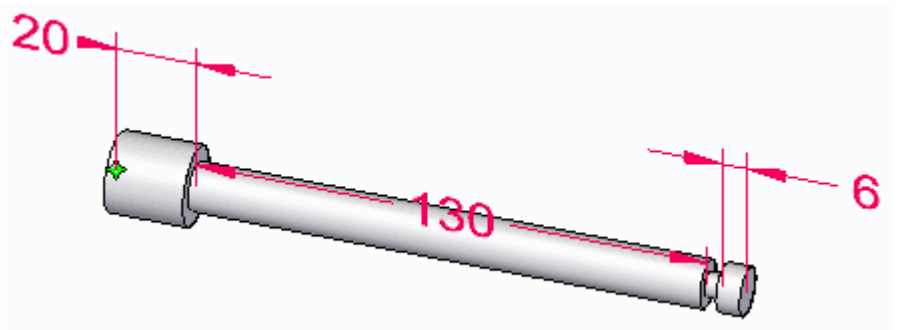
- Select the bottom side of the region as the axis of revolution.



The geometry dynamically attaches to the cursor.



- On command bar, select the 360° extent.



- Save and close the file.

Summary

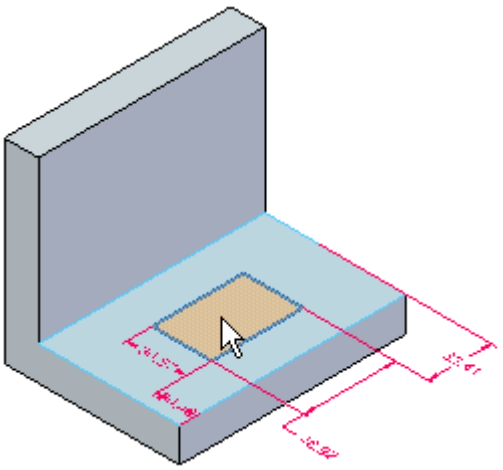
In this activity you learned how to create a revolved base feature. A sketch was created and dimensioned. A region was revolved and the sketch dimensions migrated to the base feature. The extrude handle changes to a revolve handle when you select the action to revolve.

Creating additional features

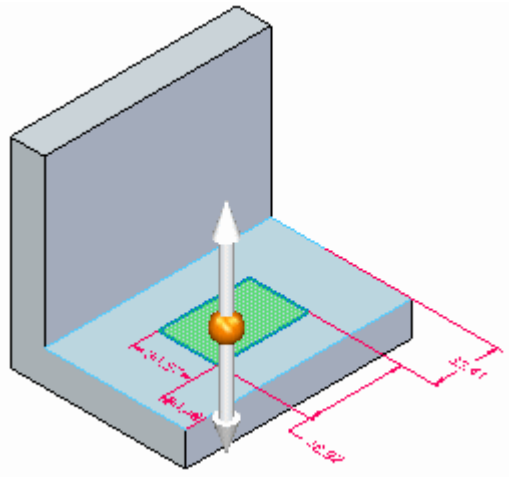
Addition and removal of material

After you create a base feature, you may want to add or remove material. Use additional features to add material or make cutouts. The process for creating these additional features is similar to that for the base feature.

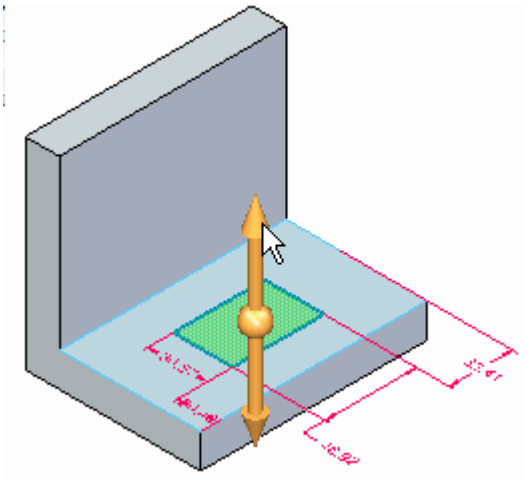
1. Most of the time, a sketch must exist. It may form a region.



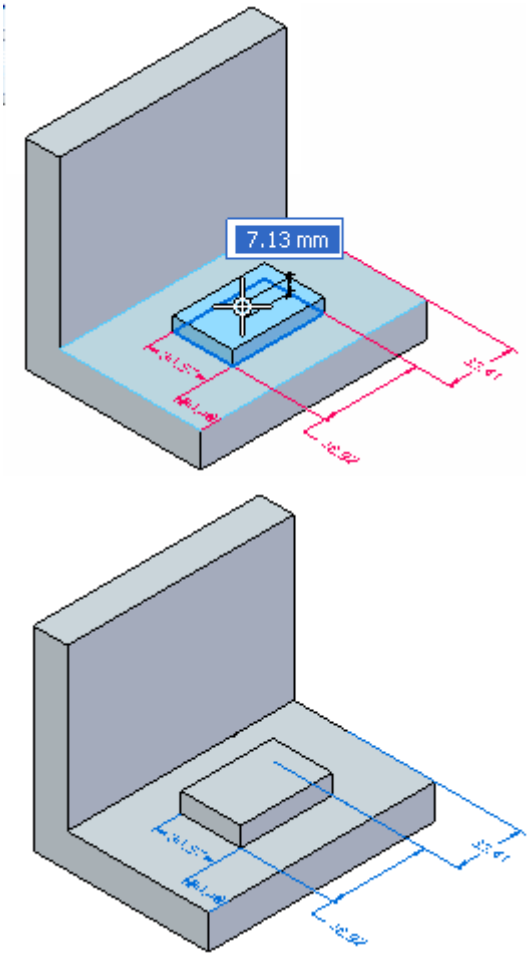
2. Choose the Select command to select the region.



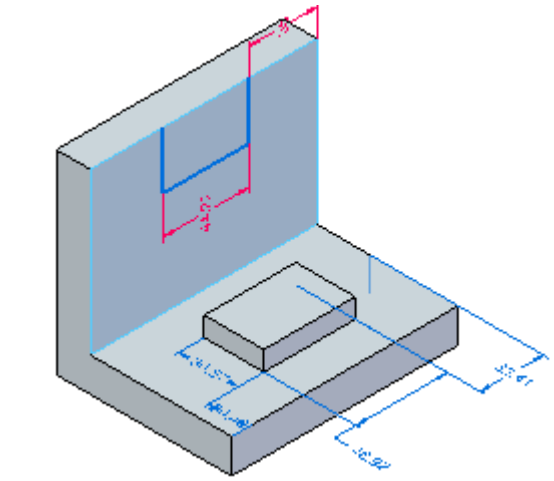
3. Click one of the arrows on the extrude handle.

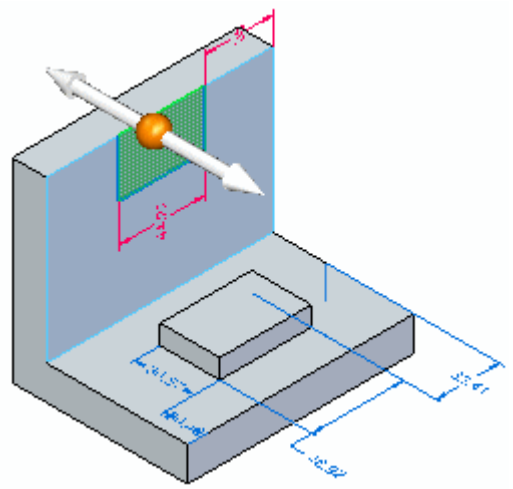


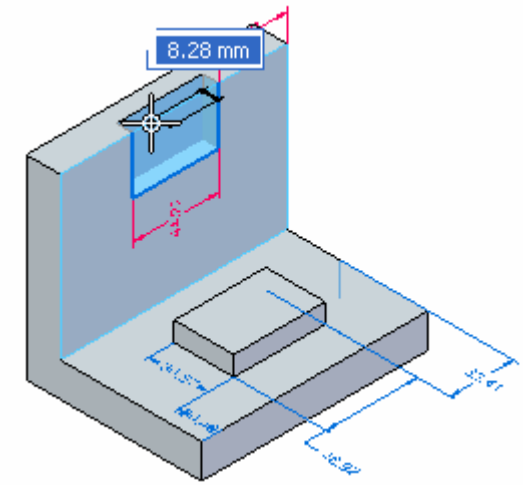
4. Either drag to the extent you want or type the distance value in the dynamic input box.



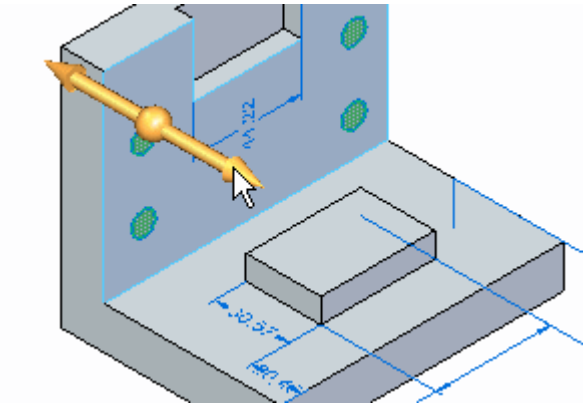
Closed sketches are necessary for base features, but not for all subsequent features. As long as the sketch extends to an edge of the part, a region will be formed.

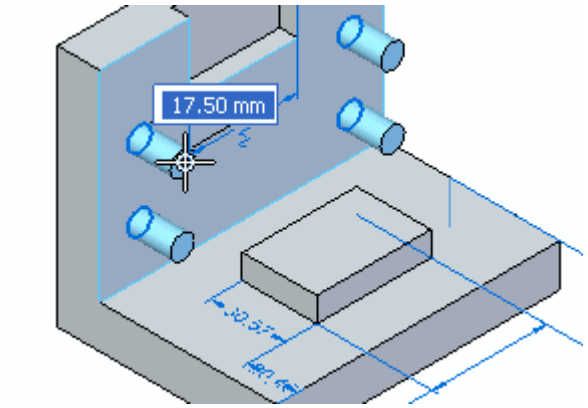




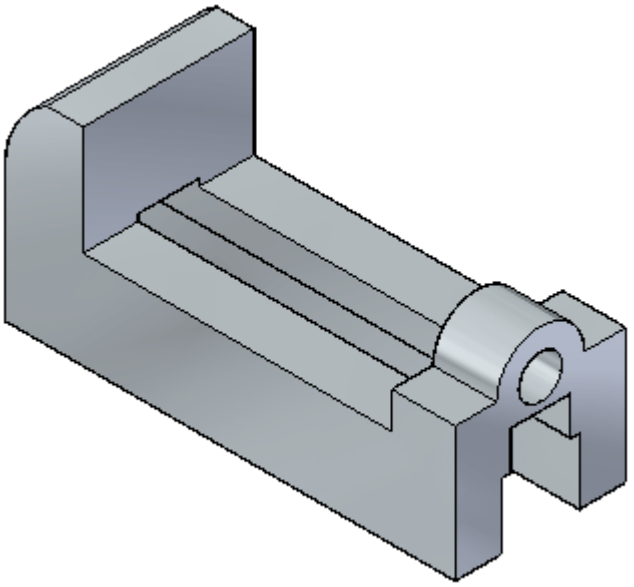


Also, you can select multiple regions at a time and create several features at once.





Activity: Remove material from the vise base



Overview

This activity demonstrates the process of removing material from a base feature.

Objectives

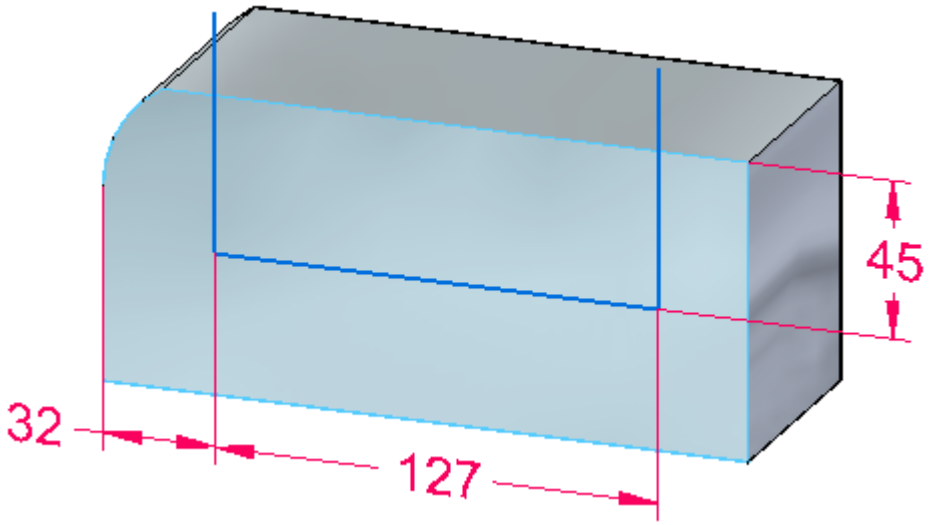
Create regions and use those regions to cut material from the part.

Activity: Remove material from the vise base

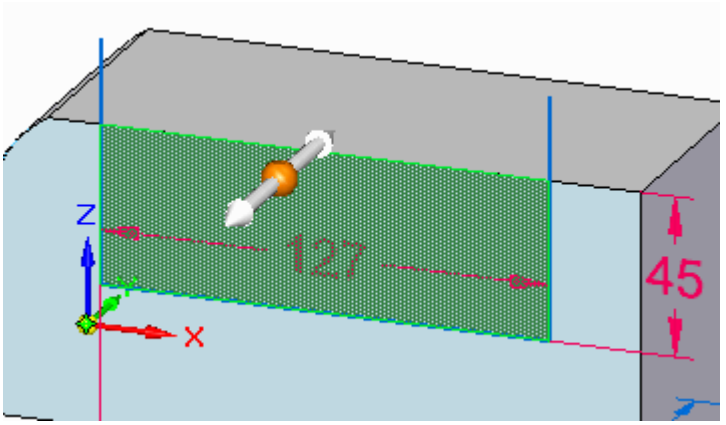
- Open the previous file in which you constructed the base feature (vise base).

Remove material from the base solid

- Turn off the display of the Sketches and PMI collectors in PathFinder.
- On the front face of the part, sketch 3 lines and add dimensions as shown.

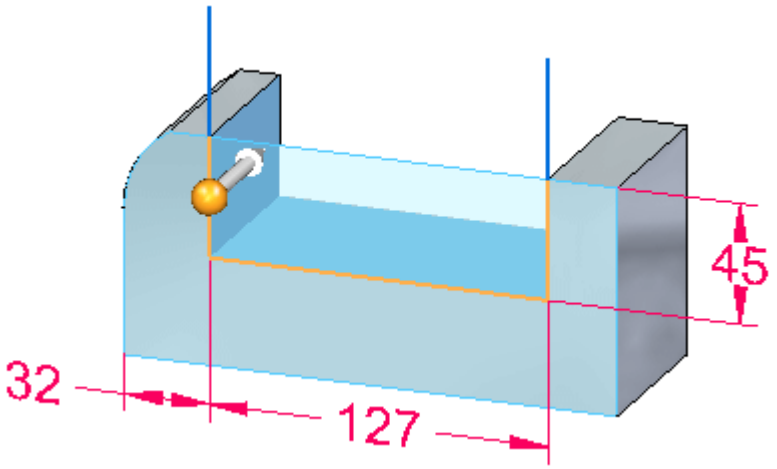


- Select the region bounded by the 3 lines and click the extrude handle.

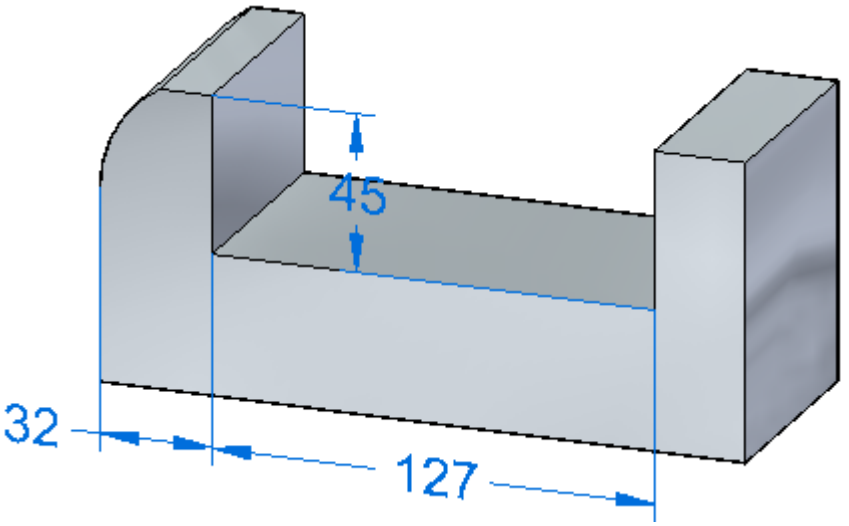


- On the command bar, select the Through All extent option .

- Click the extrude handle. Move cursor to point the arrow inward to remove material. Click when arrow direction is towards the part.

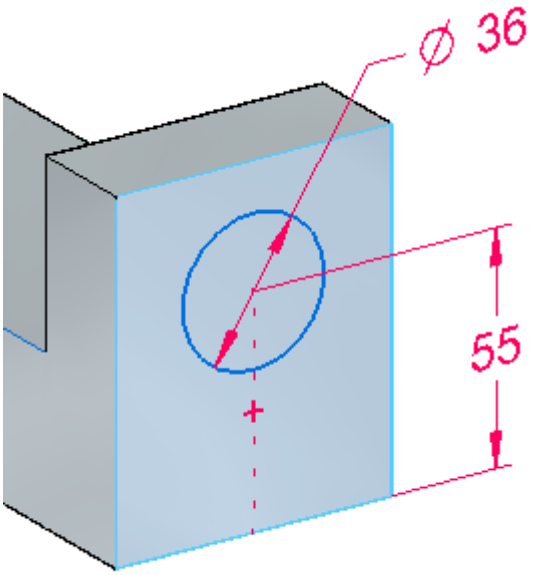


The material is removed.

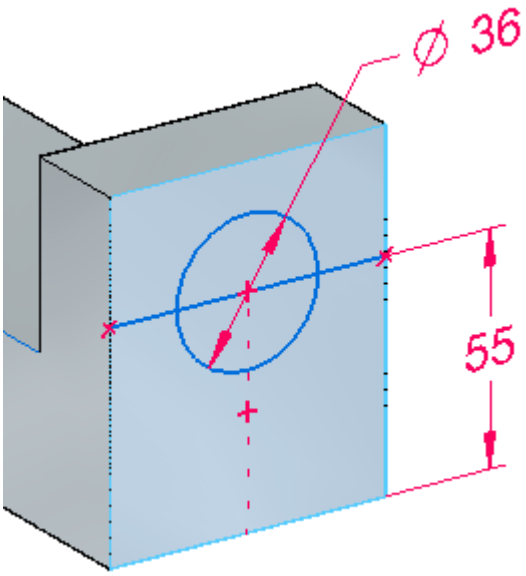


Remove additional material

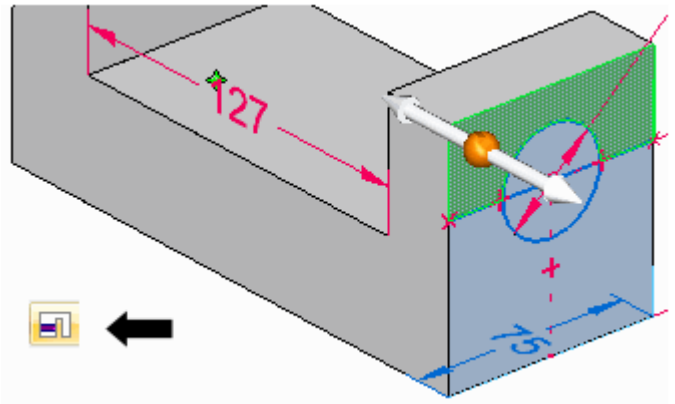
- Sketch the following circle on the side face, and add dimensions as shown. Ensure that the circle center aligns with the midpoint of the bottom edge.

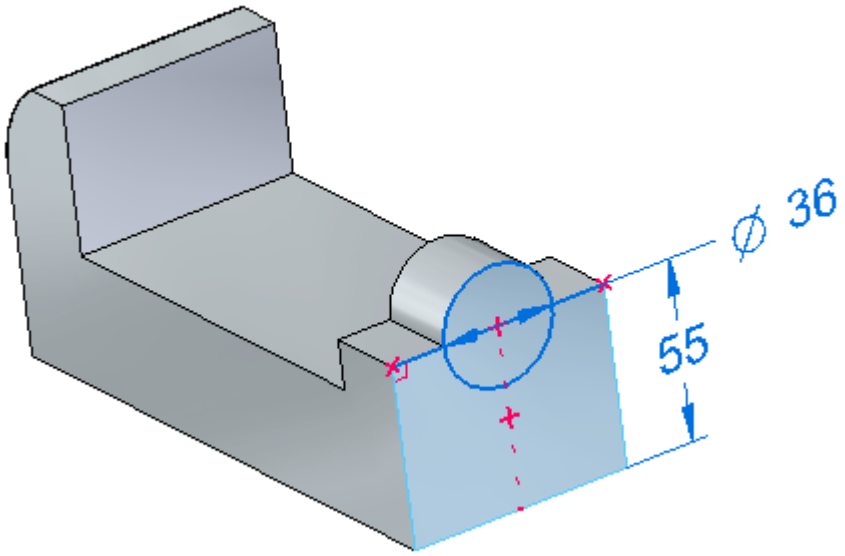


- Sketch a horizontal line passing through the circle center as shown.



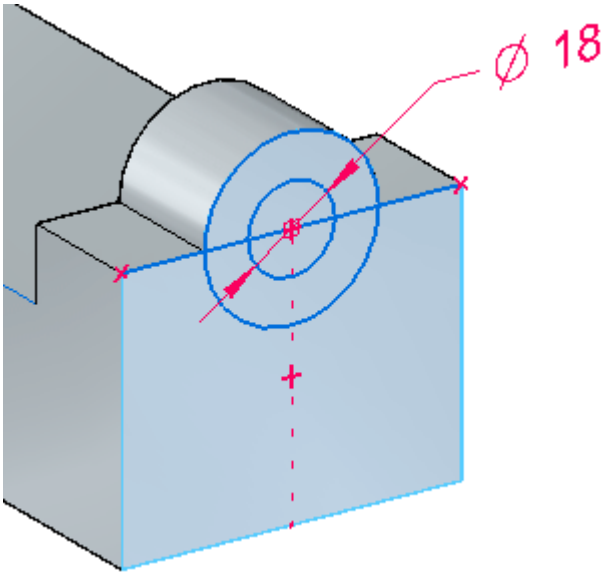
- Select the region as shown. Click the extrude handle. On the command bar, click the Through Next option. Click when arrow direction points towards the part.



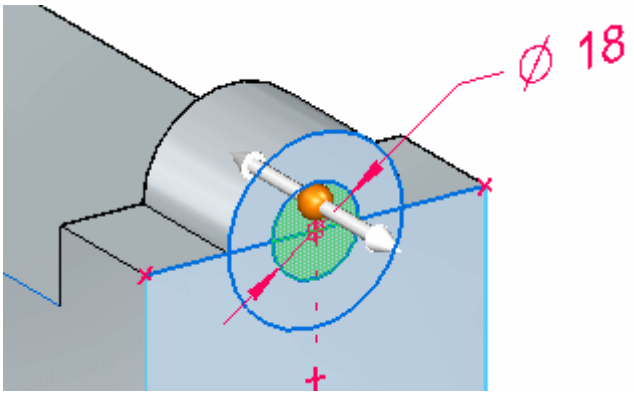


Create a circular cutout

- Draw an 18 mm diameter circle concentric with the existing circle.

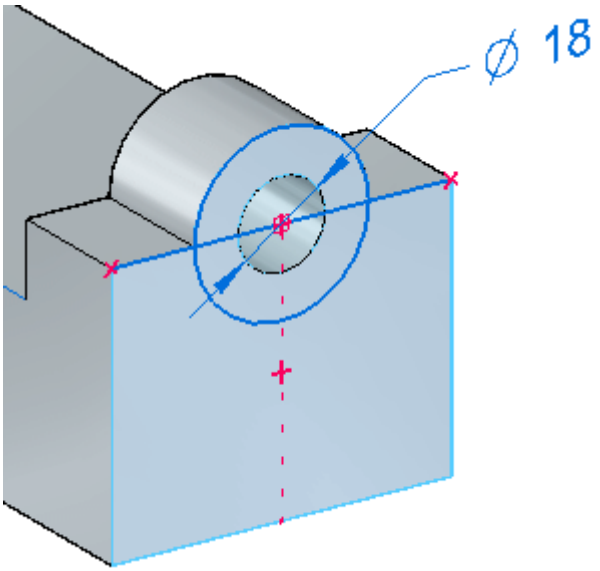


- Select and accept the two regions bounded by the 18 mm diameter circle. Use QuickPick if needed to select the regions. You build a select set by selecting the first region and then, while holding down the Ctrl key, select an additional region(s).



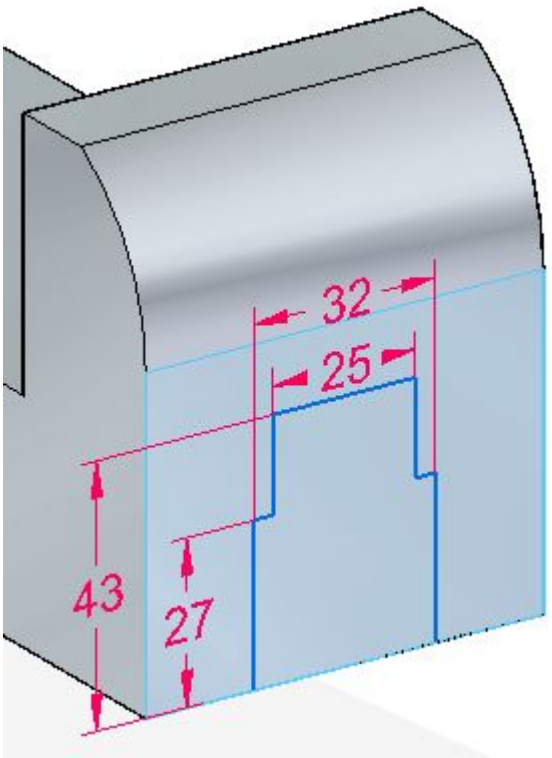
- Click the extrude handle.
- On the command bar, click the Through Next option.

- When the direction arrow points towards the part, click to create the circular cutout.

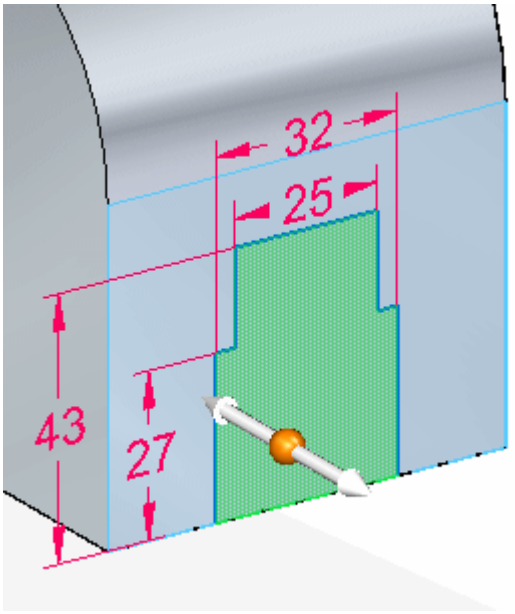


Create the last cutout

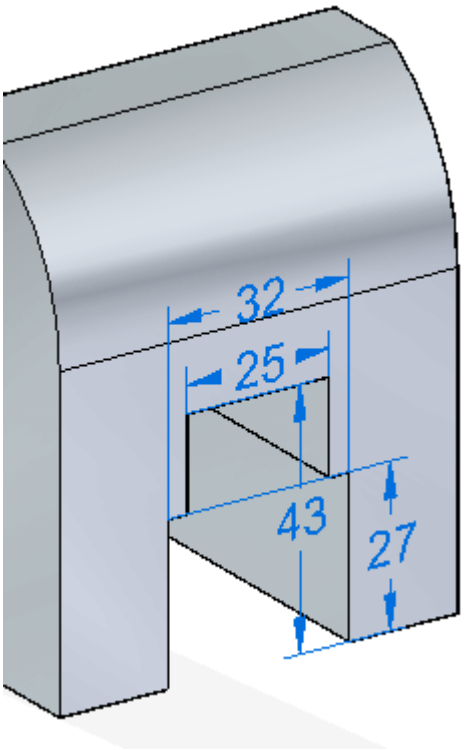
- Rotate the part as shown and draw the sketch. Center the sketch on the bottom edge of face.



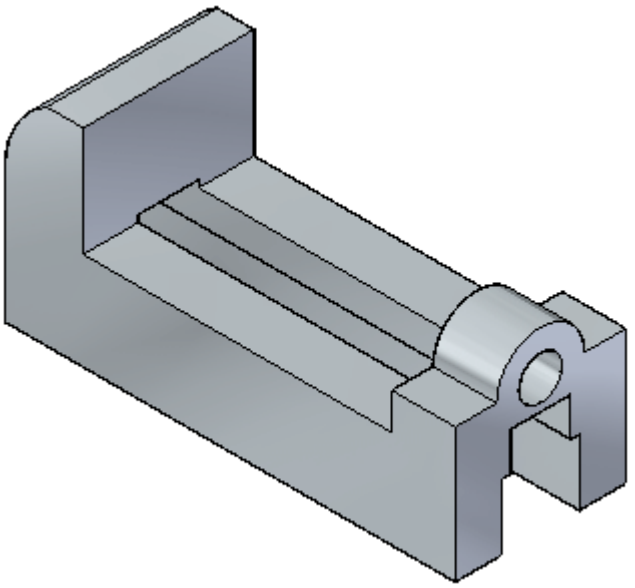
- Select the region.



- Click the extrude handle and set the extent option to Through All on the command bar. Click when the arrow points towards the part.



- Turn off all sketches and PMI, and press Ctrl+I to display an isometric view.

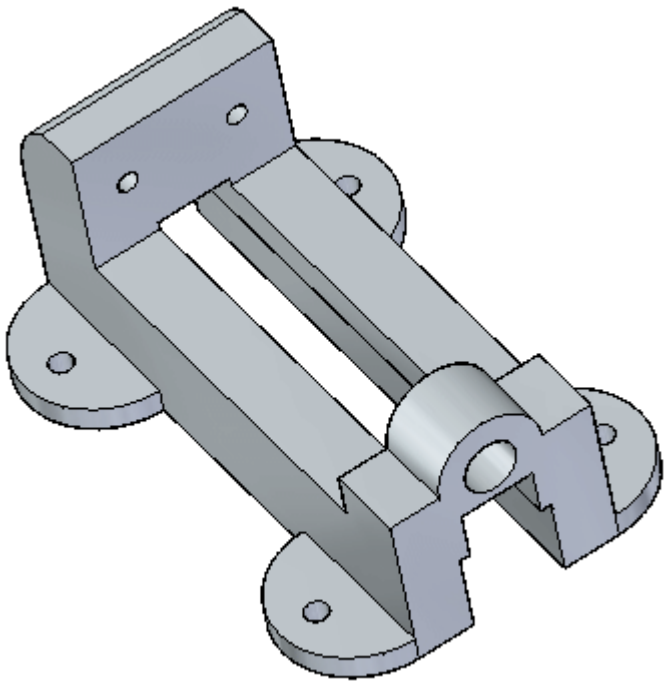


- Save the file. You will continue working in it in another activity.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to remove material from a base feature. A sketch was created and dimensioned. A region was selected representing the cross-sectional area to define the material to be removed.

Activity: Add mounting flanges to the vise base



Overview

In this activity you will

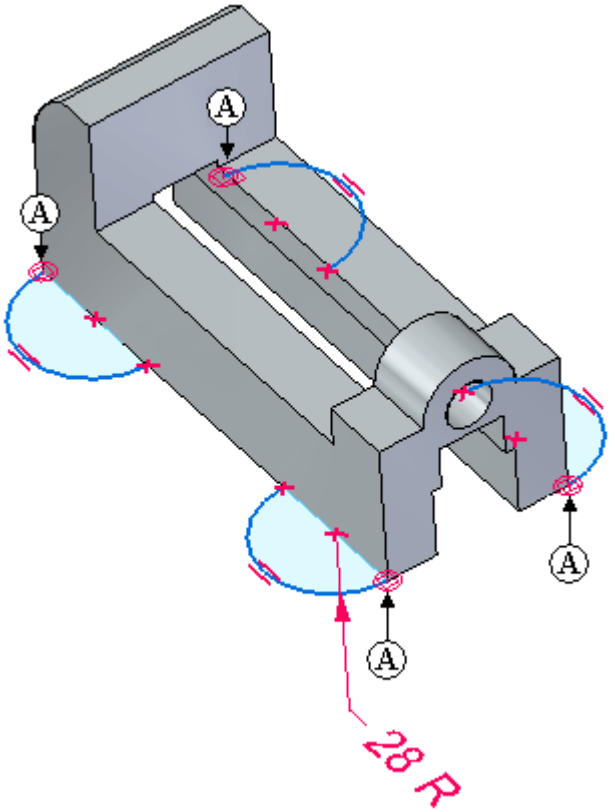
- Create the four feet of the vise by extruding four regions at once.
- Create cutouts at the back of the vice and through the feet.

Activity: Add mounting flanges to the vise base

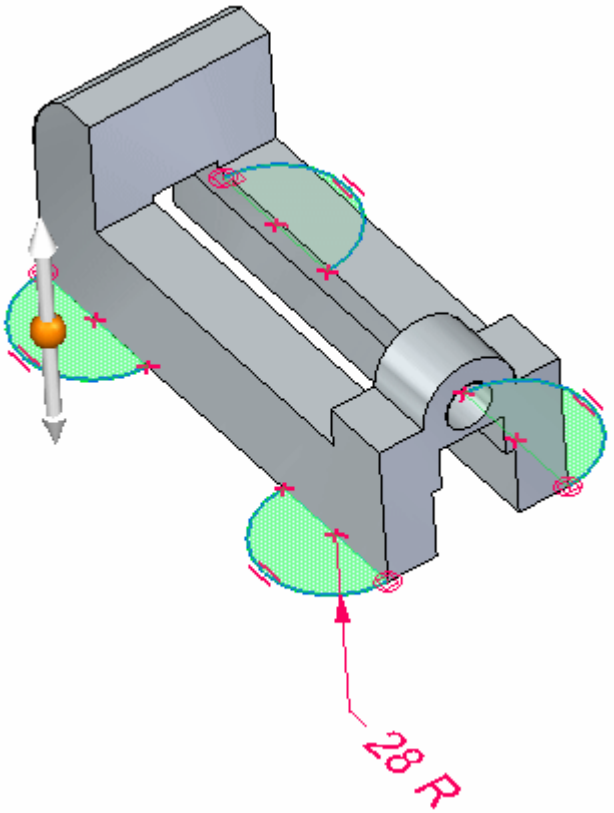
- Open the previous file in which you constructed the base feature- the vise base.

Add material–mounting flanges

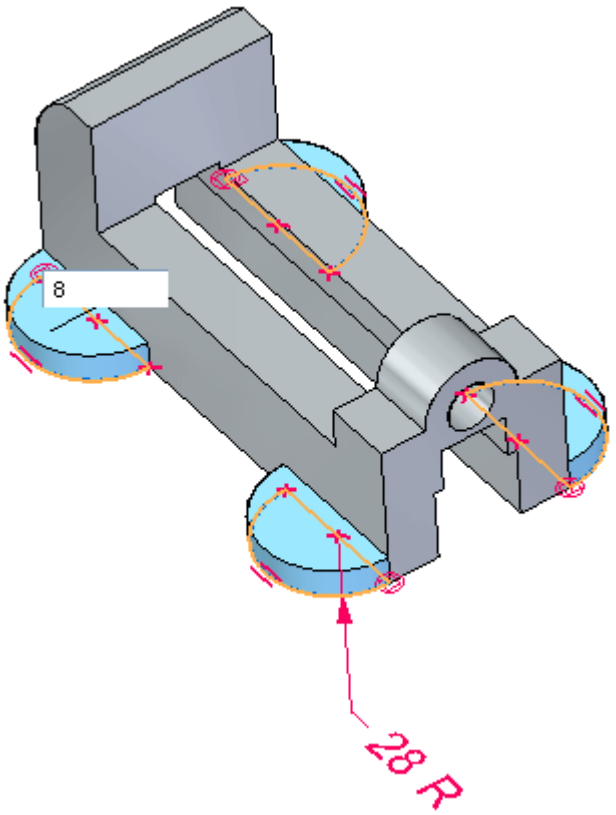
- On the bottom face of the part, sketch four arcs of radius 28 mm. Arc centers lie on the face edge. The arcs are tangent connected to the end faces as shown (A).



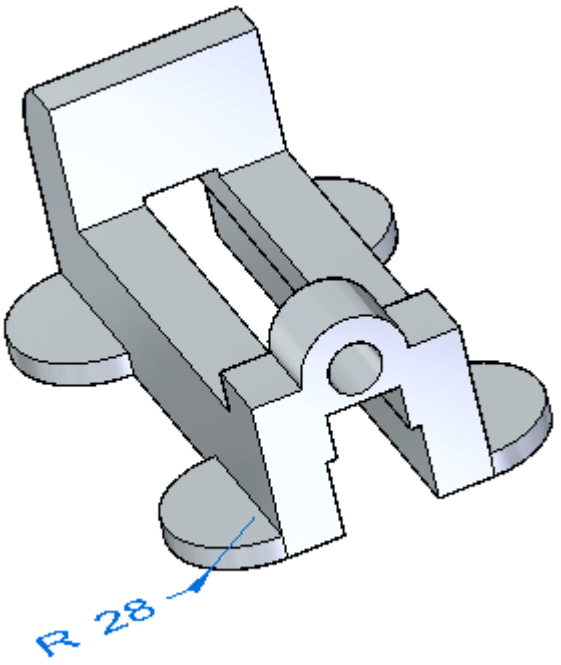
- Holding the Shift key, select the four regions shown.



- Select the “up” arrow to add material towards the top of the part. In the dynamic input box, type a distance of 8 mm.

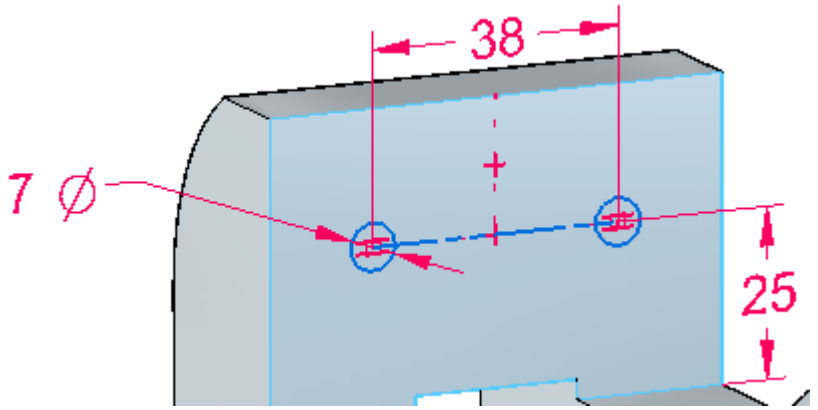


- Click the left mouse button to finish.

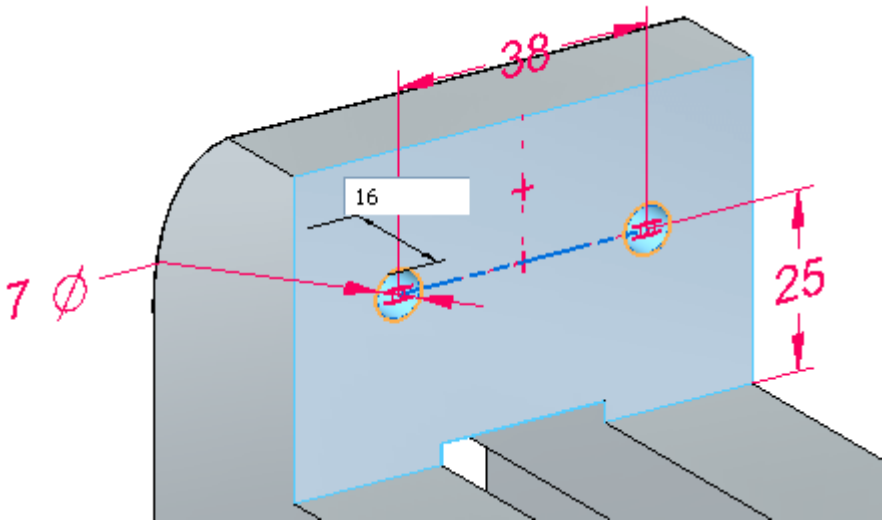


Remove material - mounting holes

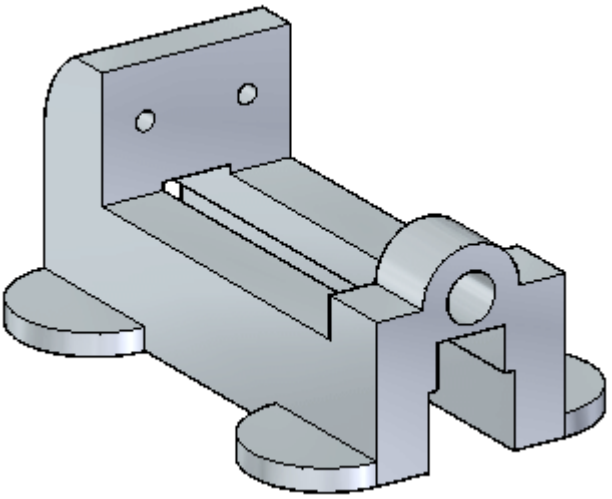
- Sketch two 7 mm diameter circles on the face shown and add dimensions. To center the two circles on the face, draw a line connecting the two circle centers. Change the line to a construction element. Align the midpoint of construction line to the midpoint of the top edge on the face.



- Select both circular regions. You may need to use QuickPick to select the regions.
- Remove material at a depth of 16 mm.



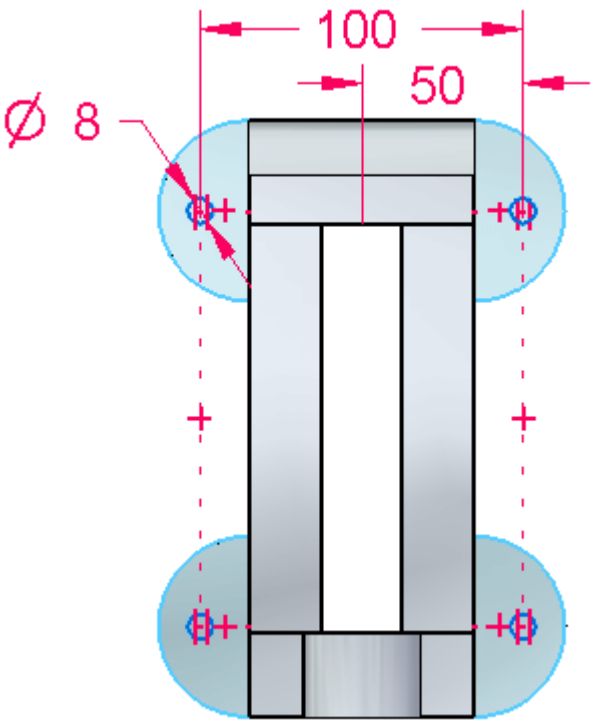
- Click the left mouse button to finish.



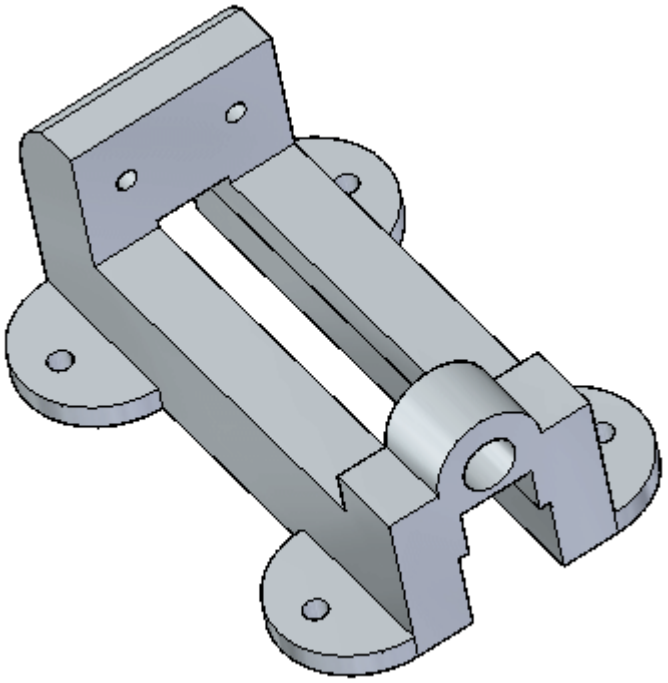
- Sketch four circles of diameter 8 mm on the plane coincident with the top of one circular flange. Dimension them as shown, using the following image as guidance.

Note

The 8 mm circle center is vertically aligned with the center of the flange. The horizontal alignment is controlled by the 50 mm dimension off of the vise base center line.



- Select all four circles and remove material from the flanges.



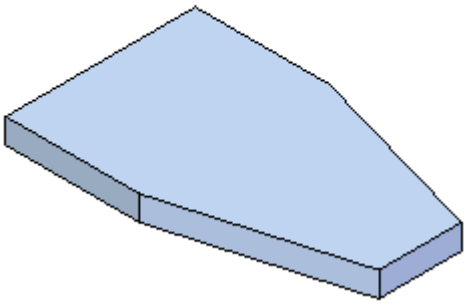
- Save and close this file.

Summary

In this activity you continued to apply techniques to add and remove material from a base feature.

Constructing features using the feature construction commands

Solid Edge provides a feature-based modeling workflow. This workflow is where you select a feature construction command first, such as Extrude, Hole, or Round, then the software guides you through the rest of the process, letting you know what type of input you need to provide at each step.

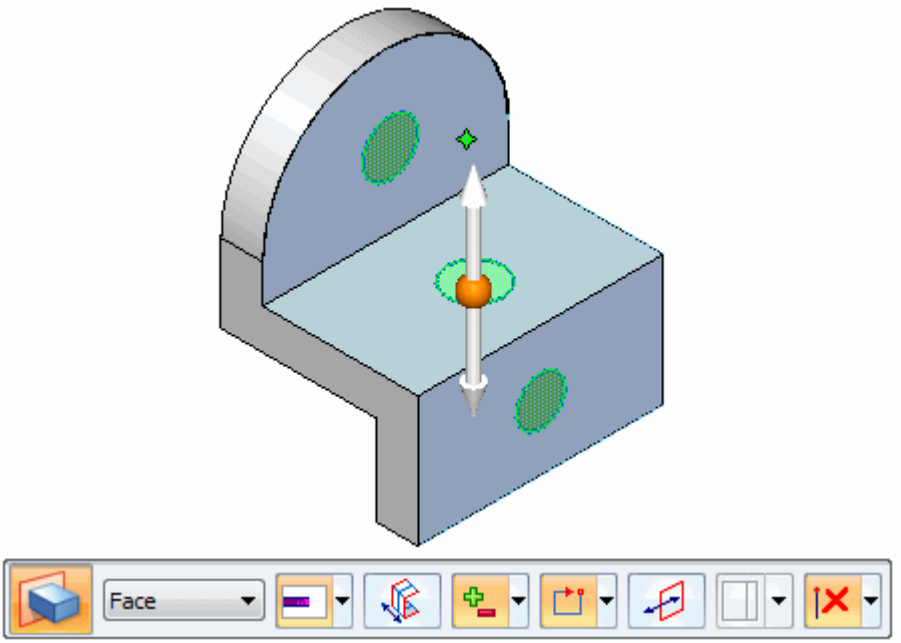


The first step is to click the feature command. You can then use the command bar to define the input required to complete the feature. PromptBar, at the bottom of the working area, also displays prompts as to what you should do.

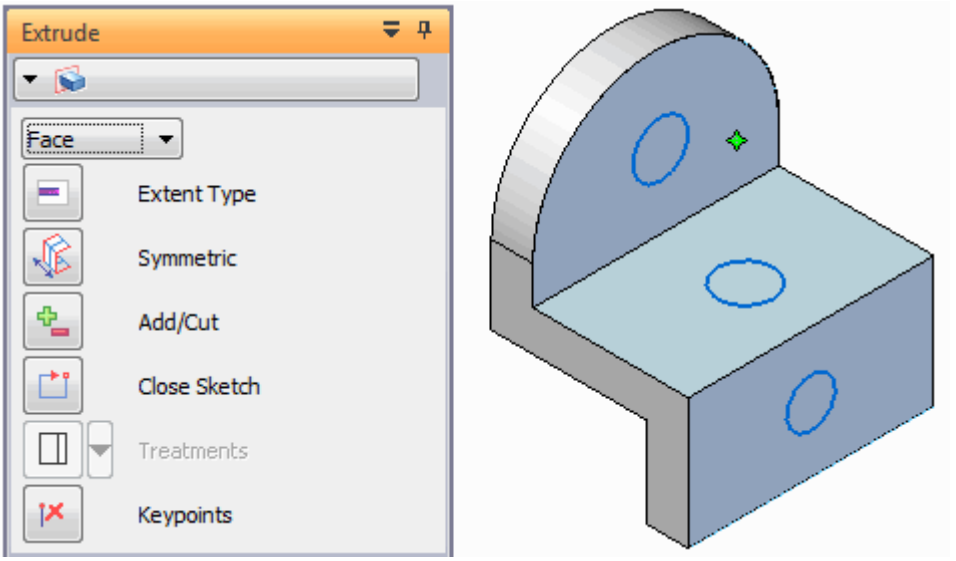
Command bar

The command bar for each feature command contains all the options available for the command. You can select one of two configurations for the command bar:

- Horizontal toolbar form: the command options are contained in a floating toolbar which resides in the document view.



- Vertical docking window form: the command options are contained in a vertical window which can be docked with other windows.



Note

You can choose the command bar configuration from Solid Edge Options® Helpers page® Command User Interface. For more information: Customize Solid Edge options and Helpers page (Solid Edge Options dialog box)

All options specific to the command are included in the command bar, and are generally organized in the sequence you would use to complete the command. You can also use the command bar to go back to a previous step, or to go to an optional step. Although feature construction is a sequential process, you do not have to start all over again if you want to change something you did in an earlier step.

Along with the command bar, the PromptBar will guide you as you complete the necessary command options.

Construction and Reference Elements

You can use construction and reference elements to help you construct features. For example, when constructing a hole feature, you can draw a construction line to help you position the hole properly. You can use the Construction command to change a sketch element into a construction element, or a construction element into a sketch element. Construction elements display using a different line style than sketch elements.

Reference elements are planes and axes used to define sketch planes, extrude extents, and revolve axes.

Model Dimensions

Once a solid model exists, you can fully dimension it as needed. You can define dimensions necessary for manufacturing and other downstream functions directly to the model's edges and faces. In fact, you do not have to create any dimensions in the 2D sketch at all. You can wait until a base feature exists to perform all of the dimensioning work.

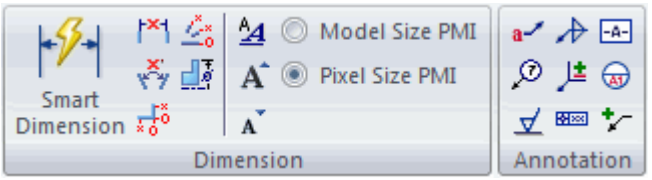
Dimensioning the model

Solid Edge provides a unified set of dimensioning commands whether you're working with a 2D sketch or placing dimensions on a 3D model. This single tool set simplifies your work, allowing you to focus on the job at hand instead of hunting for a unique 2D or 3D command.

You can access dimensioning commands from the following tabs within Solid Edge.

- Home
- Sketching
- Surfacing
- PMI

> **Note**
>
> The PMI tab adds more dimensioning commands, as well as a full set of manufacturing annotations.



The application of dimensions to a 3D model does not differ from placement on a 2D sketch. Since this topic was already covered this in a previous lesson, we will not cover the individual types here.

Editing model dimensions

Dimensions attached to model edges are PMI dimensions. PMI dimensions are created indirectly through sketch migration, and by directly adding them to the model. You can edit any dimensions attached to synchronous feature edges to modify models. You can determine if a dimension can be directly edited by its color. To learn about creating and editing PMI dimensions, see the Help topic, PMI dimensions and annotations.

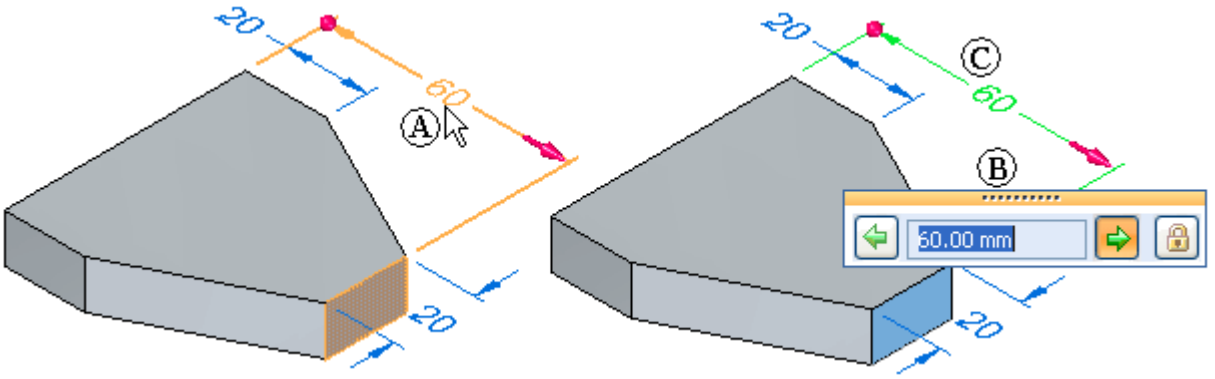
Model dimension editing tools

When you click dimension text, several model editing and selection tools are displayed:

- Dimension value edit controls
- Modify Dimension QuickBar
- Live Rules

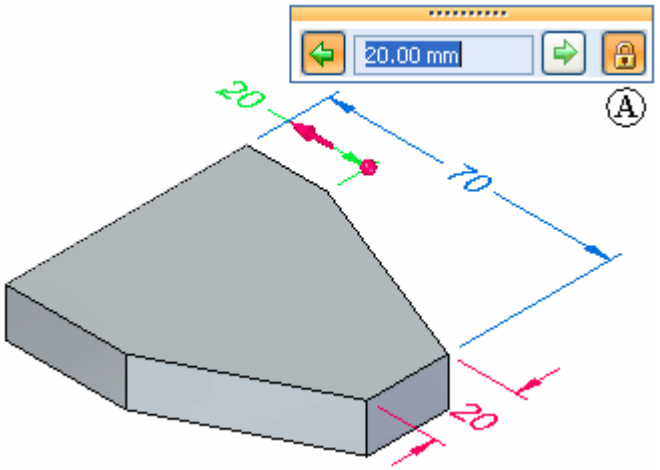
Changing model size

You can change the size of the model by changing the value of one or more PMI dimensions. For example, when you select the dimension text for the 60 mm dimension (A), the dimension value edit handle appears [(B)(C)]. The dimension value edit handle indicates how the model will react if you type a new value for the dimension.

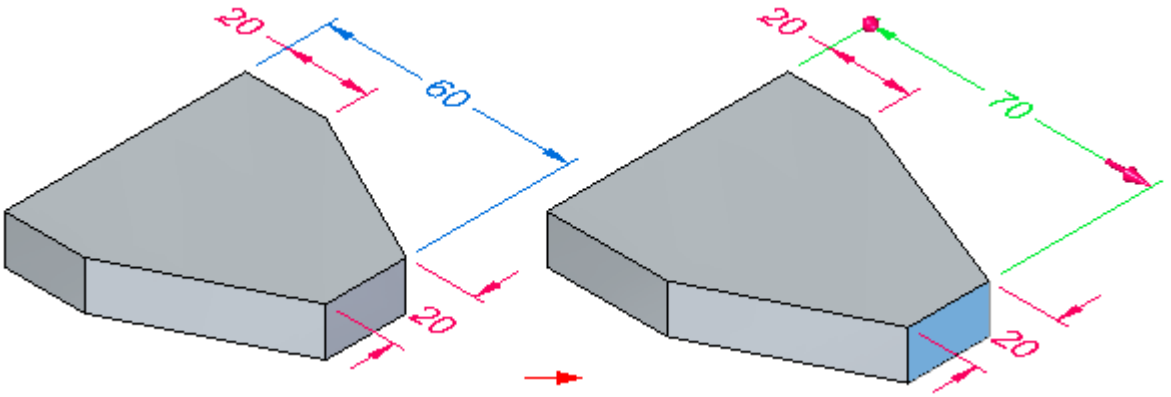


Controlling what is changed

You can use the Lock button (A) on the Dimension Value Edit dialog box to ensure dimensions and the model geometry they control remain unchanged when you edit other model dimensions.



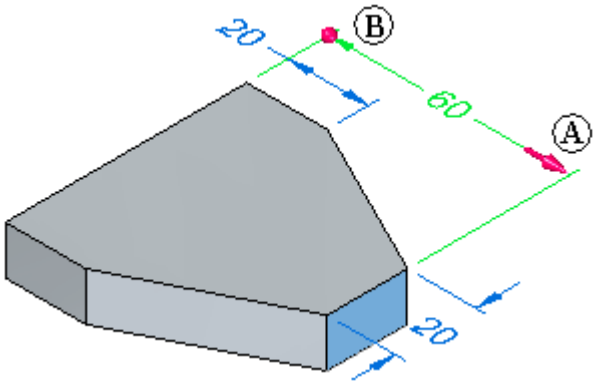
For example, you can lock both of the 20 mm dimensions before you edit the 60 mm dimension. Then, when you edit the 60 mm dimension to 70 mm, the 20 mm dimensions do not change.



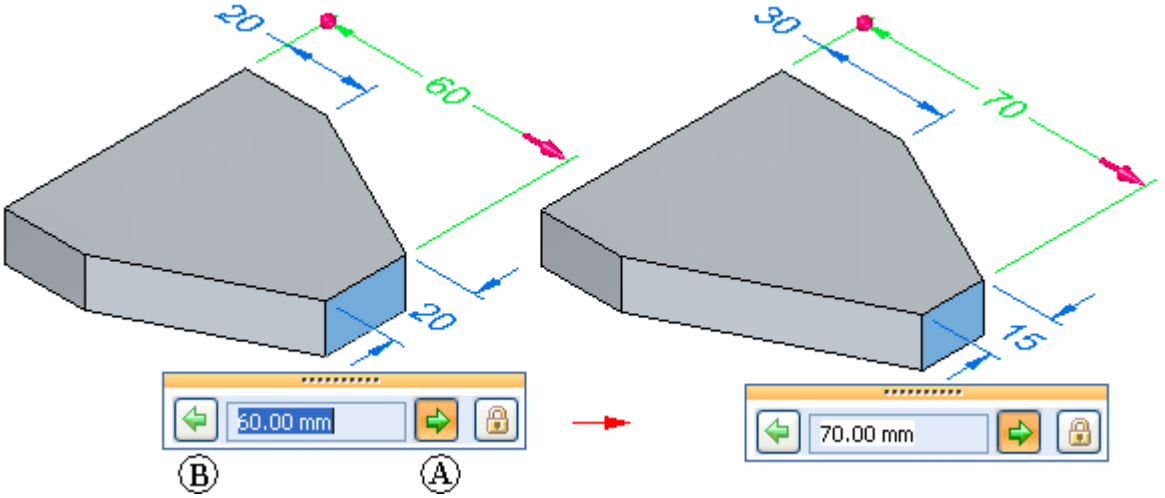
PMI dimensions display using different colors depending on whether they are locked or unlocked.

Controlling the direction of change

When you highlight or select the dimension text on a 3D dimension, the dimension terminators update to indicate which side of the model will change when you edit the value of the dimension. A 3D arrow (A) appears on the side of the model which will be modified, and a 3D sphere (B) appears on the side of the model which remains stationary.



You can also use the options on the dialog box to control how the model reacts to a dimension edit. Use the direction arrows to specify which side of the model is modified (A), and which side remains stationary (B).

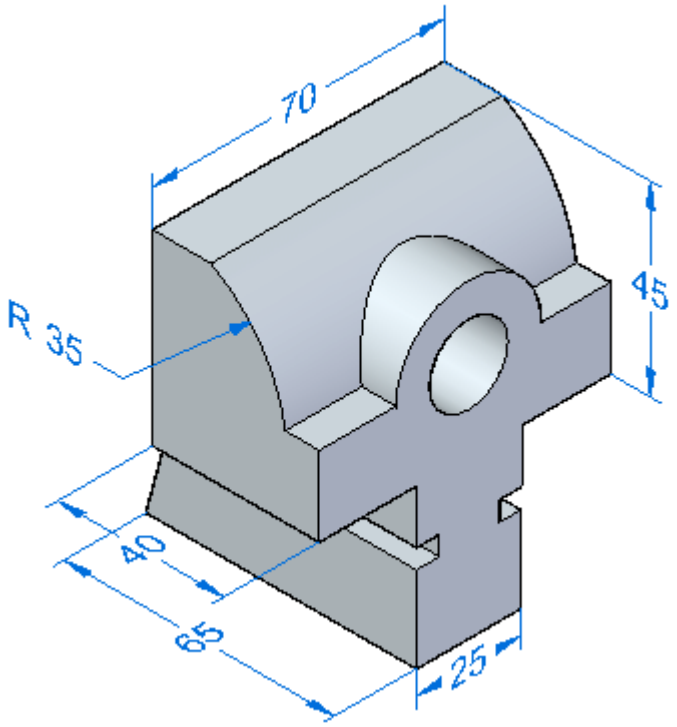


Controlling face selection with Live Rules

When you choose a dimension to edit, you can add or remove faces from the selection set by changing the options in Live Rules. This controls how the model behaves when you modify it.

To learn more, see the Help topic, Working with Live Rules.

Activity: Dimension a model



Overview

This activity demonstrates the process of applying dimensions to define and control a model.

Objectives

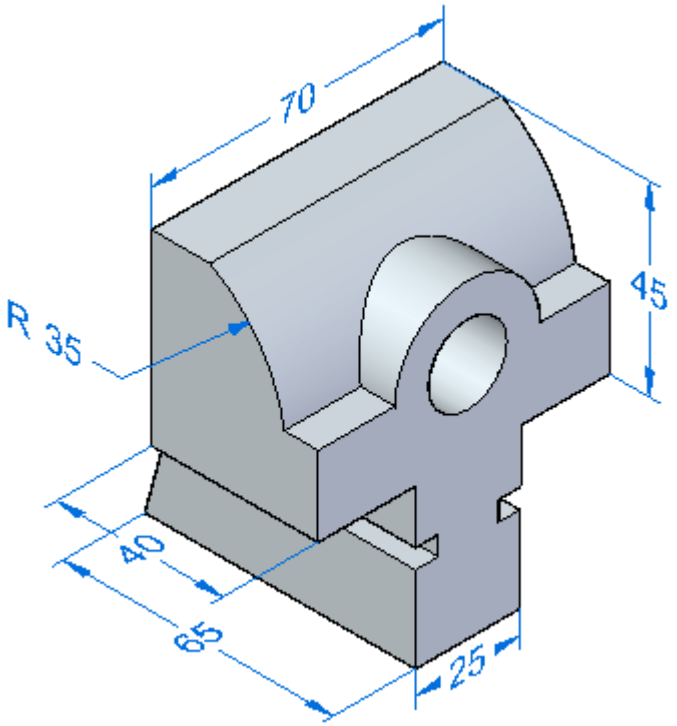
Use some of the dimensioning commands on an existing part.

In this activity you will

- Place linear and radial dimensions.
- Modify these dimensions and observe how the model changes.
- Use virtual vertices to define dimensions.

Activity: Dimension a model

- Open *jaw.par*.

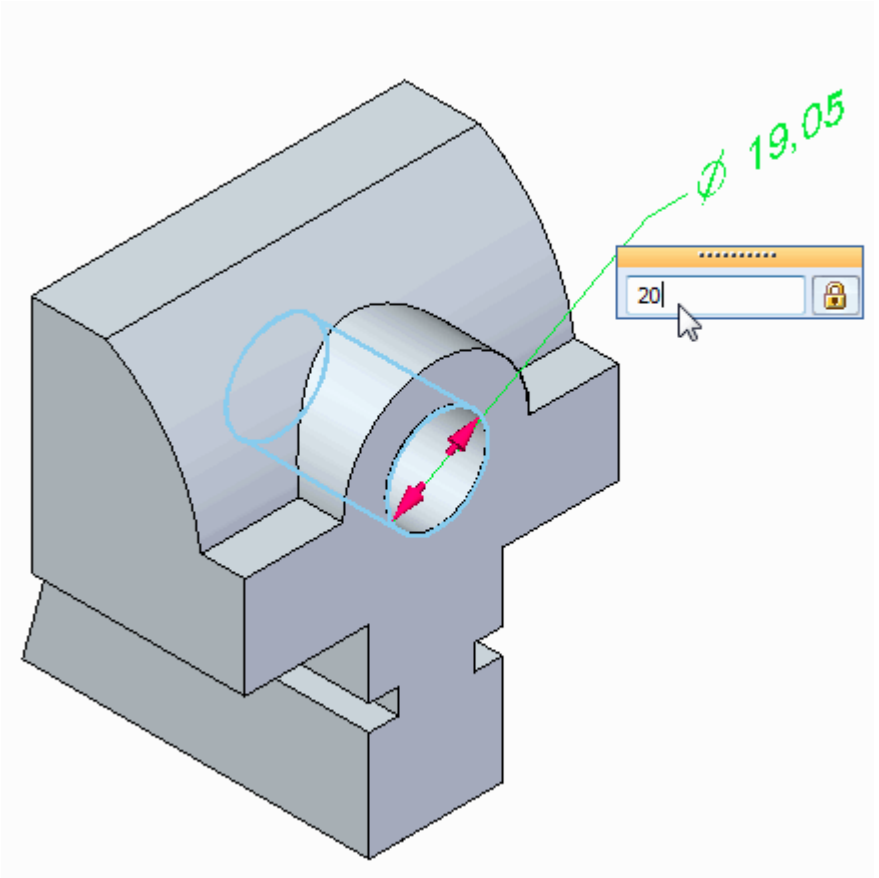


Add dimensions to the model

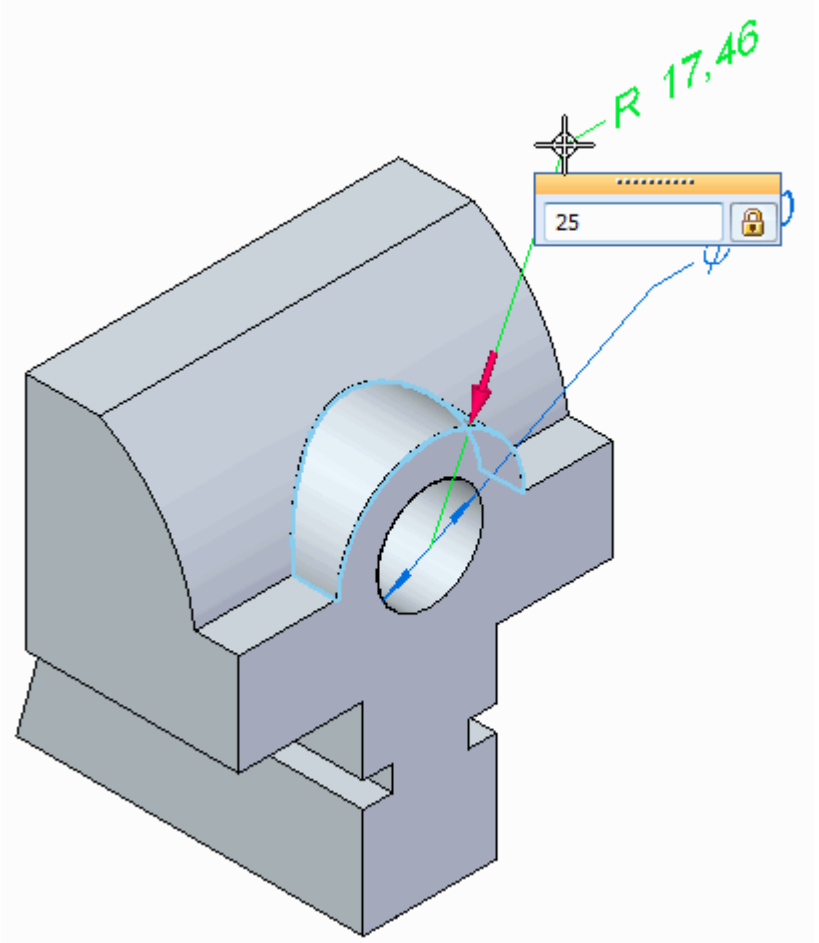
Note

Place dimensions on the 3D part and use them to change the model's size. You will learn that dimensions can be placed at any time in the design cycle, and these dimensions will control the model.

- In PathFinder, turn off the display of the Dimensions collector under PMI.
- Place a diameter on the bore, change its value to 20 mm and press the Enter key.

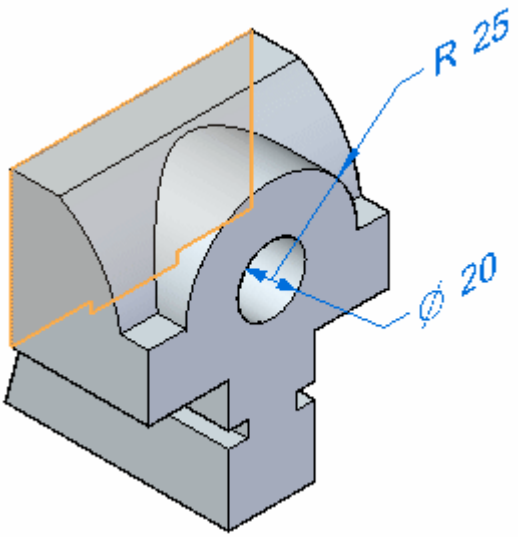


- Place a radius dimension on the saddle surface and change its value to 25 mm.

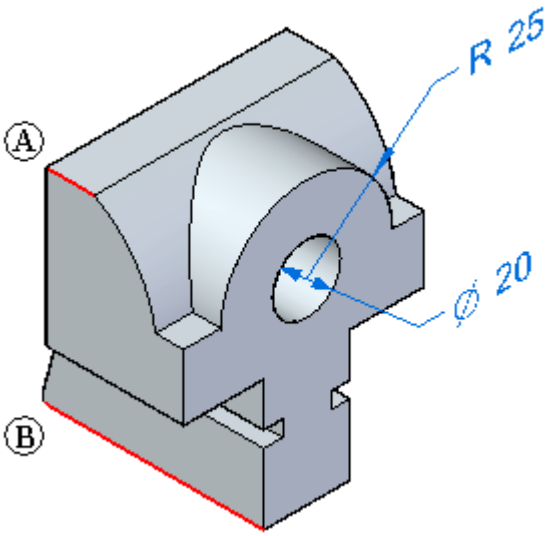


- Select Distance Between to place a dimension representing the overall height of the part.
  - On Command Bar, click the Lock Dimension Plane option .

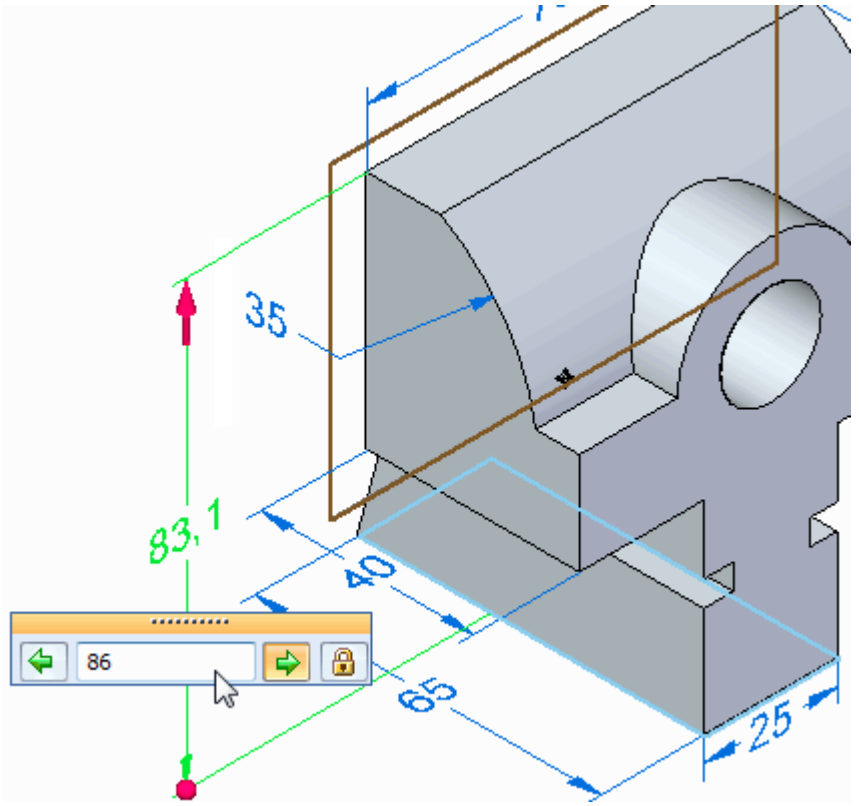
- Use QuickPick to select the dimension plane shown.



- Click edge (A) and then click edge (B).



- Change the dimension value to 86 mm. Ensure that the direction arrow points upward.

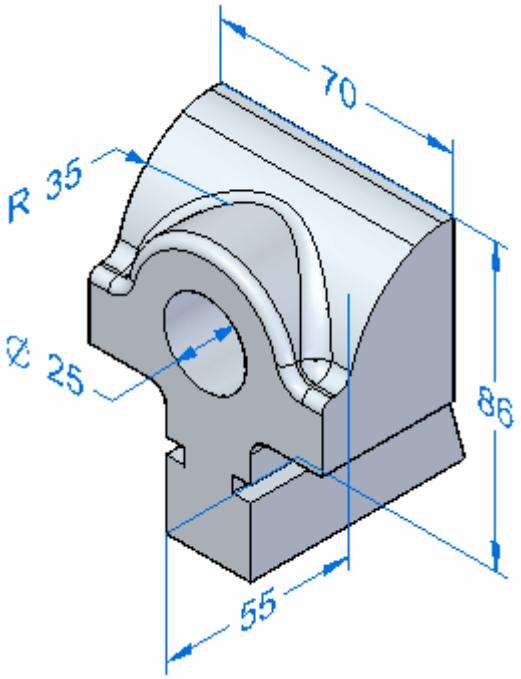


- Press the F3 key to unlock the dimension plane.
- Press the F5 key to refresh the screen to clear the display of the dimension plane.

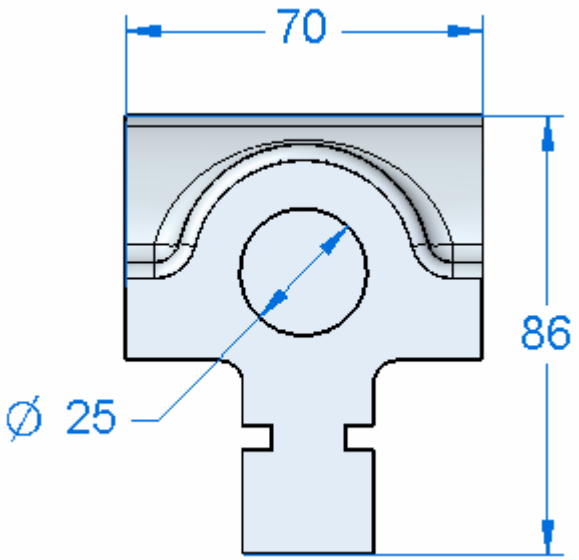
▸ Save and close this file.

Dimension to intersection points

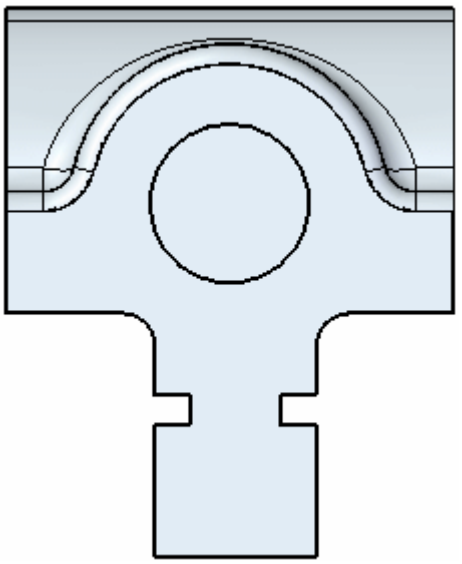
- Open *jaw_rounds.par*. It is similar to the part you just finished working with, yet it has some rounds.



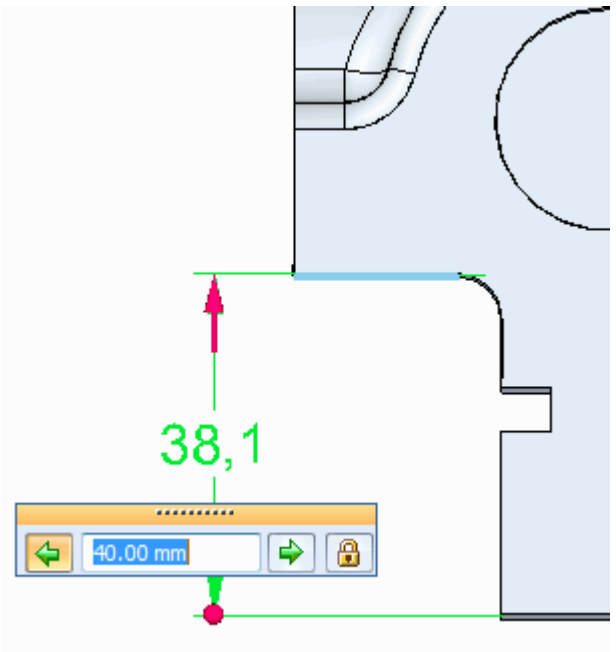
- Press Ctrl+F to change to a front view.



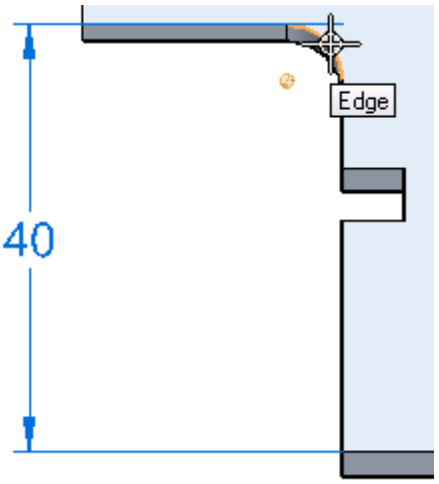
- Use PathFinder to hide the dimensions.



- Place a Distance Between dimension from the bottom edge to the underside edge as shown below. Change its value to 40 mm.



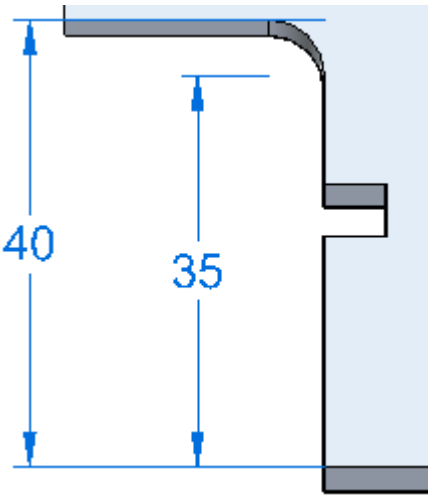
- While still in the Dimension Between command, select the round to dimension to the center of the round.



Note

You can see that the dimension is attached to a virtual center of the round.

- Place the dimension.



- Save and close this file.

Summary

In this activity you placed dimensions on the 3D model. These dimensions can be used to control the model shape. You also learned how to dimension to an intersection using a virtual vertex.

Sketch consumption and dimension migration

In synchronous part and sheet metal documents, you typically draw 2D sketch geometry for the purpose of constructing features on a solid model. In a synchronous model, when you use sketch elements to construct a feature, the sketch elements are consumed and the 2D dimensions you placed on the sketch migrate to the appropriate edges on the solid body, whenever possible.

For more information, see the *Sketch consumption and dimension migration* topic in the Sketching course (spse01510).

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. What type of dimensions attach to the edges of a model?

2. What allows you to prevent change in a dimension when you are editing other dimensions in a model?

Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. What type of dimensions attach to the edges of a model?

   PMI dimensions..

2. What allows you to prevent change in a dimension when you are editing other dimensions in a model?

   The Lock button on the Dimension Edit Value dialog box.

Lesson summary

- You can define dimensions necessary for manufacturing and other downstream functions directly to a model's edges and faces. In fact, you do not have to create any dimensions in the 2D sketch at all. You can wait until a base feature exists to perform all of the dimensioning work.

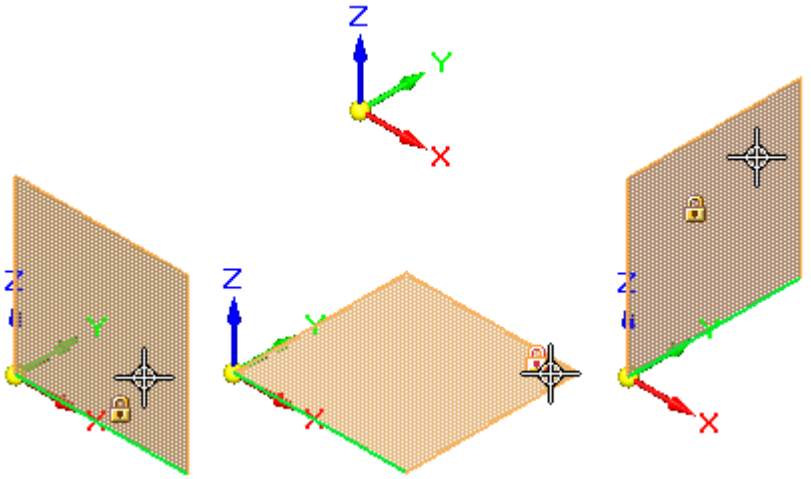
- Solid Edge provides a unified set of dimensioning commands whether you're working with a 2D sketch or placing dimensions on a 3D model. This single tool set simplifies your work, allowing you to focus on the job at hand instead of hunting for a unique 2D or 3D command.

- PMI dimensions are created indirectly through sketch migration, and by directly adding them to the model.

- You can change the size of the model by changing the value of one or more PMI dimensions.

Coordinate systems

A coordinate system is a set of planes and axes used to assign coordinates to features, parts, and assemblies. You can also draw sketches on the principal planes associated with a coordinate system.



There are two types of coordinate systems:

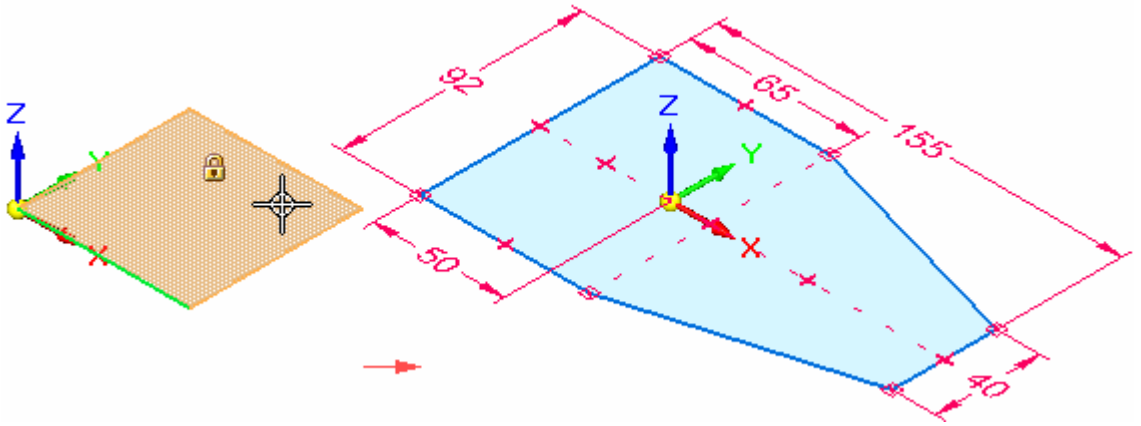
- Base coordinate system
- User-defined coordinate systems

When constructing synchronous parts, you typically use the principal planes of the base coordinate system to draw 2D sketches in 3D space.

You can use a coordinate system to position a part in an assembly. You can measure distances relative to a coordinate system with the Measure Distance and Measure Minimum Distance commands. You can display and hide the base coordinate system. Coordinate systems are displayed in the Coordinate System collection in PathFinder.

Base coordinate system

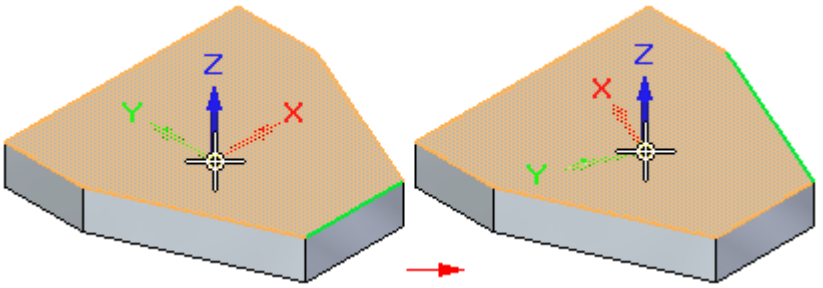
The Base coordinate system is displayed at the origin of a new part or assembly document. When constructing synchronous parts, you typically use one of the principal planes of the base coordinate system to draw a 2D sketch for the first feature of a new part. For example, you can draw the first sketch for a new part on the principal XY plane of the base coordinate system. You can also place dimensions and geometric relationships relative to the primary axes of the coordinate system.



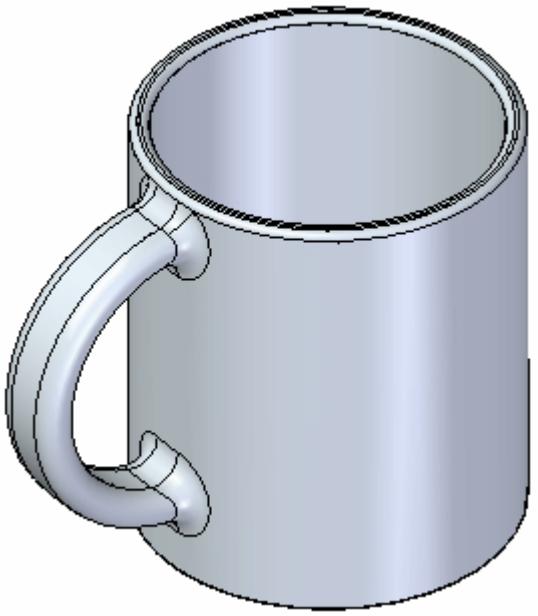
User-defined coordinate systems

When you create a user-defined coordinate system, you can position the coordinate system relative to model geometry, another coordinate system, or in empty space.

When placing a user-defined coordinate system, you can use the shortcut keys to control the orientation of the coordinate system. When placing a coordinate system on a model face, the coordinate system is positioned relative to linear edges on the face. For example, you can use the N key to choose another model edge to orient the coordinate system. The valid shortcut keys are displayed in PromptBar while you are placing the coordinate system.



Activity: Model with a coordinate system



Overview

This activity demonstrates the process of creating features using a coordinate system.

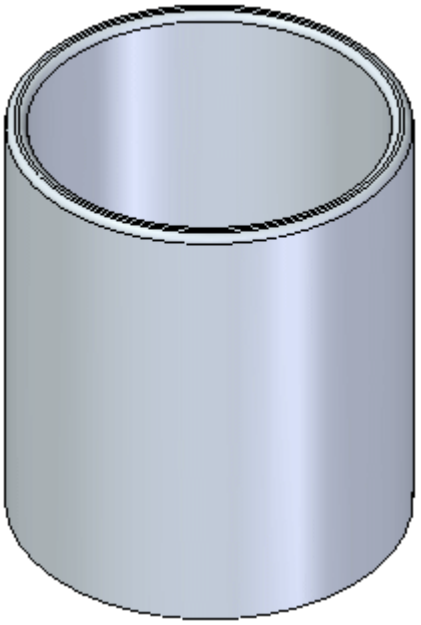
Objectives

Create handle on a coffee cup using coordinate system.

You will access the part *cup.par* for this activity.

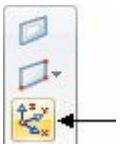
Activity: Model with a coordinate system

- Open *cup.par*.

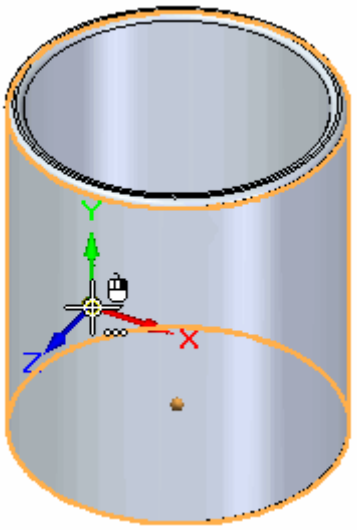


Create a coordinate system

- On the Home tab® Planes group, choose the Coordinate System command.



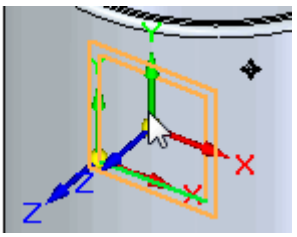
- Place the coordinate system on the outside cylindrical surface of the cup. Do not be concerned with exact location. Press the Esc key when it places.



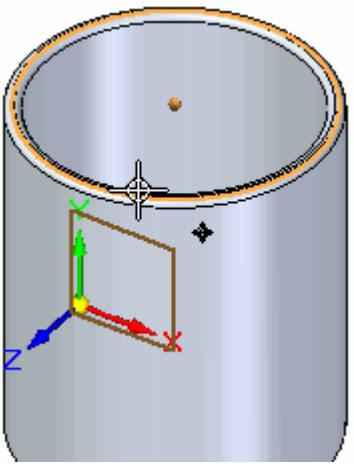
- Place a dimension between the coordinate system's X-axis and the edge on the top of cup.

  - Choose the Lock Dimension Plane option .

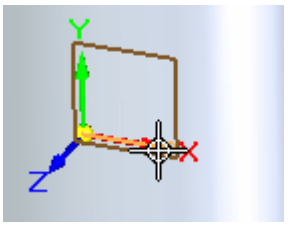
    Lock to the XY plane on the coordinate system on the cylindrical face.

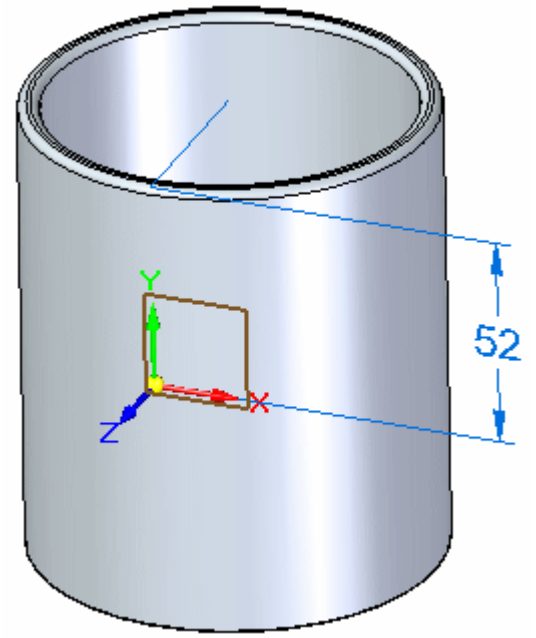


  - Select the edge on the top of the cup.



- Select the X axis on the coordinate system. Change the dimension value to 52 mm.

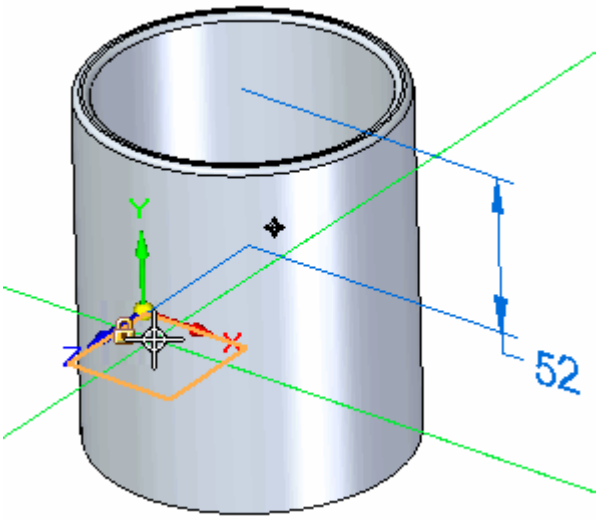




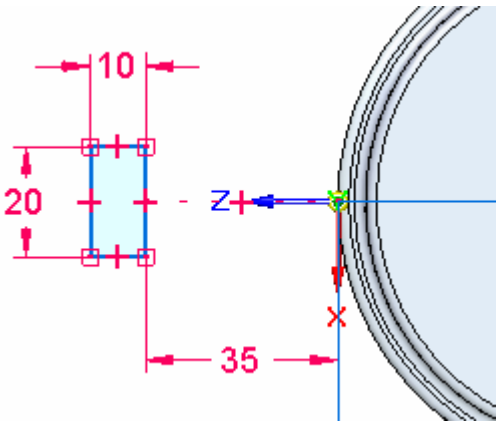
Press F3 to unlock the dimension plane and then F5 to clear its display.

Create the handle

- Draw a rectangle on the coordinate system's XZ plane. Press the N key until the (green) edge shown on the plane highlights and then press the F3 key to lock to that plane.



On the View tab® Views group, choose the Sketch View command. Add dimensions as shown.

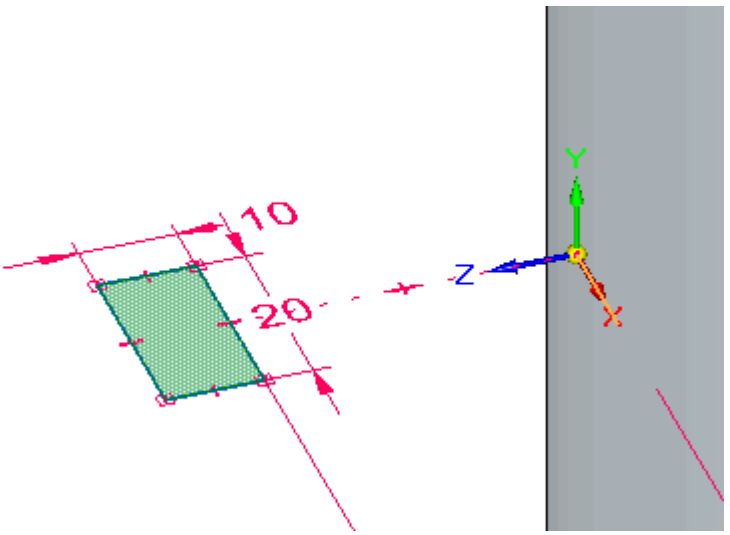


Press F3 to unlock the sketch plane. Press Ctrl+I to return to the ISO view.

- Choose the Revolve command to generate the handle. Select the rectangle as the sketch. Accept it and then select the coordinate system X-axis as the rotation axis. You may need to use QuickPick to locate the X-axis.

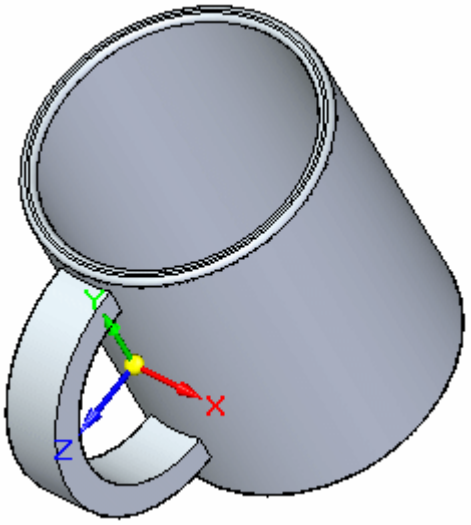
  Note

  In QuickPick, the X-axis name is Edge (Coordinate System 3) - or similar.



- On the command bar, clear the Create Live Section option

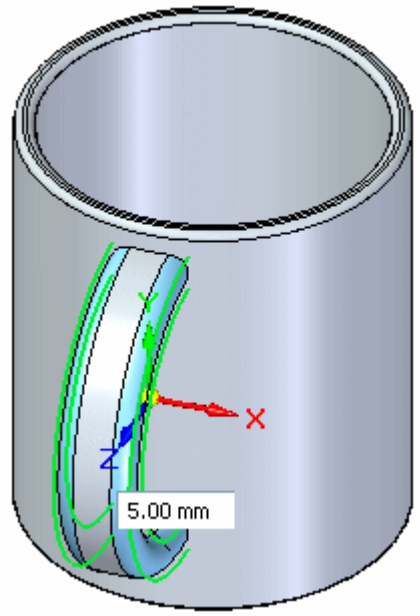
- On the command bar, set the Symmetric option, and type an angle of 183 degrees. Press the Enter key.

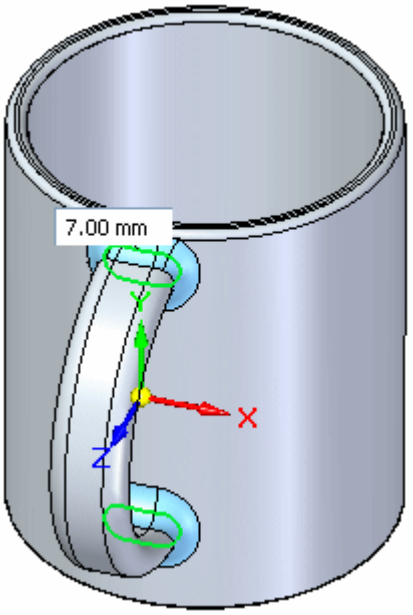


- Save the file.

Optional: Finish the cup

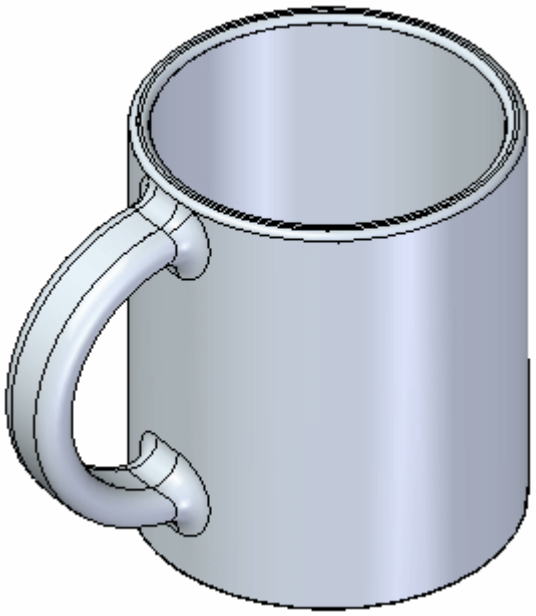
- If you wish to aesthetically finish the handle, you can add rounds to the edges. First add a 5 mm round to the handle's four edges and then right-click. Add a 7 mm round to the two handle/cup interface edges and then right-click.





- Turn off the display of the coordinate system entry in the *Coordinate Systems* collector.

- Save and close this file.



Summary

In this activity you learned how to create a coordinate system to use to draw a sketch. The coordinate system was positioned with dimensions.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. What are the two types of coordinate systems?

2. You can locate which coordinate system type with respect to model geometry or another coordinate system?

Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. What are the two types of coordinate systems?

   The base CS and user-defined CS..

2. You can locate which coordinate system type with respect to model geometry or another coordinate system?

   User-defined coordinate systems.

Lesson summary

- When constructing synchronous parts, you typically use the principal planes of the base coordinate system to draw 2D sketches in 3D space.

- You can use a coordinate system to position a part in an assembly. You can measure distances relative to a coordinate system with the Measure Distance and Measure Minimum Distance commands. You can display and hide the base coordinate system. Coordinate systems are displayed in the Coordinate System collection in PathFinder..

- Pierce and silhouette points can assist in connecting curves to off-plane geometry.

Sets

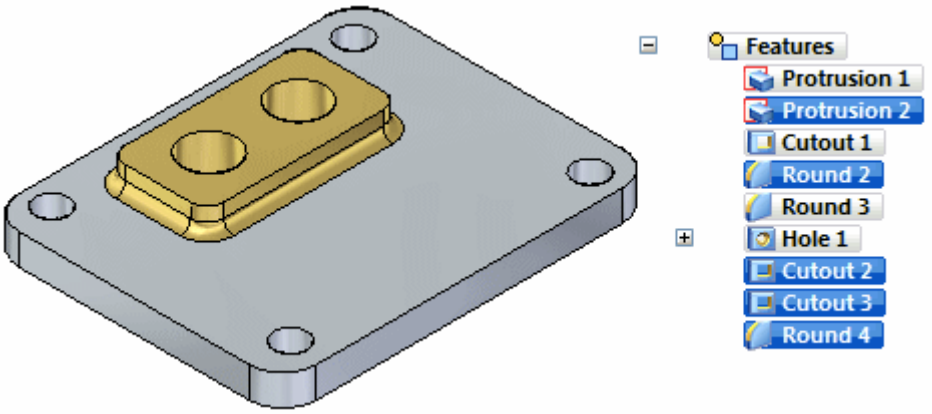
The Extrude command creates a face set in PathFinder; these have names such as *Protrusion 1*. This set contains all faces of the protrusion.

The resulting set of faces may be used as input to other commands, and grouped by the user for further selection.

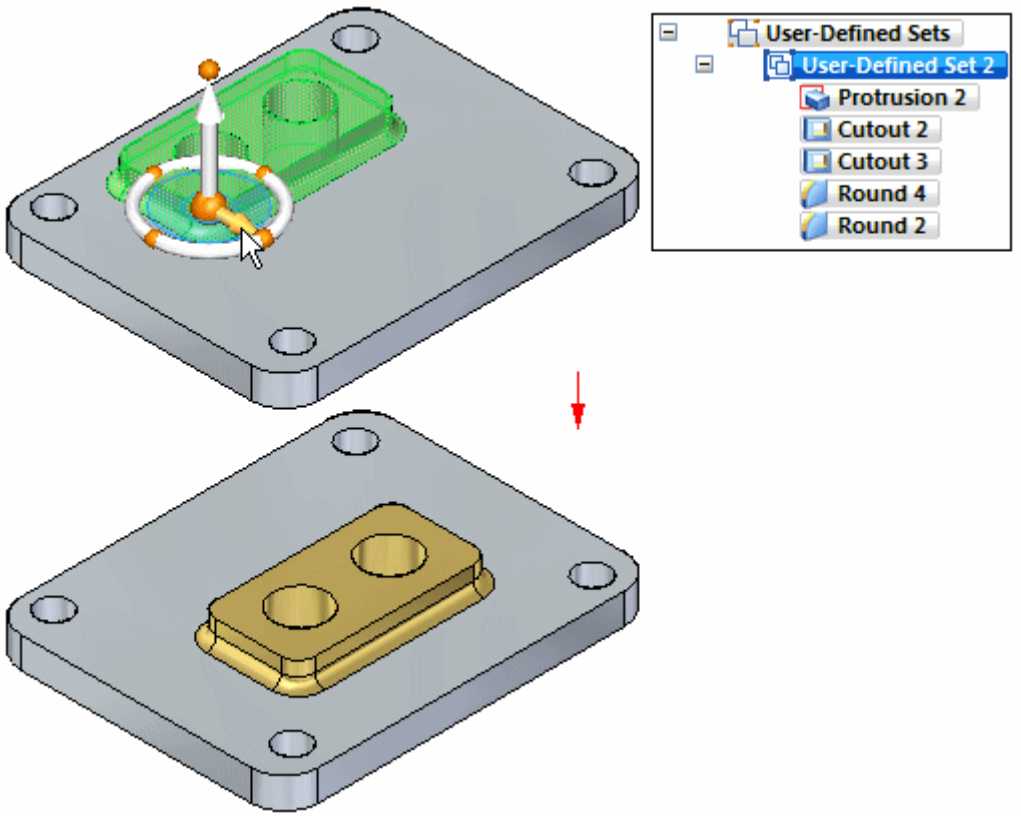
Working with user-defined sets

You use user-defined sets to group a set of features, faces, sketches, and other modeling elements into one entry in the Synchronous portion of PathFinder. This can make it easier to manipulate the set of elements when modifying the model. When you create a user-defined set, it is added to the User-Defined Set collection in PathFinder.

For example, you can create a user-defined set that includes an extruded feature, two cutouts on the extruded feature, and the round features between the extruded feature and the rest of the model.



You can then select the user-defined set in PathFinder and use the steering wheel to quickly move the user-defined set to a new location.



Note

User-defined sets are only available in the Synchronous portion of a model.

The following commands are available for working with user-defined sets:

- Create User-Defined Set
- Add to User-Defined Set
- Dissolve User-Defined Set

Creating user-defined sets

You can create a user-defined set by selecting the elements you want in the set in PathFinder or the graphics window. With the set of elements selected, you can use the Create User-Defined Set command on the shortcut menu to create the set. You can use the Rename command on the shortcut menu to rename the set to a more logical name.

The following element types can be included in a user-defined set:

- Faces
- Features
- Complete sketches
- User-defined reference planes
- User-defined coordinate systems
- PMI dimensions (only when another valid element is also selected)

Note

Some types of elements are not valid for adding to a user-defined set. If no valid elements are in the select set, the Create User-Defined Set and Add to User-Defined Set commands are not available. Also, these commands will not be available in the Ordered portion of the model.

Adding to an existing user-defined set

The Add to User-Defined Set command can be used to add new elements to an existing user-defined set. When you select an element to add to an existing set, then click the Add to User-Defined Set command on the shortcut menu, you are prompted to select an existing set to which you want to add the new elements. You can then select the existing set in PathFinder.

Dissolving a user-defined set

The Dissolve User-Defined Set command can be used to dissolve or modify an existing set. When you dissolve an existing set, the element set remains selected. You can then deselect the elements you wanted to remove from the previous set, then use the Create User-Defined Set command to create a new set that does not contain the deselected elements.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. Are user-defined sets available in both Synchronous and Ordered portions of a model?

2. How do you delete a user-defined set?

Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. Are user-defined sets available in both Synchronous and Ordered portions of a model?

   No. They're available in Synchronous only..

2. How do you delete a user-defined set?

   The Dissolve User-Defined Set command..

Lesson

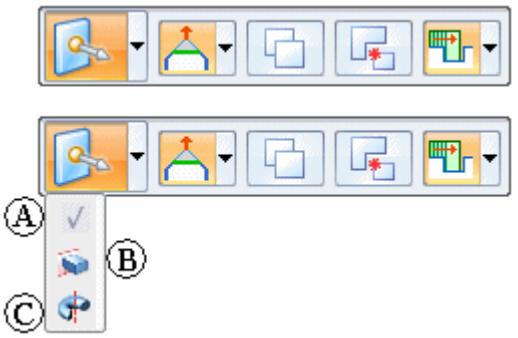
3 *Moving and rotating faces*

Part modification by moving and rotating faces and planes

Overview

A synchronous solid model is a set of connected facial topology that encompasses a volume. You modify a synchronous solid model by manipulating the facial topology. In this course, you learn to modify a synchronous model by moving and rotating facial topology.

- Synchronous model faces and reference planes can move or rotate.
- When you select a face, command bar displays the commands available for the selected face.
- Move (A) is the default command .
- Move includes both a linear direction movement and a rotational movement.

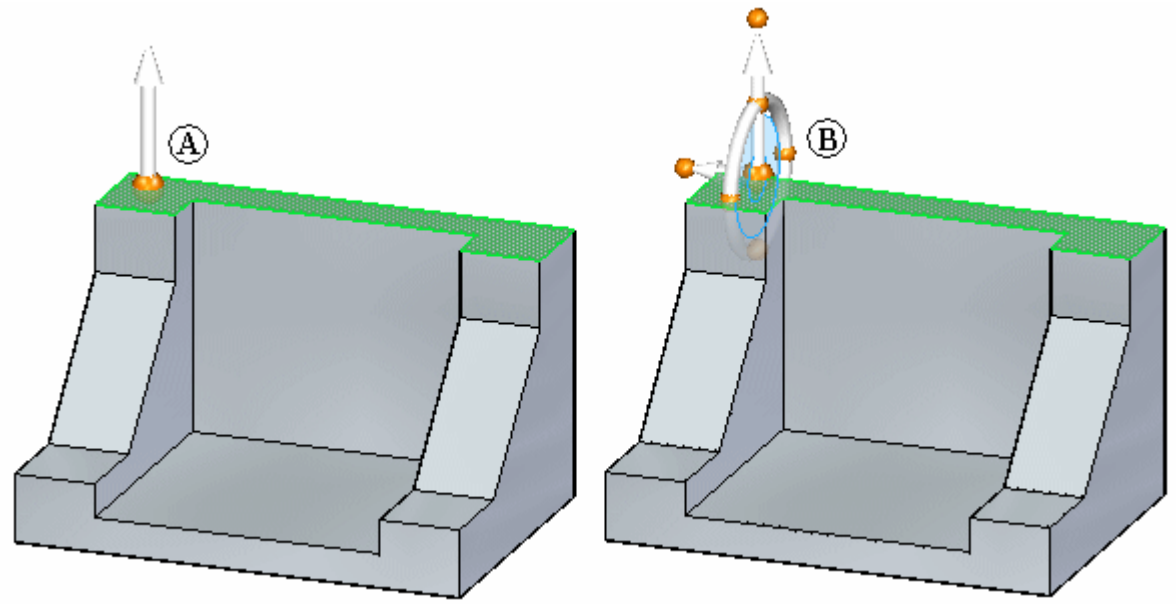


Note

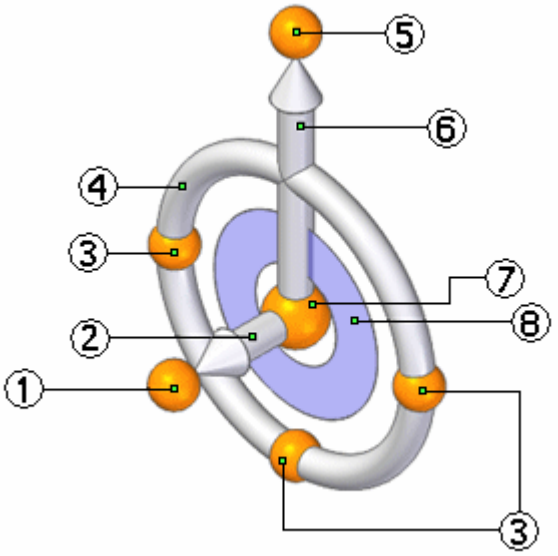
The Constructing base features course covers the Extrude (B) and Revolve (C) commands.

Moving synchronous faces

When you select a synchronous face or reference plane, a default graphic handle (A) appears at the select point. If you select the handle origin, a different graphic handle (B) appears with more move options. Click the primary axis, secondary axis, or torus to start the Move command.



Graphic handle (3D steering wheel)



(1) secondary knob

(2) secondary axis

(3) cardinal points

(4) torus

(5) primary knob

(6) primary axis

(7) origin

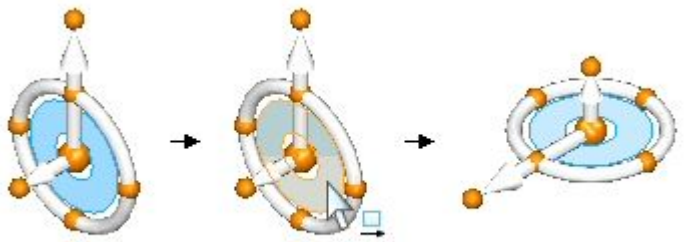
(8) tool plane

Reorient the steering wheel

To learn how to use the 2D steering wheel, see the 2D steering wheel overview.

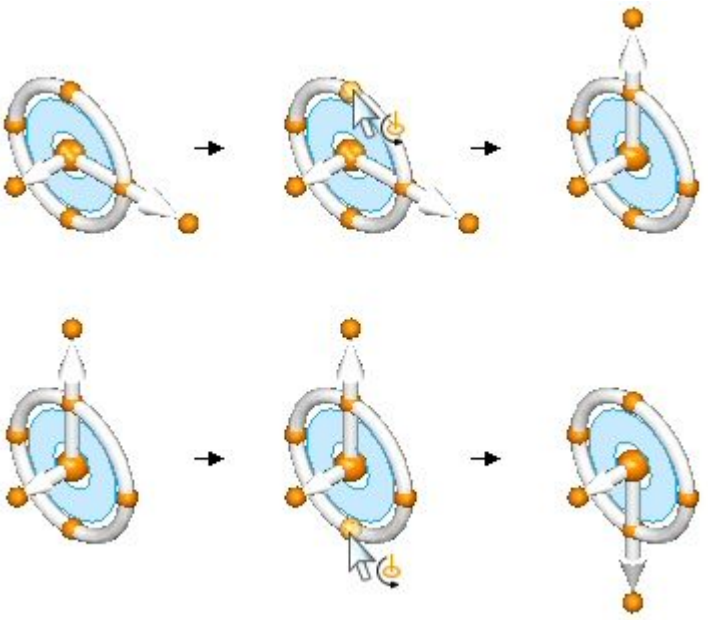
Swap the primary and secondary axes

1. Hold the Shift key down.
2. Click the steering wheel plane.



Change the direction of the primary axis at 90° increments

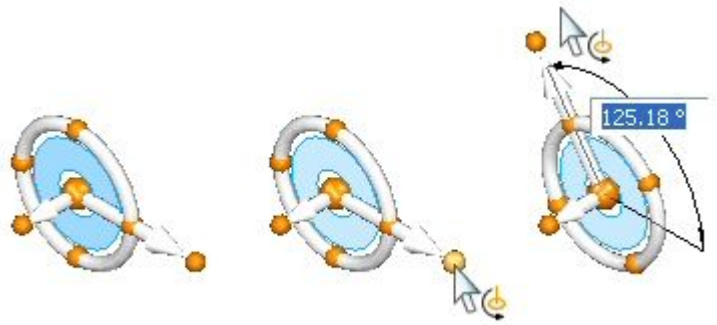
- Click a cardinal point on the steering wheel torus.



Change the direction of the primary axis at a user-defined angle

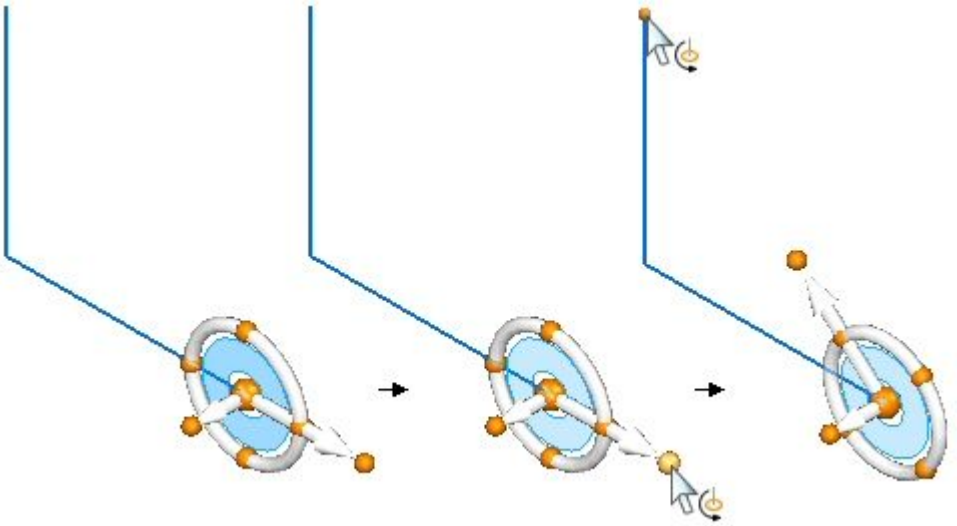
1. Hold the Shift key down.
2. Click the primary axis knob.
3. Move the cursor to define the angle or type an angular value in the dynamic edit box.

4. Press the Tab key.



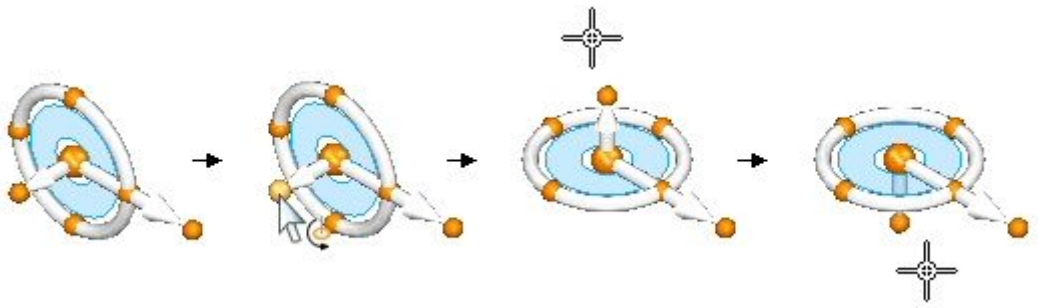
Change the direction of the primary axis using a geometric keypoint

1. Click the primary axis knob.
2. Move the cursor over the target keypoint and then click.



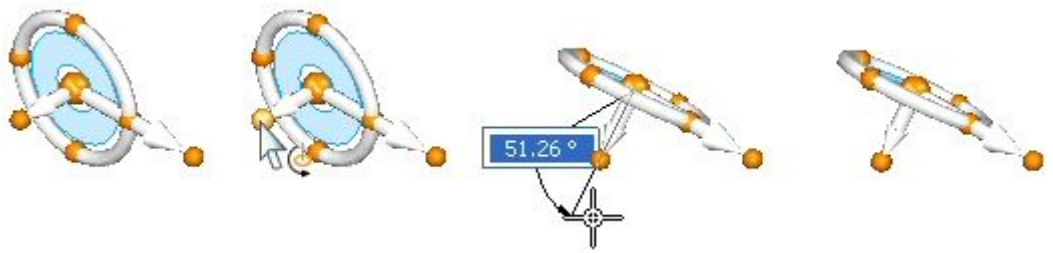
Change the direction of the secondary axis

1. Click the secondary axis knob.
2. As the cursor moves, the secondary axis automatically locks onto a 90° increment in either direction. Click to apply the new direction.



Change the secondary axis direction at a user-defined angle

1. Hold the Shift key down.
2. Click the secondary axis knob.
3. Move the cursor to define the angle or type an angular value in the dynamic edit box.
4. Press the Tab key.

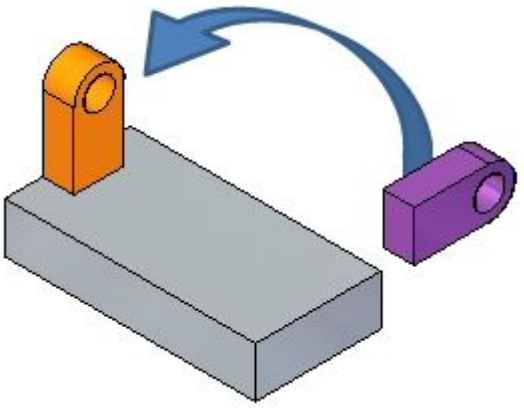


Maintain a steering wheel orientation at a different location

- Hold the Shift key down and drag the steering wheel origin to the new location. If you drag the steering wheel origin near an edge midpoint, the origin snaps to the midpoint. Click to position the steering wheel at the midpoint or continue dragging the origin to another location.

Activity: Reorient the steering wheel

The activity guides you through the process of reorienting the steering wheel. The steering wheel orientation controls the movement direction of selected geometry during a synchronous operation.



Activity: Reorient the steering wheel

Overview

Examine the components used for reorienting the steering wheel. In this activity, a geometric feature moves using the steering wheel. The steering wheel orients to define the move direction.

Open activity file

- Open *steering_wheel.par*.

Move geometry in the primary and secondary axes directions

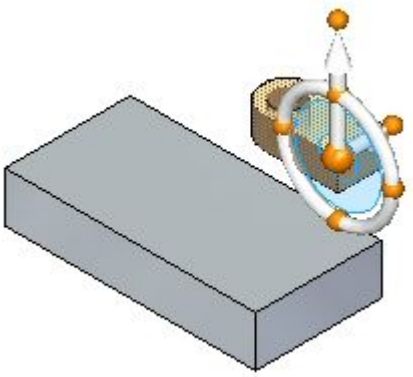
Note

A move in the primary axis direction occurs on the steering wheel plane. A move in the secondary axis direction is normal to the steering wheel plane.

Note

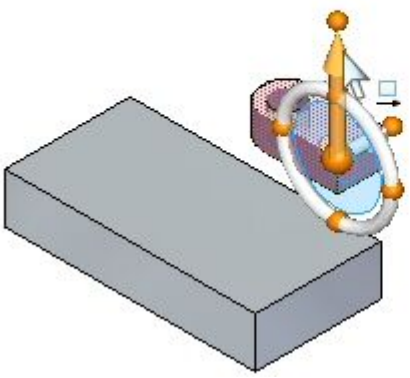
A move occurs between the *move from* point to the *move to* point. The *move from* point is always the steering wheel origin. The *move to* point can be a keypoint, user-defined distance, or a drag and click location.

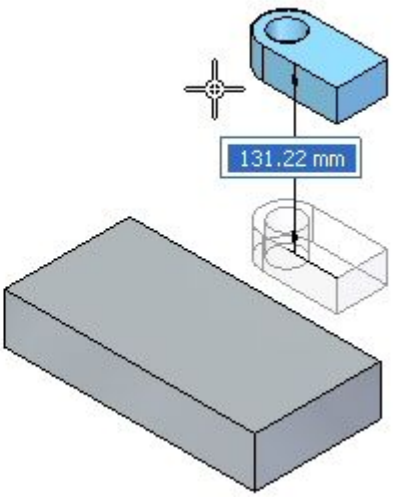
- In PathFinder, select the feature named *feature A*.



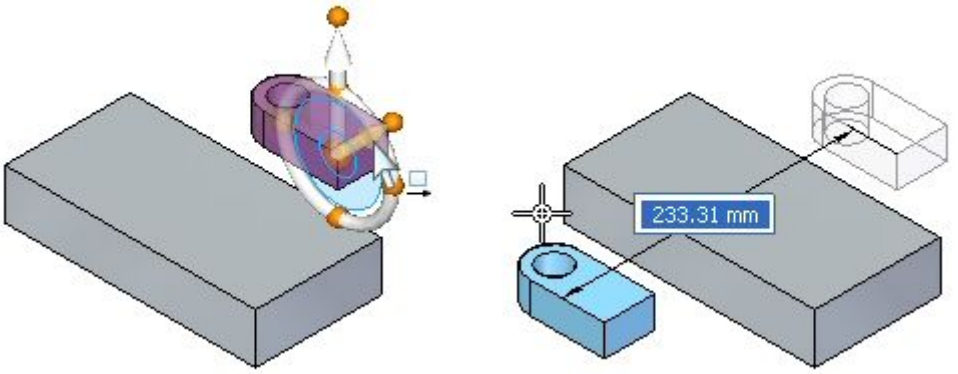
- Click the primary axis. As you drag the cursor up and down, notice the feature moves in a direction defined by the primary axis.

  At this point, you can drag and click to define the move distance, type a distance value in dynamic edit box, or select a keypoint.





- Press the Esc key to end the move.
- Click the secondary axis. As you drag the cursor, notice the feature moves in a direction defined by the secondary axis.

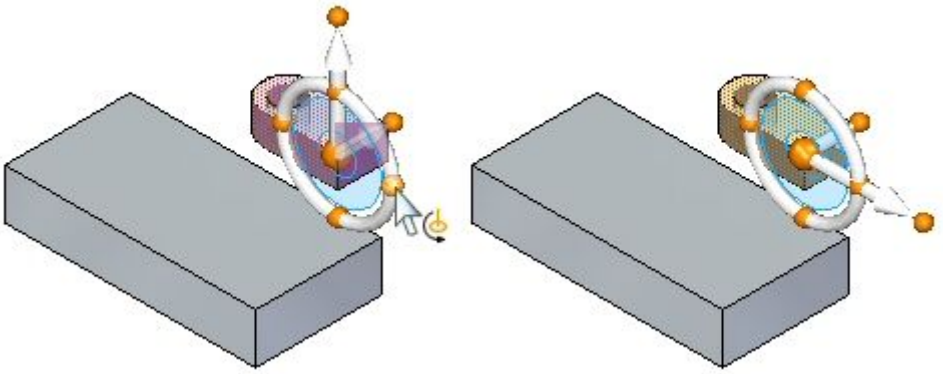


- Press the Esc key to end the move.

Change the direction of the primary axis

Note

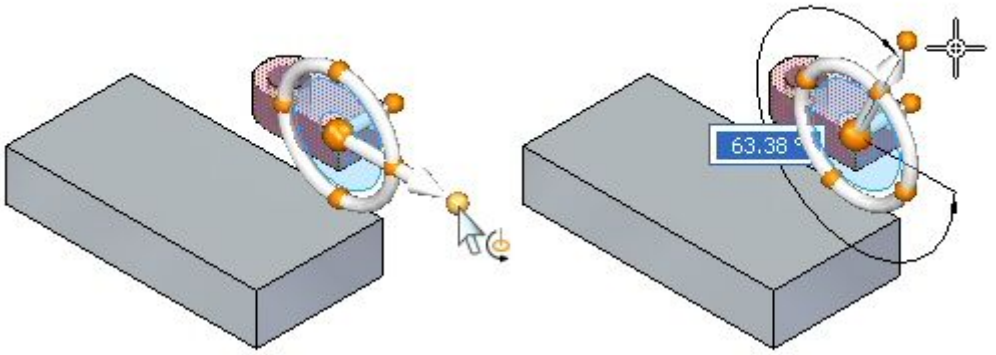
You can change the primary axis direction in 90° increments by clicking a cardinal point.



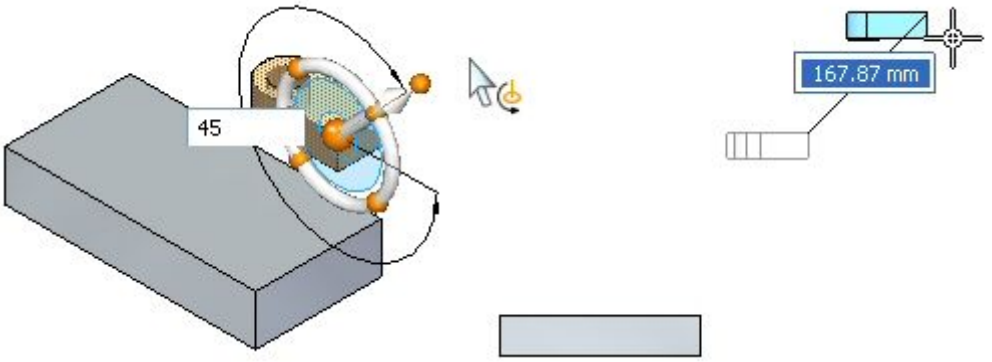
Note

You can change the primary axis direction at a user-defined point or a drag and click point to define direction angle

- Hold the Shift key and click the primary knob.



- Move *feature A* at a 45° direction angle. Once the angle is set, click the primary axis to start the move. The right portion of the image shows a front view to better visualize the 45° movement.



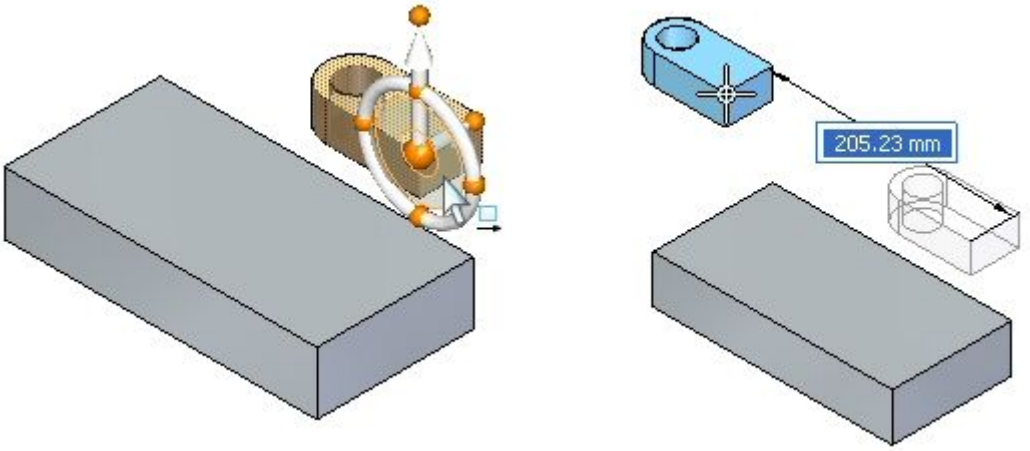
- Press the Esc key to end the move.

Move geometry in the steering wheel plane

You can perform a free move to any point on the steering wheel plane. You click the steering wheel plane and drag the selected geometry to a desired location and then click, or select a keypoint.

- Select *feature A*.

- Click the steering wheel plane. Drag the feature around and notice that the movement is locked to the steering wheel plane.



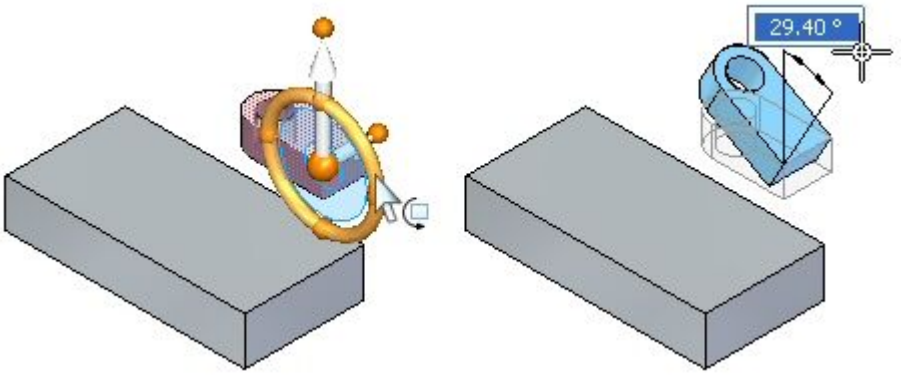
- Press the Esc key to end the move.

Use the steering wheel torus to rotate geometry

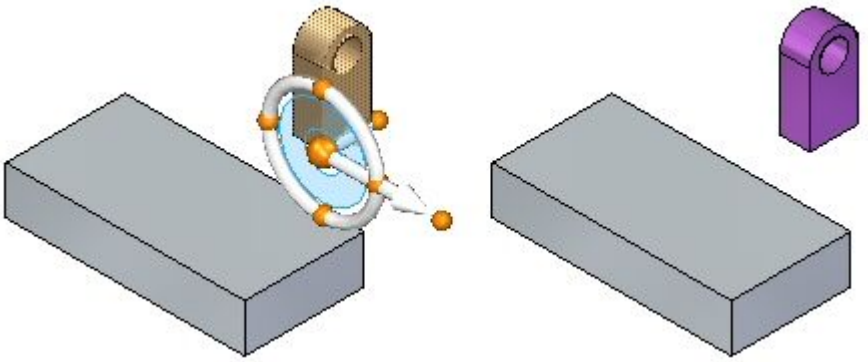
Clicking the torus starts a rotate operation. The rotation axis is the secondary axis. You click the steering wheel torus and drag and then click to define the rotation angle. You can also type a rotation angle in the dynamic edit box.

- Select *feature A*.

- Click the torus and rotate *feature A* 90°.



- Click to end the rotate command.

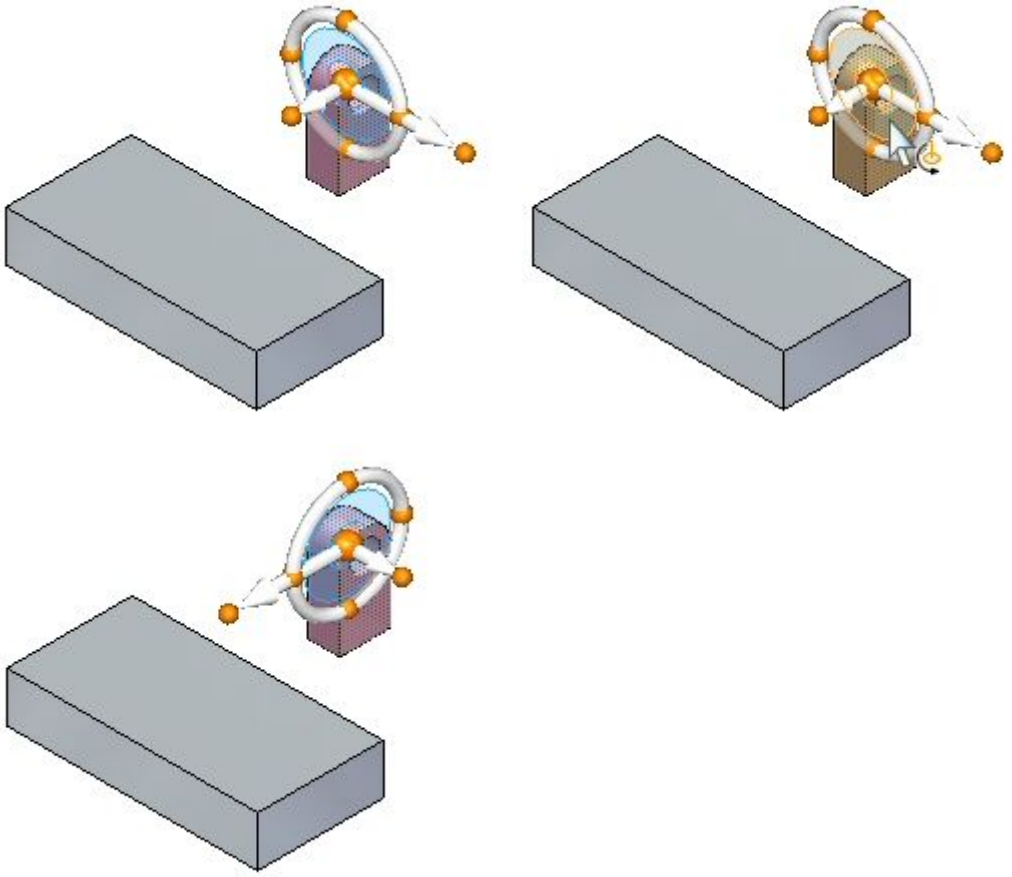


Swap primary/secondary axes

You swap the primary and secondary axes by holding down the Shift key and clicking the steering wheel torus plane.

- Select *feature A*.

- Hold down the Shift key and click the steering wheel plane.



Note

This is a quick method of changing the rotation axis.

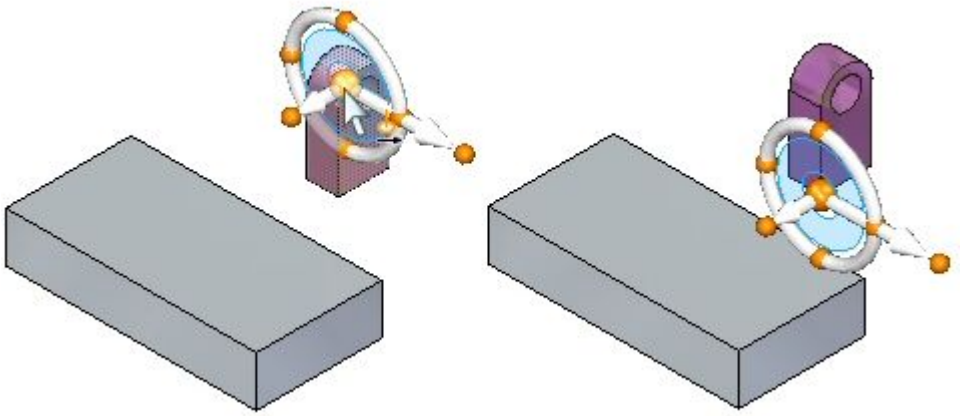
- Press the Esc key.

Change the direction of the primary/secondary axes using a geometric keypoint

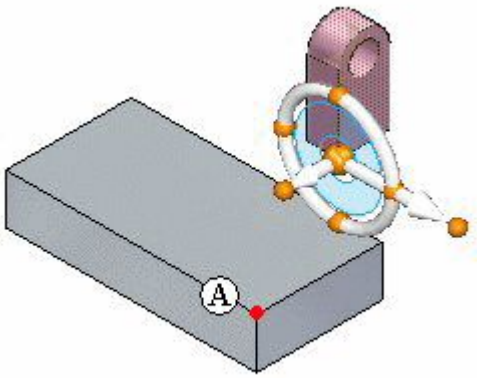
You can change the direction of the primary or secondary axis by clicking the axis knob and then selecting a geometric keypoint.

- Select *feature A*.

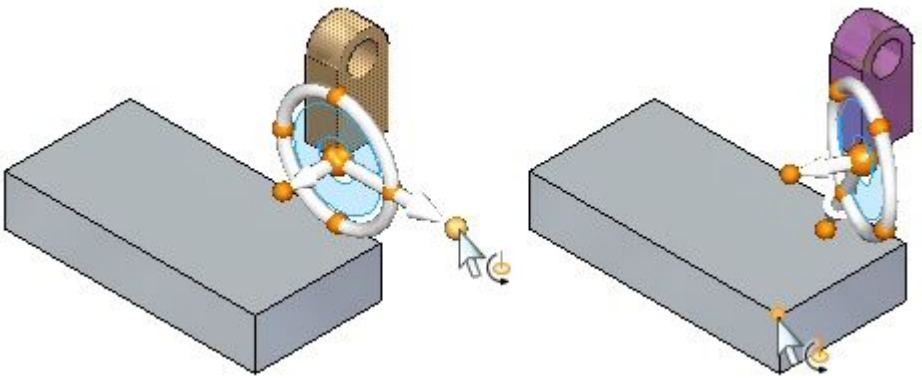
- Reposition the move from point. Select the steering wheel origin and then drag the origin to the corner of the selected feature shown.



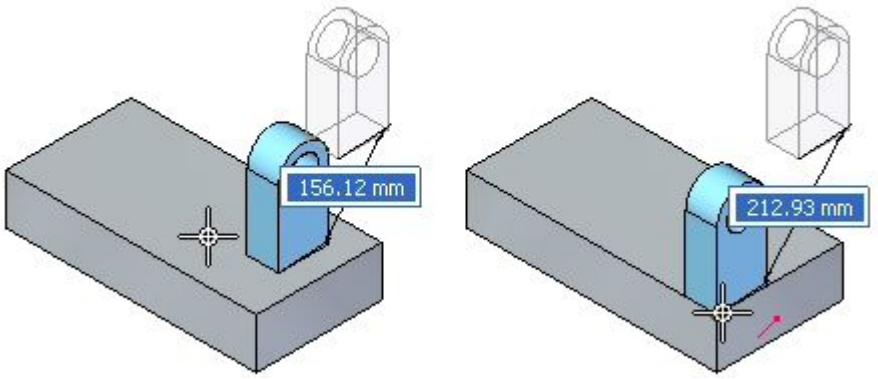
You want to move the feature to corner (A). Define the direction axis pointing to corner (A).



- Click the primary axis knob. Move the cursor over corner (A) and click when the endpoint displays.



- Click the primary axis and notice the direction of movement.



At this point if you click the endpoint shown, the feature moves to that point.

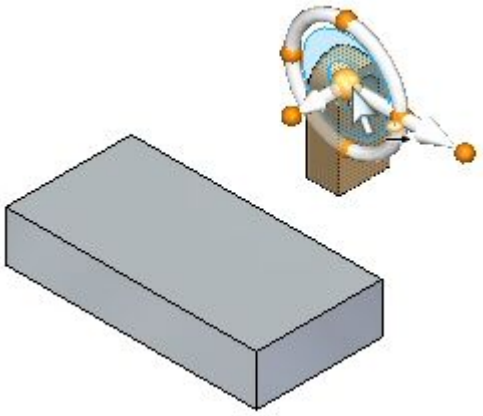
- Press the Esc key twice to cancel the operation.

Maintain a steering wheel orientation at a different location

If you want to maintain a steering wheel orientation at a different location, you hold the Shift key down, click the steering wheel origin, and drag it to the desired location. If the origin is close to a keypoint, it snaps to that point. Click to position origin to that point.

- Select *feature A*.

- Hold the Shift key down and click the steering wheel origin.

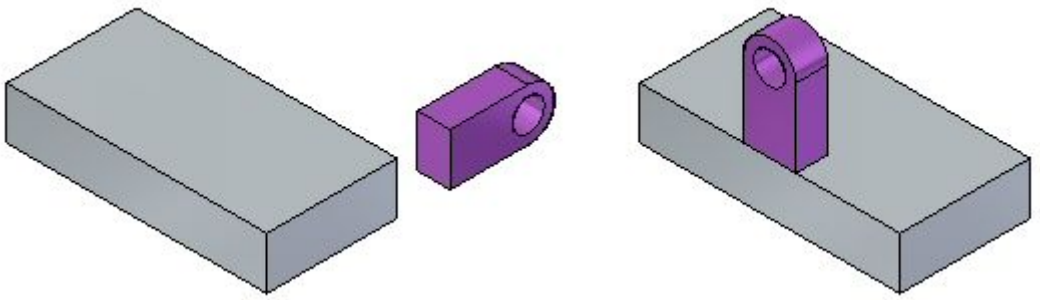


- Drag the steering wheel origin over the model (at the corners and edge midpoints) and notice that the steering maintains the orientation.

  If you repeat the same step without holding down the Shift key, the steering wheel orientation changes as it passes over the model edges, corners and faces.

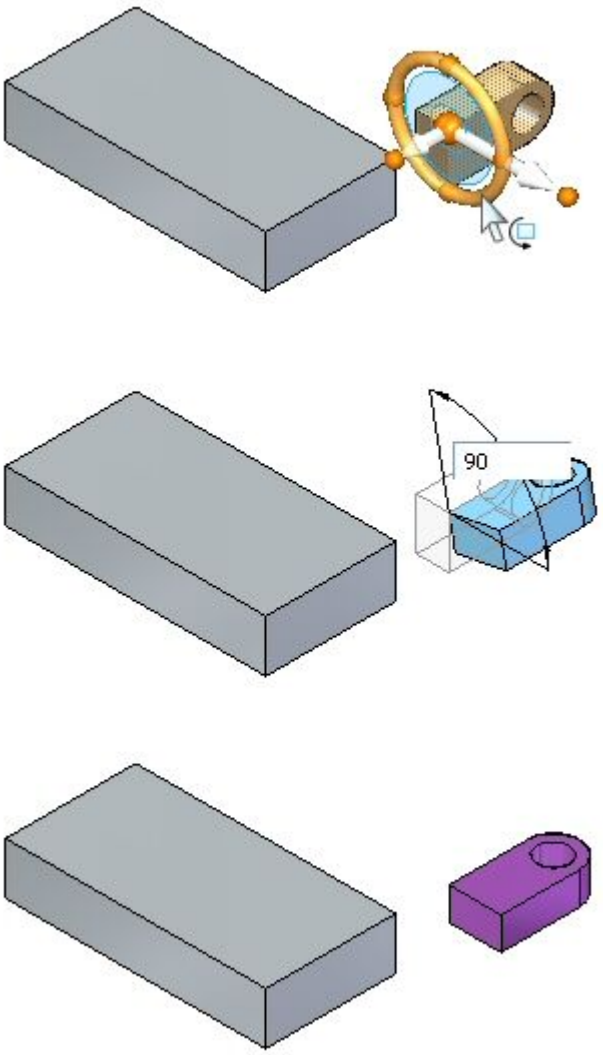
Use the steering wheel to reorient and move a feature

Move the feature to the location shown. Make sure the feature has same orientation as shown.

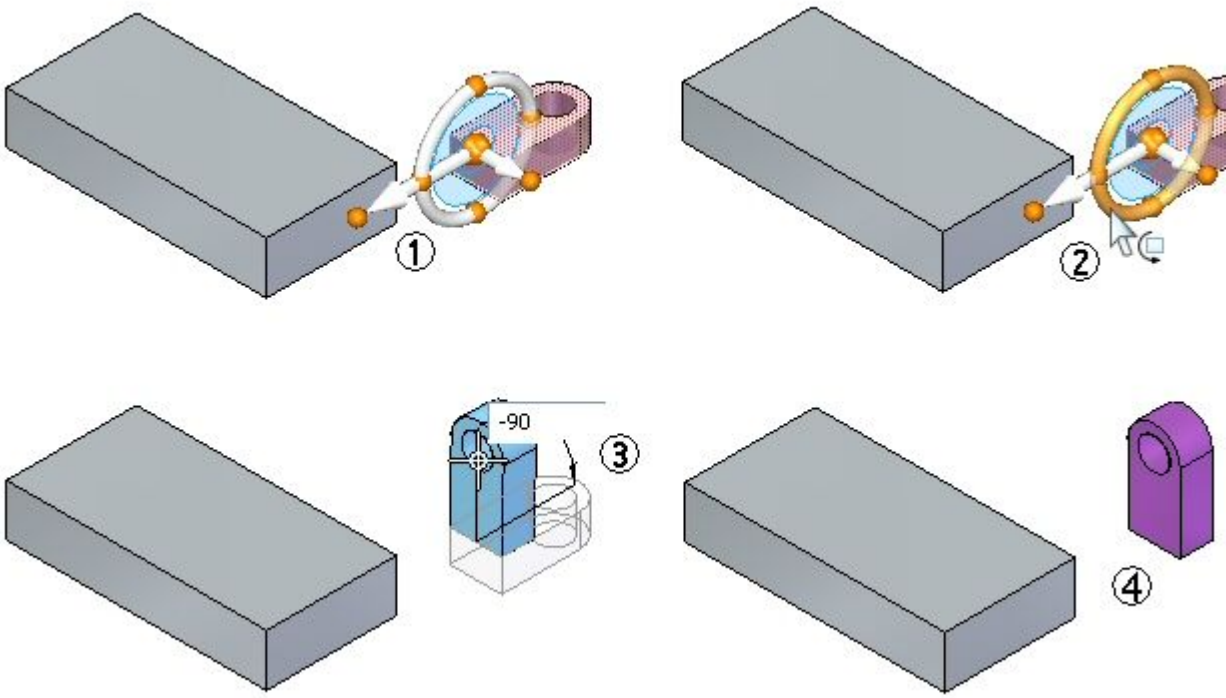


- Turn off the display of *feature A*. In PathFinder, click the box in front of *feature A*.
- Turn on the display of *feature B*.
- Rotate *feature B*. Select *feature B*.

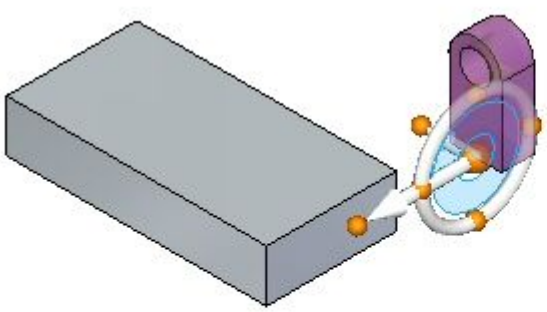
- Click the torus, type 90 in the dynamic edit box, and then click.

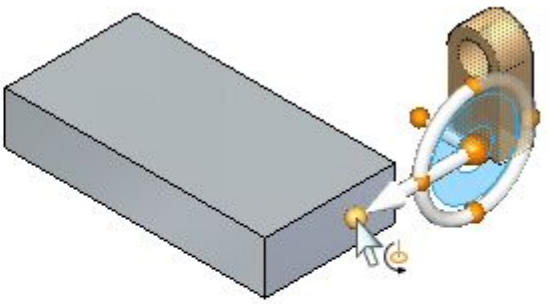


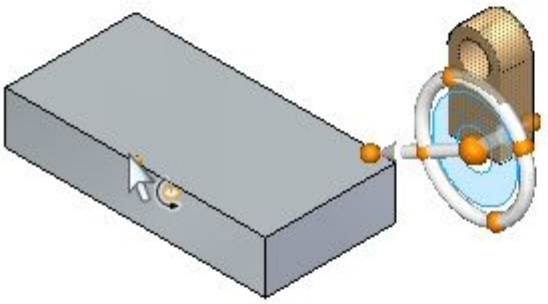
- Rotate the feature again to complete the orientation. Position the steering wheel origin as shown. Click the torus. Drag and type either 90 or -90 in the dynamic edit box (note the plus or minus value in the dynamic edit box to determine if 90 or -90 should be entered). Press the Tab key and then click.

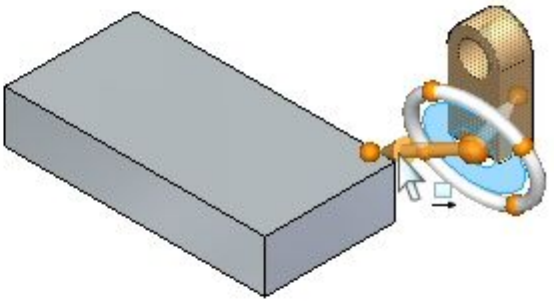


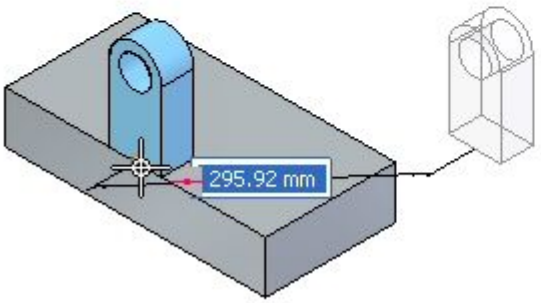
- Move the feature to new location. Select feature B. Position the steering wheel origin as shown (midpoint of edge). Define the primary axis direction to point to the edge midpoint on part. Click the primary axis to start the move. Move the cursor over the edge midpoint and click when the midpoint highlights. Press Esc to end the move operation.

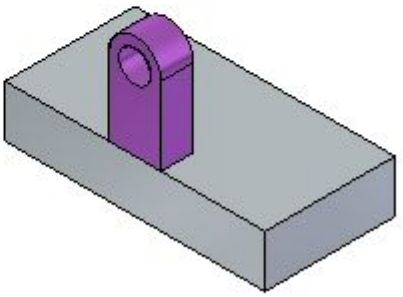












- Try positioning the feature at other locations on the part.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to reorient the steering wheel to accomplish desired move and rotate operations.

Moving a face

You can move a face in the following ways:

- Move a face in a direction along the primary axis or secondary axis by selecting either axis.
- Move a face freely along a plane where the graphic handle connects by clicking the plane on the handle.
- Set the direction of the primary axis by dragging the handle origin to an edge or vertex. The primary knob also locks onto the edge to define the direction.
- Reposition the primary knob to change the direction of the primary axis.
- Reposition the secondary axis direction in 90° increments by selecting one of three cardinal points.
- The origin is the *move from* point. The origin can move prior to a move face operation.

Rotating a face

Rotate a face by positioning the steering wheel secondary axis on an edge. The secondary axis becomes the axis of revolution. Select the torus to begin dynamic rotation or type a rotation angle in the dynamic input box.

Note

You can lock and drag a graphic handle orientation. Hold the Shift key, click the handle origin, and drag it to a desired edge or vertex.

Move face workflow

Single face move

1. Using the Select tool, select a face. The 3D steering wheel appears on the selected face. Initially you get the primary axis only. Click the 3D steering wheel origin to display entire steering wheel.

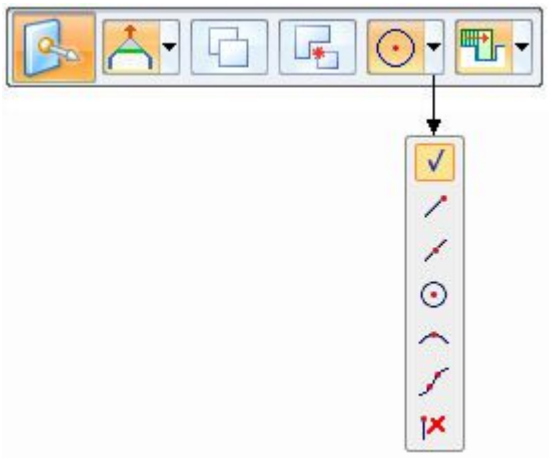
2. The command bar appears with the available operations that can be performed on the selected face. Move is the default operation and thus does not need to be selected.

3. Click the primary axis on the handle to move the face in or out in a direction normal to the face.

4. Define the *move to* location by one of the following methods:

   - Dynamically drag the face to a new location and then click.

   - Click a keypoint location. Choose the keypoint type on the Move command bar list.



   - Type in a ± distance in the dynamic input box.

5. Press Esc key to end move.

Note

Workflow is the same for multiple faces in a select set.

Single face rotate

1. Using the Select tool, select a face. The 3D steering wheel appears on the selected face. Initially you get the primary axis only. Click the 3D steering wheel origin to display entire steering wheel.

2. Click and drag the origin of the steering wheel to an edge to rotate about.

3. Make sure the secondary axis of the steering wheel lies on the edge to rotate about. Click and drag the secondary knob to position if necessary.

4. Click the torus on the handle to rotate the face. Dynamically rotate the face by moving the cursor or by typing in a ± angle in the dynamic edit input box.

5. Press Esc key to end rotate.

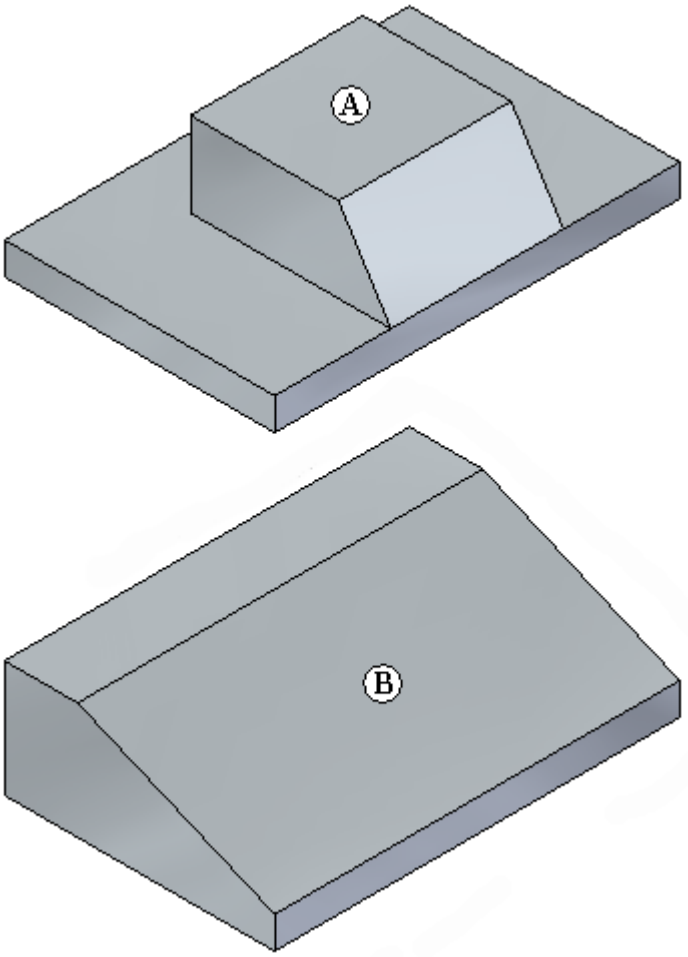
Note

Workflow is the same for multiple faces in a select set.

Activity: Move and rotate faces

This activity guides you through a move and a rotate face process to reinforce the use of the 3D steering wheel.

Change the shape of part (A) to a modified part (B).



Activity: Moving and rotating faces

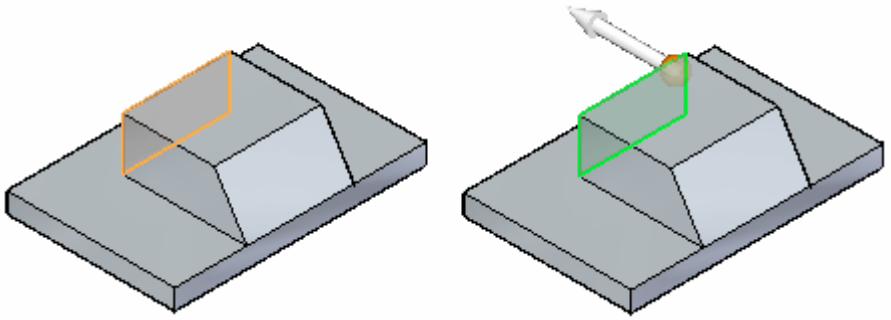
Open activity file

- Open *move_01.par*.

Move a face

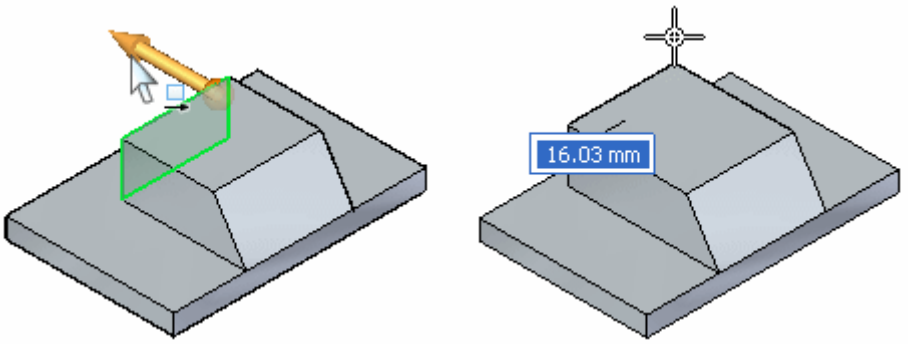
Move the back face of the boss a distance defined by a vertex on the back face of the lower base.

- Select the face shown. Use QuickPick if necessary.

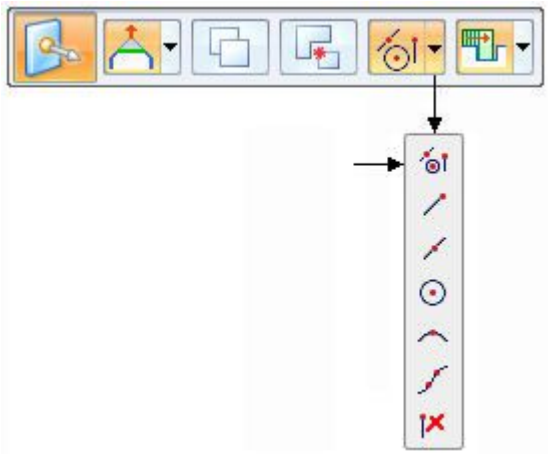


- Click the primary axis to start the move command. Clicking the primary axis defines the direction vector for the move. All you need to complete the move is a distance to move.

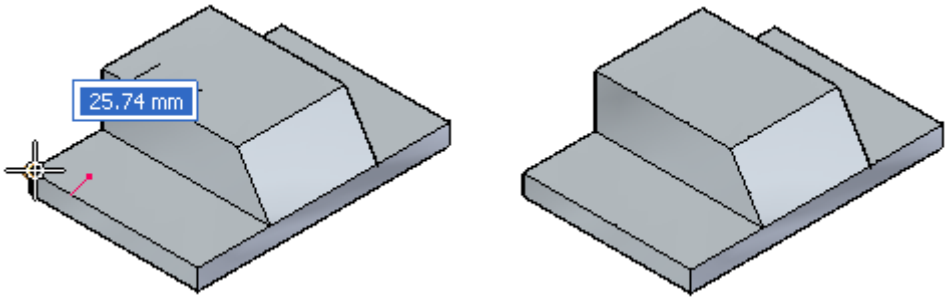
The selected face connects to the cursor and moves dynamically as the cursor moves.



- Use a keypoint locate to define the *move to* distance. On the Move command bar, choose the All keypoints option.



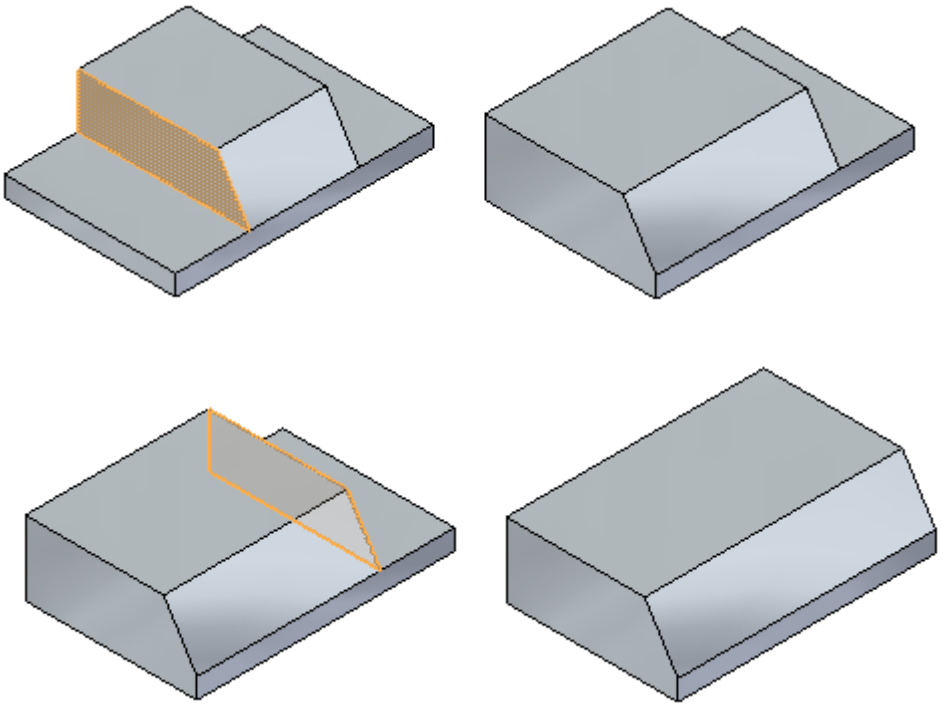
- Move the cursor over the corner shown and click when the endpoint appears.



- Press the Esc key to end the move command.

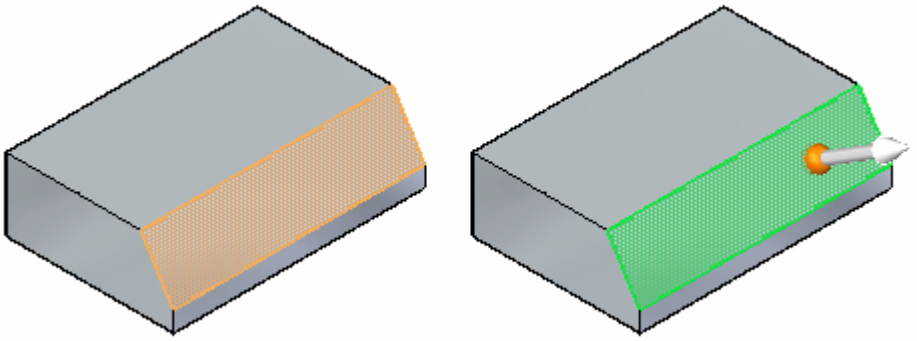
Move faces

- Move the side faces on the boss a distance defined by a vertex on the side face of the lower base.

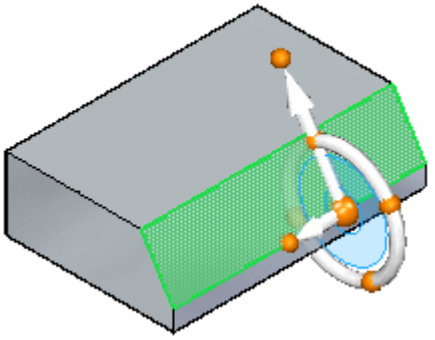


Rotate a face

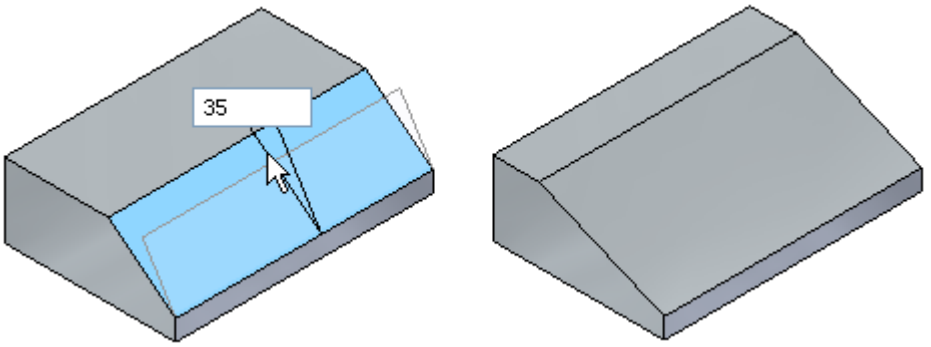
- Select the angled face.



- To rotate the selected face, define a rotation axis. Drag the steering wheel origin to the edge shown. The secondary axis must lie on an edge that the face rotates about.



- Click the steering wheel torus to start the rotation. As the cursor moves, the rotation angle tracks with the cursor. Type 35 in the input box to define the rotation angle.



- Press the Esc key to end the command.

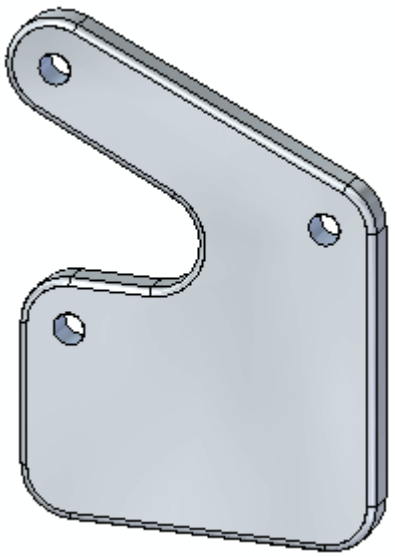
- This ends the activity. Exit the file and do not save.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to move and rotate faces. You define distances to move by dragging and clicking, typing in a distance, or by using keypoints. To rotate a face, position the secondary axis of the steering wheel on an edge to rotate about. Click the torus and move the cursor to define the rotation angle or type a rotation angle in the edit box.

Activity: Copying a face and using keypoints to define movement

This activity guides you through the process of copying a face and using other geometry to define the movement direction and distance. Copy the lower hole and positioned it at the same angle and distance as the upper holes.



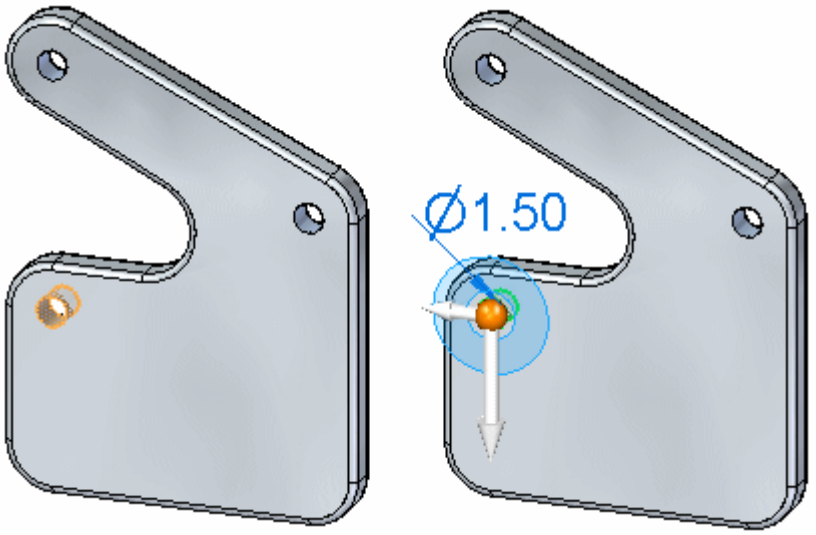
Activity: Copying a face and using keypoints to define movement

Open activity file

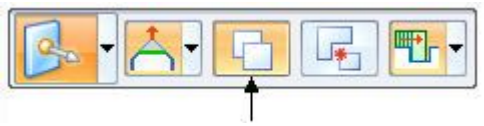
- Open *move_02.par*.

Select the hole to copy

- Select the cylindrical face shown.



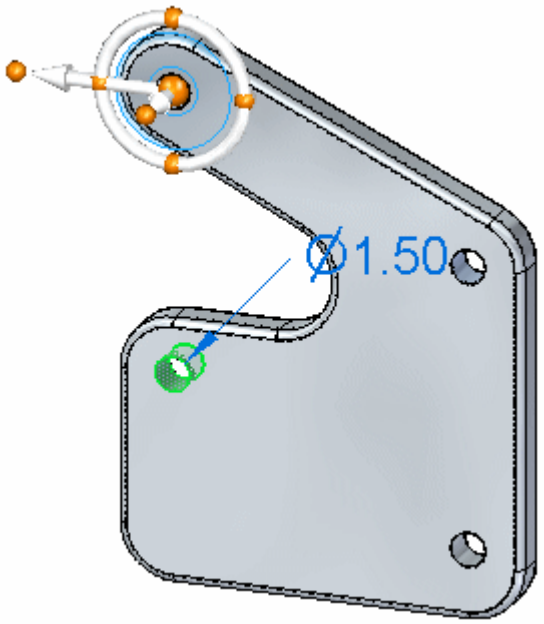
- On the Move command bar, choose the Copy option.



Define the move from point

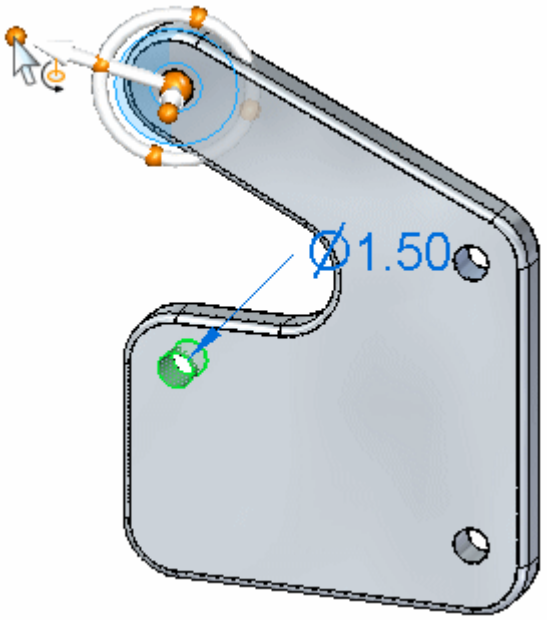
At this point, the steering wheel origin is at the center of the selected cylindrical face. Move the origin to the top left hole.

- Click the steering wheel origin and then move the cursor to the upper left hole. Click when the origin locks to the center of the hole. You may have to zoom in if you have trouble locking to the center of the hole.

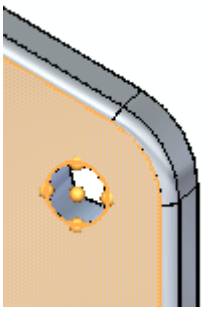


Define the move direction

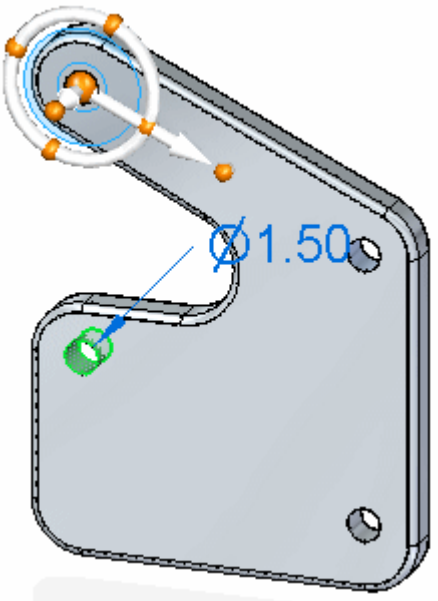
- Click the primary knob shown. This controls the primary axis direction.



- Move the cursor over the cylindrical face shown, and click when the center point symbol appears.

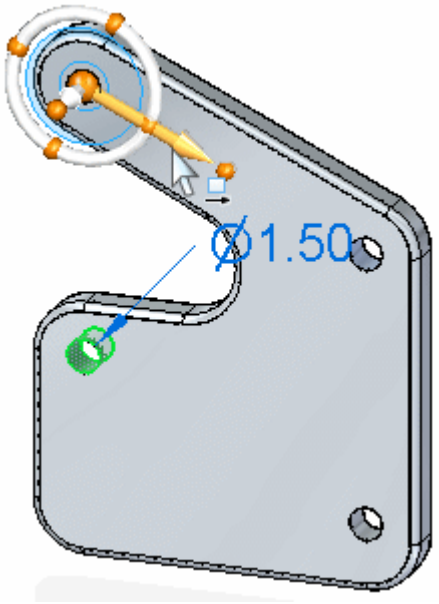


- Notice that the primary axis now points to the center of the hole. Direction definition is complete.

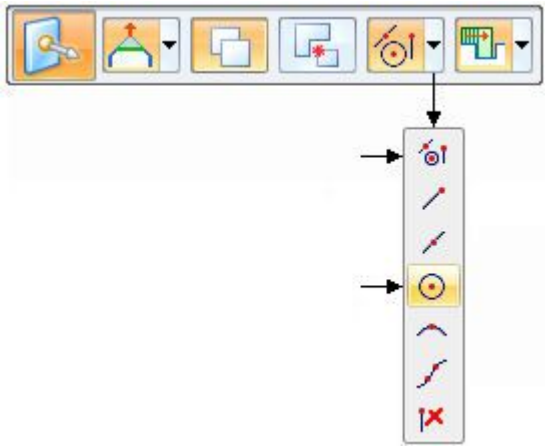


Define the move distance

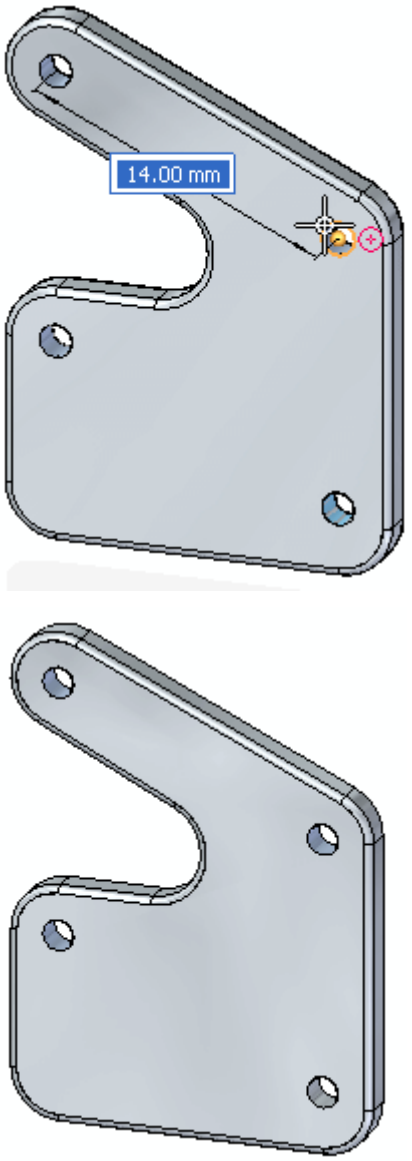
- Click the primary axis to start the Move command.



- Make sure the keypoints option in command bar is set to All or Center Point.



- Click the center of the hole shown. This defines the move distance. Click again to end the command.



Verify move distance

- Measure the copied distance. On the Inspect tab® 3D Measure group, choose the Measure Distance command .

- Measure the distance between the top two holes. Click when the center point highlights. Notice the minimum distance and then click Reset in the command bar. The distance is 14 mm.

- Measure the distance between the lower two holes. The distance between the holes should also be 14 mm.

- This ends the activity. Exit the file and do not save.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to use the 3D steering wheel to control a move or copy operation. You learned how to redefine an origin point (move from point) and how to modify the direction of a move. You used face keypoints to define the move/copy direction and distance.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. How do you move a face?
2. How do you rotate a face?
3. How do you move a feature?
4. How do you rotate a feature?
5. What are the cardinal points on the steering wheel used for?
6. How do you copy a feature to a new location?

Answers

1. How do you move a face?

   Move the cursor over a face. When the face highlights, click. Click the primary axis on the steering wheel. Define the move distance by dynamically dragging to new location, by selecting a keypoint, or by entering a distance in the value edit box.

2. How do you rotate a face?

   Move the cursor over a face. When the face highlights, click. Drag the origin of the steering wheel to an edge that the face rotates about. Define the rotation by clicking the torus and then dynamically dragging to define angle, selecting a keypoint, or by entering an angular value in the value edit box.

3. How do you move a feature?

   Select a feature (in PathFinder, with QuickPick, or with Selection manager). Click the primary axis on the steering wheel. Define the feature move distance by dynamically dragging to new location, by selecting a keypoint, or by entering a distance in the value edit box.

4. How do you rotate a feature?

   Select a feature (in PathFinder, with QuickPick, or with Selection manager). Drag the origin of the steering wheel to an edge that the feature rotates about. Define the rotation by clicking the torus and then dynamically dragging to define angle, selecting a keypoint, or by entering an angular value in the value edit box.

5. What are the cardinal points on the steering wheel used for?

   Use the cardinal points on the steering wheel to change the primary axis direction in 90° increments.

6. How do you copy a feature to a new location?

   Select a feature (in PathFinder, with QuickPick, or with Selection manager). On he Move command bar, click the Copy option. Click the primary axis on the steering wheel. Define the feature move distance by dynamically dragging to new location, by selecting a keypoint, or by entering a distance in the value edit box.

Lesson summary

Moving and rotating faces is how you modify synchronous models. You can move or rotate a single face, a select set of faces, features, and a combination of faces and features. Use the steering wheel to control how the selected faces move or rotate.

Selecting faces

Select faces using the Select tool .

A collection of selected faces to perform an action on is referred to as a *select set*.

Face selection methods

- Select and deselect faces manually (one face at a time).
- Select and deselect faces using the Selection mode.
- Select and deselect faces with the assistance of a selection manager.

  The selection manager uses the topological and attribute data of the face selected to add faces to a select set.

Selection mode

A selection mode symbol appears in the upper-right corner of the graphics window. Press the Spacebar to change the select mode. The select mode selection is also available on the Home tab® Selection group.

Normal mode

normal mode

Normal mode is the default selection mode. Normal mode is a single selection. Select a face and the steering wheel displays on that face. Select another face and the steering wheel moves to that face. The face previously selected is deselected. You can only select one face per click.

Add/remove mode

add/remove mode

Use the add/remove selection mode to build a select set. In the normal mode, select a face and then press the Spacebar to switch to the add/remove mode. Each face you select in this mode adds to the select set. If a you select face that has already been selected, it is deselected. The graphic handle remains on the first face selected. Both selected and deselected faces highlight as the cursor moves over them.

Add mode

add mode

The add mode only adds faces to the select set. Only deselected faces highlight as the cursor moves over faces. To set the mode to add, cycle through the select modes by pressing Spacebar.

Remove mode

remove mode

The remove mode only removes (deselects) faces from the select set. Only selected faces highlight as the cursor moves over faces. To set the mode to remove, cycle through the select modes by pressing Spacebar.

Selection manager mode

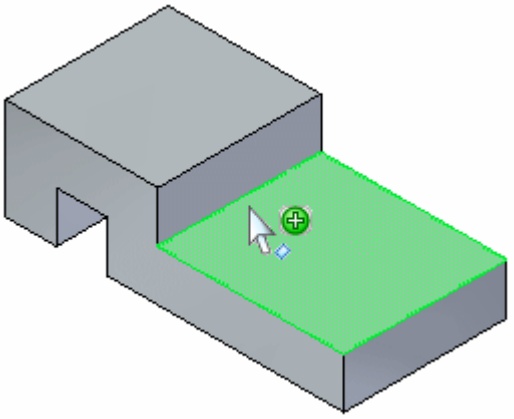
selection manager mode

To activate Selection manager mode, choose the Selection manager mode button on the Home tab® Select group® Select command list. You can also activate by pressing Shift + Spacebar. To end the selection manager mode, press the Spacebar.

Selection manager

Use *Selection Manager* to add or remove items from a select set using the topological and attribute data of a selected object.

When in the selection manager mode, a green dot attaches to the cursor.



Clicking on a face displays the Selection Manager menu.

The topological relations relate only to the face where the green dot is selected.

The topological relations listed in the Select Manager menu are determined by the type of face selected (planar, non-planar, cylindrical, partial cylindrical).

You can also switch to a Selection Manager mode. On the Home tab® Select group, in the Select list, choose the Select Manager Mode command . You can also start the Select Manager mode by pressing Shift+Spacebar. To end the Select Manager mode, press the Spacebar.

Selection manager options

The Selection Manager shortcut menu is available when you select valid elements.

To display the Selection Manager menu, click on a face.

Connected

Add faces which are connected to the focus element. Use the flyout options to specify what type of connected elements to add.

- *Connected* – Adds all faces which connect to the focus element.
- *Interior Faces* – Adds all interior faces which connect to the focus element.
- *Exterior Faces* – Adds all exterior faces which connect to the focus element.

Related Items

Adds elements that have a persistent relationship to the focus element.

Sets

Adds faces which are part of the same face set as the focus element.

Recognize

Adds all faces which are part of the same feature as the focus element. Use the flyout options to specify what feature type is recognized.

- *Feature* – Adds all faces which are part of the same feature as the focus element.
- *Rib/Boss* – Adds all faces which are part of the same rib/boss as the focus element.
- *Cutout* – Adds all faces which are part of the same cutout as the focus element.

Parallel

Add planar faces or reference planes which are parallel to the focus element. Use the flyout options to specify what type of parallel faces to add.

- *Faces* – Adds all planes which are parallel to the focus element, regardless of whether they are aligned or opposing. This option supports the Use Box Selection option.
- *Aligned* – Adds all planes which are parallel and face the same direction as the focus element. This option supports the Use Box Selection option.
- *Opposing* – Adds all planes which are parallel and face the opposite direction as the focus element. This option supports the Use Box Selection option.

Perpendicular

Adds all planes which are perpendicular to the focus element. This option supports the Use Box Selection option.

Coplanar

Adds all planes which are coplanar to the focus element. This option supports the Use Box Selection option.

Concentric

Adds all faces that are concentric to the focus element. This option is available only on faces that are cylinders, cones, and torii, both partial and full. This option supports the Use Box Selection option.

Blend Chain

Adds faces which are part of the same blend chain as the focus element to the select set.

Equal Radius

Adds faces which have a radius equal to the focus element to the select set. This option is available only on faces that are partial cylinders, partial cones, and partial tori. This option supports the Use Box Selection option.

Equal Diameter

Adds faces which have a diameter equal to the focus face to the select set. This option is available only on faces that are full cylinders, full cones, and full torii. This option supports the Use Box Selection option.

Tangent Faces

Adds faces which are tangent to the focus element.

Tangent Chain

Adds faces which are part of the same blend chain or tangent to the same blend chain as the focus element.

Symmetric About

Adds faces which are symmetric to the focus element about the same reference plane type specified. Use the flyout options to specify what type of reference plane to use as the symmetry plane.

- *Base XY Plane* – Adds faces which are symmetric to the focus element about the base XY plane.
- *Base ZX Plane* – Adds faces which are symmetric to the focus element about the base ZX plane.
- *Base YZ Plane* – Adds faces which are symmetric to the focus element about the base YZ plane.
- *Local Plane* – Adds faces which are symmetric to the focus element about a reference plane you select.

Axis

Adds faces which have an axis that is parallel or perpendicular to the focus element. This option is available only on faces that are cylinders, cones, and tori, both partial and full. Use the flyout to specify whether the axis must be parallel or perpendicular.

- *Parallel* – Adds faces which have an axis that is parallel to the focus element.
- *Perpendicular* – Adds faces which have an axis that is perpendicular to the focus element.

Use Box Selection

Defines a 3D box in the graphic window to add or remove items to the select set. When using box selection, the elements which are inside or overlapping the 3D box are included in the selection. This option is available only for a specific shortcut menu options.

When using the *Use Box Selection* option, there are two key in options to help define the location or area the selection box covers. The first option for box select is to define an area box. Use the C key to switch between a center or corner area box definition. Once the area of the box is defined, define the depth of the box. Use the S key to define a symmetric or non-symmetric box.

Use the Selection Manager shortcut menu as many times as required to build the select set.

Deselect Items

Deselects elements which match the focus element criteria when set.

Set the *Deselect Items* option and then define criteria to remove items from the select set.

Select menu options

Deselect

Removes the focus element from the select set.

Clear Selection

Removes all elements from the select set.

3D Box Select

Specifies that you want to define a 3D box in the graphics window to add items to the select set. When using box selection, the elements which are inside or overlapping the 3D box are included in the selection.

Activity: Using the Selection Manager

Activity guides you through the process of using the selection manager.

Activity: Using the Selection Manager

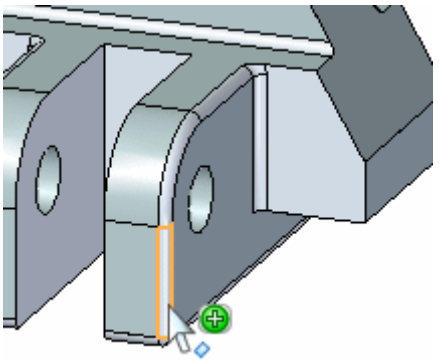
Open activity file

- Open *select_b.par*.

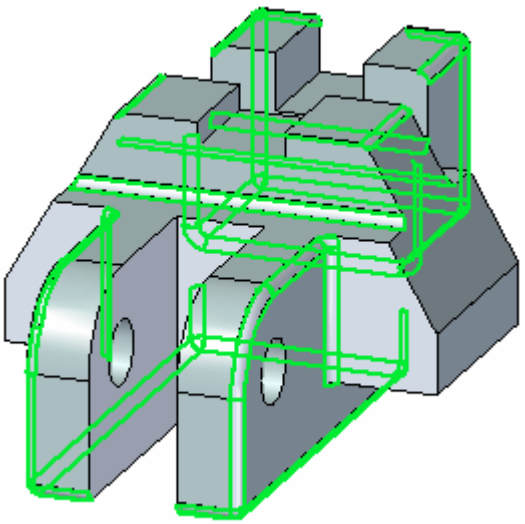
Select all rounds of equal radius

Use selection manager to select all rounds of equal radius and change the radius value for all the rounds selected.

- Activate the selection manager mode by either choosing on the Home tab® Select group, from the Select list or by pressing Shift+Spacebar.
- Select the round shown below.



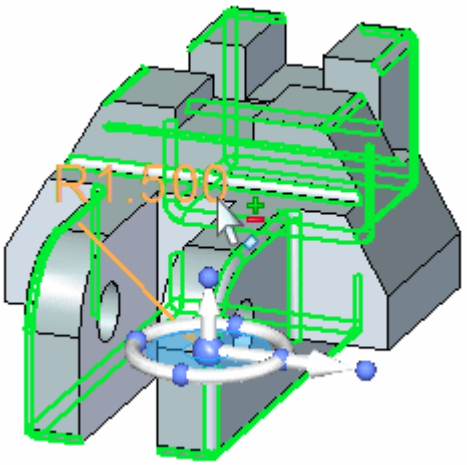
- On the Selection manager menu, make sure *Use Box Selection* is not checked.
- On the Selection Manager, click the *Equal Radius* option. Notice that all rounds that have the same radius (1.5 mm) add to the select set.



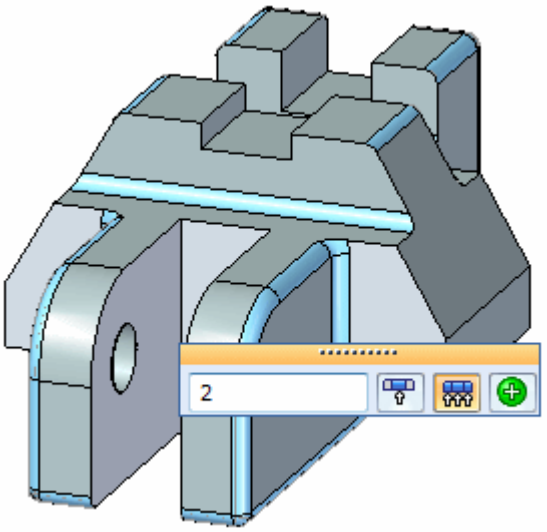
- Press the Spacebar to exit the selection manager mode.

Change the round radius

- Select the PMI dimension on the round.



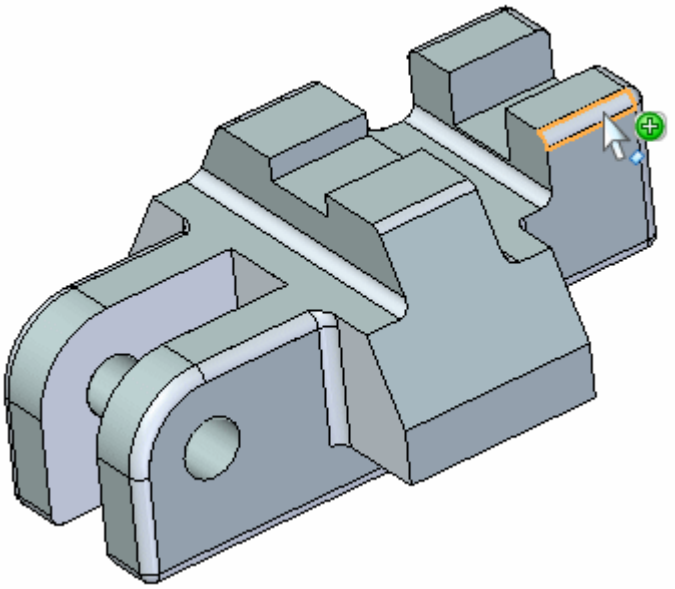
- In the dimension box, type 2 and then press the Enter key. Press Esc to clear the select set. All rounds in the select set are now equal to 2.



Use the selection box

Add rounds to a select set using a selection box.

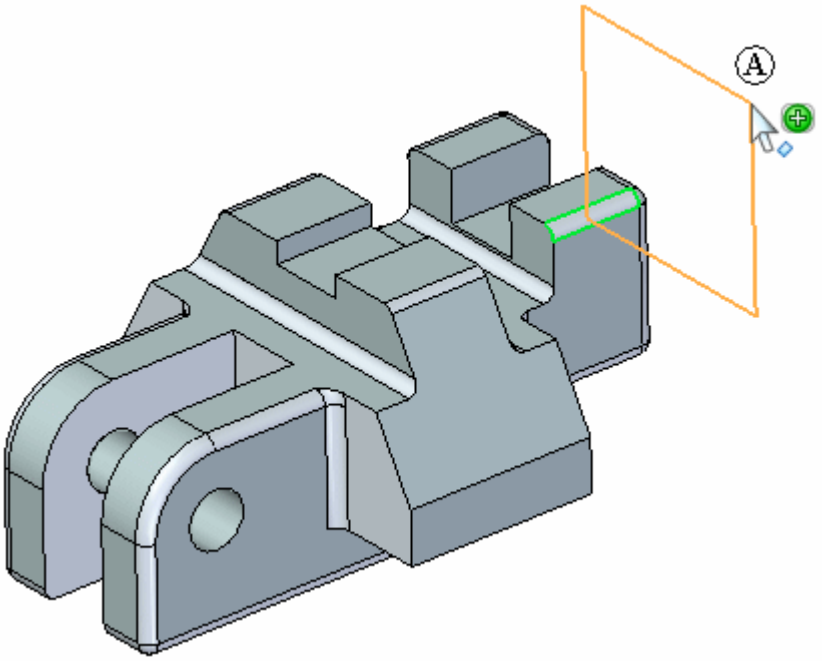
- Activate the selection manager.
- Select the round shown.

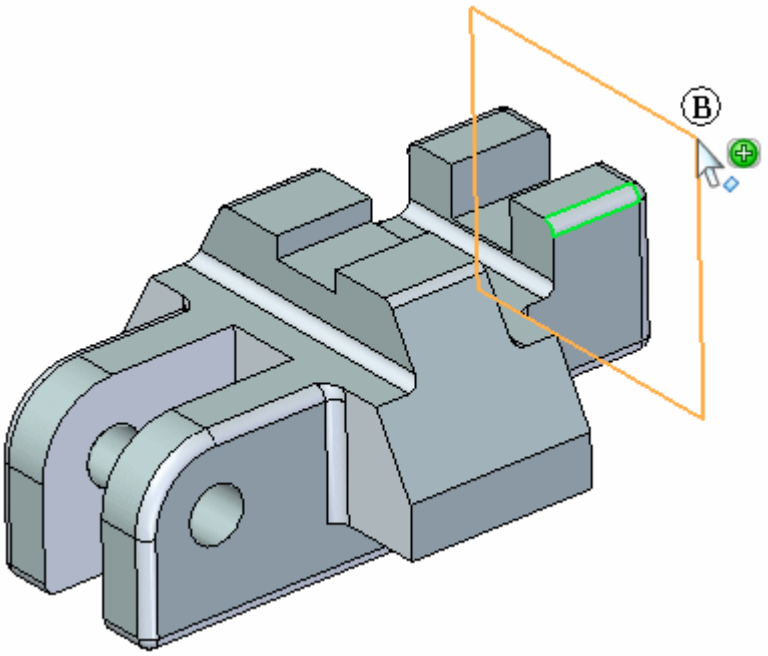


- On the Selection Manager menu, choose *Use Selection Box*.
- On the Selection Manager menu, choose *Equal Radius*.

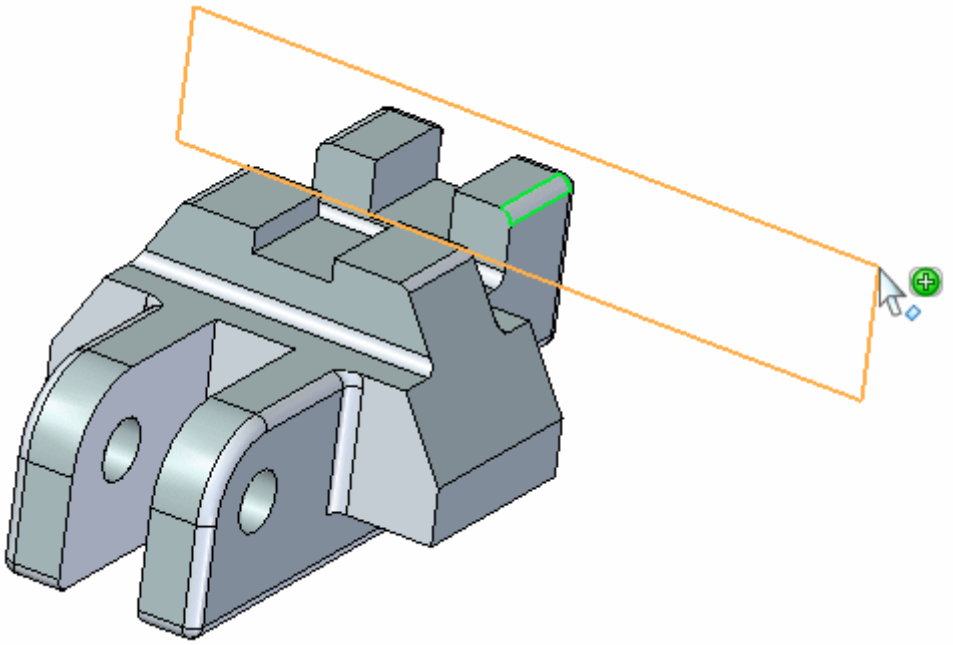
Define selection box area

- The first step in defining the selection box is to define the area. Typing a C changes the area definition from a corner start point (A) to an area center start point (B). The start point is the point where you select the face.





Use the center option and define an area as shown.



Define select box depth

- The next step is to define the select box depth. Typing an S changes the definition from a side definition (C) to a symmetric definition (D). Side step defines depth in either direction (C) normal to the defined area. The symmetric option defines the depth symmetric (D) about the defined area.

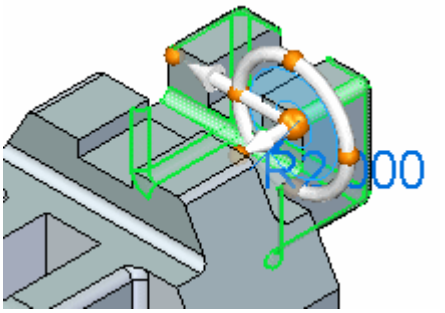
  Define a symmetric depth as shown.

  Note

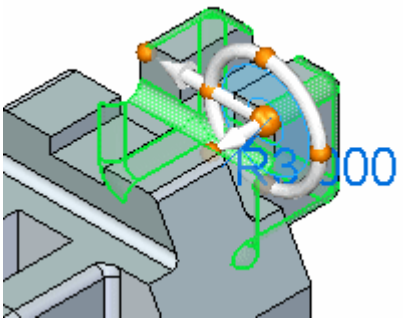
  You can rotate the view to better view the positioning of the area and the depth of the selection box.

- Press the Spacebar to exit the selection manager mode.

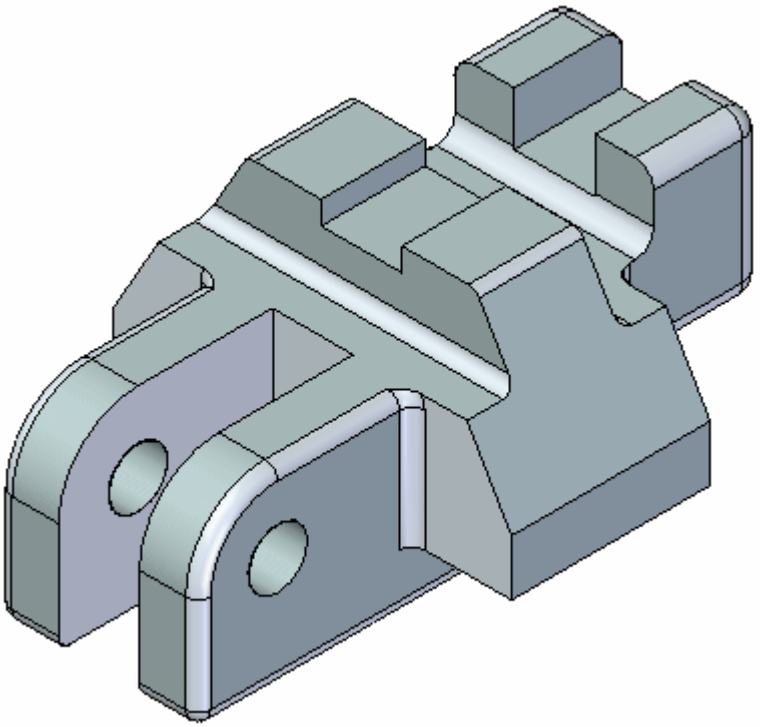
Change radius of select set



- Change the selected rounds radius to 3.



- Press the Esc key to clear the select set.



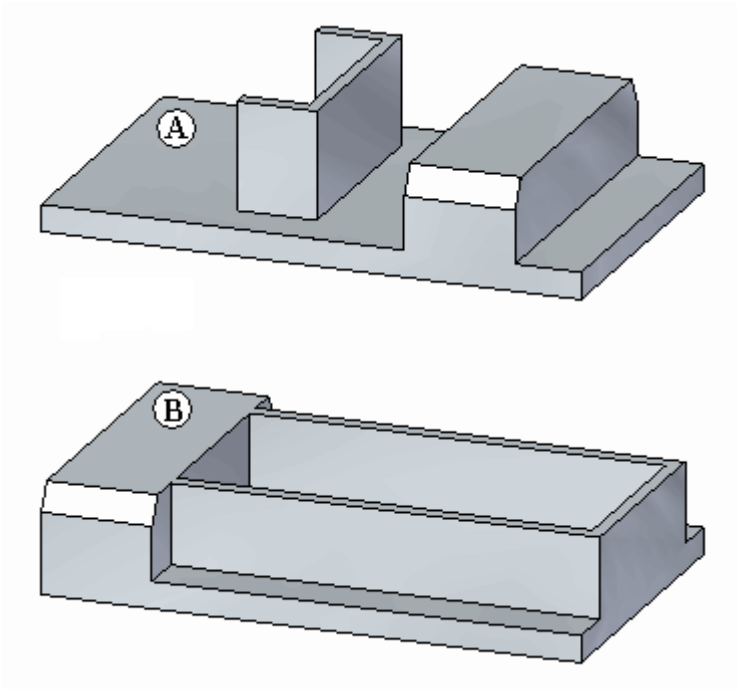
- This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to use the Selection Manager to control the selection process. With practice you will master the use of the box selection.

Activity: Modifying a part by moving select sets

This activity demonstrates how to move multiple faces in a single operation. You will modify part (A) to the shape of (B).



Activity: Modifying a part by moving select sets

Open activity file

- Open *select_a.par*.

Suspend Live Rules

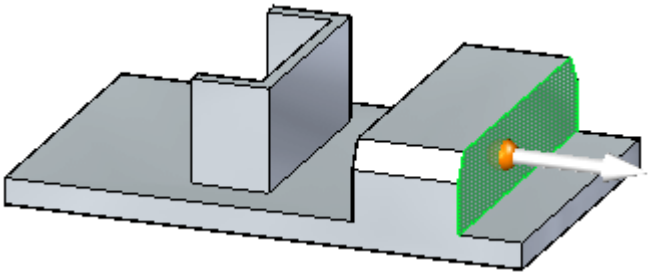
Live Rules is covered in the Working with face relationships course (spse01525). Turn off live rules.

- You must select a face for Live Rules to appear. Click on any face.
- On the Live Rules panel, click the Suspend Live Rules (A) check box.

Select feature to move

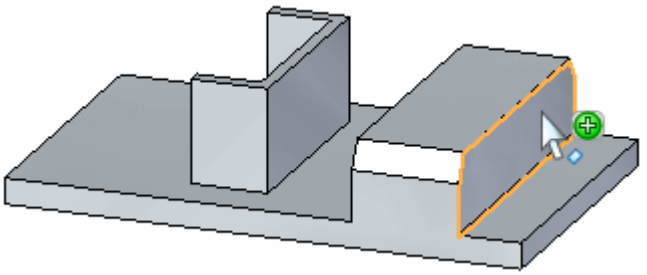
Move protrusion feature to other end of part.

- To select the feature to move, first select the face shown.

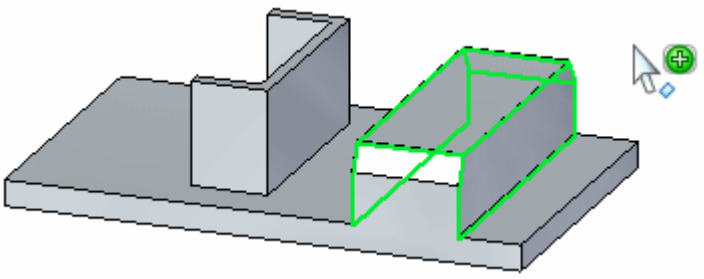


At this point, only the selected face moves.

- Activate the selection manager mode.
- Select the face shown.

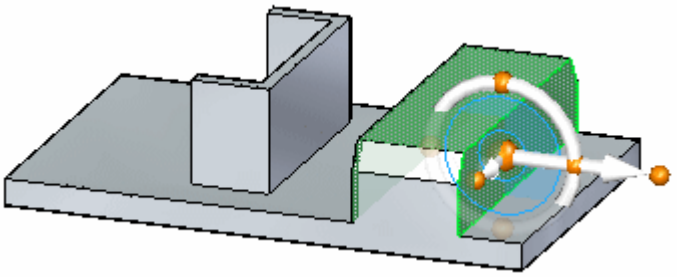


- On the Selection Manager menu, choose *Sets*. This finds any sets that contain the selected face.
- QuickPick displays the sets found. Click the Protrusion entry listed in QuickPick.



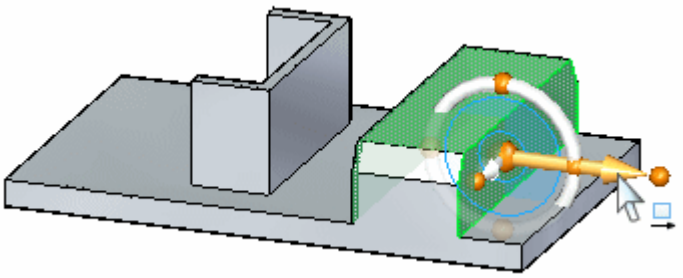
- Press the Spacebar the exit the selection manager mode.

- The selected protrusion feature participates in the move operation.

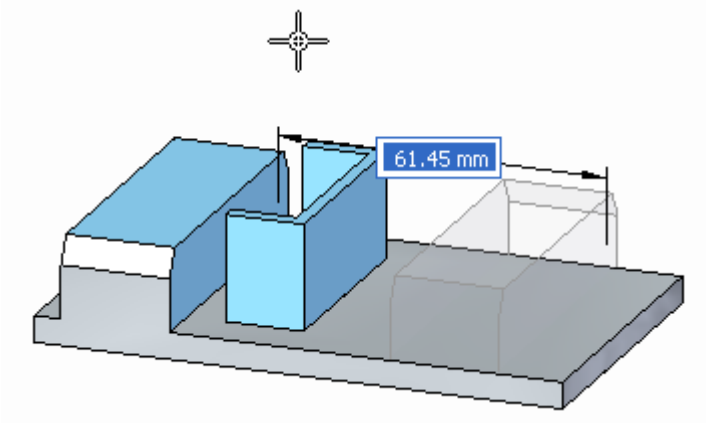


Move the feature

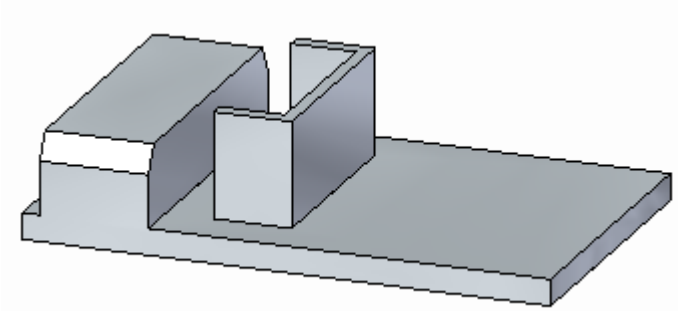
- Click the primary axis on the steering wheel and move the feature to the other side of the channel-shaped feature.



- Move the feature to the approximate location and click. The move from point is the origin on the graphic handle.

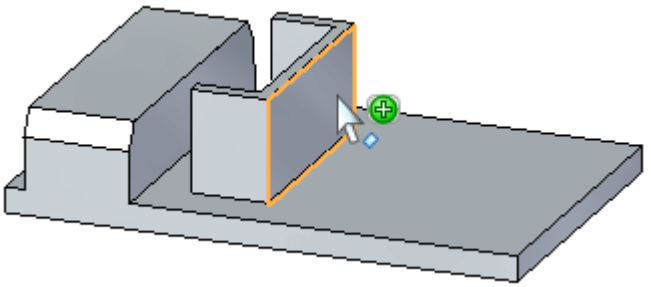


- Move complete. Press the Esc key to clear the select set.

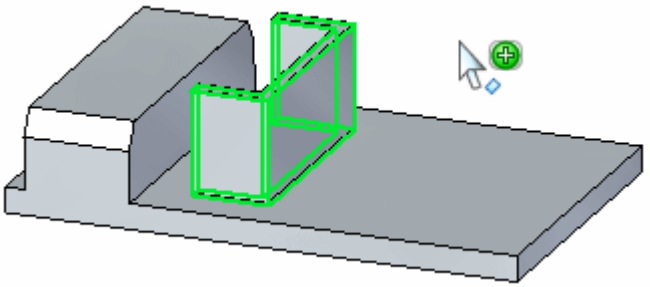


Select the channel-shaped feature

- Activate the selection manager mode.
- Select the face shown.



- On the Selection Manager menu, choose Recognize ® Rib/Boss.

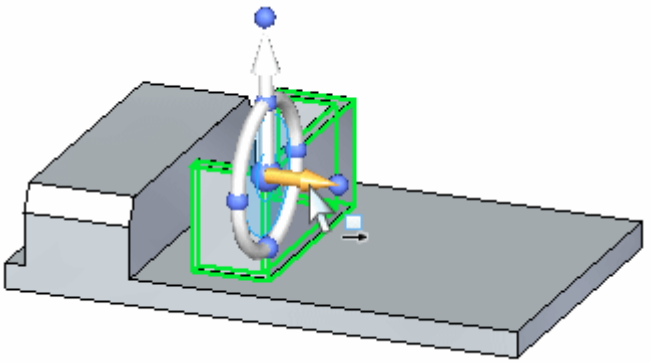


The *Sets* option would work here also.

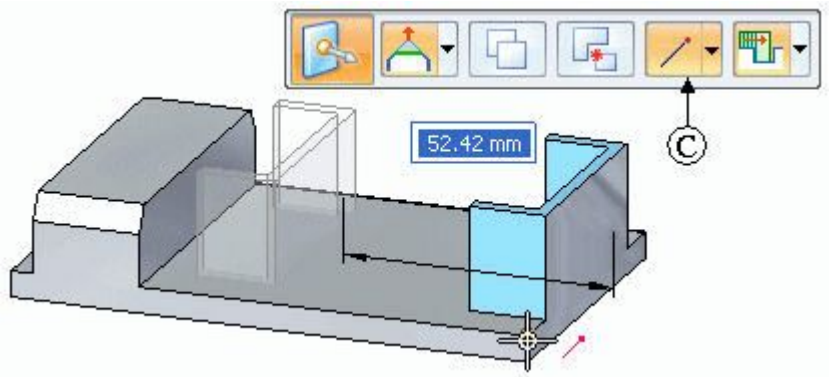
- Press Spacebar to exit the selection manager mode.

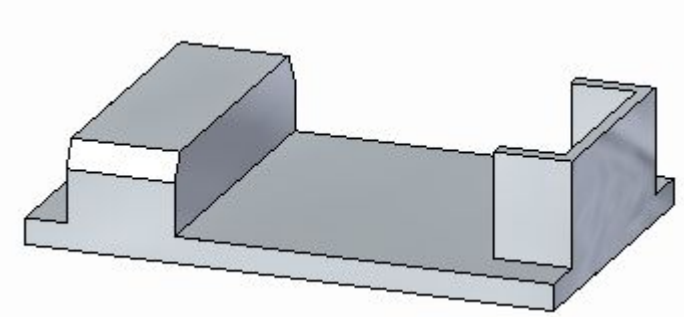
Move the channel-shaped feature

- Click the secondary axis on the steering wheel and move the select set to the edge of the part.



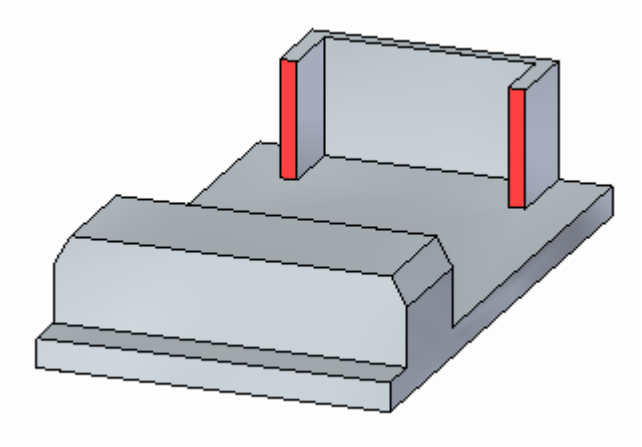
Use a keypoint on the edge of the part to define distance to move. Choose the keypoint option on command bar (C).



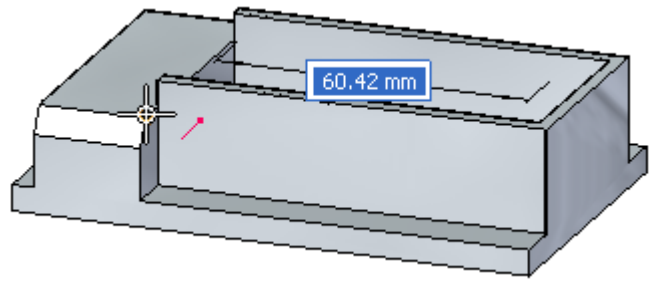


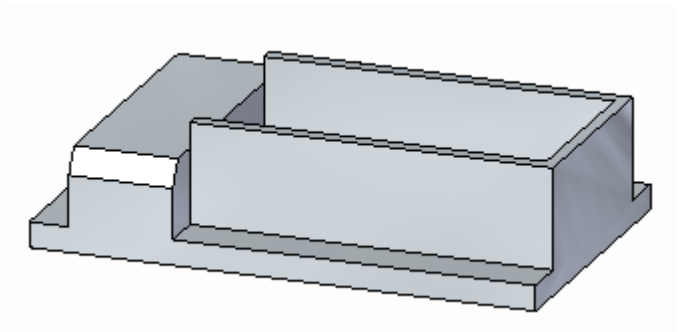
Extend the legs of the channel-shaped feature

- Select the two faces shown.



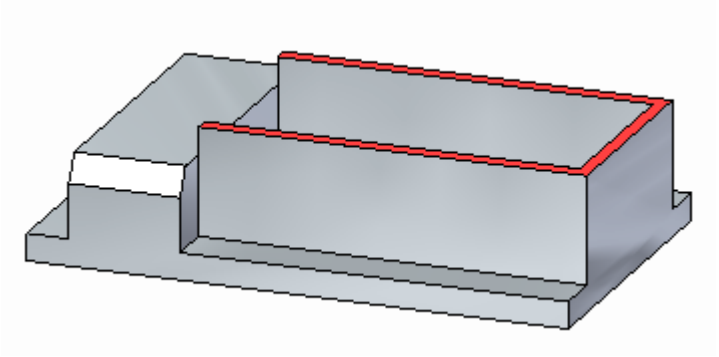
- Move the faces to the end of the protrusion feature as shown. Use a keypoint to define the distance.



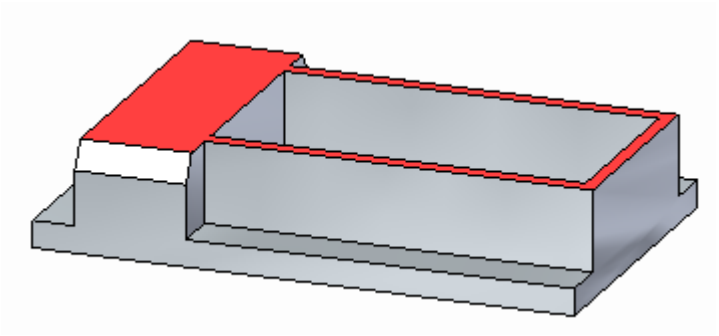


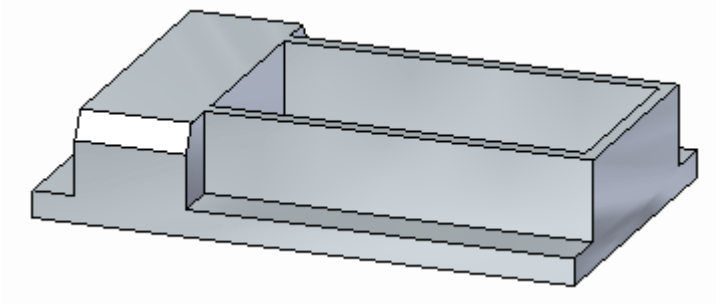
Move top face of channel-shaped feature

- Select the top face.



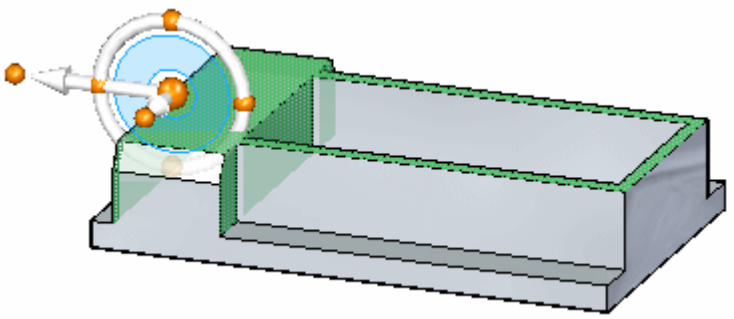
- Move the top face to the top of the protrusion feature.



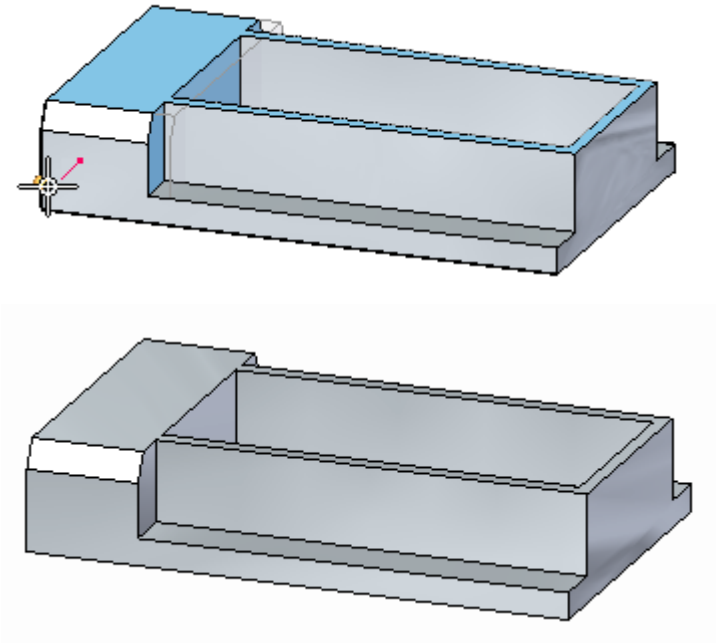


Move protrusion feature to end of part

- Select the protrusion feature.



- Move the select set to end of part.



- This ends the activity. Exit the file and do not save.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create select sets for a move operation. Live Rules were suspended for the activity. After the live rules topic is covered, you will be able to perform the same part modifications in other ways.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. What is a select set?
2. What are the face selection methods?
3. What are the four selection modes and how do you change modes?
4. What is the Selection Manager?
5. How do you start the Selection manager? How do you end Selection manager?

Answers

1. What is a select set?

   A collection of selected faces to perform an action on.

2. What are the face selection methods?

   - Select and deselect faces manually (one face at a time).
   - Select and deselect faces using the Selection mode.
   - Select and deselect faces with the assistance of a Selection manager.

3. What are the four selection modes and how do you change modes?

   - normal
   - add/remove
   - add
   - remove

   Press the Spacebar to change modes or select the mode from the Home tab® Selection group.

4. What is the Selection Manager?

   Use Selection Manager to add or remove items from a select set using the topological and attribute data of a selected face.

5. How do you start the Selection manager? How do you end Selection manager?

   To start selection manager, press Shift+Spacebar or on the Home tab® Select group, click the Selection manager button.

   To end selection manager, press Spacebar.

Lesson summary

You can build a select set by selecting faces to modify one at a time. This becomes cumbersome when models become large. The selection methods are available to ease the building of select sets. Selection Manager is a powerful tool to help define faces to modify. You can a combination of selection mode and selection manager to build the select set.

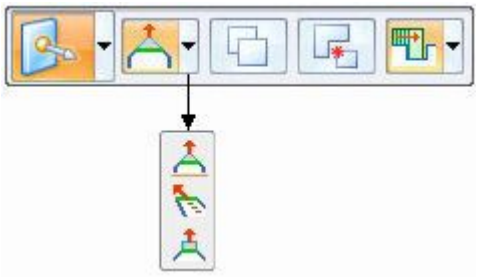
Move face command bar options

You control the results of the Move command with options that control the interaction of the select set and the rest of the model.

By setting these options, the resultant transformation can alter within the command.

The options are Connected faces, Copy, Detach, and Precedence.

Connected face options



Extend/Trim

Default option. Selected face moves by extending and trimming the adjacent faces.

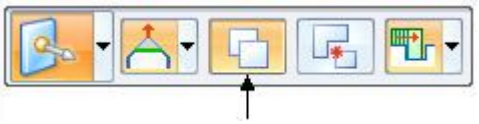
Tip

Selected face is rigid. Adjacent faces change to meet the movement of the rigid selected face.

Lift

Selected face is rigid. Adjacent connected faces are not affected. The selected face moves in a direction normal to the face to either add or remove material.

Copy



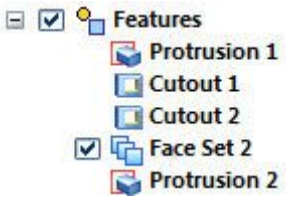
The Copy option creates a copy of the faces in the select set.

The faces collect into a face set feature.

The face set feature can move or rotate.

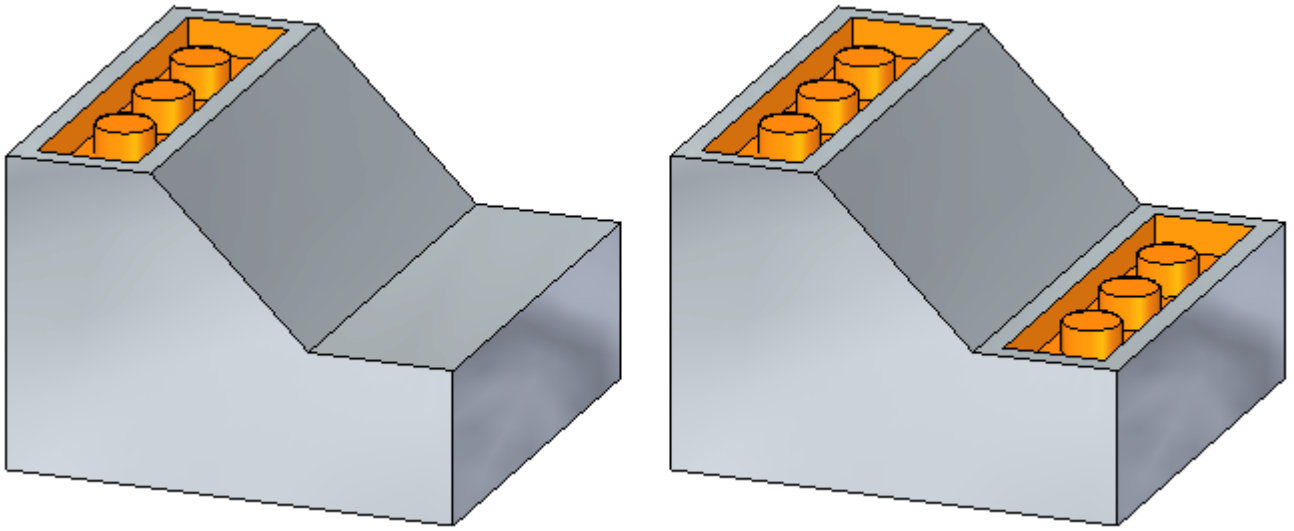
This option is similar to a *copy and paste* operation.

The original selected faces do not change.



Activity: Copying and attaching a feature (method 1)

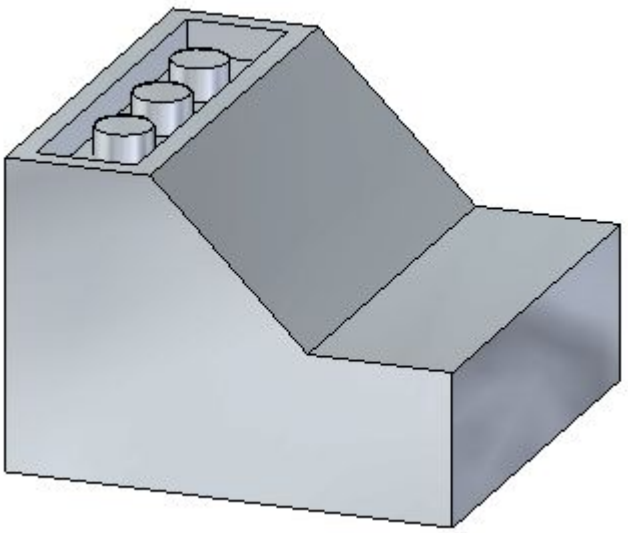
The activity guides you through the process of copying a cutout feature and then attaching the copied feature at a new location on the model.



Activity: Copying and attaching a feature (method 1)

Open activity file

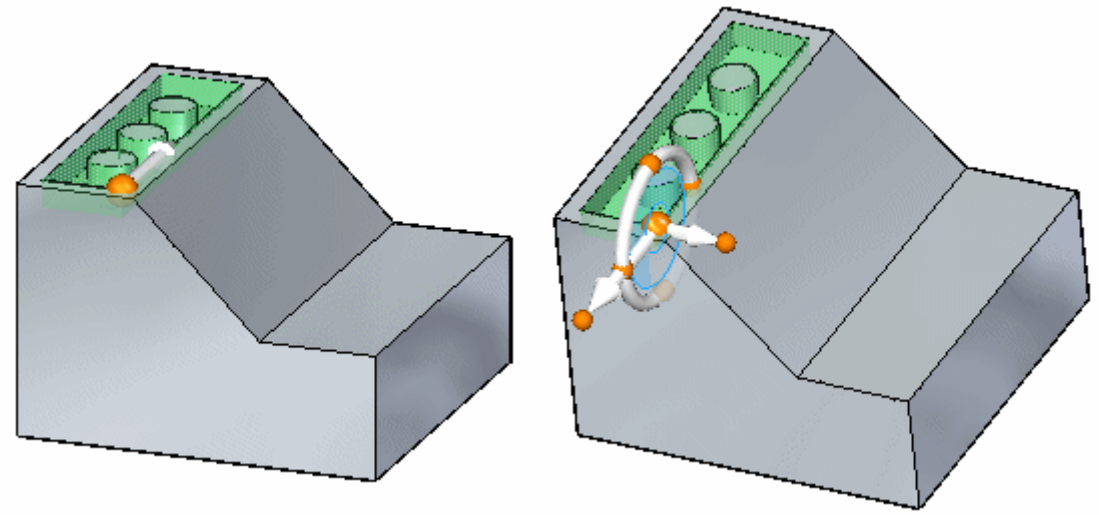
- Open *copy_a.par*.



Select the feature to copy

- Select the cutout feature by clicking *Cutout1* in PathFinder.

- Position the 3D steering wheel as shown.



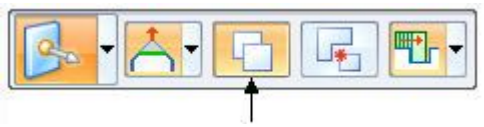
Suspend Live Rules

Live Rules is covered in the *Working with face relationships* self-paced course. Suspend the Live Rules settings while moving the cutout feature. This ensures no other faces in the model participate in the move.

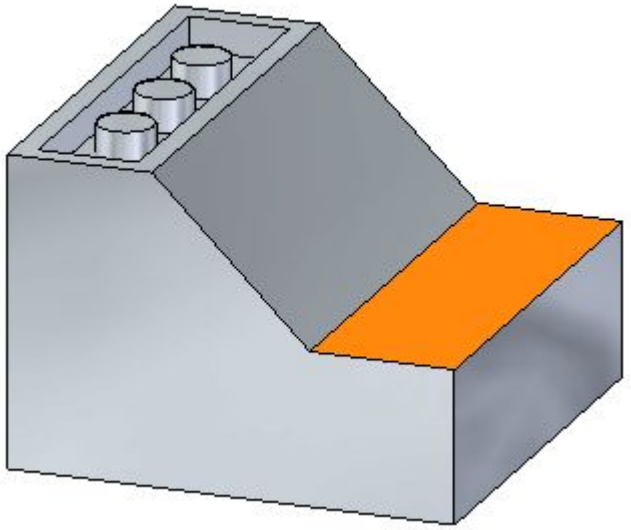
- Click the Suspend Live Rules (A) check box.

Set the copy option and move the feature

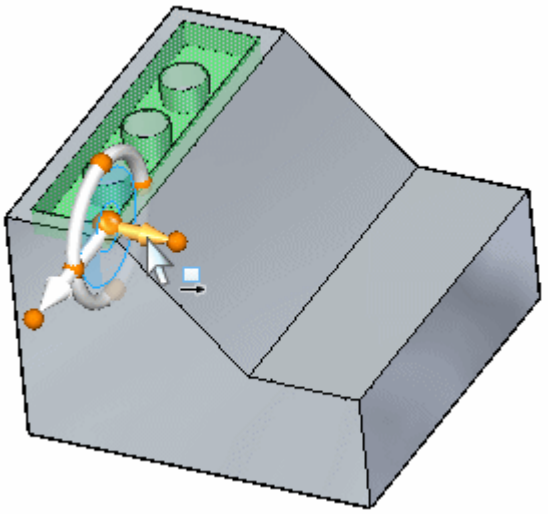
- On command bar, choose the Copy option.



- Move the copied feature to the face shown in orange.



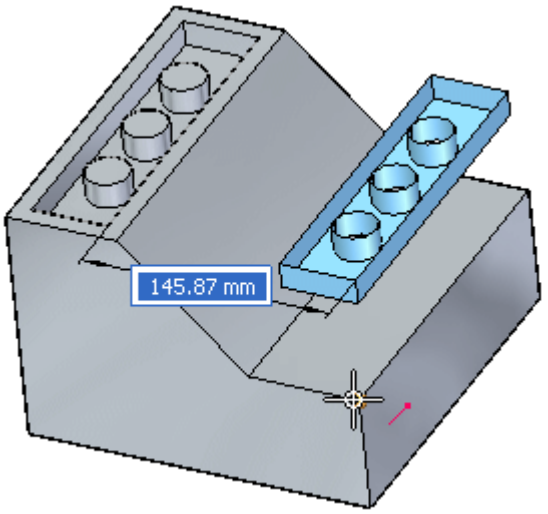
To begin the move, click the secondary axis shown. The move origin point is where the origin of the steering wheel resides.



Define the move distance and direction

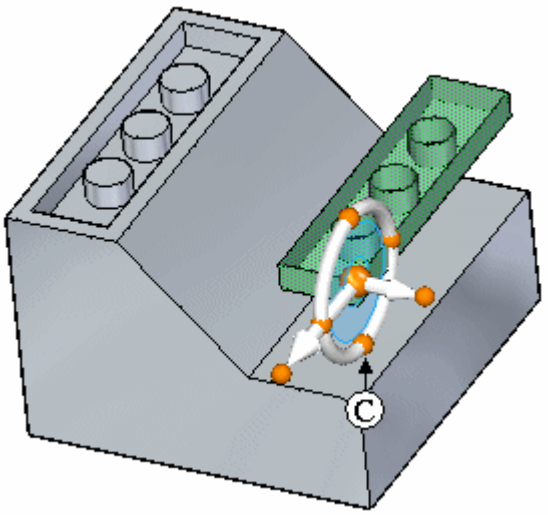
- Move the feature to the edge of the part using a keypoint. On command bar, click the keypoints list and choose Endpoint.

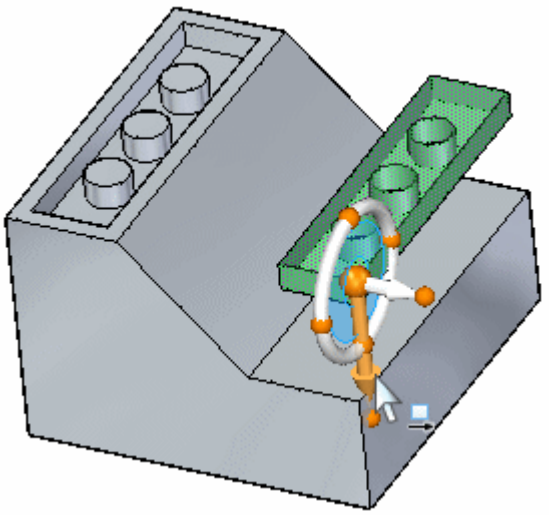
- Select the keypoint location shown.



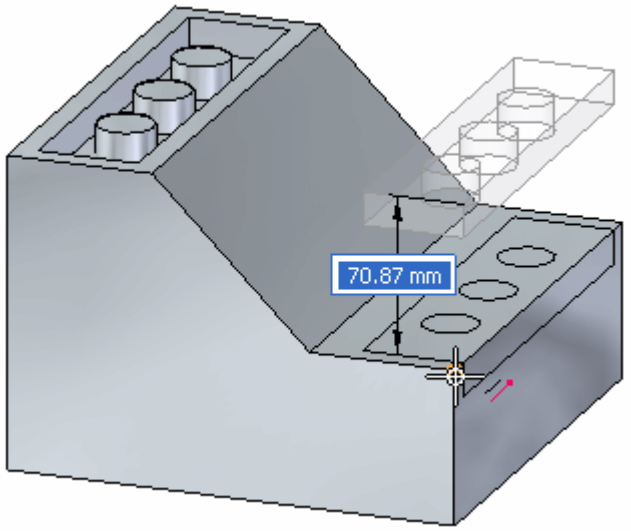
Change move direction

- The primary axis should point down. If your steering wheel position is different, change the move direction by clicking the cardinal point (C) on the steering wheel and then click the primary axis.



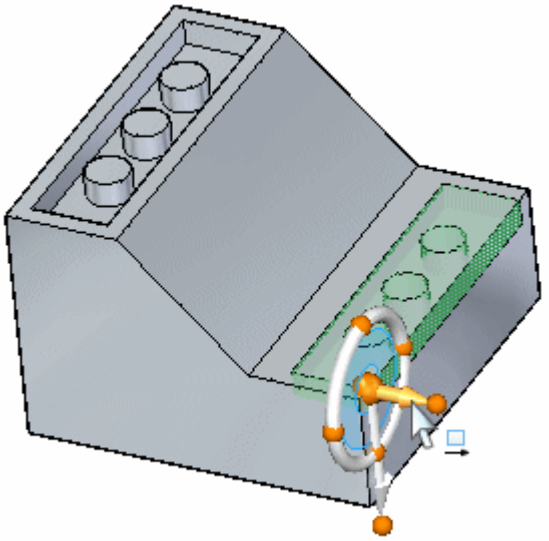


- Select the keypoint.

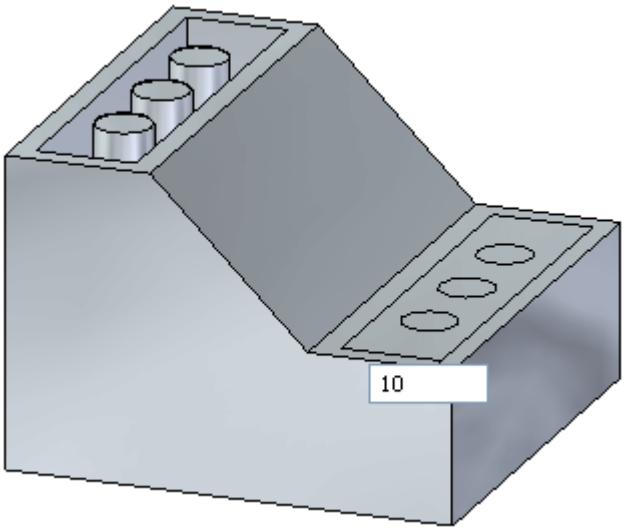


Move by keying in a distance

- Click the secondary axis.



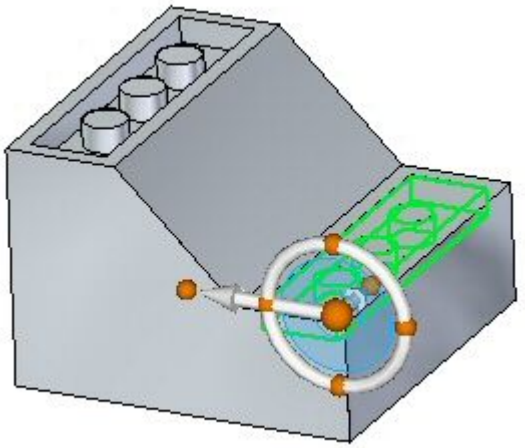
- Type 10 in dynamic edit box.

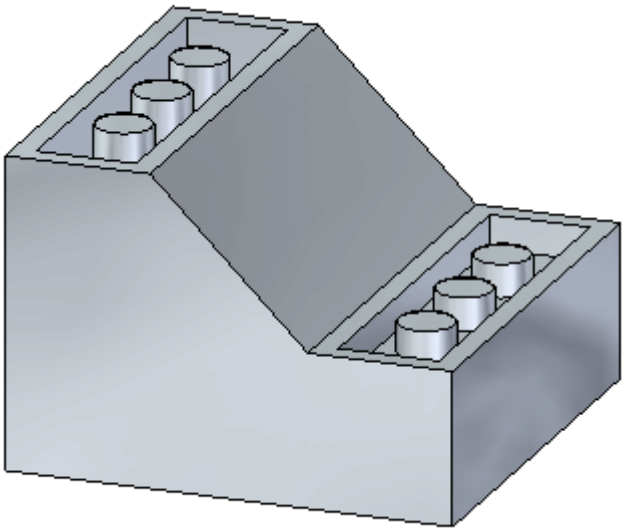


Attach the copied feature

The copied feature is in position but is detached from the model.

- Right-click in the part window and choose Attach.





Summary

In this activity you learned how to copy a feature and then position the copied feature. There are other methods available to move the copied feature to a location other than what was shown in this activity.

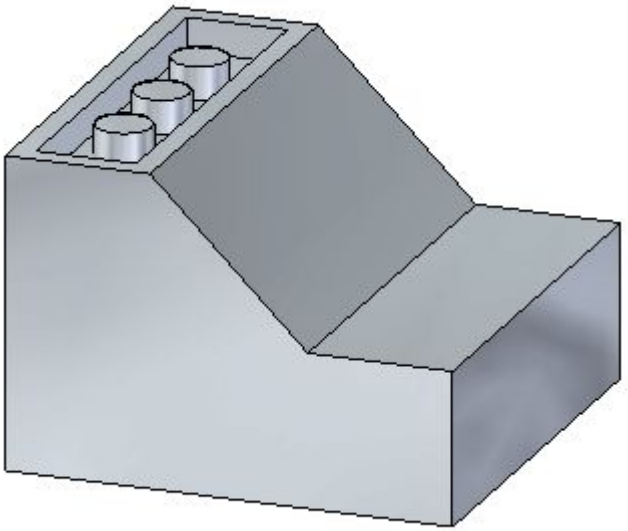
Activity: Copying and attaching a feature (method 2)

This activity has the same goal as method 1, but. uses a different approach.

Activity: Copying and attaching a feature (method 2)

Open activity file

- Open *copy_b.par*.



Suspend Live Rules

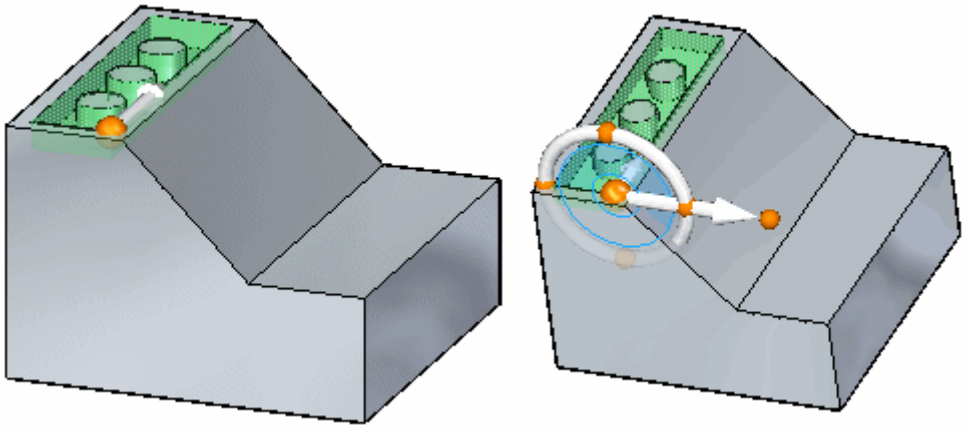
Live Rules is covered in the *Working with geometric relationships* self-paced course. Suspend the Live Rules settings while moving the cutout feature. This ensures no other faces in the model participate in the move.

- Click the Suspend Live Rules (A) check box.

Select the feature to copy

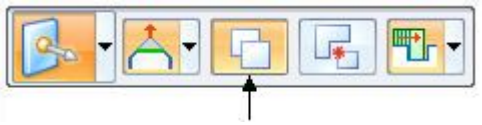
- Select the cutout feature by clicking *Cutout1* in PathFinder.

- Position the 3D steering wheel as shown.

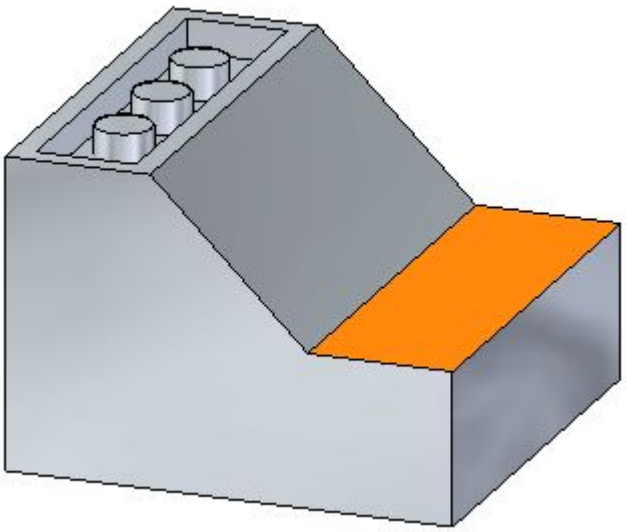


Set the copy option and move the feature

- On the command bar, choose the Copy option.



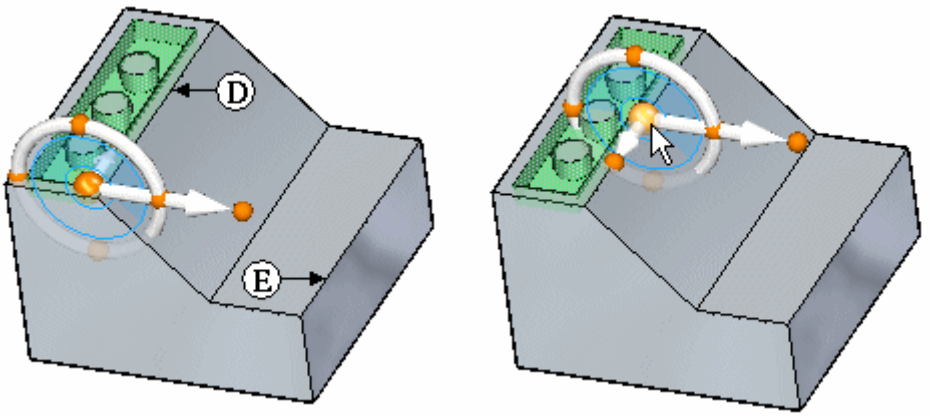
- Move the copied feature to the face shown in orange.



Relocate the steering wheel origin

In this activity, use the steering wheel plane to move the copied feature instead of the secondary axis used in the method 1 activity.

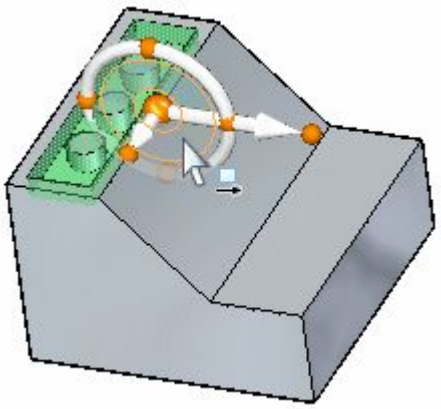
- To relocate the steering wheel origin, hold the Shift key down, and drag the steering wheel origin to the midpoint of the face edge (D). As you drag along the face edge (D), notice that the steering wheel origin jumps to the midpoint of edge (D). When you hold the Shift key down to move the steering wheel origin, the steering wheel orientation remains fixed.



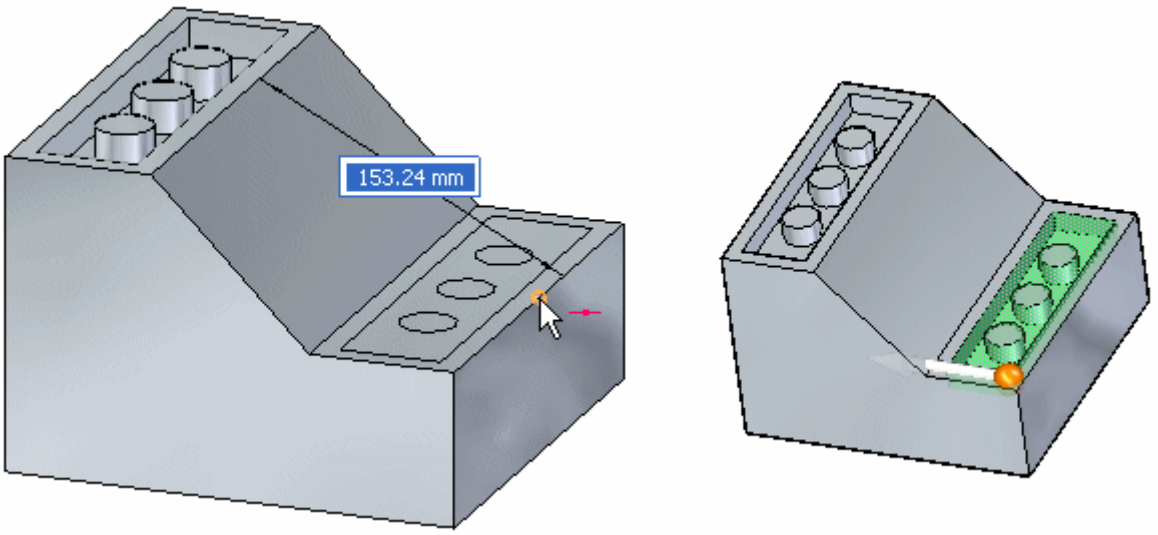
The move is from the midpoint of edge (D) to the midpoint of edge (E).

Move the copied feature using the steering wheel plane

- Click the steering wheel tool plane.



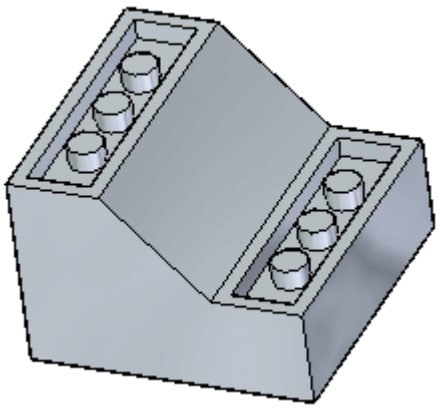
- Drag the cursor over the edge shown and click when the midpoint symbol displays. You may have to turn on the midpoint option on command bar.



- Press the Esc key to end the move command.

Note

Since this copy operation was accomplished in one movement, the copied feature attaches automatically.

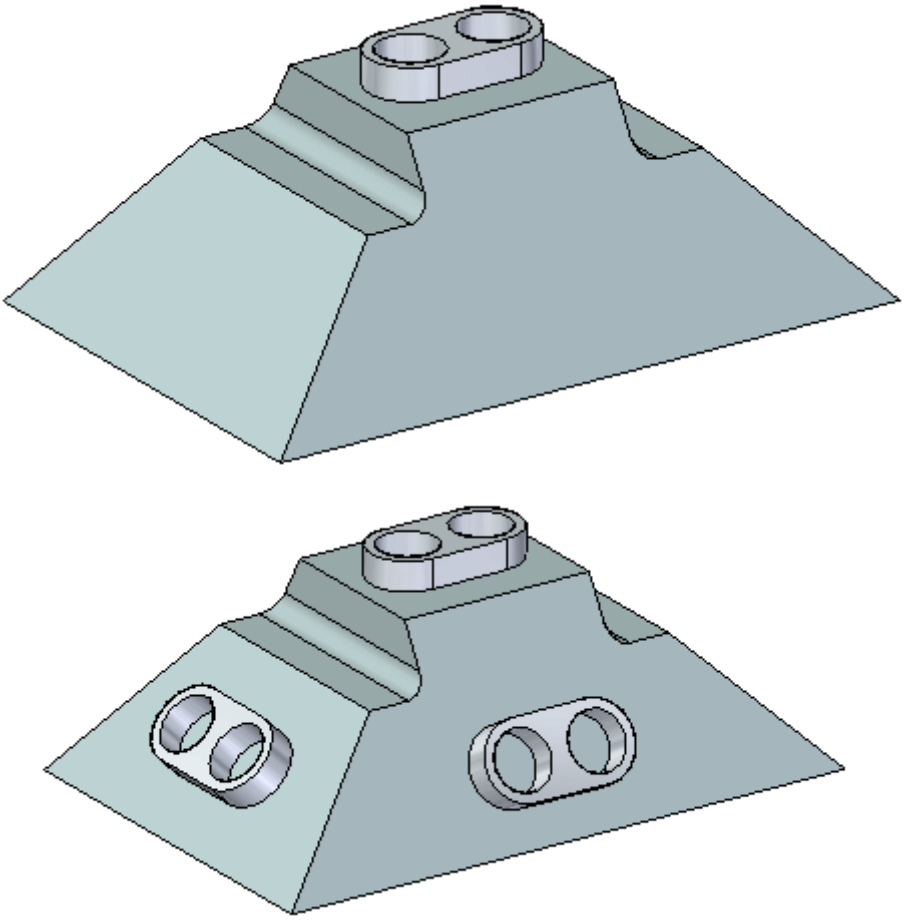


Summary

In this activity you learned how to copy a feature and then position the copied feature by moving the steering wheel origin and using the steering wheel plane to define the move vector.

Activity: Copying, rotating, and attaching a feature to a new location

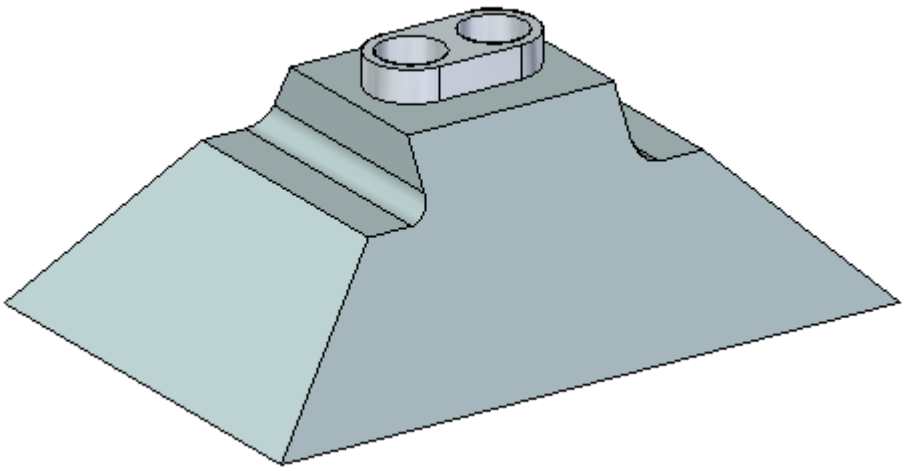
This activity guides you through the process of copying a feature, aligning the feature to an angled face, and then positioning the feature on the model. Use two methods in the activity.



Activity: Copying, rotating, and attaching a feature to a new location

Open activity file

- Open *rotate.par*.



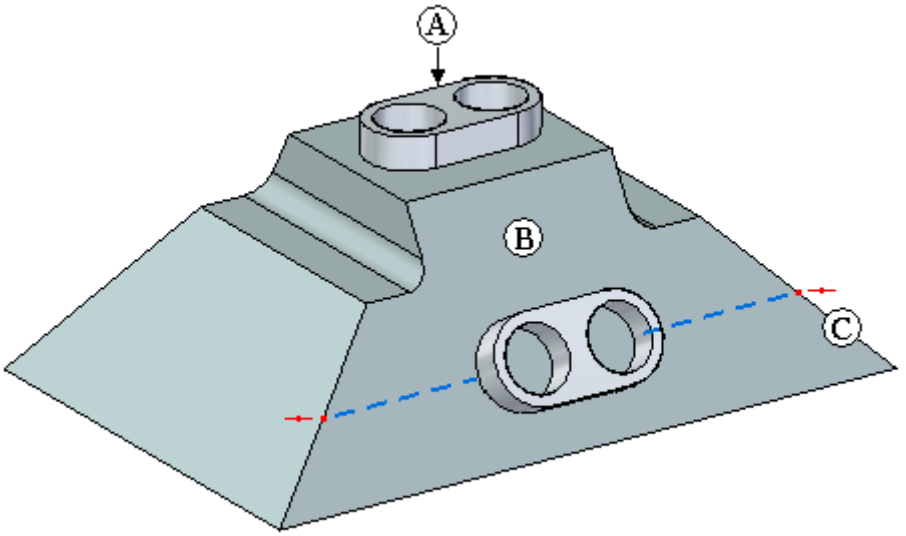
Suspend Live Rules

Live Rules is covered in the *Working with geometric relationships* self-paced course. Suspend the Live Rules settings while moving the feature. This ensures no other faces in the model participate in the move.

- Click the Suspend Live Rules (A) check box.

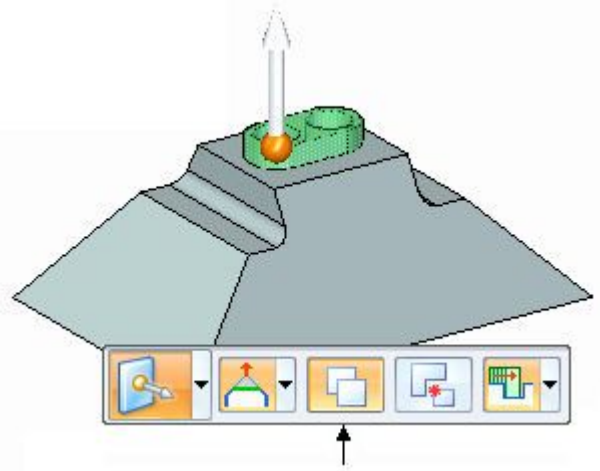
Method one overview

Use the Copy option on command bar. Align the feature using the Parallel relationship command. Position the feature using the steering wheel. Copy feature (A) onto face (B). Center feature on face (B) with the feature holes aligned to the midpoint of edge (C).



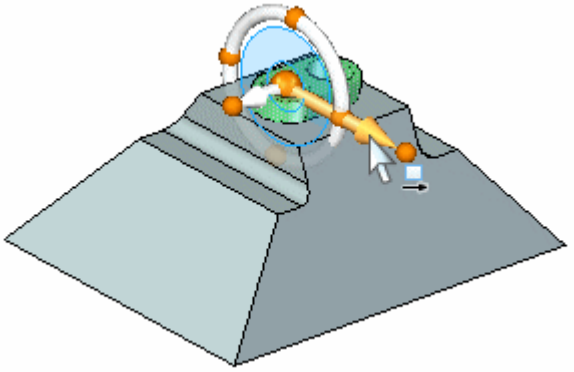
Select the feature

- In PathFinder, select the feature named *Protrusion 1*.
- On the command bar, choose the Copy option.

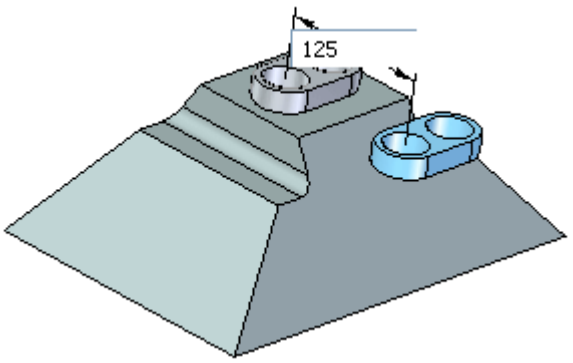


Move the copied feature

- Position the steering wheel as shown and click the primary axis to start the move command.



- In the dynamic edit box, type 125 and press the Enter key.



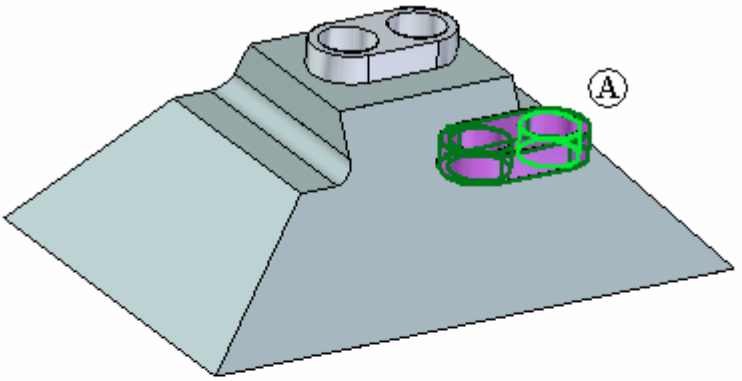
Align the feature to the angled face

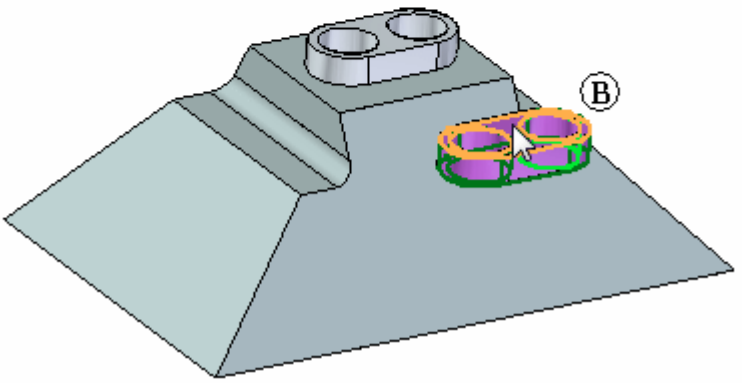
- On the Home tab® Relate Faces group, choose the Parallel relationship command.

Note

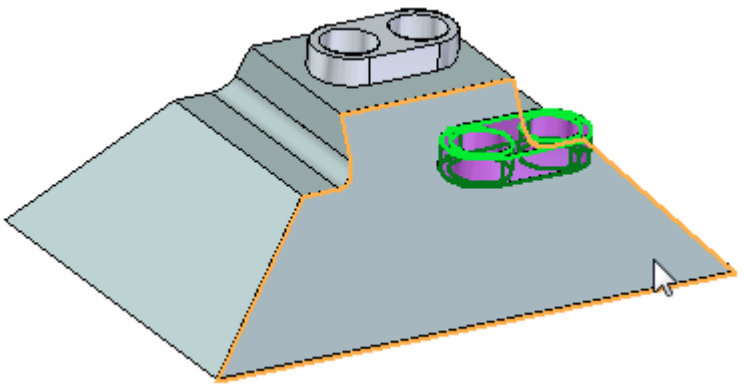
The Face Relationship commands are covered in the *Working with face relationships course*. Use the command to change the angle of the copied feature. You could use the steering wheel to rotate the feature but you need to know the angle of the face. The parallel relationship command is an easier step.

- When selecting the parallel command, face (A) is the seed face. Select the face (B) to redefine the seed face.

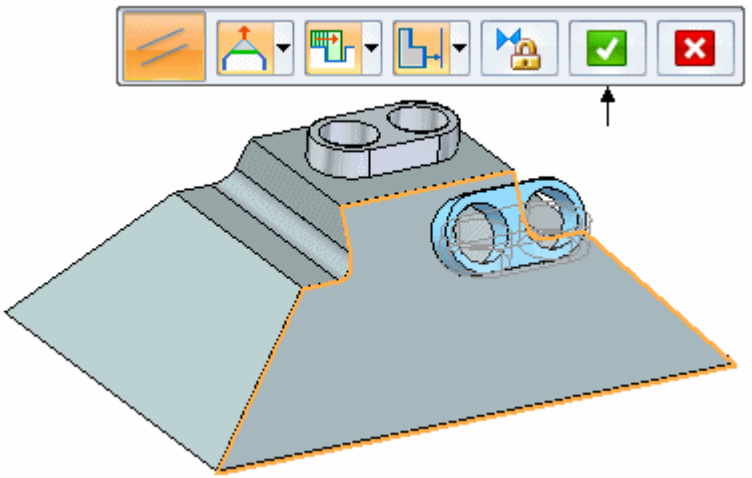




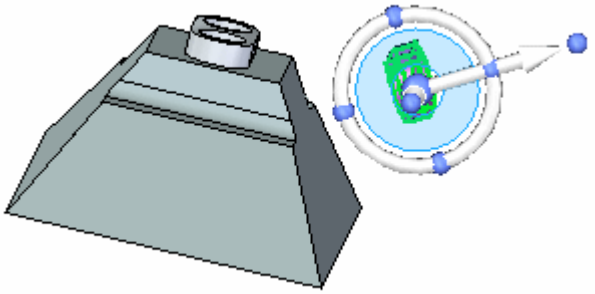
Select the angled face.



- Click the Accept button on command bar and then press the Esc key.

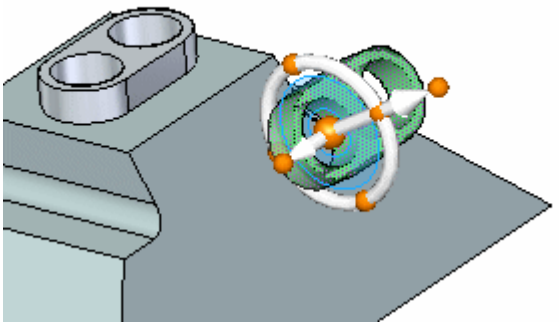


The feature is aligned with the angled face.

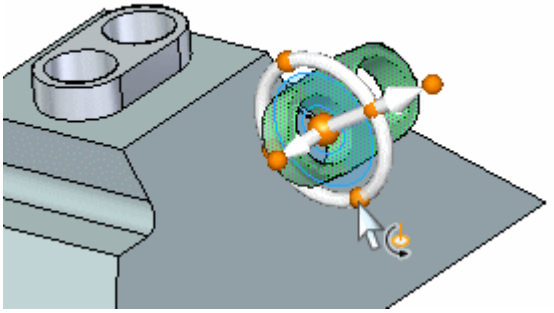


Position the feature

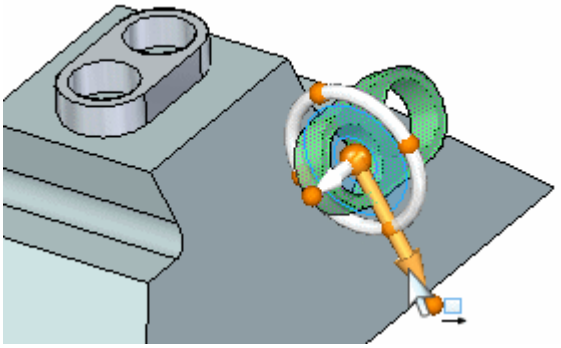
- Move the steering wheel origin to the center of one of the cylindrical faces as shown.

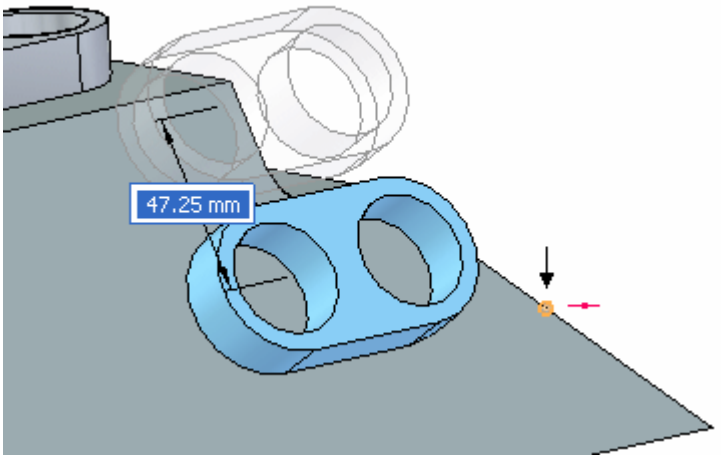


- Click the cardinal point shown to define the move direction.



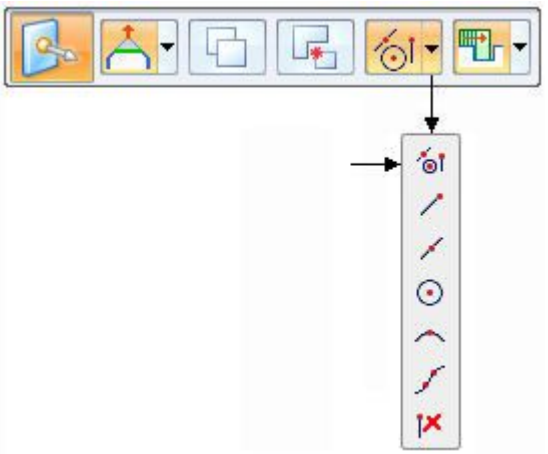
- Click the secondary axis and then select the midpoint of the edge shown.



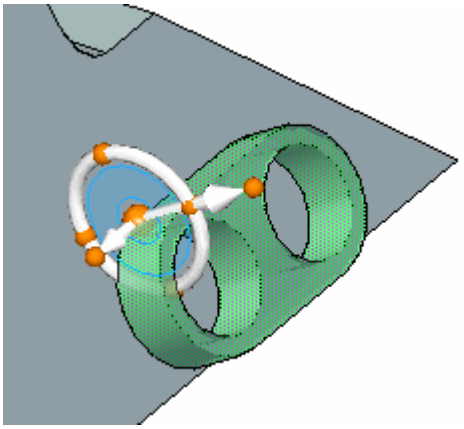


Note

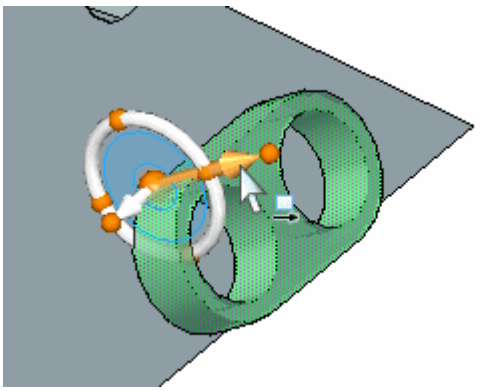
If you cannot locate the midpoint on the edge, make sure the All keypoints option is on.

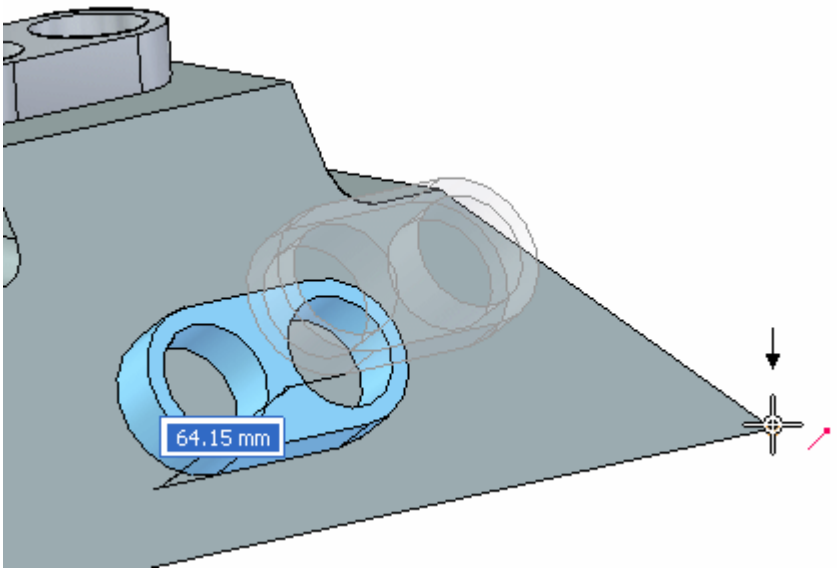


- Move the steering wheel origin to any point on the bottom of the feature.



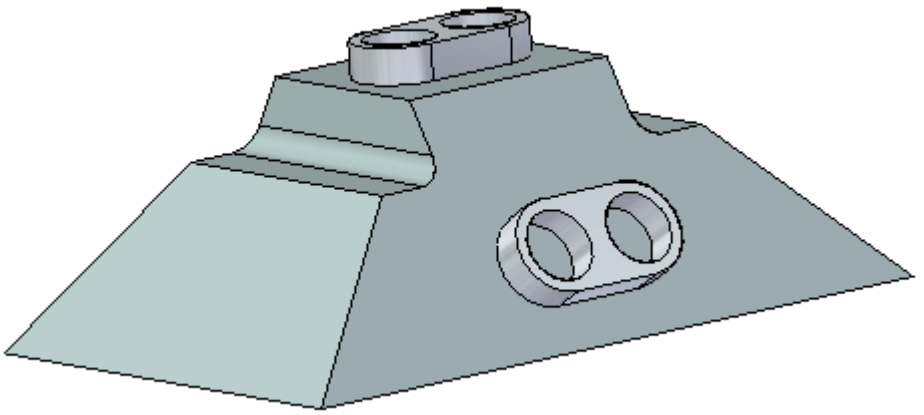
- Click the primary axis and then select the endpoint shown.





Attach the feature

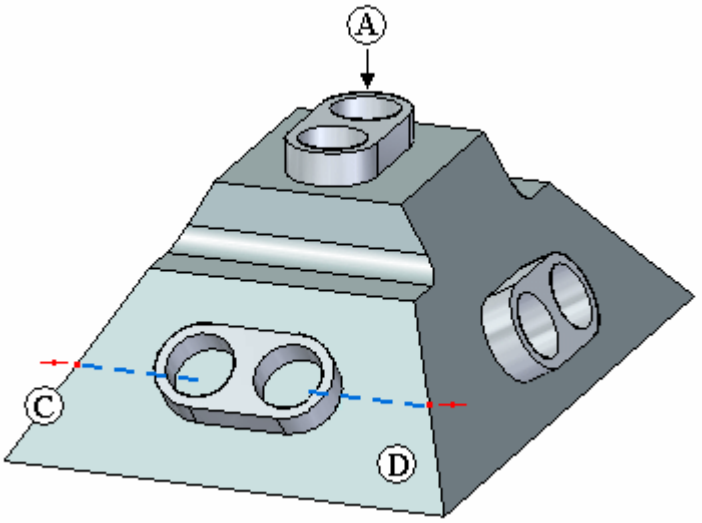
- Right-click in the part window and choose Attach.



This completes the first method of copying, aligning, and positioning a feature.

Method two overview

Use the *Copy to and Paste from clipboard* commands. Use the short-cut keys Ctrl+C (copy) and Ctrl+V (paste). Align the feature using the F3 key. Position the feature using the steering wheel. Copy feature (A) onto face (D). Center feature on face (D) with the feature holes aligned to the midpoint of edge (C).



To copy a selected feature to the clipboard, press Crtl+C.

To paste a feature from the clipboard, press Crtl+V.

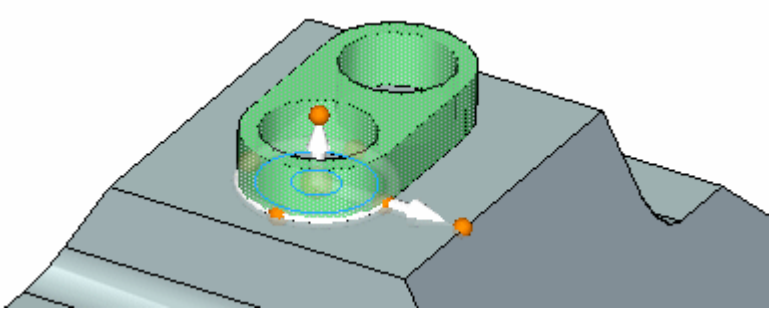
You can also choose the commands from the Home tab® Clipboard group.

Select the feature to copy

- In PathFinder, select the feature named *Protrusion 1*.
- Position the steering wheel origin at any point on the bottom of the feature. This comes into play when the feature aligns to the target angled face. Make sure the secondary axis points in the direction shown.

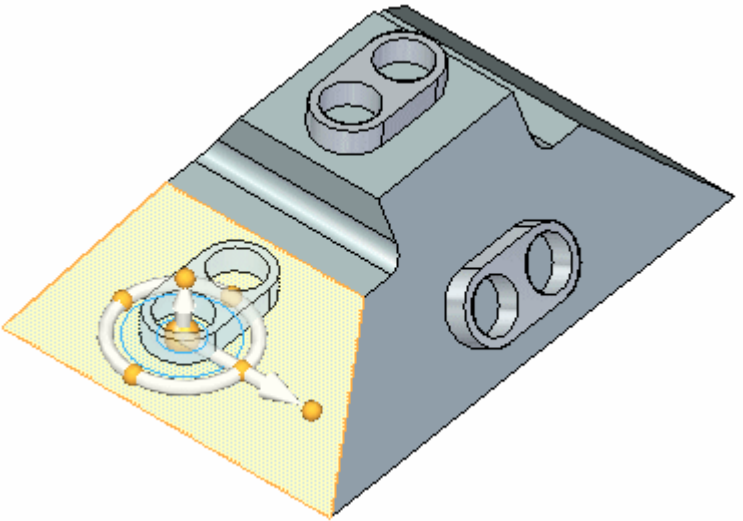
Note

The secondary axis orients normal to the face pasted to.

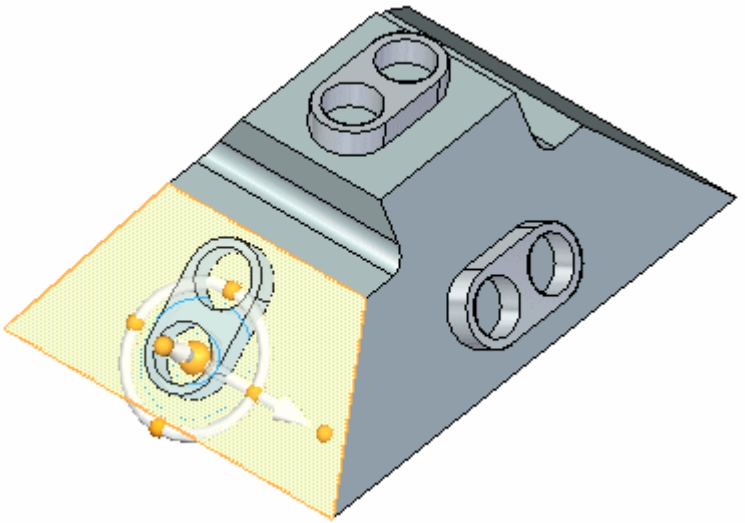


Copy and paste feature

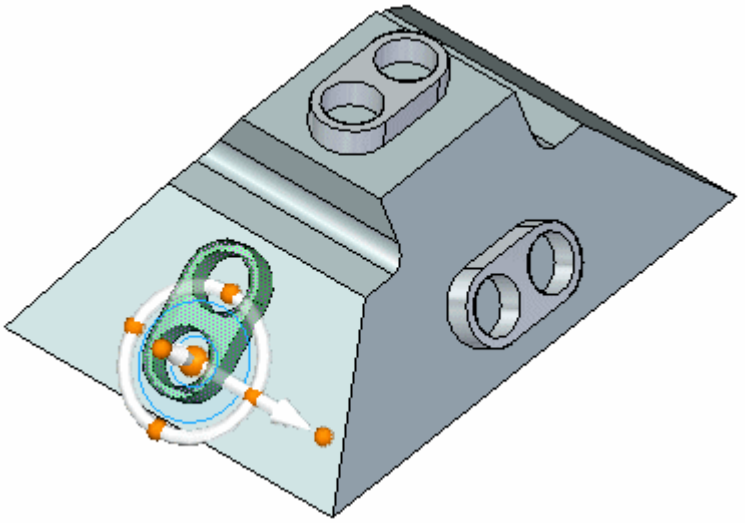
- Press **Ctrl+C** to copy the selected feature to the clipboard.
- Press **Ctrl+V** to paste the feature. The feature attaches to the cursor.
- Drag the cursor over the face shown.



- Press the F3 key to coplanar align the steering wheel face to the angled face. This is the reason you position the steering wheel to a point on the bottom of the feature in an earlier step.

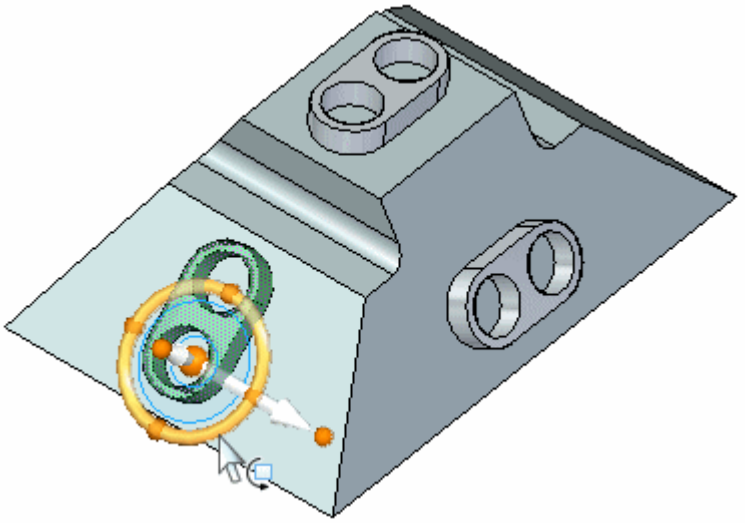


- Click to place the feature.

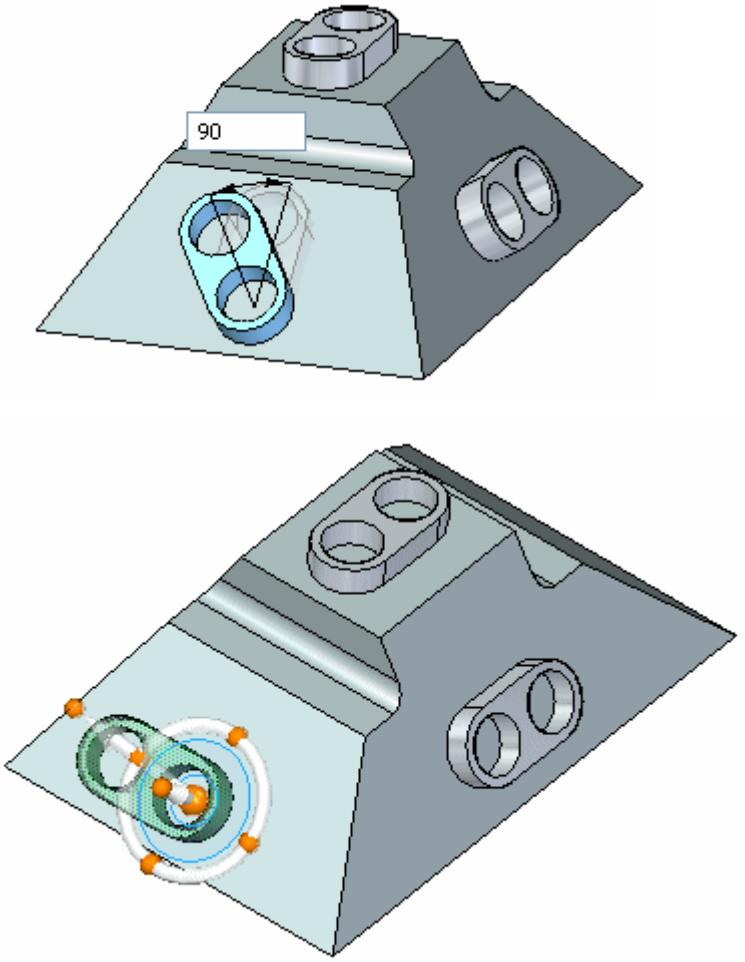


Rotate the feature

- Click the steering wheel torus.

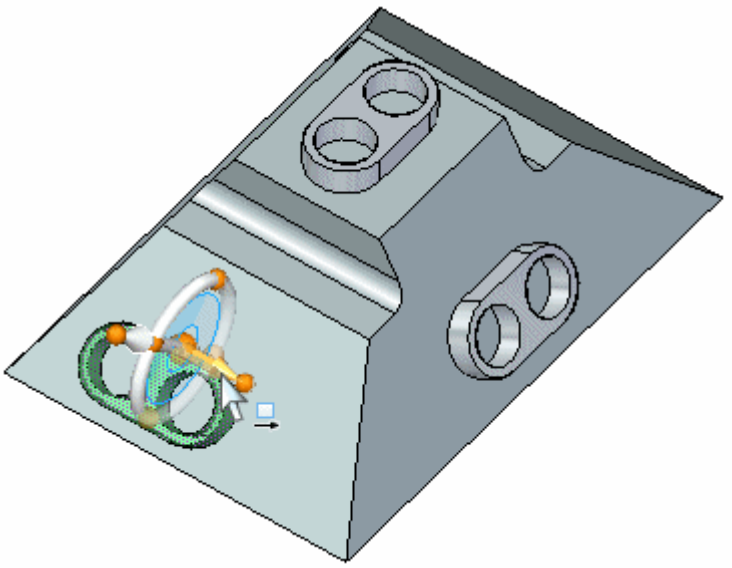


- In the dynamic edit box, type 90 and then press the Enter key.

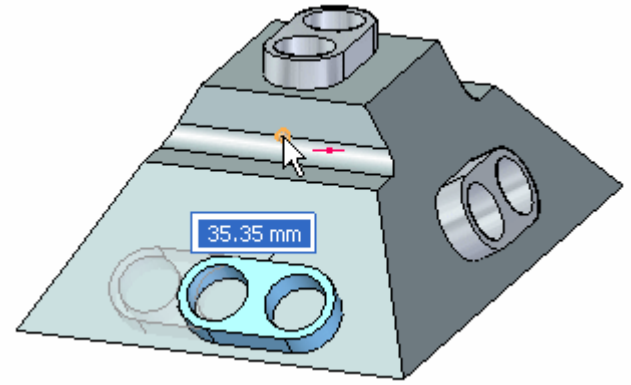


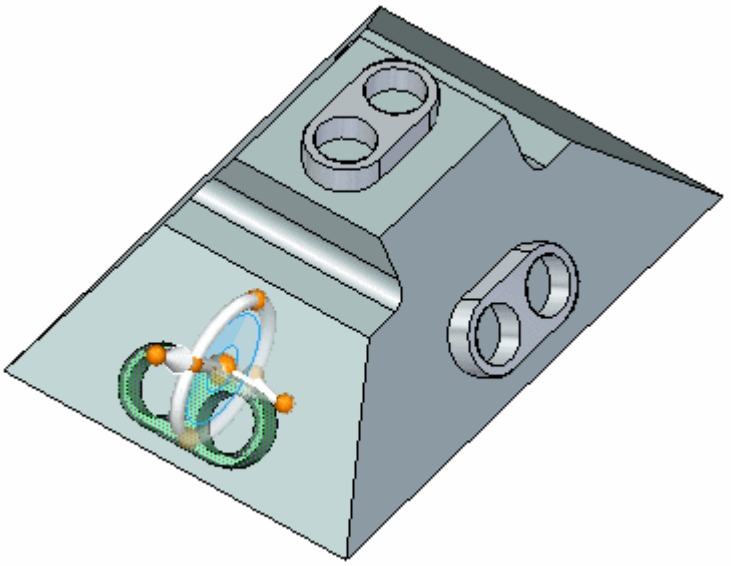
Center the feature on the face

- Move the steering wheel origin to the midpoint of a linear edge on the feature and click the secondary axis point shown to define the move direction.



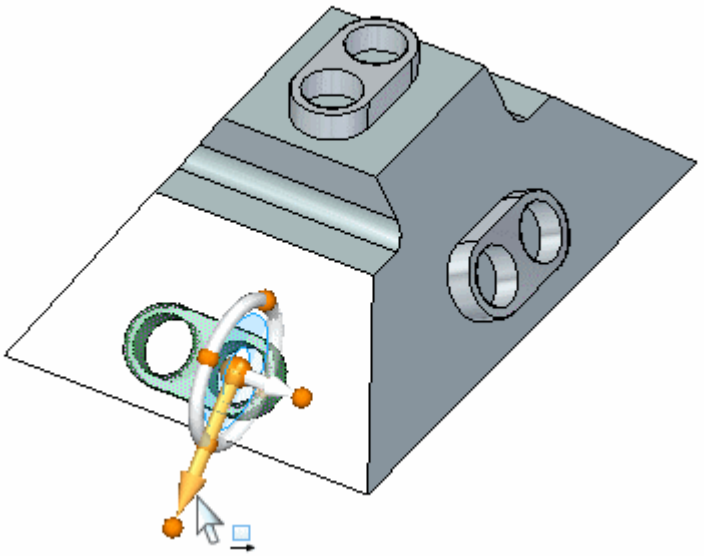
- Click the midpoint on the edge shown.



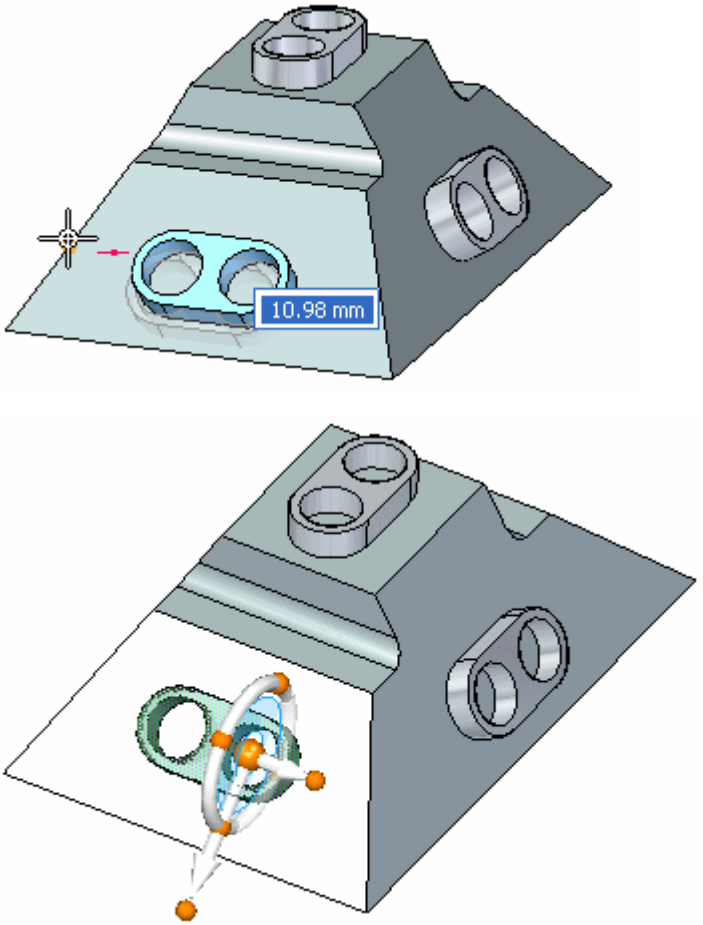


Align the feature center to the midpoint on the edge

- Move the steering wheel origin to the center of a cylindrical face on the feature and then click the axis shown to define move direction.

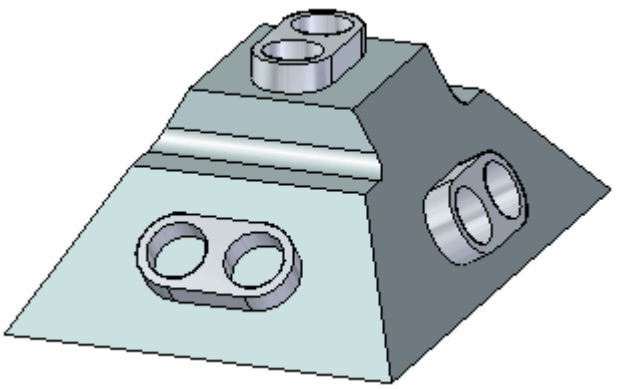


- Click the midpoint of the edge.



Attach the feature to the model

- Right-click in the part window and choose Attach.



This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to copy, align, and position a feature. Two methods were shown to help you understand the available tools for copying geometry.

Detach

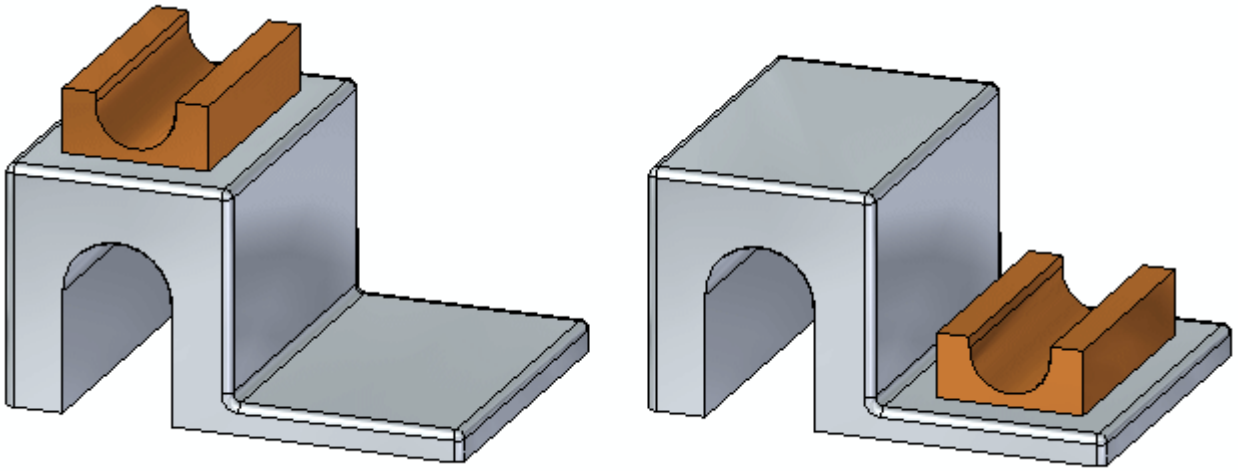
The Detach option removes the select set from the part body.

The removed select set can move or rotate.

This option is similar to a *cut and paste* operation.

Activity: Detaching and attaching a feature

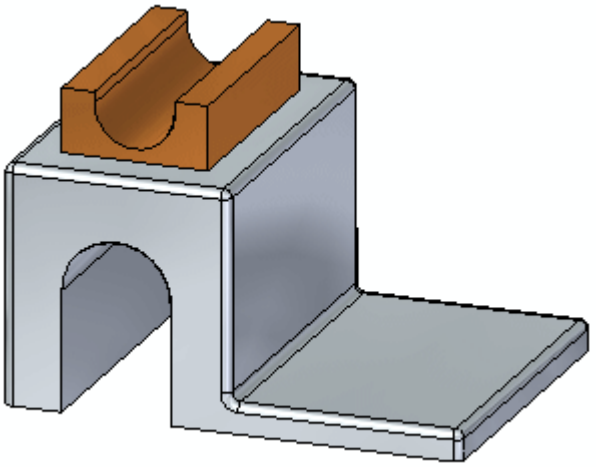
The activity guides you through the process of detaching an extruded feature and then attaching the copied feature at a new location on the model.



Activity: Detaching and attaching a feature

Open activity file

- Open *detach_a.par*.



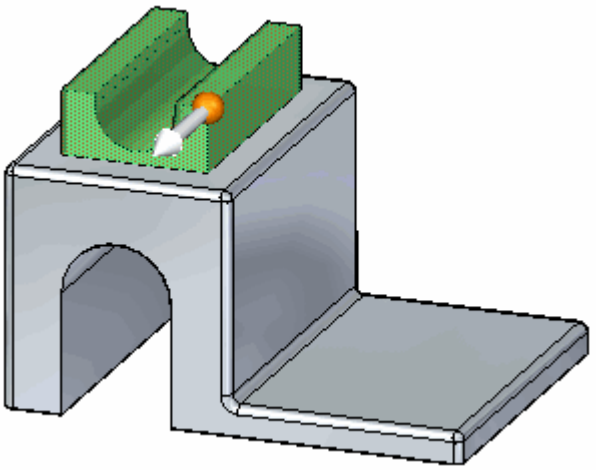
Suspend Live Rules

Live Rules is covered in the *Working with geometric relationships* self-paced course. Suspend the Live Rules settings while moving the feature. This ensures no other faces in the model participate in the move.

- Click the Suspend Live Rules (A) check box.

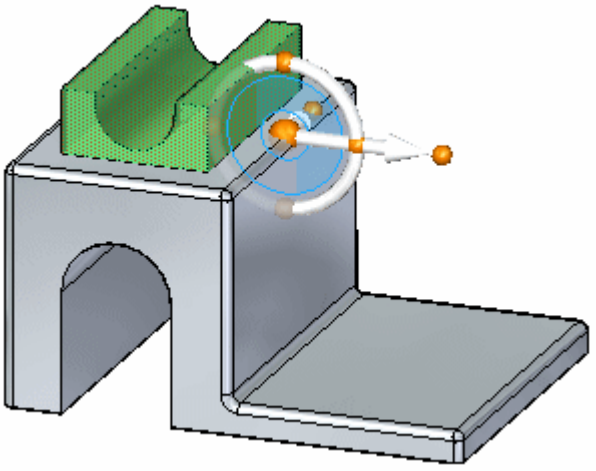
Select the feature to detach

- In PathFinder, click the feature named *Protrusion 2*.



Position the steering wheel origin

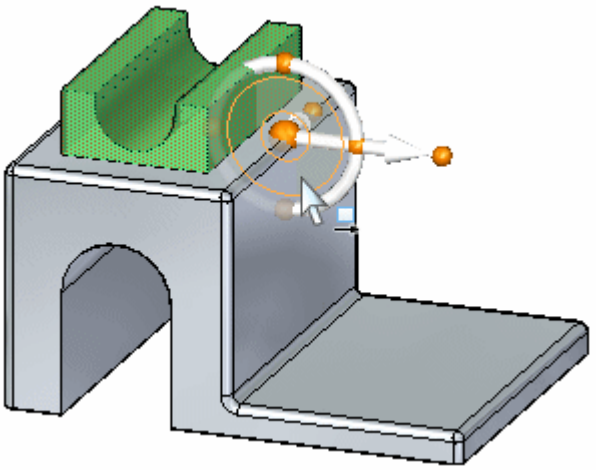
- Drag the steering wheel origin to the midpoint of the edge shown.



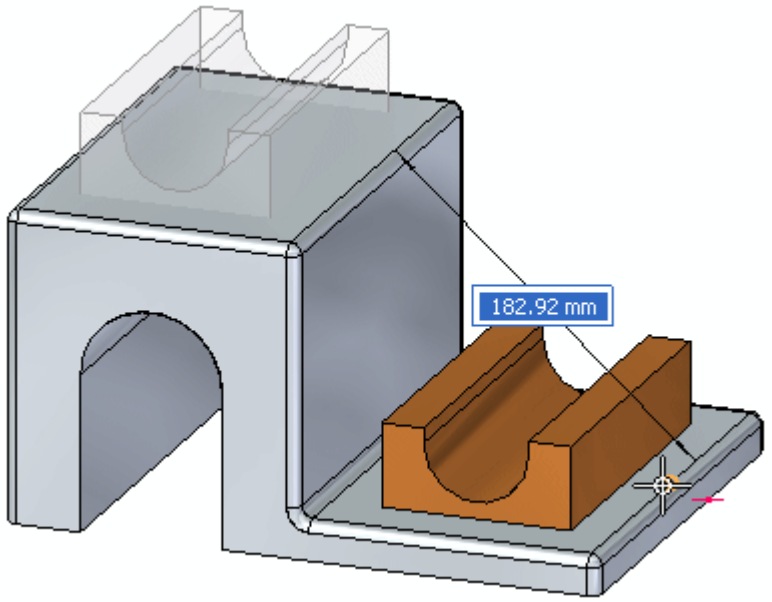
Move the feature

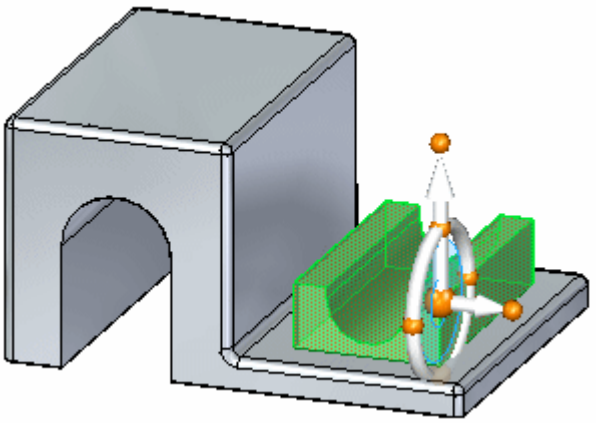
- On the command bar, choose the Detach option.

- Click the steering wheel tool plane to start the move.



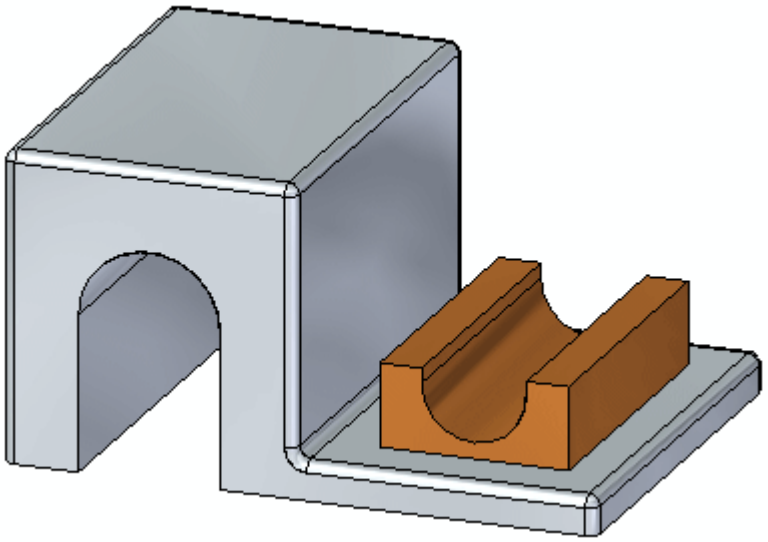
- Select the midpoint of the edge shown to complete the move.





Attach the feature

- Right-click in the part window and choose the Attach command.

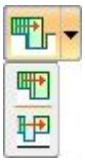


Summary

In this activity you learned how to detach a feature, move it to a new location, and then attach the feature to the model. This process is similar to a cut and paste process.

Precedence

Use the precedence option to set which faces have priority during a synchronous move operation.



Select Set Priority

Selected and other moving faces have priority over non-moving faces.

Model Priority

Non-moving faces have priority over moving faces.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. Name the three connected faces options and briefly describe the results of each option.

2. When you copy a set of faces or a feature, what happens to the original faces?

3. When using the Copy to (Ctrl+C) clipboard command, what is the importance of the steering wheel secondary axis direction?

4. What does the Detach option do?

5. Explain the Precedence option.

Answers

1. Name the three connected faces options and briefly describe the results of each option.

   - Extend/Trim–Selected face moves by extending and trimming the adjacent faces.
   - Tip–Selected face is rigid. Adjacent faces change to meet the movement of the rigid selected face.
   - Lift–Selected face is rigid. Adjacent connected faces do not change. The selected face moves in a direction normal to the face to either add or remove material.

2. When you copy a set of faces or a feature, what happens to the original faces?

   Nothing. They do not change.

3. When using the Copy to (Ctrl+C) clipboard command, what is the importance of the steering wheel secondary axis direction?

   When the copied feature pastes (Ctrl+V) to a face, the secondary axis orients normal to the selected face.

4. What does the Detach option do?

   Detaches the selected faces from the model during movement. The detached select set changes to a purple color. The display can be turned on or off in PathFinder.

5. Explain the Precedence option.

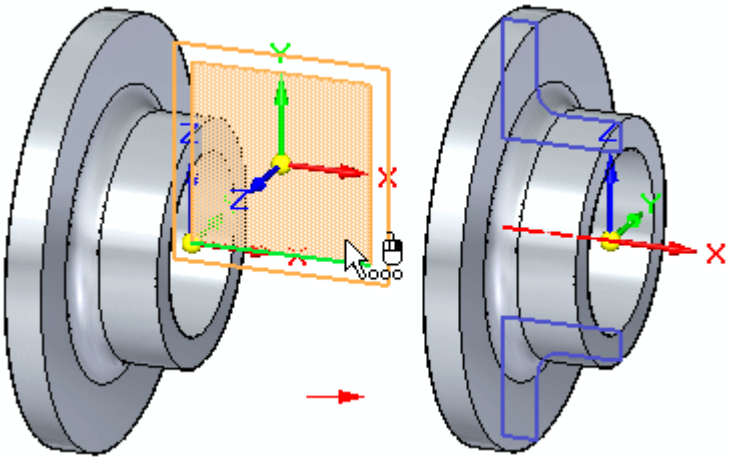
   The precedence option determines the behavior of the selected faces versus the other model faces. The *Select Set* priority modifies other faces in the model. The *Model* priority keeps existing faces from changing during a move operation.

Lesson summary

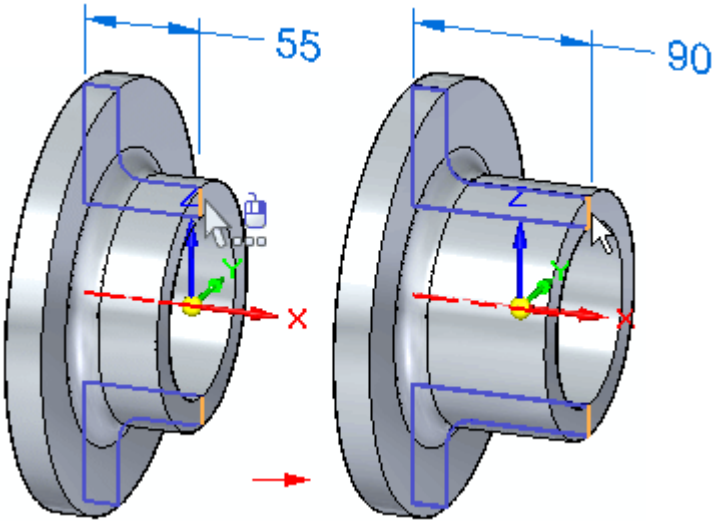
Use the move command bar options to control the behavior of the select set during a move operation.

Working with Live Sections

You use the Live Section command to create a 2D cross-section on a plane through a 3D part. For example, you can select one of the principal planes on the base coordinate system as the plane for a live section.



Live sections can make it easier to visualize and edit certain types of parts, such as parts that contain revolved features. You can then edit the 2D elements of the live section to modify 3D model geometry.



Creating live sections

You can select a planar face, reference plane, or principal plane on a coordinate system as the plane for the live section. When you select the plane, a live section is created, similar to a section view in a drawing. When the live section passes through a procedural feature, such as a hole, an edge set is created.

An entry for the live section is added to the Live Sections collector in PathFinder.

Automatic creation of live sections

When creating a revolved extrusion or cutout, use the Create Live Section option (A) to create a live section upon feature completion. The option is on by default.

All sketch dimensions migrate to the live section.

Editing live sections

You edit a live section using the Select tool and the 2D steering wheel editing handle. You can edit individual elements or you can edit the entire live section.

Editing 2D elements in a live section to modify the 3D model

When you select a 2D element in a live section, the 2D steering wheel editing tool appears. You can use the handles on the 2D steering wheel to move or rotate the live section element to modify 3D model geometry. If the live section element you select is an edge set created from a procedural feature, such as a hole, the editing handle for the procedural feature is also displayed.

You can also place PMI dimensions on the 2D elements of a live section and then edit the dimension value to modify the model.

Note

When moving a live section element using the 2D steering wheel edit tool or a PMI dimension, the current settings in Live Rules are used to control the edit behavior.

Editing the entire live section

You can select the entire live section using PathFinder or QuickPick. You can then use the steering wheel to move or rotate the entire live section. When you move or rotate the entire live section, 3D model geometry is not modified. The live section recalculates at its new position. This can be useful when you have modified the 3D model using other methods, such that the live section is no longer positioned where you want it.

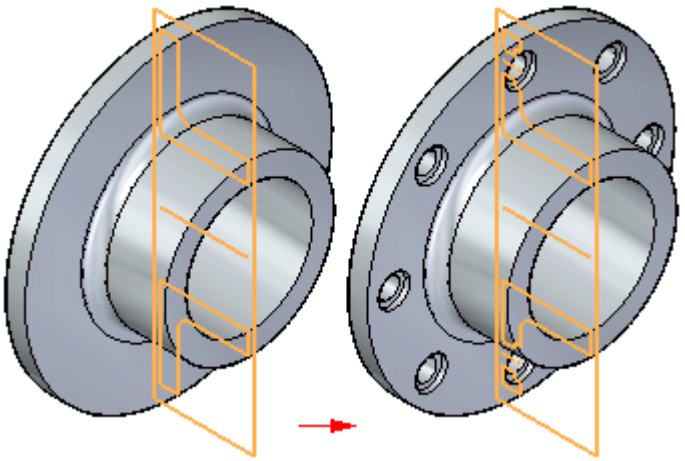
Displaying live sections

You can use the check box adjacent to a live section entry in PathFinder to show or hide a live section in the graphics window. You can use the check box adjacent to the Live Sections collector to display or hide all the live sections.

You can use the Live Section Colors section on the Colors page of the Solid Edge Options dialog box to specify the colors you want to use for the edges, centerlines, and regions for live sections.

Model editing and live section update

The live section automatically updates when you add or remove features, or directly edit the 3D model. For example, if you add a pattern of holes to a synchronous model, the live section automatically updates.



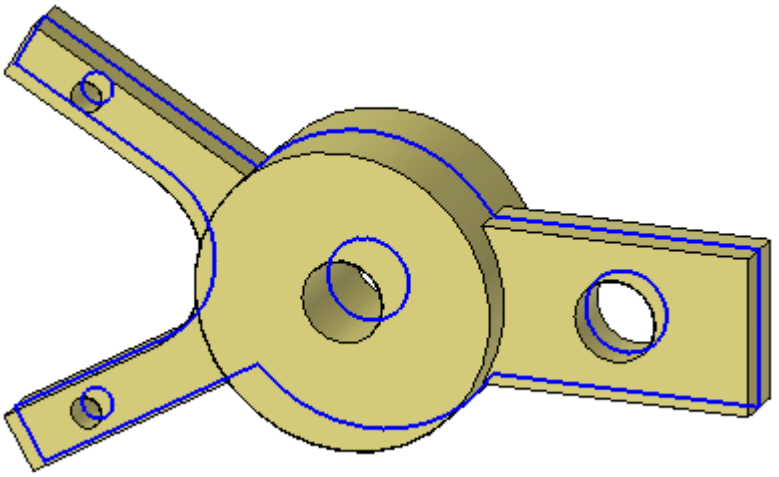
Live sections in an assembly

You can edit a 2D element on a live section to modify a part in the context of an assembly. You can use the keypoints on adjacent parts to modify the live section element with respect to other parts in the assembly.

You can use commands on the shortcut menu to control the display of live sections on a selected part.

Activity: Live Section

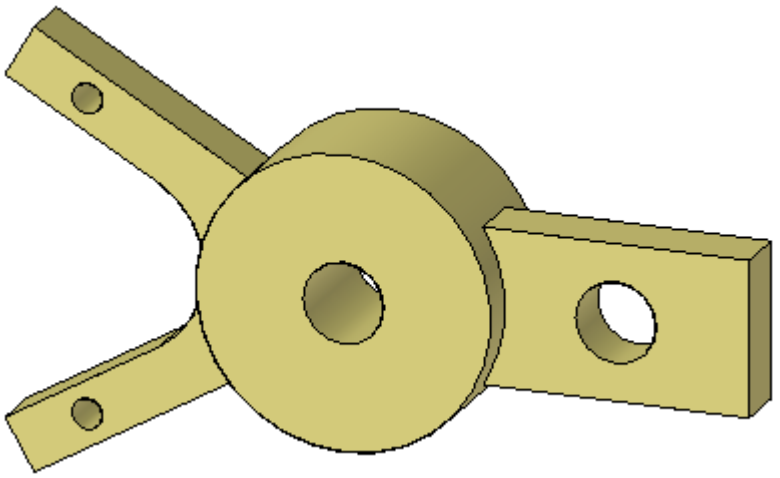
This activity guides you through the process of creating a live section through a model. The model is modified by manipulating the live section edges.



Activity: Live Section

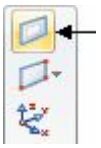
Open activity file

- Open *live_section.par*.

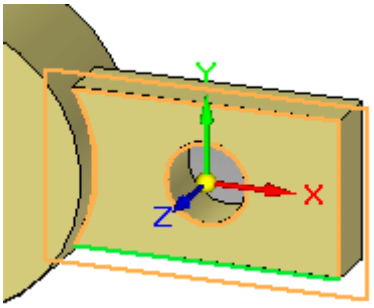


Create a section plane

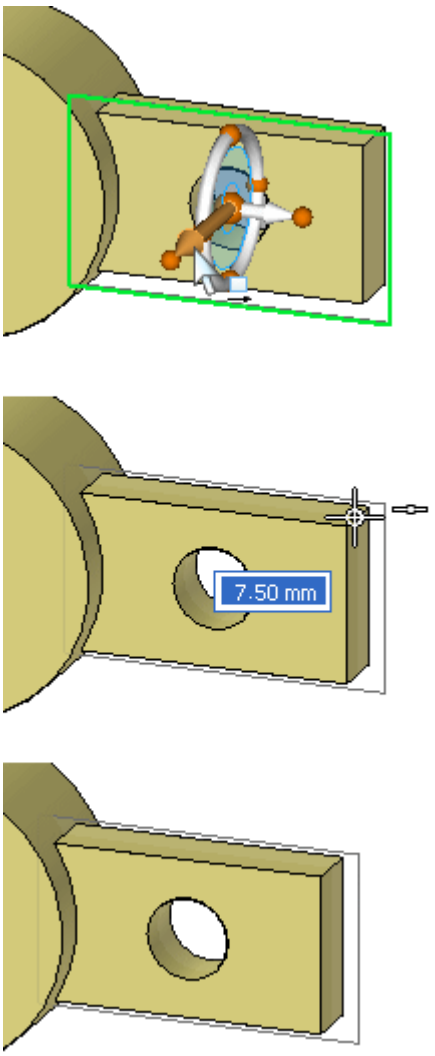
- On the Home tab® Planes group, choose the Coincident Plane command.



- Select the plane shown.



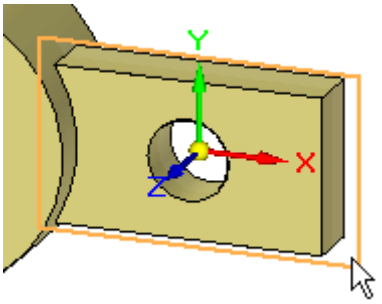
- Move the coincident plane to the midpoint of the edge shown.

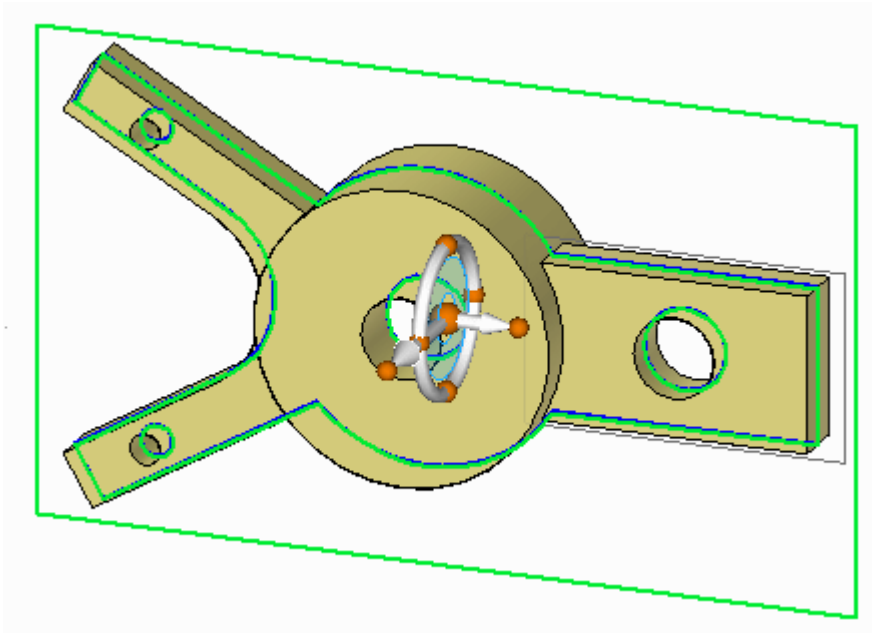


Create a Live Section

- On the Home tab® Section group, choose the Live Section command .

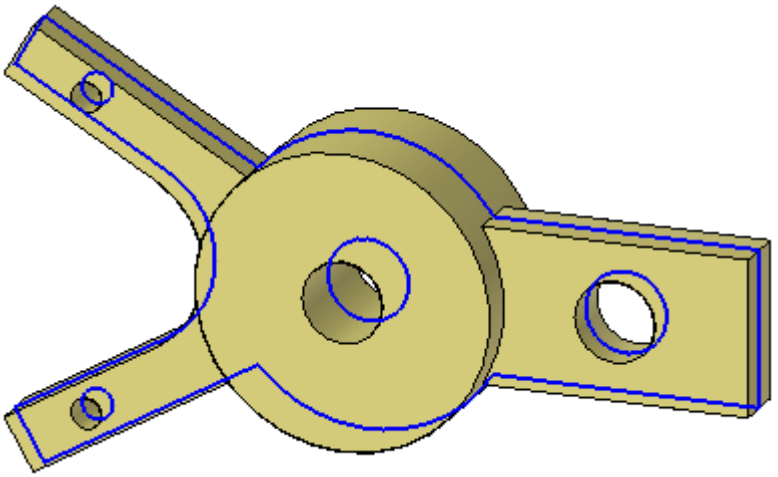
- Select the plane created in the previous step to define the live section.



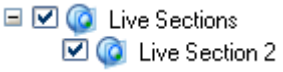


At this point you can use the steering wheel to move the live section if desired.

- Press the Esc key to end the live section command.



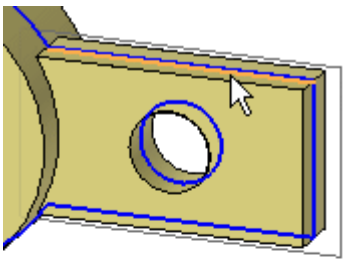
- Notice in PathFinder that a *Live Sections* collector appears. You control the display of a live section with the check box.

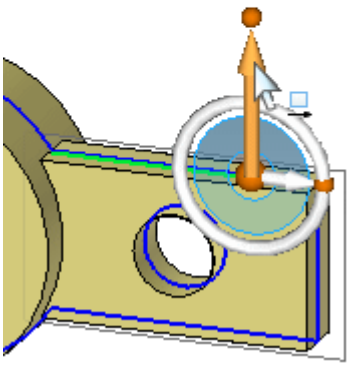


Move a face

Instead of selecting a face to move, you can select the edge created by the section through a face to move. Moving the edge is the same as moving the face.

- Select the edge shown and move it to observe the behavior.





Dynamically move the edge but do not click. Press Esc to end the move. Press Esc again to clear the selected edge.

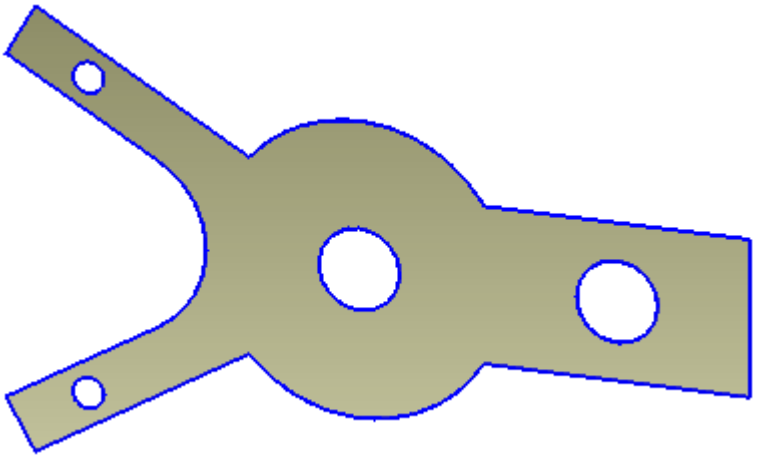
Note

The edge can take on all operations that its parent face can (for example: dimension, rotate, delete).

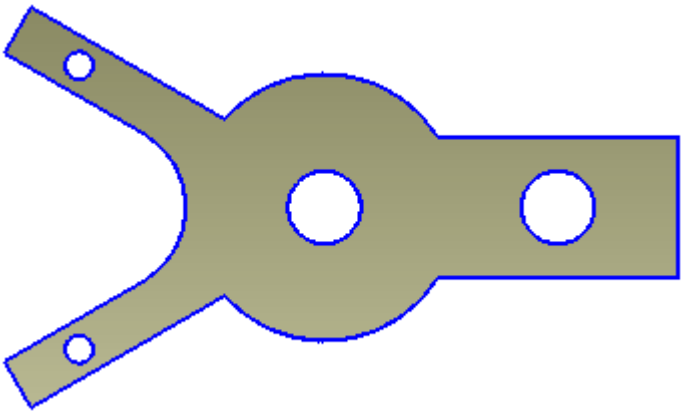
Modify the model shape by manipulating the live section

The model does not have to display to manipulate a live section. Turn off the display of the model.

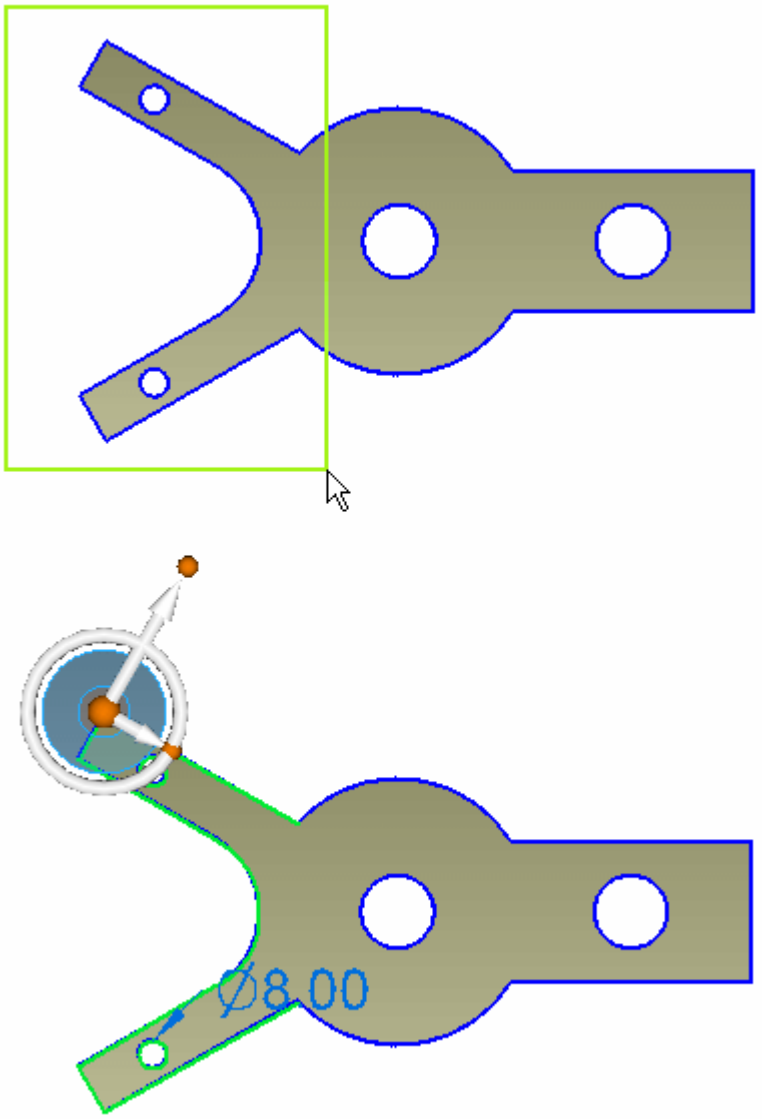
- Right-click in the part window and on the shortcut menu choose *Hide All ® Design Body*. Hide all reference planes too.



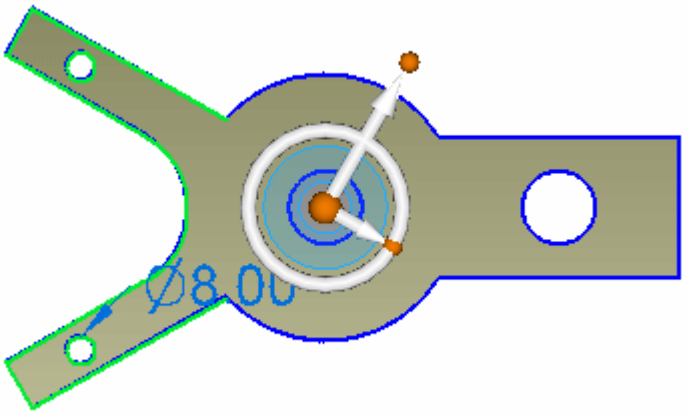
- Change the display to a front view. Press Ctrl+F.



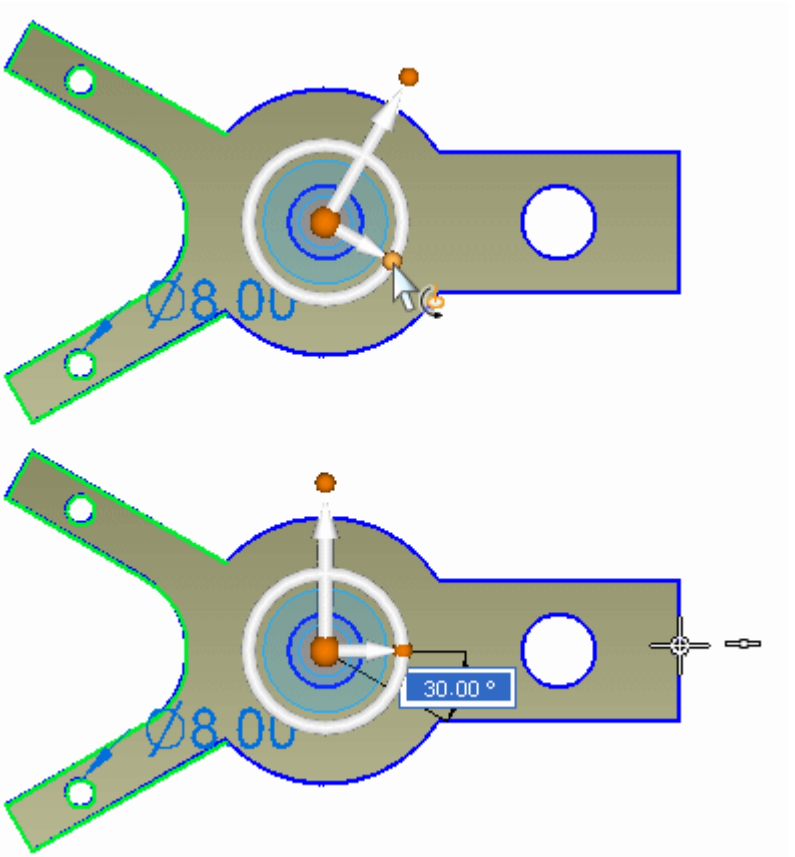
- Rotate the two arms on the left 15° about the center hole. Select the live section edges shown using a fence.



- Move the steering wheel origin to the center of the hole as shown.



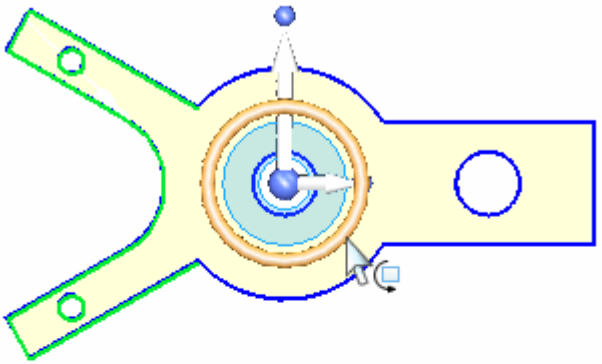
- Change the orientation of steering wheel. Click the cardinal point shown and then click the midpoint of the right edge.

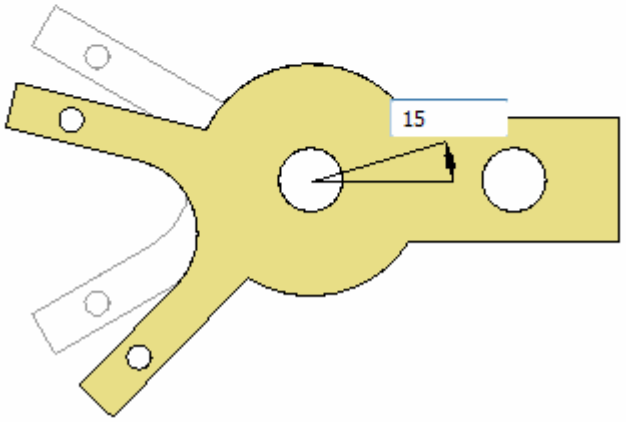


- Click the torus. Type 15 and press the Enter key.

  Note

  If you get an error during the rotation, suspend live rules (A). After completion, uncheck suspend live rules.

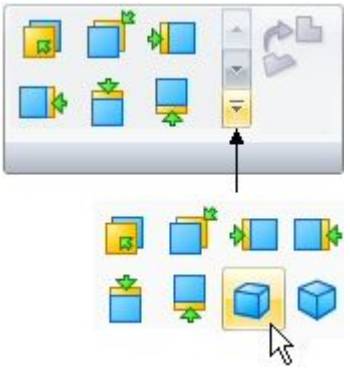


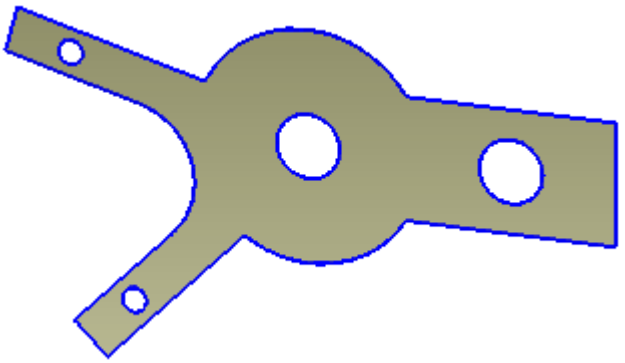


- Press the Esc key to end the move command.

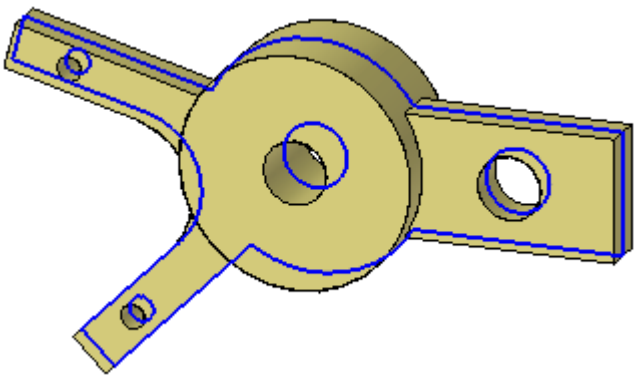
Observe model changes

- Change to a *Dimetric* view.



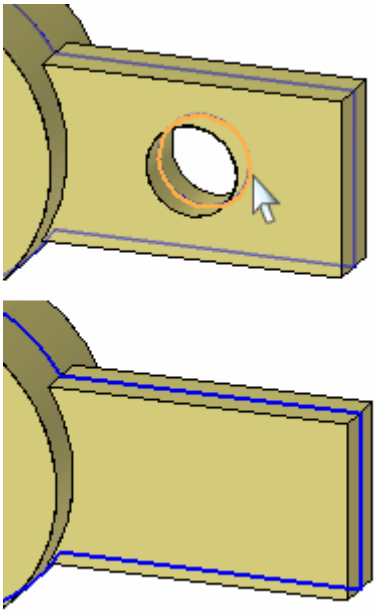


- On the shortcut menu, turn on the display of the Design Body. Notice that the model changes to the modifications made to the live section.



Delete a face

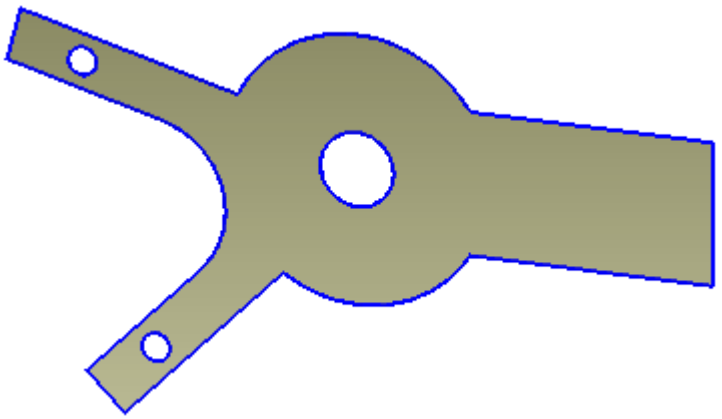
- Click the circular edge shown and press the Delete key.



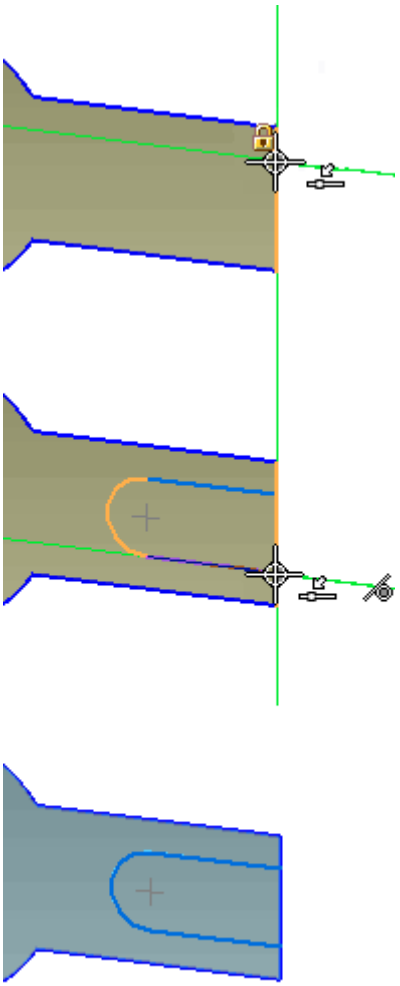
Deleting the live section circular edge is the same as deleting the circular face.

Remove material to create a slot

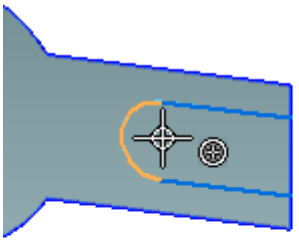
- Turn off the design body display.

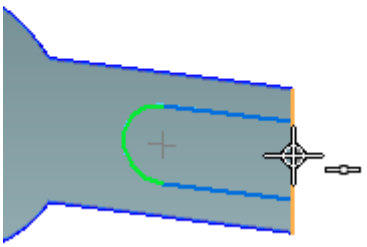


- Draw a sketch containing two lines and one arc. Choose the Line command and click the right section edge.

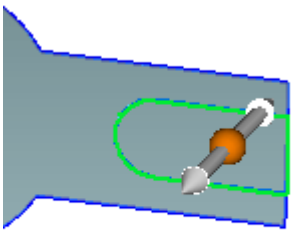


- Align the circle center with the midpoint of the right edge.

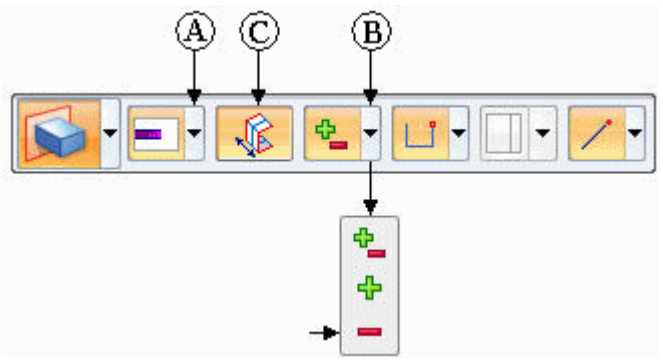




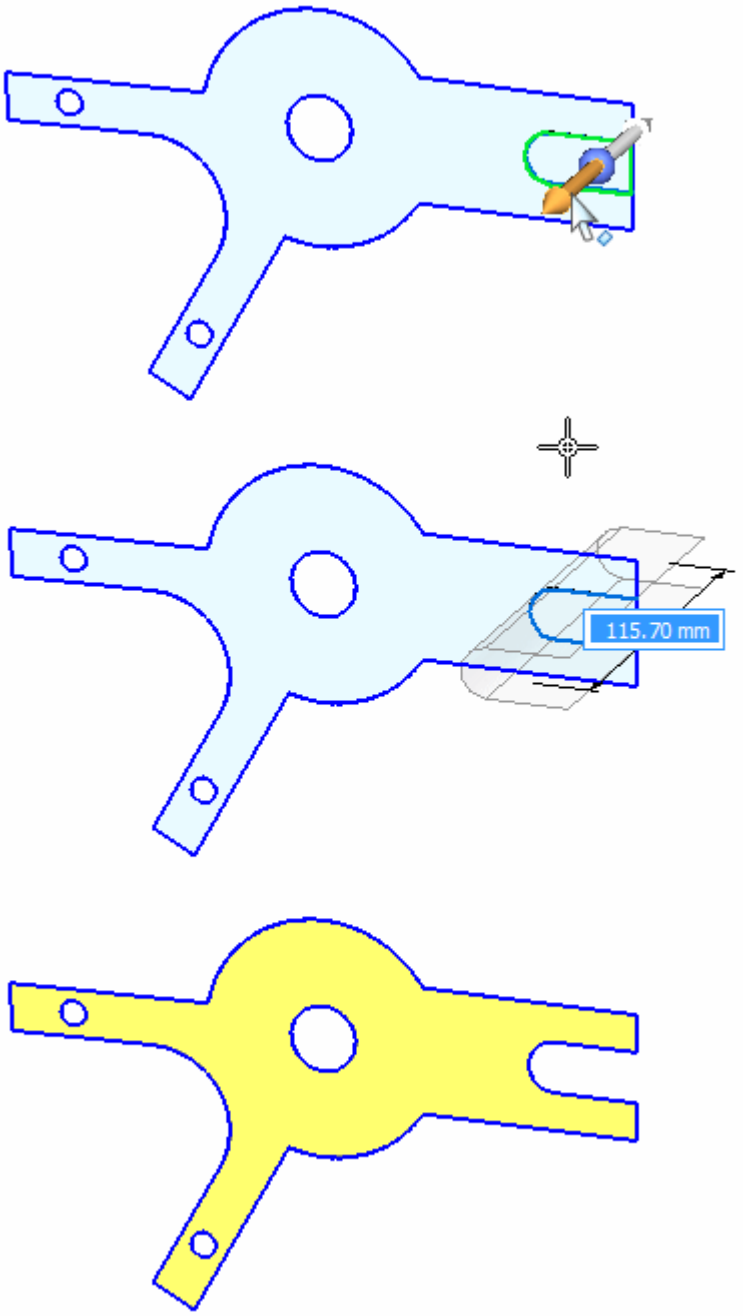
- Select the region shown.



- On the command bar, click (B) to set the Remove material option. Click (A) to set the Through All extent option and (C) to set the Symmetric extent.

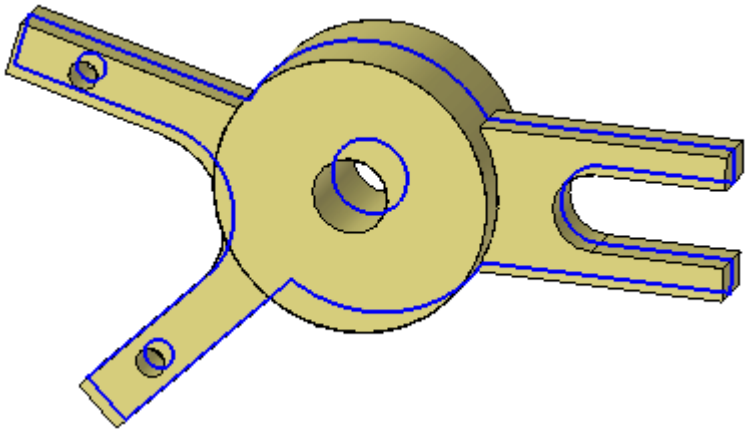


- Click on a direction handle and dynamically drag to exceed the width of the part.

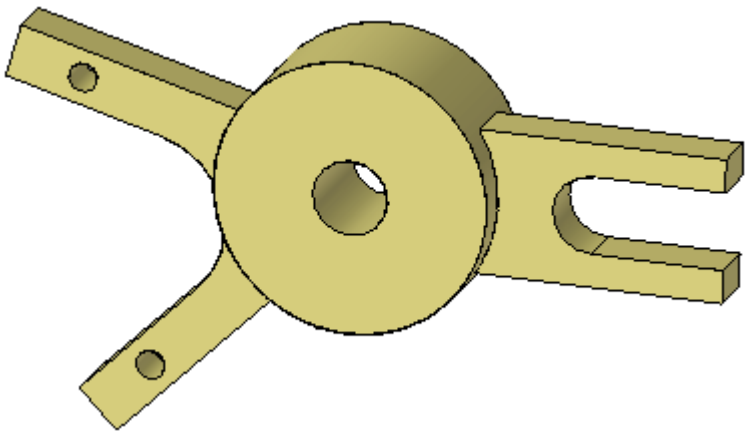


Change display to observe the changes

- Turn on the design body.



- In PathFinder, turn off the live section display.



This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create a live section. The live section command creates edges where a user defined plane intersects the design body. Each live section edge represents a face in the model. You can select either the face or live section edge to modify the model.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. How do you create a Live Section?

2. How do you edit a model with a Live Section?

3. When creating a revolved feature with a dimensioned sketch, what is the result when you choose Live Section option on the revolve command bar?

4. How do you redefine the live section?

Answers

1. How do you create a Live Section?

   Step 1: On the Home tab® Section group, choose the Live Section command.

   Step 2: Select a reference plane or a planar face as the live section plane.

   Step 3: Move the live section plane to the desired part intersection location.

2. How do you edit a model with a Live Section?

   You select an edge and move to desired location. If you select an edge of a cylinder, the cylinder edit handle appears and you can change the diameter. If the model contains dimensions, you can select a dimension to change the model.

3. When creating a revolved feature with a dimensioned sketch, what is the result when you choose Live Section option on the revolve command bar?

   The dimensions migrate to the live section.

4. How do you redefine the live section?

   Select the live section in PathFinder or with QuickPick. Select the primary axis and move the live section plane to a new location.

Lesson summary

You use the Live Section command to create a 2D cross-section on a plane through a 3D part. For example, you can select one of the principal planes on the base coordinate system as the plane for a live section. Live sections can make it easier to visualize and edit certain types of parts, such as parts that contain revolved features. You can then edit the 2D elements of the live section to modify 3D model geometry.

Lesson

4 Working with face relationships

Face relationships overview

When modeling synchronous features, you have control over the solve behavior of a model or an assembly during face editing. The control is achieved through relationships between faces. Face relationships are inherited from sketch elements used to create the faces of a body feature. Face relationships are also applied using the relationships commands in the Home tab® Face Relate group. Applied relationships are made permanent by the default persist setting on the command bar. If a relationship is to be temporary, you can turn off the persist option.

Relationships are assigned to faces. During a face move, Live Rules considers found relationships, persistent relationships, and locked dimensions in the model. Live Rules controls any or all of these during the operation. Found relationships are applied based on the geometric state of the model during edit, as well as on the Live Rules settings.

Live Rules settings control what you want to look for.

Creating face relationships

- Use the relationship commands in the Face Relate Group (A) to apply face relationships to selected faces.

- The face relationship commands define how faces are related to each other. You select a face to relate (seed face) and then select a face to relate to (target face). This does not apply to the Ground, Rigid, and Horizontal/Vertical commands.

- A relationship is permanent (Persist option on) by default. However, the relationship can be set to temporary (Persist option off).

- Persistent and temporary relationships that are detected can be ignored by the system during a solve of a geometric change.

Face Relate command bars

Each face relate command has a unique command bar.

The following is an example of the coplanar relationship command bar.

Understanding seed and target faces

Seed face

- The seed face refers to the initial face selected.
- The seed face is the face to be related.
- The seed face position changes.
- The steering wheel locks onto the seed face.
- More faces can be related simultaneously by adding the faces to a select set. The seed face definition remains.

Target face

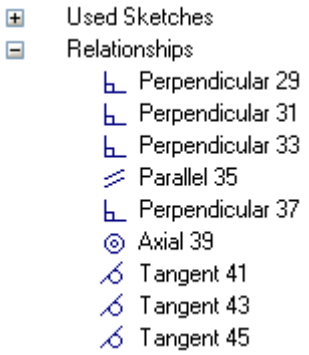
- The target face defines the relationship to be applied to the seed face.
- The target face does not change during the Relate command.
- There can only be one target face.

Persist

Relationships applied through the face relate commands are persistent by default.

A persistent relationship:

- Is always detected by the system during a synchronous command.
- Is stored in the Relationships collector in PathFinder.
- Can be deleted using the relationships context menu in PathFinder.



- On a face in a select set, a persistent relationship can be turned off in Advanced Live Rules. If turned off, the persistent relationship is deleted after the command completes.

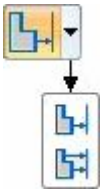
Non persistent relationships are ignored if that specific relationship is turned off in Live Rules.

Accept or cancel

If the desired relationship results are achieved, click Accept. The face relationship command ends but the select set is still active.

If the desired relationship results are not achieved, click Cancel. The face relationship command ends but the select set is still active.

Single/All face alignment



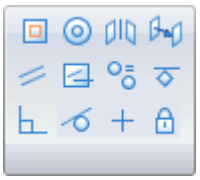
Single Align

Only the seed face is related to the target face. The remaining faces in the select set maintain their original relationship with the seed face.

Multiple Align

All faces in the select set relate to the target face.

Relationships



Concentric

Relates cylindrical faces concentric to each other.

Coplanar

Relates faces coplanar to each other.

Parallel

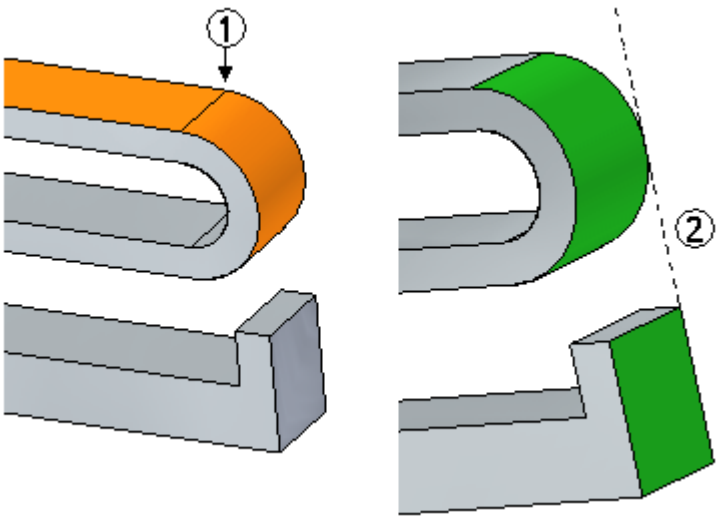
Relates faces parallel to each other.

Perpendicular

Relates faces perpendicular to each other.

Tangent

Relates two faces tangent at their connection edge (1) or tangent by touching a theoretical face extension (2).



Rigid

Locks face plane orientations to one another. Rigid relationship is automatically persistent. Faces with a rigid relationship can be trimmed and extended. (1) shows the relationship in PathFinder and (2) shows the rigid relationship in Live Rules (Advanced).

(1)

(2)

Ground

Fixes a face plane. A fixed face can be trimmed and/or extended. A fixed face can translate in its plane only. Multiple faces can be grounded. A ground relationship is permanent (persistent). (1) Shows the relationship in PathFinder and (2) shows the ground relationship in Live Rules (Advanced).

(1)

(2)

Symmetric about

Makes a selected face symmetric to a target face about a face or plane.

Symmetric about workflow

1. Select face to be modified (referred to as the seed face).
2. Select target face. This face determines what the seed face is symmetric to.
3. Select symmetry plane or face.
4. Accept.

Equal radius

Makes the radius of a selected cylinder/partial cylinder(s) equal to the target cylinder/partial cylinder.

Coplanar axis

Makes selected holes/cylindrical faces aligned on an axis that is parallel to a target face/plane. The target face/plane can be selected on the part or a custom axis can be defined. See the following activities:

- Coplanar axis hole alignment
- Coplanar axis alignment using a custom axis

Offset

Makes the selected face(s) parallel to the target face with an offset distance.

Horizontal and vertical

Makes a selected planar face parallel to the most similar base reference plane. You also can apply a horizontal/vertical constraint between two keypoints relative to a reference plane.

Workflow for relating faces

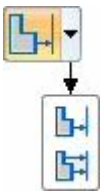
The following workflow applies to the coplanar, concentric, parallel, perpendicular, perpendicular, symmetry, offset, and tangent relationship commands.

1. Select a relationship command on the Home tab® Face Relate group and then select a face (seed) or a select set (a seed face with additional faces).

   or

   You could also select a face (seed) or a select set (a seed face with additional faces) and then select a relationship command on the Home tab® Face Relate group.

2. If more than one face is in the select set, click the Single/Multiple Align option.



3. At this point, you can select a target face, which will use the default option settings. Other options can be selected at any time during the command.

4. Select the target face (face for the seed to be related to).

5. Relationships are permanent by default. If the relationship is to be temporary, click the Persist option .

6. If the desired result is not achieved, click Cancel . The select set remains and the relationship command can be started again.

7. If the desired result is achieved, click the Accept button to apply the relationship.

Activity: Relating a single face with a rigid select set

Learn how to use the Coplanar command to apply a relationship to a single face while the select set remains rigid to the single face.

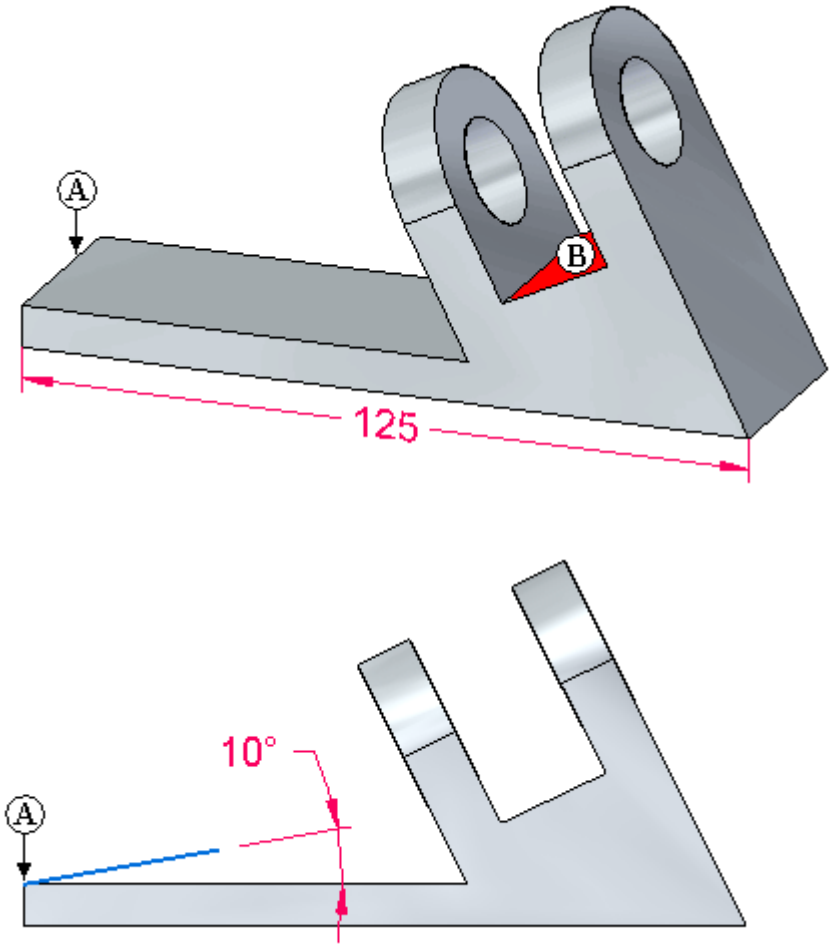
Activity: Applying a relationship to a single face with a rigid select set

Open activity file

- Open *rigid_set.par*.

Problem

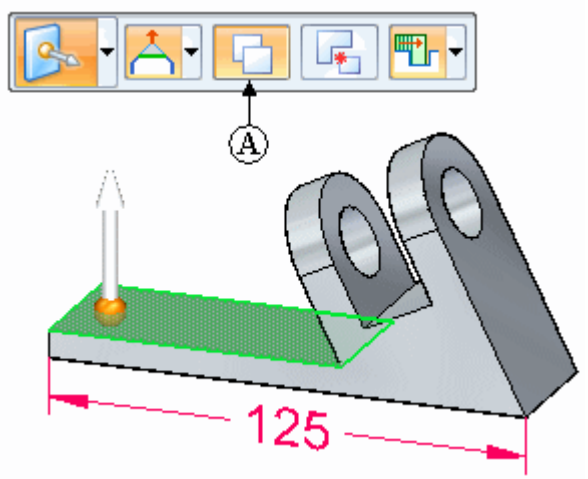
Align the clevis base (B) at a 10° angle measured from the left upper edge (A). Clevis faces are to maintain their position (rigid) relative to the clevis base.



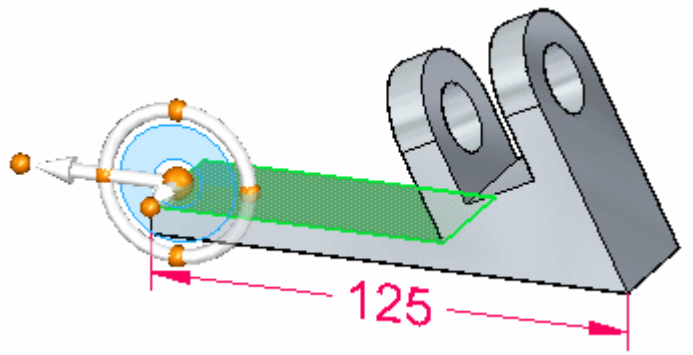
Create a 10° face

The face created in this step is a construction face.

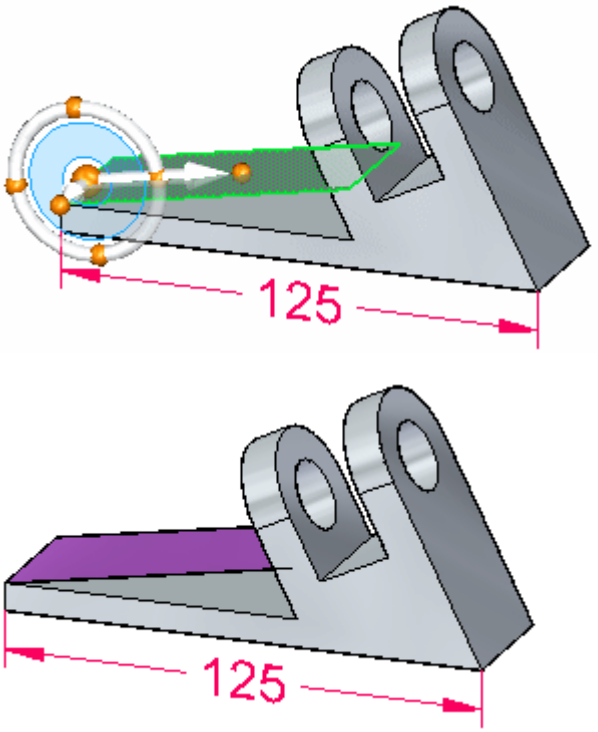
- Select the face shown and click the Copy option (A) on the command bar.



- Drag the steering wheel to the edge shown. Rotate the copied face about this edge.

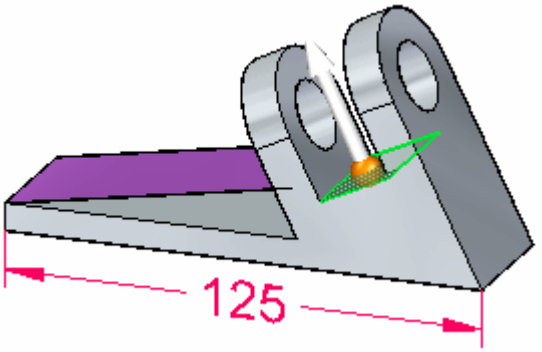


- Click the torus on the steering wheel and then type 10 in the dynamic edit box. Press the Enter key.

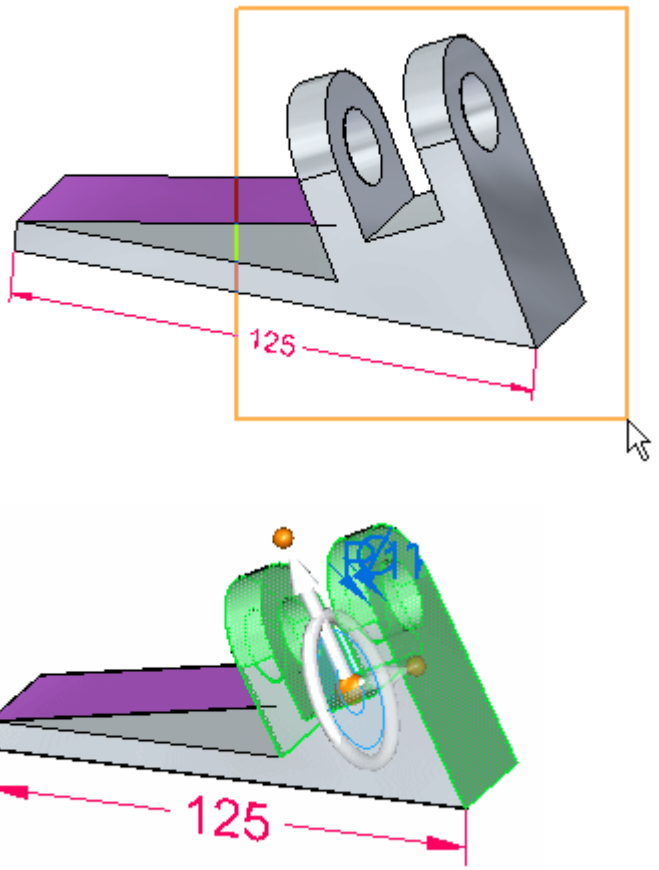


Define the select set for the clevis

- Select the seed face. This is the face that will have a relationship applied to it. Select the face shown.



- To add faces to a select set, press the Spacebar. Notice the selection mode symbol next to the cursor . Faces you select now add to the select set. Place a rectangular fence as shown. This selects all the faces that are part of the clevis.



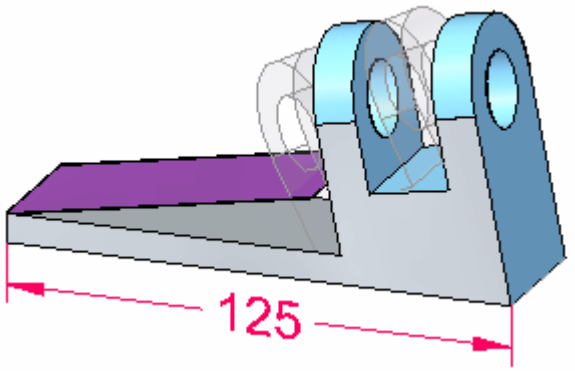
Choose the Relate command and options

- On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Coplanar relationship command.

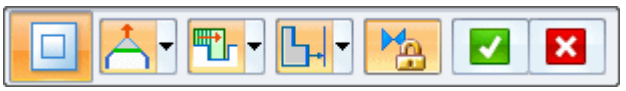
Define the target face

The target face is the face copied at the 10° angle. Selecting this target face makes the seed face coincident with it.

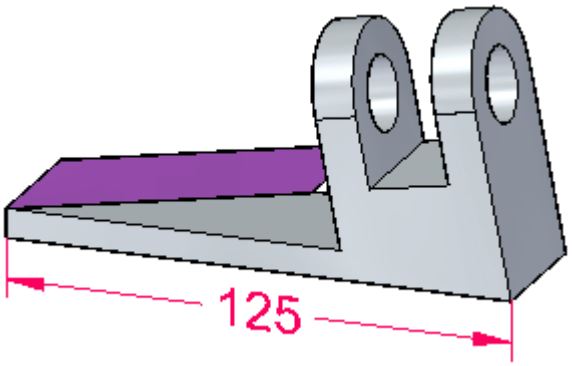
- Select the target face.



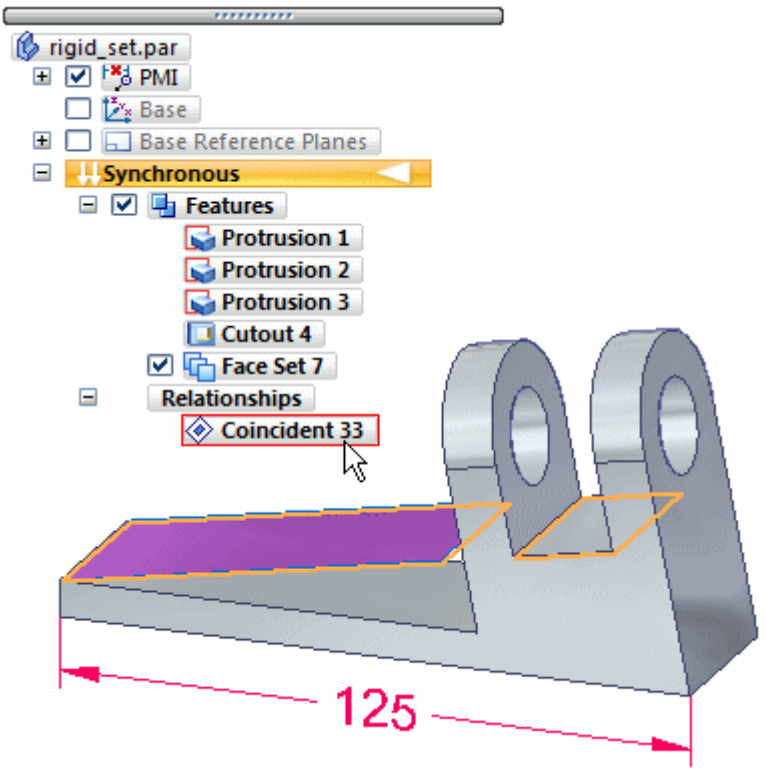
- On the command bar, click the Accept button.



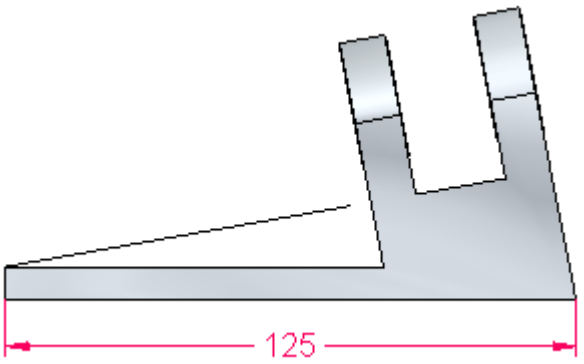
- Double-click to end the Coplanar relationship command. Press Esc to clear the select set.



- Notice that with the persist option on, a coplanar relationship between the seed face and the target face (the copied rotated face) is in the Relationships collector.

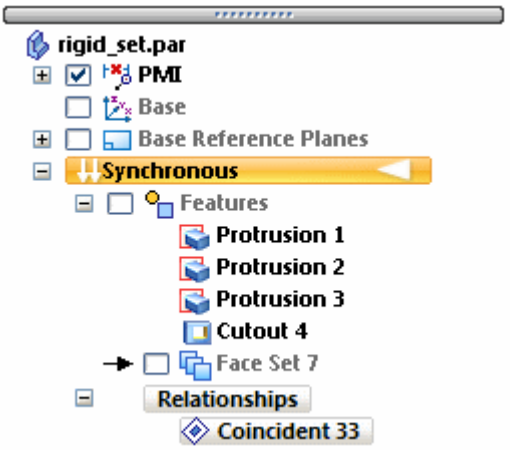


- To verify the alignment, go to the front view by pressing Ctrl+F.



Turn off the copied face

- In PathFinder, clear the check box for the copied face. This turns off the display.



- This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to use a relate command to apply a coplanar relationship between two faces. You also learned how to include other faces in the relate operation.

- Close the file and do not save.

Activity: Relating faces using parallel, coplanar, perpendicular and concentric relationships

Learn how to use the Relate Face command to apply relationships that will alter the shape of an existing part.

Activity: Using parallel, coplanar, perpendicular and concentric relationships to alter a part shape

Open activity file

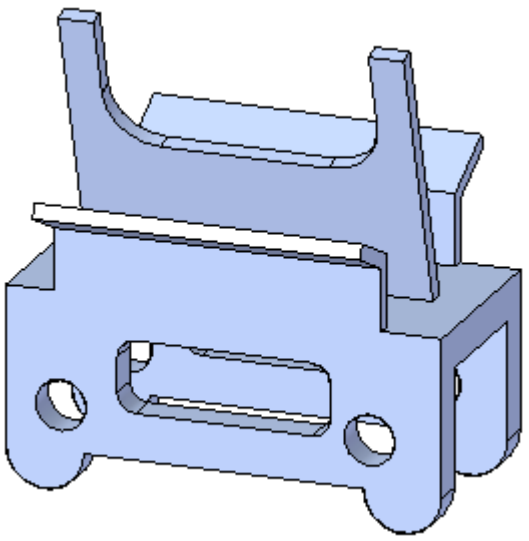
- Start Solid Edge.
- Open existing file *relate.x_t*.
- Open with the Iso Part.par template.

Note

If Live Rules settings have been changed from the default, click the Restore button in Live Rules.

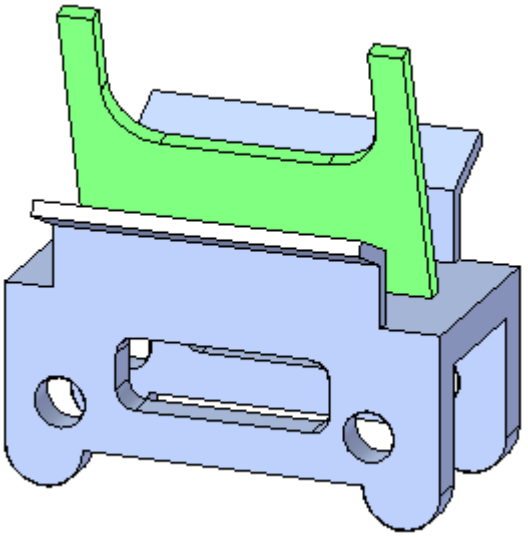
Problem

Align several faces to change the shape of the part. The purpose of the activity is to learn to apply face relationships and observe the results.

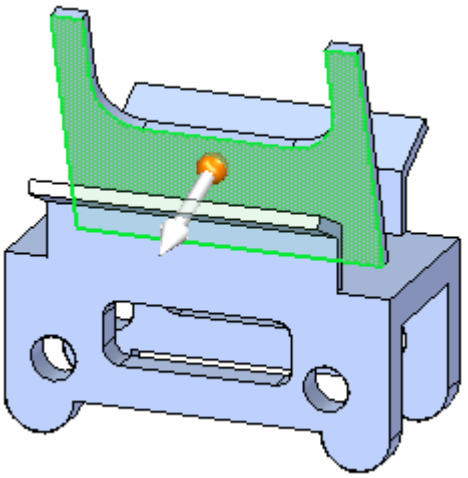


Change the orientation of the center feature

Vertically align the angled center feature (green).

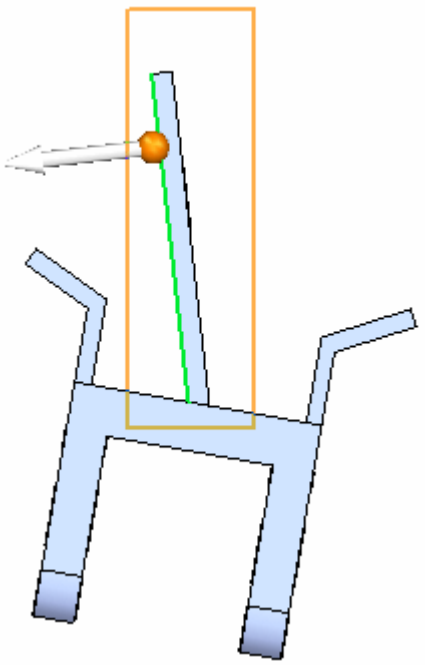


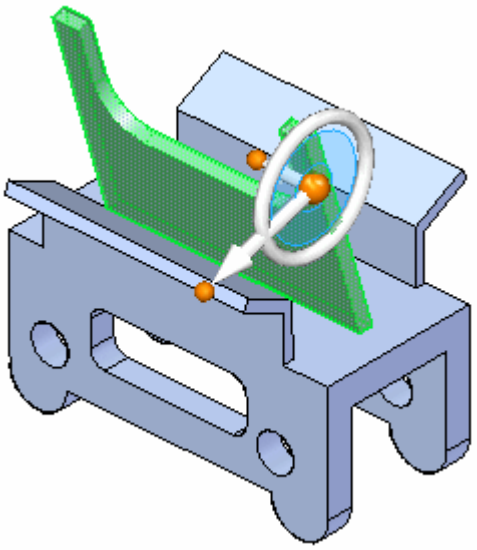
- Select the side face shown. This is the seed face. This is the face to align.



- You want the other faces on the feature to move with the selected face. Selecting these faces makes them rigid to the seed face. You can select each face individually or use a select box. Press the Spacebar to enter the Add/Remove selection mode .

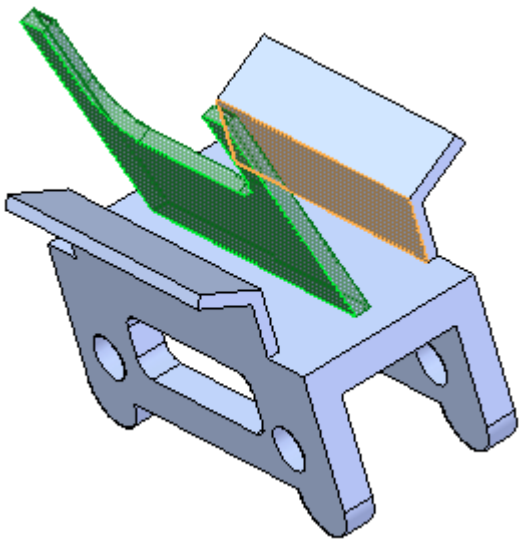
- Rotate the view and use a selection box.



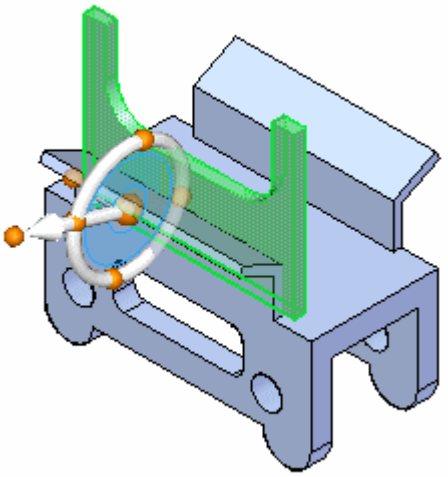


- The select set is defined. On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Parallel relationship command .

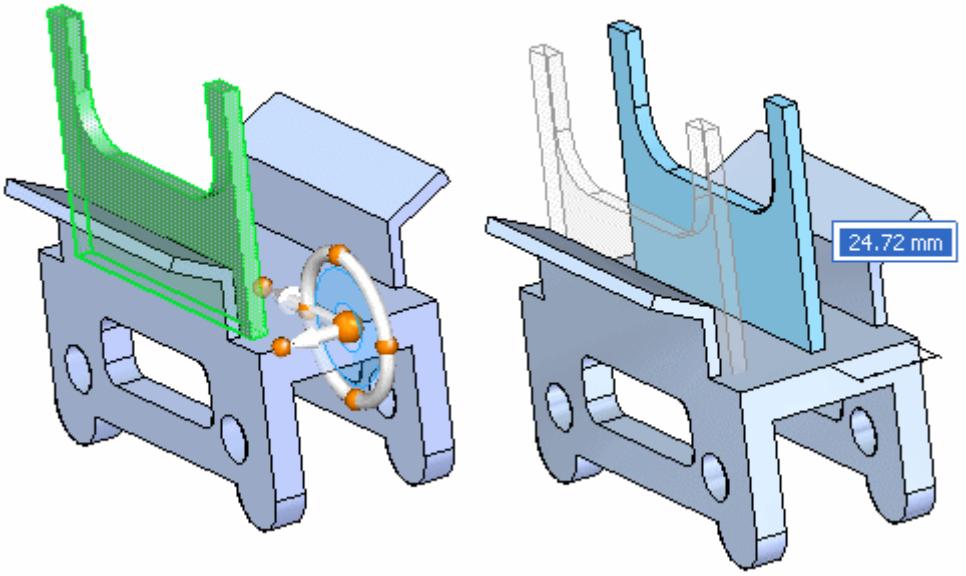
- Select the face shown to align to.



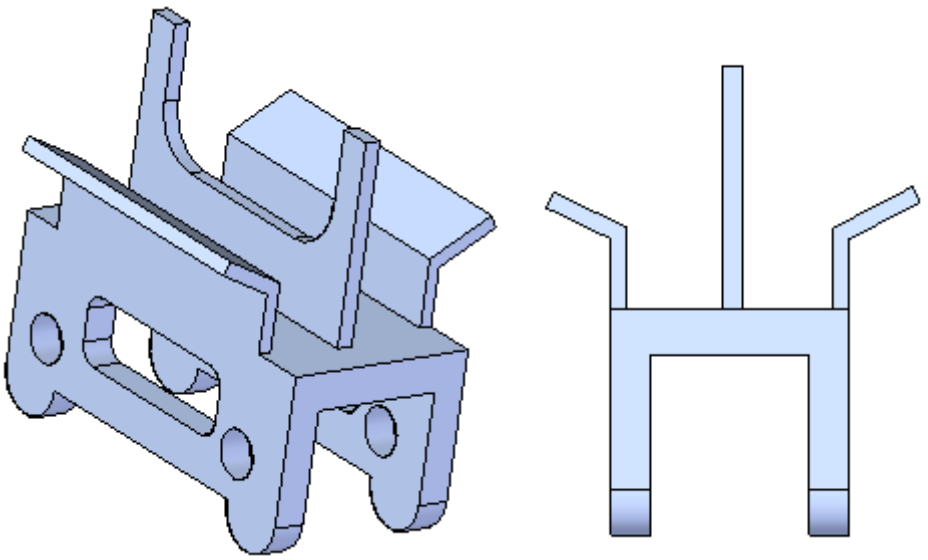
- Click the Accept button.



- The center feature orients vertically and its position changes. Click the Cancel button. The select set is still active. Move the vertical feature to approximately the center of the top face.

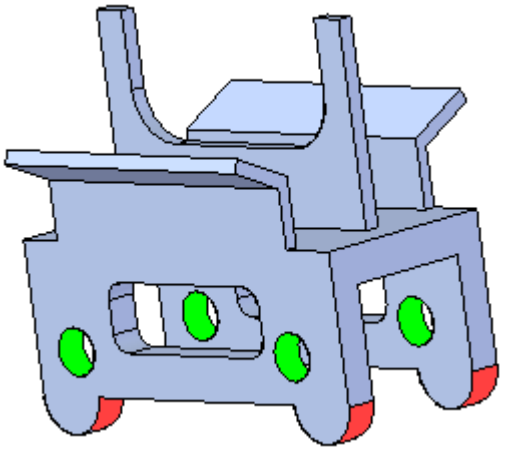


- You can dimension the feature for an accurate position. Press Esc to end the command.

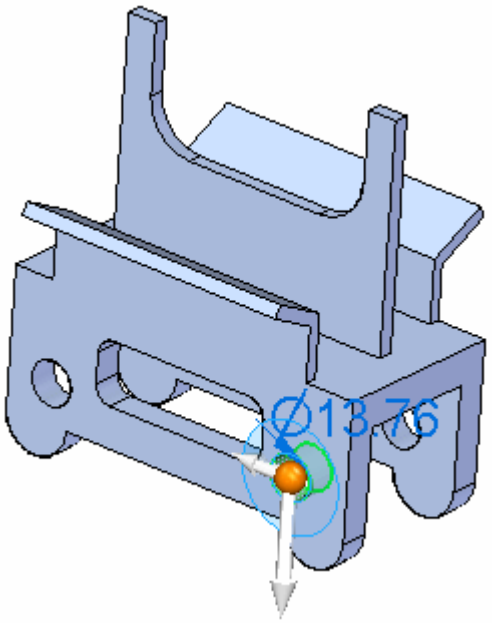


Apply concentric relationships

Align the holes (green) concentric to the cylindrical feet (red).

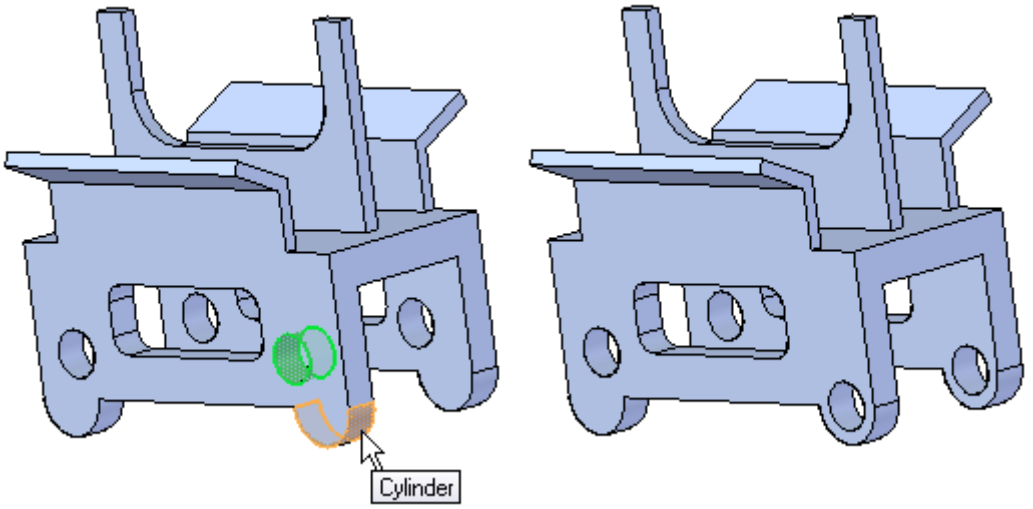


- Select a hole. The holes are concentric. Since the concentric rule is on, both holes stay aligned.

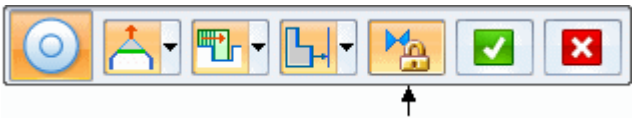


- On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Concentric relationship command .

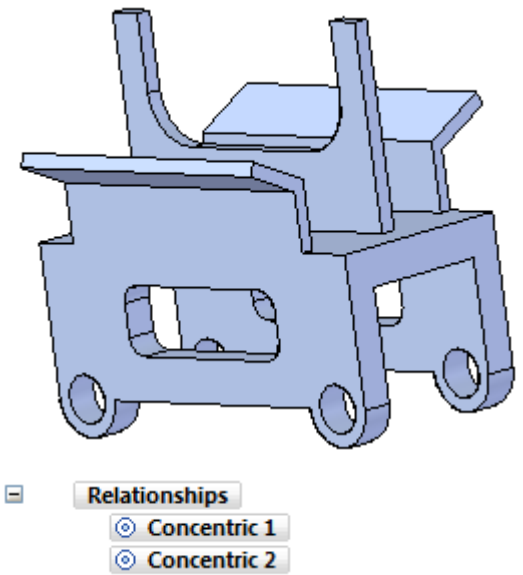
- Select the cylindrical face shown to align the hole to.



- The Persist option is on by default. Click the Accept button.

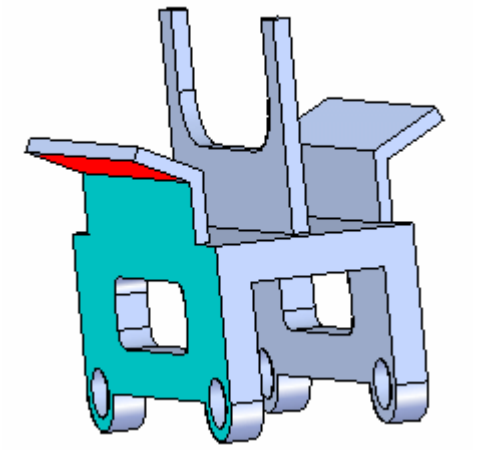


- Repeat for the other hole. Notice the concentric relationships add to the Relationships collector in PathFinder.

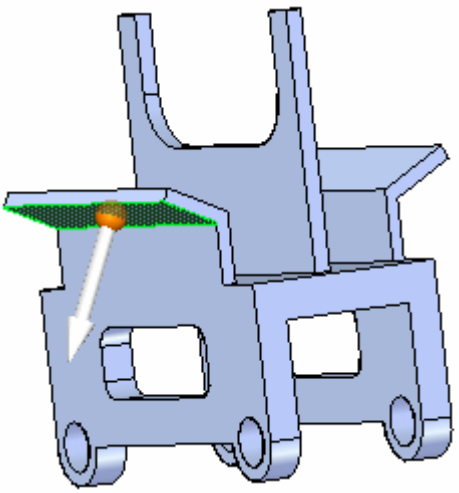


Apply perpendicular relationships

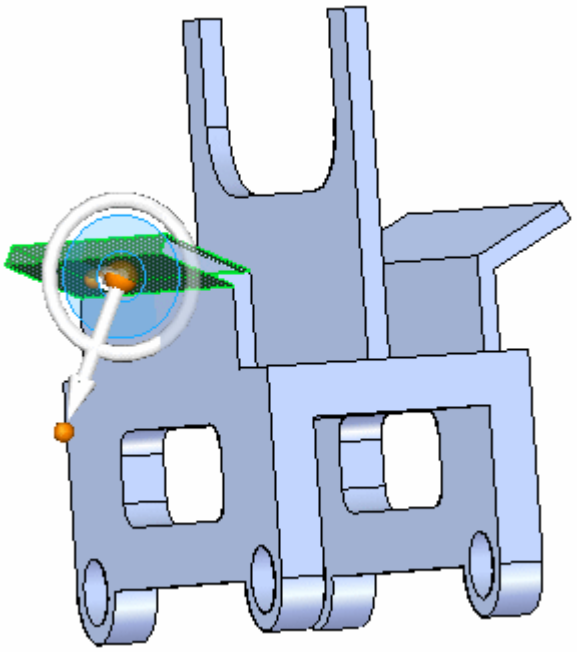
Align the angled face (red) perpendicular to side face of part (blue).



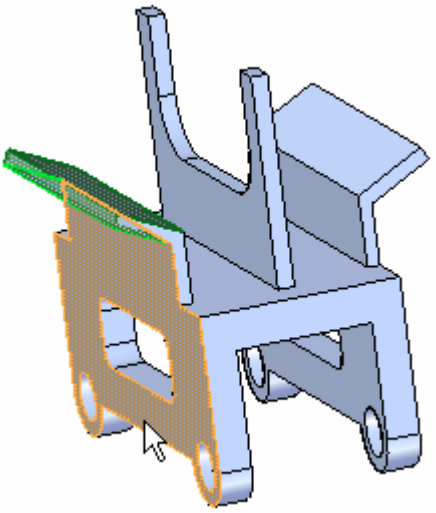
- Select the face.



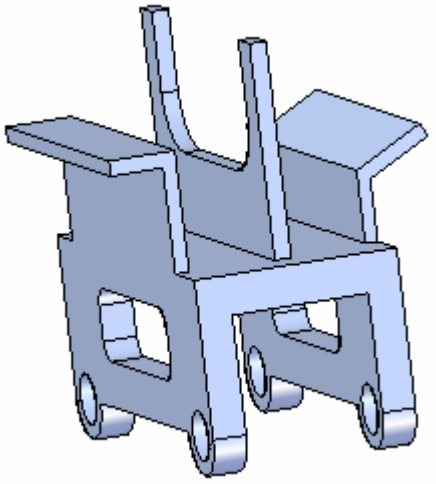
- Add the two faces shown to remain rigid with the selected face.



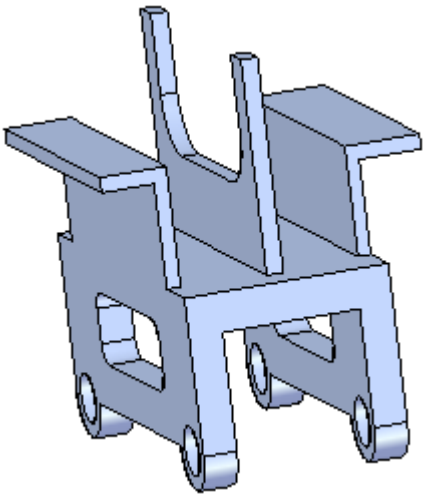
- On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Perpendicular relationship command .
- Select the side face.



- Click the Accept button.

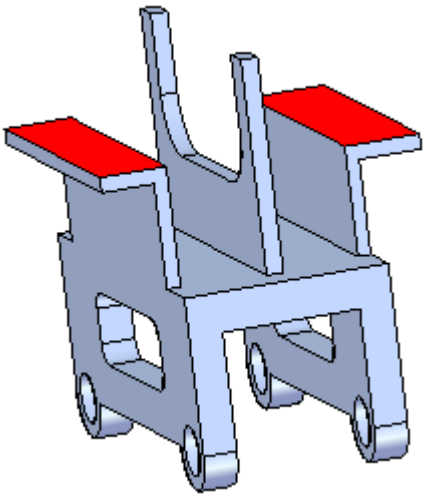


- Repeat the alignment for the faces on the opposite side.

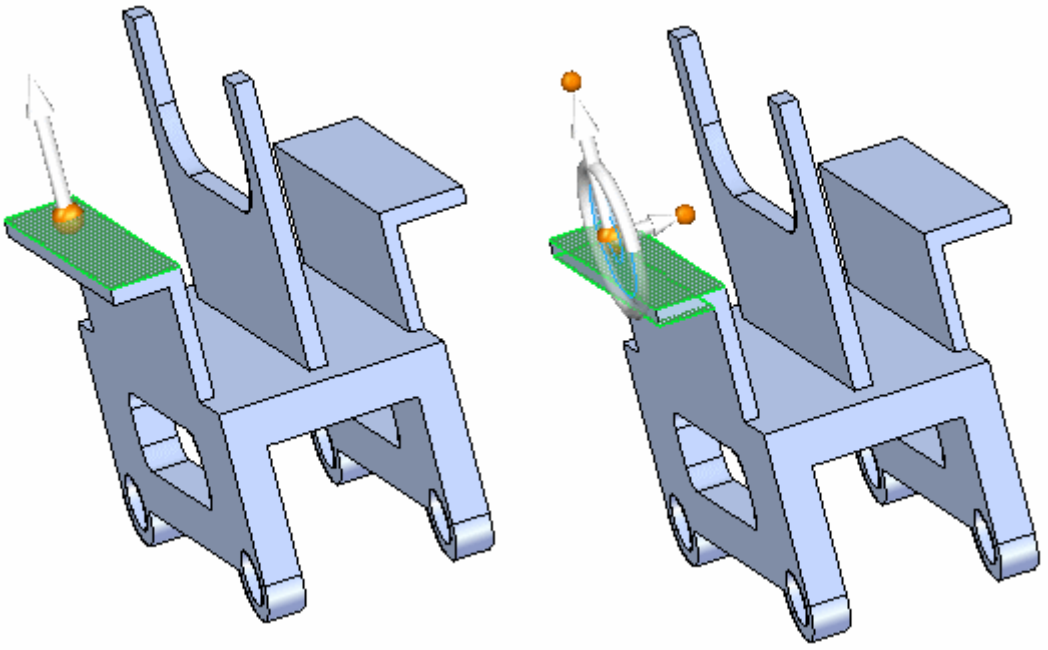


Apply coplanar relationships

Make the red faces coplanar.

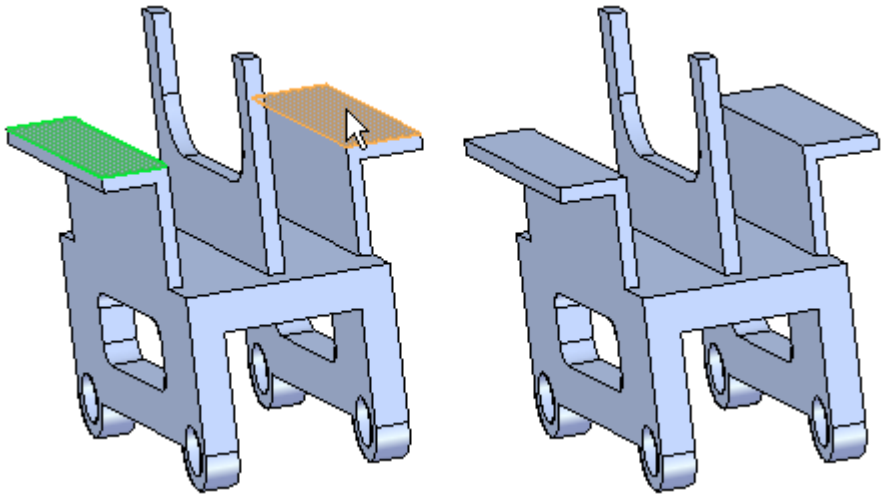


- Select the face shown and then add the face on the underside to remain rigid to the selected face.



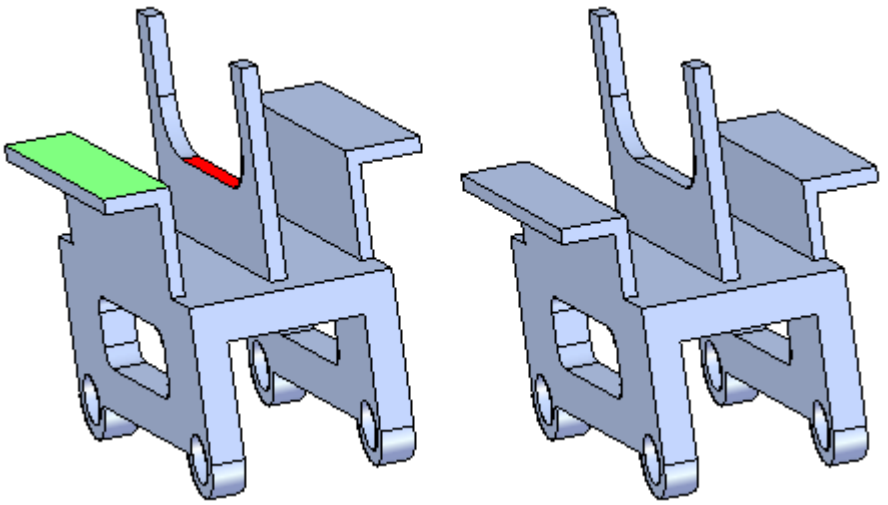
- On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Coplanar relationship command .

- Select the face shown and then click the Accept button.



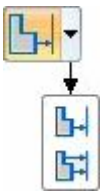
Apply more coplanar relationships

Align the green face coplanar with the red face. Make sure to add the face on the underside. Since coplanar live rule is on, the faces on the opposite side align also.

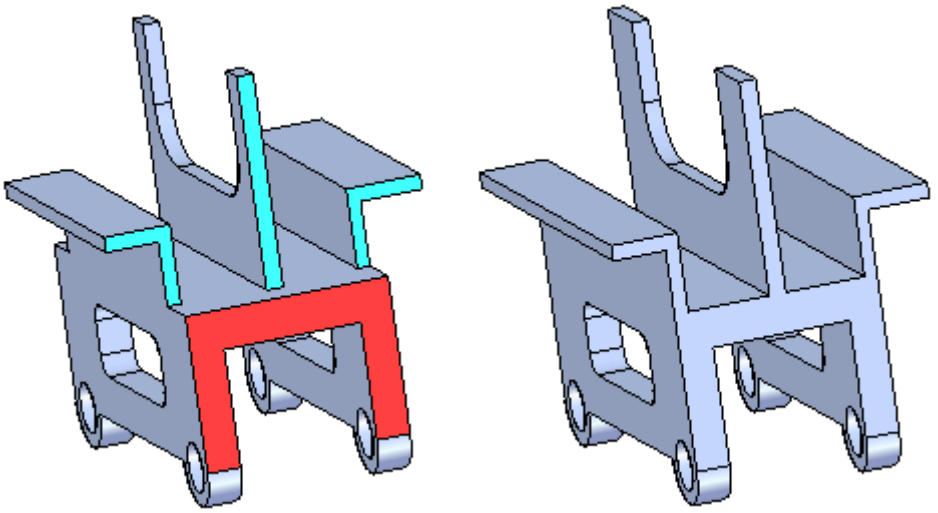


Apply more coplanar relationships

Align the blue faces coplanar with the red face. The blue faces are not coplanar. Use the Multiple Alignment option located on the Coplanar relationship command bar.

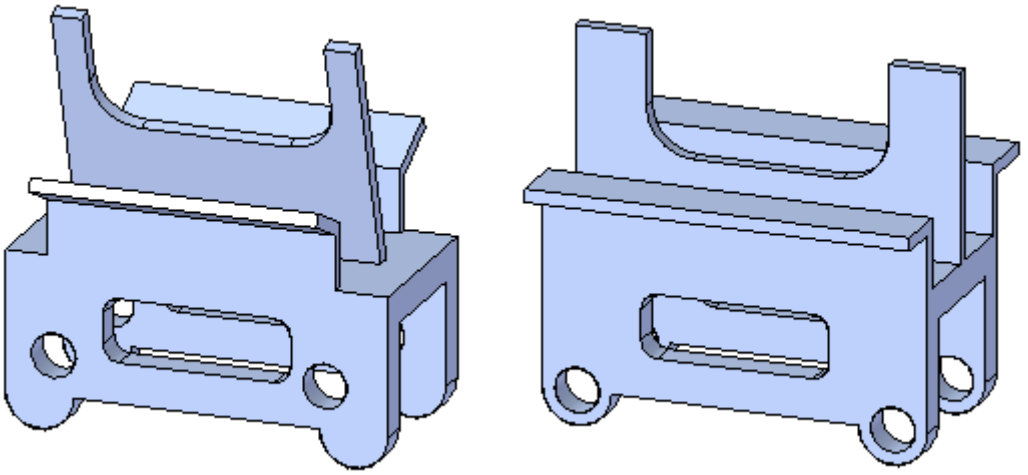


Align the faces on the back side also.



Summary

In this activity you learned how to use the relate command to apply a relationship to modify a part shape. You also learned how to make a relationship permanent (persistent) and also how to make other faces rigid to the face being aligned.



- Close the file and do not save.

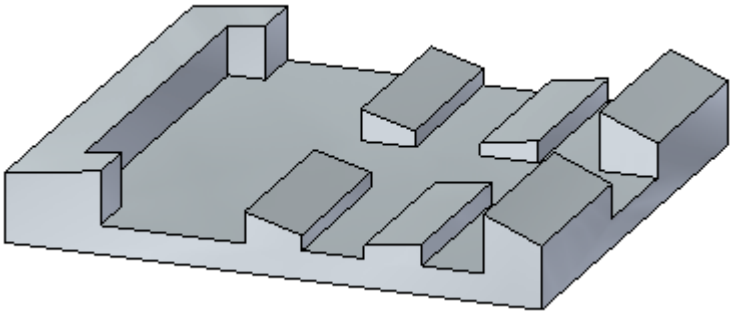
Activity: Applying a relationship to all faces in a select set

Learn how to use the relationship commands to apply the same relationship to each face in the select set.

Activity: Applying a relationship to all faces in a select set

Open activity file

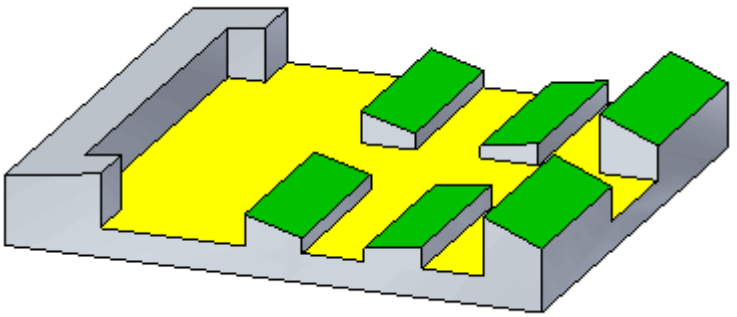
- Open *independent.par*.



Problem 1

Use the system default Live Rules.

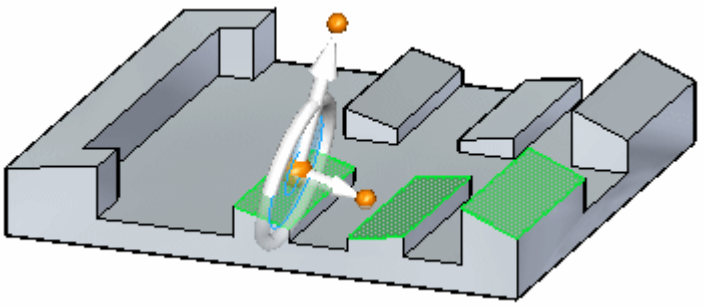
Make all green faces parallel to the yellow face.



Since the Live Rules coincident rule is on, only one face needs be selected for each row. Both top planes in each row are coplanar.

Select faces

- Select the faces shown.

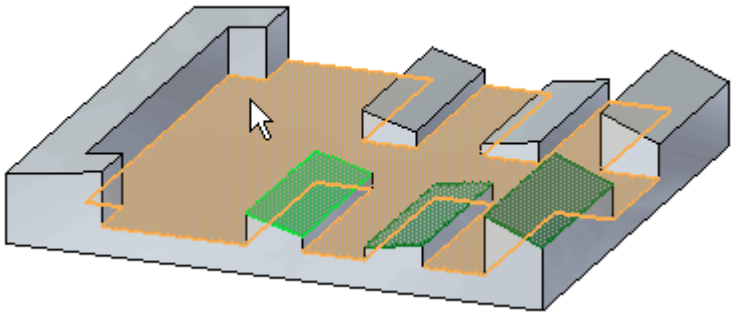


Choose the Parallel relationship command and options

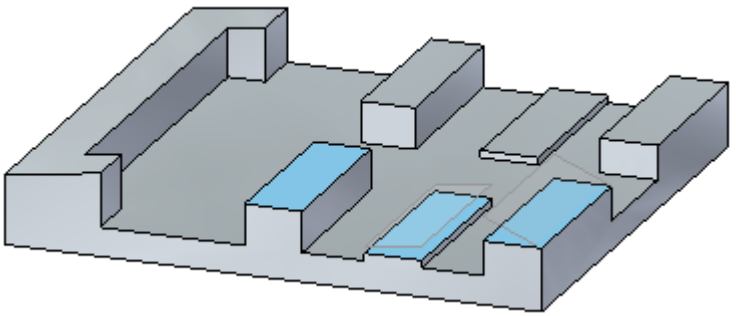
- On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Parallel relationship command .
- On the command bar, select the Multiple Align option .
- On the command bar, deselect the Persist option .

Select target face

- Select the face shown.



- Notice that all selected faces are now parallel to the target face. Accept the results by clicking the Accept button.

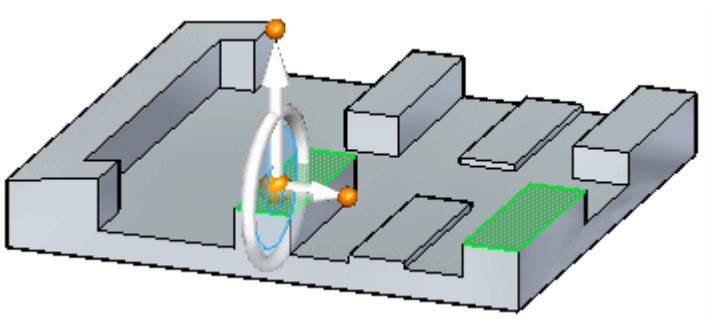


- Press the Esc key to clear the select set.

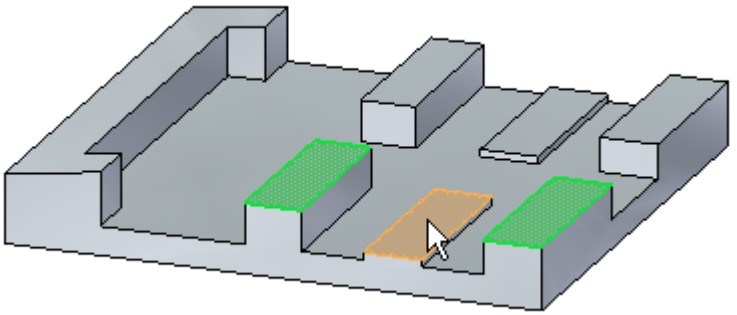
Problem 2

Make all rows the same height as the shortest one.

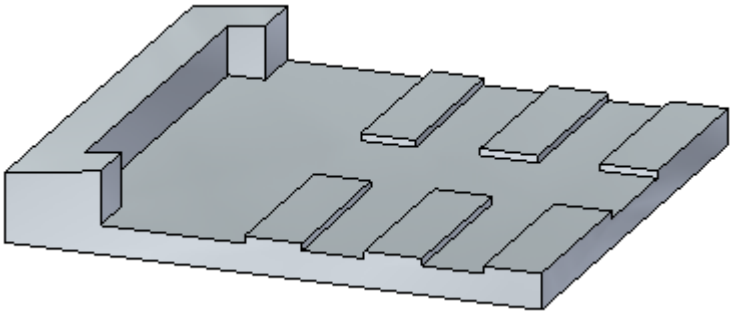
- Select the faces shown.



- On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Coplanar relationship command .
- On the command bar, select the Multiple Align option .
- Select the target face.



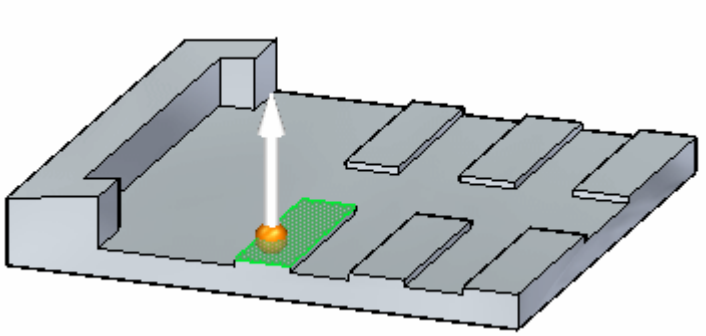
- Accept the results and end the command.



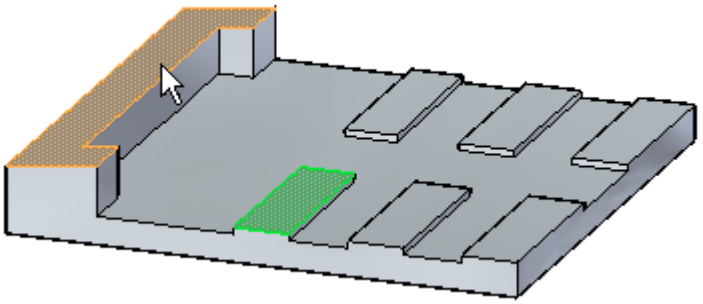
Problem 3

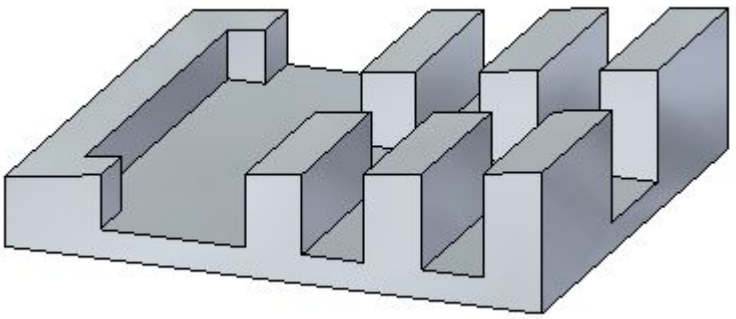
Make all faces coplanar with the inclined face on the left end.

- Select the face shown. Since coplanar live rule is on, the other faces are included in the coplanar relationship operation.



- On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Coplanar relationship command .
- On command bar, select the Single Align option .
- Select the target face.





- Accept results and end the Coplanar command.

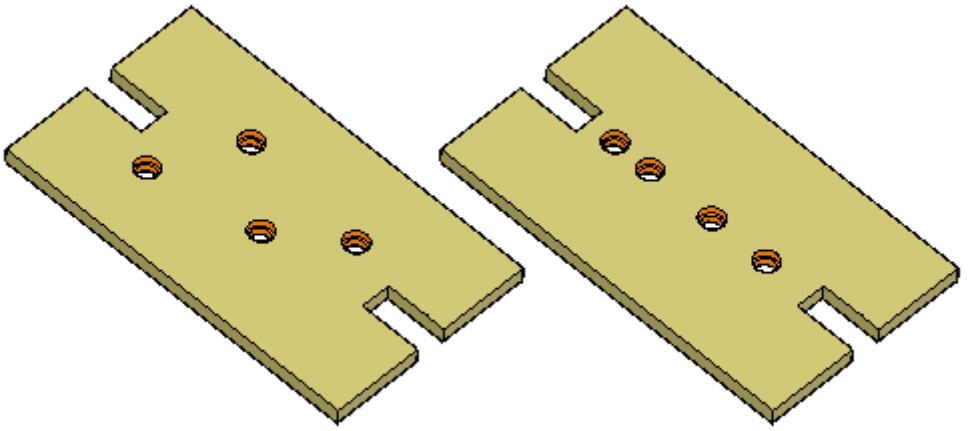
Summary

In this activity you learned how to use the relationship commands to apply a relationship to each face in a select set. You also learned how to take advantage of the live rules so every face to be included does not have to be selected.

- Close the file and do not save.

Activity: Coplanar axis hole alignment

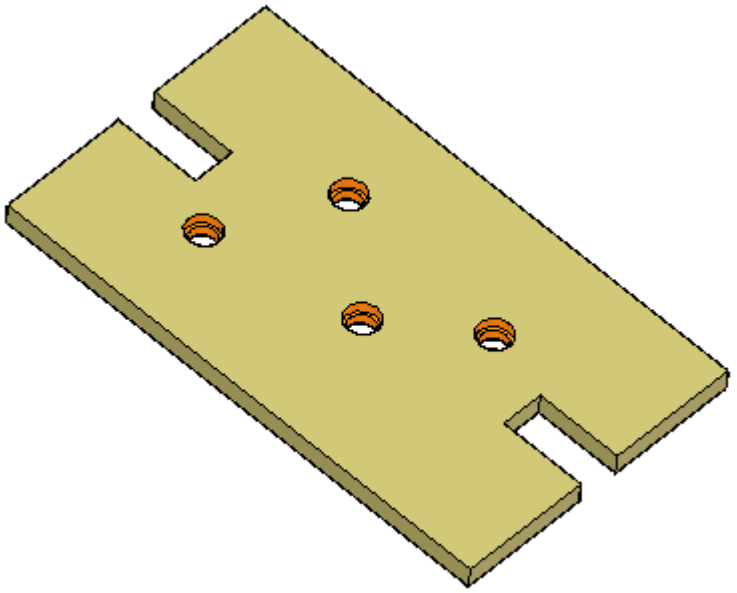
Learn how to use the Coplanar axis relationship command. A random placement of holes exist on a planar part face. Align the holes along an axis parallel to an orthogonal face.



Activity: Coplanar axis hole alignment

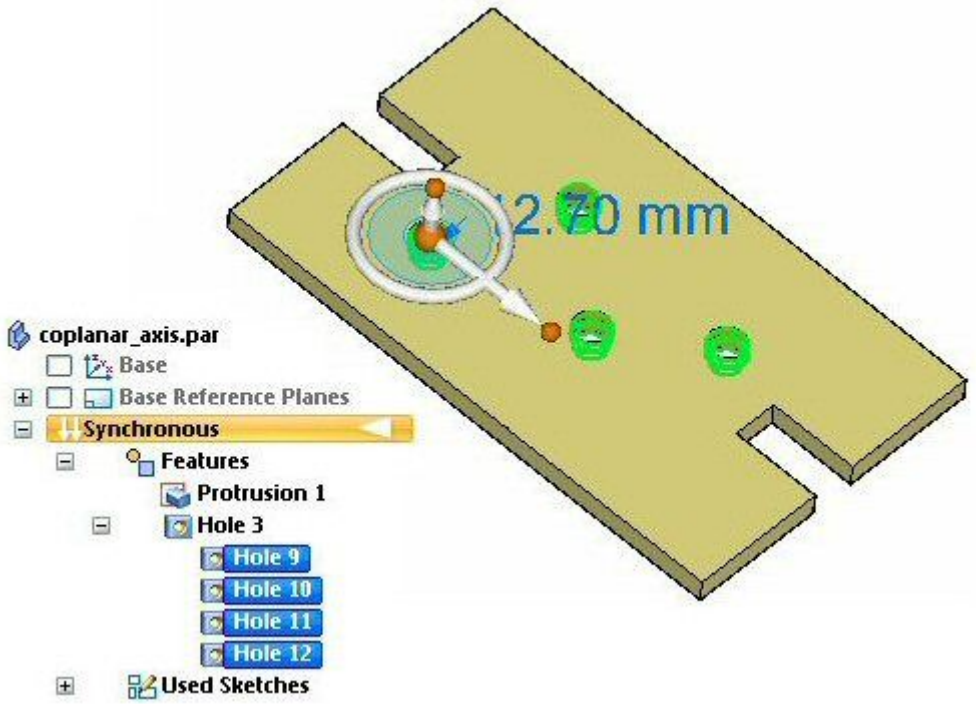
Open activity file

- Open *coplanar_axis.par*.



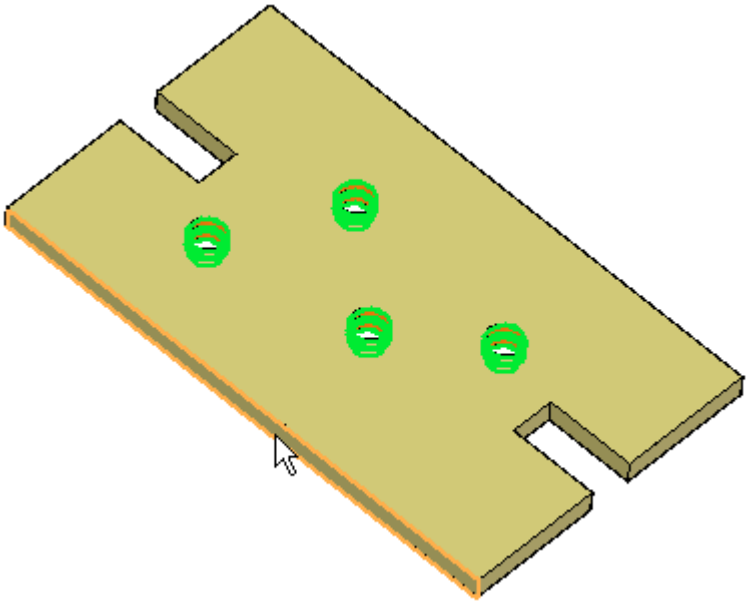
Select the holes to align

- Select the four holes to align. Select the holes in PathFinder or select them by clicking each hole on the part.

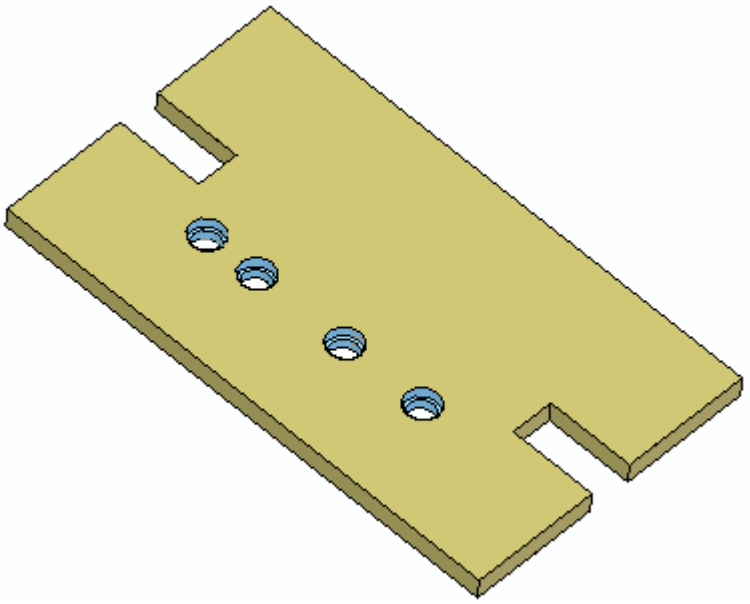


Align the selected holes

- On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Coplanar Axis relationship command .
- Select the face or plane to align the axis with. Select the face shown.



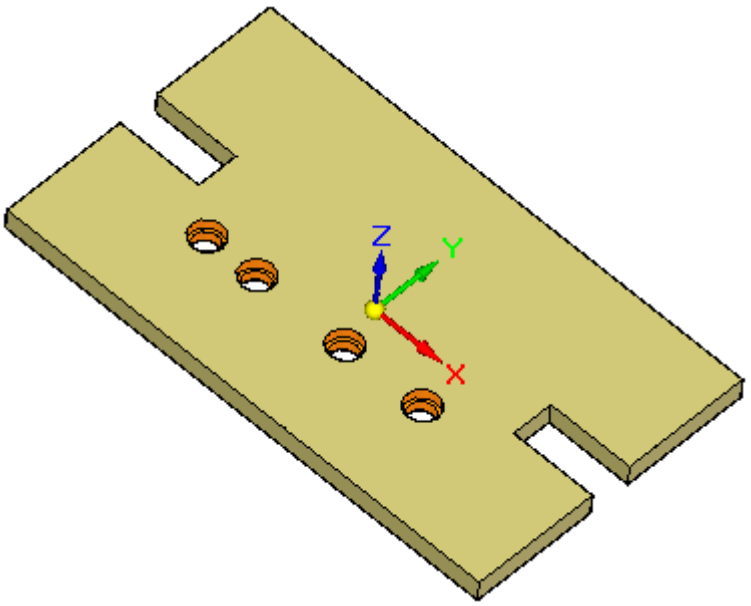
- On the command bar, click the Accept button.



Note

The seed hole remains fixed and all other holes in the select set move to align with the seed.

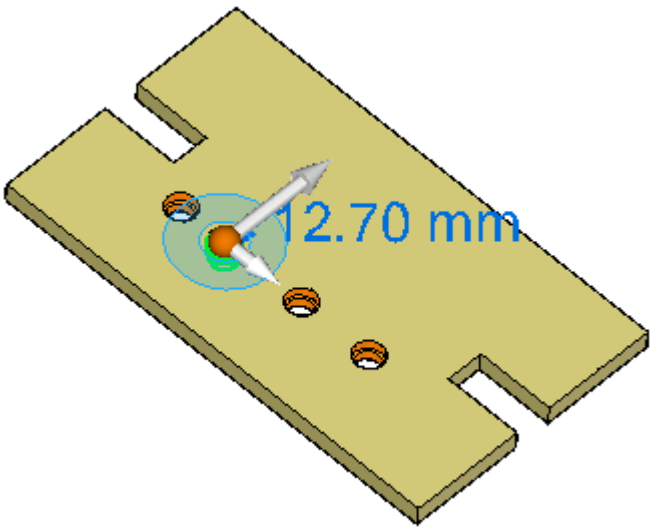
Move the aligned holes



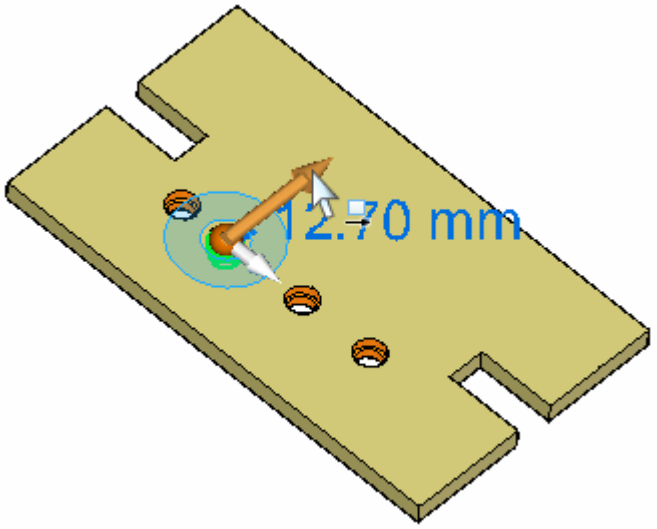
The holes align along the base X direction. The face selected to align to in the previous step is an orthogonal face, thus the alignment axis of the holes aligns with the base X direction. The live rules setting *Maintain coplanar axes* can detect holes that align with one of the base directions.

If you move a hole, all holes that align with it move. If this live rule is turned off, then only the hole selected moves.

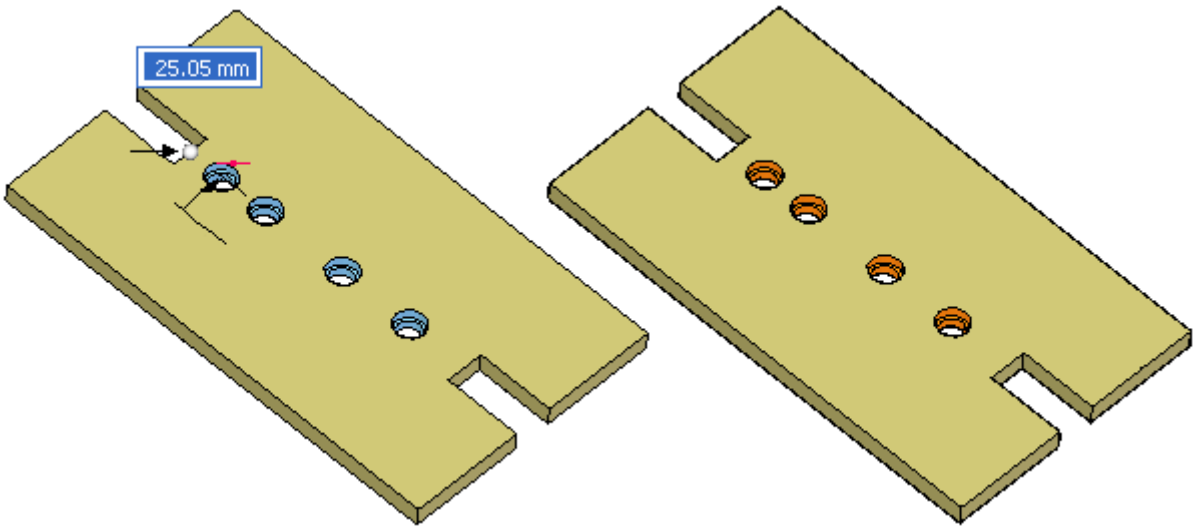
- Select any hole.



- Click the steering wheel axis shown to start the move.



- Select the midpoint of the edge shown to define the move distance. This movement positions the line of holes centered on the part. You may have to turn on the midpoint keypoint locate on command bar.



Note

When moving a set of holes that axially align, the spacing between the holes remain unchanged if the move direction is perpendicular to the alignment axis. If the move direction is not perpendicular to the alignment axis, then the holes' spacing may not remain fixed. To ensure that the holes maintain a fixed spacing, it is recommended that locked dimensions be added to the hole spacing.

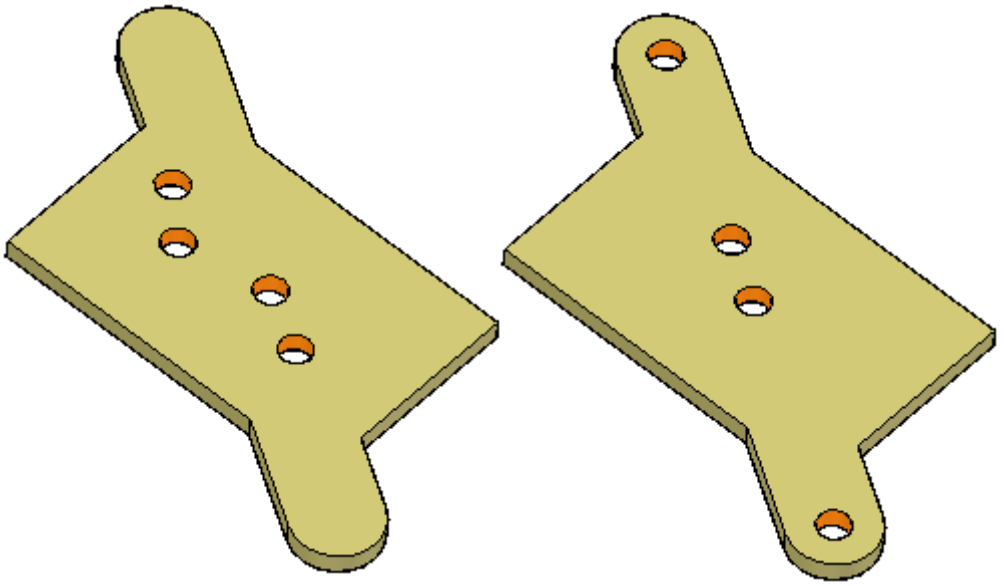
Summary

In this activity you learned how to align holes along an axis. As long as the alignment axis remains orthogonal, then live rules detects the alignment and holes remain aligned during a synchronous modification. A non-orthogonal alignment can be created by using a custom axis.

- Close the file and do not save.

Activity: Coplanar axis alignment using a custom axis

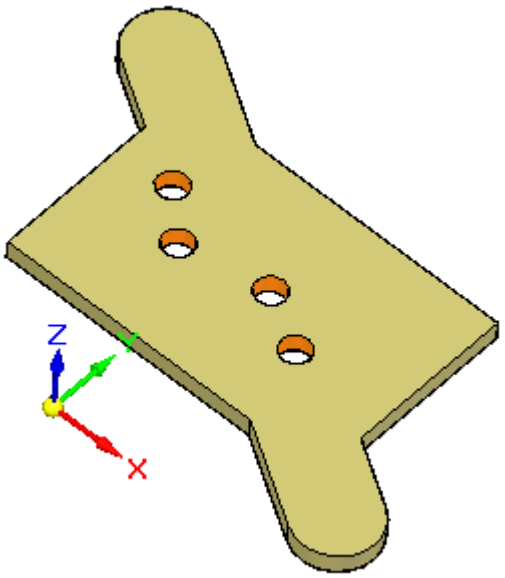
Learn how to use the Coplanar Axis relationship command. The previous activity used an orthogonal face to define the alignment axis. This activity uses a custom axis. The custom axis is defined by a plane whose first two points are the axis of the first hole selected and the third point is a center point on one of the other holes in the select set. All holes in the select set are aligned with the custom axis.



Activity: Coplanar axis alignment using a custom axis

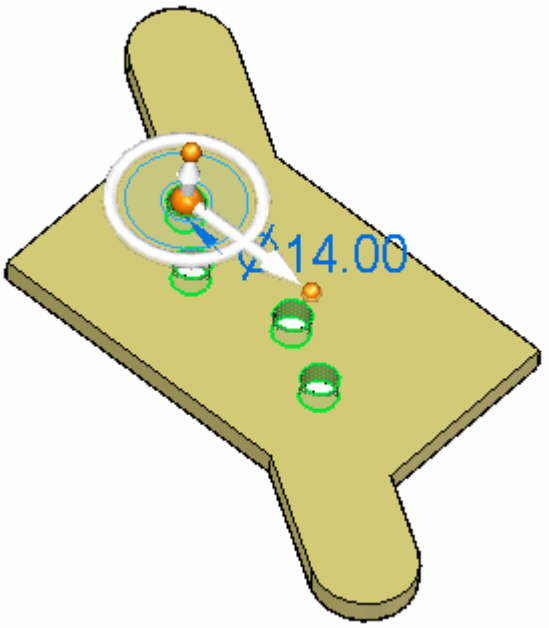
Open activity file

- Open *coplanar_axis_custom.par*.



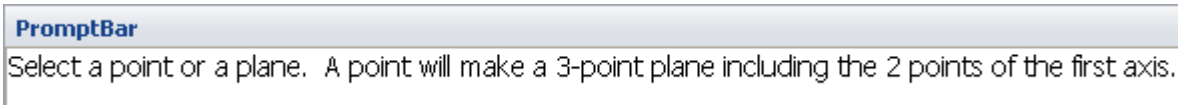
Select the holes to align

- In this activity, the holes are cylindrical cutouts. Since the four holes were constructed with a single cutout operation, you must select each cylinder on the part. You cannot select each cylinder in PathFinder. Use QuickPick if needed to select the cylinders. Select the four cylinders shown to align.

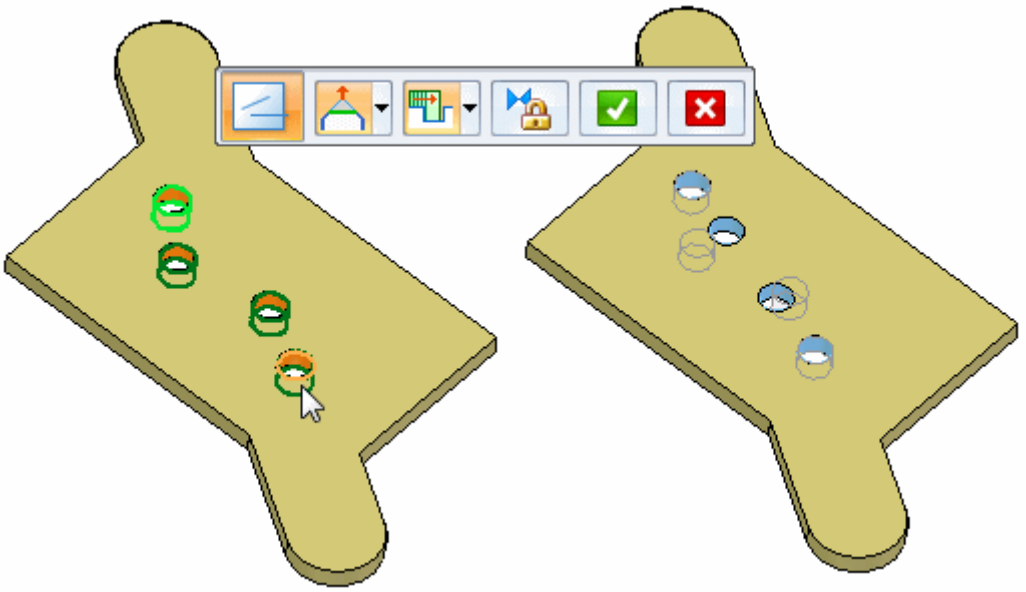


Align the selected holes

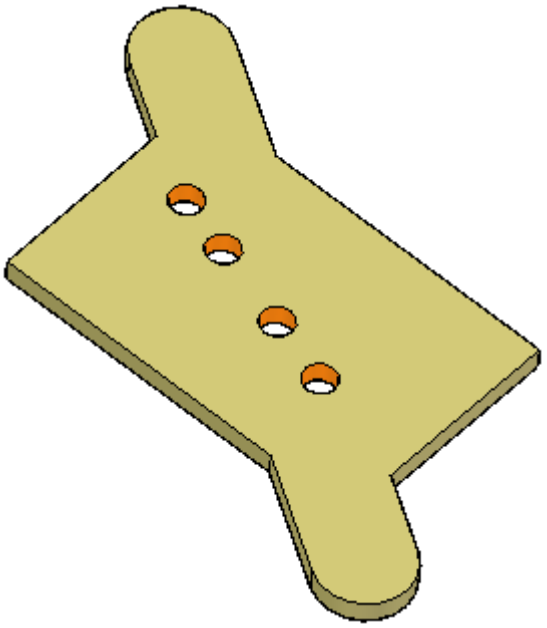
- On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Coplanar Axis command .
- On the command bar, turn off the Persist option .
- Notice the message in PromptBar to select a point or a plane.



Select the circular edge shown. Cylinders are custom axial aligned. On the command bar, click Accept.



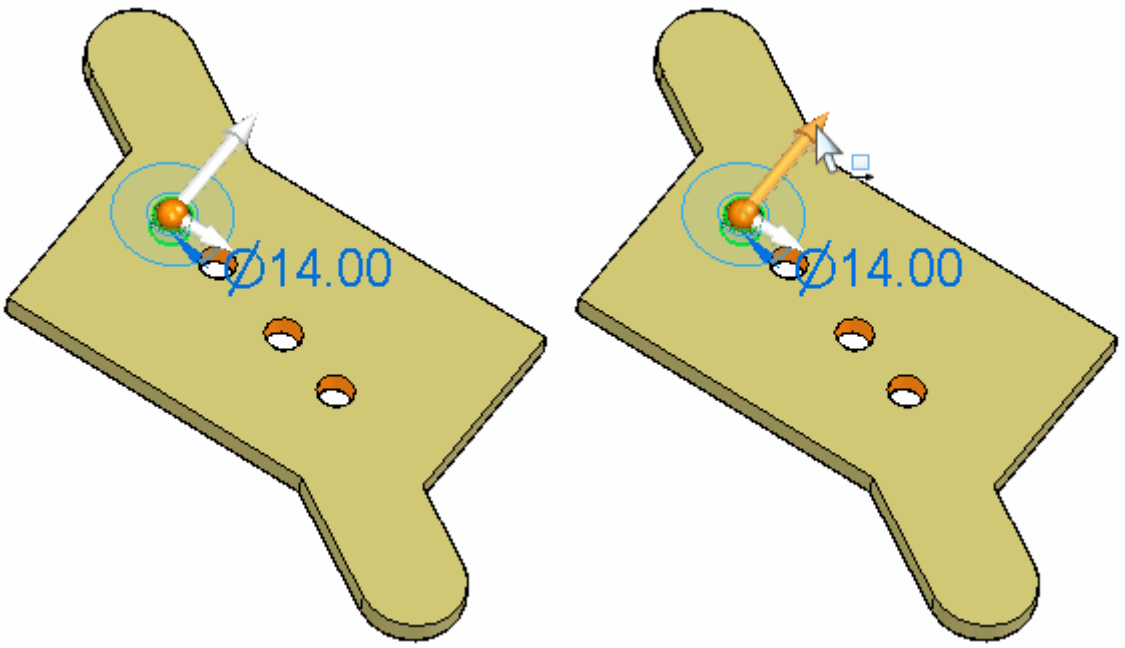
- Press the Esc key to end the Coplanar Axis relationship command.



Move the aligned cylinders

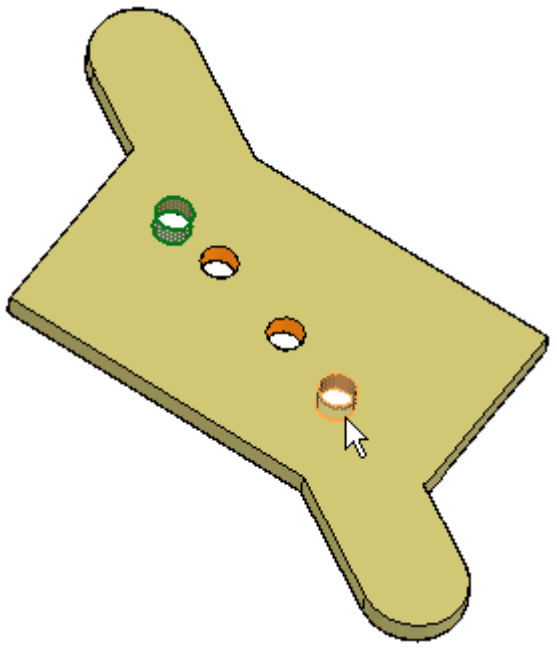
The cylinders are axial aligned but not aligned with a base axis. Live Rules does not detect these cylinders as being aligned. A Live Rules option is available to define a custom axis. When this is set, live rules detects the aligned cylinders.

- Select the cylinder shown and then click the primary axis to start the move command.



- Notice that only the selected cylinder moves. Do not exit the command. Go to Live Rules and click the custom axis button.

- Select the cylinder shown to define the custom axis direction.



- Notice that now as you move the cursor, the aligned cylinders move together while staying aligned. Click to move a small distance and then end the command.

Note

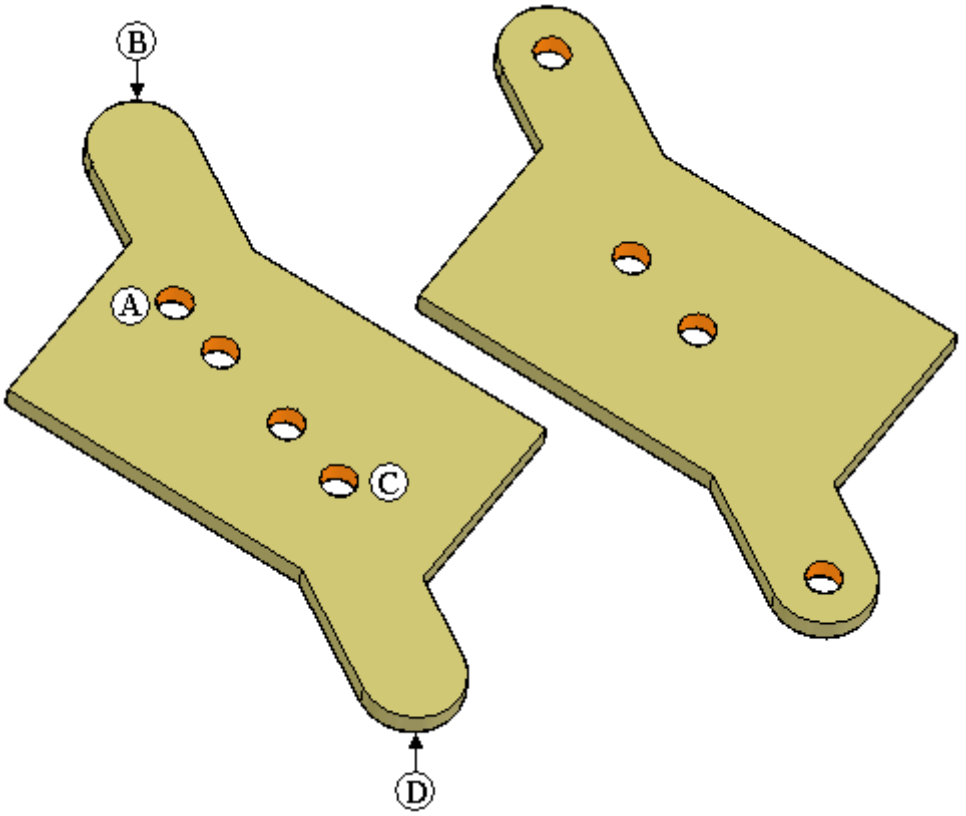
When moving a set of holes that are axially aligned, the spacing between the holes remain unchanged if the move direction is perpendicular to the alignment axis. If the move direction is not perpendicular to the alignment axis, then the hole spacing may not remain fixed. To ensure that the holes

maintain a fixed spacing, it is recommended that locked dimensions be added to the hole spacing.

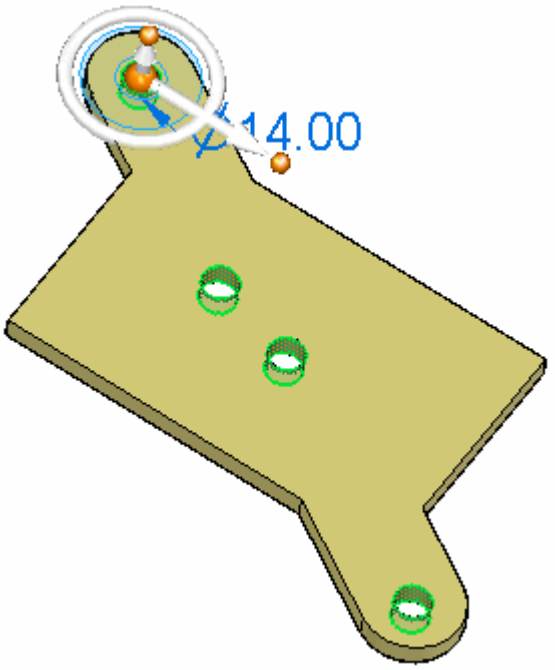
Align the cylinders with part geometry

- Apply a concentric relationship between cylinder (A) and cylinder (B).

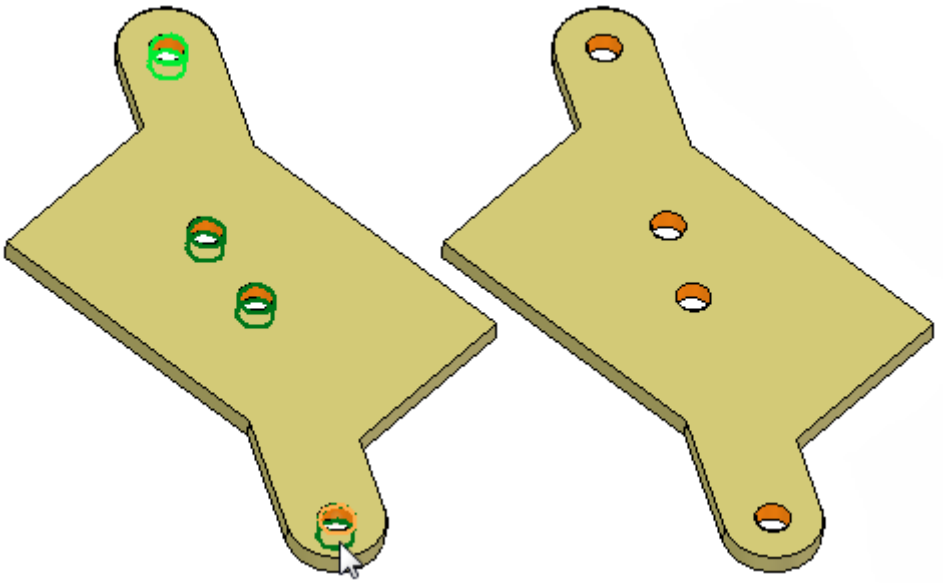
  Apply a concentric relationship between cylinder (C) and cylinder (D).



- Select the four cylinders.



- Choose the Coplanar Axis relationship command.
- Select the circular edge shown to define the axial alignment direction. On the command bar, click Accept. Press Esc to end the Coplanar Axis command.



Note

To keep these cylinders aligned you could persist the coplanar axis relationship.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to align holes along a custom axis. Live Rules does not recognize this alignment unless the custom axis option is set and defined.

- Close the file and do not save.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. Where are the face relationship commands located?
2. What is a selected seed face?
3. What is a selected target face?
4. Explain the workflow for applying a face relationship.
5. What is a persistent relationship?
6. How do you remove a persistent relationship?
7. Explain the Single/Multiple option.
8. Which of the following is NOT a face relationship?
   - Parallel
   - Concentric
   - Coplanar
   - Angled
9. Do sketch geometric relationships migrate to model faces?

Answers

1. Where are the face relationship commands located?

   Home tab® Face Relate group

2. What is a selected seed face?

   A seed face is the face that will undergo a change. You can have multiple seed faces. The steering wheel locks to the seed face.

3. What is a selected target face?

   The target face defines the relationship to be applied to the seed face. The target face does not change during the relate command. There can only be one target face.

4. Explain the workflow for applying a face relationship.

   Step 1: Select the seed face(s).

   Step 2: Choose the face relationship to apply.

   Step 3: On the relationship command bar, set additional options.

   Step 4: Select the target face.

   Step 5: Accept/Cancel the applied relationship result.

5. What is a persistent relationship?

   A persistent relationship is always detected during a synchronous operation. A non-persistent relationship is only detected by Live Rule options.

6. How do you remove a persistent relationship?

   Two ways:

   In PathFinder, select the relationship in the Relationships collector and press Delete.

   In Live Rules Advanced, uncheck the face that has the persistent relationship applied and click Accept.

7. Explain the Single/Multiple option.

   Single option - Only the seed face is related to the target face. The remaining faces in the select set maintain their original relationship with the seed face.

   Multiple option - All faces in the select set relate to the target face.

8. Which of the following is NOT a face relationship?

   Angled

9. Do sketch geometric relationships migrate to model faces?

   They migrate as non-persistent relationships that are only detected by Live Rules options.

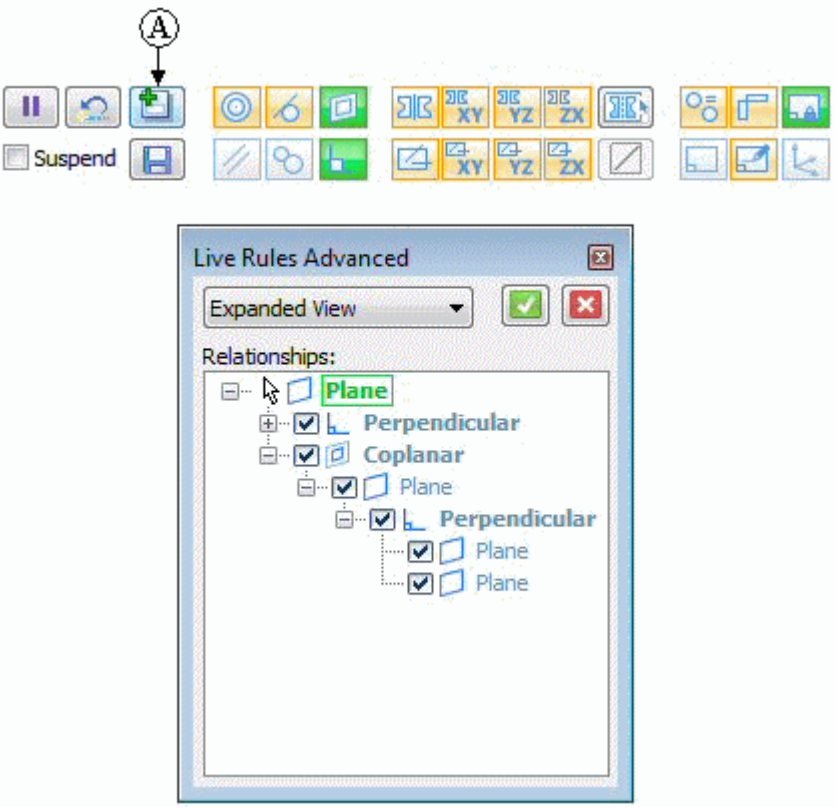
Lesson summary

You modify synchronous models by defining relationships between faces using the Face Relate commands. The Face Relate commands are available when one or more faces or a reference plane is selected. You can use the options on the relationship command bar to specify how you want the selected face to be geometrically related with the target face.

Detected face relationships

Overview

- Face relationships are detected during synchronous face modification.
- During synchronous face modification, the system is instructed to detect relationships turned on in Live Rules and also to detect persistent relationships.
- Advanced Live Rules (A) lists relationships the system detects for each face in the modification select set.
- Advanced Live Rules provides control of the solve behavior of the model during synchronous face modification.
- Relationships detected can be removed and thus ignored during face modification.
- New relationships can be added to the Live Rules to be included in the face modification.



Live Rules

The user can control which face relationships Solid Edge detects during a synchronous face move. Live Rules is the tool used to set the face relationships to detect. Live Rules appears in the document window when a part face is selected.

Live Rules is a global setting. If a change is made to the default settings, opening a new or existing file will use these settings. The Restore Defaults button returns the default settings to the system delivered settings.

Live Rules Panel

You control the Live Rules panel from Application button® Solid Edge options® Helpers page. The default option fixes the Live Rules panel to the bottom center of the modeling window. You can set the Live Rules panel to floating. This allows you to drag the panel to any location in the modeling window. You can also set a floating panel to a vertical display.

Working with Live Rules

Start Live Rules

Select any synchronous face to display the Live Rules in the document window.

Start a synchronous face edit. Select the Live Rules Advanced button (detected rules manager).

Restore default rules

The Restore option restores the system delivered Live Rules. Live Rules always remain at the last setting when creating a new file or opening an existing file.

Suspend live rules

The Suspend option ignores all Live Rules during a synchronous face edit.

Lock to Base Reference

Planar faces that are coplanar to a base reference plane lock to the that base plane. Cylindrical faces that are coaxial to a base global system axis lock to that global axis. This setting is ON by default.

Additional options

- **(A) Reference Planes**

  Consider reference planes when applying Live Rules.

- **(B) Sketch Planes**

  Consider sketch planes when applying Live Rules.

- **(C) Coordinate Systems**

  Consider coordinate system planes and axes when applying Live Rules.

Orthogonal to base if possible

As a face moves, this option attempts to keep attached faces parallel to base reference planes.

Detect local symmetry

Option to detect a local symmetry plane. You are prompted to select a local symmetry plane to use for symmetric face detection.

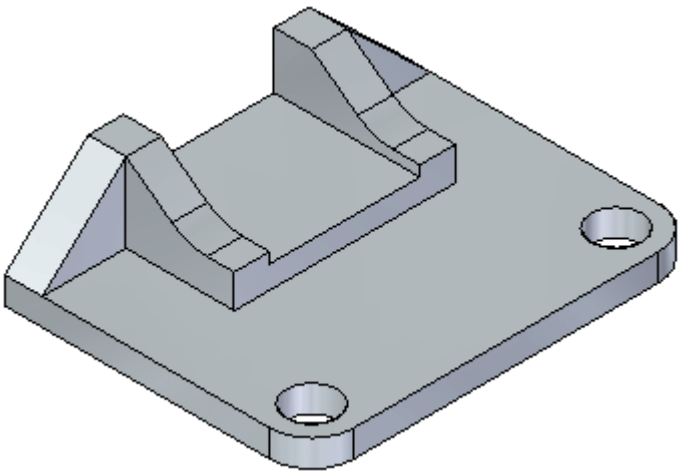
Activity: Detecting symmetry relationships

Learn how to detect local symmetry during a synchronous modification.

Activity: Detecting symmetric relationships

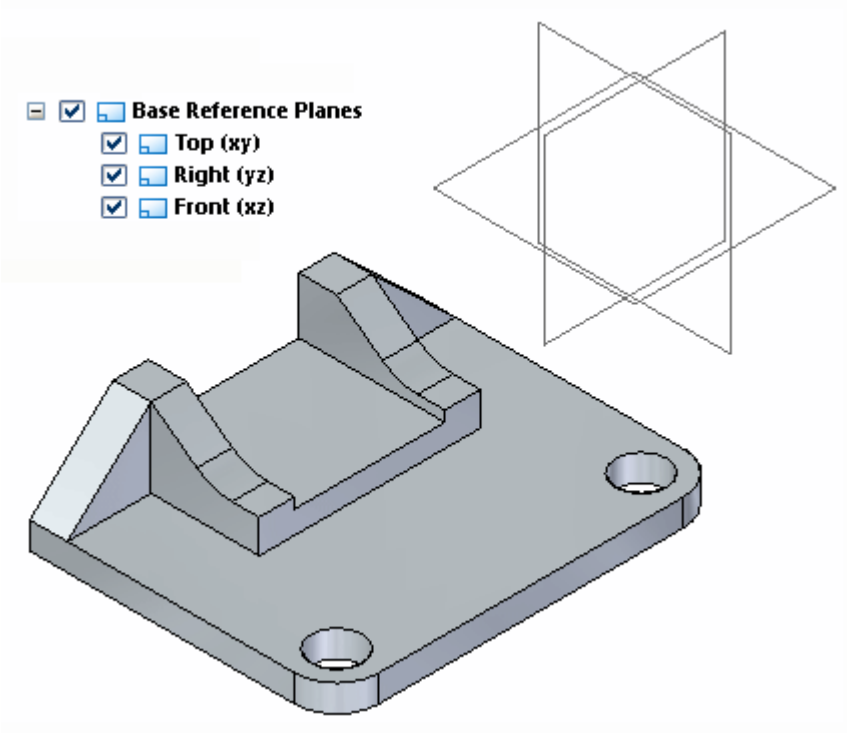
Open activity file

- Open *symmetry.par*.



Turn on reference planes

- Turn on the base reference planes. Observe that the model was not designed symmetrically about the base reference planes. In PathFinder, click the check box for the three base planes.

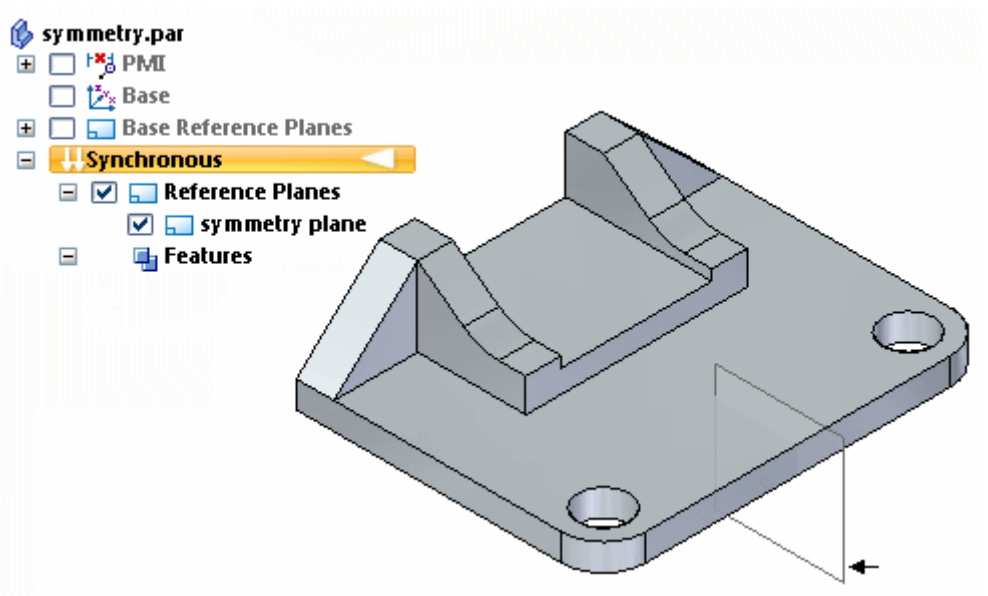


- Turn off the base reference planes.

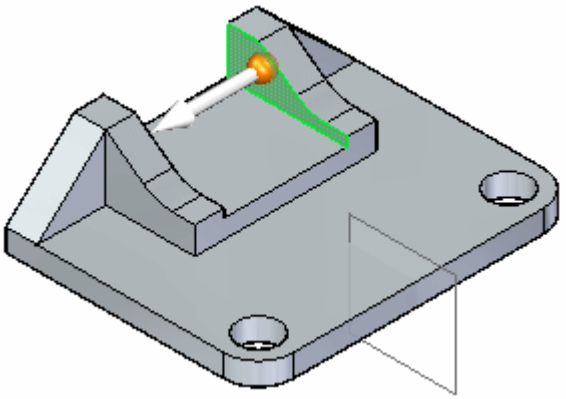
Move a face

The model was not designed symmetrically about the base planes. However, a symmetry plane was used to mirror features.

- Turn on the plane used for symmetry. In PathFinder, click the check box for the plane named *symmetry plane*.



- Select the face shown and then move it to observe the results. Do not click.



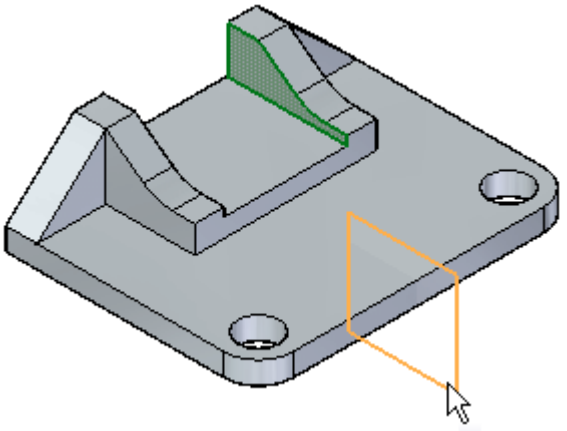
- Press the Esc key.

Detect symmetry during a move

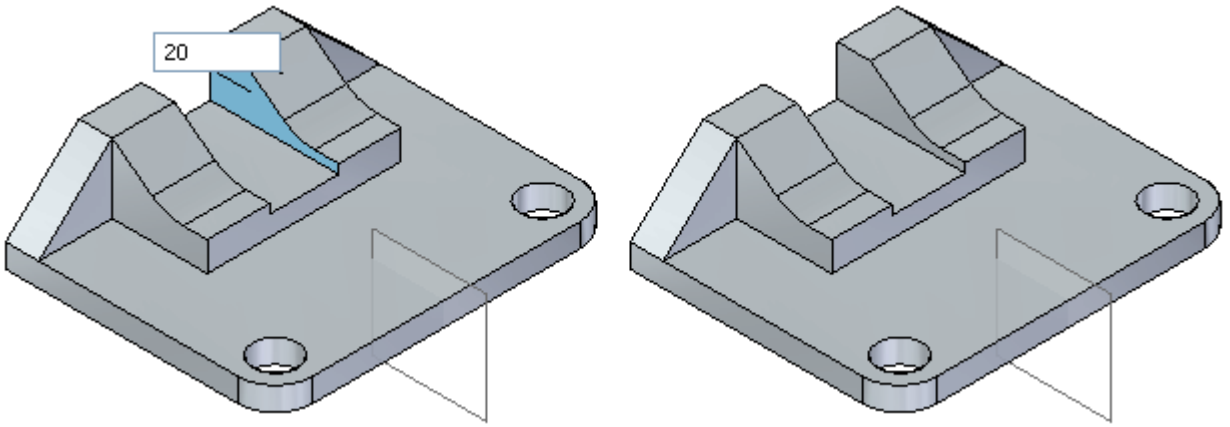
- Click the move handle again.

- This time we want to detect symmetry. In Live Rules, click the Local Symmetry button.

- Select the symmetry plane shown.

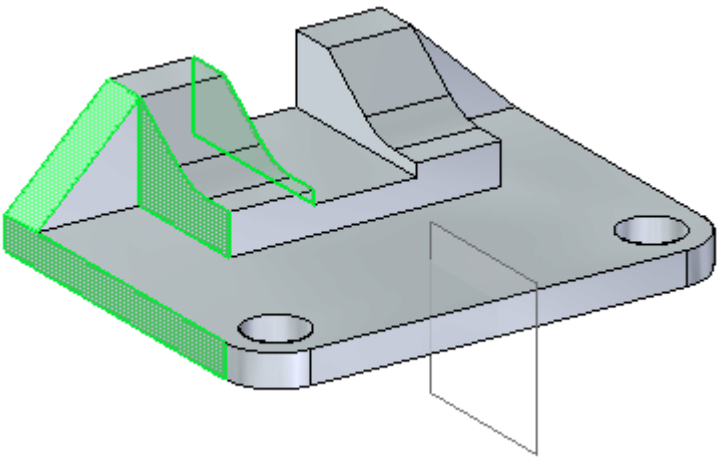


- Notice that as you move the selected face, the symmetric face also moves. Type 20 in the dynamic input box and then press the Enter key. Press the Esc key to end the move command.

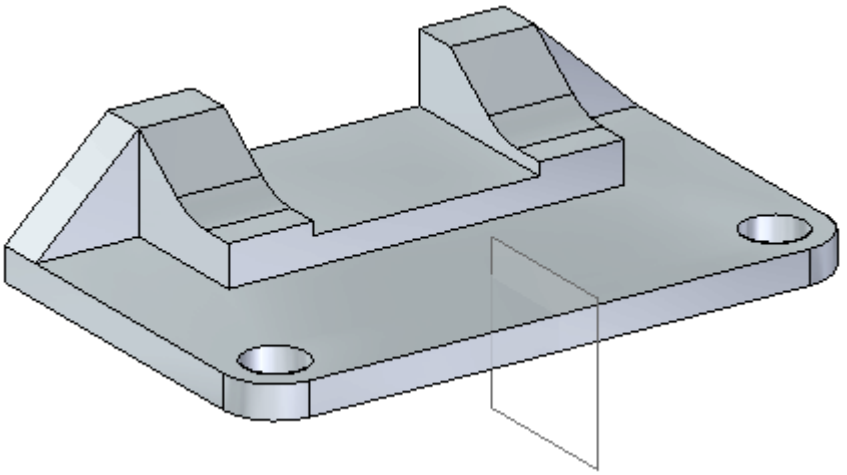


Modify the model

- Select the faces shown.



- Move the select set of faces a distance of 30. Select the detect local symmetry button to make a symmetric move. Select the plane named *symmetry plane*.



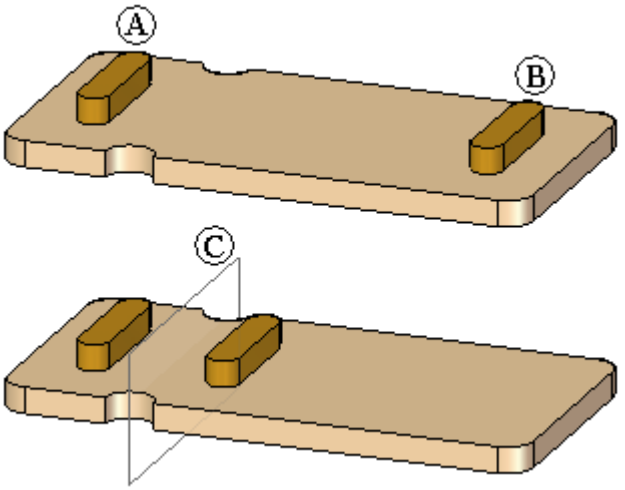
Summary

In this activity you learned how to detect symmetry about a plane that is not a base reference plane. The symmetric about relationship is automatically persisted.

- Close the file and do not save.

Activity: Applying a symmetric about relationship

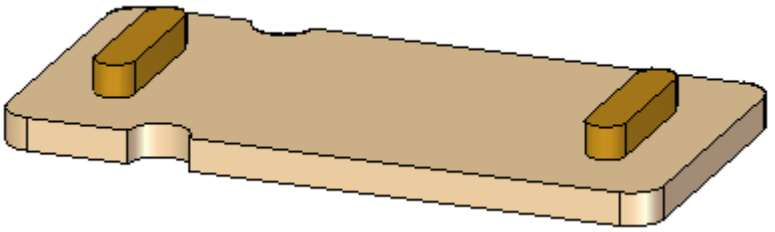
Learn how to make faces (A), (B) symmetric to a target face about a symmetry plane (C).



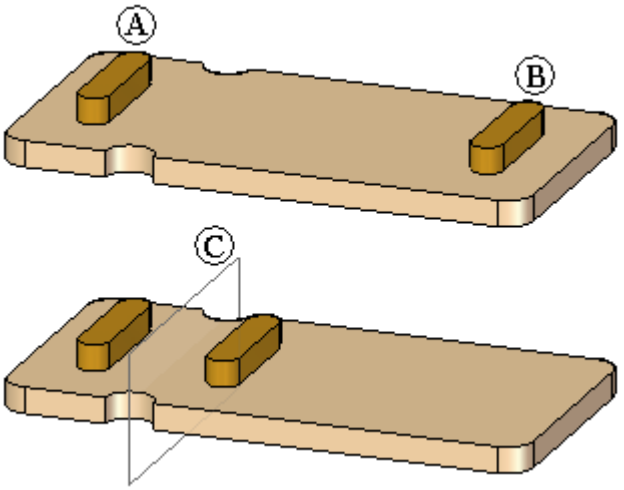
Activity: Applying a symmetric about relationship

Open activity file

- Open *symmetric_about.par*.

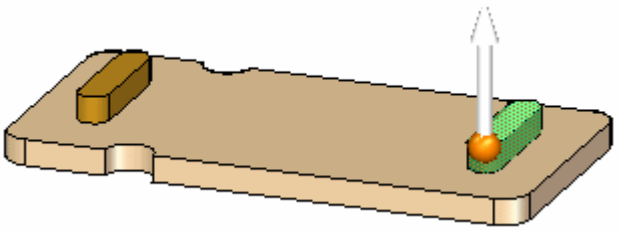


Problem: Make feature (B) symmetric to feature (A) about the symmetry plane (C).



Apply a rigid relationship to feature (B).

- In PathFinder, select Protrusion B.

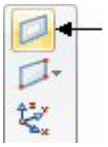


- On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Rigid relationship command .

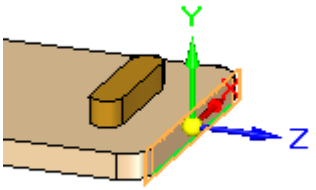
- On the command bar, click the Accept button.

Create a symmetry plane

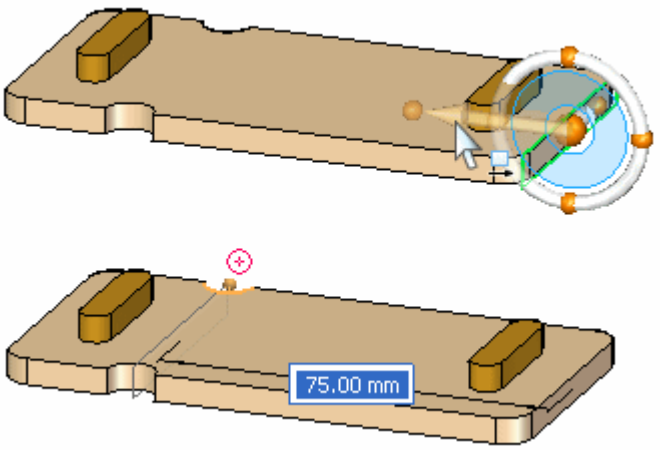
- On the Home tab® Planes group, choose the Coincident Plane command.



- Select the face shown.

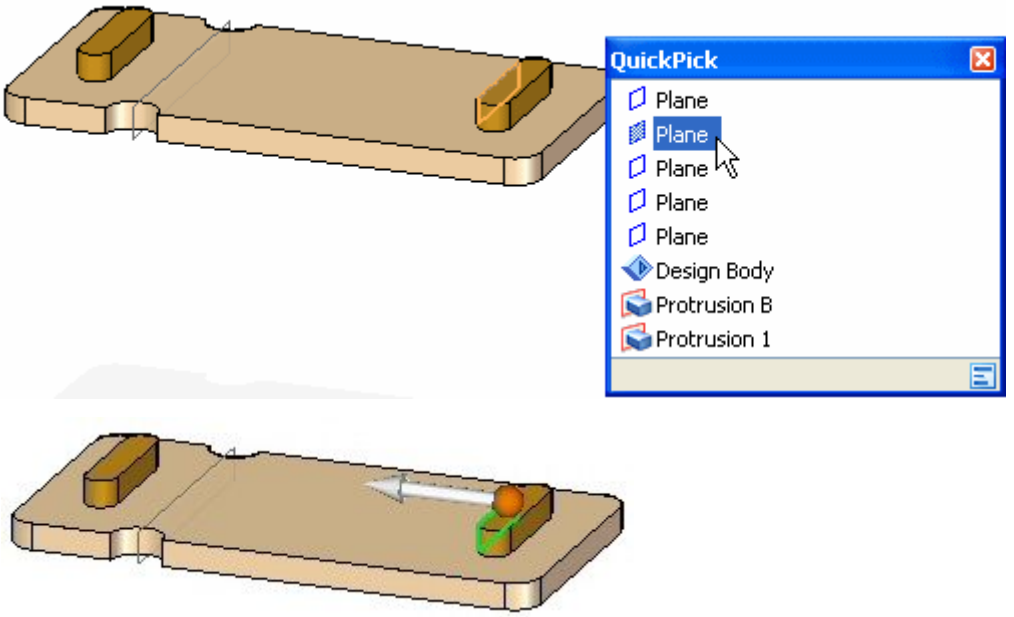


- Move the coincident plane a distance along the primary axis direction that extends to the arc center shown.

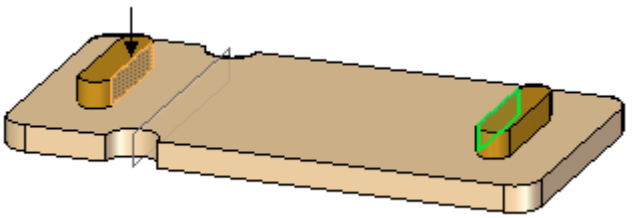


Apply a symmetric about relationship

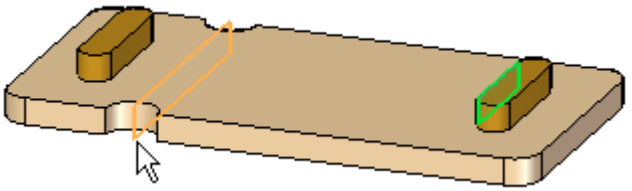
- Select the face shown.



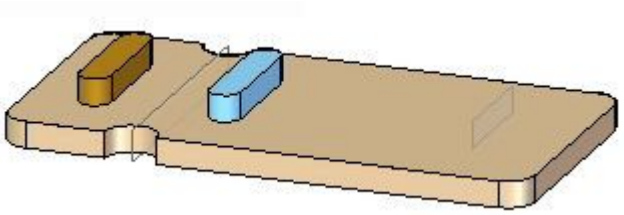
- On the Home tab® Face Relate group, choose the Symmetry relationship command .
- Select the face shown as the target symmetric face and then right-click to accept.



- Select the plane shown for the symmetry plane.



- On the command bar, click the Accept button.

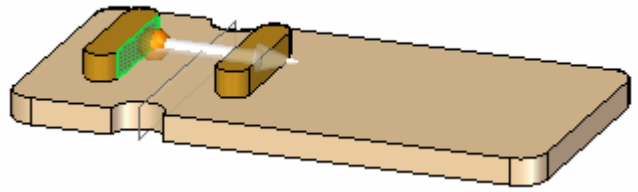


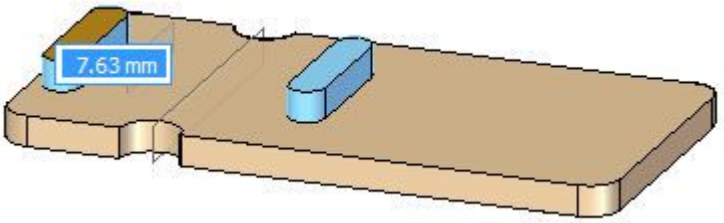
Note

A symmetry relationship is automatically persistent.

Observe symmetric behavior

- Select the face shown. Click the axis and dynamically move it. Notice that the features Protrusion A and Protrusion B move symmetrically.





This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to make two faces symmetric about a plane. The selected face (seed face) is modified to be symmetric to a target face about a symmetry plane. Use the Symmetry relationship command. Only the seed face moves unless a rigid relationship is applied to the other faces that are to move along with the seed face.

- Close the file and do not save.

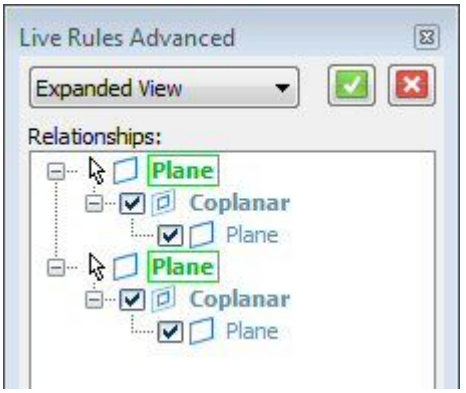
Live Rules Advanced

Displays the selected geometry and related geometry that matches the current Live Rules settings in a tree-like structure. You can use the options on Live Rules Advanced to specify which faces are modified, so you can adjust the result of the current synchronous modification.

Note

Live Rules Advanced is available when you start a synchronous modification. For example, when you click a face with the Select tool, the steering wheel appears. At this point, Live Rules appears, but Live Rules Advanced is not available. If you click the primary axis on the steering wheel to start moving the face, Live Rules Advanced is available. To display Live Rules Advanced, click the Advanced Live Rules button, or press Ctrl E.

Detected rules



Selected faces are denoted in the default select color setting.

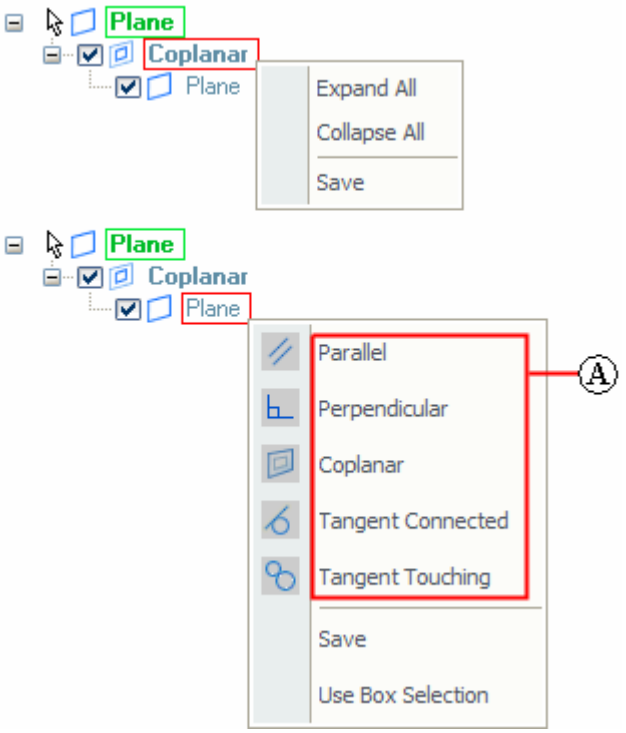
Detected rules are denoted in bold weight.

Related faces are denoted in normal weight.

Persisted relationships are denoted in bold weight with font color black.

Detected rules context menu

Right-click a detected relationship to access a shortcut context menu.



Expand All is the same as clicking the plus sign to expand all relationships for a selected face.

Collapse All is the same as clicking the minus sign to not display all relationships for a selected face.

Save makes the relationship persisted. It is added to the Relationships collector in PathFinder.

Use Box Selection adds faces inside a user defined box to the select set.

Relationships (A) adds faces that have the selected relationship to the select set.

Pause a synchronous modeling edit

During a synchronous face edit, the operation can be paused to examine what is happening. Play resumes the operation.

Pause is invoked via a button or shortcut key **V**. A pause leaves the model at its current solve state. While in Pause mode, if the user starts another synchronous face edit or presses the Esc key, the synchronous modeling operation ends. The Pause mode is exited and the model returns to its original state. View manipulation commands do not end the synchronous face edit operation.

Play is resumed via a button or by right-clicking. Play resumes the synchronous face edit.

In the upper right portion of the window you may see the following icons.

If a dimension is changing during a synchronous operation, then icon (A) appears. If a dimension becomes detached due to a resulting topology change, then icon (B) appears.

While paused, you can locate (highlight) dimensions that have a changed value. As the mouse moves over these items the original value is displayed in the status bar.

Editing detected relationships workflow

1. Create a select set. Live Rules appear in the document window.
2. Start a synchronous face modification.
3. Live Rules turns the relationship type detected to a green shaded icon.

Note

Orange shaded icons are options turned on. Unshaded icons are options turned off.

4. To edit the detected relationships, click the Advanced button.
   - The detected faces and their relationships are displayed in Live Rules Advanced. While in Live Rules Advanced, the synchronous face(s) modification pauses.
   - At this point you can:
     – Click more Live Rules to detect.
     – Turn off detected relationships.
     – Click the Suspend option. This ignores all rules.
     – Modify Live Rules and restore default Live Rules.
5. Click Accept to solve with relationships detected or click Cancel. Live Rules Advanced closes and returns to Live Rules.
6. The synchronous face modification returns to the active state.

Activity: Modifying detected relationships

This activity explains how to use the relationship manager to control the behavior of a model during a topology change.

In this activity an existing part will be modified.

The detected rules will be changed through a Live Rules modification.

At the end of the activity feel free to experiment with other possible modifications to the part.

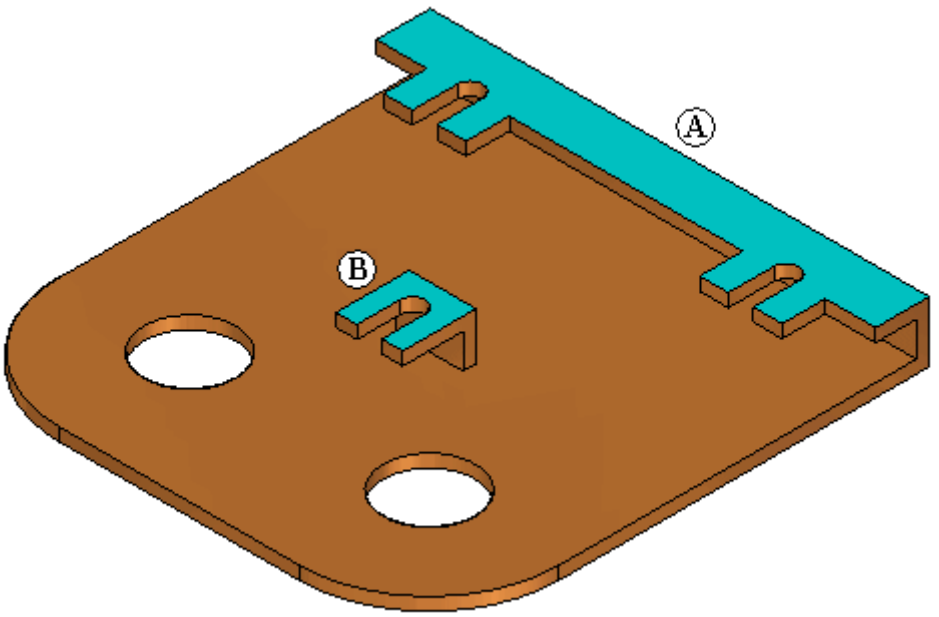
Activity: Modifying detected relationships

Open activity file

- Open *live_rules01.par*.
- Select any face to display the Live Rules settings. Make sure the system delivered Live Rules are set.

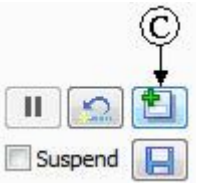
Move a face

- Move face (A). Face (B) also moves because it is coplanar to face (A). Coplanar relationships are detected because it is turned on in Live Rules. Do not click.

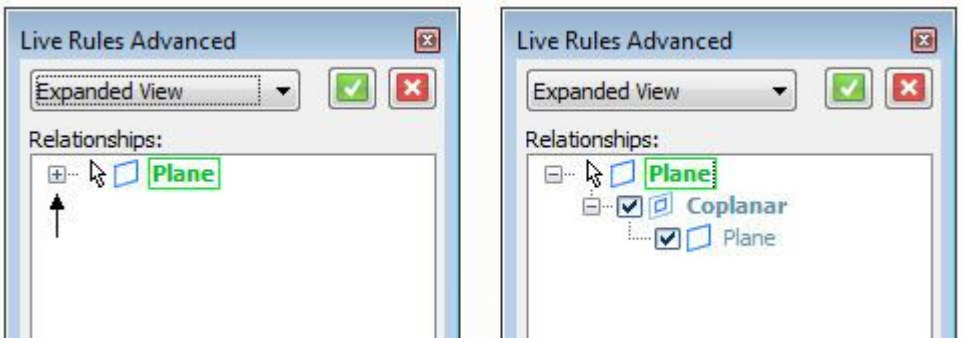


Edit the detected relationships

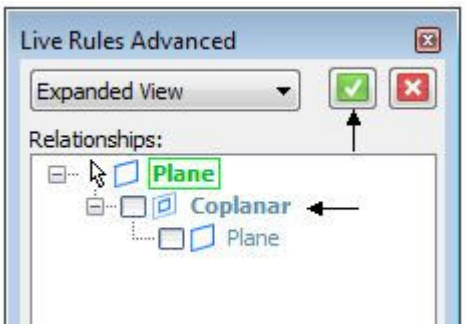
- We do not want face (B) to move. In Live Rules, click the Advanced Live Rules button (C).



- In Advanced Live Rules, click the plus sign to expose the faces detected by Live Rules.



- Click the check box to turn off the detected Coplanar relationship and then click the Accept button.

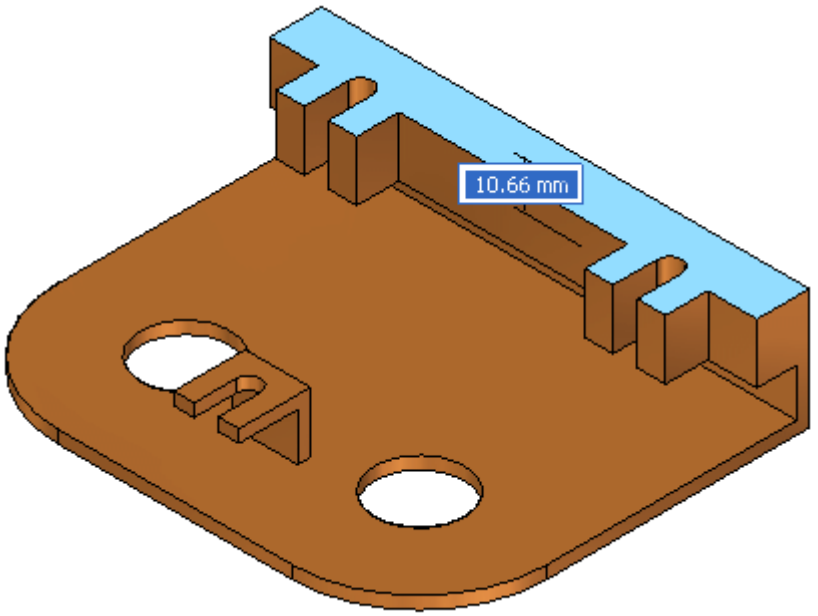


Note

This does not turn off coplanar in Live Rules. This only affects the selected face during a move.

Return to Move face command

- Notice now that only face (A) moves. Do not click. Right-click and then press the Esc key to end the command.



Summary

In this activity you learned how to use Live Rules to control the results of a move face operation. Advanced Live Rules lists all relationships that are detected for a select set of faces. We used the coplanar example in this activity. The Coplanar option was set in Live Rules, so coplanar relationships were detected. If coplanar was turned off, coplanar faces would not be detected.

Practice

- For practice, try moving other faces and use Advanced Live Rules to modify detected relationships. Otherwise, close the file and do not save.

Activity: Changing the default Live Rules

This activity explains how to use the relationship manager to control the behavior of a model during a topology change.

In this activity an existing part will be modified.

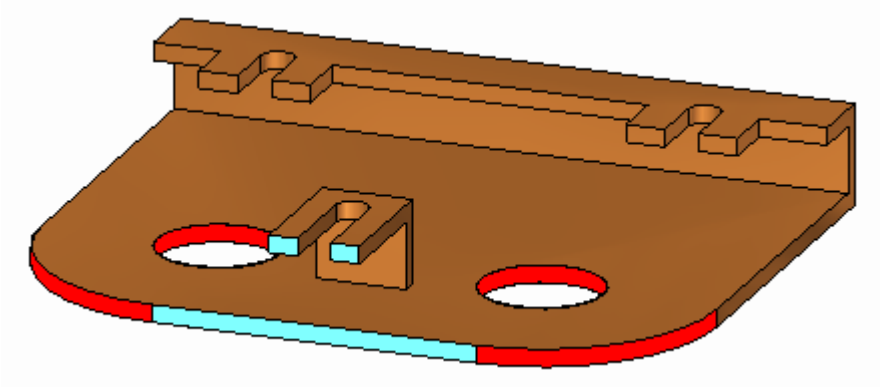
The default Live Rules will be changed during a Move command.

At the end of the activity feel free to experiment with other possible modifications to the part.

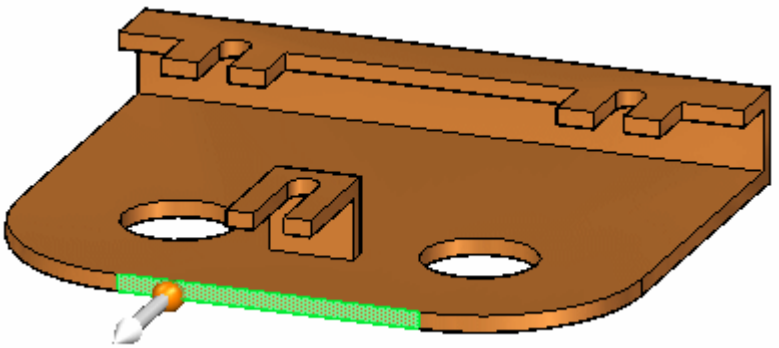
Activity: Changing the default Live Rules

Open activity file and move a face

- Open *live_rules02.par*.
- The blue faces are coplanar and the red faces are concentric. Make sure the default live rules are set.



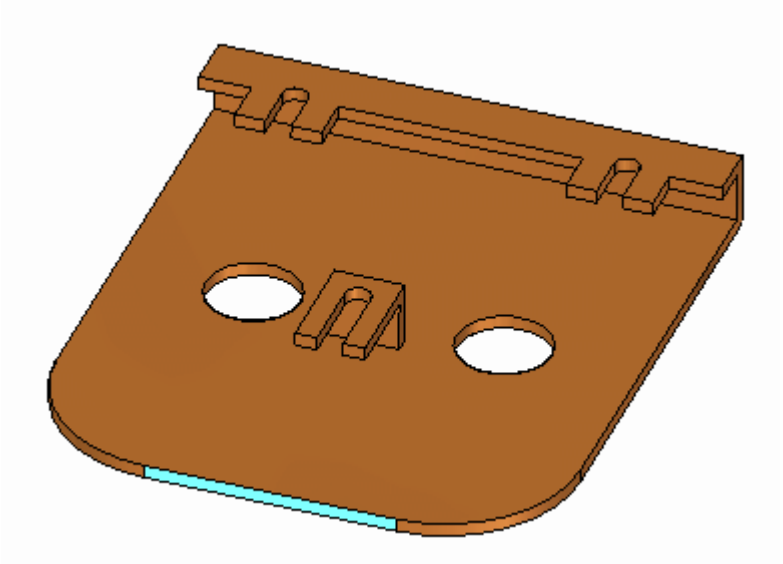
Select the face shown. Click the primary axis and drag the face to observe behavior.



Change the default live rules

- Notice as the face moves, the connected concentric faces and coplanar faces also move. These faces move because Concentric and Coplanar rules are turned on. Turn off Coincident and Coplanar rules. The red shaded relationship icons let you know that the system has detected the relationships. However the detected faces will not participate in the move because they are turned off in Live Rules.

- Notice that only the selected face moves. Move the face to a location as shown. Press the Esc key to end the command.



Summary

In this activity you learned how to use Live Rules to control the results of a move face operation. By changing the live rules defaults, the next synchronous command will use the last Live Rules settings. You could have achieved the same results without changing the defaults by modifying the detected relationships in **Advanced Live Rules**.

Practice

- For practice, try moving other faces by changing the default rules. Otherwise, close the file and do not save.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. How do you show the Live Rules?
2. If you change the Live Rules options, what are the Live Rules options when opening an existing or new file?
3. What is the Lock to Base Reference option?
4. What is Live Rules Advanced?
5. How do you delete a persistent relationship?

Answers

1. How do you show the Live Rules?

   Select a design body, model face, feature, or sketch. Anytime the 3D steering wheel appears, Lives Rules also appear.

2. If you change the Live Rules options, what are the Live Rules options when opening an existing or new file?

   The options are the same as the last setting. To return to the system delivered settings, click the *Restore* button on the Live Rules panel.

3. What is the Lock to Base Reference option?

   Planar faces that are coplanar to a base reference plane lock to the that base plane. Cylindrical faces that are coaxial to a base global system axis lock to that global axis. This setting is on by default.

4. What is Live Rules Advanced?

   Displays the selected geometry and related geometry that matches the current Live Rules settings in a treelike structure. You can use the options on Live Rules Advanced to specify which faces modify, so you can adjust the result of the current synchronous modification.

5. How do you delete a persistent relationship?

   In PathFinder, in the Relationships collector, select the persistent relationship and press the Delete key.

   You can also delete the persistent relationship in Advanced Live Rules. Uncheck the relationship. Once the synchronous operation completes, the persistent relationship is deleted.

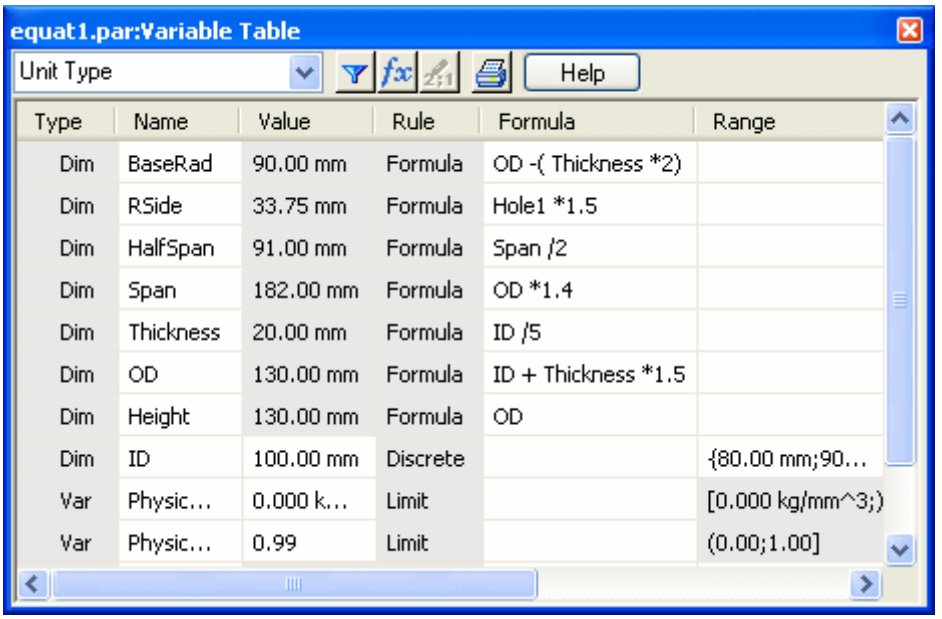
Lesson summary

Live Rules control which relationships to detect during a synchronous operation. If a relationship is detected, the faces maintain that relationship during modification. Persisted relationships are not controlled in Live Rules. Use Advanced Live Rules to control persisted relationships.

Using variables

You can use the Variable Table to define and edit functional relationships between the variables and dimensions of a design in a familiar spreadsheet format.

When you select the Variables command, the Variable Table is displayed. Each row of the table displays a variable. A series of columns is used to list the various properties of the variable, such as Type, Name, Value, Rule, Formula, and Range.



Type	Name	Value	Rule	Formula	Range
Dim	BaseRad	90.00 mm	Formula	OD -(Thickness *2)	
Dim	RSide	33.75 mm	Formula	Hole1 *1.5	
Dim	HalfSpan	91.00 mm	Formula	Span /2	
Dim	Span	182.00 mm	Formula	OD *1.4	
Dim	Thickness	20.00 mm	Formula	ID /5	
Dim	OD	130.00 mm	Formula	ID + Thickness *1.5	
Dim	Height	130.00 mm	Formula	OD	
Dim	ID	100.00 mm	Discrete		{80.00 mm;90...
Var	Physic...	0.000 k...	Limit		[0.000 kg/mm^3;)
Var	Physic...	0.99	Limit		(0.00;1.00]

You can use variables to do the following:

- Control a dimension with another dimension (Dimension A = Dimension B).
- Define a variable (pi=3.14).
- Control a dimension with a formula (Dimension A = pi * 3.5).
- Control a dimension with a formula and another dimension (Dimension A = pi * Dimension B).
- Control a dimension with a formula that includes a function (Dimension A = Dimension B + cos(Dimension C)).
- Control a dimension with a value from a spreadsheet, such as a Microsoft Excel document, by copying the value from the spreadsheet into the Variable Table with the Paste Link command. You can use any spreadsheet software that can link or embed objects.

Note

You can use a VBScript function or subroutine in the formula. The trig functions available in the variable table always assume input value for the function is in radians and returns the results in radians, not in degrees. An example function might be sin(x)=y, where x and y are always in radians.

Types of variables

There are three types of variables displayed in the Variable Table:

- Dimensions (2D dimensions)
- User Variables
- PMI dimensions (model dimensions)

Dimensions

You create Dimension variables when you place a dimension on a 2D element, when you define an assembly relationship, or when the system creates a dimension automatically, such as the extent dimension for a protrusion or cutout.

Dimension variables can be displayed and selected in the graphics window or in the Variable Table. You can use Dimension variables to control and edit a design.

User Variables

You create User Variables when you type a name and value directly into the Variable Table, or when you define values within certain commands. For example, when you define the properties for a counterbore hole with the Hole command, user variables are automatically added to the Variable Table. Other types of user variables are also created automatically, such as the Physical Properties Density and Physical Properties Accuracy variables.

User variables have no graphic element you can display and edit in the graphics window. They can only be accessed and edited through the Variable Table. You can use user variables to control and edit a design.

PMI Dimensions

PMI Dimension variables are created automatically in the Variable Table when you place dimensions on the model.

PMI dimensions on ordered features are always driven dimensions, but they can be used to control other elements in the design in certain circumstances.

PMI dimensions on synchronous features are created initially as unlocked dimensions, but you can lock a dimension so it can be used to control other elements in the design.

Note

A synchronous PMI dimension must be locked before it can be driven by a formula or be used in a formula.

You cannot unlock a synchronous dimension that is controlled by a formula or is used within the formula of another dimension or variable.

Entering data into the Variable Table

When you create the dimensions for a design, variables for these dimensions are placed into the variable table automatically. If the Variable Table is open, any dimension that is placed by you or the software will display in the Variable Table after the dimension is placed.

Working with the Variable Table open allows you to change the dimension name that is generated by the software to a more logical name as you work. When you rename variables, the variable name should begin with a letter, and should contain only letters, numbers, and the underscore character. You should not use punctuation characters.

Note

Variable names are not case-sensitive. For example, if you create the variable VAR1, you cannot create another variable named var1.

Identifying dimensions in the design

When reviewing or editing dimension names and values through the Variable Table, you may need to know which variable name is associated with which dimension in the design. This is true especially when you are editing a design you are not familiar with, or if the 2D geometry and dimensions are placed on many different layers.

With the Variable Table open, when you hover over a cell labeled Dim in the Type column, the dimension in the graphics window changes to the highlight color. When you select a cell labeled Dim in the Type column, the dimension changes to the select color.

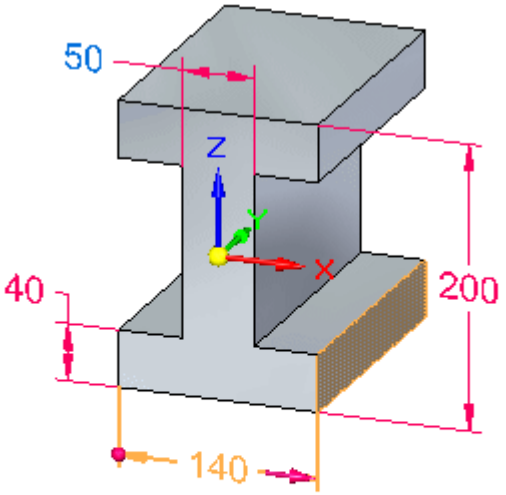
Editing data in the Variable Table

You can directly edit ordered variable names, values, and formulas in the Variable Table as long as the information exists in a cell with a white background.

If an ordered variable value exists in a cell with a gray background, you cannot edit it directly. It means the data is controlled by another variable, dimension, or formula.

All synchronous variable values cells have gray backgrounds. If the open lock is displayed , the value cannot be edited. If the closed lock displays , the value can be edited.

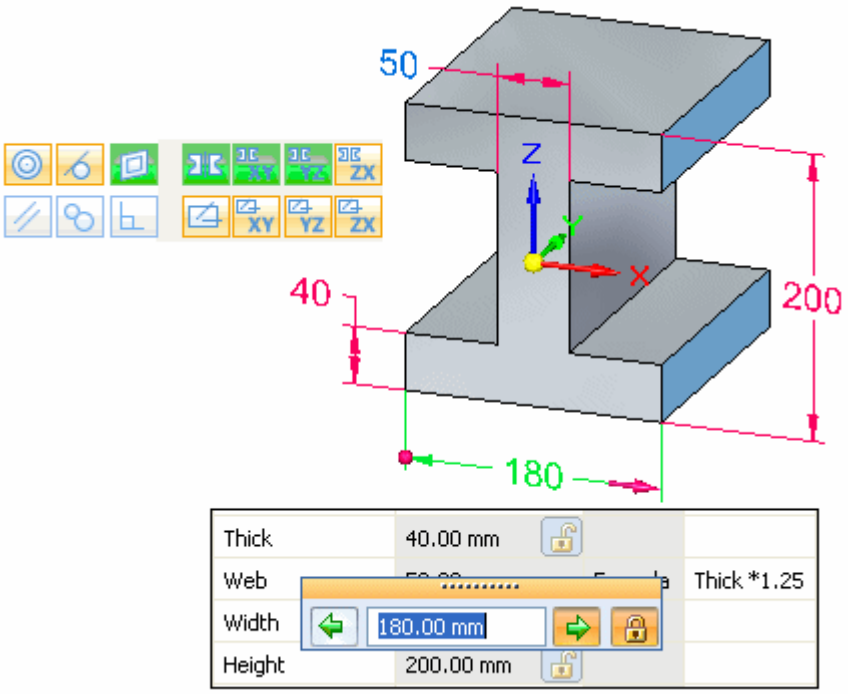
Click the lock to toggle between open and closed.



Thick	40.00 mm		
Web	50.00 mm	Formula	Thick *1.25
Width	140.00 mm		
Height	200.00 mm		

Cells with a gray background and no lock button indicate the data is controlled by another variable, dimension, or formula.

To change data in a cell with a white background, click in the cell, type the new information, and then press **Enter**. To change data in a cell with a lock button, double-click the value and the Edit Dimension box appears. Type the new information, and then press Enter. When the Edit Dimension box appears, the Live Rules window also appears, with the recognized relationships indicated. When you type a new value, the model faces which correspond to the recognized relationships in Live Rules change color. In this example, the Planar and Symmetric About Base (X)Y and (Y)Z Live Rules relationships are recognized and honored.



In the same manner that dimension variables are entered in the Variable Table automatically when you add dimensions to the design, dimension values are changed automatically when you edit your design.

- The value of a locked dimension is updated when you change the dimensional value of a dimension.
- The value of an unlocked dimension is controlled by the element it refers to, or by a formula or variable you define. If the element, formula, or variable changes, the dimensional value updates.
- The values of area and perimeter are updated when you use the Area command bar to change the size of an area object.

Note

If the background color in a Value cell is orange, it means that the value of a dependent variable could not be changed because it would have violated a rule limiting its range of values.

Restricting the display of variables

You can control the display of variables in the table with the Filters button on the Variable Table or the Filters command on the shortcut menu. For example, you can display only the Dimension type variables that were named by users. You can also display variables that are associated with elements in the current document, elements in the active window, or a set of elements that you have selected in the document.

Creating rules for variables

When you select a variable in the Variable Table, you can click the Variable Rule Editor button to define a set of rules for a variable using the Variable Rule Editor dialog box.

Note

You also can access the Variable Rule Editor dialog box using the Edit Formula command bar shortcut menu.

Defining rules for a variable restricts design changes to a more controllable set of values. You can define a discrete set of values, or a range of values for a variable using the Variable Rule Editor dialog box. For example, you can specify that only the values 10, 20, 30, and 40 millimeters are valid for a variable.

The rule type you define for a variable is displayed in the Rule column in the Variable Table, and the numerical values for the rule are displayed in the Range column in the Variable Table.

You can also define a discrete list or limited range of values for a variable by typing the proper characters into the Range cell for a variable in the Variable Table. The following table and examples illustrate how to do this:

Character	Meaning	Where Used	Variable Type
(	Greater Than	Beginning Only	Limit
)	Less Than	End Only	Limit
[	Greater Than or Equal To	Beginning Only	Limit
]	Less Than or Equal To	End Only	Limit
{}	Encloses a Discrete List	Use both as a set	Discrete List
;	Separates values	Between values in a limit or discrete list	Limit and Discrete List

Examples:

- To define a variable that must be greater than 5 and less than 10, type the following in the Range cell:

  (5;10)

- To define a variable that must be greater than or equal to 7 and less than or equal to 12, type the following:

  [7;12]

- To define a variable that must be greater than or equal to 6 and less than 14, type the following:

  [6;14)

- To define a variable that must be limited to the following list of values: 5, 7, 9, and 11, type the following:

  {5;7;9;11}

Editing variables that have rules defined

The edit behavior of a variable changes when you have defined a set of rules for the variable.

- If a dimension variable has a discrete list of values applied, you also can access the list of values on the Dimension command bar.
- If an driving variable has a rule applied, and if you type a value in the command bar or Variable Table that violates the rule, a message is displayed to warn you that the rule has been violated, and the value you type is not applied.
- If an unlocked variable cannot be resolved because the rule conflicts with the formula result, the background color of the Value cell changes to orange to notify you of the conflict. See the When rules and formulas conflict section for more details.

Creating expressions (formulas)

You can create expressions (formulas) to control variables using the Formula column in the Variable Table. The expressions can consist of variables only or of mathematical expressions that contain any combination of constants, user-defined variables, or dimension variables that the software placed.

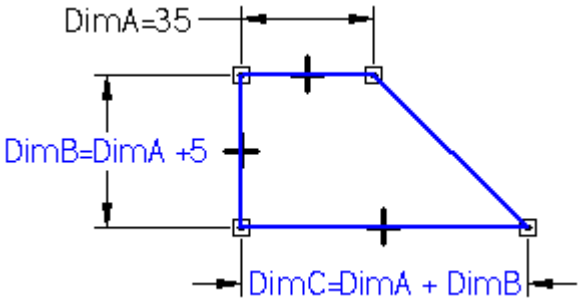
You can create expressions by typing them directly into the Formula box for a variable, using the Function Wizard, or using the Formula option on the Variable Rule Editor dialog box.

The system provides a set of standard mathematical functions. You can also select functions that you wrote and saved. The functions can be typed in with the proper syntax or you can use the Function Wizard to select and define the function. The Function Wizard is convenient when you forget the proper syntax for a math function. You start the Function Wizard by clicking the Fx button in the Variable Table.

You can link VBScript functions and subroutines to variables in the variable table. To see an example, at the bottom of this topic, click Creating a Variable with an External Function or Subroutine.

Displaying the expressions (formulas) graphically

You can use the Show All Formulas, Show All Names, and Show All Values commands on the dimension shortcut menu to change the display of dimensions to make it easier to define expressions between dimensions. For example you can use the Show All Formulas command to display the dimension names and formulas you define.

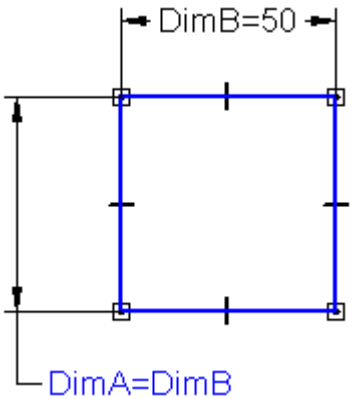


You can also use the Edit Formula command on the dimension shortcut menu to define formulas between dimensions.

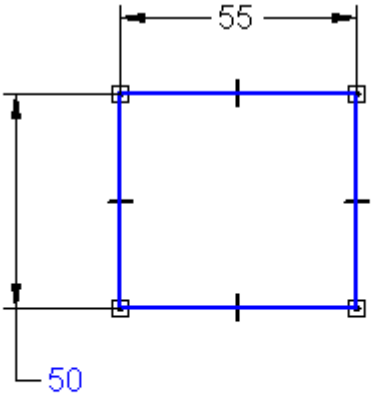
When rules and formulas conflict

You can also define rules for variables that are controlled by formulas. During edits, it is possible that the formula-driven value for an unlocked variable conflicts with its defined rules.

When this occurs, the rule will not be violated, but the Value cell color for the variable changes to the orange color to indicate there is a conflict. For example, you can define a simple formula that states that DimA=DimB. The dimension text color for DimA changes to indicate that the dimension value is controlled by another dimension. The Value cell for the dimension in the variable table turns gray to indicate that its value is controlled by another variable.



You can then specify a discrete list rule for DimA where the only valid values are {50; 60; 70}. If you then edit DimB to 55, the discrete list rule for DimA is violated. When this occurs, the value for DimA will not change to the invalid value. The value cell for DimA in the Variable Table turns orange to indicate that there is a conflict between the limit rule and the formula.



Type	Name	Value	Rule	Formula
Dim	DimB	55.00 mm		
Dim	DimA	50.00 mm	Formula & Discrete	DimB

Examples

Suppose you draw a sheet metal bracket and you want to build a relationship between the bend radius and stock thickness. You can use a formula in the Variable Table to build and manage this relationship. The following example illustrates how the Variable Table would look if you built a relationship that changes the bend radius when the stock thickness changes.

Type	Name	Value	Formula
Variable	Stock_thickness	.25	
Dimension	Bend_radius	.375	1.5 x stock_thickness

Here are some more examples of how you might set up the Variable Table:

Type	Name	Value	Formula
Variable	c	2.0 kg	
Variable	d	10.0 rad	@c:\bearing.xls!sheet1!R6C3
Variable	e	20 mm	@c:\bearing.xls!sheet1!R6C3
Dimension	f	8.5 mm	(1.5 + Func.(func1(c,d)))^2

Variables d and e are controlled by an external document, in this case an Excel spreadsheet. You can also control a variable using a variable in another Solid Edge document.

Variable f is controlled by a formula that includes variables c and d and function.

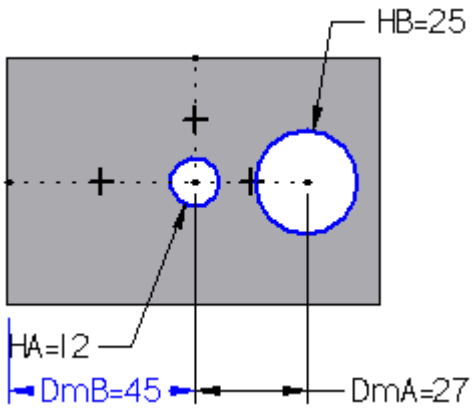
Argument conventions

The following argument conventions are used in the Variable Table:

- In the syntax line, required arguments are bold and optional arguments are not.
- Argument names should follow the rules for Visual Basic.
- In the text where functions and arguments are defined, required and optional arguments are not bold. Use the format in the syntax line to determine whether an argument is required or optional.

Using driven and driving dimensions within expressions in ordered modeling

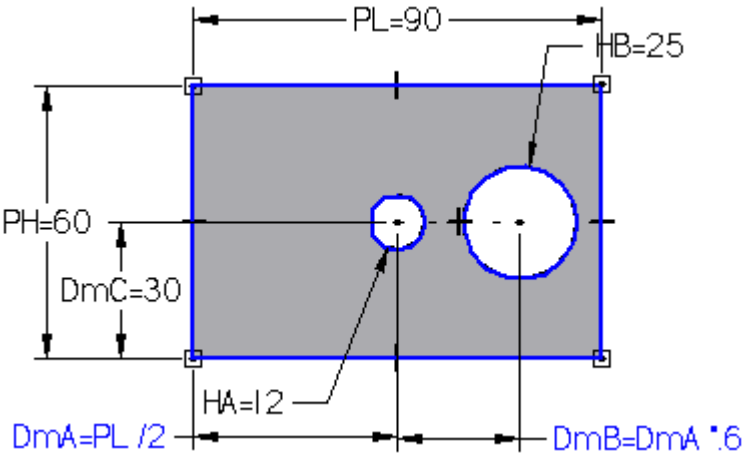
When creating expressions between dimensions, you cannot use a driven dimension to drive the value of a driving dimension when both dimensions are within the same sketch or profile. For example, if the profile circles HA and HB for the cutout feature shown are on the same profile or sketch plane, you cannot use DmA to control the value of DmB, because DmA is a driven dimension. (DmA is driven because the location of profile circle HA is controlled by geometric relationships between the midpoints of the part edges).



In this example, there are two approaches you can take to work around this issue.

- You can use two cutout features rather than one to create the circular cutouts.
- You can use driving dimensions and expressions to keep profile circle HA centered on the part, rather than geometric relationships.

As shown below, reworking the relationship scheme allows you to draw profile circles HA and HB on the same profile plane, and then use DmA in an expression to control the value for DmB (DmB=DmA*.6). Rather than controlling the location of profile circle HA using geometric relationships, a driving dimension that controls the base feature length (PL) and an expression is used to ensure that profile circle HA is centered on the part (DmA=PL/2). This allows you create an expression where DmA controls DmB.



Accessing variables for other parts within an assembly

The Peer Variables command, on the Tools menu, gives you access to part and subassembly variables for the other parts and subassemblies within an assembly. You can use the Peer Variables command while you are in the assembly, or when you have in-place activated a part or subassembly within the assembly. The parts can be contained directly in the assembly or in a subassembly. To edit a part or subassembly variable, click the Peer Variables command, select the part or subassembly, and then edit the values in the Variable Table.

You can edit values, create user-defined variables, enter equations, and copy and paste variables between parts and subassemblies within an assembly. All the functionality of the variable table is available, with the increased convenience that you do not have to in-place activate the peer part.

After you open the Peer Variable Table for a part, you can access the variables of any assembly occurrence by clicking the occurrence in Assembly PathFinder or in the graphics window. The Peer Variable Table will update to display the variables of the occurrence you select. The title bar of the Peer Variable Table also lists the name for the selected occurrence.

To display the variables of the active document, click the Active Model button on the Peer Variable command bar with the Peer Variable Table open.

Note

When using Peer Variables to edit a synchronous part in the context of the assembly, Live Rules relationships are not recognized or honored.

Linking variables between parts in an assembly in ordered modeling

You can also use the Peer Variables command to associatively copy and paste variables between parts within an assembly or subassembly. For example, you can control the flange thickness of Part B using a variable in Part A. When you edit the value for the variable in Part A, the flange thickness in both parts is changed simultaneously. To take advantage of associative copy and paste, you must first set the Paste Link To Variable Table option on the Inter-Part tab on the Options dialog box.

To associatively link a variable between two parts in an assembly, use the Peer Variables command to select the part containing the variable you want to copy (Part A). In the Variable Table for Part A, select the variable row you want to copy, and then click the Copy command on the shortcut menu. Then select the part in which you want to paste the variable (Part B). Select the variable table row in which you want to paste the variable, and then click the Paste Link command on the shortcut menu.

After the relationship is established, any changes made to the parent variable for Part A will update the linked variable for Part B. To ensure that the link is updated, use the Update All Links command. When you link Solid Edge variables between parts in an assembly, the document names and folder path should contain only letters, numbers, and the underscore character. You should not use punctuation characters.

For more information, see the Link variables between parts in an assembly Help topic.

Creating variables with a link to a spreadsheet

You can use Microsoft Excel or other spreadsheet software to link Solid Edge variables to a spreadsheet. Before you can link variables to a spreadsheet, you must first create the variables you want in the Solid Edge document. When you link Solid Edge variables to a spreadsheet, the document names and folder path for the spreadsheet and the Solid Edge document should contain only letters, numbers, and the underscore character. You should not use punctuation characters.

Note

Links are not supported in the Synchronous environment.

To successfully edit the linked Solid Edge variables from the spreadsheet later, you must open the Solid Edge and spreadsheet documents in a specific order:

- You can open the spreadsheet document first, then open the linked Solid Edge document.

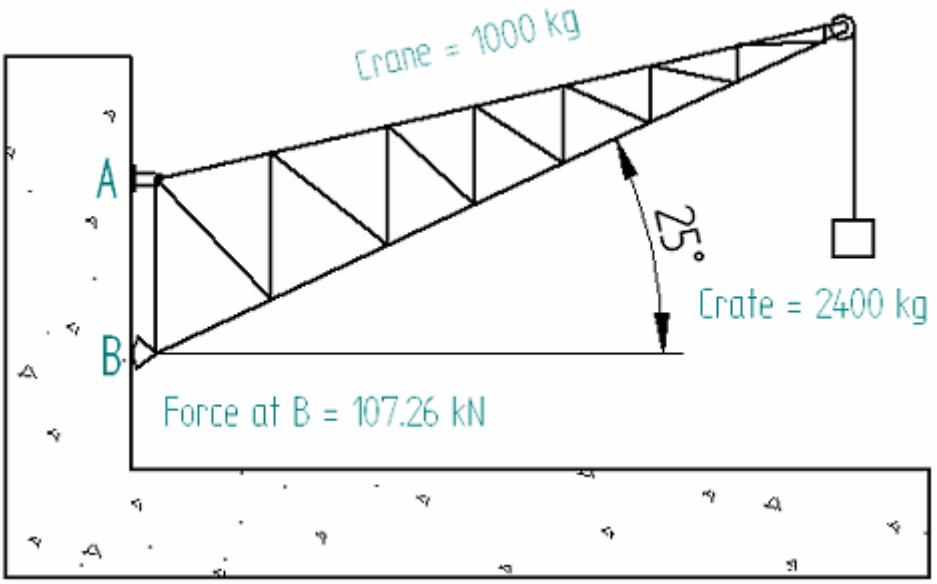
- You can open the Solid Edge document first, then click the Edit Links command on the shortcut menu when a linked formula is selected within the variable table. You can then use the Open Source option on the Links dialog box to open the spreadsheet document.

For more information, see the Create a variable with a link to a spreadsheet Help topic.

Accessing the Variable Table using property text

You can use property text to extract system and user variables, values, and dimensions from the Variable Table into design annotations.

In this example, property text in callouts reference weight and force values calculated for the crane, crate, and force.



To extract property text from the Variable Table, on the Select Property Text dialog box, select Variables From Active Document as the property text source. The new property text string has the format %{Variable_name|V}, where Variable_name converts to the current value of the named variable.

Example: The Crane = 1000 kg annotation in the illustration is a result of this entry in the Callout dialog box: Crane = %{Crane_mass|V} kg.

Exposing variables as custom properties

You can select variables from within individual part and assembly files and expose them as custom properties using the Expose and Exposed Name columns in the Variable Table. The variables you expose are then displayed in the Properties list in the Custom tab in the File Properties dialog box.

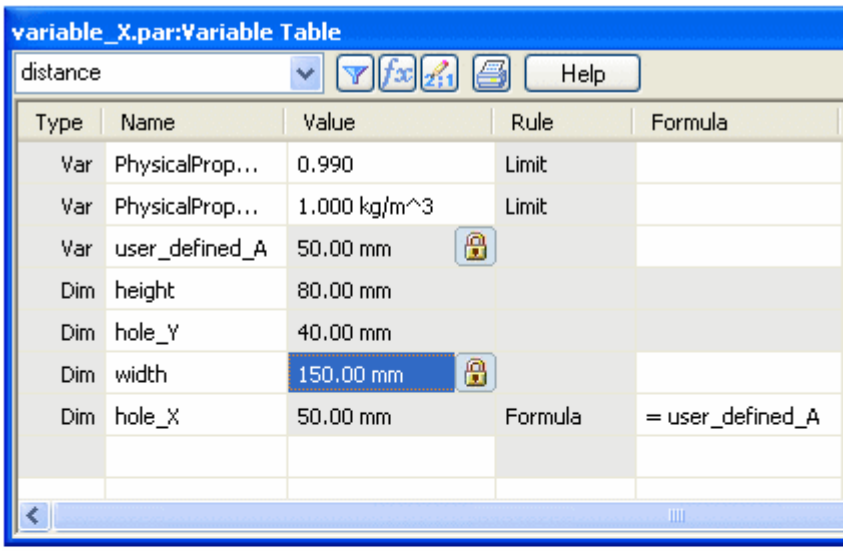
This also makes the variables available in the Draft environment (for inclusion in annotations, for example), in Property Manager, and in Insight Connect and associated SharePoint interfaces.

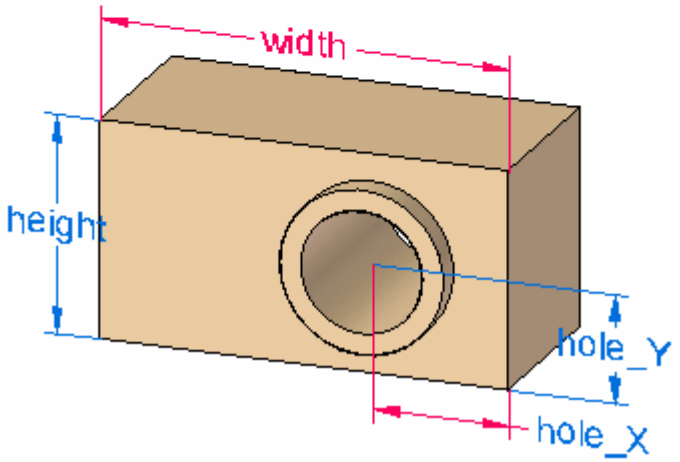
The exposed variables are displayed in the Properties list in the Custom tab in the order in which they were exposed in the Variable Table. If you want to change the order in the Properties list, clear the check marks for all the exposed variables, then check the variables you want to expose, in the order you want them displayed in the Properties list.

Suppressing features using a variable in ordered modeling

You can suppress and unsuppress a part or sheet metal feature using the Variable Table by adding a suppression variable to the variable table using the Add Suppression Variable command on the shortcut menu when a feature is selected. If you link the suppression variable to an external spreadsheet, you can then suppress and unsuppress the feature using the external spreadsheet.

Activity: Using the variable table





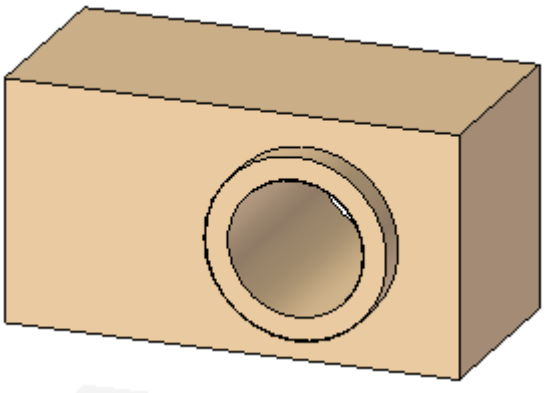
This activity demonstrates how to use the variable table to control dimensions.

In this activity an existing part is dimensioned and then the variable table is used make changes to the part.

Activity: Using the variable table

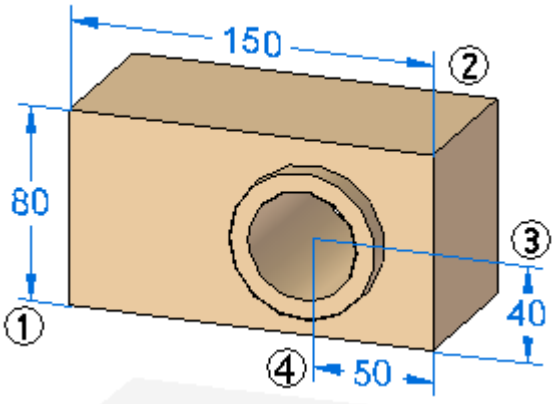
Open activity file

- Open *variable_X.par*.



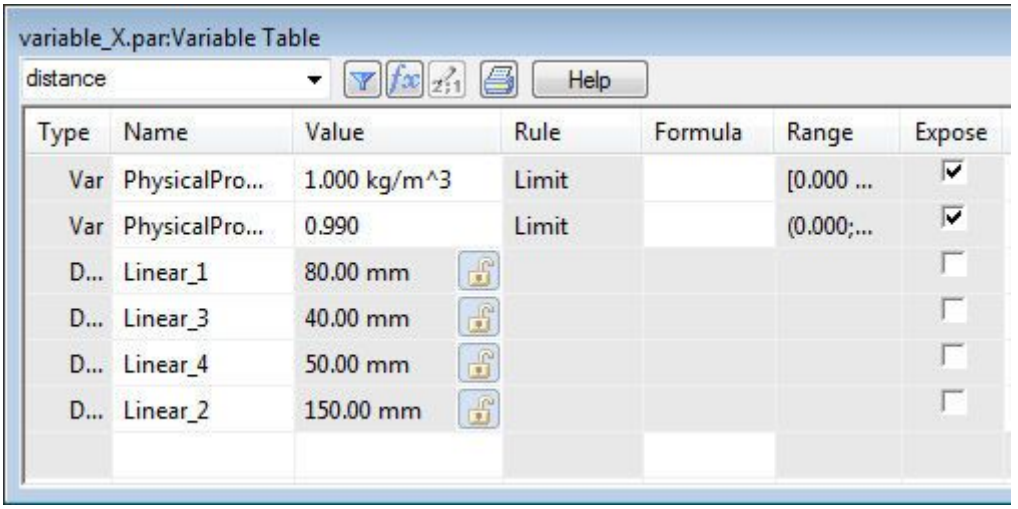
Dimension the model

- Place four dimensions. Place them in the order shown.



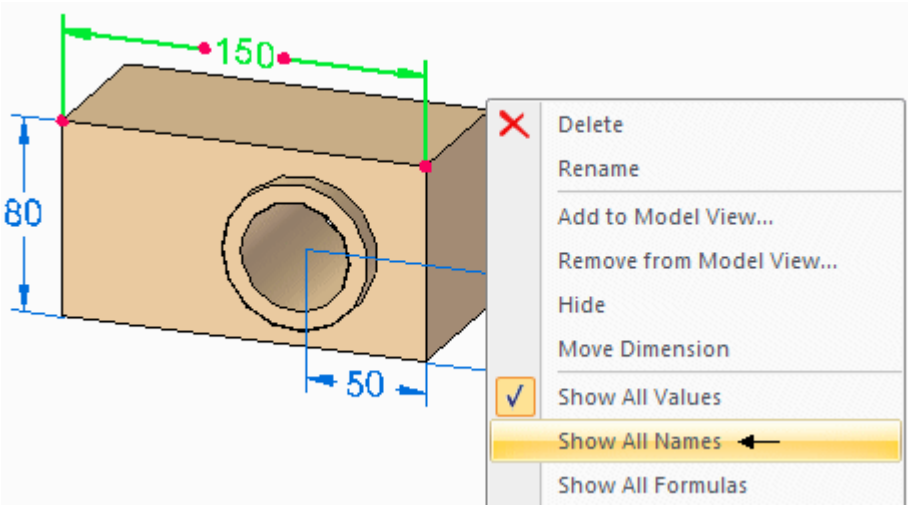
Open the variable table

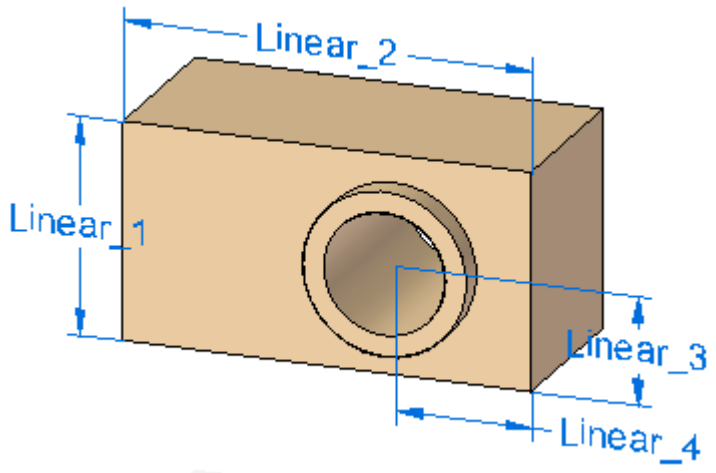
- Choose the Tools tab® Variables group® Variables command.



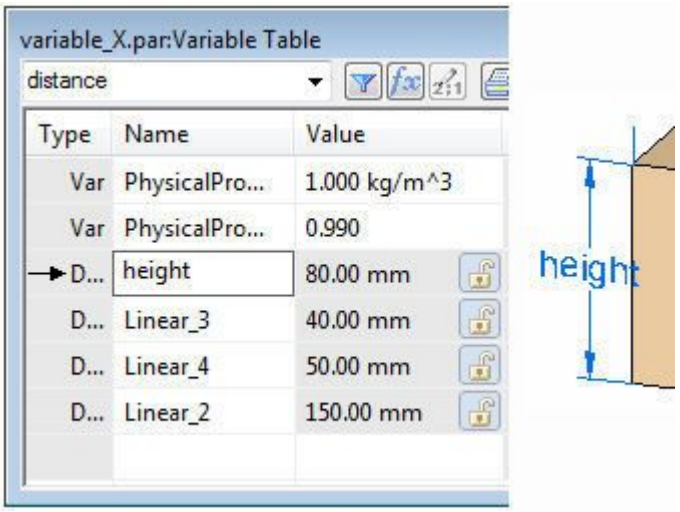
Change the dimension variable name

- Change the dimension display. Right-click a dimension and then click Show All Names.

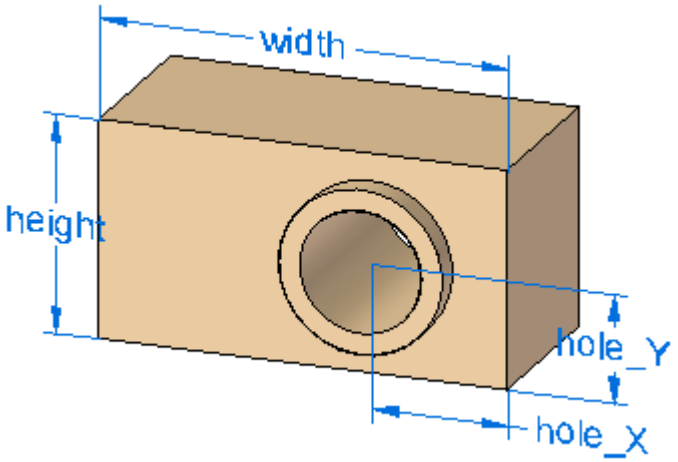




- In the variable table, double-click in the Name box for Linear_1. Type *height* for the new variable name and press Enter.

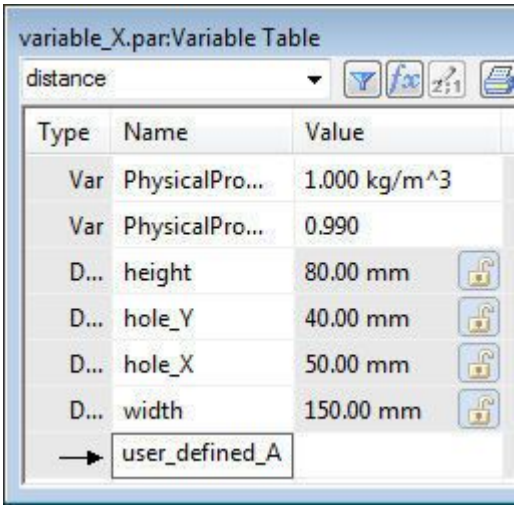


- Rename the remaining dimensions: Linear_2=width, Linear_3=hole_Y, Linear_4=hole_X.

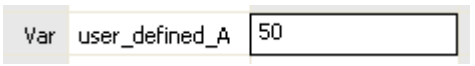


Create a user defined variable

- In the variable table, double-click the first empty Name box shown, and type *user_defined_A*. Press Enter.

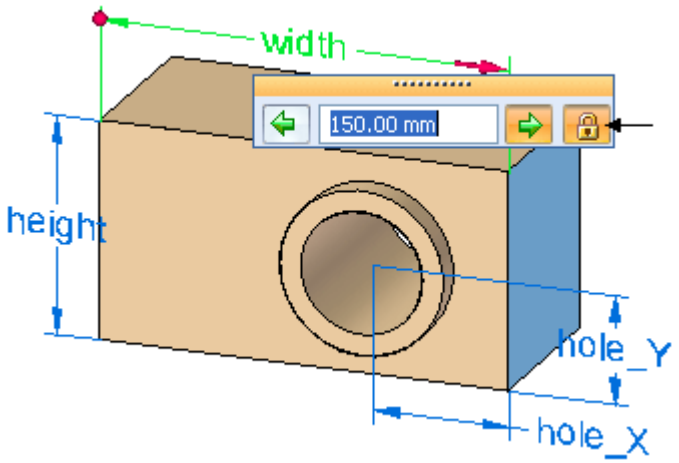


- Double-click the Value box for variable user_defined_A and type 50. Press Enter.



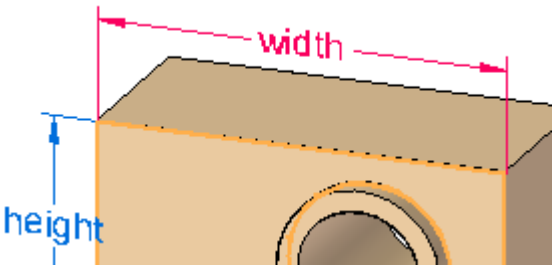
Lock a dimension

- Select the *width* dimension on the part and click the lock button to lock the dimension.

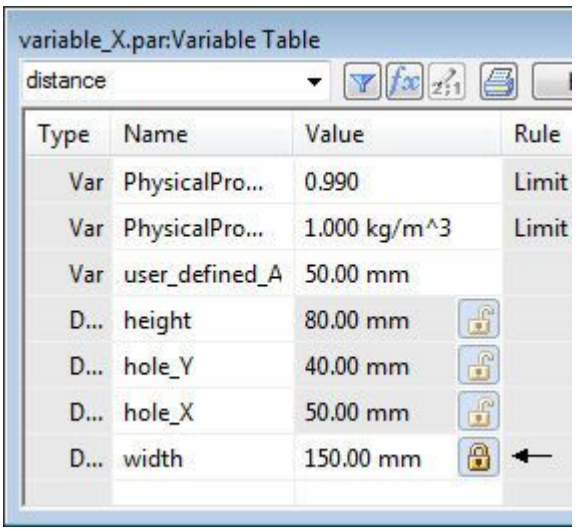


Note

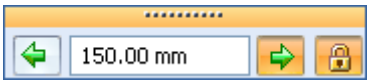
Notice that the dimension changes to red, which means that it is a driving dimension.



- Notice in the variable table that the width value has a locked icon.

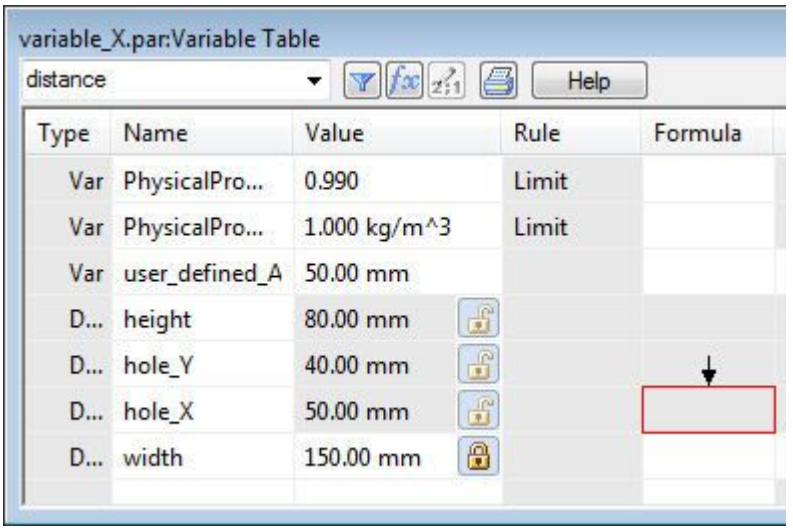


You can click the value edit button or click the dimension on the part to change the dimension value. Both bring up the same dimension value edit dialog.

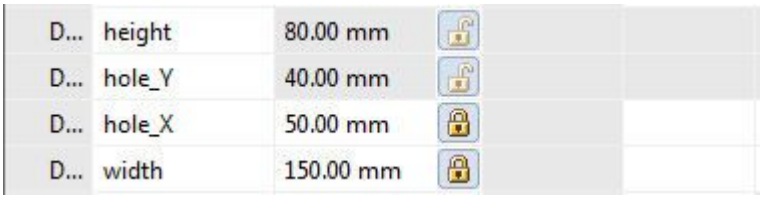


Add a formula to a dimension variable

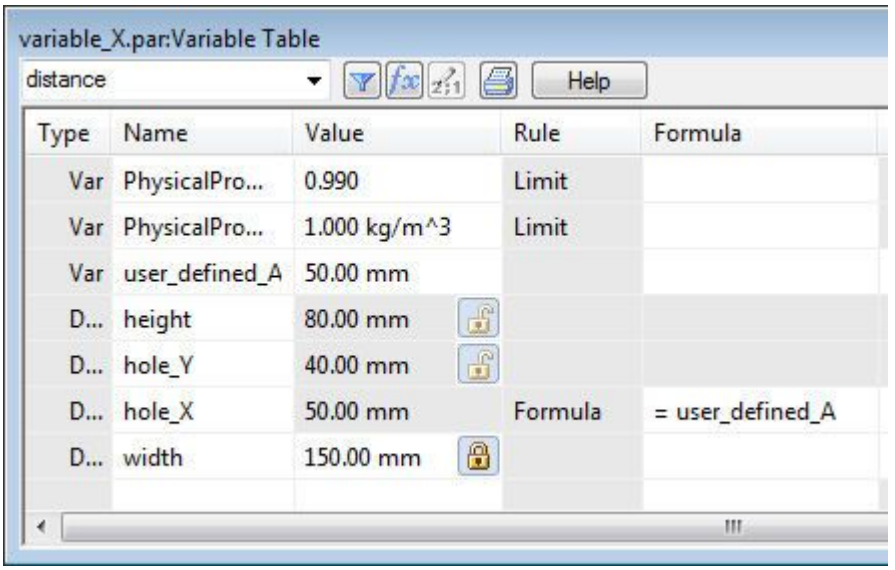
- Add a formula to control the hole_X value. Notice in the variable table that the Formula box for hole_X is not available. This means that it cannot be edited because it is a driven dimension.



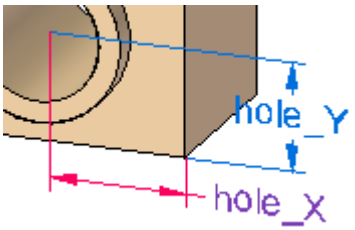
Select the hole_X dimension on the part and click the lock button. Notice in the variable table that the Formula box is enabled and a value edit button is available the value.



- Click the Formula box for the *hole_X* variable, and type =*user_defined_A* and press Enter.



Notice that the hole_X dimension on the model contains two colors. The value is still driven (purple), but the dimension can be edited using a formula (red).



Edit the dimensions

- In the variable table, change the dimension variables with the value edit button and observe the model changes. You decide what values to enter. As changes are made, the model follows the live rules settings.

Summary

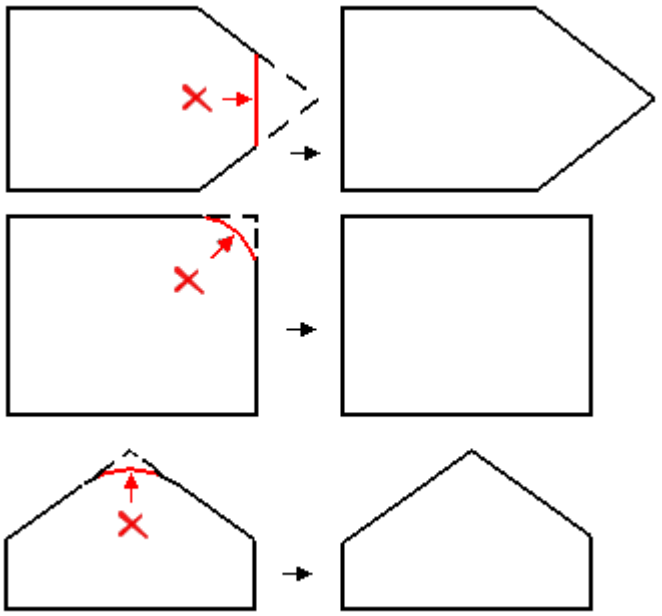
In this activity you learned how to use the variable table control the dimensions on a model. You learned how to rename a system defined variable, create a user defined variable and how to add a formula for a variable.

- Close the file and do not save.

Miscellaneous commands

Delete face

A face can be deleted only if the faces it is connected to can extend to fill in the area vacated. This extension of faces is termed *healing*.

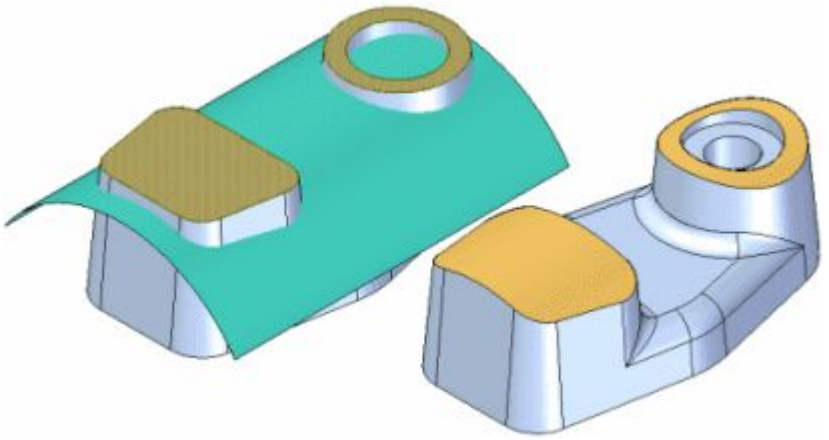


To delete a face, select the face and then press the **Delete** key.

Replace face

The Replace Face command is located on the Surfacing tab in the Surfaces group. This command replaces selected faces on a part. The replacement face can be a construction surface, a reference plane, or another face on the part. When replacing more than one face, the faces being replaced cannot touch each other.

When you replace a face using a construction surface, the construction surface is hidden automatically when you finish the feature.



If edges on the face you are replacing have rounds applied, the rounds are reapplied after you complete the replace face operation.

Lesson

5 *Constructing treatment features*

Treatment features

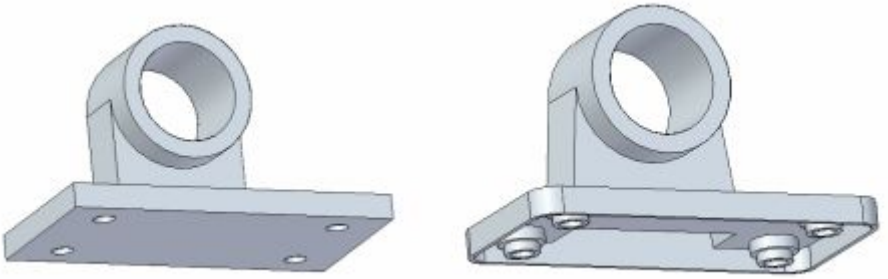
Note

This course presents the Synchronous method of treatment feature creation. To learn about the Ordered method, please refer to the self-paced course *spse01536: Modeling synchronous and ordered features*.

Treatment features are those which affect a model's existing edges or faces. You construct treatment features by applying face and edge treatments, such as drafts, rounds, and thin wall to the part.

Treatment feature types within Solid Edge

- A *round* feature applies a constant radius to one or more part edges.
- A *blend* feature applies a variable radius to one or more part edges or blends between two faces.
- A *draft* feature tilts an existing part face to a specified angle relative to a reference plane.
- The *thin wall* feature is useful in plastic part modeling to create a shell of a part.



Step 1: Choose command.

Step 2: Select edge/ face/ body.

When to add treatment features to models

For best results, add treatment features to your model as late as possible in the design process.

In particular, it is preferable to round edges after constructing thin-walls. If a draft is crucial for positioning other features, construct the draft just before you define the other features. Although you can construct a treatment feature at any time, non critical features can complicate the display of the part in orthogonal views (especially the presence of drafted faces).

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. In general, should you add rounds before construtign thin-walls, or after?

2. True or False: You should add treatment features as early as possible in the design process.

Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. In general, should you add rounds before construtign thin-walls, or after?

   It is preferable to round edges after constructing thinwalled features.

2. True or False: You should add treatment features as early as possible in the design process.

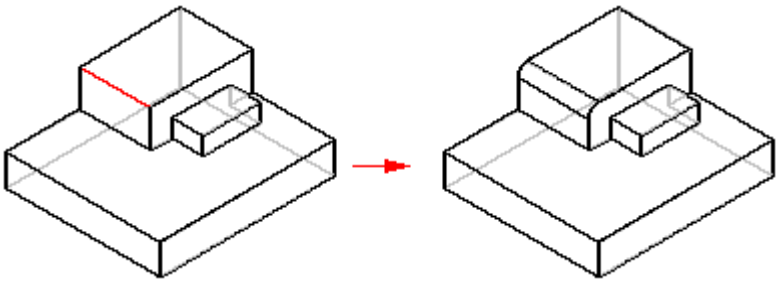
   False. For best results, add treatment features to your model as late as possible in the design process.

Lesson summary

- Treatment features are those which affect a model's existing edges or faces. You construct treatment features by applying face and edge treatments, such as drafts, rounds, and thin wall to the part.

Rounding and blending

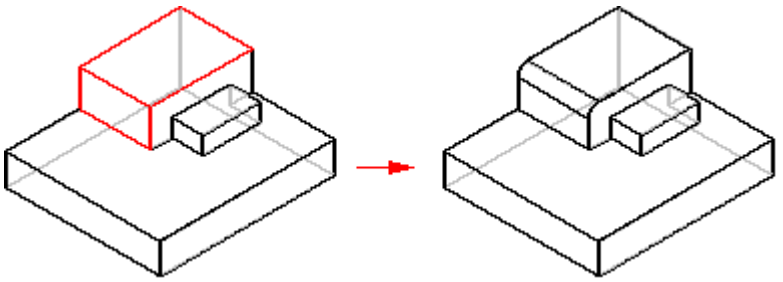
Use rounding to replace a model's sharp edges with a smooth, rounded surface to improve its appearance or function. Rounding is edge-based, which means you can only round edges.



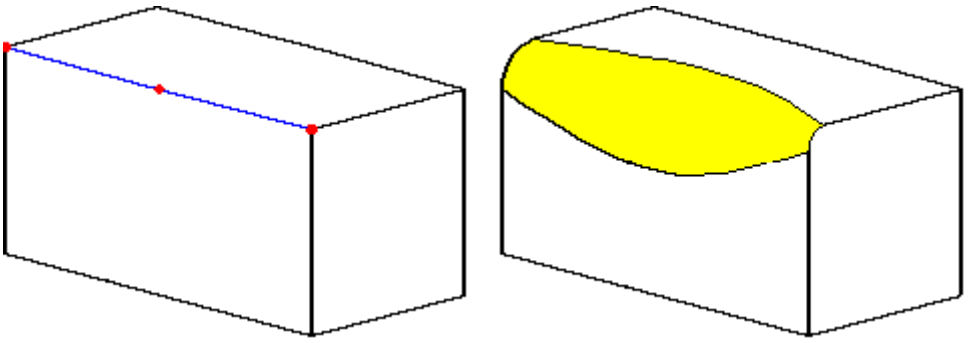
In the ordered environment, you use a constant rounding radius, a variable radius, or a combination of the two.

With the Round command in the synchronous environment, you only use a constant radius round to the edges of a part.

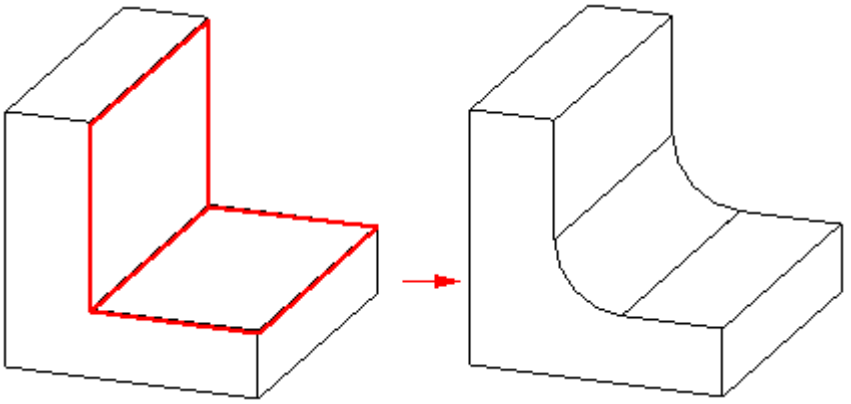
With blending in the ordered environment, you blend between edges, faces, or a combination of the two.



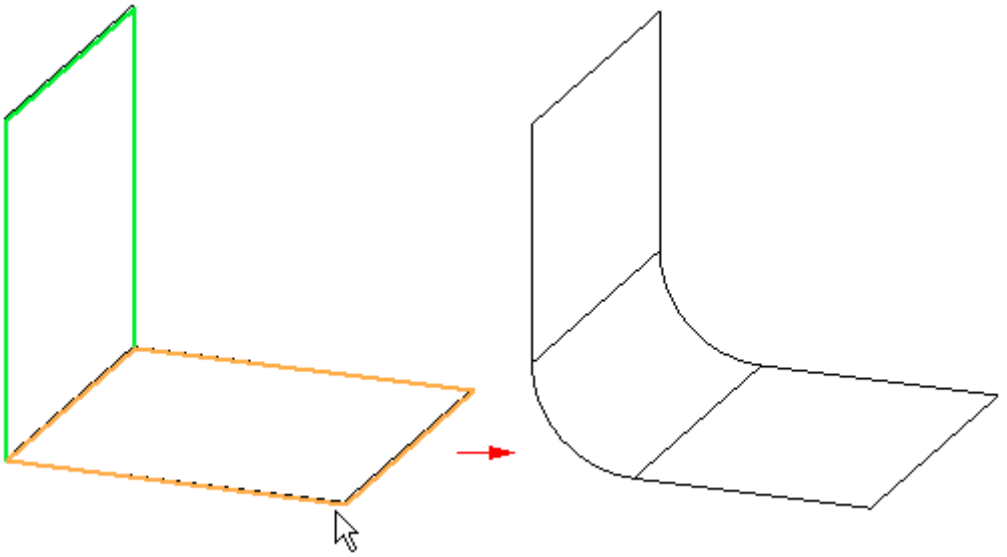
With the Blend command in the synchronous environment, you can create a variable radius round,



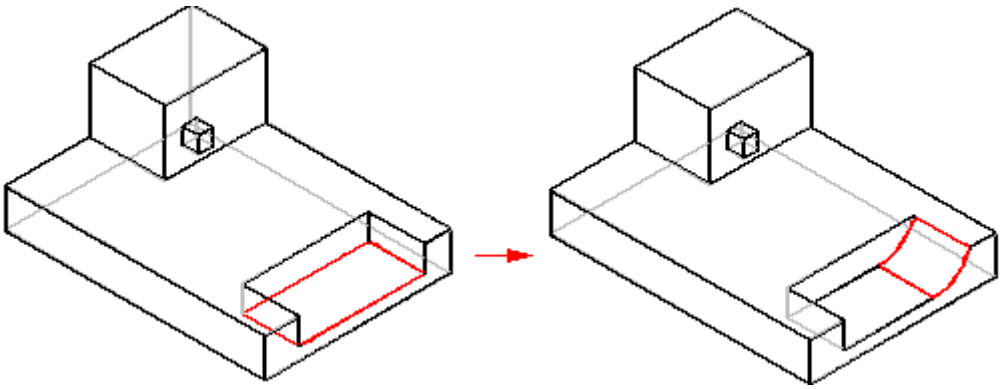
a blend between faces,



or a blend between surface bodies.



You can do full-pocket rounding. In other words, you can create a round where the round radius is greater than the depth of the pocket.



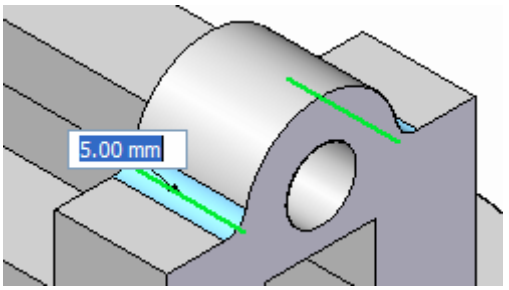
With blending, you can create a round with a radius less than or equal to the depth of the pocket. However, when the radius becomes greater than the depth of the pocket, the round will fail.

Round workflow

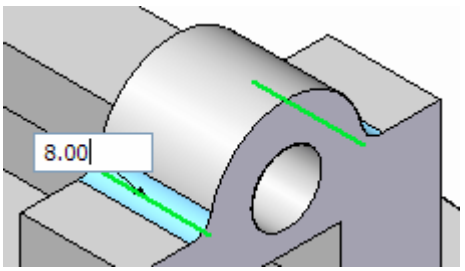
Step 1: On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Round command .

Step 2: On the Round command bar, use the Select menu (A) to specify the element to round (chain, edge/corner, face, loop, all fillets or all rounds).

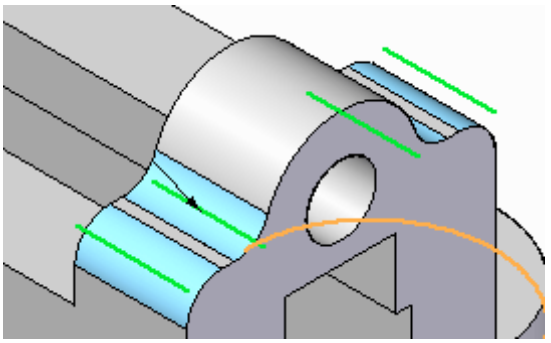
Step 3: Select the elements to round. When you select an edge is, you see a dynamic preview of the round.



Step 4: Type the radius for the round.

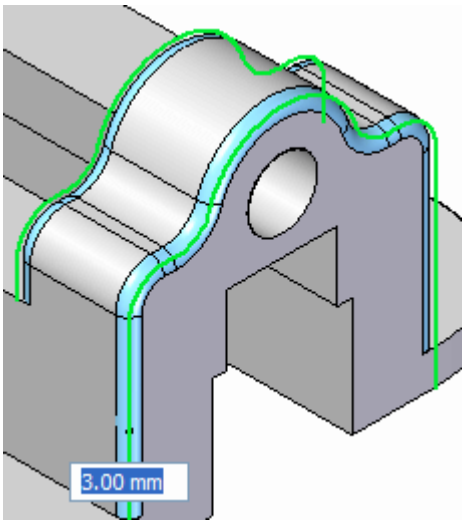


Step 5: Continue selecting edges defined with the same radius value.

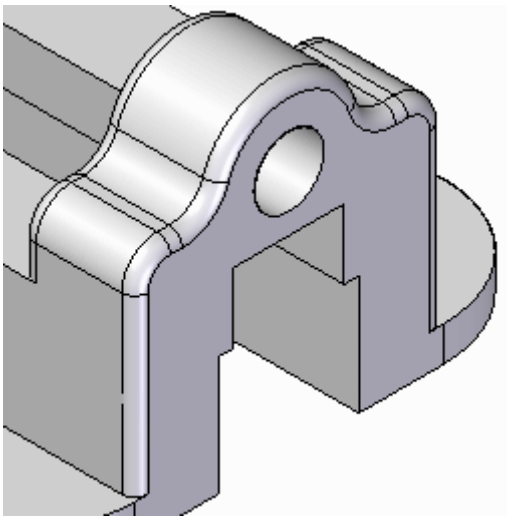


Right-click when finished with this common radius. This converts all preview geometry to finished geometry. The command remains active.

Step 6: To place additional rounds with different radii, continue selecting edges and then change the radius value.



Step 7: Right-click to finish the round.

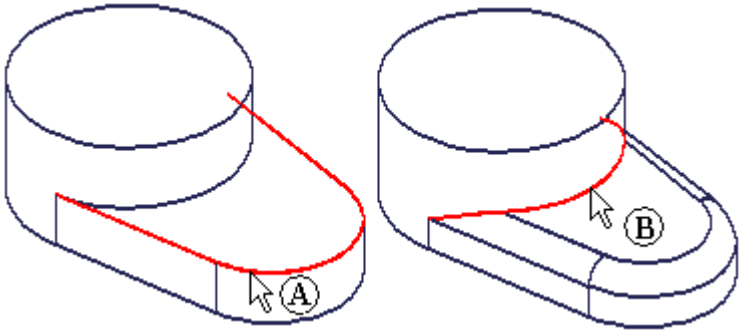


Step 8: Press the Esc key or pick the Select command to end the round command.

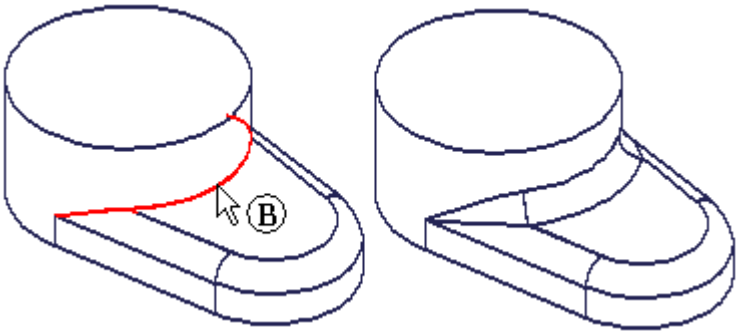
Rounding order

The order in which you apply individual round features to a model can make a difference in the completed model. This typically occurs when the edges you select to define the rounds intersect or meet.

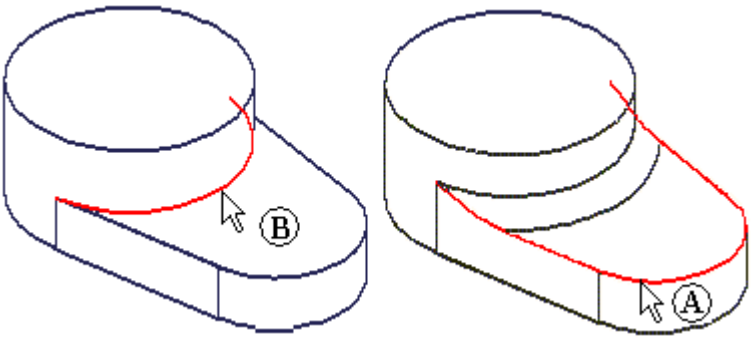
For example, if you construct a round feature by selecting edge (A), the ends of edge (B) modify when the first round applies.



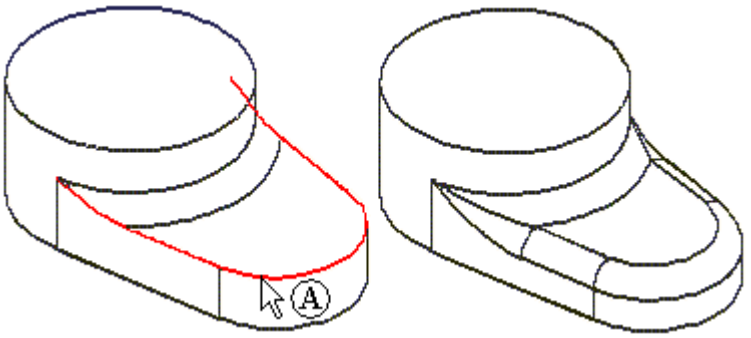
When you construct the second round feature by selecting edge (B), you get the following result.



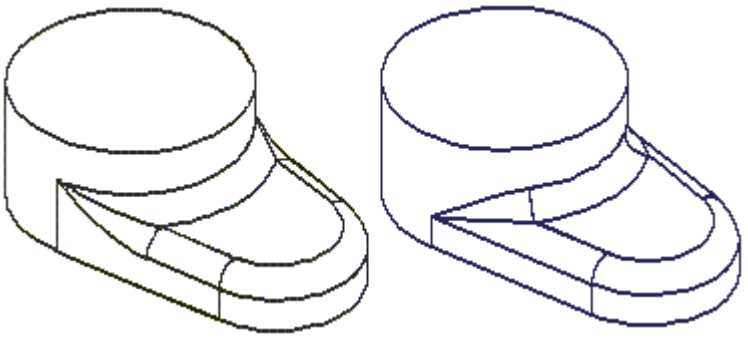
If you reverse the order of the two round features, and select edge (B) for the first round feature, the ends of edge (A) modify when the round applies.



When you construct the second round feature using edge (A), you get the following result.



If you then compare both results side-by-side, you can see that the surfaces where the two rounds meet are different.

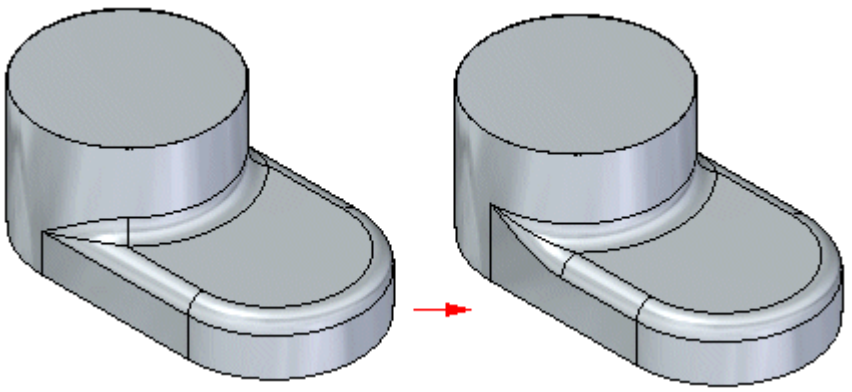


Although both results are valid, one solution may be easier to manufacture or be more aesthetically acceptable than the other. In these situations, you may want to experiment by applying the round features in a different order to determine which result is the most appropriate for your requirements.

Reordering rounds

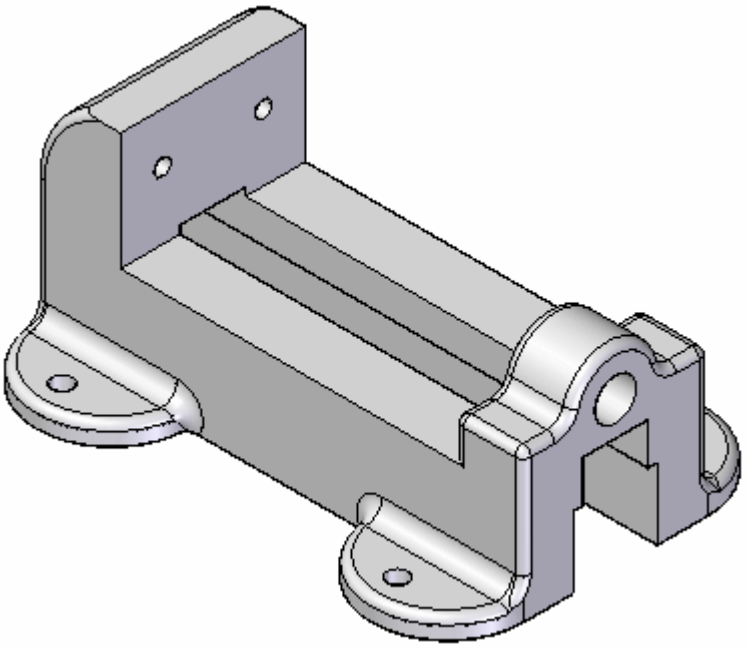
In synchronous modeling:

You can right-click a blend patch between intersecting blends and use the Reorder Rounds command on the shortcut menu to reorder rounds.



You can select multiple rounds and the radius for the rounds being reordered does not have to be the same.

Activity: Round edges

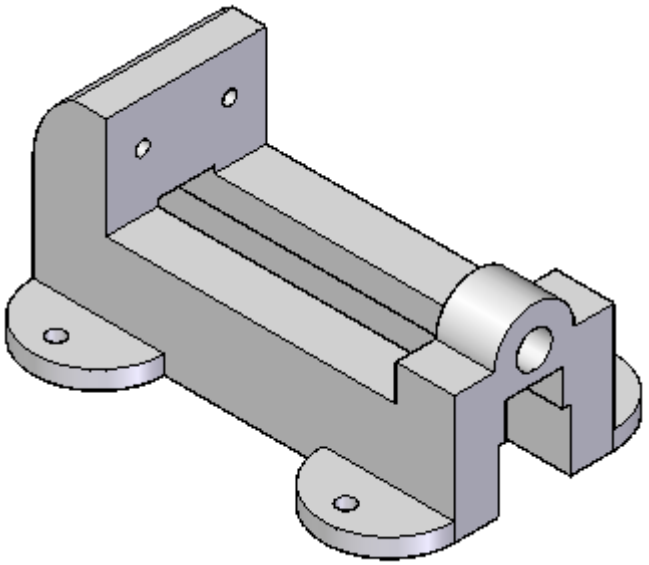


Overview

This activity demonstrates the process of placing rounds on edges of a model.

Activity: Round edges

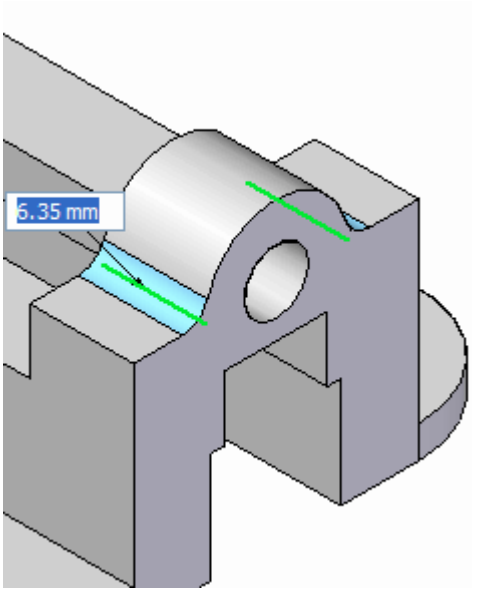
Open the vise base part file you previously created, or open the part *vise.par*.



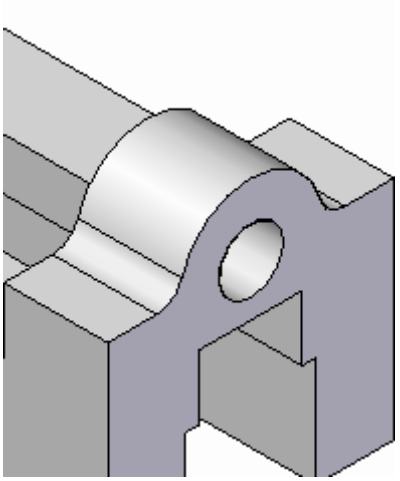
Round edges / corners

- On the Home tab ® Solids group, choose the Round command .
- In the Round command bar, in the Select box (A), click the Edge/Corner option.

- Select the edges shown. Type in a radius of 6.35 mm into the dynamic input box.



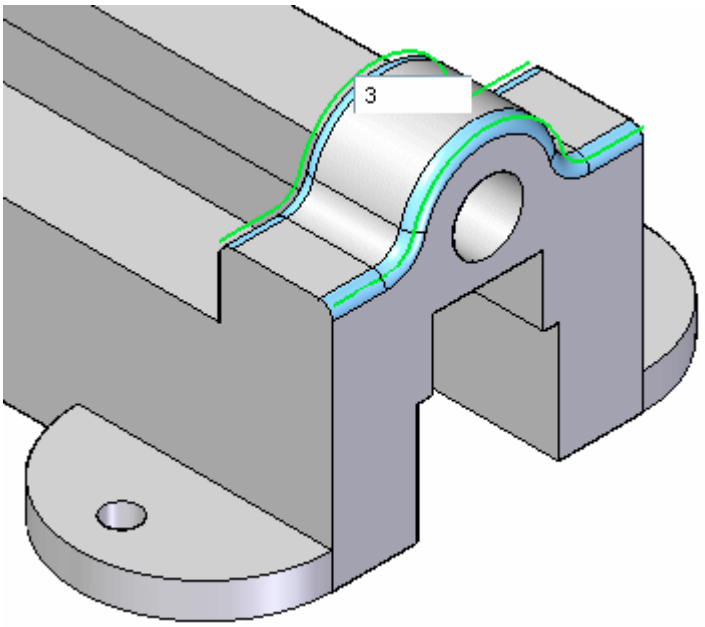
- Press the Enter key or right-click to apply.



Note that the Round command is still active. Do not exit the command.

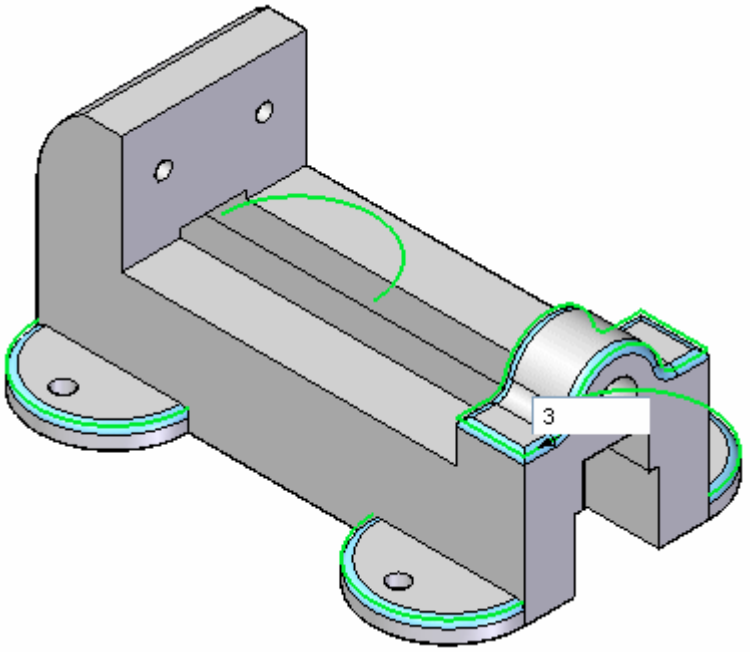
Round a chain of edges

- Select the Chain option from the command bar. Select the two edge chains shown. Type 3 mm for the radius and press the Tab key.



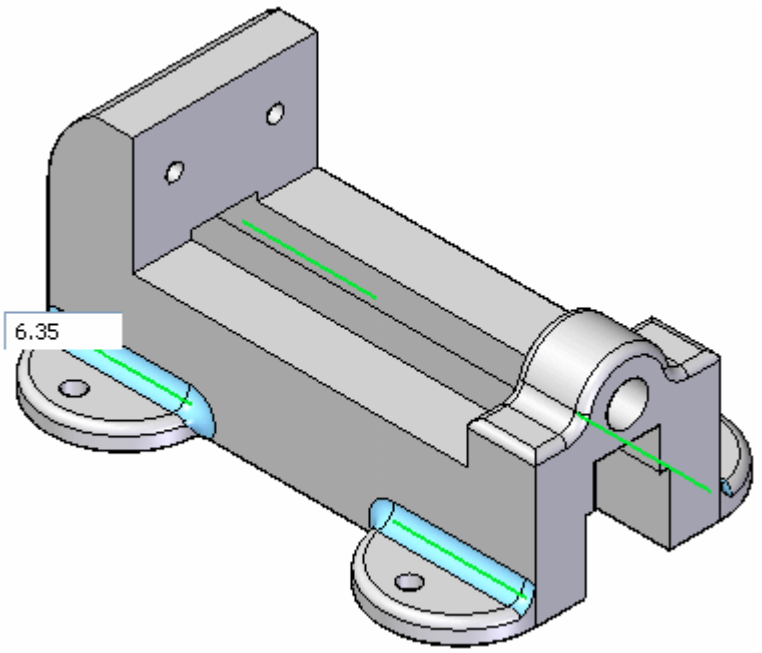
Continue with rounding

- Continue selecting the edges shown below making sure to select the symmetrical edges on the backside.

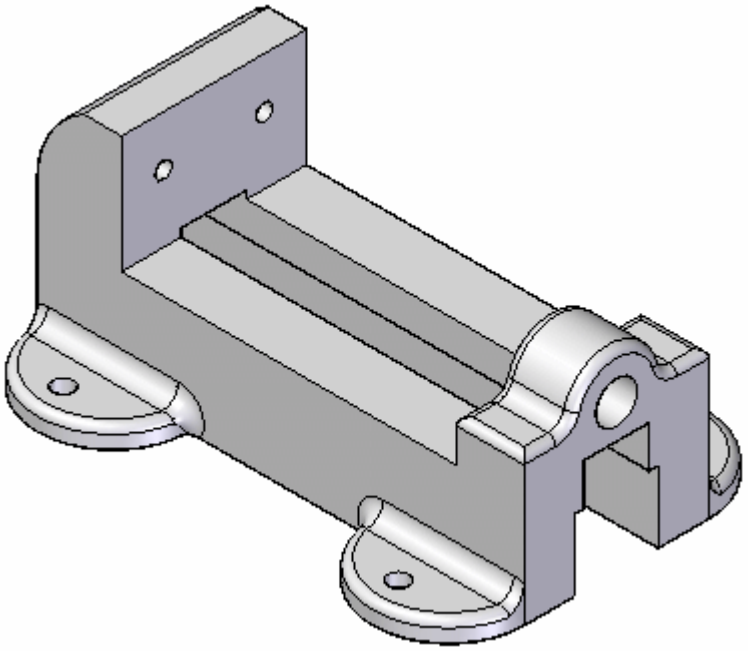


Press the Enter key or right-click.

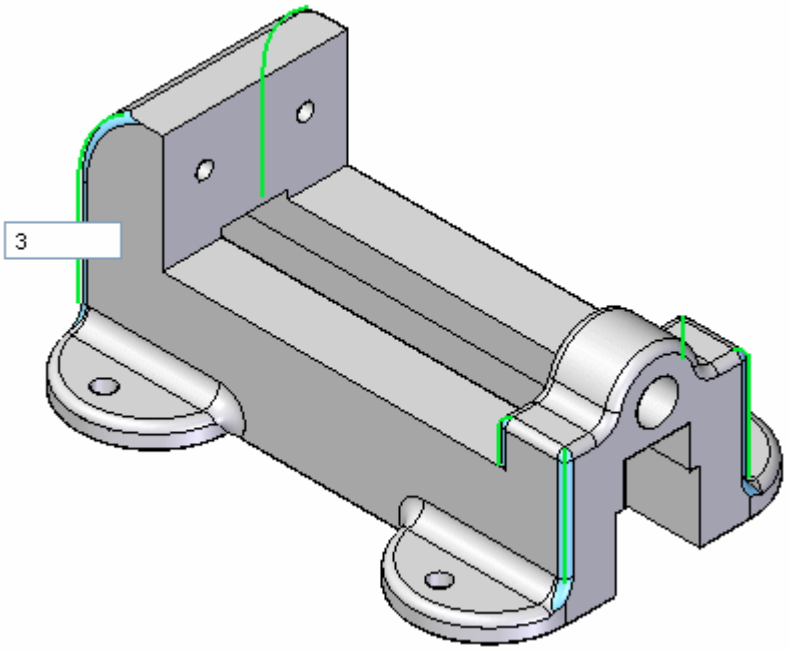
- The Round command is active. Change the Edge/Corner option and select the following edges. Type a radius of 6.35 mm.



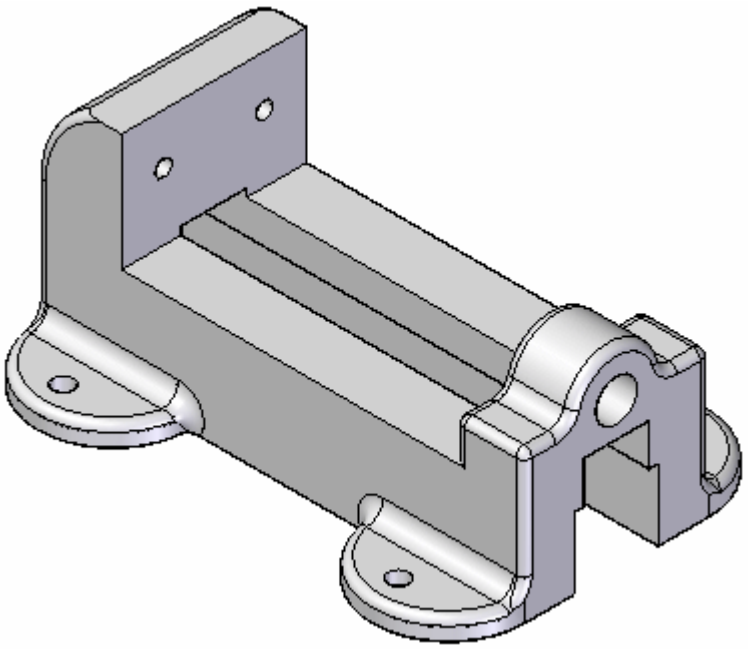
Press the Tab key.



- Finally, change to the Chain option. Select the edges shown and type a radius of 3 mm.



Ignore the caution symbol and press the Enter key to accept.



- Save and close the part file.

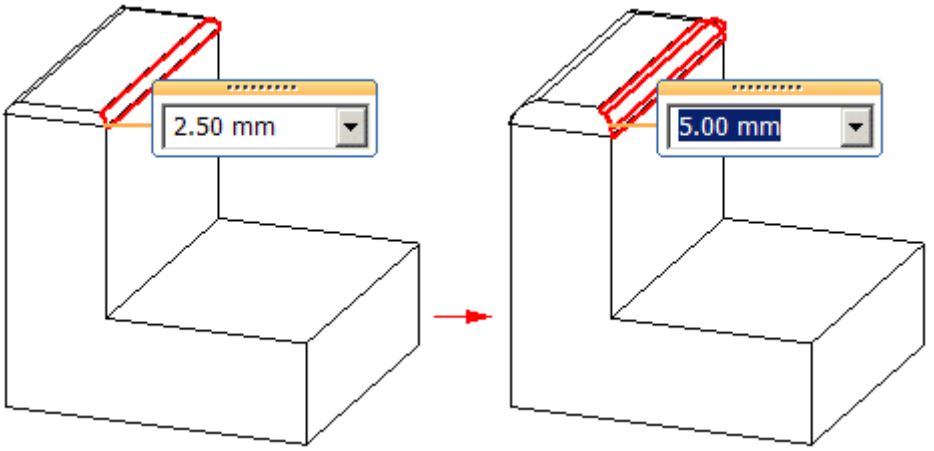
Summary

In this activity you placed rounds on edges of a 3D model. The round radius can be changed by selecting the round and changing the value in the dimension edit box.

Editing rounds

In synchronous modeling:

To edit a round radius, select the radius value and type a new value in the Edit Dimension Value dialog box.

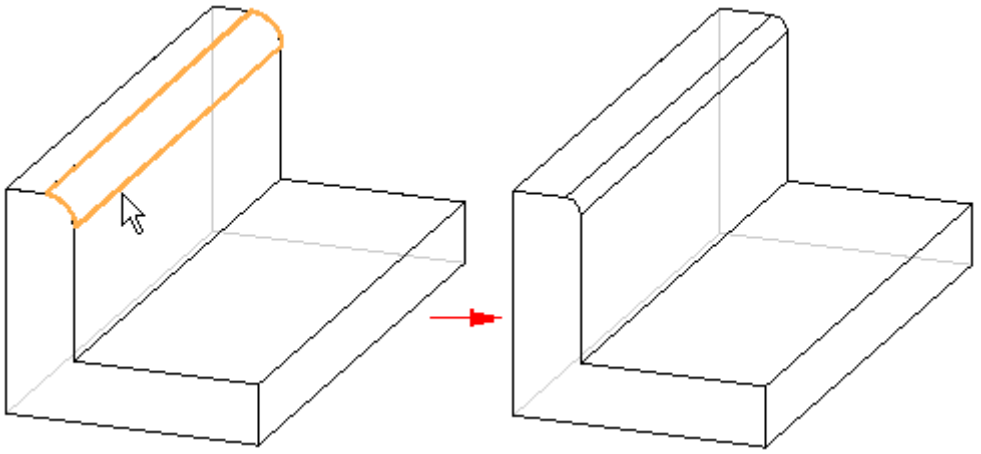


Note

You can also use the scroll wheel on the mouse to dynamically edit the radius value. The scroll behavior is controlled by the Solid Edge options® Helpers page option Enable Value Changes Using the Mouse Wheel. If the option is unchecked, use Crtl+mouse wheel to change the value. If the option is checked, use the mouse wheel to change the value.

In ordered modeling:

To edit a round radius, right-click the round, and then click Edit Definition. In the Radius field of the Select Step on the Round command bar, type a new value and click the Finish button.



Variable radius rounds

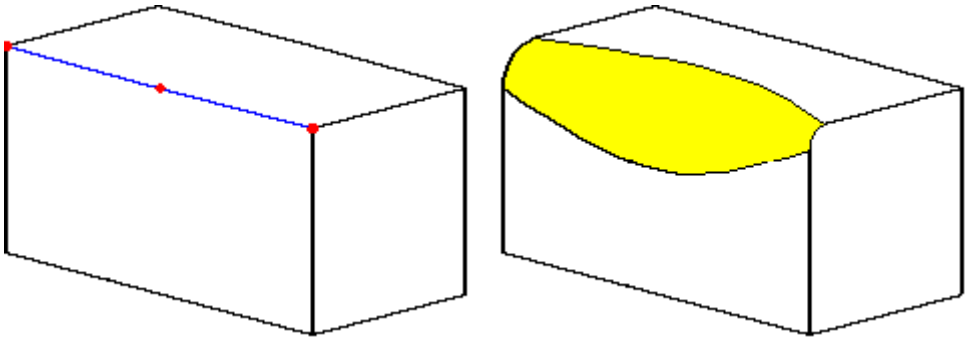
In ordered modeling:

When you construct variable-radius blends in Solid Edge, you can define different radius values at keypoints and intersection points along an edge or face.

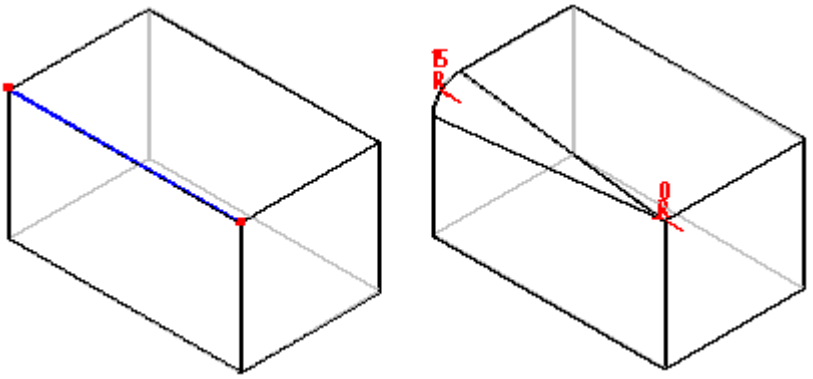
In synchronous modeling:

With the Blend command, you construct variable-radius blends in Solid Edge by defining different radius values at keypoints and intersection points along an edge or face.

The next illustration shows a round with different radius values at the two endpoints and midpoint of an edge.



You can use a radius value of zero when creating variable radius blends. The round below has a radius of 15 mm at one end and zero at the other.



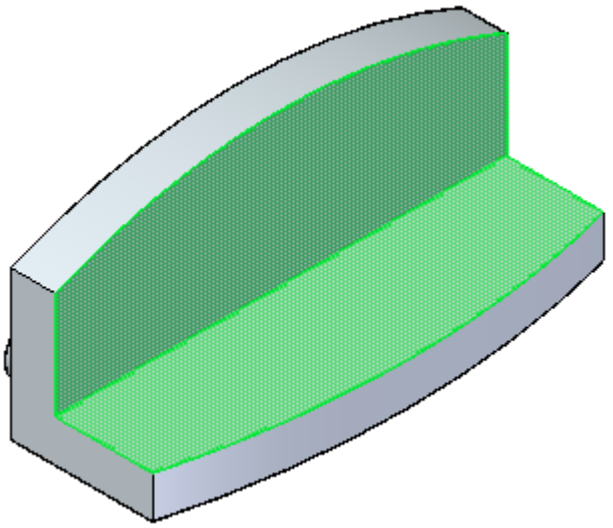
Blend workflow

Step 1: On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Blend command .

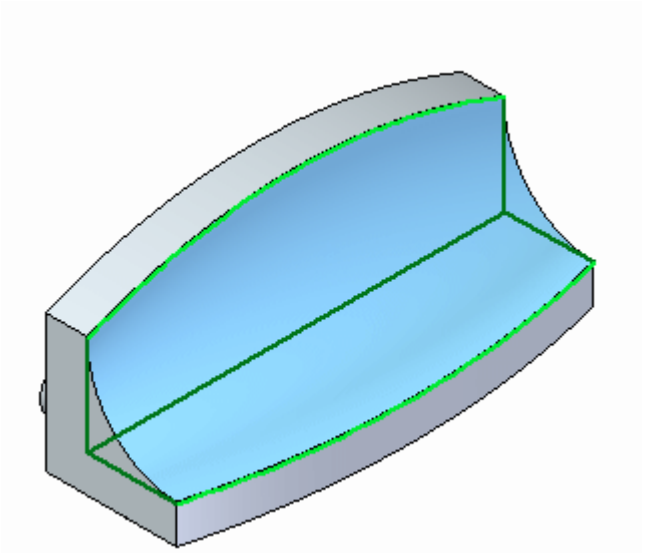
Step 2: When placing a blend, you must first define the type. On command bar, select variable radius, blend, or a surface blend.

Step 3: If the type is blend, on command bar, in the Select Step, select the Shape (constant radius, constant width, chamfer, bevel, conic, curvature continuous).

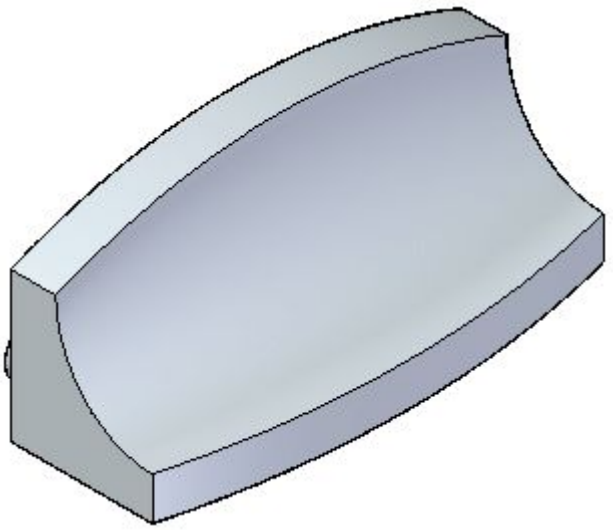
Step 4: Select the elements to create a blend between and type a radius on command bar.



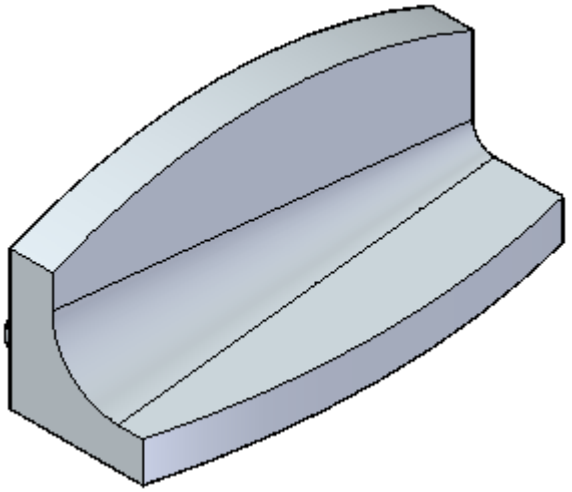
Step 5: Define an overflow condition and select the edges needed to define the overflow.



Step 6: Select Finish on command bar to complete the blend. Press the Esc key to end the command.



Activity: Blend between faces



Overview

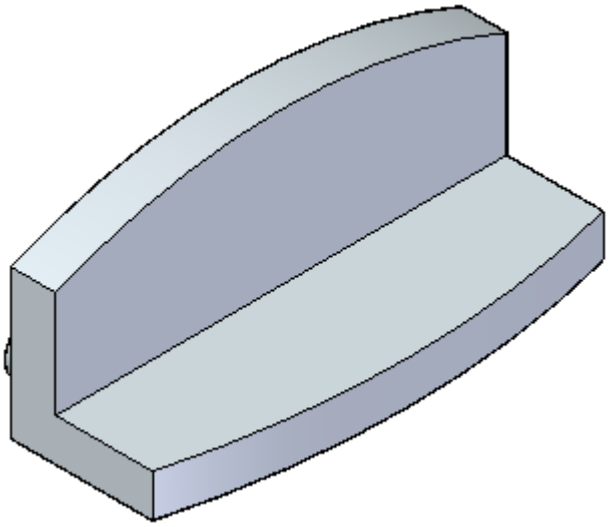
This activity demonstrates the process of placing blends between faces of a model.

Objectives

Learn how to define constant and variable radius blends, as well as how to use a tangent hold line.

Activity: Blend between faces

Open the part file *blends.par*. Place a blend on the inside of the support bracket.

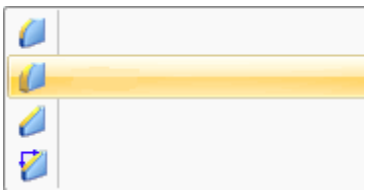


Placing a blend

- On the Home tab ® Solids group, choose the Blend command.

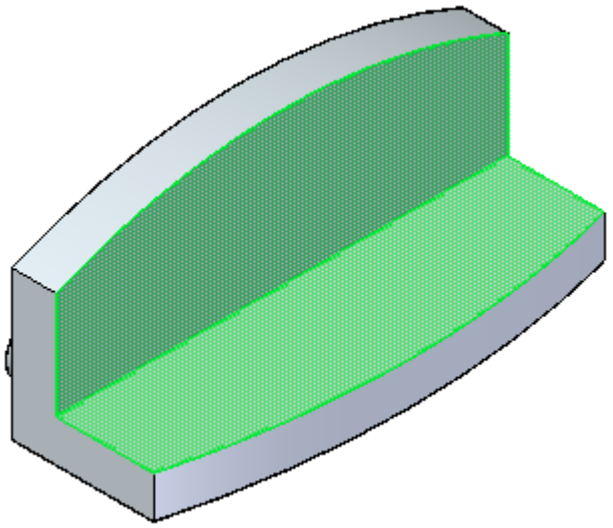
  Note

  The Blend command is found on the list headed by Round.

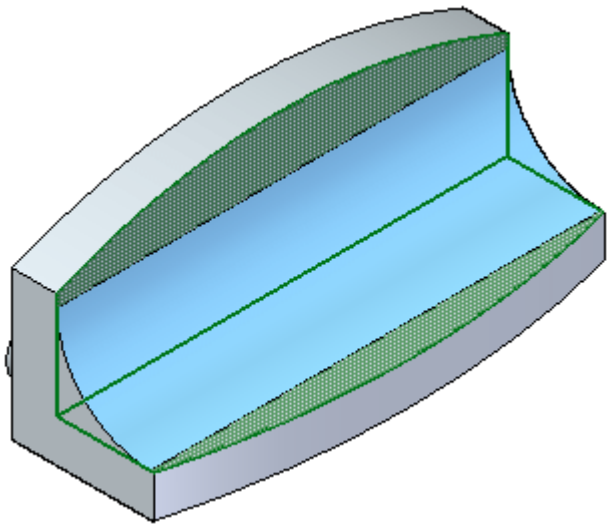
  

- On command bar, in the Blend Type step, select the Blend option.

- On the Select Step, select the two faces shown.

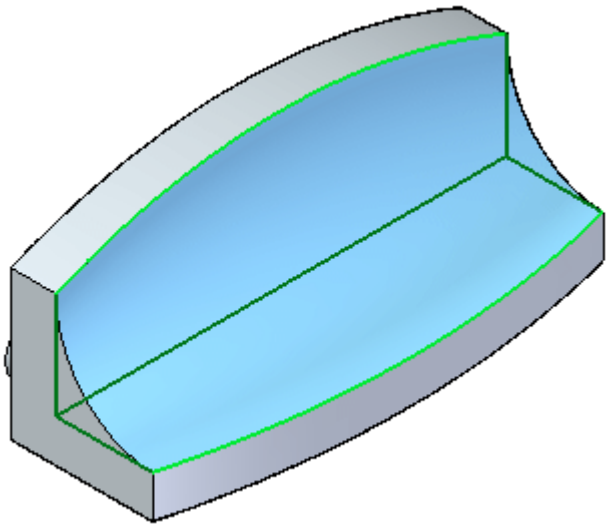


- For the Shape, keep the default Constant radius and type a radius of 40 mm. Click the Accept button.

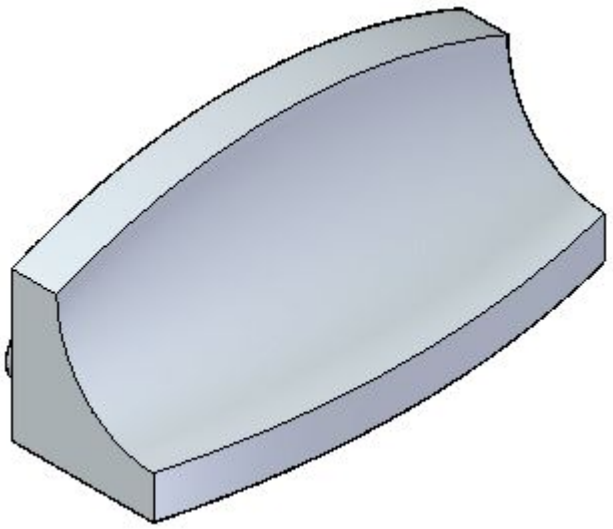


- On the Overflow Step on command bar, select the Tangent Hold Line option . Select the Full Radius option .

- You are prompted to click on an edge chain representing the tangent hold line. Select the two curved edges.



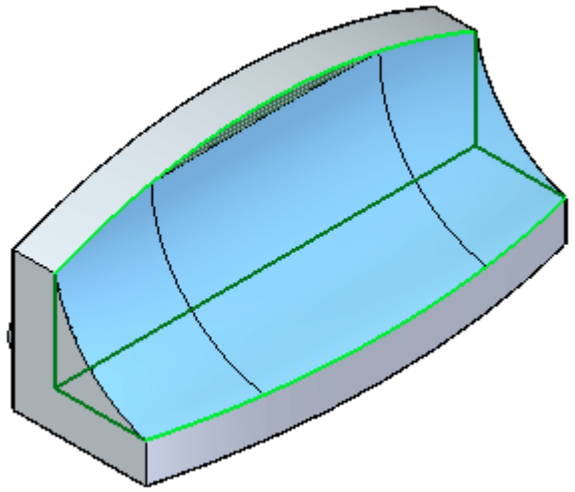
- Click Accept and then click Finish.



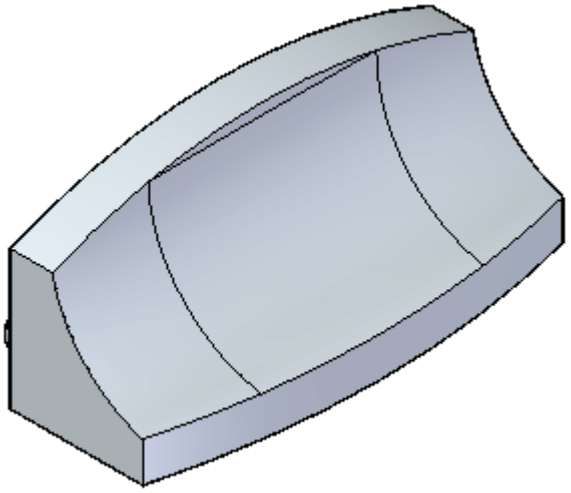
Investigate other blend options

- To see how the other Blend options work, undo the previous operation. Choose the Blend command again. Select Blend and then Constant Radius for the Select step. Select the same two faces as before. Type 60 mm for the radius and click the Accept button. This time on the Overflow step, select the Roll Along/Across option .

- Select the two curved edges as the edge chains. The preview appears.



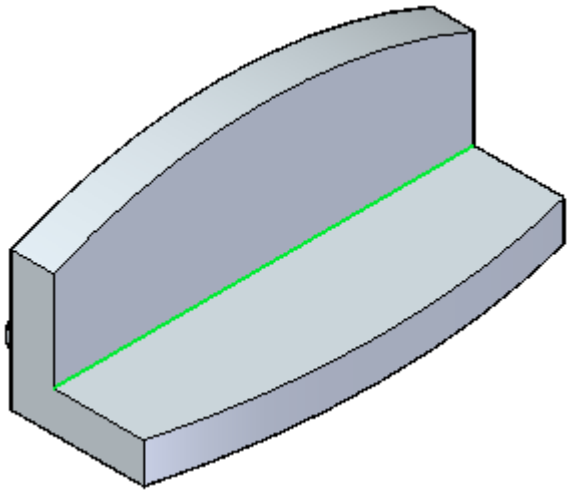
- Click Accept and then click Finish.



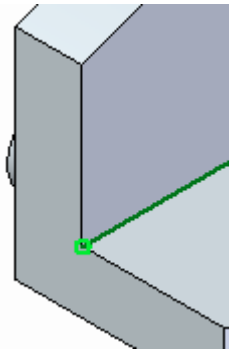
Place a variable radius blend

- Undo the previous blend operation. Choose the Blend command again. In the Blend Type step, select the Variable radius option.

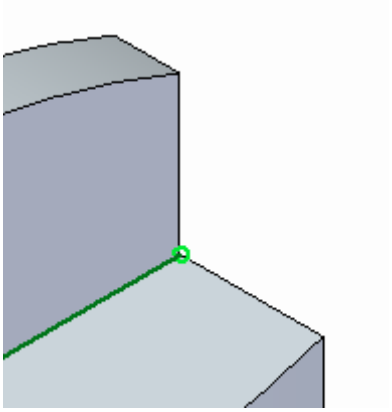
- In the Select step, select and Accept the interior edge.



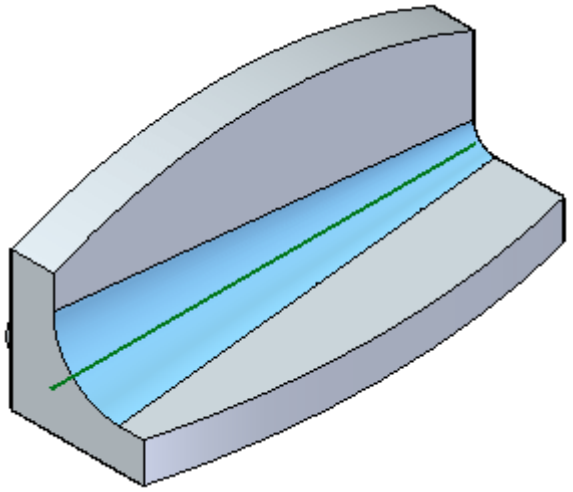
- The Select Vertices step prompts you to select the end points. Move cursor to the edge location shown and click when the endpoint highlights. Type 30 mm and Accept for the left-side radius.



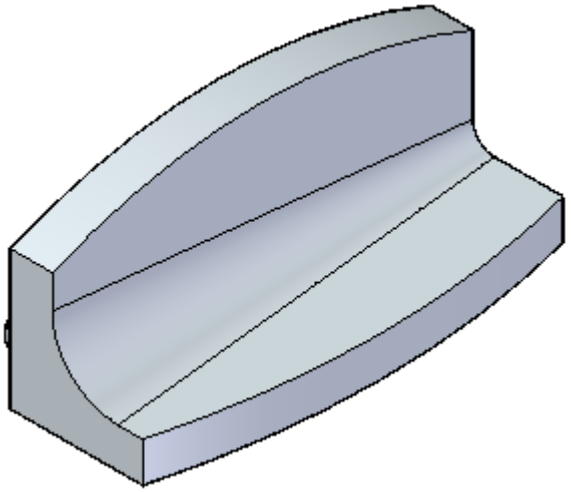
- Move cursor TO the end of edge shown and click when the endpoint highlights. On command bar, type 10 mm for the right-side then click Accept.



The blend preview appears.



- Click Finish.



- Save and close the part file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to place a blend between two surfaces. There are a few options available for placing a blend. Experiment with these options.

Defining the blend shape

Modeling ordered features:

When you set the Blend or Surface Blend options on the Round Options dialog box, you can use the Shape option on the Blend command bar to specify the blend shapes shown below.

Modeling synchronous features:

When you set the Blend or Surface Blend options on the Blend Type Step of the Blend command bar, you can use the Shape option on the Select Step of the Blend command bar to specify the blend shapes shown below.

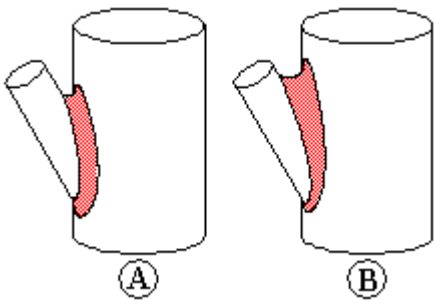
Blend shapes

- Constant Radius
- Constant Width
- Chamfer
- Bevel
- Conic
- Curvature Continuous

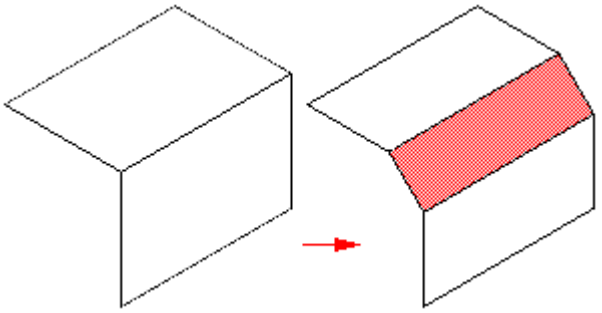
These options give you the flexibility you need for a wide variety of design situations. For example, you can use the Chamfer command to create a chamfer on a solid body, but not on a surface body. To create a chamfer on a surface body, you must use the blending options within the Round command.

The Constant Radius option constructs a blend with a uniform radius. This option works in a similar fashion to rounding.

The Constant Width option constructs a blend between two sets of surfaces where the chord width of the blend is a constant width (A). This option is useful when a surface intersects another surface at an angle where a constant radius blend (B) might add too much or too little material.

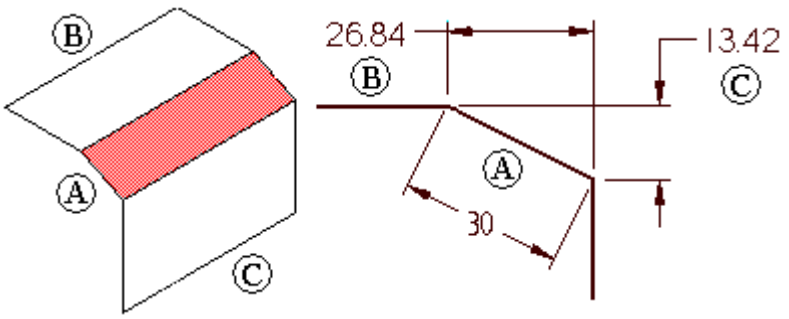


The Chamfer option constructs a planar blend with an equal setback chamfer. You can use the Setback option to define the chamfer size.

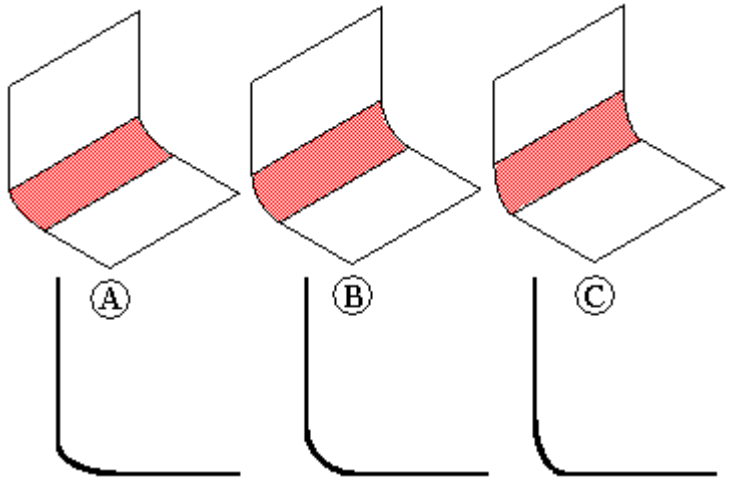


The Bevel option constructs a blend with a linear cross section that is determined by the bevel length and ratio you specify. The value you enter in the Setback box determines the length of the new blend face (A). The value you enter in the Value box determines what amount of material to remove from the two adjacent faces (B), (C).

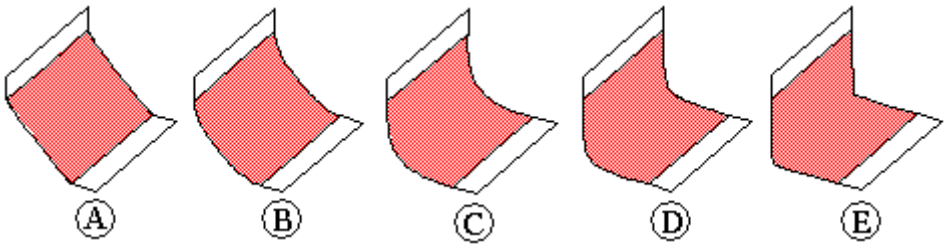
For example, if you specify a Setback of 30 mm and a Value entry of 0.50, a new blend face that is 30 mm in length is constructed. The Value entry of 0.50 specifies that to position the new blend face (A), twice as much material is removed from the first face you select (B), than the second face you select (C). In the case of two planar faces, which are also perpendicular to each other, 26.84 mm is removed from face (B) and 13.42 mm is removed from face (C). You can type a value that is greater than zero, but less than or equal to 10.0. A Value entry of 1.0 creates a 45 degree bevel.



The Conic option constructs a constant elliptical cross section blend. When you set this option, the Radius value defines the width of the cross section and the Value entry you type changes the cross section shape. You can type a Value entry that is greater than but not equal to zero. As the Value entry approaches 0.0, the cross section becomes flatter and more closely resembles a chamfer (A). As the Value entry increases, the cross section becomes more rounded (B) and then becomes flatter again (C).



You can use the Curvature Continuous blend option to control the continuity, or softness, of the blend surface. A Value entry less than 1.0 creates a flatter, more chamfer-like cross-section (A) and (B). A Value entry greater than 1.0 appears to extend the selected surfaces and creates a smaller blend radius (C), (D), and (E). Typical values can range from 0.0 to 10.0.



Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. Name the six available blend shapes.

2. When editing the radius of a round produced in ordered modeling, what step must you take before entering a new radius value?

Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. Name the six available blend shapes.

   Constant radius, constant width, chamfer, bevel, conic, and curvature continuous.

2. When editing the radius of a round produced in ordered modeling, what step must you take before entering a new radius value?

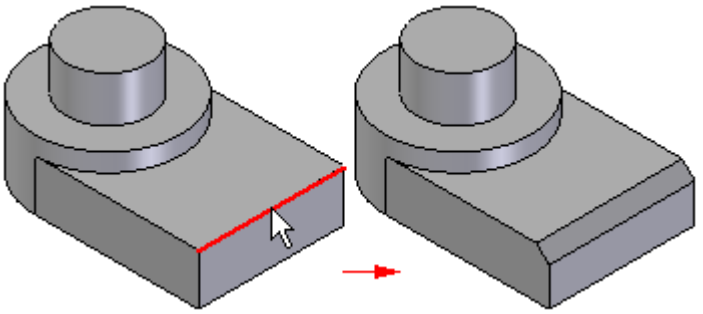
   You must right-click the round and select Edit Definition.

Chamfer command

Constructs a chamfer between two faces along their common edge.

Chamfer Command (Feature)

Constructs a chamfer between two faces along their common edge. Typically, you should construct chamfer features as the model nears completion. On most parts, you should not include small chamfers when drawing the profile for profile-based features. This allows you to add the chamfers later as treatment features, which makes changes faster and easier.



Chamfer Construction Methods

You can use the Chamfer Options dialog box to specify the chamfer construction method you want to use:

- Equal Setbacks
- Angle and Setback
- 2 Setbacks

Chamfer Feature Workflow

When you select the Chamfer command, the command bar guides you through the following steps:

Step 1: Face Selection Step—Defines the faces from which you want to measure the setbacks or chamfer angle. This step is available only when you set the Angle and Setback or the 2 Setbacks options on the Chamfer Options dialog box.

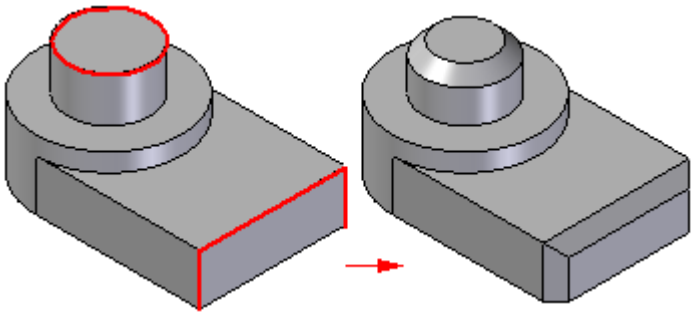
Step 2: Edge Selection Step—Defines the edges you want to chamfer.

Step 3: Preview Step—Processes the input and displays the feature.

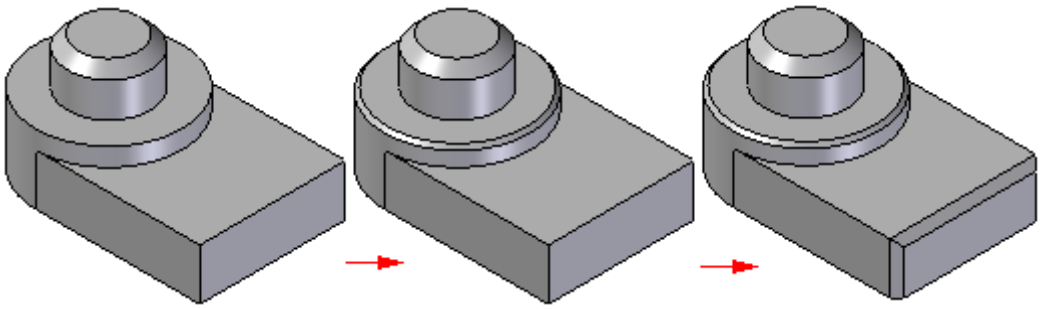
Step 4: Finish Step—Finishes the feature.

Equal Setback Chamfers

When you construct Equal Setback chamfer features, you only need to select the edges you want to chamfer. You can chamfer multiple edges in one operation if they have the same setback value. When constructing chamfers where the setback value is the same, it is usually better to chamfer as many edges as possible in one operation.

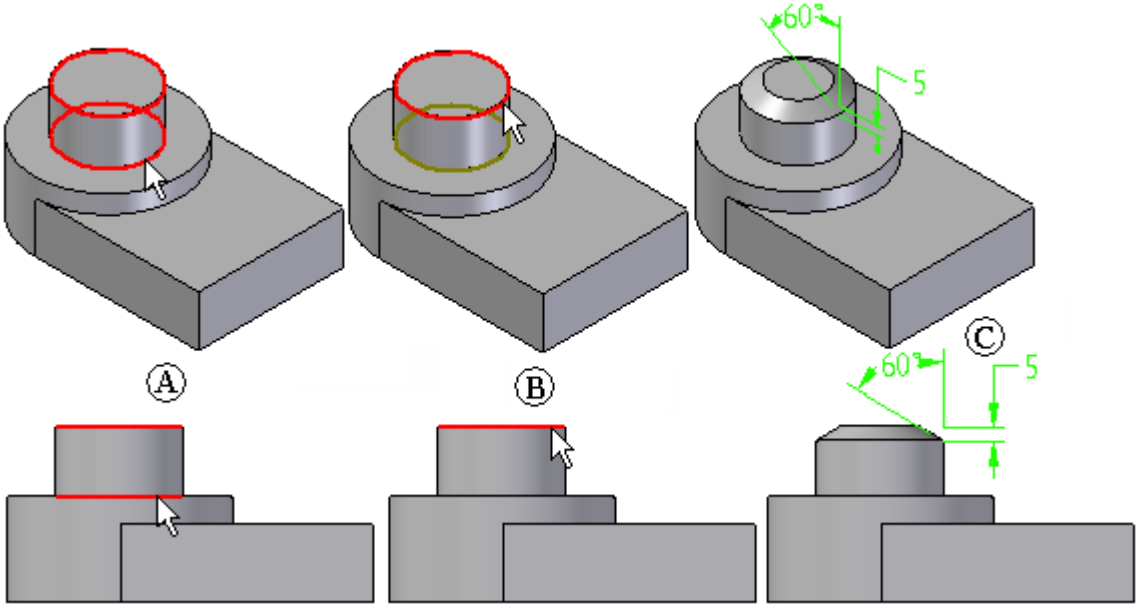


If you want to apply different setback values to different edges, you must construct separate chamfer features for each chamfer size.



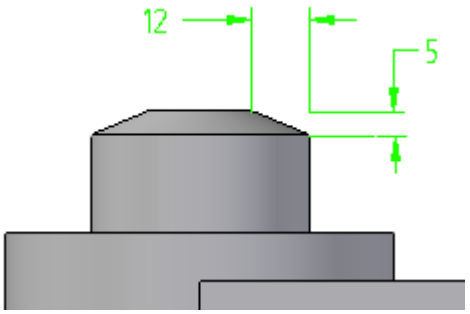
Angle and Setback Chamfers

When constructing a chamfer feature using the Angle and Setback option, you first select a face (A), then select the edges to chamfer (B). The value you type in the Setback box on the command bar applies along the selected face and measures from the selected edge. For example, a 5 millimeter setback and 60 degree angle chamfer applies as shown (C).



Two Setback Chamfers

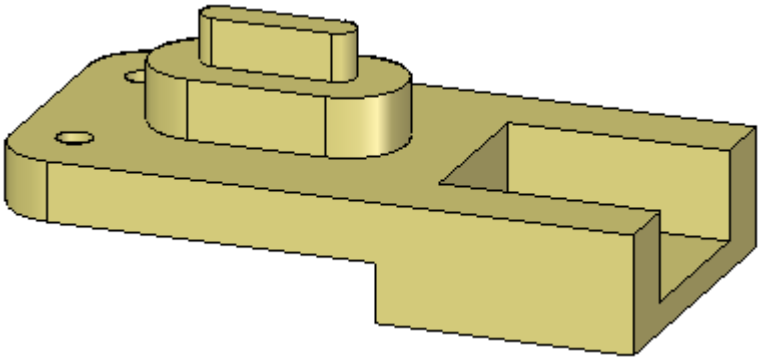
When constructing a chamfer using the 2 Setbacks option, you select a face first. The value you type in the Setback 1 box applies to the face you select, and the value you type in the Setback 2 box applies to the adjacent face. As in the earlier example, if you select the cylindrical face and the circular edge at the top of the part, and then specified a Setback 1 value of 5 millimeters, and a Setback 2 value of 12 millimeters, the 5 millimeter value applies along the cylindrical face, and the 12 millimeter value applies along the planar face on the top of the part.



Chamfers in Assemblies

When working in an assembly, you can use this command to construct an assembly feature.

Activity: Creating chamfer features



Overview

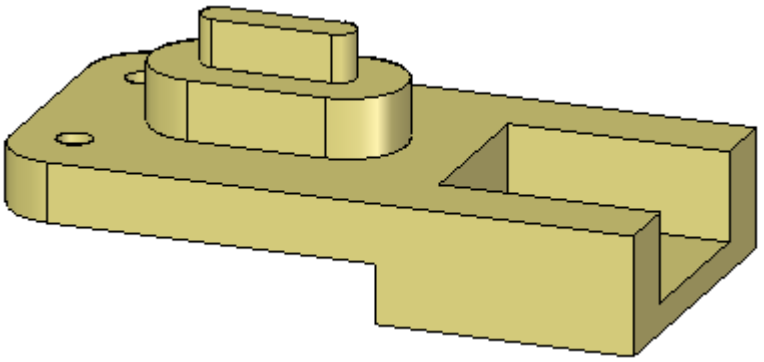
This activity demonstrates the process of creating a chamfer feature.

Objectives

Learn how to use the two commands to create chamfer features. One command creates a chamfer feature which only creates faces to define the chamfer. The chamfer definition does not maintain during model edits. The other command creates a procedural chamfer feature which can be edited and maintains the chamfer definition during a model edits.

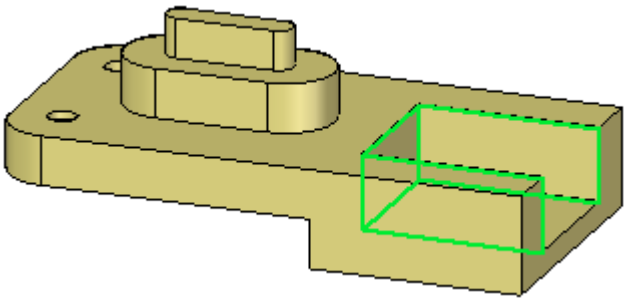
Activity: Create chamfer features

Open the part file *chamfer.par*.

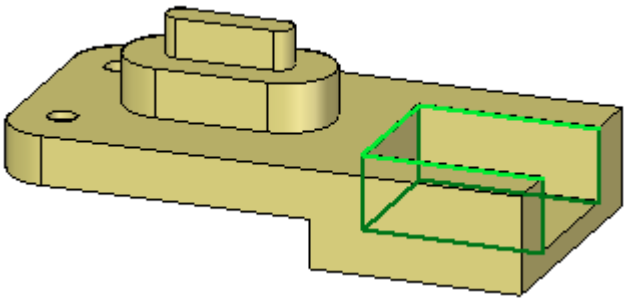


Create a chamfer with unequal setbacks

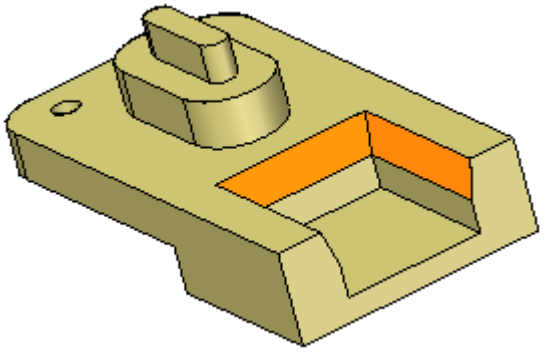
- On the Solids group, in the Round list, choose the Chamfer Unequal Setbacks command .
- On command bar, click the Options button.
- The default setting is Angle and setback. Use this option. Click OK.
- Select the three faces shown and click the Accept button on command bar.



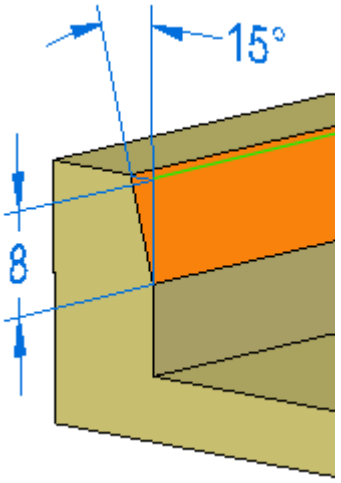
- On command bar, type 8 in the Setback field and press Tab. Type 15 in the Angle field. Select the three edges shown.



- Click the Accept button. The chamfer feature (shown in orange for clarity) places but the command is still active. Do not click Finish.



The setback distance 8 is measured off the edge selected. The angle 15° is measured from the setback distance inward to the selected face.

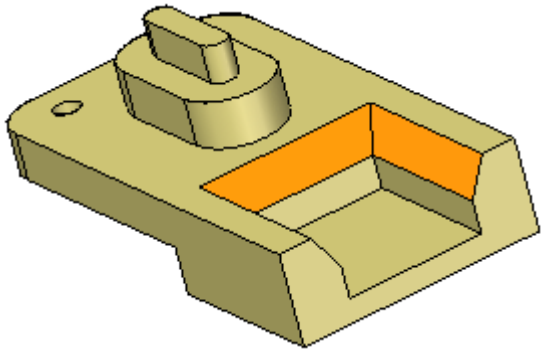


Change the chamfer definition

- Once you click the Finish button, no changes can be made to the chamfer feature.

  Change the setback angle. On command bar, click the Select Edge step .

- Change the angle to 30 and click the Accept button. Click Finish to end the command.

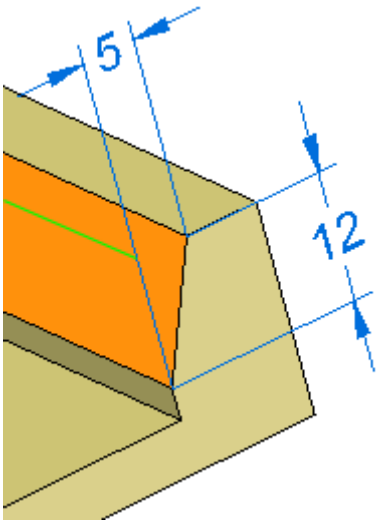


If you select one of the chamfer faces for a model edit, it does not know about the other chamfer faces. It uses the live rules settings.

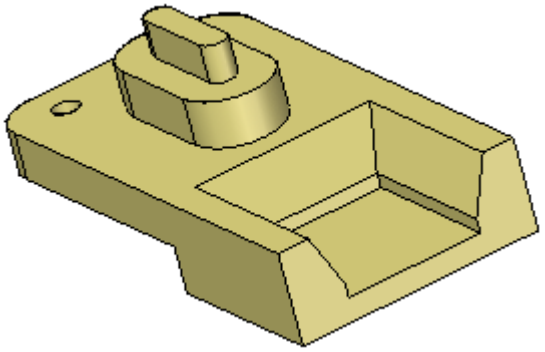
Create another chamfer with unequal setbacks

- In PathFinder, delete the chamfer feature placed in the previous step.
- Choose the Chamfer Unequal Setbacks command.
- On command bar, click the Options button. Click the 2 Setbacks option and click OK.
- Select the same three faces and three edges as in the previous step. Type 12 for the first setback and 5 for the second setback.

  Setback 1 is measured from the selected edge on the selected face. Setback 2 is measured from the selected edge normal to the selected face.

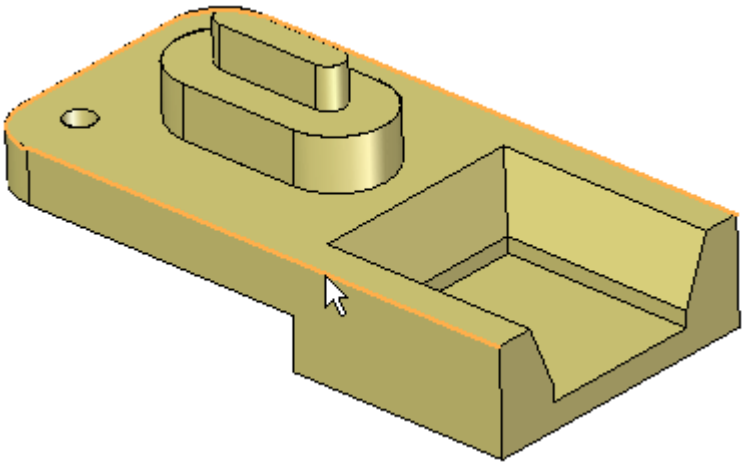


- Click Accept and then click Finish.

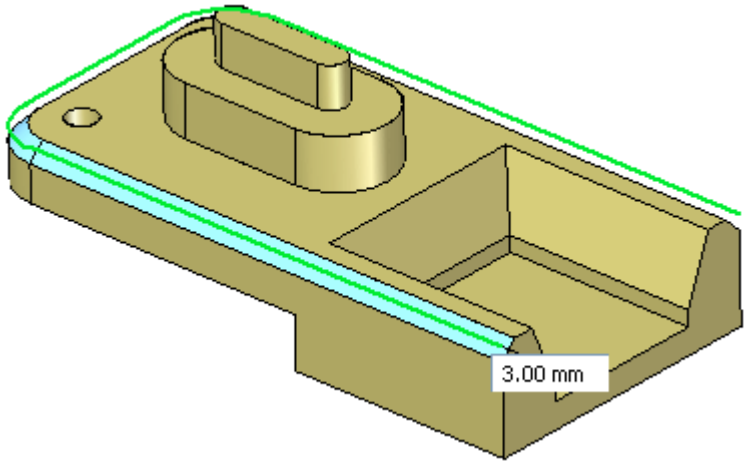


Create chamfers with equal setbacks

- Choose the Chamfer Equal Setbacks command .
- Select the edge shown.

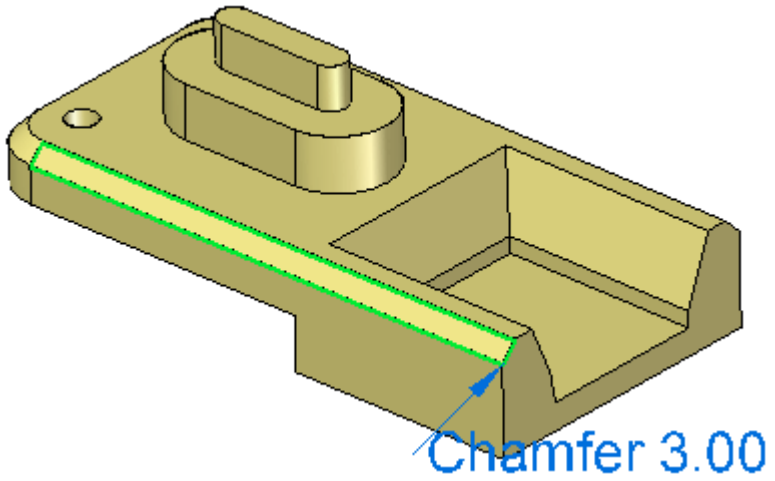


- In the dynamic edit box, type 3 and press the Enter key.



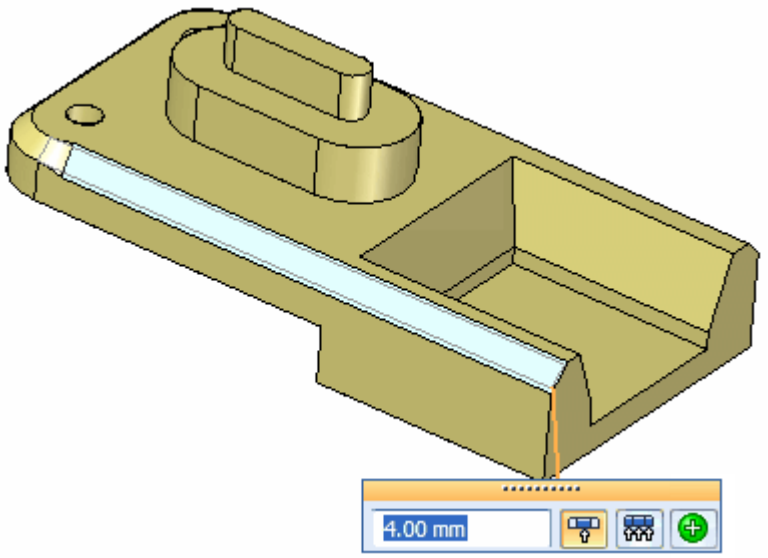
Edit the chamfer feature

- Edit the chamfer feature by either selecting a chamfer face or by selecting the chamfer feature in PathFinder. Select a face on the chamfer.



- Notice the chamfer edit handle text. Click the text to make an edit. Type 4 in the dynamic edit box; select the *Selected Faces Only* option on the box.

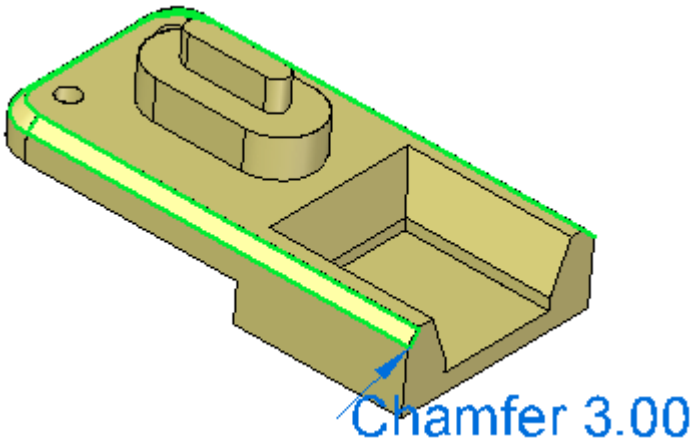
Only the selected chamfer face is edited. The remainder of faces on the chamfer feature maintain their original value.



Choose the Undo command to return to the original value.

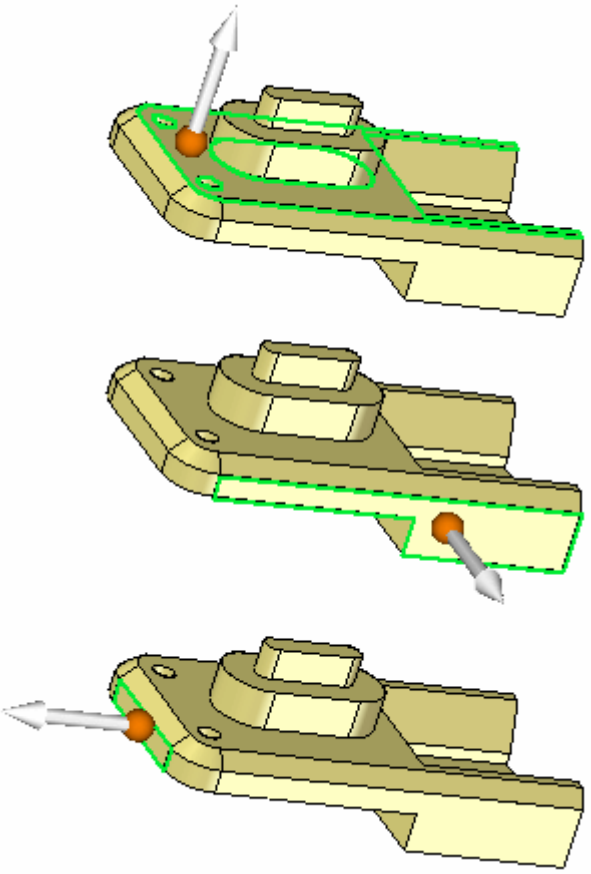
- To change the setback value of all the faces in the chamfer feature, select the chamfer feature in PathFinder, choose the *All Feature Faces* option.

Change the value to 4. Exit the command.



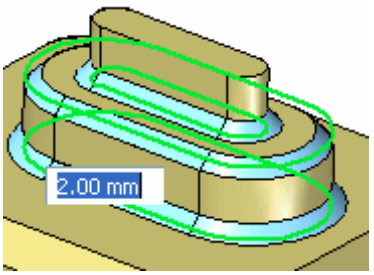
Make a model edit to observe chamfer behavior

- Select a face shown and move the face to observe how the chamfer feature stays attached. Do not make any changes. Right-click or press the Esc key to return without any changes.

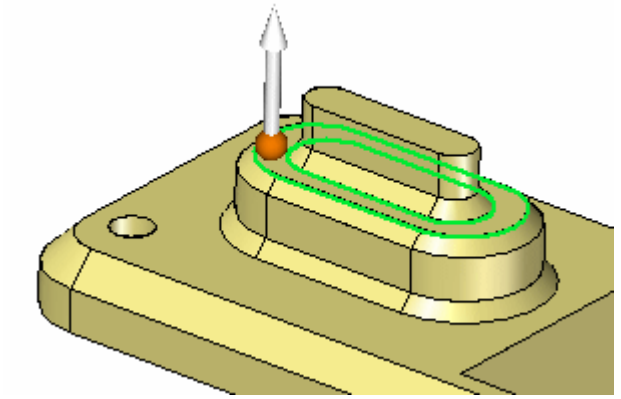


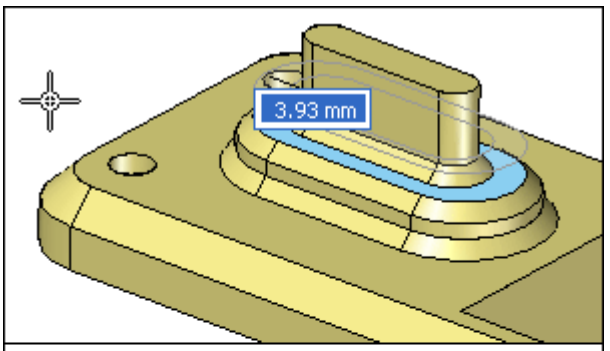
Place another set of chamfers

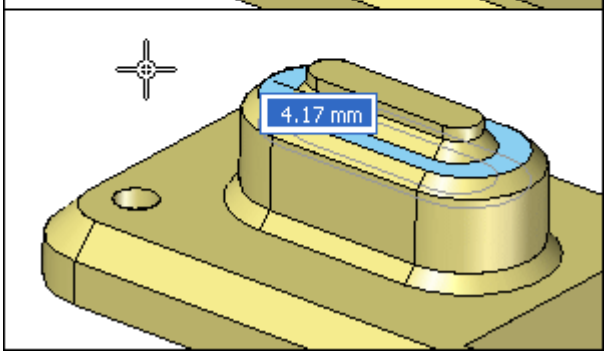
- Choose the Chamfer Equal Setbacks command.
- Select the three edge chains as shown and type 2 in the dynamic edit box. End the command.



- Observe how the chamfers stay attached as the face they are connected to moves. Select the face shown and move above and below original position. Do not make any changes.







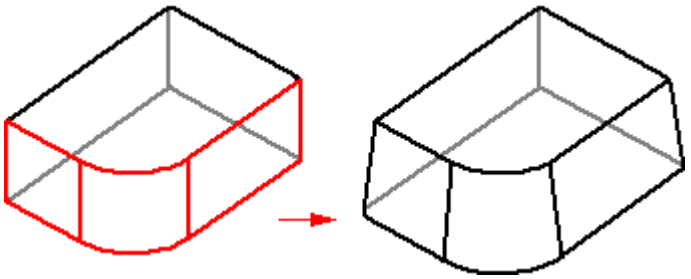
This completes the activity. Close the file and do not save.

Summary

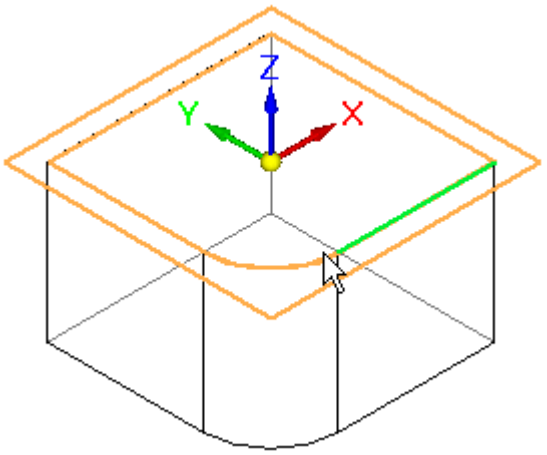
In this activity you learned how to create two types of chamfer features. One type maintains its chamfer definition during a model edit and the other does not. Once you understand the behavior of the chamfer command, you will be able to apply any type of chamfer required in the design a model.

Adding draft to parts

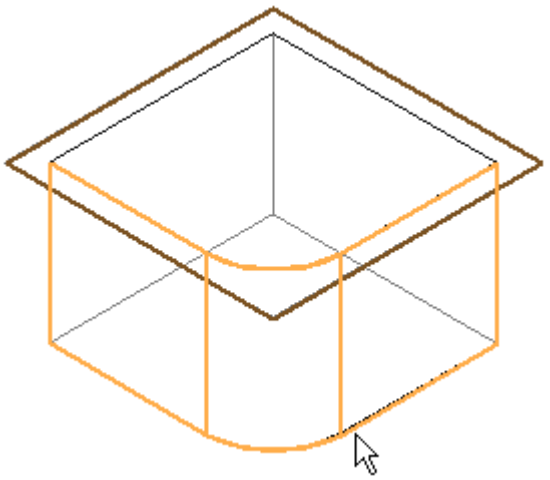
Use the Add Draft command to add draft angles to one or more part faces.



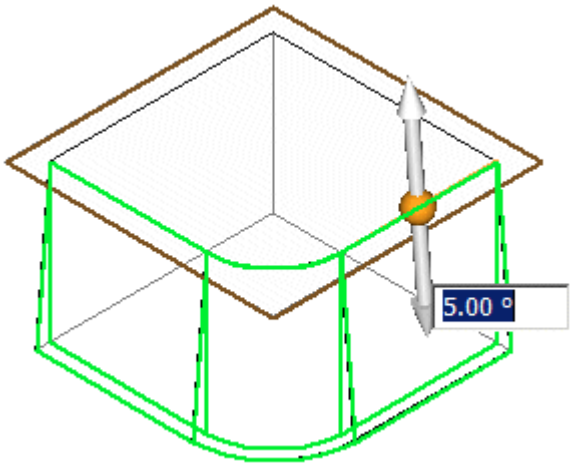
To construct a simple draft feature in the synchronous environment, you first define a draft plane:



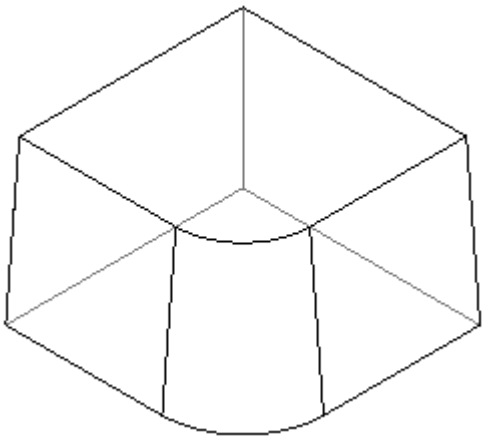
Then select the faces to draft:



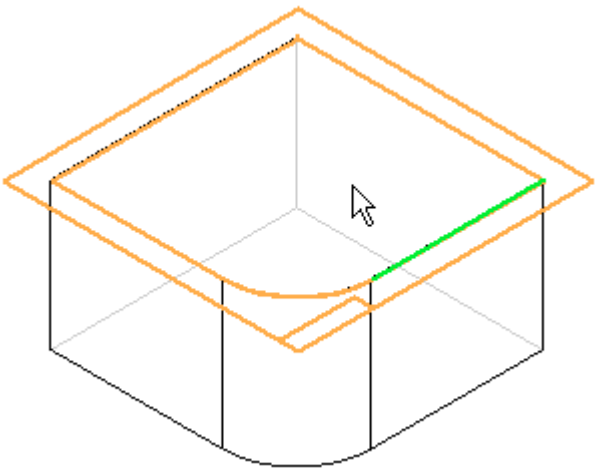
The part dynamically updates to reflect the draft angle and direction.



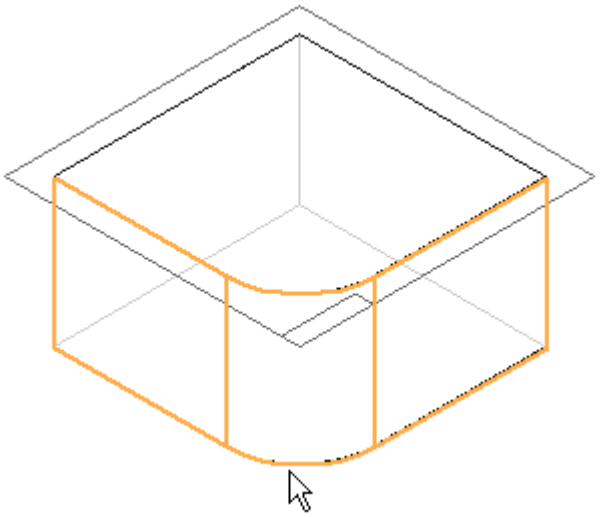
Right-click to apply the draft angle to the model.



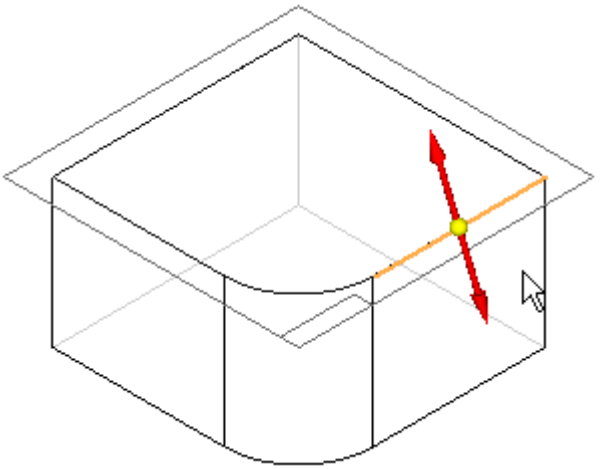
To construct a simple draft feature in the ordered environment, you first define a draft plane:



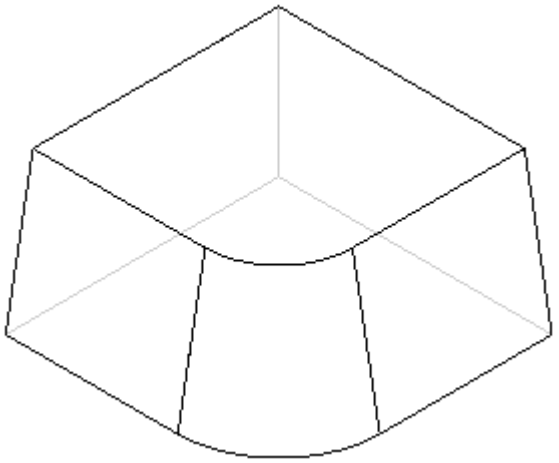
Then select the faces to draft and type the draft angle on command bar:



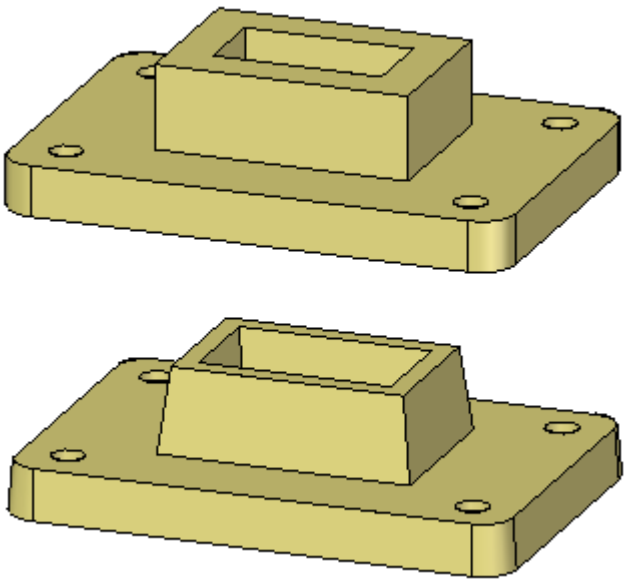
On command bar, click Next to specify the draft direction:



And click the right mouse button to apply the draft angle to the model.



Activity: Add draft to model faces



Overview

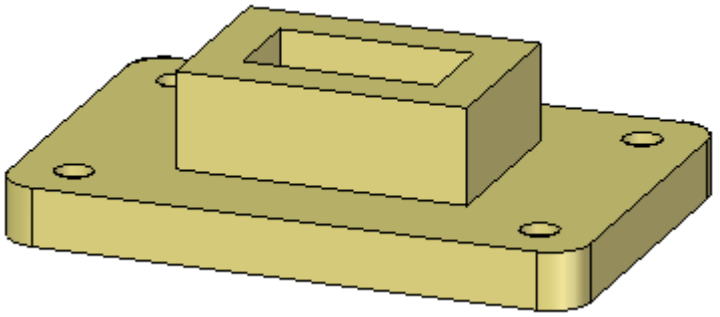
This activity demonstrates the process of drafting faces of a model.

Objectives

Learn how to draft faces and how to edit existing draft features.

Activity: Add draft to model faces

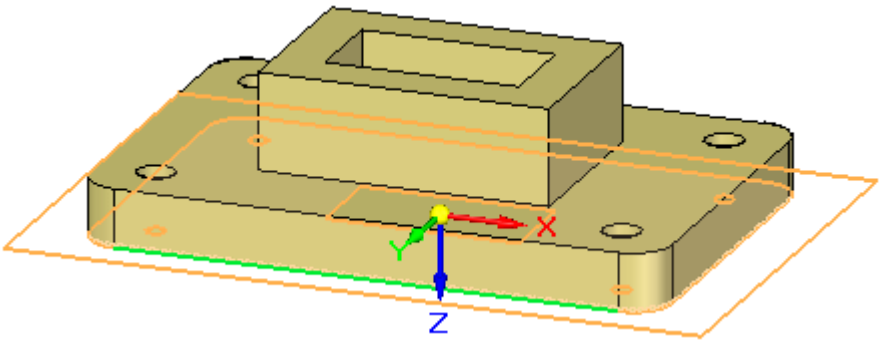
Open the part file *draft.par*.



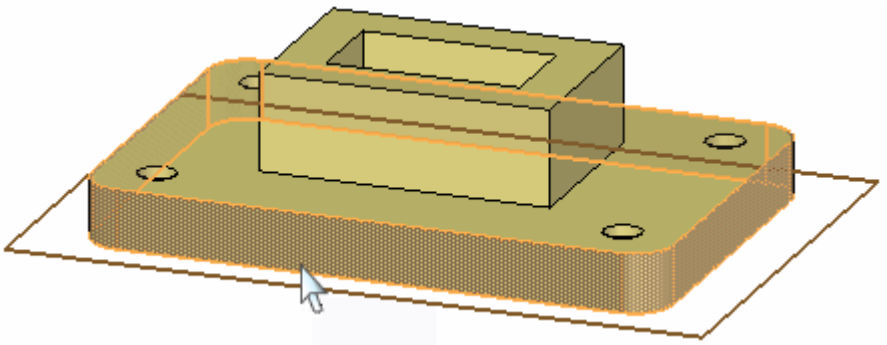
Add 5° draft to the chain of vertical faces on the base plate, outside faces on the boss and faces on the cutout.

Add draft to the base plate

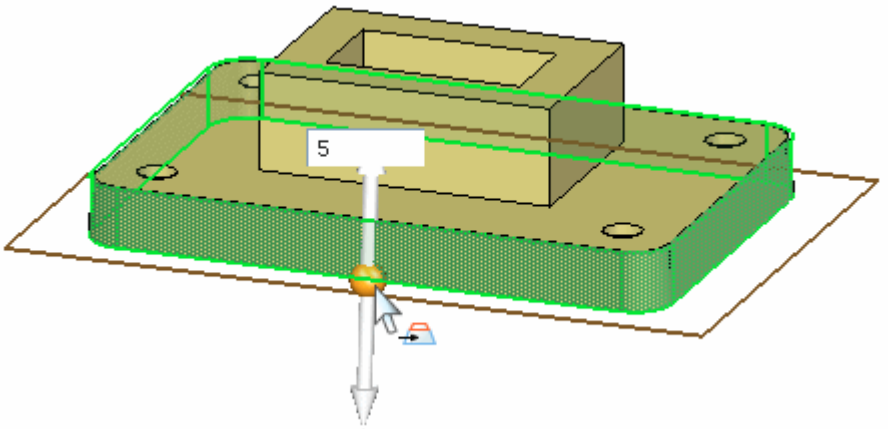
- On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Draft command .
- Select the bottom face of the base plate as the draft plane. The draft angle pivots at the draft plane.



- Select the chain of faces as shown.

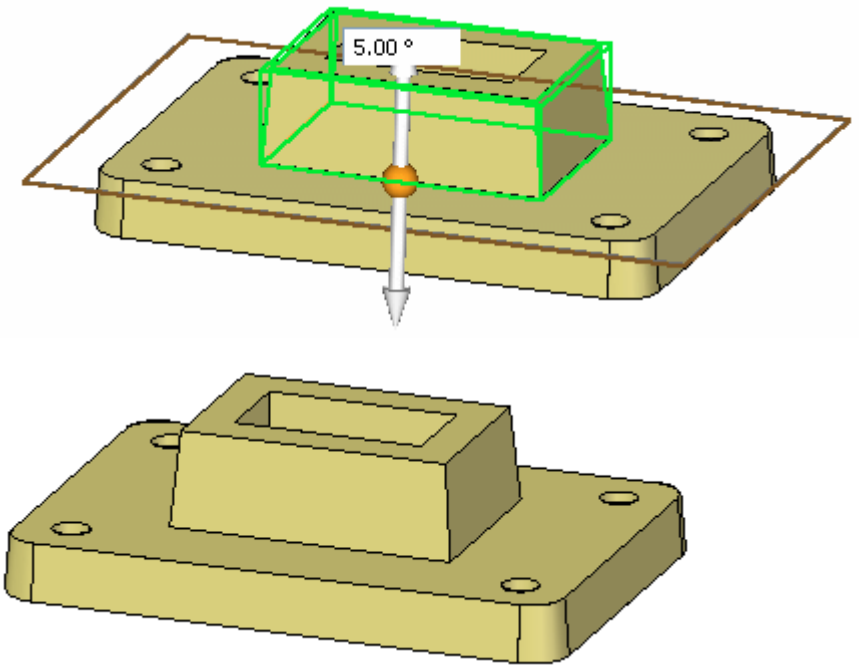


- Click the origin of the direction handle to define the direction inward. In the dynamic edit box, type 5 for the draft angle and then press the Enter key.



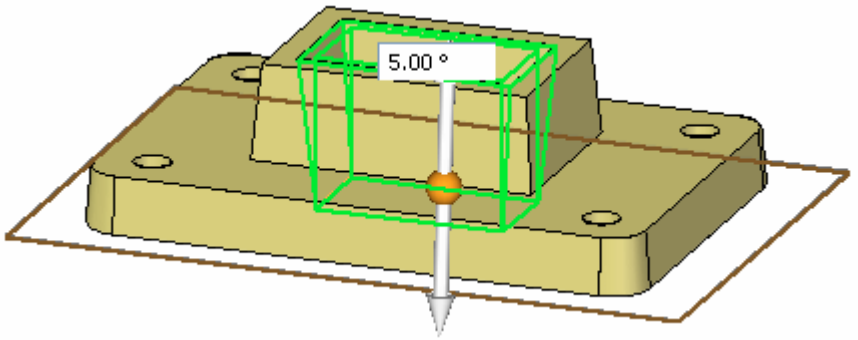
Add draft to the boss

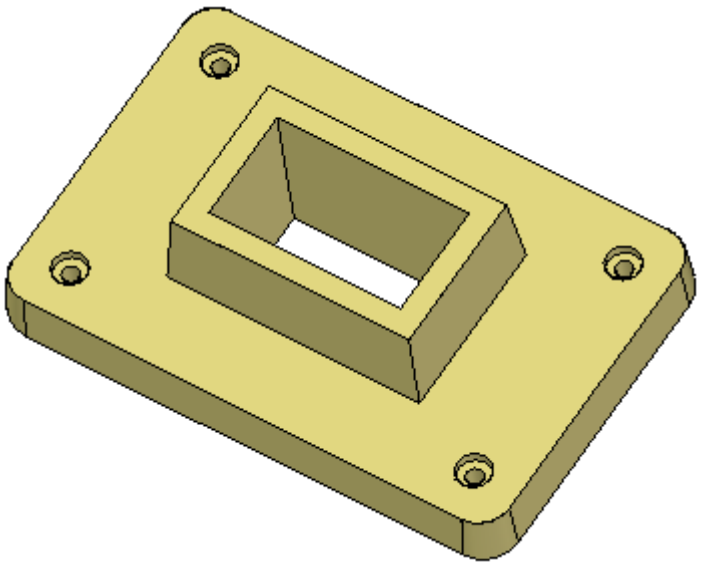
- Add 5° draft to the four faces of the boss with direction inward. Use the top face of the base plate as the draft plane.



Add draft to the cutout faces

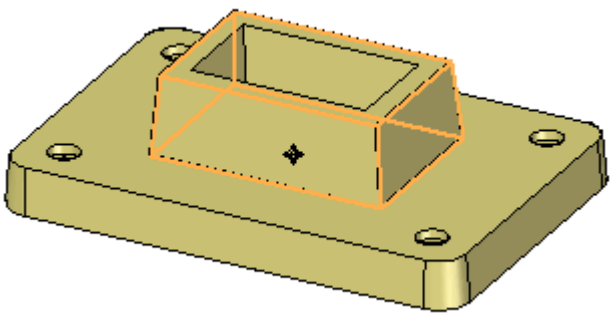
- Add 5° draft to the four faces of the cutout with direction outward. Use the bottom face of the base plate as the draft plane.



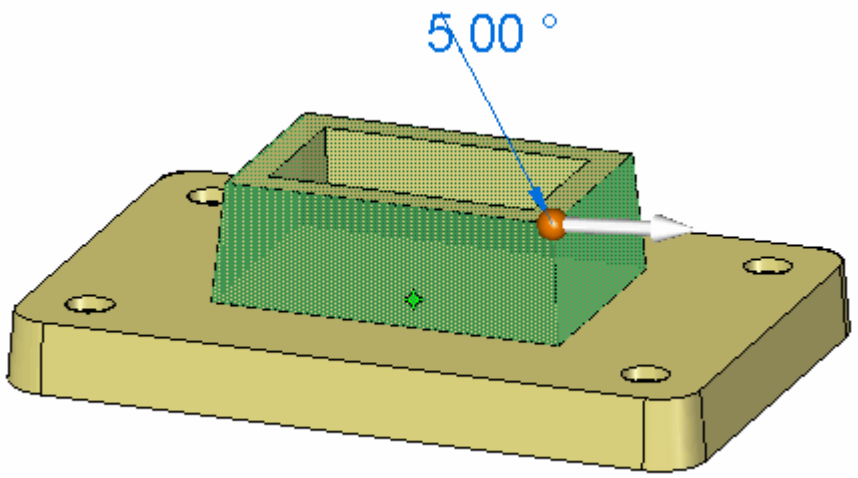


Edit a draft feature

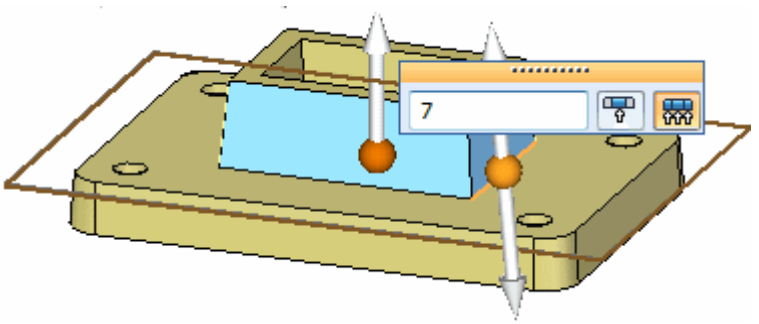
- Edit the draft feature on the boss. Select the feature with QuickPick or select the feature in PathFinder.



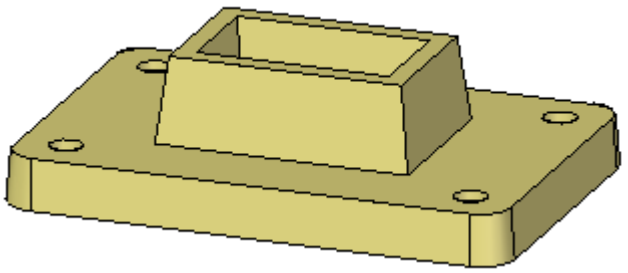
- Click the 5° text to edit the draft parameters.



- Change the draft angle to 7° and press Enter.



At this point the draft direction and draft plane can be edited also. Press Enter to apply the edit and then Esc to end the command.



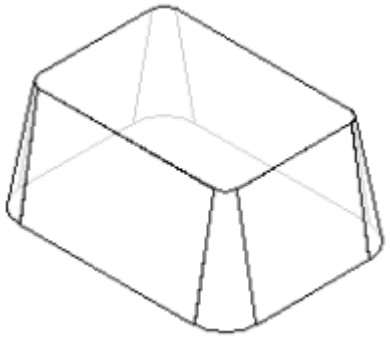
- This completes the activity. Close the file and do not save.

Summary

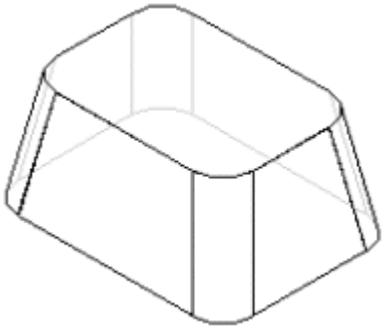
In this activity you learned how to apply draft to faces on the model. A draft plane was selected to control the pivot point for the draft angle. If no face exists to use as a draft plane, you can create a plane and move it to the desired location. You also learned how to edit an existing draft feature.

Things to consider with rounds and draft angles

If you add both rounds and draft angles to a model, there are some important issues you need to consider before deciding on the order in which you add these features. If you add the rounds first, the rounded faces no longer have a constant radius and are conical.



If you add the rounds after the draft is applied, the radius value remains constant.



The manufacturing process you use to produce the actual part may be the factor that determines when the rounds are added.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. True or False: A round added to a model prior to drafting faces will maintain a constant radius after the draft operation.

Answers

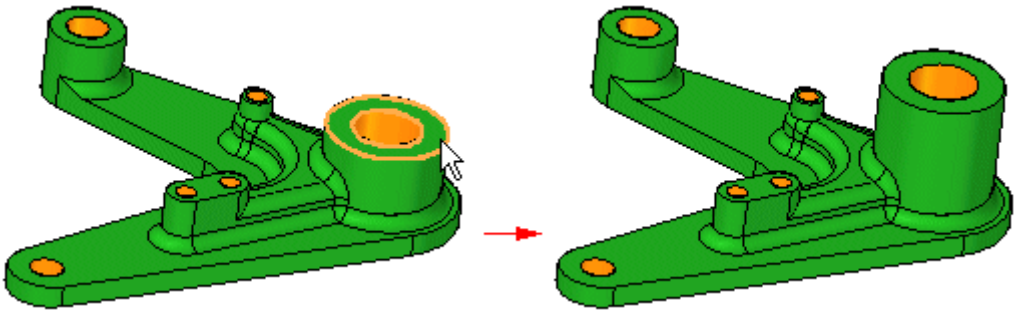
Answer the following questions:

1. True or False: A round added to a model prior to drafting faces will maintain a constant radius after the draft operation.

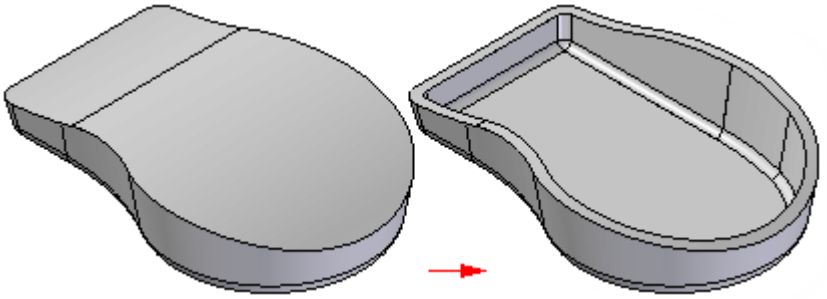
   False. The round will no longer have a constant radius; it will be conical in shape, growing in proportion to the draft angle.

Thickening and thinning parts

You can use the Thicken command to add thickness to a part.



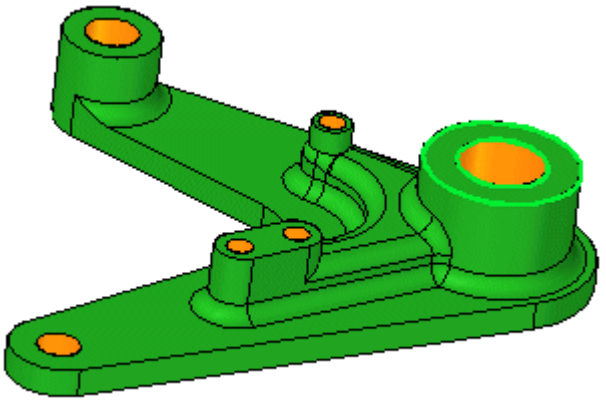
Or use the Thin Wall command to thin a part.



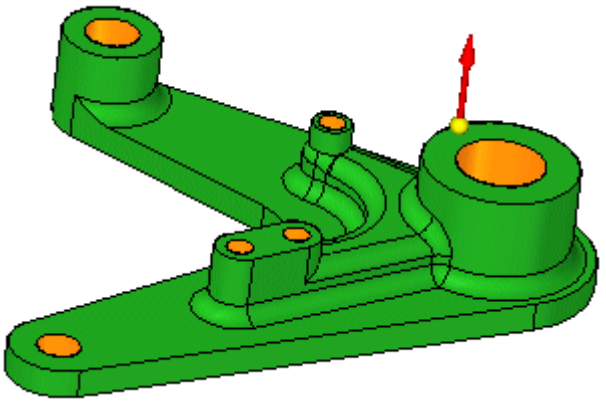
Thicken feature workflow

When you select the Thicken command, the command bar guides you through the following steps:

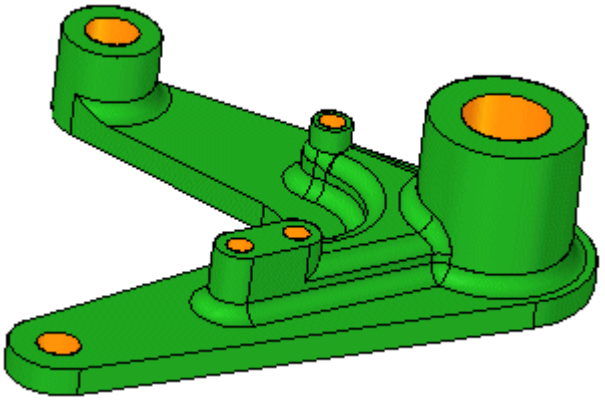
- Select Step—Sets the face selection criteria for defining the thicken feature. You can thicken an individual face, a tangentially continuous chain of faces, or the entire body. After you make the selection, click the Accept (check mark).



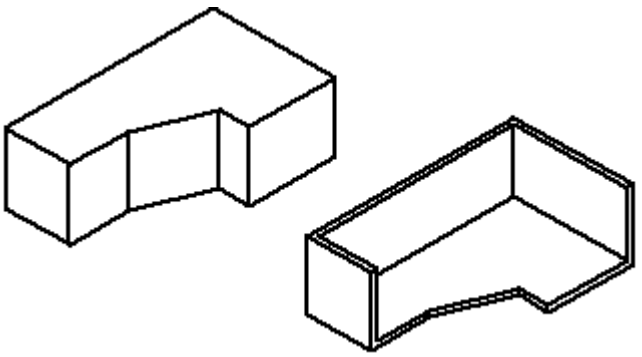
- Offset—Sets the distance to offset the faces. You can type in an offset distance and click the offset arrow to define the offset direction.



- Finish Step—Processes the input and finishes the feature. Click the Finish button to finish the thicken feature.



Thin wall feature workflow

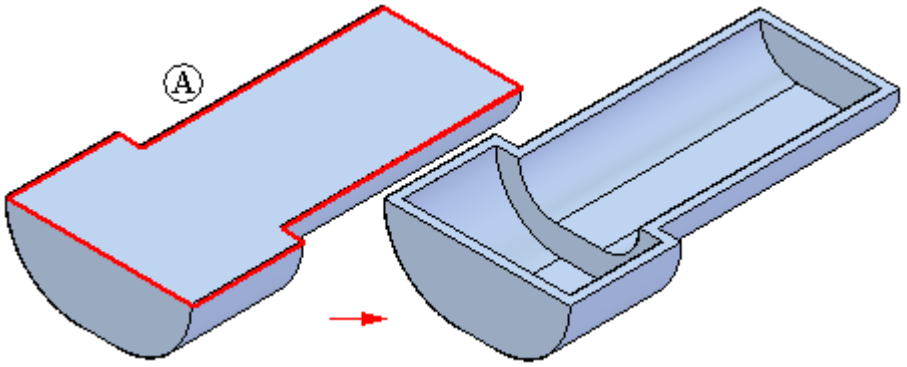


In ordered modeling:

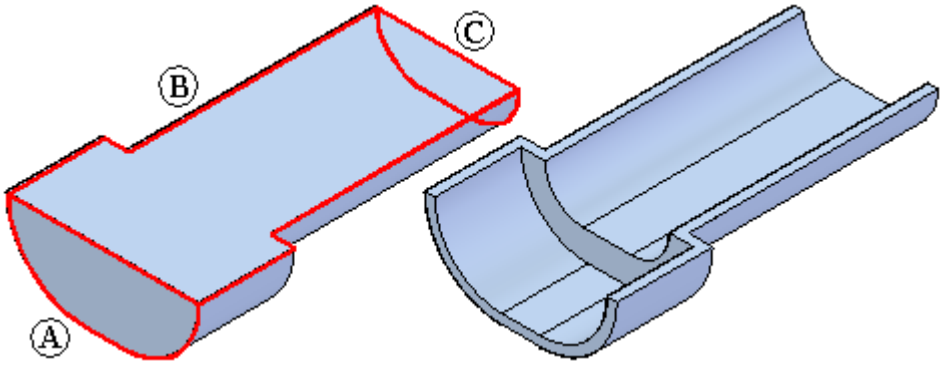
When you select the Thin Wall command, the command bar guides you through the following steps:

- Common Thickness Step—Defines the common wall thickness and the side you want to apply the thickness to. You can apply the wall thickness toward the inside of the solid, toward the outside, or symmetrically from the solid's face.

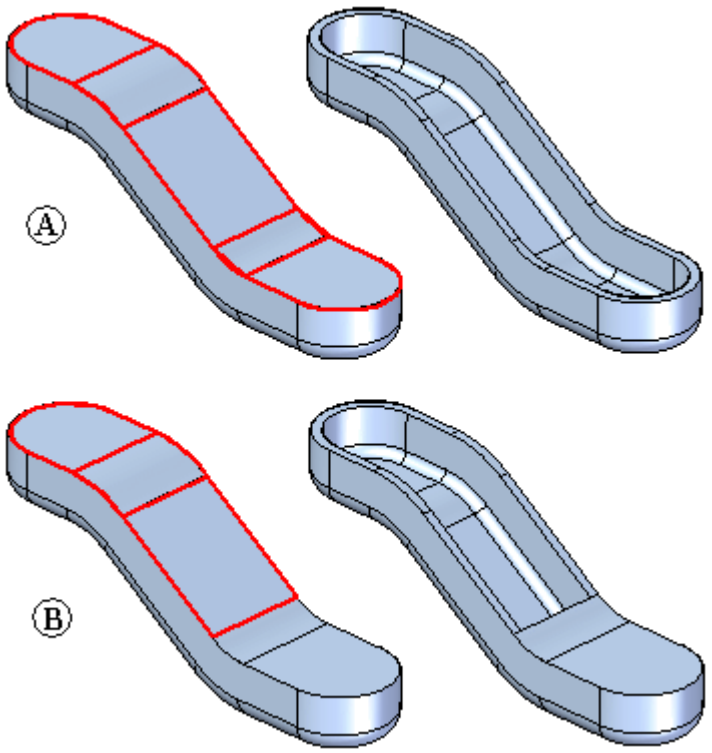
- Open Faces Step—Selects any faces you want to leave open. Open faces are not offset, they are removed from the solid body. For example, if you specify that face (A) should be open, the face is removed and the thin wall feature is created.



- You can select multiple open faces when creating the thin wall feature.



- When one side of the model has multiple tangent faces, they are all selected as one face and cannot be selected individually.



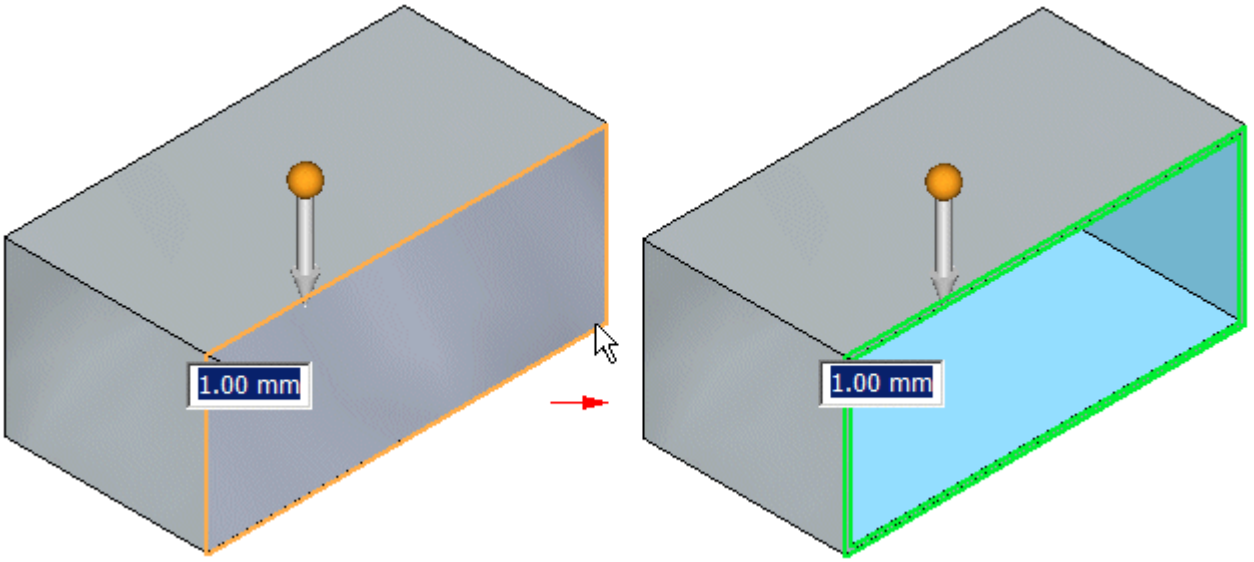
- Unique Thickness Step—Select any faces you want to apply a unique thickness to, and define the unique thickness. You can select individual or multiple planar and non-planar part faces as walls for unique thickness.

- Finish Step—Process the input and preview the feature. Since the open faces and unique thickness steps are optional, you can preview the feature any time after the common thickness step.

In synchronous modeling:

When you select the Thin Wall command, the Thin Wall command bar guides you through the following steps:

- Open Faces Step—Selects any faces you want to leave open. When you click on a face, it dynamically updates to display the thin-wall.



Type the common wall thickness and the click the arrow to define the side you want to apply the thickness to.

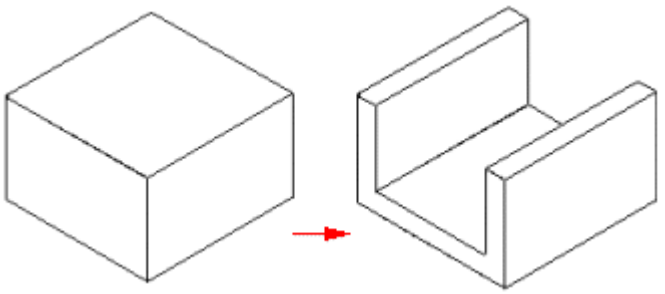
- Exclude/Include—Define the faces you want to include or exclude from the thin wall.

To exclude a face from the thin wall being created, click the button, and then click the face you want to exclude.

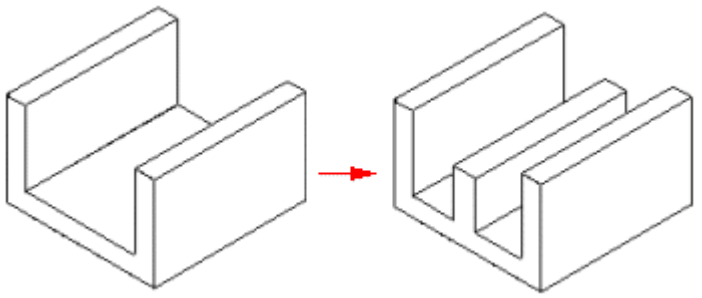
If you want to include a face in an existing thin wall, click the button, and then click the face you want to include.

Things to consider when using thin walls

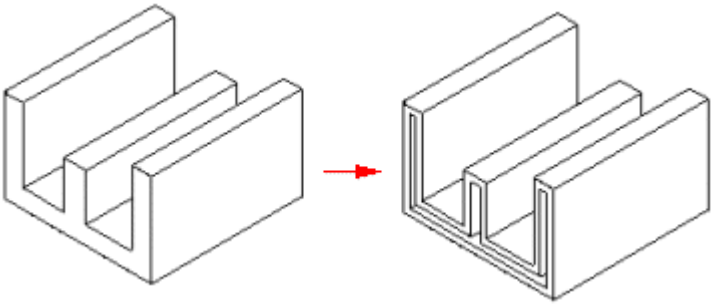
You can thin wall a part more than once. In some cases, you might find it easier to construct a part using multiple thin wall features rather than using profile-based features. For example, you can thin wall a solid box to create a bracket.



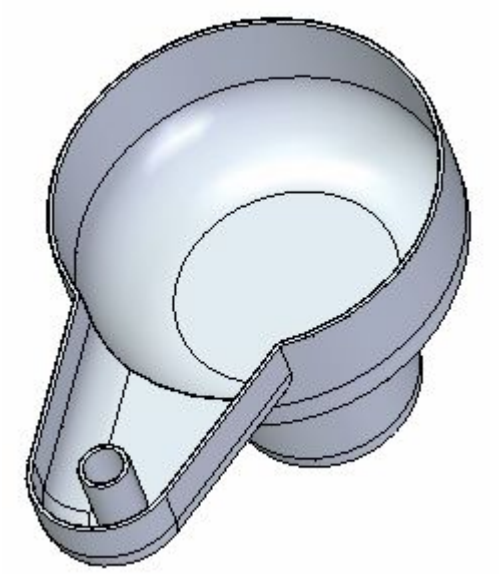
You can then add a protrusion feature to the bracket, and



then add a second thin wall feature to hollow the interior of the bracket.



Activity: Create a plastic part using Thin Wall



Overview

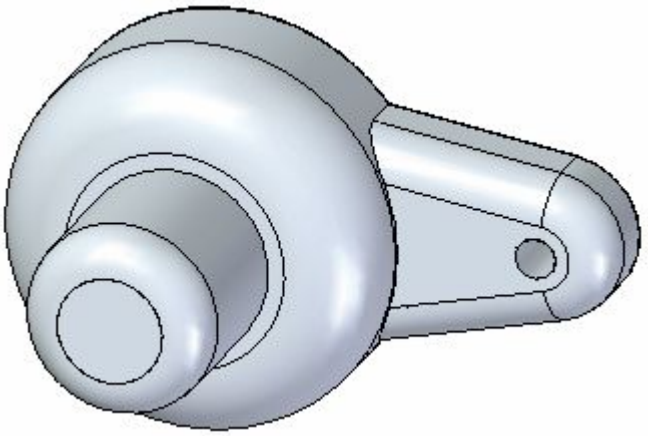
This activity demonstrates the process of creating a plastic part.

Objectives

Learn how to create and modify thin walls.

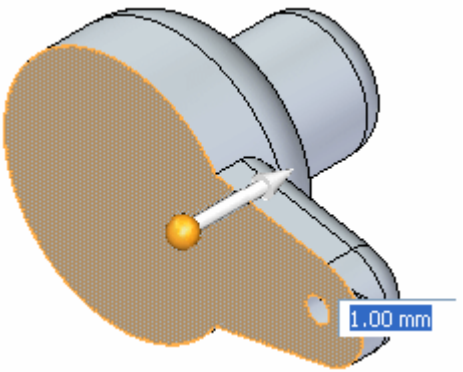
Activity: Create a plastic part using Thin Wall

Open the part file *thinwall.par*.

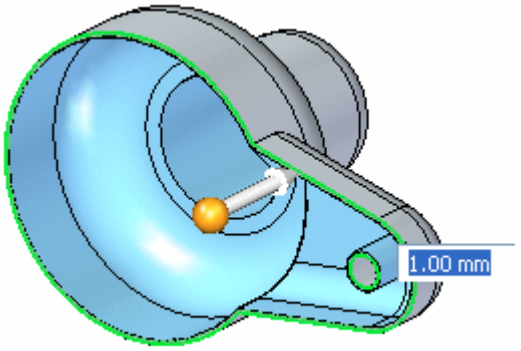


Thin wall and identify faces to remove

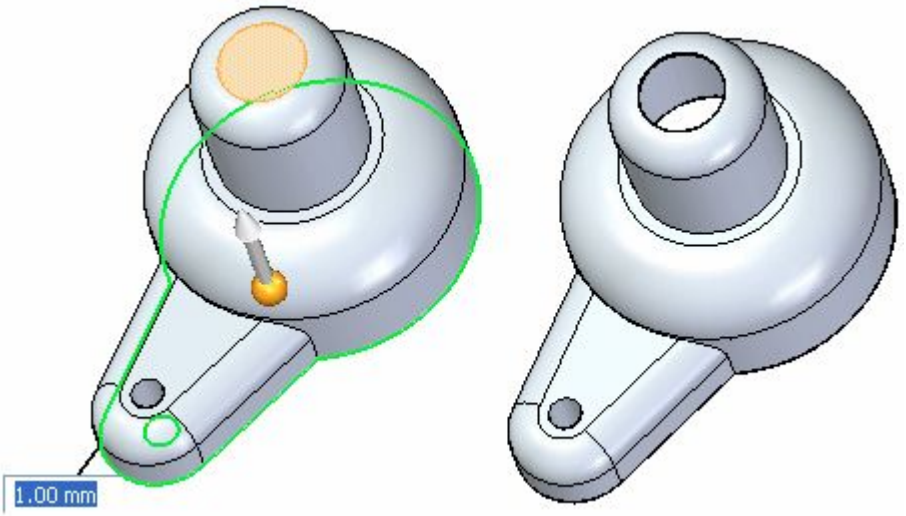
- On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Thin Wall command .
- Press Ctrl+I to change to an isometric view.
- The entire part is automatically selected for the thin wall operation. Select the highlighted top face for removal.



The dynamic preview shows the effect of the thin wall operation. In dynamic input box, type a thickness of 1.00 mm and keep the direction towards the inside.



- Select the face shown to also remove it.



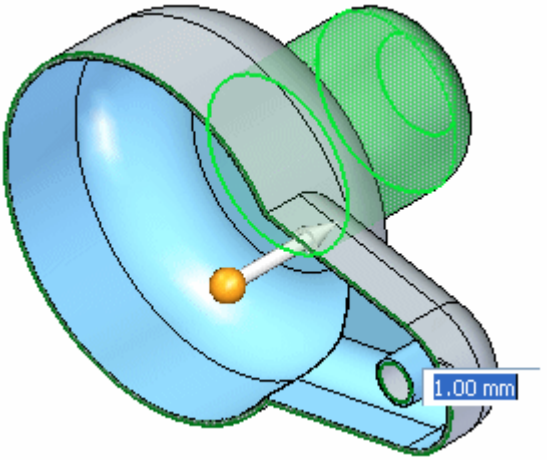
- Right-click to accept.

Exclude faces from the thin wall operation

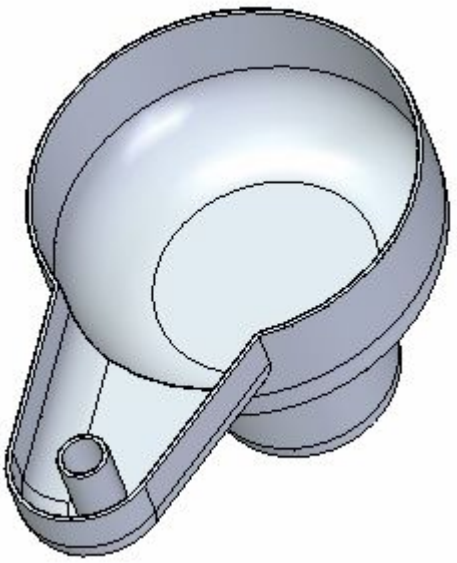
- Select the Undo command to reverse the thin wall.
- Choose the Thin Wall command again and remove the top face as you did in the previous step.

- Select the Exclude Faces option on the Thin Wall command bar.

  Select the faces two faces shown. The thin wall preview updates.



- Click the right mouse button to accept.

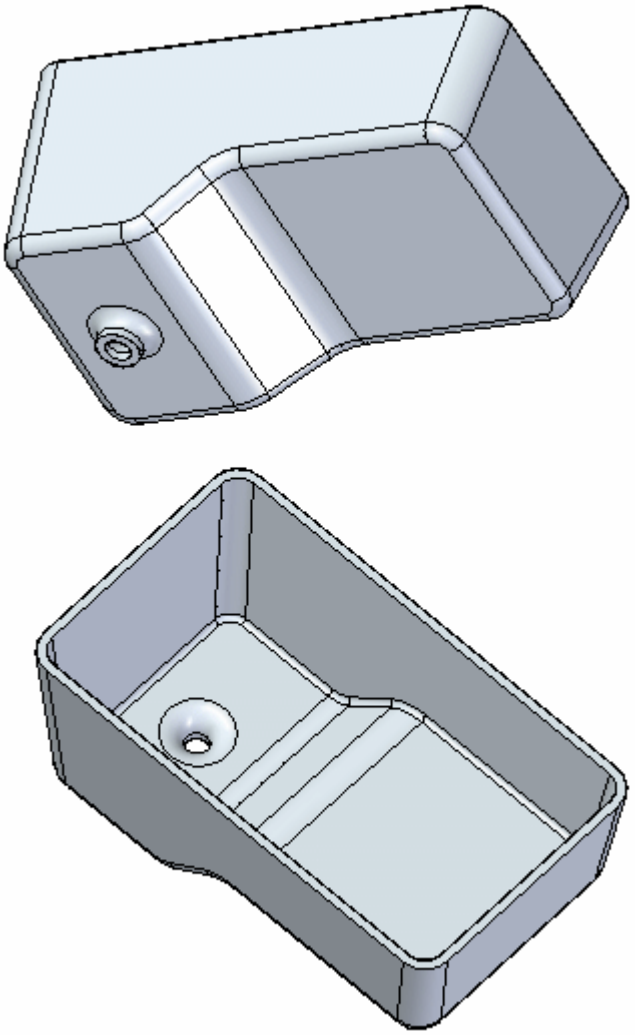


- Save and close this file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to thin wall a solid model. You also learned how to identify the open faces and faces to exclude.

Activity: Model an oil pan



Overview

This activity demonstrates the process of constructing an automotive oil pan using treatment features.

Objectives

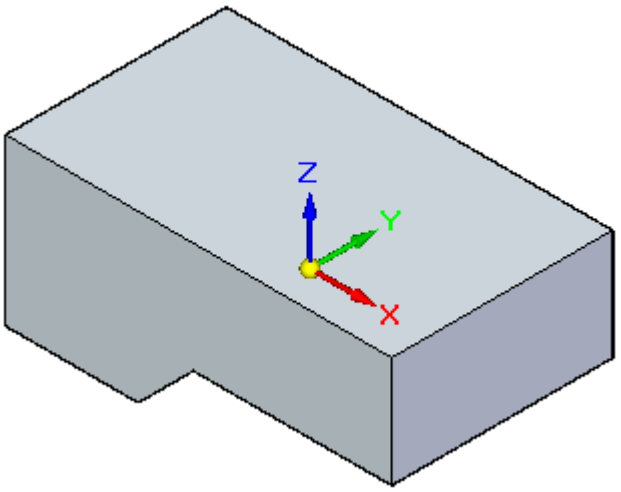
Apply several types of features to a basic solid.

- Drafted faces
- Rounds
- Thin wall

Activity: Model an oil pan

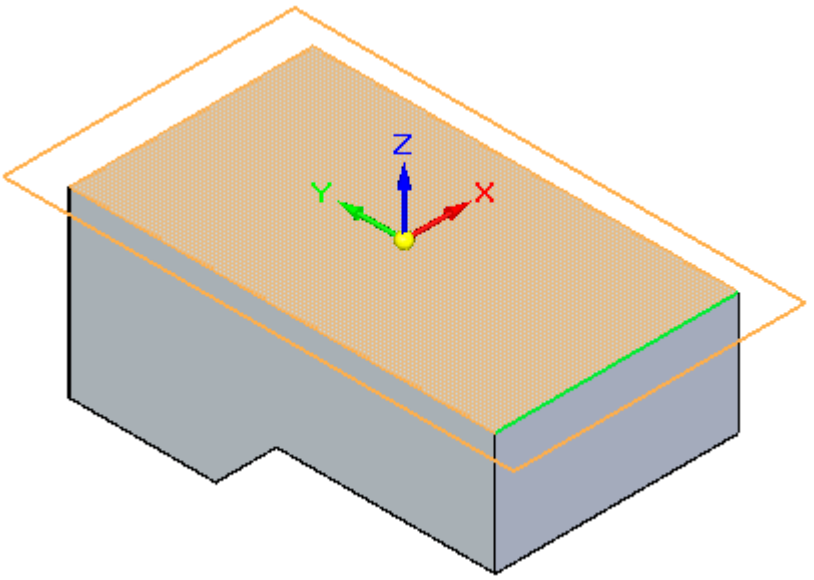
You will place draft, round and thin wall treatment features on a basic solid model.

- Open the part file *oil_pan.par*.

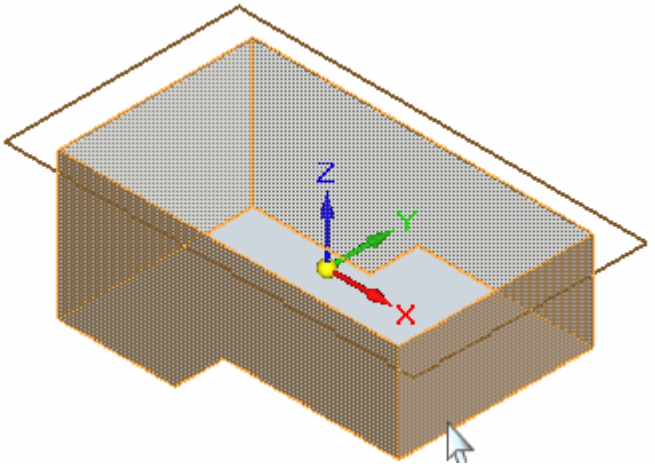


Drafting faces

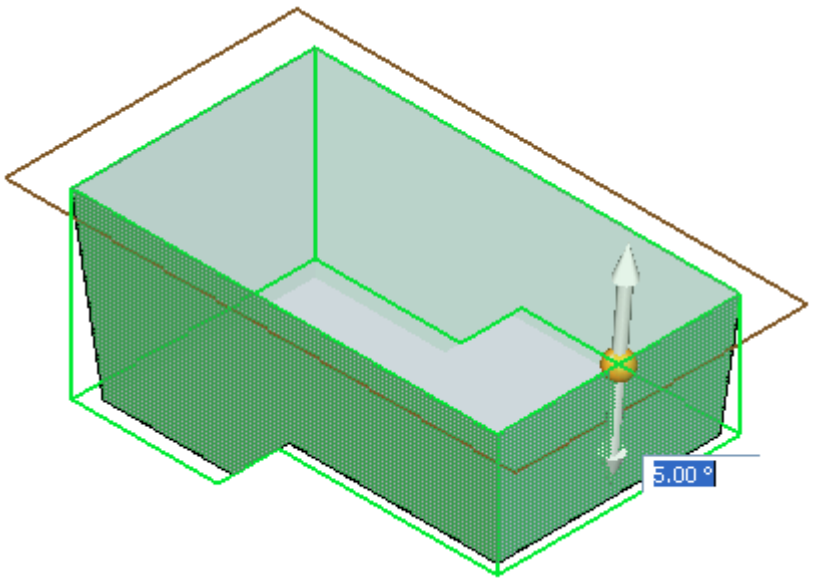
- Select the Draft command.
- Select the top face as the reference plane. The faces draft with respect to this face.



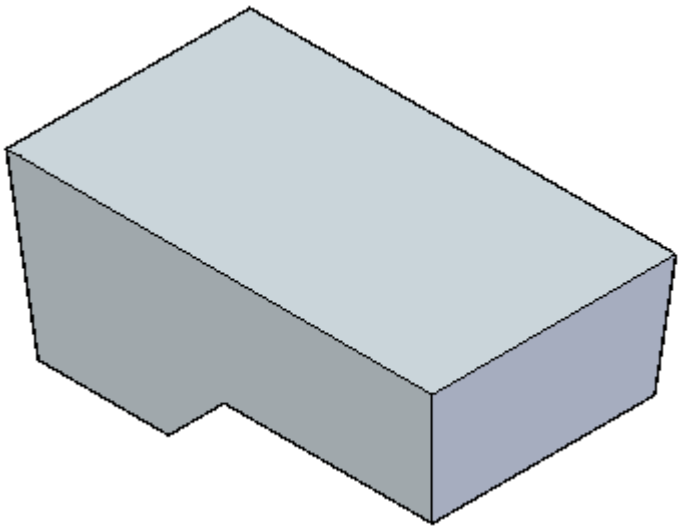
- To specify the faces to draft, select All Normal Faces from the Add Draft command bar list. Select on the side of the part.



- Type 5 degrees into the dynamic input box and select the draft arrow to define the direction as shown.

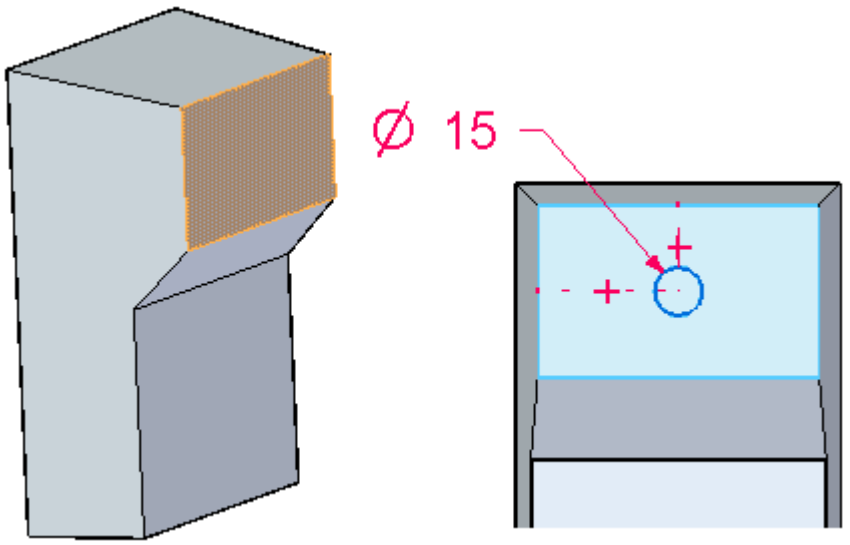


Right-click to accept this angle and direction.

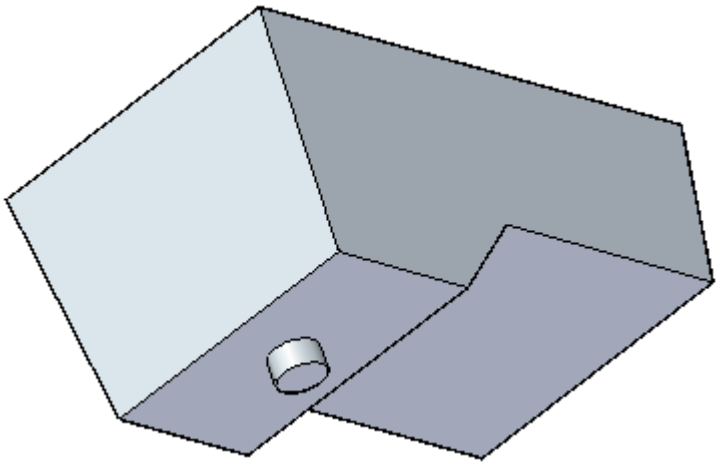


Add a drain

- Create a drain for the pan by extruding a circle from the bottom face. Sketch a circle centered on that face and dimension as shown.

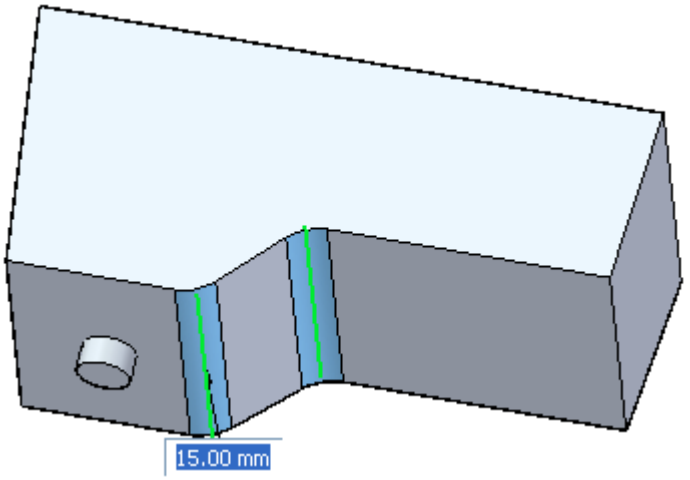


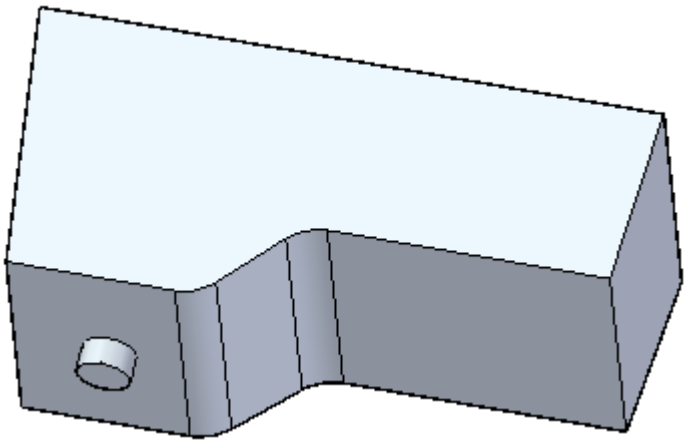
- Select the region formed by the circle and extrude it 8 mm.



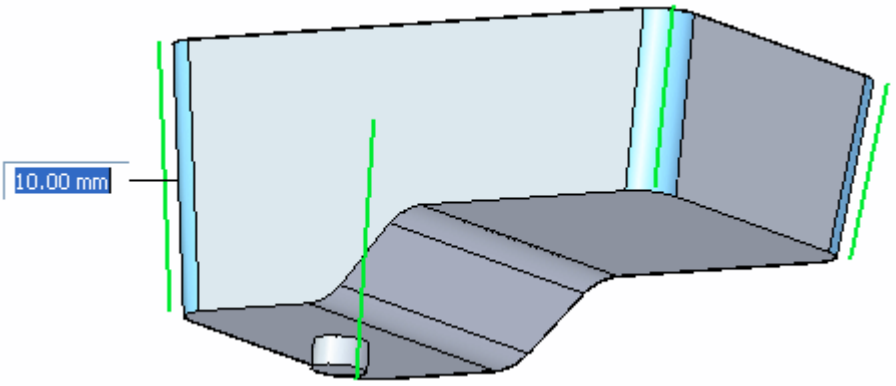
Round edges

- Using the Round command, select the two underside edges and give them a radius of 15 mm. Right-click to accept.

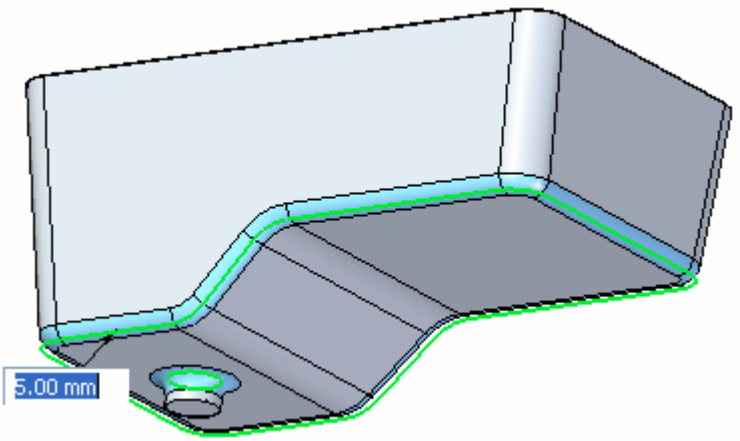




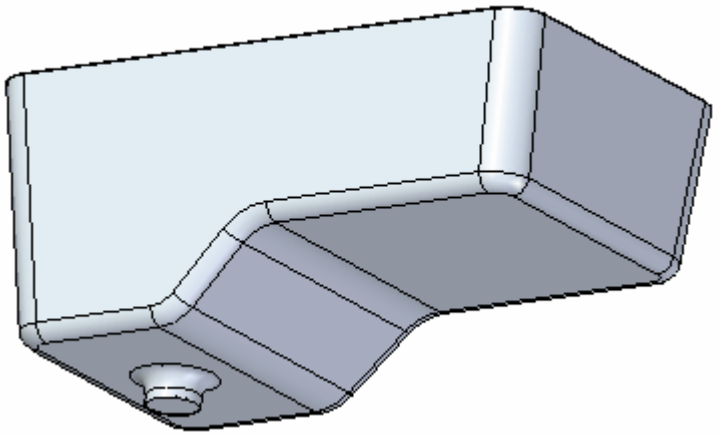
- Round the vertical edges with a radius of 10 mm. Right-click to accept.



- Select the chain along the bottom, as well as the edge of the drain. Define a radius of 5 mm and then right-click to accept.

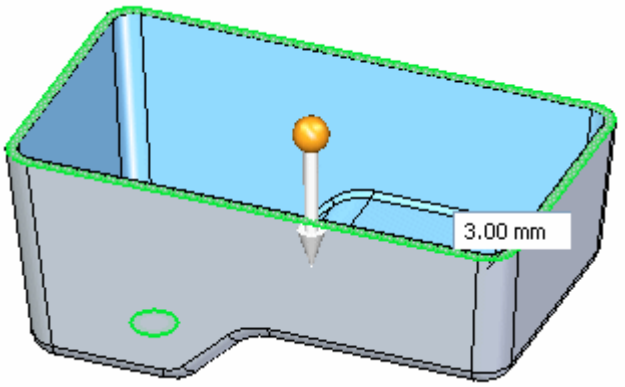


- Press the Esc key.

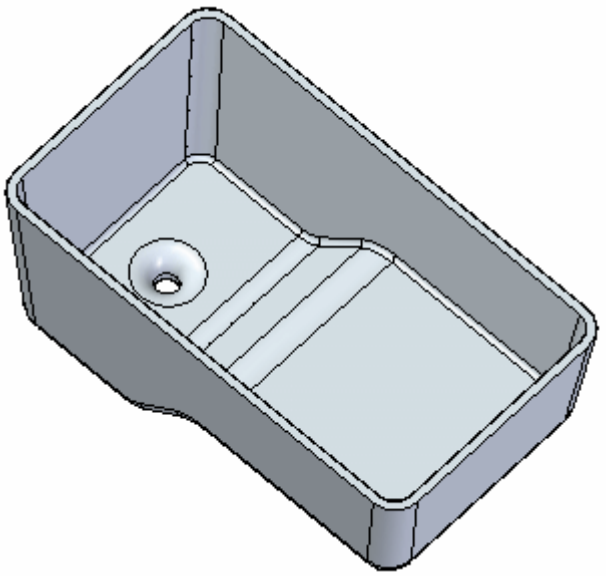


Thin wall

- Select the Thin Wall command.
- Enter a thickness of 3 mm into the dynamic input box. Remove the top face and the capping face for the drain. Define an interior thin wall.



Right-click to accept and finish.



- Save and close this part.

Summary

In this activity you applied the draft, round and thin wall treatment features to a solid model. These features are commonly used in the design of solid models.

Lesson

6 *Constructing functional features*

Procedural features

Note

This course presents the method of creating synchronous procedural features. To learn about the method for creating ordered features, refer to the self-paced course *spse01536: Modeling synchronous and ordered features*.

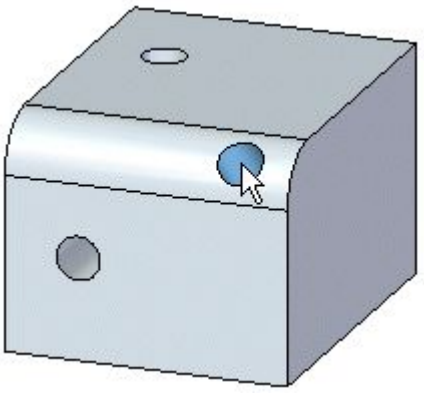
Procedural features are manufactured features which perform a particular function. Unlike rounds and drafted faces, procedural features generally come later in the design process and thus do not affect the form of the model. There are several types of procedural features available within Solid Edge, some of which are used extensively in the plastics industry. In this lesson, learn how to define the following features.

- Hole
- Rib
- Vent
- Lip

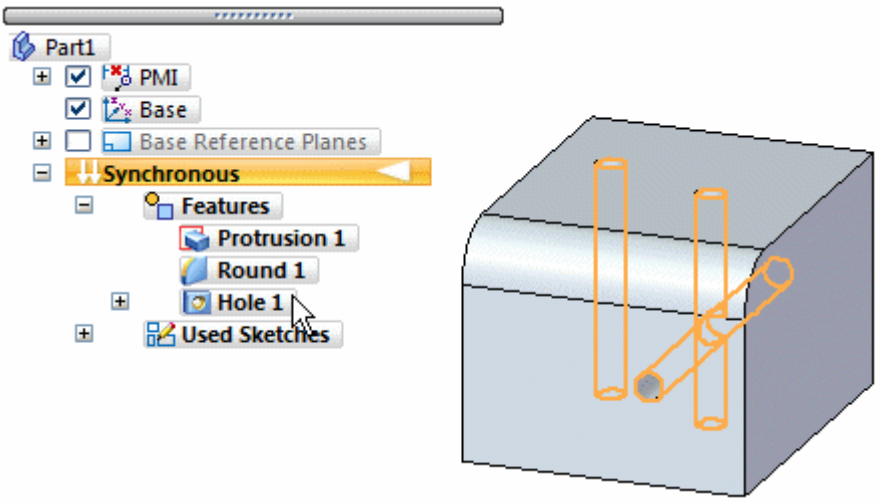
Also in this lesson, you will define *feature patterns* for repetitive use, as well as learn the organizational aspects of *feature libraries*. You will learn how to manage features using standard Windows operations *Cut, Copy and Paste*. You will also learn about the *Attach and Detach* functionality.

Hole command (synchronous environment)

Constructs one or more holes in the synchronous environment. With this command, you dynamically drag the hole onto any face in the model.



Holes may be placed on multiple reference objects within the same instance of the command. All holes created within one instance of the command will share the same attributes.

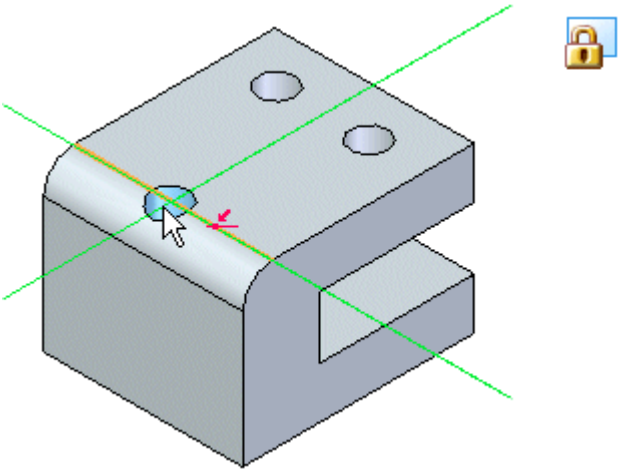


Plane locking

When placing a hole feature, you can either press F3 or the lock icon while pausing the cursor over a plane to lock to the reference plane.

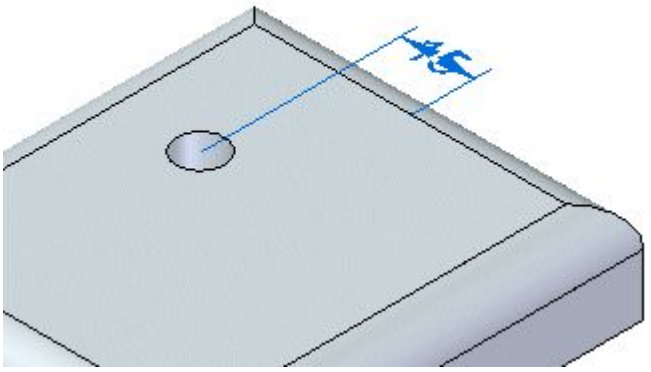
Plane locking is helpful when placing multiple holes on a single face because all holes are placed with respect to the same plane regardless of where you drag the cursor. Once you lock to a plane, you can use edge references to more precisely define the hole's location with dimensions.

When you lock to plane, the locked plane icon is displayed in the upper right corner of the graphics window and planar alignment lines are displayed on the locked plane.

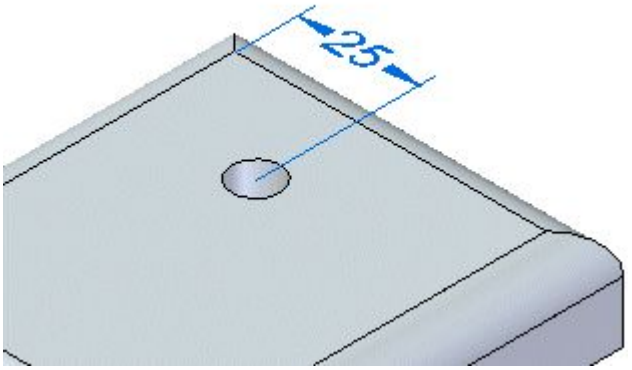


Precise placement

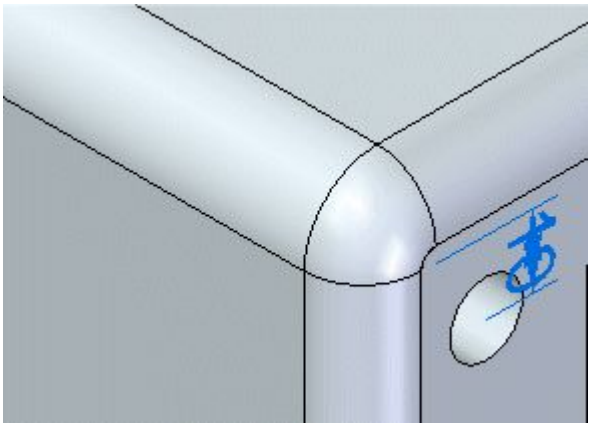
When locked to a plane in the hole placement workflow, dimensions may be placed on each occurrence dynamically. You can pause the cursor over an edge and press M to create dimensions from the center of the circle to the midpoint of the edge:



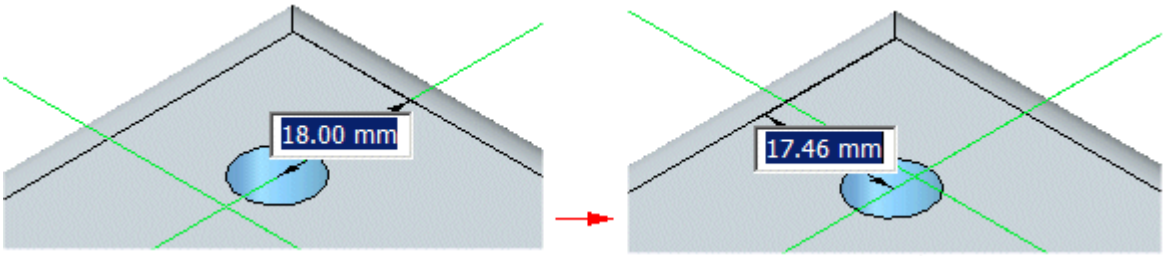
Press E to create dimensions from the center of the circle to the closest edge endpoint:



Or press C to create dimensions from the center of the circle point of a circular edge.



Before the hole is placed, you can type a dimension value and the dynamic movement is locked to the defined value. You can redefine the dimension from the keypoint in a different direction, by either pressing the Toggle Dimension Axis button on the command bar, or pressing T.

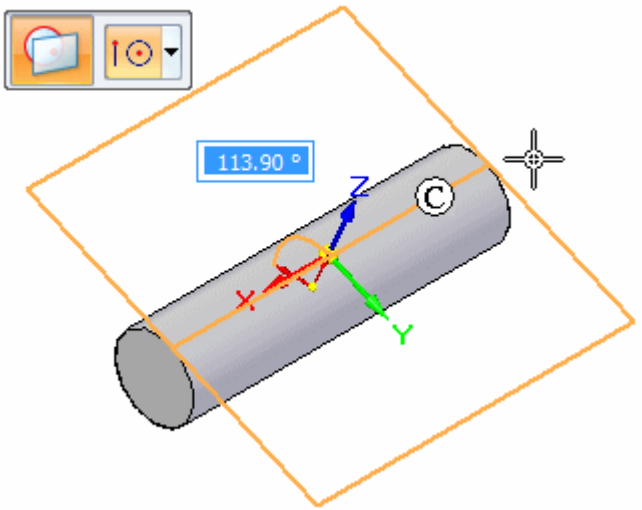


All precise placement dimensions are maintained as PMI dimensions after the hole is placed.

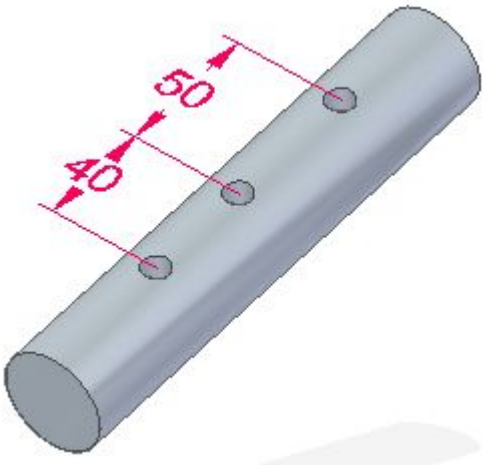
Placing a hole on a cylinder

When placing a hole on a cylinder, press F3 as the cursor moves over the cylinder. The Tangent plane command activates. You can position tangent plane by dynamically dragging or by entering an angular value and then press Enter. Once

the tangent plane locks, you can drag the hole over the tangent line (C) and the hole locks to the tangent line.



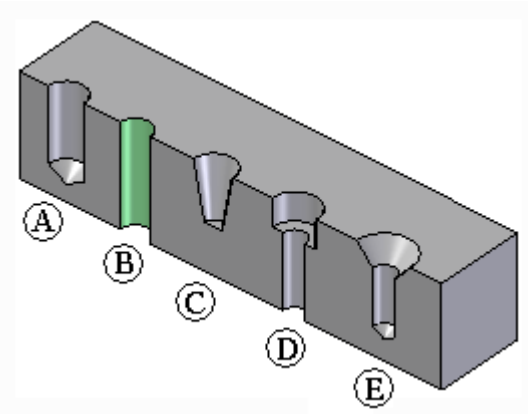
While in the Hole command you can place dimensions between the holes. You can also dimension the holes after the holes are placed.



Hole types

Use the Type option on the Hole Options dialog box defines the type of hole you want. You can construct several types of holes:

- (A) simple holes
- (B) threaded holes
- (C) tapered holes
- (D) counterbore holes
- (E) countersink holes



You can only define one type of hole for a single hole feature. To construct a different type of hole, you must construct another hole feature.

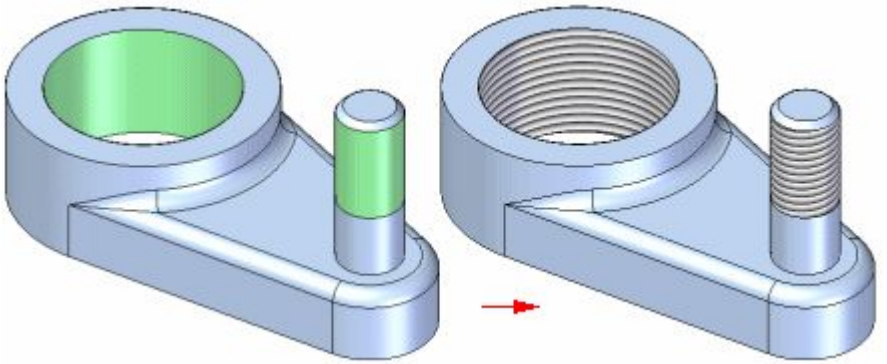
The options available on the Hole Options dialog box change, depending on the type of hole you specify. For example, when you set the Threaded option, new options are displayed so you can specify the thread type you want.

Threaded holes

You can specify a straight thread, a standard pipe thread, or a tapered pipe thread when you set the Type option to Threaded. You can also specify standard or straight pipe threads when you set the Type option to Counterbore or Countersink.

For threaded holes, the size of the hole in the solid model matches the minor thread diameter listed in the Holes.txt file or PipeThreads.txt file for the thread size you selected. For example, when you construct a M24 x 1 metric threaded hole, the hole diameter in the solid model will be 22.917 millimeters, as this is the minor thread diameter listed for this thread in the Holes.txt file.

A different face style is used to indicate that a hole is threaded. The Color Manager command provides an option to define the Face style for Threaded Cylinders. The default value for the Threaded Cylinder option is the Thread style. With the Thread style, you can also use the Rendering tab on the Format View dialog box to specify whether a photo-realistic texture is applied to threaded features in a shaded view.



For more information, see the Threaded Features Help topic.

Hole extents

You can use several extent types when constructing holes:

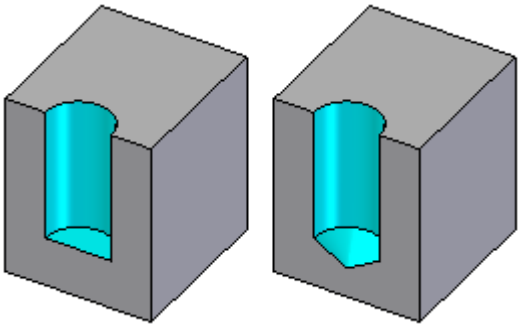
- Through All
- Through Next
- Finite Extent

The extents that are available depend on the type of hole you are creating. Simple holes, counterbore holes, countersink holes, and threaded holes support all three extent types. Tapered holes support only the Finite Extent option, but you can define a finite extent length that exceeds the thickness of the part.

With counterbore holes, if you use the Finite Extent option, you define only the hole extent. The counterbore extent is defined by the Counterbore Depth value you specify on the Hole Options dialog box.

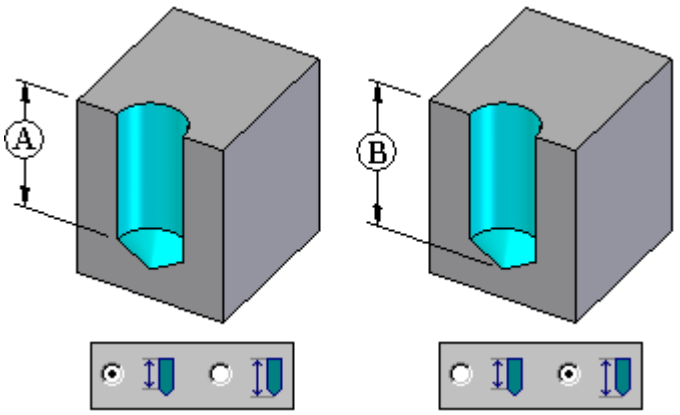
V bottom angles

When you construct a hole using the Finite Extent option, you can use the V Bottom Angle option to specify whether the bottom of the hole is flat or V shaped.



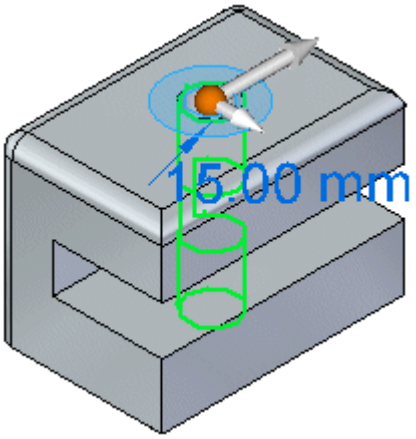
When you set the V Bottom Angle option, you can also type a value for the bottom angle. The angle you specify represents the total included angle. You can also specify how the finite depth value is measured.

You can specify that the depth dimension is applied to the flat portion of the hole where the V bottom angle begins (A), or that the hole depth dimension is applied to the V bottom of the hole (B).

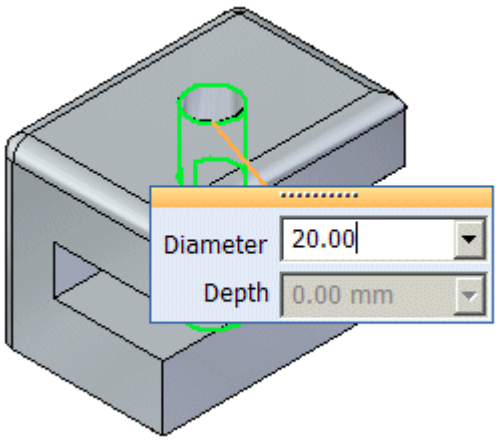


Hole edits

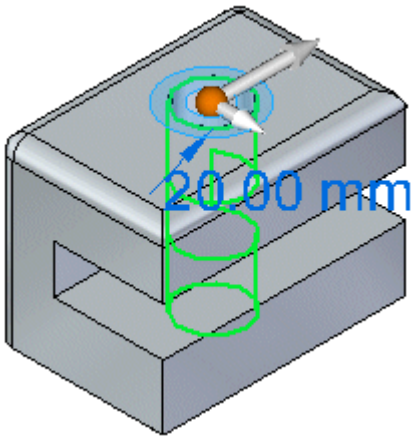
When you place a hole, an Edit Definition handle is created so that you can change dimension values for existing holes. To change the dimension value, click the hole dimension,



type a new value, and press Enter.

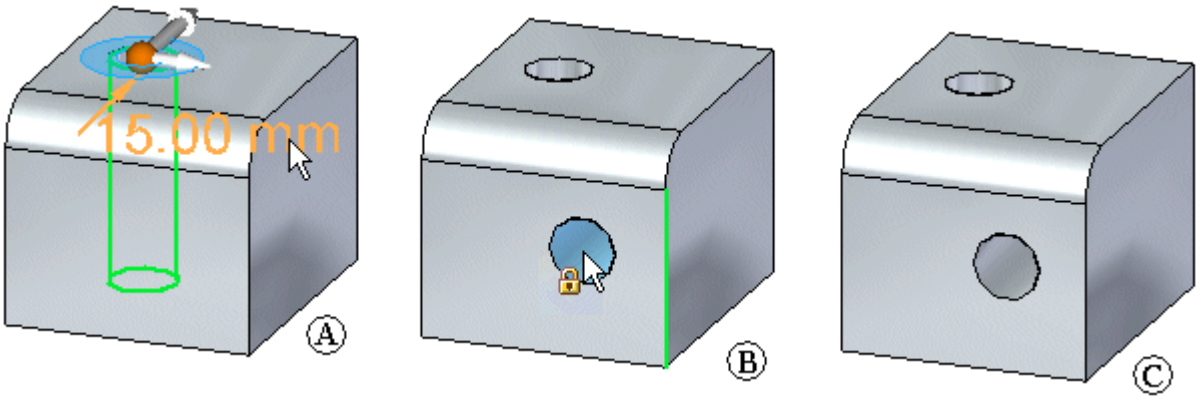


The dimension changes to reflect the new value.

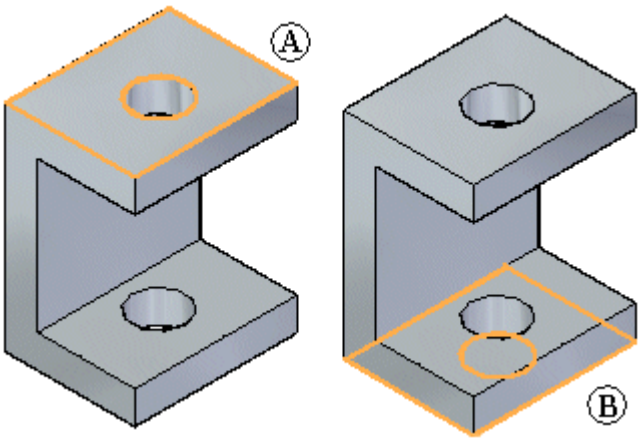


You can click the Options button on the command bar to display the Holes Options dialog box if you want to change the hole type.

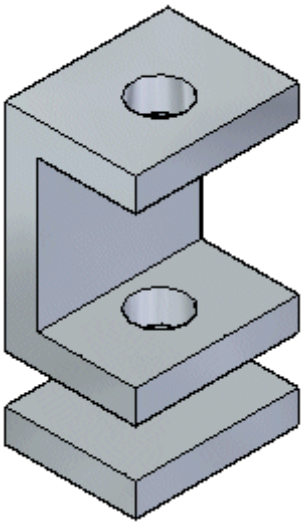
After placing a hole, you can add additional occurrences of the hole. To add more hole occurrences, click the dimension for the hole (A), click the More Holes button , drag the cursor to the new location (B), and click to place the new occurrence of the hole (C).



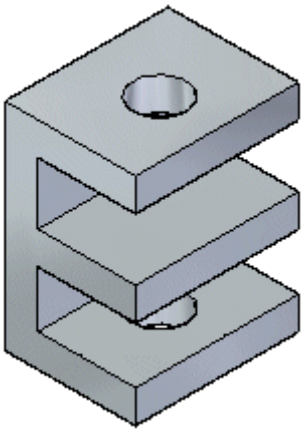
Creating a through all hole on a c-shaped model creates a from-to extent from the top plane (A) to the bottom plane (B).



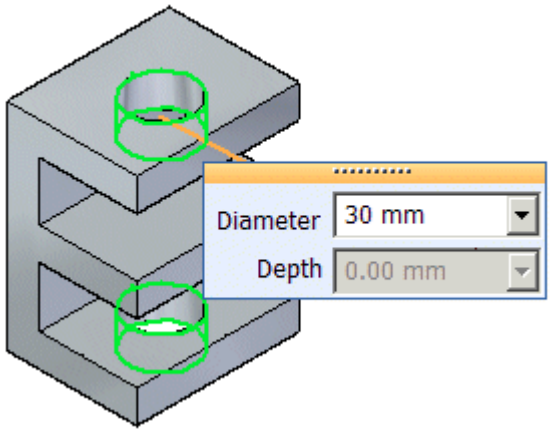
Suppose you create a protrusion below the face,



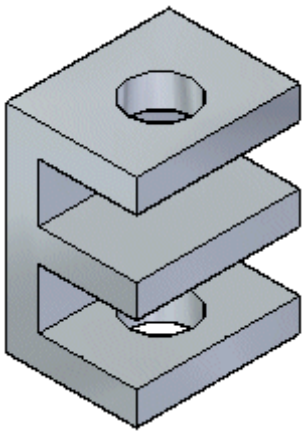
or a protrusion between the two faces.



If you edit the dimension of the hole,

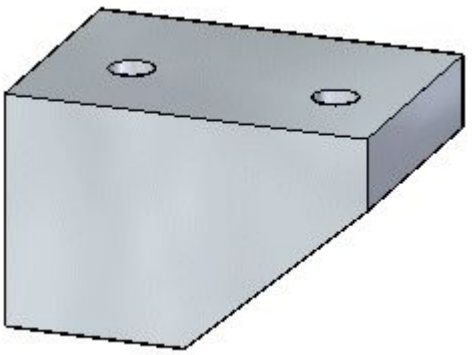


the hole dimension is updated, but the hole does not pass through the new faces.

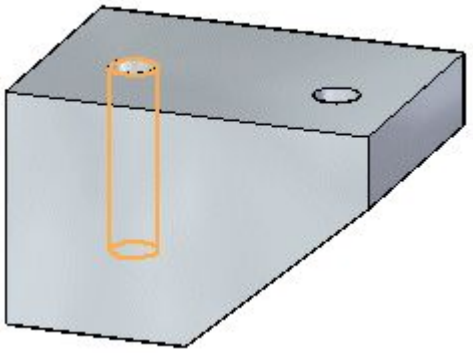


Also, if you change the hole type, the change is applied only to the existing faces. The new faces remain unchanged.

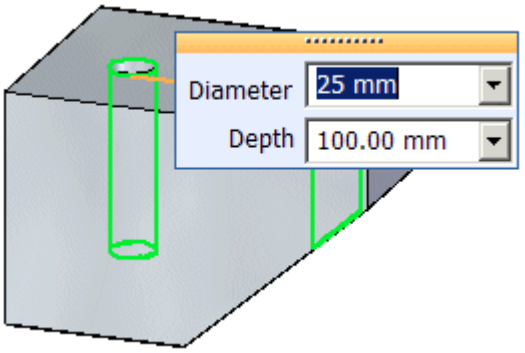
In the following example, two 100 mm finite depth holes are placed as a group in a block.



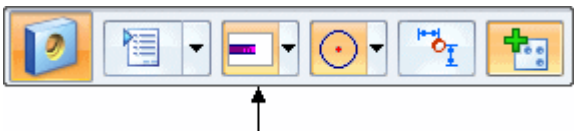
The hole on the left does not penetrate the entire depth of the block and is capped.



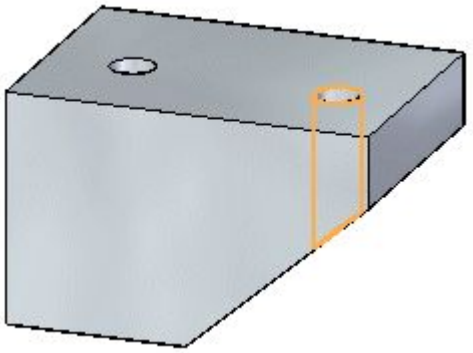
If you select the handle of the hole on the left, you can change the depth and diameter for the hole.



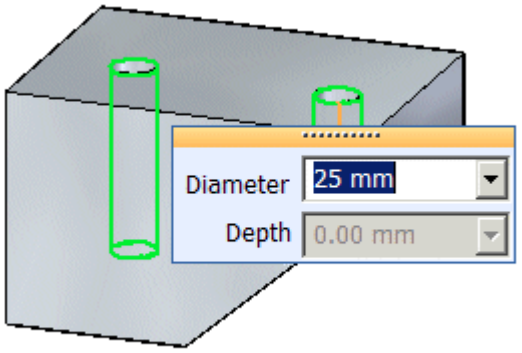
Also notice that the hole type on the command bar is set to Finite Depth.



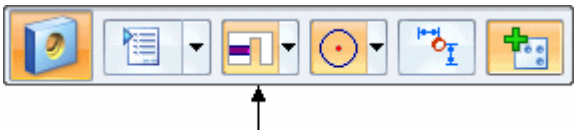
The hole on the right penetrates the entire depth of the block and is not capped. Because it is not capped the hole extent for the hole is changed from finite depth to through next.



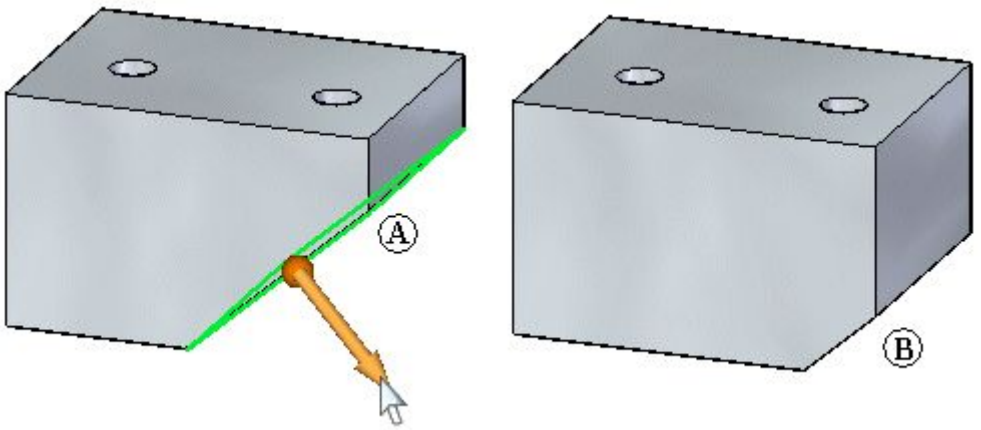
If you select the handle of the hole on the right, you can change the diameter of the hole, but not the depth of the hole.



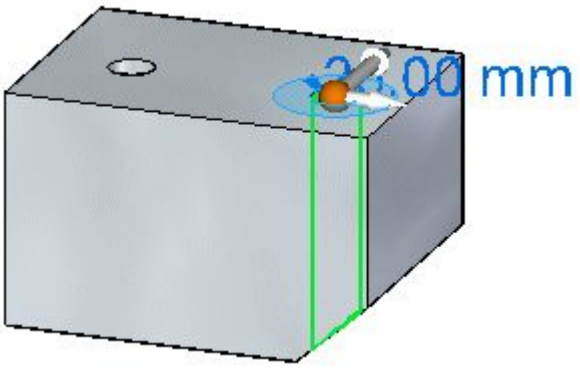
Also notice that the hole type on the command bar is set to Through Next.



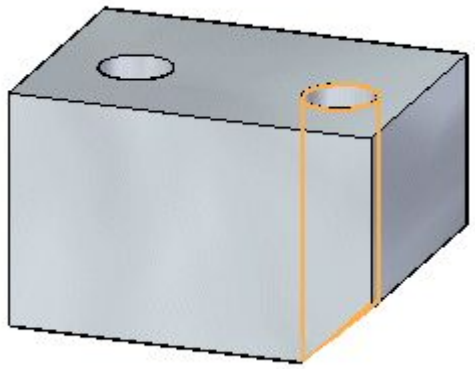
Suppose you select the highlighted face (A) and drag it to a new position (B).



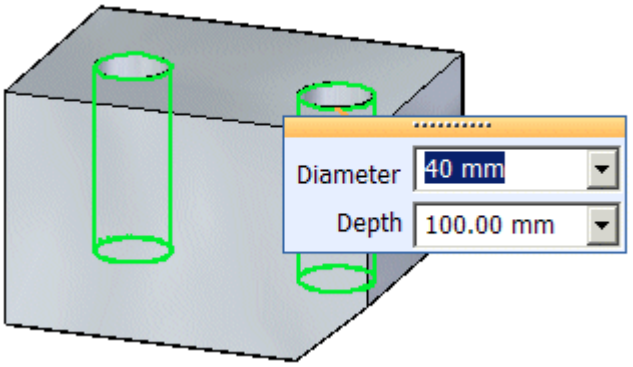
If you select the hole on the right for edit it remains a from-to hole and is not capped.



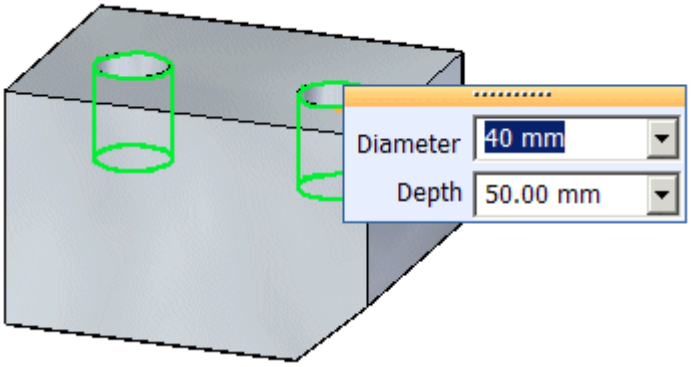
If you change the diameter for the hole, the diameter changes, but the hole type remains from-to.



If you change the hole type to Finite, the hole depth changes to the original depth of 100 mm.



If you change the depth of the hole, the depth for both holes in the group changes.



Holes.txt and Pipethreads.txt files

The Holes.txt and PipeThreads.txt files are ASCII text files that are used to populate hole size values on the Hole Options dialog box. You can use a text editor, such as Notepad, to add or edit values in these files. By default, the files are located in the Solid Edge Program folder.

You can use Hole Size File or Pipe Threads File entry on the File Locations tab of the Options dialog box to instruct Solid Edge to look for these files in a different folder, including a folder on another machine on the network.

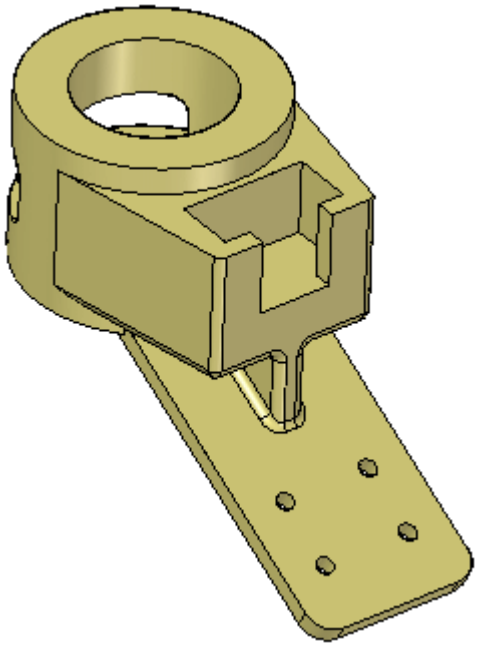
Saving commonly used hole parameters

Use the Saved Settings options on the Hole Options dialog box to save commonly used hole parameters to an external file, named CUSTOM.XML. You can then use the Saved Settings list on the Hole Options dialog box or the Hole command bar to select a saved setting later in any Solid Edge document where you can construct hole features.

Similar to the Holes.txt file, you can use the File Locations tab on the Options dialog box to specify a folder for the Custom.xml file.

When you specify a machine on the network for the Holes.txt, PipeThreads.txt, and Custom.xml files, all users can use the same parameters for the hole features they construct, which makes it easier to enforce company and industry standards.

Activity: Place holes



Overview

This activity demonstrates the process of placing holes in a conveyor belt hanger.

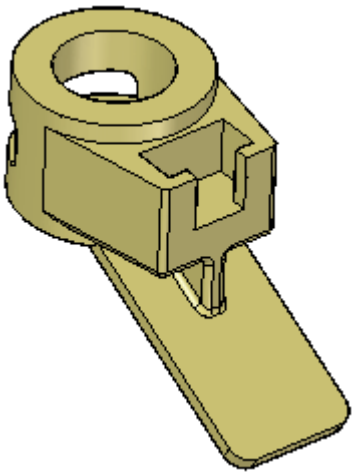
Objectives

In this activity you will:

- Place holes dynamically.
- Use precise methods to locate holes.
- Add dimensions to existing holes.

Activity: Place holes

Open *holes.par*.

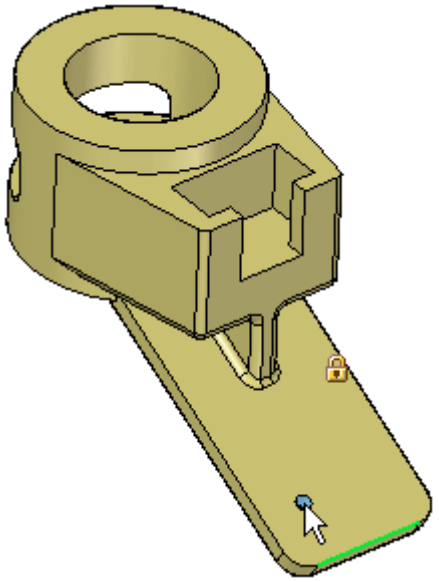


Place a hole

- On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Hole command .
- Click the Options from the Hole command bar.

In the Hole Options dialog box, select 10 mm from the Diameter drop list.

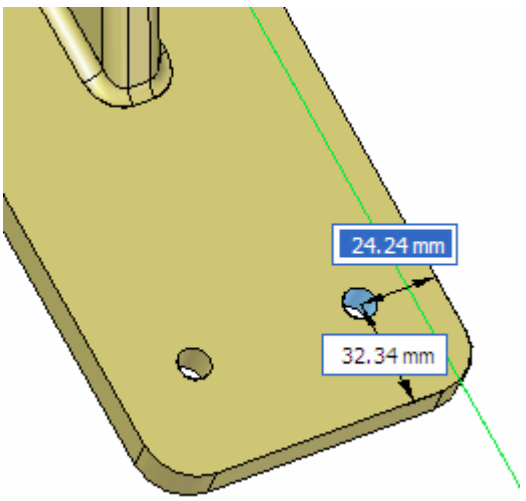
- Drag the cursor over the part's flange and click to place a hole at the approximate location shown.



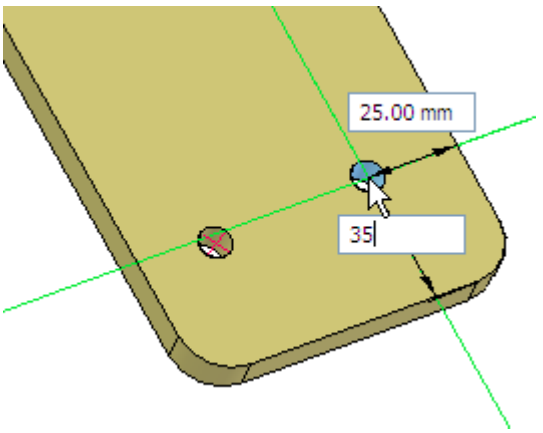
Do not exit out of the hole command. You will continue placing holes.

Use precise placement

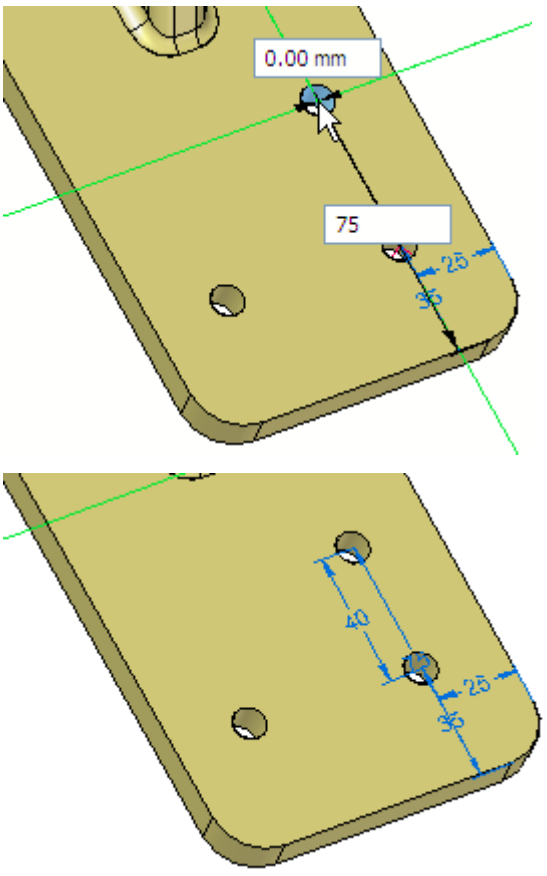
- While still in the Hole command, press the F3 key to lock the plane. Place your cursor over the right edge and type *E* to obtain a dimension from the hole center to the edge's endpoint. Repeat for the bottom edge (do not click in between selecting these edges).



Type 25 for the dimension to the right edge. Press the Tab key. Type 35 for the bottom value. Press the Tab key.



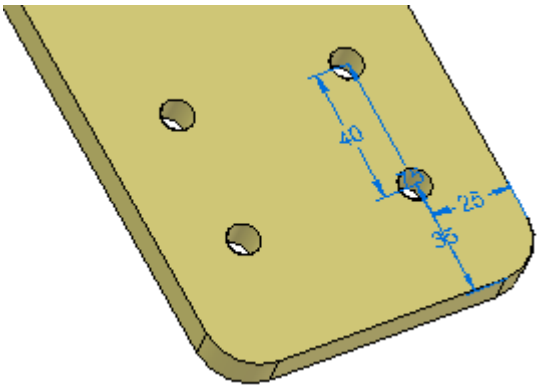
- Place your cursor over the edge of the second hole and type *C* to obtain a dimension from that hole's center point. Also, hover the cursor over the bottom edge and type *E*. Drag your cursor vertically from the second hole and type 0.00 mm for the distance. Press the Tab key and type 75 mm to define the distance from the bottom edge. Press the Tab key.



Do not exit out of the hole command.

Dimension existing holes

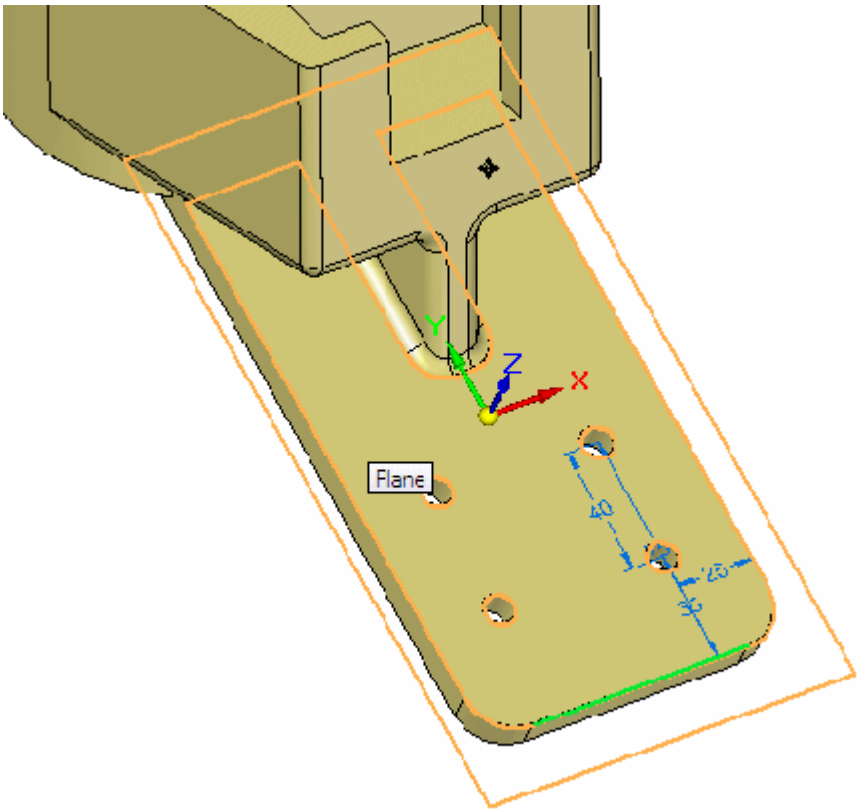
- Place the fourth hole as shown.



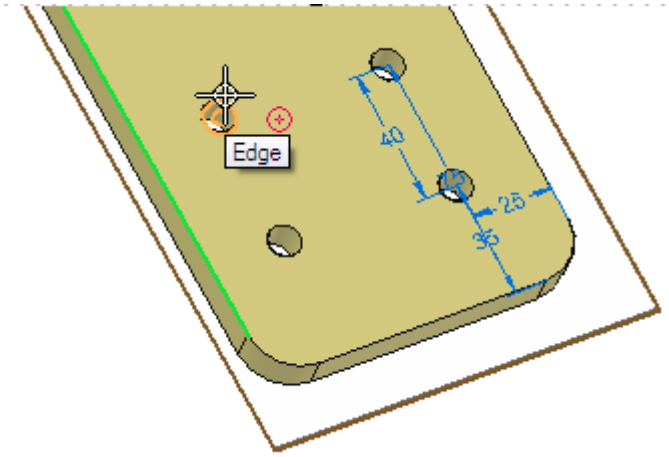
- Choose the Dimension Between command and in the command bar, pick the Lock Dimension Plane option .

  You are prompted to select a plane.

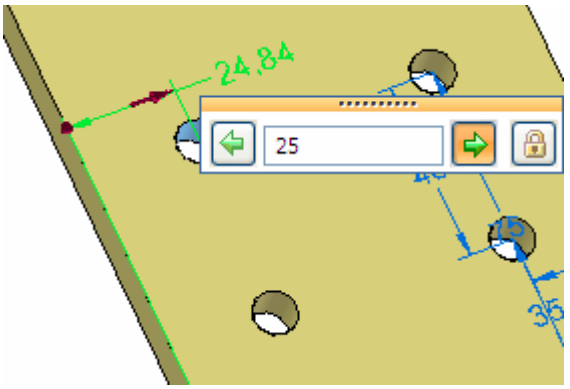
  Select the flange face as shown.



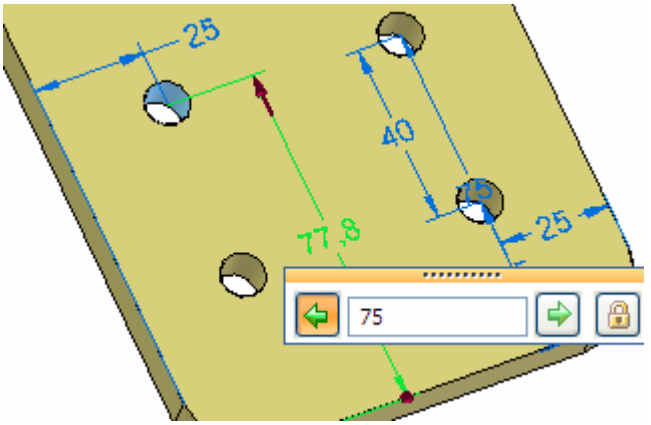
Select the left edge and the center of the upper left hand hole.



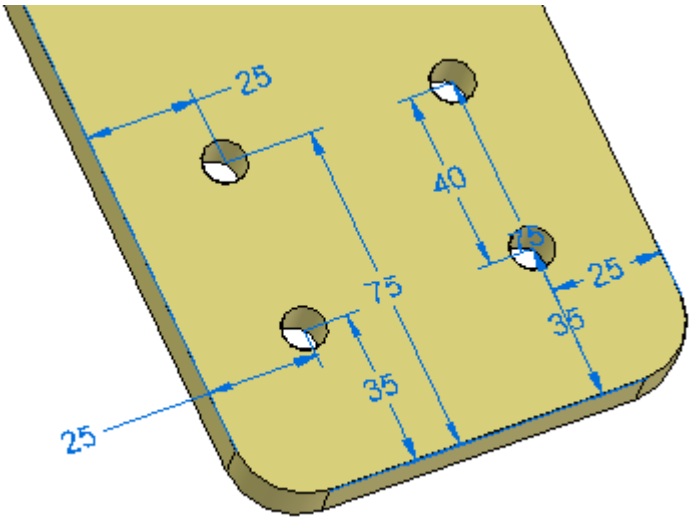
- Place the dimension. Change it to 25 mm (ensure the arrow points towards the right).



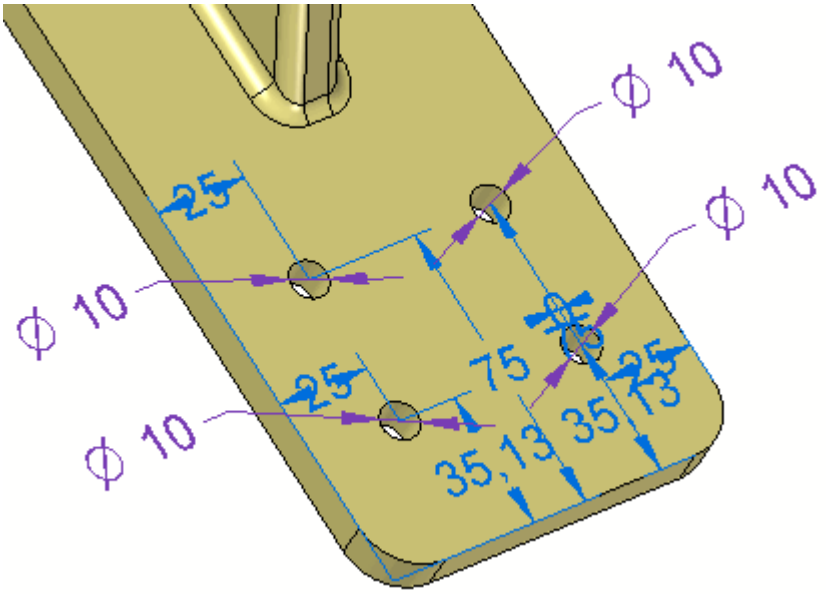
Create another dimension between the bottom edge and the hole center. Change it to 75 mm.



- Repeat for the lower left hand hole, changing to 35 mm from the bottom edge and 25 mm from left edge.



- Use the Smart Dimension command to place diameters on the four holes.

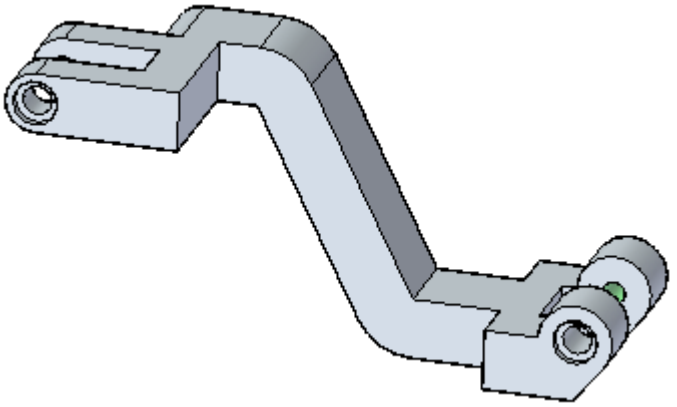


- Save and close the part file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to place hole features on a solid model. You learned how to place holes with precision input using short-cut keys to dimension to geometric keypoints.

Activity: Edit holes



Overview

This activity demonstrates the process of editing holes.

Objectives

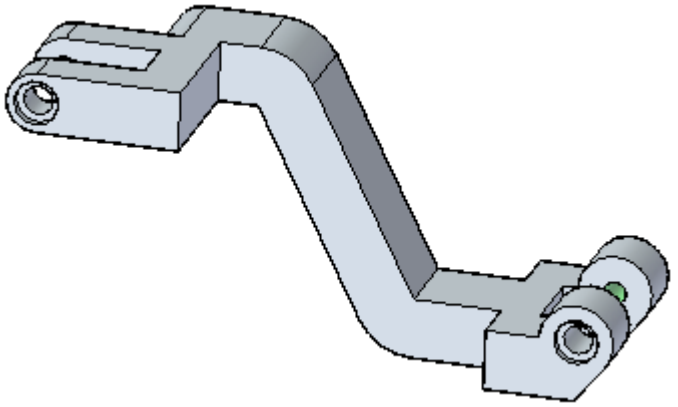
Modify existing holes in a lifter.

In this activity you will:

- Change the hole size.
- Change the type of holes.
- Add new holes.
- Separate one hole instance from others.

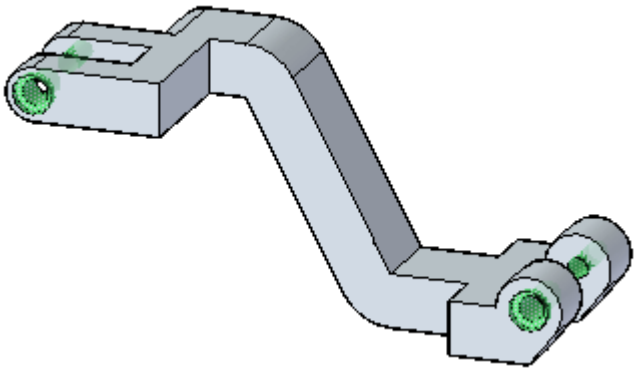
Activity: Edit holes

Open *hole_edit.par*.



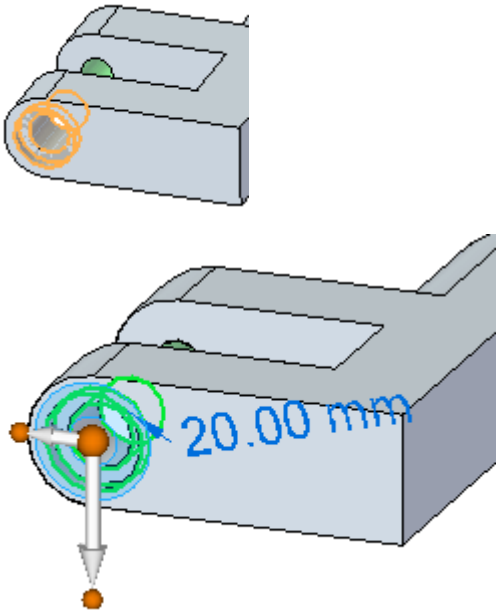
Note

Four holes exist on this part, represented in two face sets (Hole1 and Hole3) in Pathfinder.

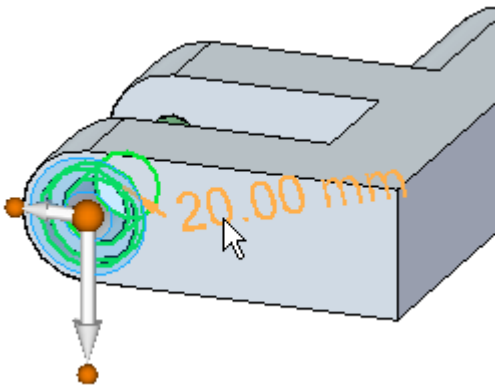


Modify hole sizes

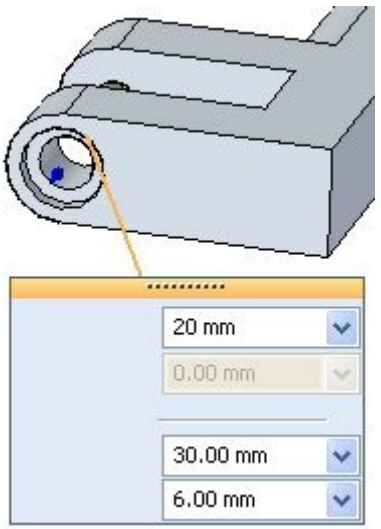
- Select the left hand counter bore hole (Hole 1).



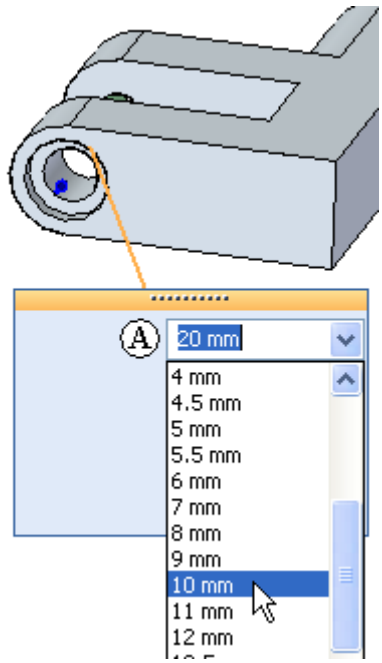
- Select the dimension handle.

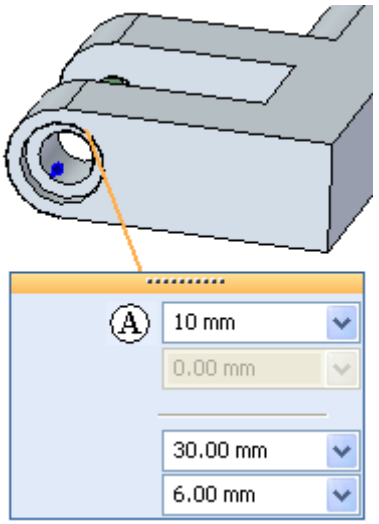


The Hole Options dialog box appears, along with the Hole command bar.

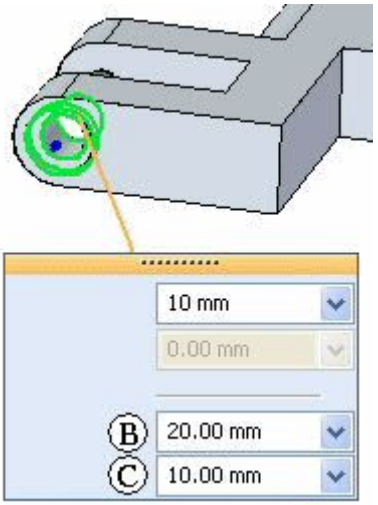


Change the Diameter: value (A) to 10 mm using the list.

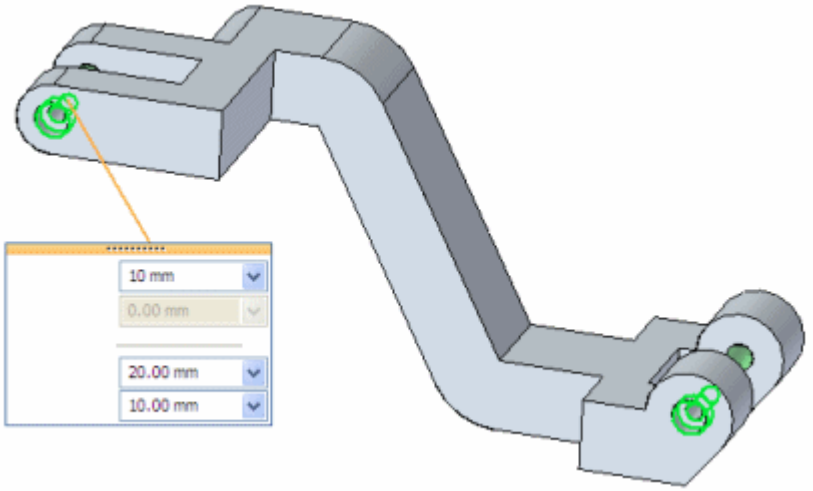




Change the counter bore diameter (B) to 20 mm and the counter bore depth (C) to 10 mm.



- Note that these changes propagate to the lower right hand counter bore. This is due to the fact that these two holes were placed within the same command. They exist within the same face set.

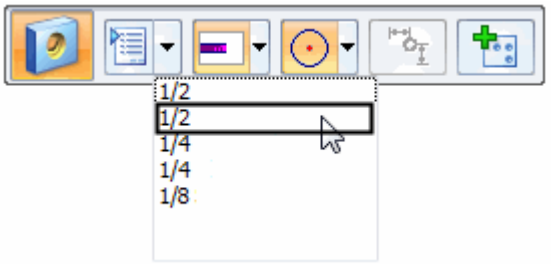


Note

All changes to a single hole within a face set affects all other hole instances in that face set.

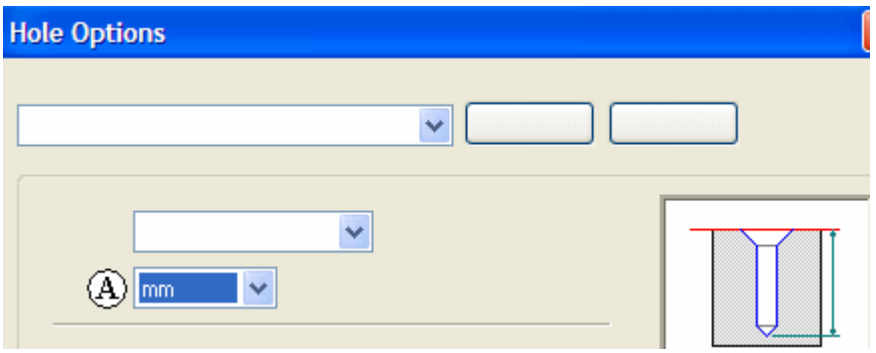
Change the hole type

- While you still have the hole selected, on command bar, change the type to *1/2 Countersink*.



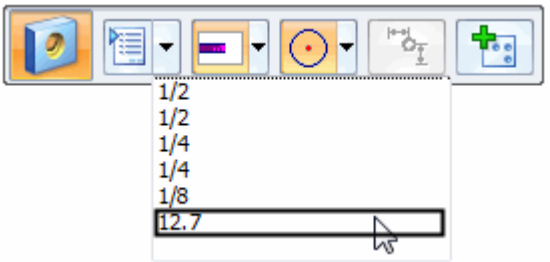
By default, the 1/2 Countersink parameters are in English units.

You can change the units to Metric by selecting the Hole Options button and selecting mm from the Unit list (A).

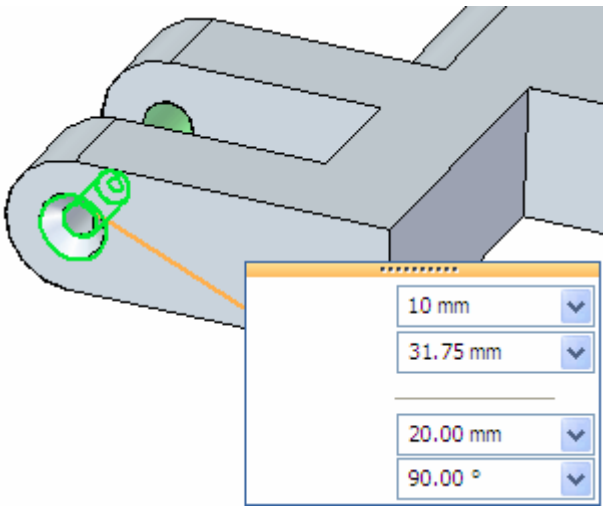


Enter into the Saved Settings field the name *12.7 mm Countersink* and select Save.

Not only have the hole parameters changes to Metric units, but the saved settings are now available from the command bar.



Change the diameter to 10 mm, and the countersink diameter to 20 mm.

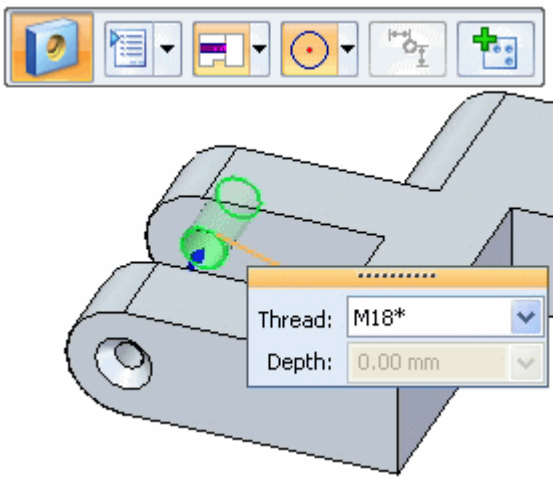


Note

You can save as many frequently-used settings as needed across your design organization. See the Help article *Holes.txt and Pipethreads.txt files* for more information.

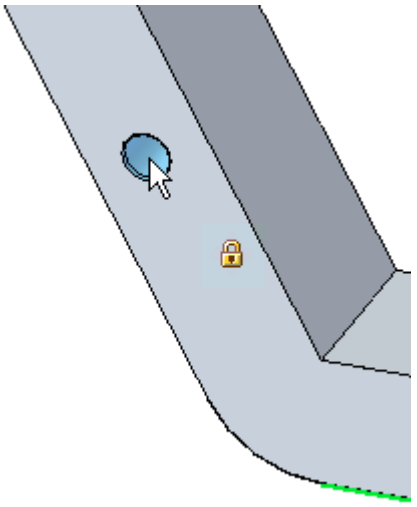
Add holes

- Select the upper simple hole at top-left of the part and select its diameter handle.



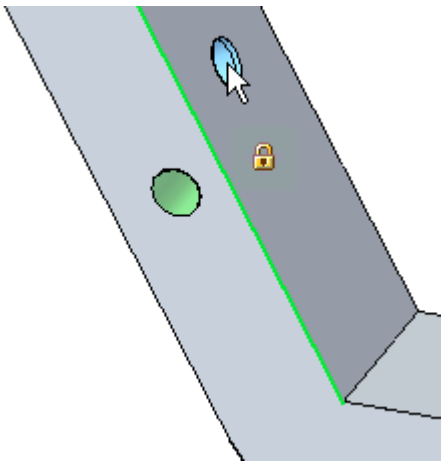
On the command bar, select the Add button .

Place the new hole on the central beam as shown.



Note

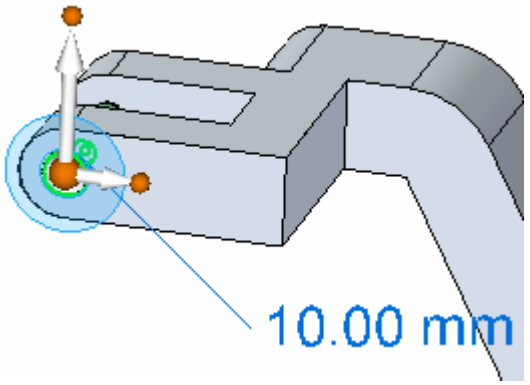
You can add as many holes carrying the same attributes as the selected one. These added holes can be placed on any face, unless you lock a plane.



Separate one hole instance from the parent

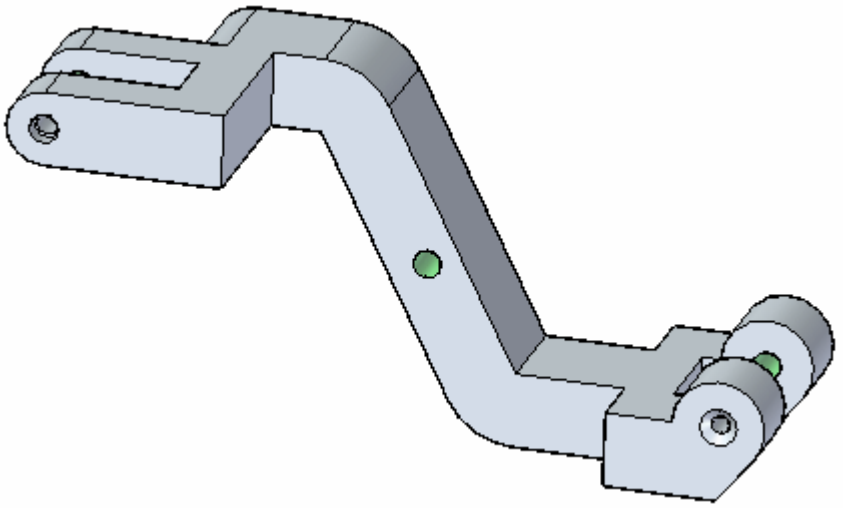
To change the parameters of just one hole of a group, use the Separate command on the short-cut menu.

- Select the countersink hole at the left end of the part. Right-click and select Separate.



- Select the hole's handle, and select 1/2 Counter bore from the command bar list.

  Note that the hole changes independently of the right hand one.



- Save and Close this file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to edit existing hole features on a solid model. You also learned how to edit one hole in a set without changing the whole set.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. How do you lock a plane for hole placement?

2. If you are placing a hole on a locked plane and you pause the cursor over an edge, pressing which key defines a dimension from the edge's midpoint to the hole center?

3. Can you place a hole on a cylinder?

Lesson summary

- You can construct simple, threaded, tapered, counterbore and countersink holes using the Hole command.
- You can specify a straight thread, a standard pipe thread, or a tapered pipe thread when you set the Type option to Threaded.
- The Holes.txt and PipeThreads.txt files are ASCII text files that are used to populate hole size values on the Hole Options dialog box. You can use a text editor, such as Notepad, to add or edit values in these files. By default, the files are located in the Solid Edge Program folder.

Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. How do you lock a plane for hole placement?

   Pause the cursor over the plane and either press the F3 key or select the lock icon in the view.

2. If you are placing a hole on a locked plane and you pause the cursor over an edge, pressing which key defines a dimension from the midpoint of an edge to the hole center?

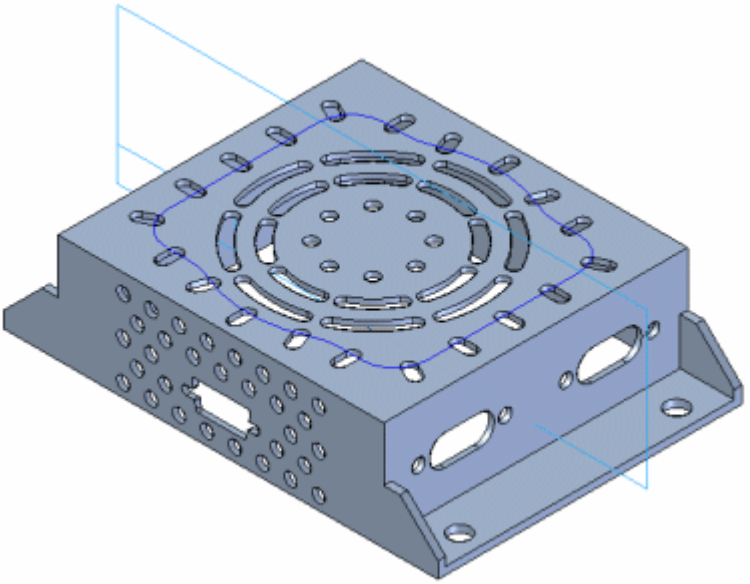
   Press the M key to define a dimension from the midpoint to the center of the hole.

3. Can you place a hole on a cylinder?

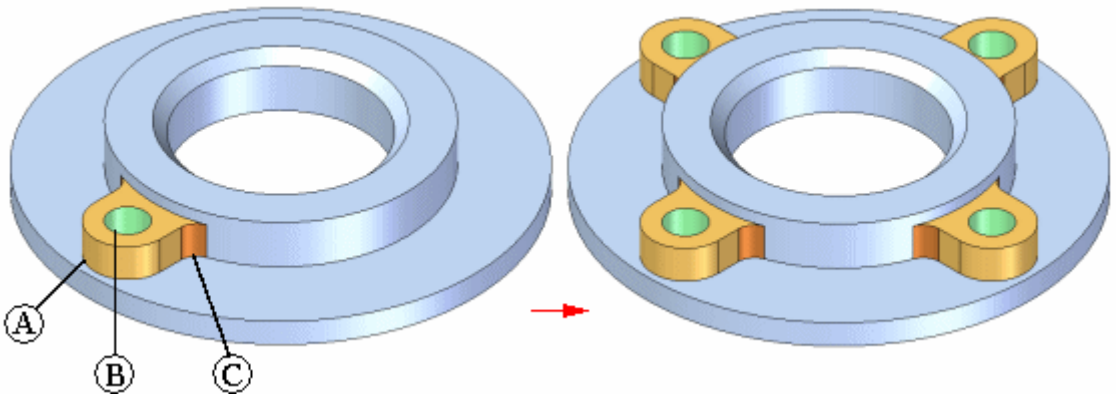
   Yes. Press F3 as you move your cursor over the cylinder and a tangent plane will display, serving as the placement plane for the hole.

Pattern features

You construct a pattern feature by copying a parent element in a rectangular, circular, region fill, along a curve, or mirror arrangement.



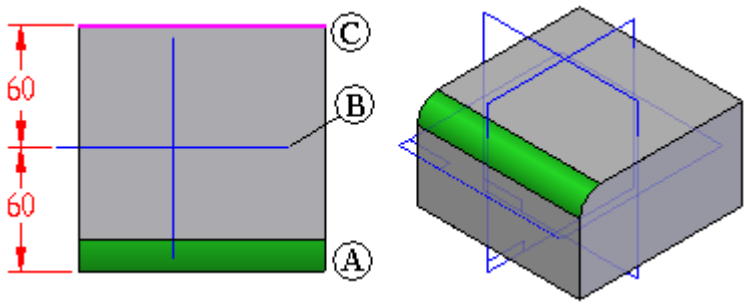
When patterning part features, the parent element for a pattern can contain more than one part feature. For example, you can pattern sketch-based features, such as a protrusion (A), and a hole (B), and treatment features, such as a round (C), in one operation.



The parent element is included in the occurrence count for rectangular patterns, circular patterns, and patterns along curves. For example, if you construct a 4 by 3 rectangular pattern of holes (four holes in the x direction and three holes in the y direction) the resulting pattern feature contains the parent feature and eleven copies.

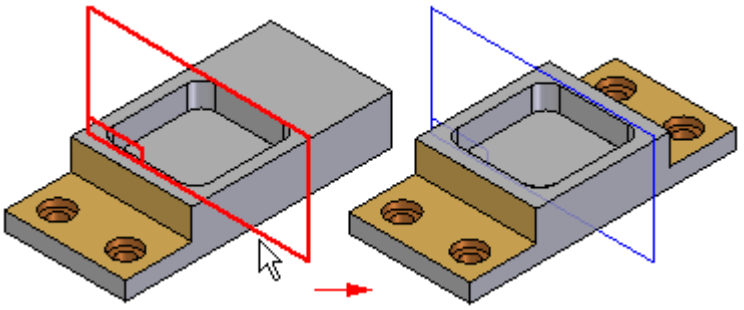
Patterning treatment features

You can pattern a treatment feature by itself or along with a sketch-based feature. For example, you can mirror the round feature (A) about the reference plane (B) to add a round to edge (C). This operation succeeds because the parent edges are symmetric about the reference plane.



Mirroring features

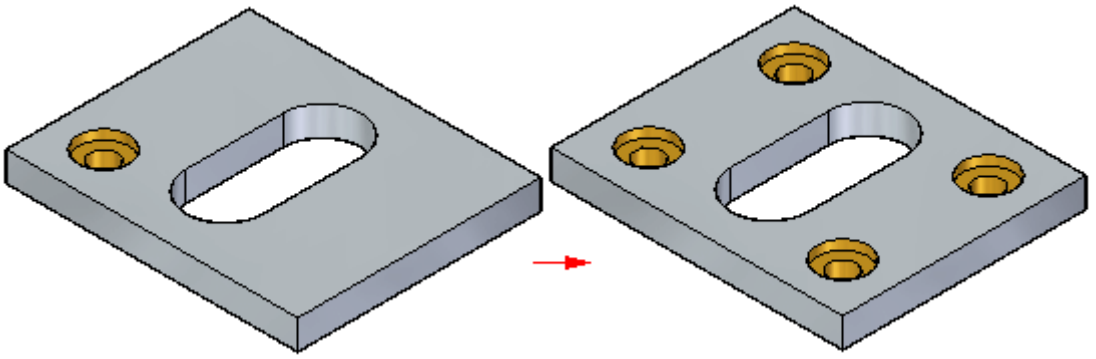
You can mirror one or more features, faces, or the entire part with the Mirror command. The mirror plane can be a reference plane or a planar face.



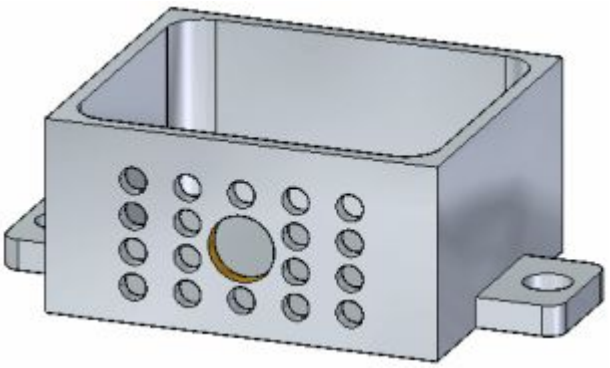
When mirroring faces or features in a solid model, if the mirrored faces touch the solid model, they are combined with the solid model, unless you set the Detach option on QuickBar. When you set the Detach option, the faces or features are mirrored as a construction body.

Rectangular Pattern command (3D features)

Constructs a rectangular pattern of selected elements. For example, you can construct a hole feature, and then construct a rectangular pattern of holes using the hole feature as the parent element of the pattern.



You can suppress pattern occurrences to define gaps in a pattern to avoid other features.



Workflow overview

You construct rectangular patterns using the following workflow:

1. Select the elements you want to pattern.
2. Start the Rectangular Pattern command.
3. Select a plane onto which you want to place the pattern preview.
4. Define the pattern parameters using command bar and the dynamic input boxes in the graphics window.

Selecting the elements to pattern

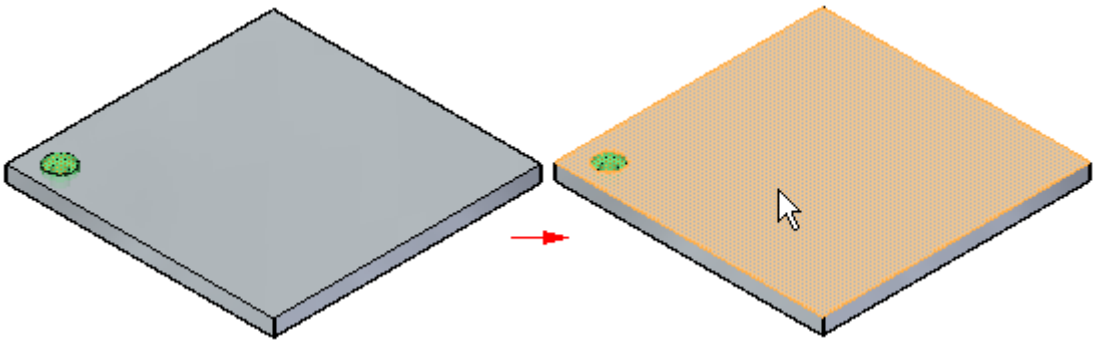
You can select features, faces, and face sets, as the parent elements to pattern. You can select the elements in the graphics window or in PathFinder.

Starting the Rectangular Pattern command

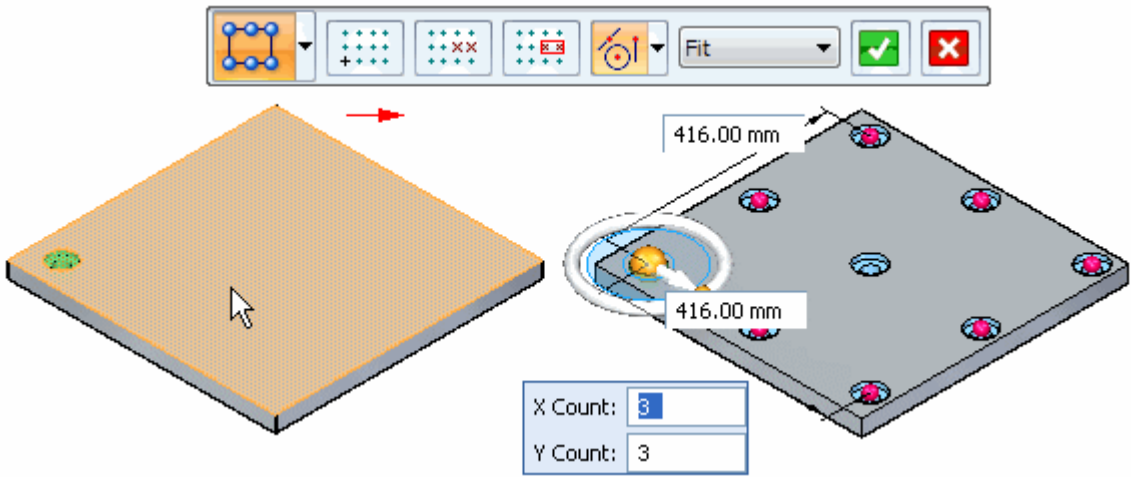
The Rectangular Pattern command is only available when you have selected valid elements first.

Selecting a plane for the pattern preview

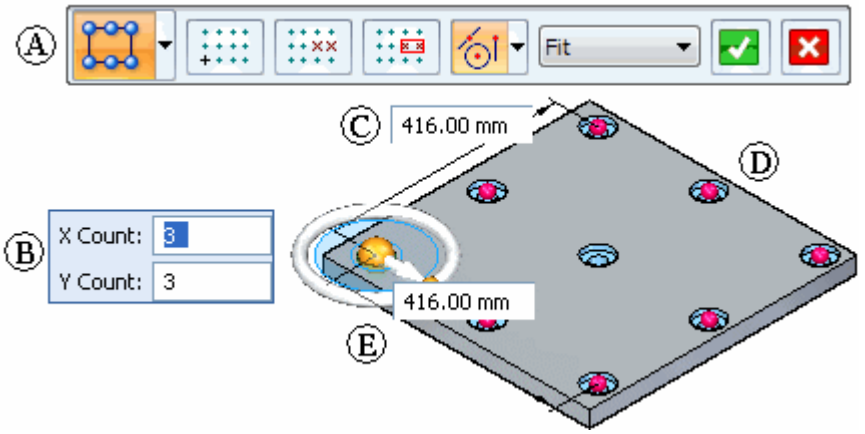
You can select any planar face, reference plane, or base coordinate system plane for the pattern preview. For example, to place a rectangular pattern of the hole shown, the planar face that the hole pierces is appropriate for the pattern preview.



When you select the planar face, a default preview pattern is displayed, along with various on-screen tools you can use to define and edit the pattern parameters.



These on-screen tools include command bar (A), occurrence count box (B), dynamic edit boxes (C), occurrence handles (D), and the orient vector tool (E).



Defining the pattern parameters

You can use the on-screen tools to define the following pattern parameters:

- Occurrence count
- Occurrence spacing
- Pattern angle
- Suppressed occurrences

Options are also available for adding new features to an existing pattern, positioning the pattern origin, and so forth.

Defining occurrence count and spacing

Two options on command bar are available for defining the occurrence count and spacing of pattern occurrences:

- Fit
- Fixed

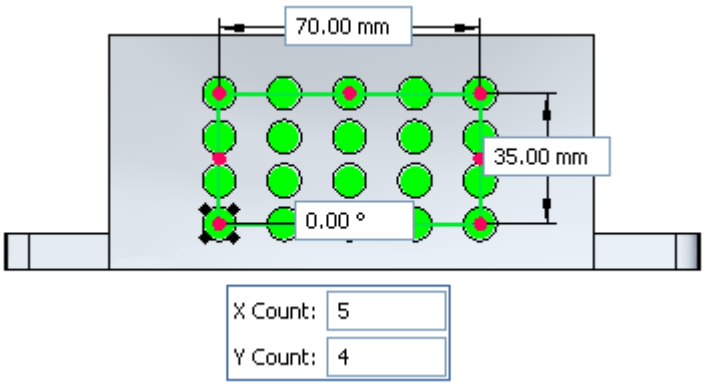
These options specify whether you want to define the overall height and width of the pattern, or the spacing between individual pattern occurrences. With both methods, you specify the number of occurrences in the X and Y directions using the occurrence count boxes. You can also define the spacing by dragging occurrence handles, which is described later.

Fit example

With the Fit option, you specify the number of occurrences in the X and Y directions, and the overall height and width of the pattern. The x spacing and y spacing values are calculated automatically.

For example, you can set the Fit option and then specify an X Count of 5, a Y Count of 4, a width of 70, and a height of 35.

The x and y spacing between each occurrence is calculated automatically.

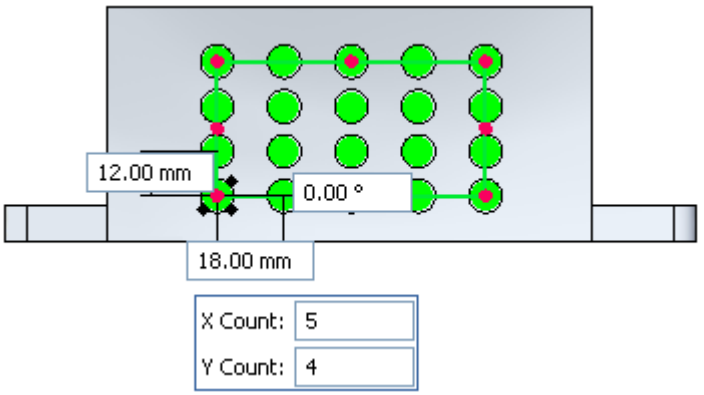


Fixed example

With the Fixed option, you specify the number of occurrences in the X and Y directions, and the X and Y spacing. The width and height values are calculated automatically.

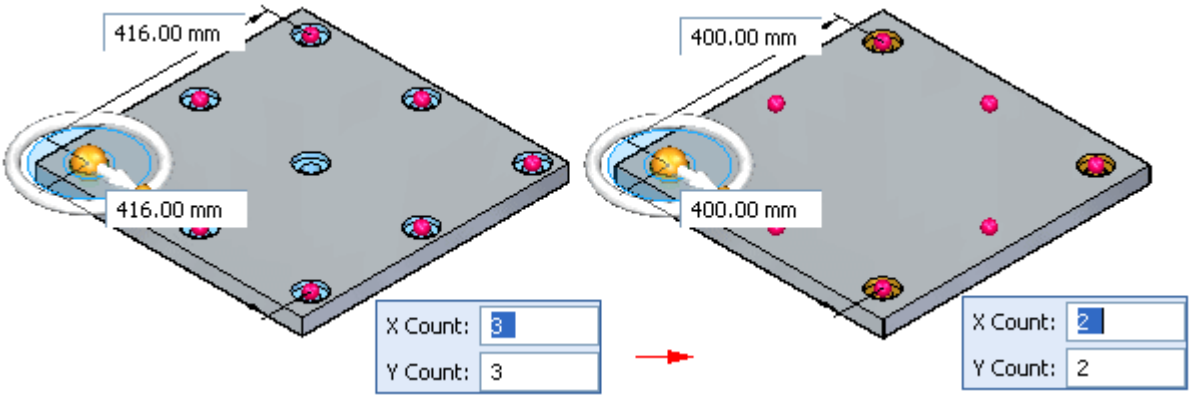
For example, you set the Fixed option and then specify an X Count of 5, a Y Count of 4, an X spacing of 18, and a Y spacing of 12.

The width and height is calculated automatically.

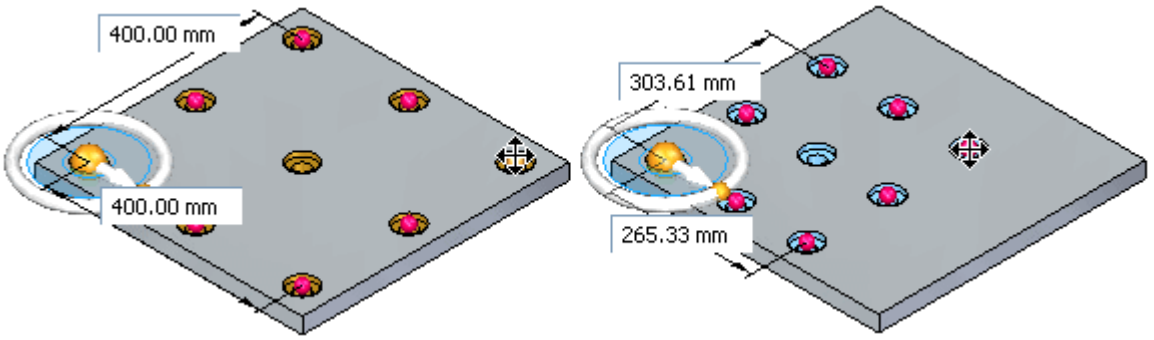


Using dynamic edit boxes and occurrence handles

You use the dynamic edit boxes to specify the exact values you want for occurrence count and spacing. For example, when the Fit option is set, you can use the dynamic edit boxes to specify the total number of occurrences in the X and Y directions, and the overall height and width of the pattern.

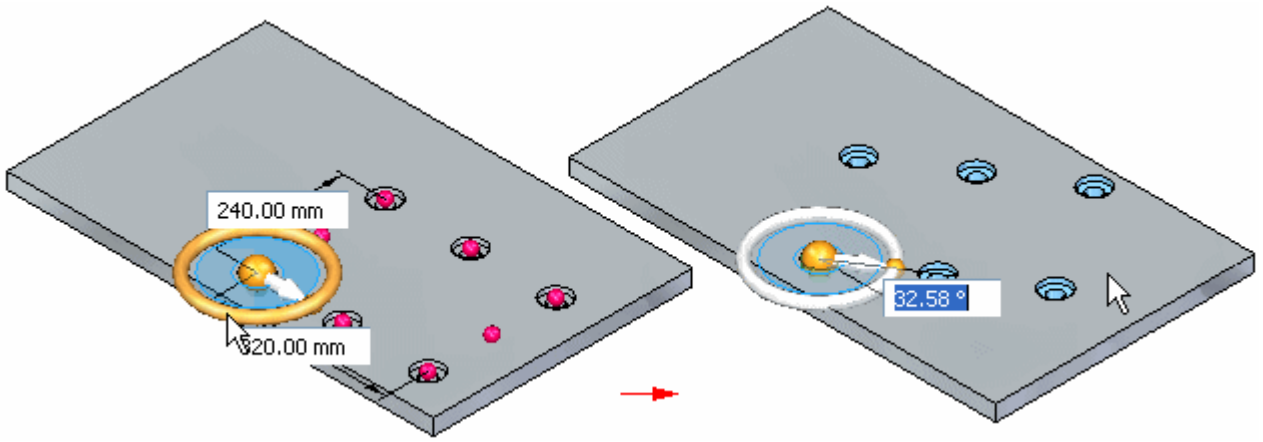


You can also change the height and width of the pattern by dragging an occurrence handle using the cursor. First, position the cursor over an occurrence handle, then drag the handle to a new location. The values in the height and width boxes dynamically update.

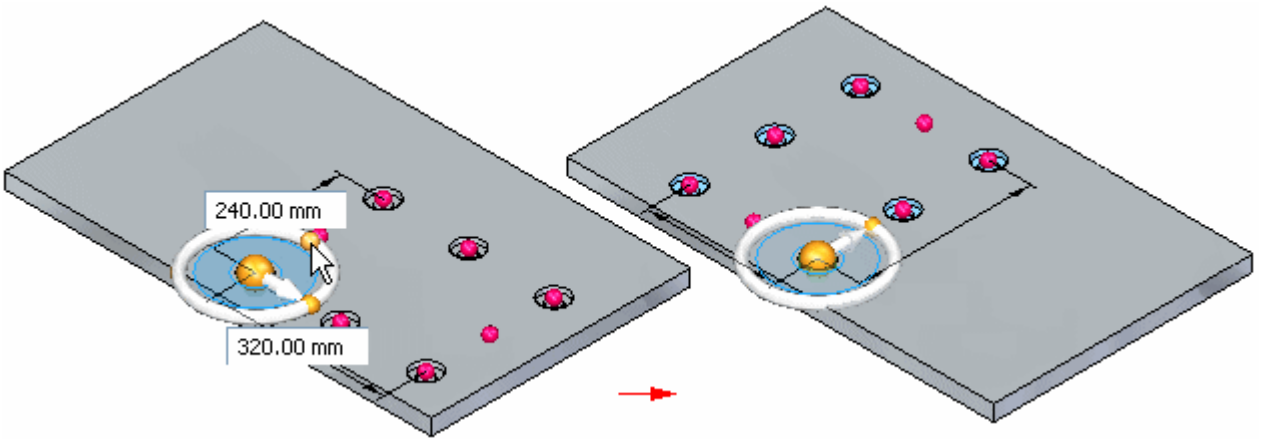


Orient vector tool

The orient vector tool is similar to the steering wheel, and you can use it to manipulate the angular orientation of the pattern. For example, you can use the torus on the orient vector tool to rotate the pattern dynamically by dragging the cursor.



You can use the knobs on the orient vector tool to reorient the pattern in 90 degree increments.



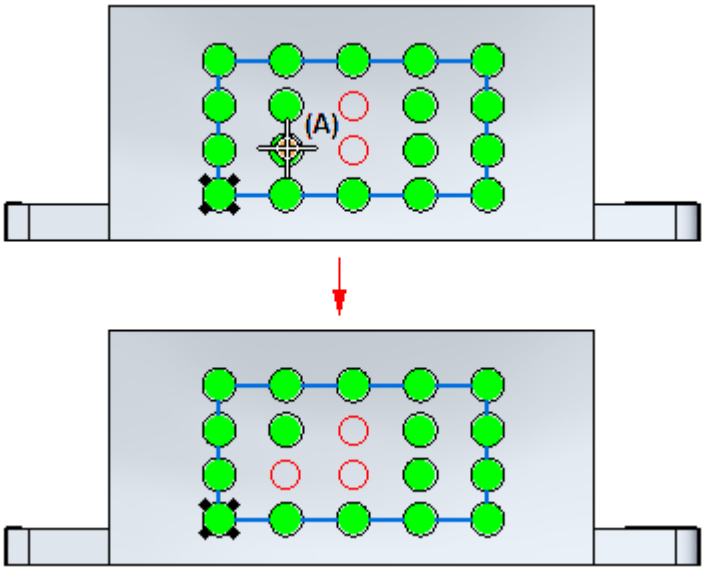
You can also reposition the origin of the pattern to another keypoint on the model.

Suppressing pattern occurrences

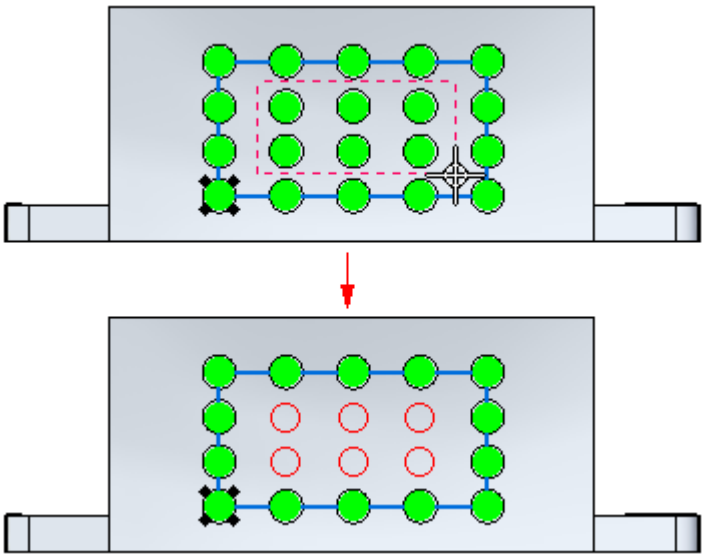
You can suppress individual patterns occurrences or you can suppress a group of pattern occurrences. You can suppress occurrences while you are constructing the pattern or you can edit the pattern later to suppress occurrences.

Suppressing individual occurrences

You suppress individual occurrences in patterns with the Suppress Occurrence button on command bar. With the pattern feature selected, you can click the Suppress Occurrence button on command bar, then click occurrence symbols to specify which occurrences you want to suppress (A). The symbols change size and color to indicate that the corresponding occurrences are suppressed.



You can also drag the cursor to fence any number of occurrences.

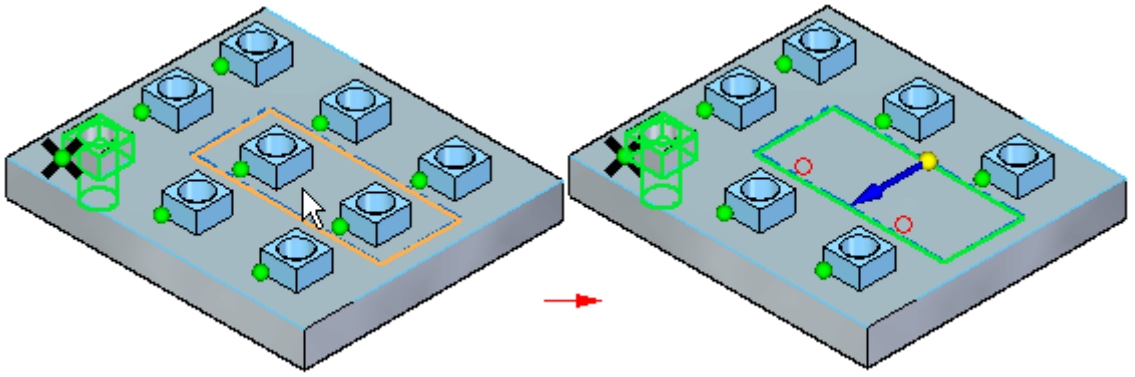


This option is useful for when you need to define gaps in a large pattern, for example, to leave space for another feature.

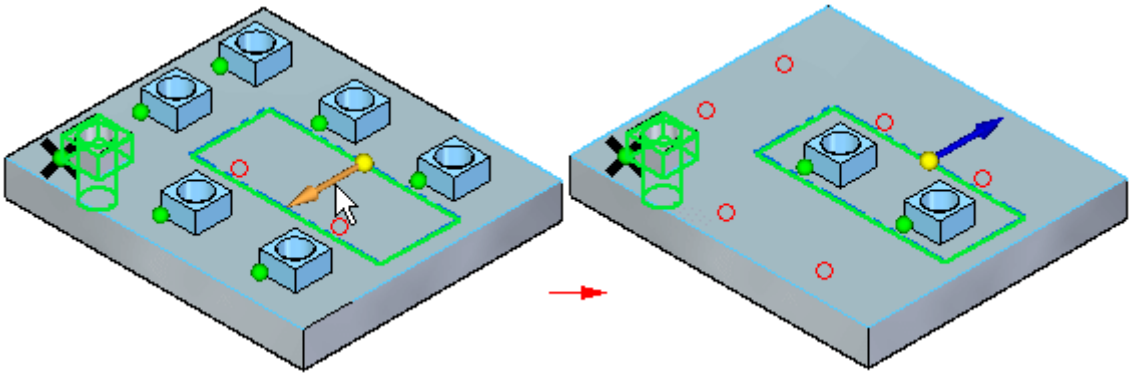
You can also display suppressed pattern occurrences with the Suppress Occurrence button. Click the button and then select the suppressed occurrences you want to reappear.

Suppressing occurrences using a sketch region or plane

You can also suppress pattern occurrences using a sketch region or planar face. With the pattern selected, you can click the Suppress Regions button, and then select the sketch region that encloses the occurrences you want to suppress. The occurrences inside the region suppress, and a suppression direction arrow appears.

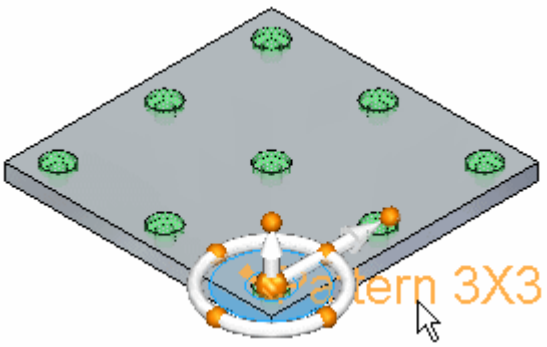


You can click the direction arrow to specify that the occurrences outside the sketch region suppress instead.



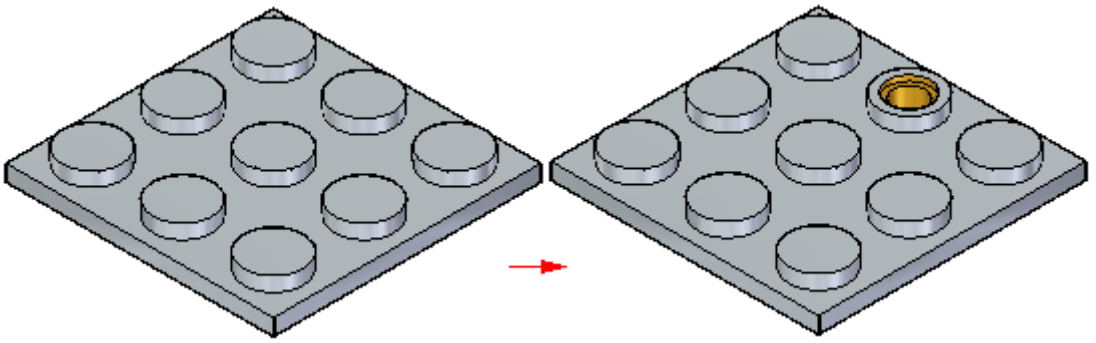
Editing pattern parameters

You edit the parameters for an existing pattern by first selecting the pattern using PathFinder or QuickPick. Selecting the pattern displays the pattern action handle. You can then click the pattern action handle to display the same set of on-screen tools that appear when you create a pattern.

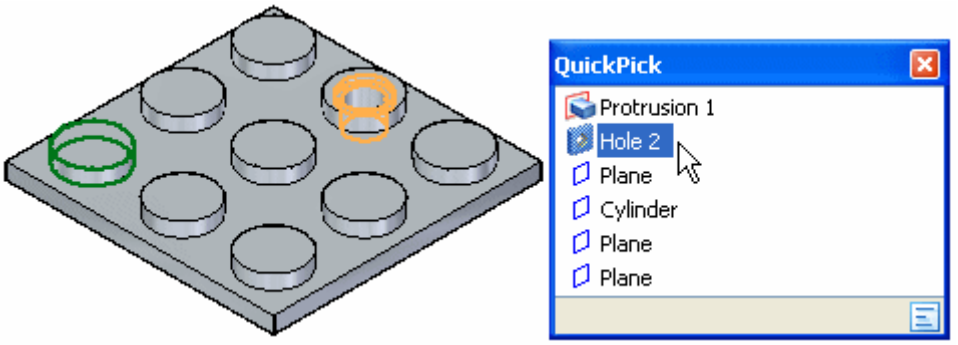


Adding new elements to an existing pattern

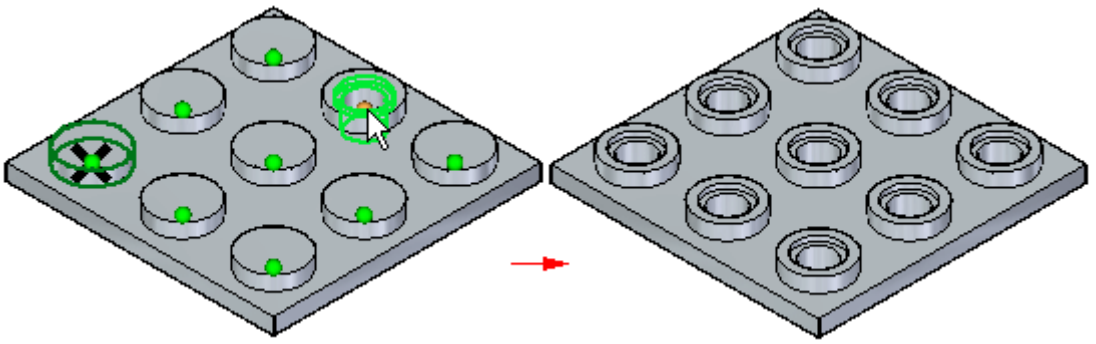
You can add new elements to an existing pattern using the Add to Pattern button on command bar when you are editing an existing pattern. For example, you can add a hole feature to any occurrence on a pattern.



You can then edit the pattern feature, and use the Add to Pattern button on command bar to select the hole feature and add it to the pattern.

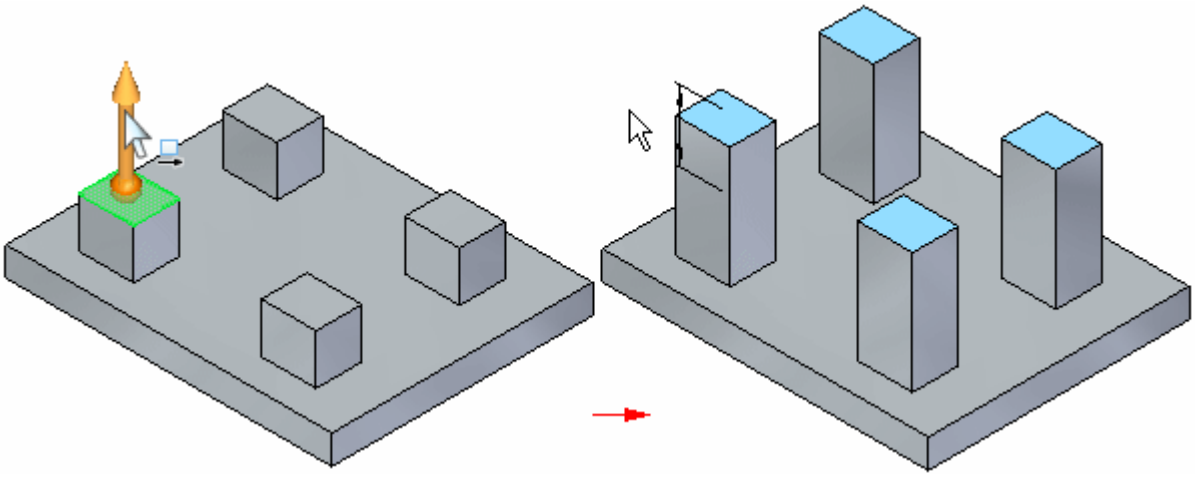


You also need to specify the occurrence position onto which you added the hole feature. The feature is then added to all occurrences in the pattern.



Synchronous editing of pattern features

Pattern features behave as a set when performing synchronous modifications, such as moving faces using the steering wheel. For example, if you move a face on one of the pattern occurrences, all the corresponding faces in all the other pattern occurrences also move.



Deleting pattern occurrences

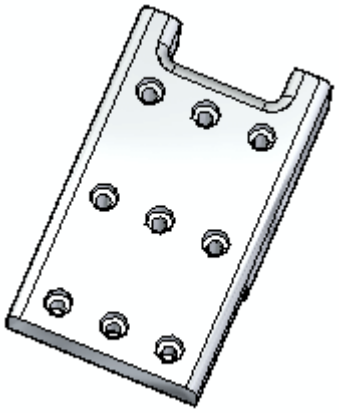
You can also delete pattern occurrences. Position the cursor over the pattern occurrence you want to delete. When the ellipsis appears, left-click to display QuickPick. You can then use QuickPick to select the pattern occurrence, and then press the Delete key to delete it.

When you delete a pattern occurrence, the software is actually suppressing the corresponding occurrence symbol on the pattern. Deleting, rather than suppressing, an occurrence can be useful when working with large or complex models, because you do not have to edit the pattern feature to suppress the occurrence. To restore the deleted occurrence, you can use the workflow for displaying suppressed occurrences.

Guidelines for creating pattern features

- You can pattern multiple elements in one operation.
- You can suppress individual occurrences in a pattern.
- You can delete individual feature occurrences in a pattern.
- You can add features to an existing pattern.

Activity: Rectangular Patterns



Overview

This activity demonstrates the patterning of features.

Objectives

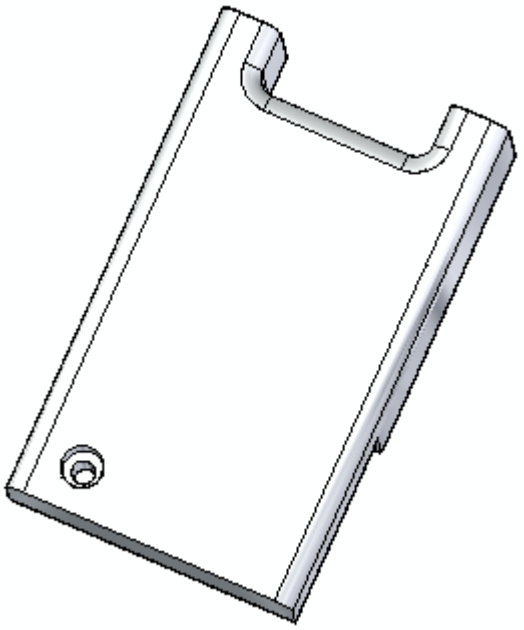
Work with a rectangular pattern of holes.

In this activity you will:

- Create the pattern.
- Change the pattern's dimensions.
- Change the pattern's parameters.
- Suppress occurrences within the pattern.
- Modify the original feature (a hole) to observe the change in the pattern.
- Add a feature to the pattern.

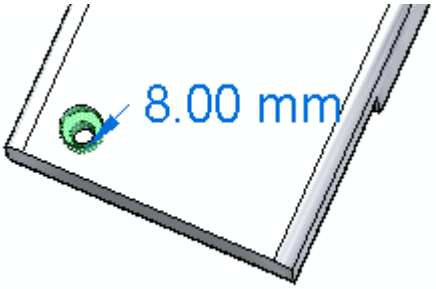
Activity: Rectangular patterns

Open *patterns.par*.



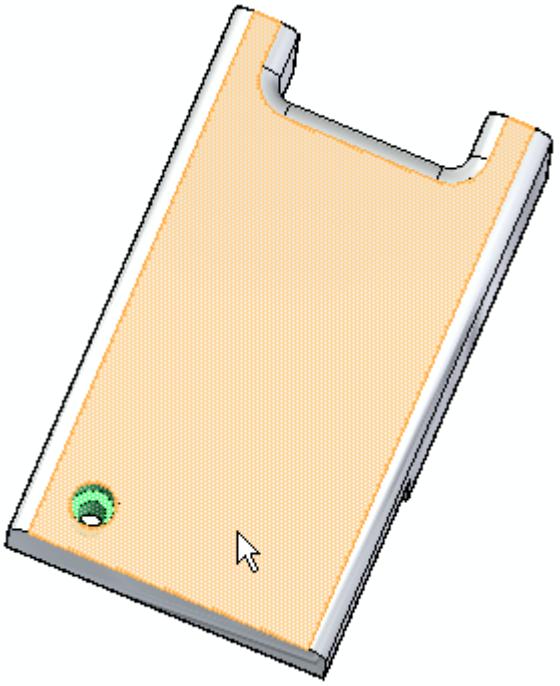
Create a rectangular pattern of a hole

- Select the hole feature.

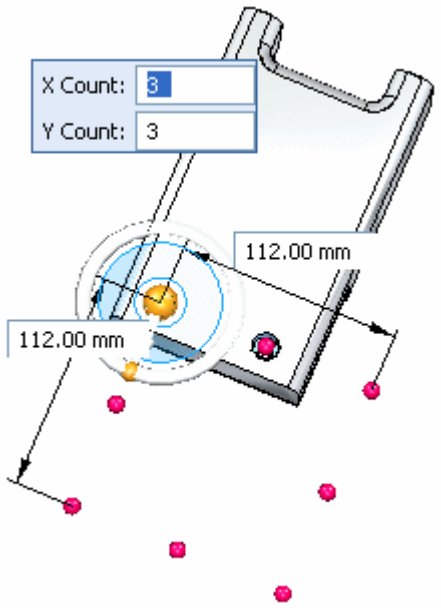


- On the Home tab® Pattern group, choose the Rectangular Pattern command.

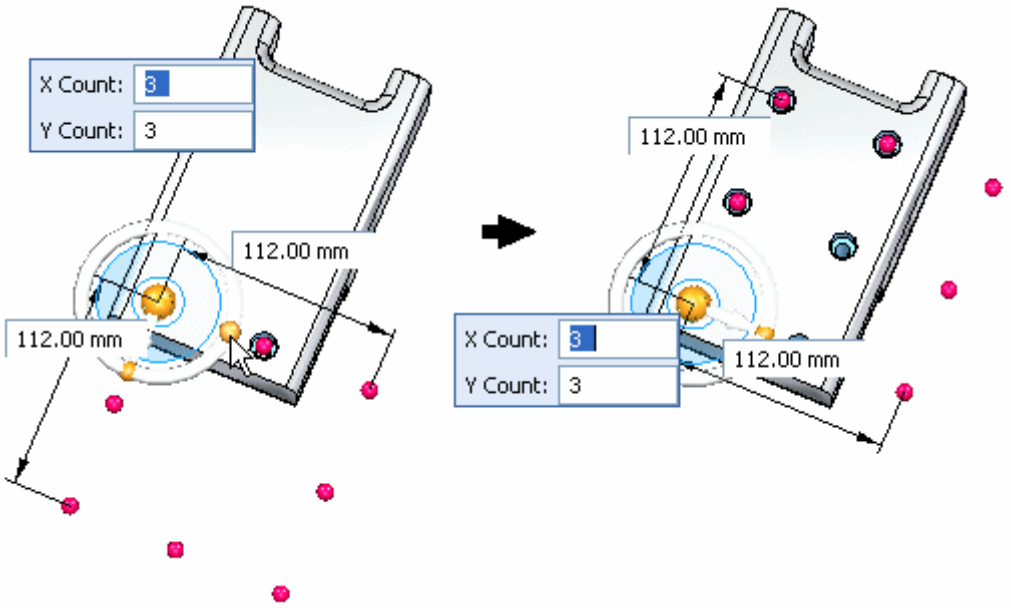
Select the top face shown.



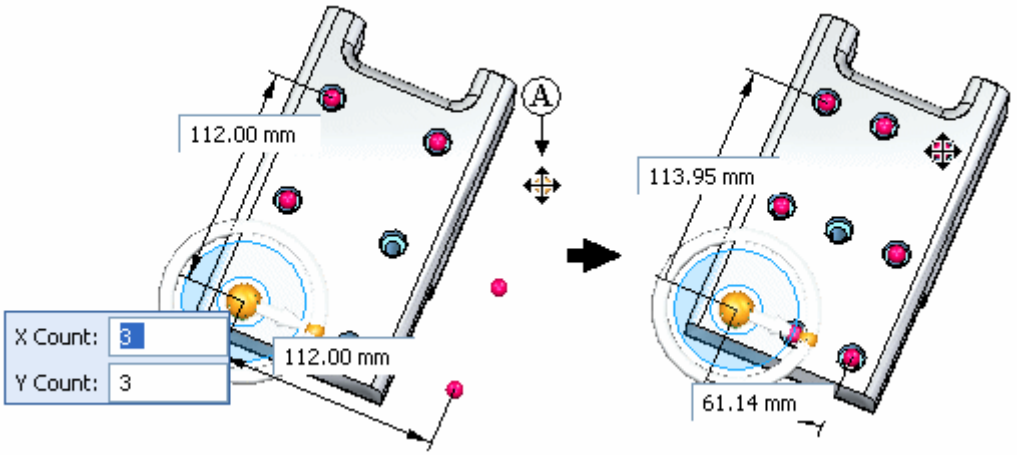
Notice the preliminary pattern position. This may differ from yours.



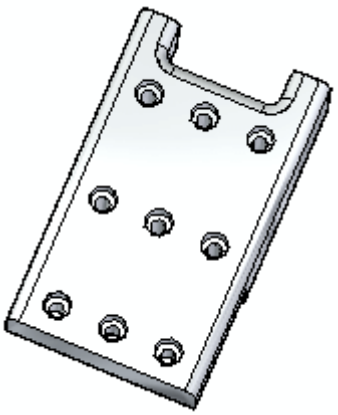
- On the steering wheel, click the cardinal point shown to define the X Count direction.



- Edit the pattern rectangle. Click the pattern rectangle point (A) and drag inside the top face. This creates a 3 x 3 pattern inside the top face.



- In the command bar, click Accept. Click in the part window to end the pattern command.



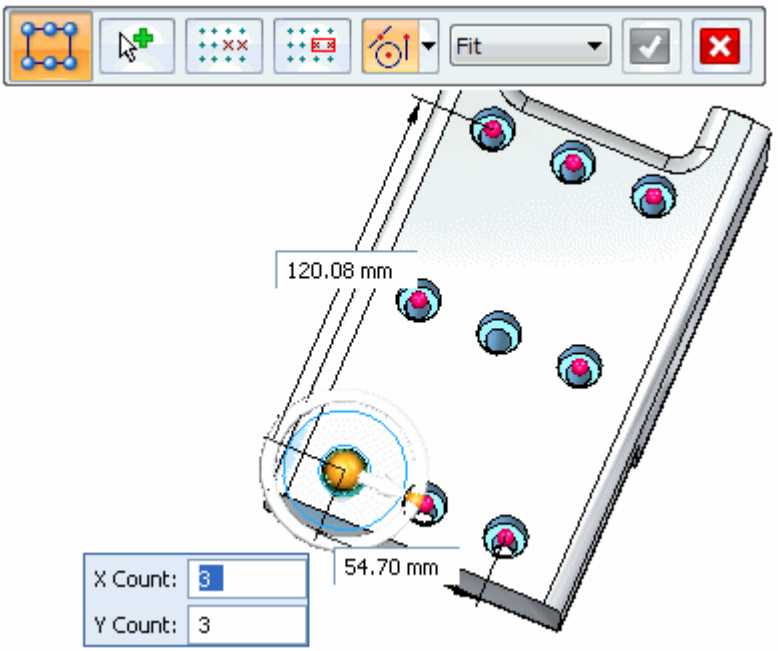
Modify the pattern size

You can change the dimensional size of the pattern in several ways.

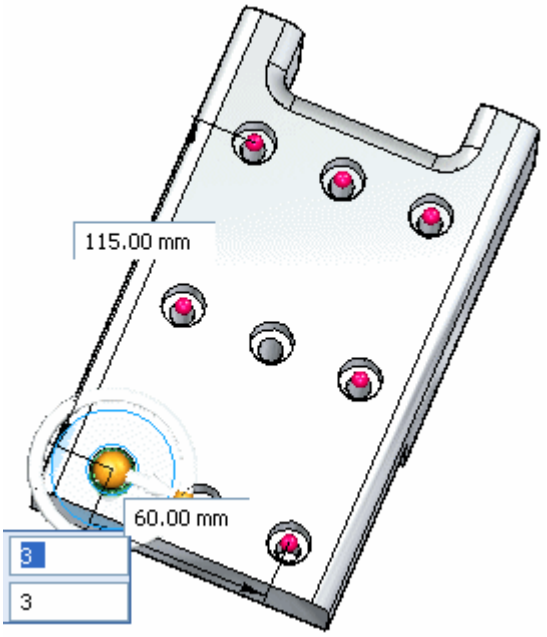
- On Pathfinder, select the Pattern face set just created (the name will be similar to *PatternX*).

- Select the pattern Edit Definition handle.

The Pattern command bar appears, as well as all of the defining dimensions.

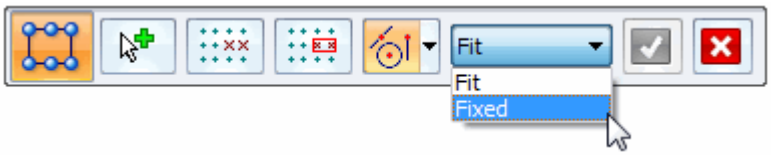


- Change the pattern width to 60 mm and the length to 115 mm.

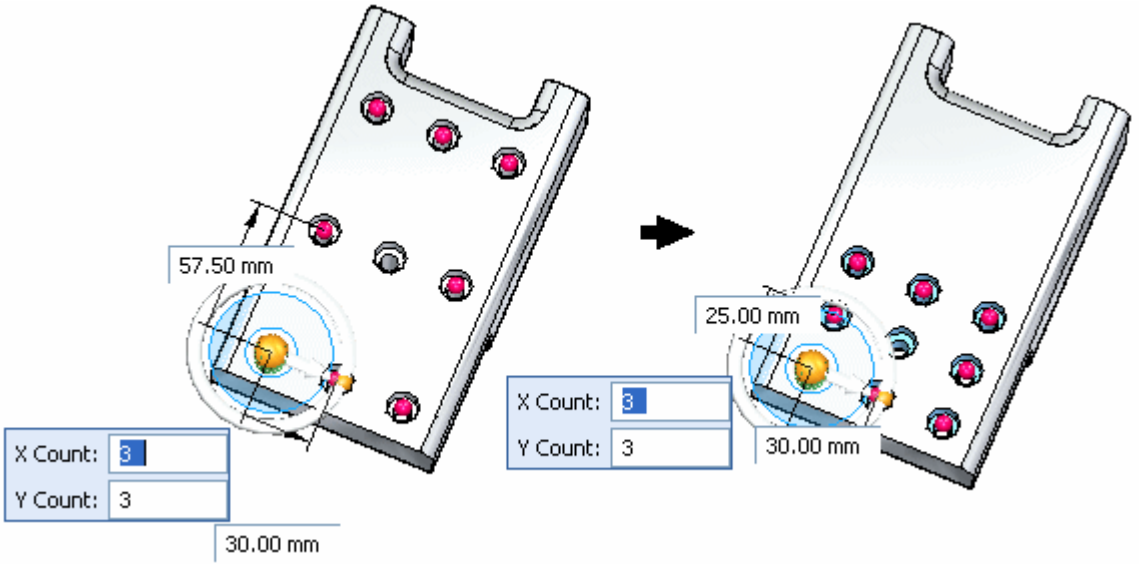


Change the pattern fill method

- On the command bar, change the Fill style to Fixed.

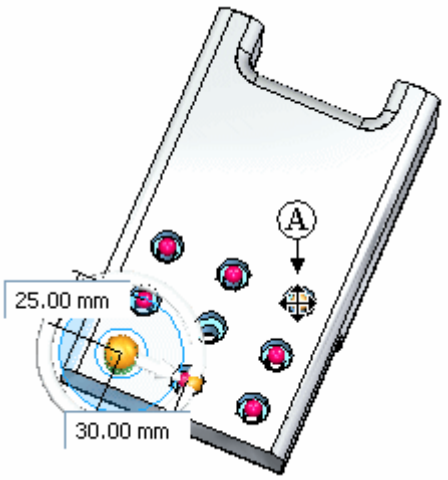


Change the occurrence separation dimension to 25 mm in the lengthwise direction.

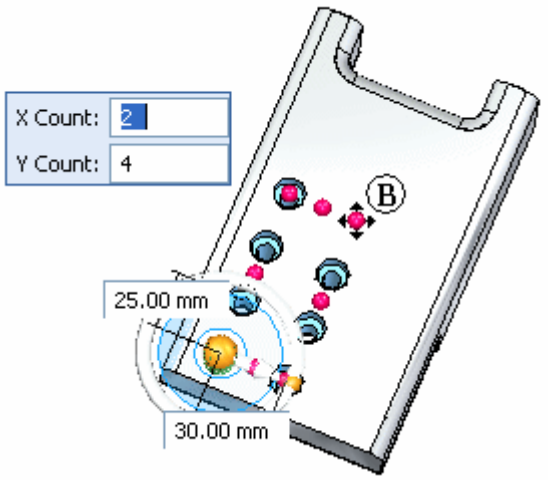


The X and Y count remains the same (3 x 3). While in the fixed mode, the X spacing is set at 30 mm and the Y spacing is set at 25 mm.

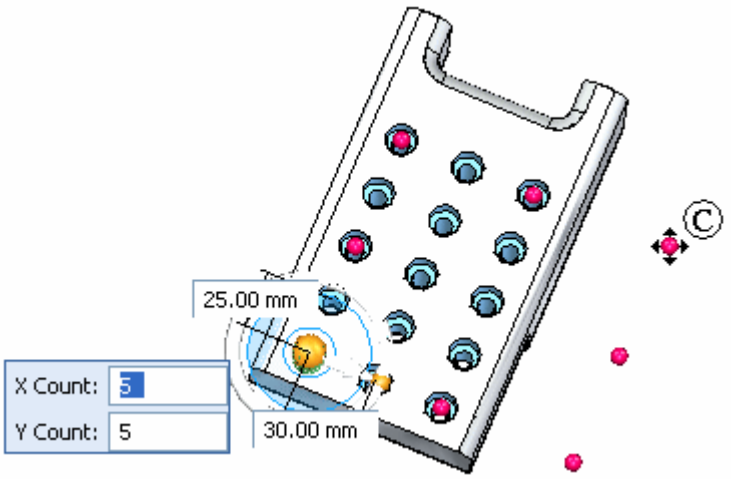
- Drag the pattern handle (A) to change the size of the pattern rectangle. As the rectangle changes size, the X and Y counts automatically change to fill in the rectangular pattern area.



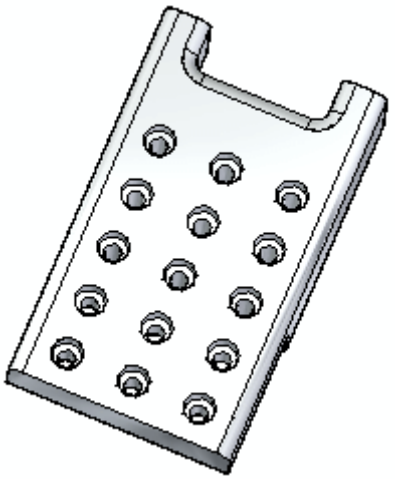
- Drag to the approximate location (B) and notice that the X and Y changes to 2 and 4.



- Drag to the approximate location (C) and notice that the X and Y changes to 5 and 5. On the command bar, click Accept.



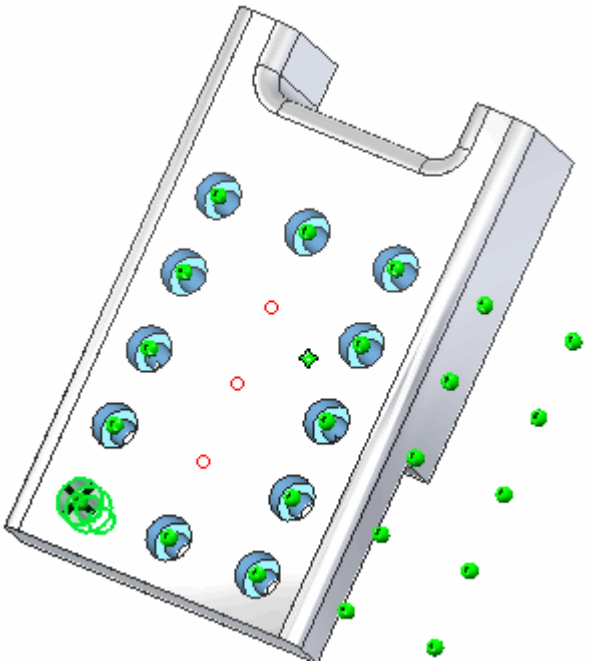
- Click in the part window to terminate the pattern edit.



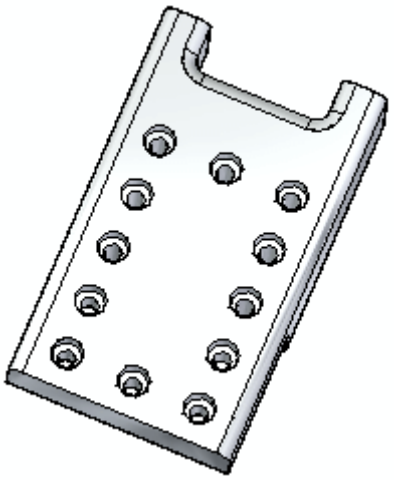
Suppress instances

- Select the pattern feature and click the edit handle. Select the *Suppress Instance* option on the Pattern command bar.

Select the middle 3 holes.



Select Accept on the Suppress command bar. Select Accept on the Pattern command bar to finish. Click in the part window to end the pattern edit.

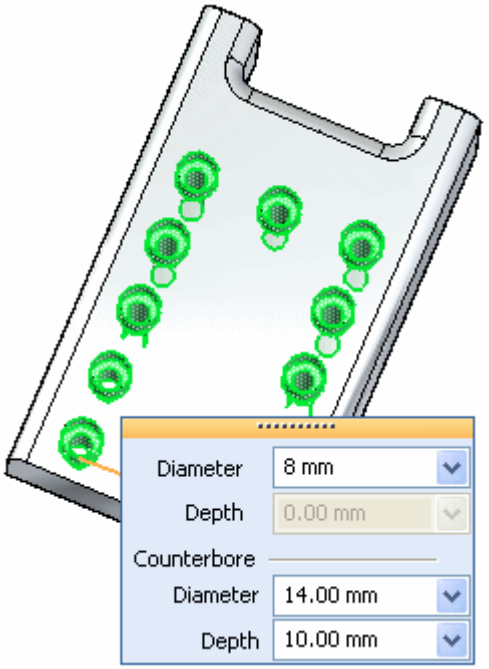


Modify the parent feature

Make a change to the original feature and observe how the change propagates through the pattern.

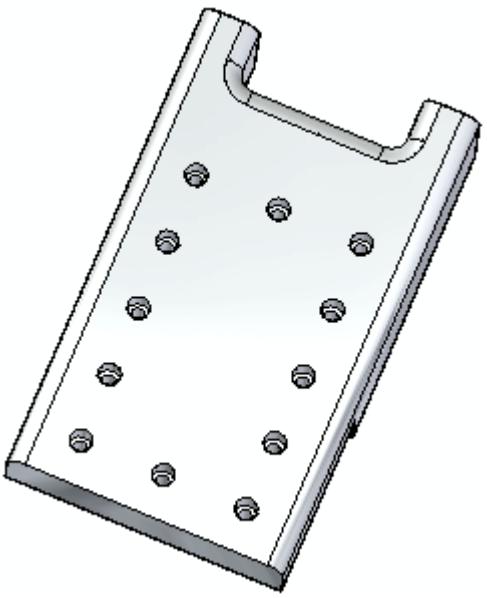
- Select the original hole. Drag the steering wheel away from the hole for clarity.

Select the Edit Definition handle to access the hole's parameters.



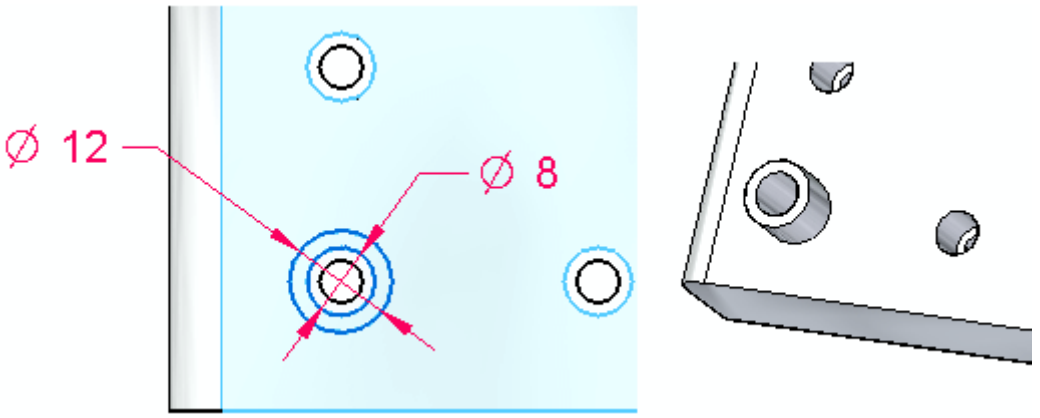
Change the diameter to 5 mm and the counter bore diameter to 8 mm.

- Press the Esc to complete the hole edit.



Add a feature to the pattern

- Construct 12 mm and 8 mm diameter circles centered on the original parent hole. Extrude the region formed by these circles a distance of 10 mm to form a boss.

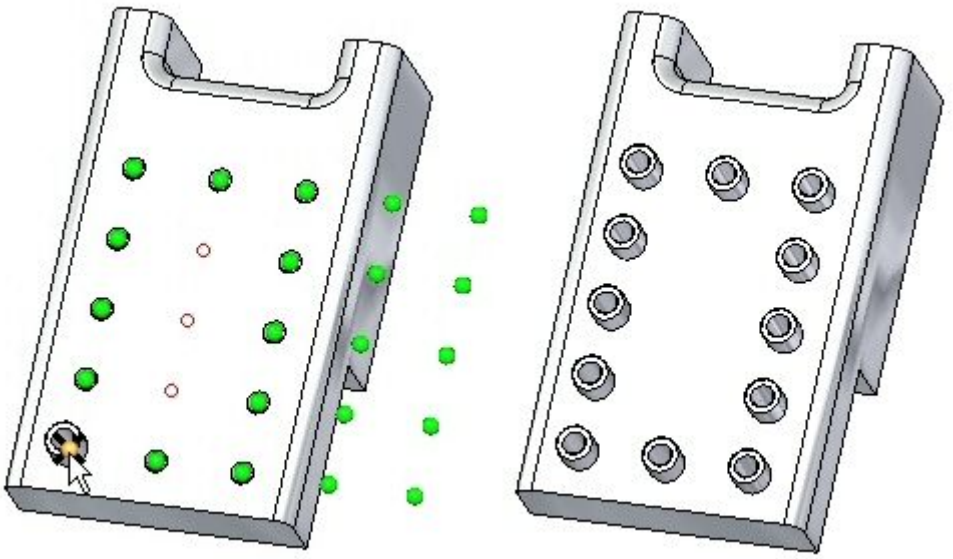


- Select the pattern feature. Select its handle to access the Pattern command bar.

  Choose the *Add to Pattern* option .

- Select the boss and accept it.

- Click the instance marker shown and then click Accept.



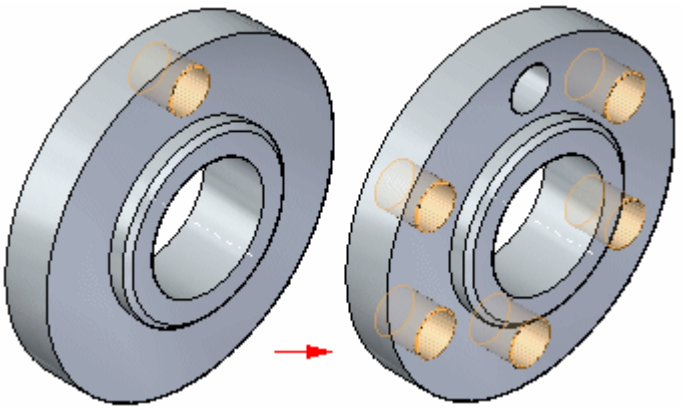
- Save and close the file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create and edit a rectangular pattern of features. With practice, you should be able to create any desired rectangular pattern.

Circular Pattern command (3D features)

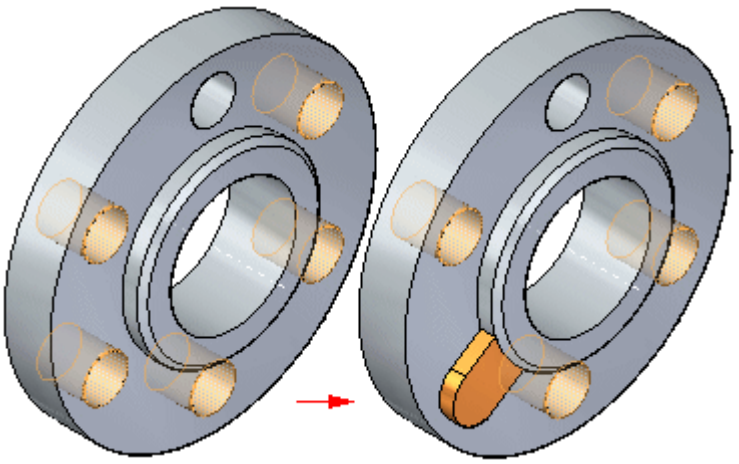
Constructs a circular pattern of selected elements. For example, you can construct a hole feature, and then construct a circular pattern of holes using the hole feature as the parent element of the pattern.



Note

Pattern features behave as a set when performing synchronous modifications, such as moving faces using the steering wheel. If you move a face in one of the pattern occurrences, all the corresponding faces in all the other pattern occurrences also move.

You can suppress individual pattern members to define gaps in a pattern to avoid other features.



Workflow overview

You construct circular patterns using the following workflow:

1. Select the elements you want to pattern.
2. Start the Circular Pattern command.
3. Select a plane onto which you want to place the pattern preview.
4. Define the pattern parameters using command bar and the dynamic input boxes in the graphics window.

Selecting the elements to pattern

You can select features, faces, and face sets as the parent elements to pattern. You can select the elements in the graphics window or in PathFinder.

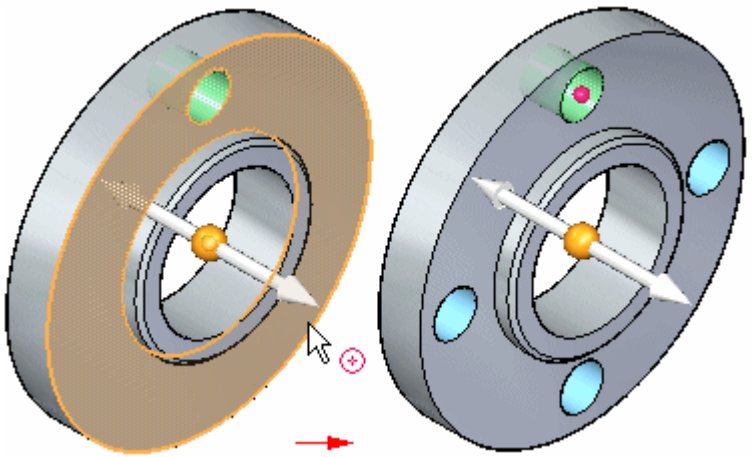
Starting the Circular Pattern command

The Circular Pattern command is only available when you select valid elements first.

Selecting a plane for the pattern preview

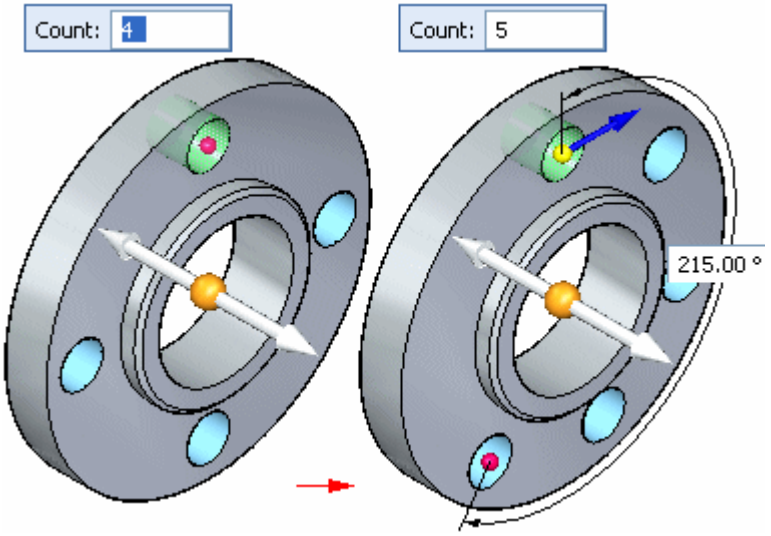
You can select any planar face, reference plane, or base coordinate system plane for the pattern preview. When you select the planar face, a default preview pattern appears.

You also define the axis of rotation for the circular pattern when selecting the pattern plane. For example, to place a circular pattern of the hole shown, the center of the circular planar face that the hole pierces is appropriate. In this example, use the Keypoints option on QuickBar to make it easier to position the axis of rotation handle at the center point of the circular model face.



Defining the pattern parameters

You can use command bar and the dynamic edit boxes in the graphics window to define the pattern parameters you want. For example, you can change the number of occurrences, and whether a partial or full circle pattern is constructed. You use the Circle/Arc Pattern option on command bar to specify a full or partial circular pattern.

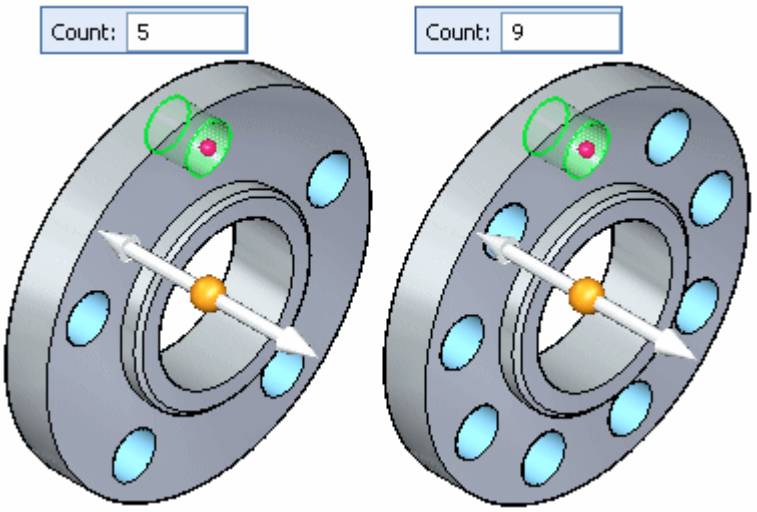


You can construct circular patterns with the following placement options:

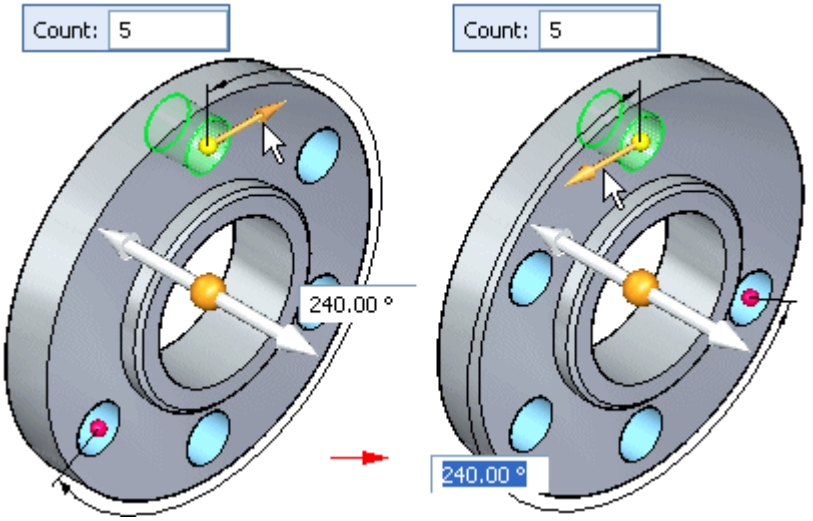
- Fit
- Fixed

Fit example

With the Fit option and a full circle pattern, you specify the number of occurrences.

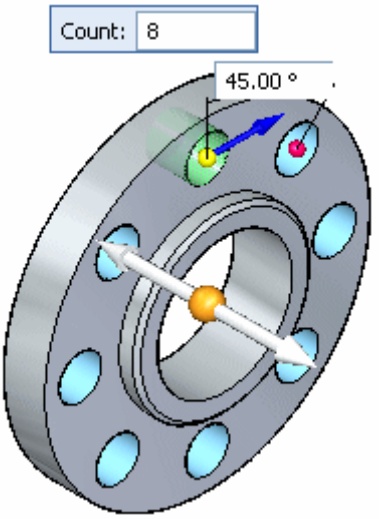


If you specify a partial circular pattern, you also specify the sweep angle of the arc and the pattern direction. The pattern direction controls whether the pattern occurrences are copied in a clockwise or counter clockwise direction. You specify the pattern direction by clicking the direction arrow, as shown below.

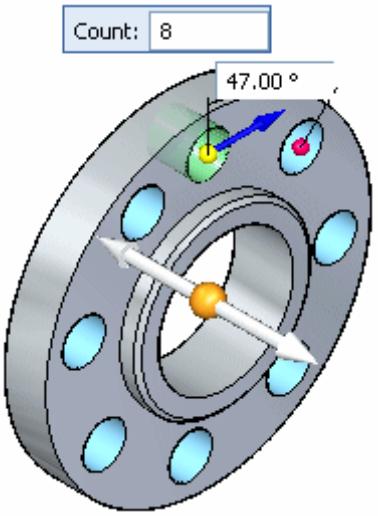


Fixed example

With the Fixed option, you specify the total the number of occurrences, the angular spacing between occurrences, and the pattern direction.



You can also use the Fixed option to create a full circular pattern where the angular spacing between the parent feature and the last occurrence is less than the defined angular spacing. For example, with a pattern count of 8, and a defined angular spacing of 47°, the angular spacing between the parent feature and the last occurrence will be 31°.

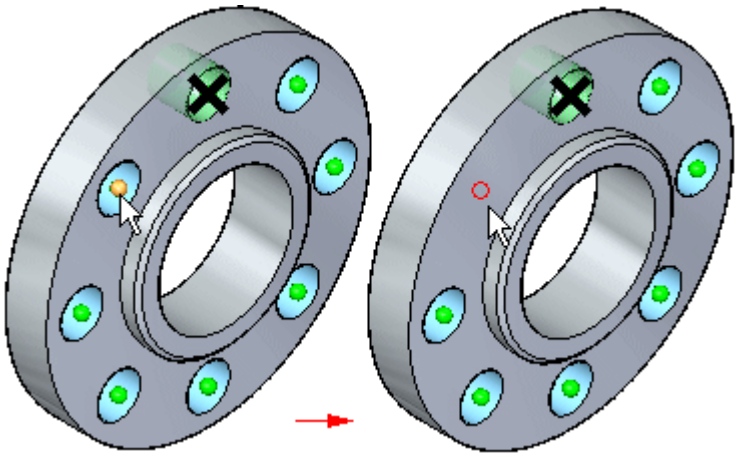


Suppressing pattern occurrences

You can suppress individual patterns occurrences or you can suppress a group of pattern occurrences. You can suppress occurrences while you are constructing the pattern or you can edit the pattern later to suppress occurrences.

Suppressing individual occurrences

You suppress individual occurrences in patterns with the Suppress Occurrence button on command bar. With the pattern feature selected, you can click the Suppress Occurrence button on command bar, and then click occurrence symbols to specify which occurrences you want to suppress. The symbols change size and color to indicate that the corresponding occurrences are suppressed.

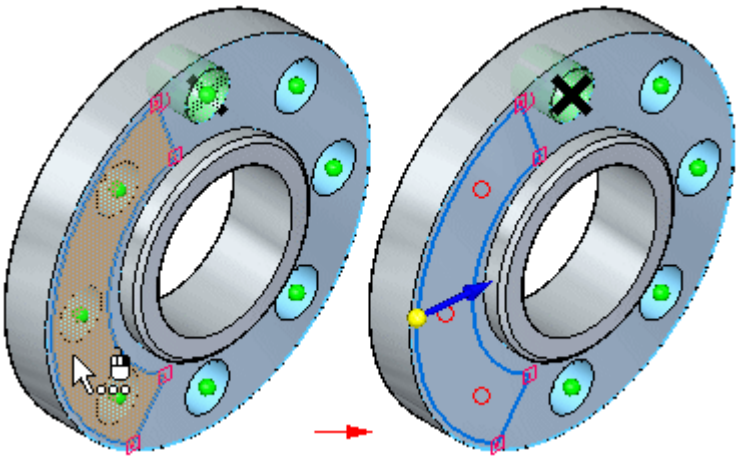


You can also drag the cursor to fence any number of occurrences.

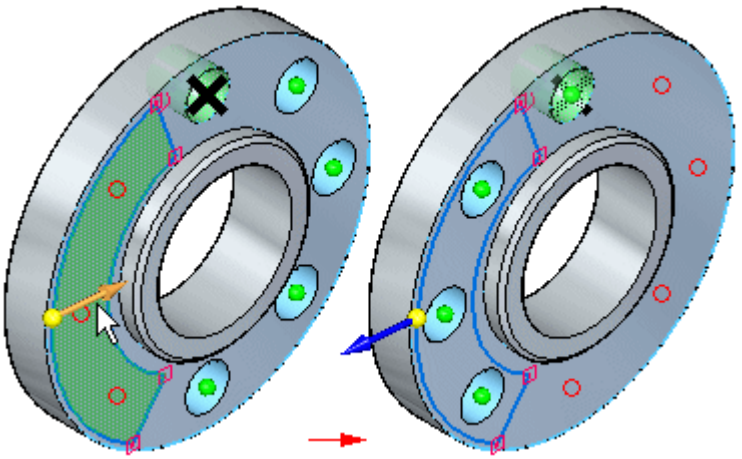
You can also display suppressed pattern occurrences with the Suppress Occurrence button. Click the button and then select the suppressed occurrences you want to appear.

Suppressing occurrences using a sketch region or plane

You can also suppress pattern occurrences using a sketch region or planar face. With the pattern selected, you can click the Suppress Regions button, and then select the sketch region that encloses the occurrences you want to suppress. The occurrences inside the region are then suppressed, and a suppression direction arrow appears.

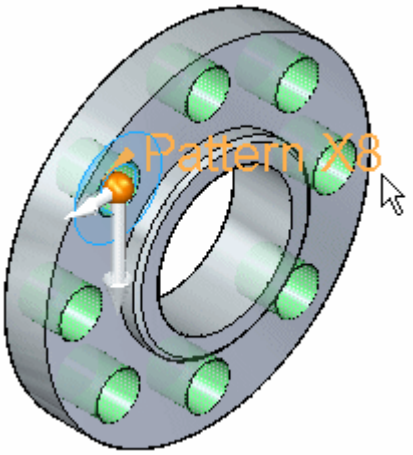


You can click the direction arrow to specify that the occurrences outside the sketch region suppress instead.



Editing pattern parameters

You edit the parameters for an existing pattern by first selecting the pattern using PathFinder or QuickPick. Selecting the pattern displays the pattern action handle.



When you click the pattern action handle, the Pattern command bar and the pattern dynamic edit boxes appear in the graphics window. You can then edit the pattern parameters, change the pattern placement option (Fit or Fixed), suppress occurrences, and so forth.

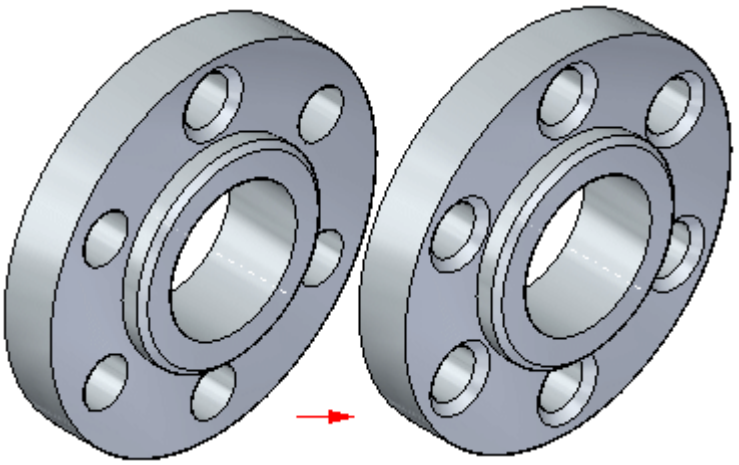
Deleting pattern occurrences

You can also delete pattern occurrences. Position the cursor over the pattern occurrence you want to delete. When the ellipsis appears, click to display QuickPick. You can then use QuickPick to select the pattern occurrence, and then press the Delete key to delete it.

When you delete a pattern occurrence, the software is actually suppressing the corresponding symbol on the pattern sketch. Deleting, rather than suppressing, an occurrence can be useful when working with large or complex models, because you do not have to edit the feature to suppress the occurrence. To restore the deleted occurrence, you can edit the pattern feature to display the suppressed occurrences.

Adding new elements to an existing pattern

You can add new elements to an existing pattern using the Add to Pattern button on command bar when you are editing an existing pattern. For example, if you add a chamfer feature to the original feature that was patterned, you can edit the pattern feature, and then use the Add to Pattern button on command bar to select the chamfer and add it to the pattern.



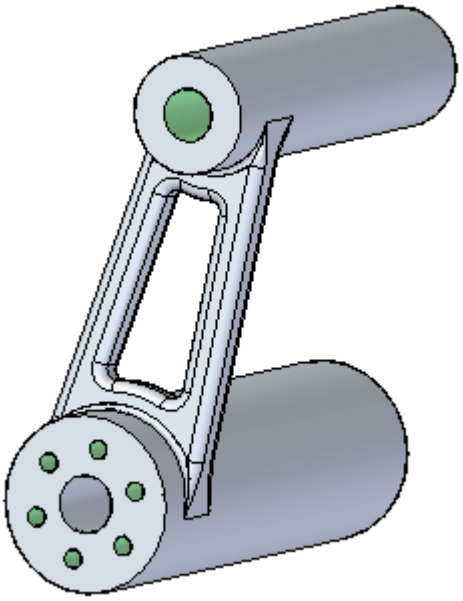
Synchronous editing of pattern features

Pattern features behave as a set when performing synchronous modifications, such as moving faces using the steering wheel. If you move a face in one of the pattern occurrences, all the corresponding faces in all the other pattern occurrences also move.

Guidelines for pattern features

- You can pattern multiple elements in one operation.
- You can suppress individual occurrences in a pattern.
- You can delete individual feature occurrences in a pattern.
- You can add features to an existing pattern.

Activity: Circular Patterns



Overview

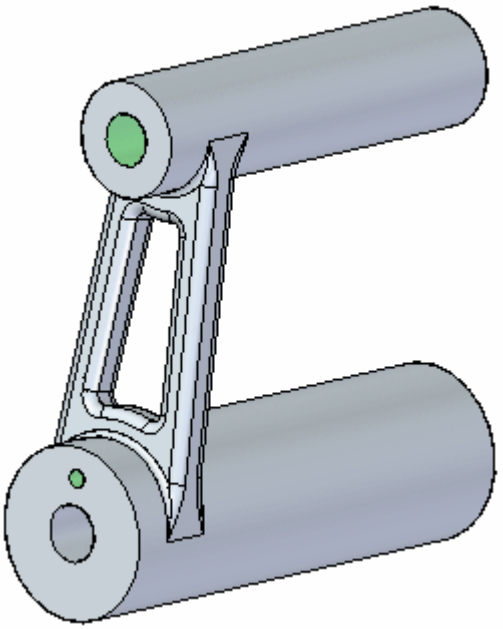
This activity demonstrates the circular patterning features.

Objectives

Create and then modify a circular pattern of holes.

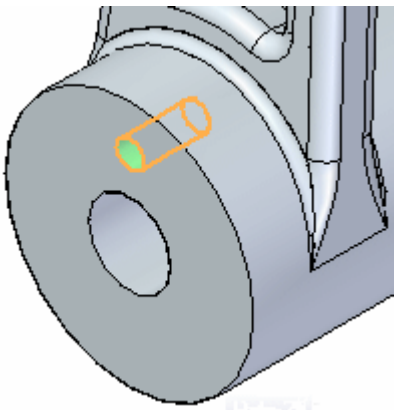
Activity: Circular patterns

Open *pattern_circle.par*.



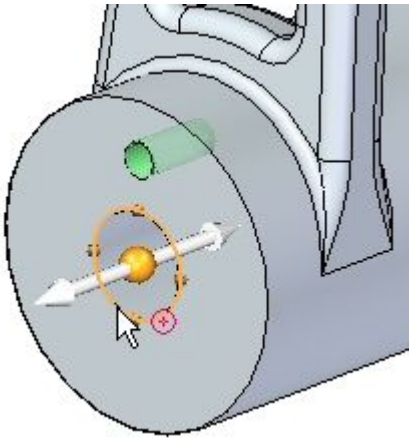
Create a circular pattern of a hole

- Zoom in on the lower end of the arm and select the hole.

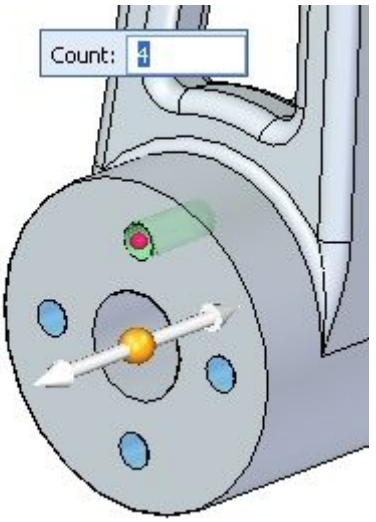


- On the Home tab® Pattern group, choose the Circular Pattern command.

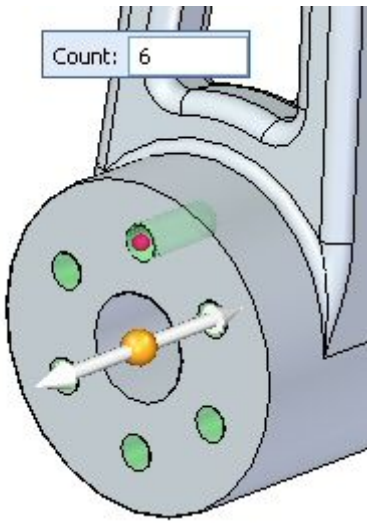
- Move the cursor (rotation axis) over the center of the circular plane shown. When the center symbol displays, click to define the center of rotation.



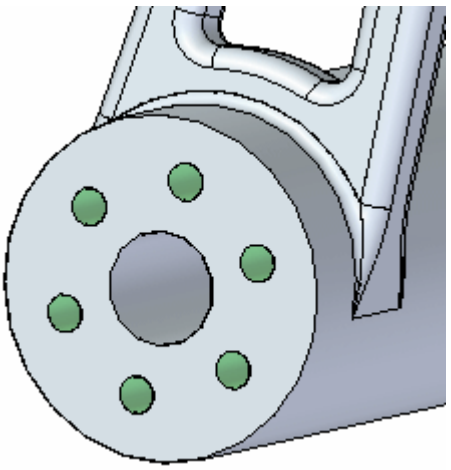
- A preview is shown with the default Count set to 4.



Change the Count to 6 and press the Enter key.



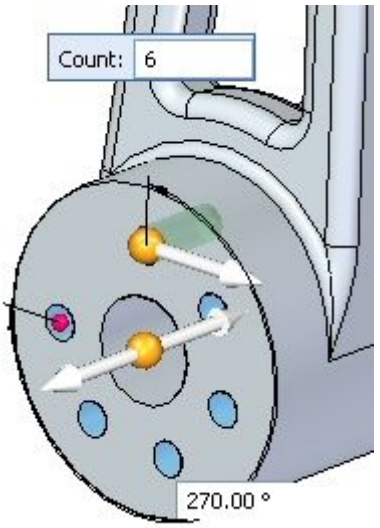
- Click in the part window to end the pattern command.



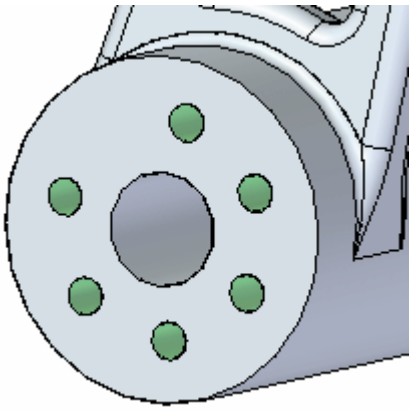
Modify the pattern

- Select the circular pattern and then click the Edit Definition handle to access the Pattern command bar. Select the Circle/Arc Pattern icon .

- Change the arc angle to 270°. Click the direction arrow to define the arc angle in a clockwise direction.



- On the command bar, click Accept. Click in the part window to end command.

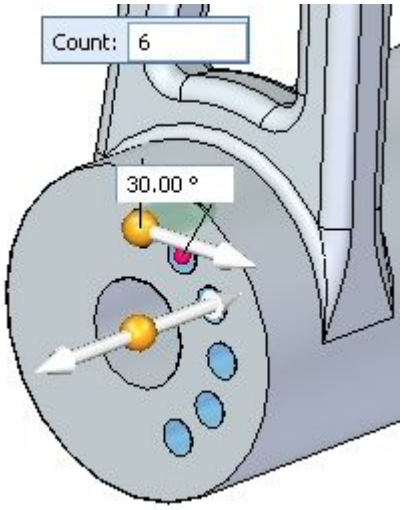


Note

Press the Tab key to change the focus from one dialog to another, such as when changing from the Count to the Arc Angle dialog box.

- Select the circular pattern set from PathFinder. Select the pattern handle to access the command bar. Change the fill style to Fixed.

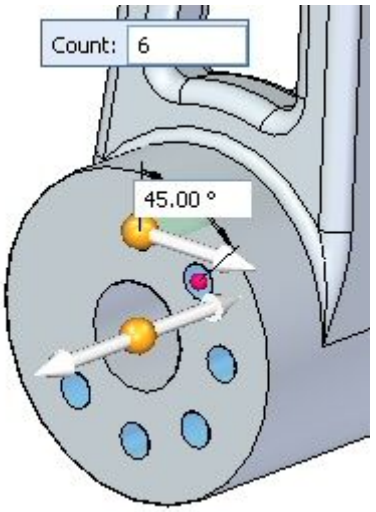
- Set the angle to 30°.



Note

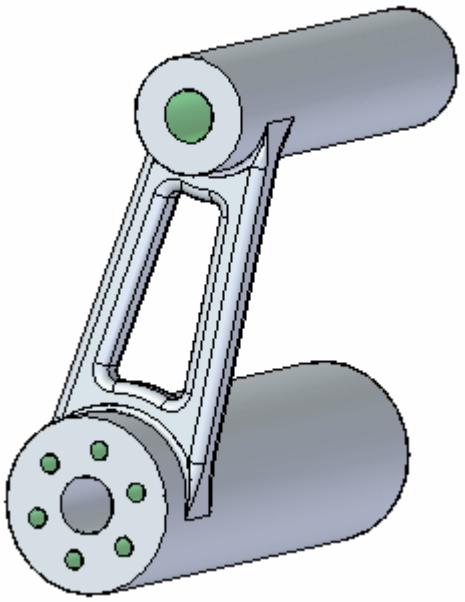
The Count and Angle control the pattern in the Fixed fill mode.

- Modify the incremental angle to 45°, leaving the same count of 6 holes.



- Change the Fill style to Fit.

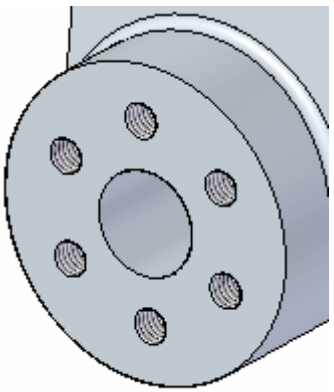
- On the command bar, select the Circle/Arc Pattern option to return to a full circle. Accept the pattern and click the left mouse button to finish.



- The holes have threads associated with them. To see the threads, on the View tab® Style group, choose the View Overrides command .

  On the Rendering tab, select the Textures check box.

  Notice the threads on the patterned holes.



- Save and close this file.

Note

Just as with rectangular patterns, you can suppress occurrences, add features, and modify the parent feature. You are free to experiment with those functions on the command bar as desired.

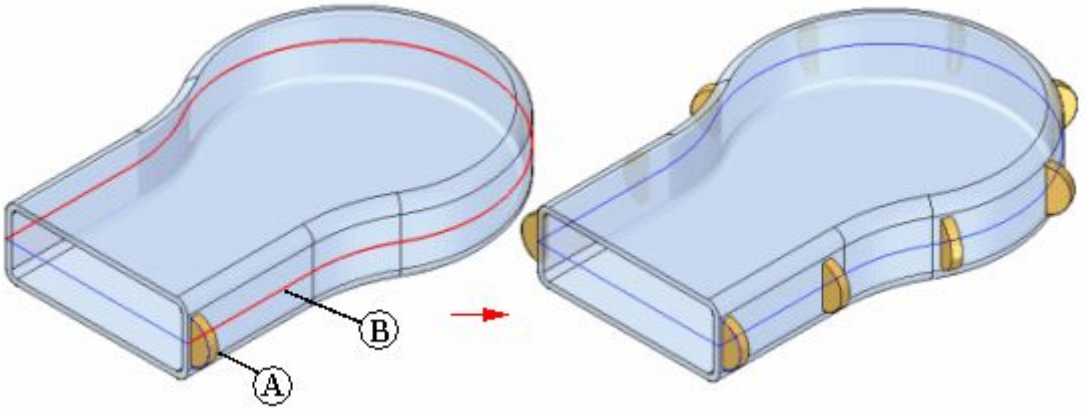
Summary

In this activity you learned how to create and edit a circular pattern of features. With practice, you should be able to create any desired circular pattern.

Pattern Along Curve command

Constructs a pattern of selected elements along a specified curve. You can select features, faces, face sets, surfaces, or design bodies as the parent elements to pattern. You can control how the pattern follows the curve by customizing parameters such as start point and transformation type, as well as occurrence count, spacing, and orientation.

You can pattern the elements along any 2D or 3D curve or model edges. For example, you can pattern a feature (A) along a set of sketch elements (B).



Note

Pattern features are associative to the parent elements. If you modify the parent elements, the pattern updates. If you delete the parent elements, the pattern is deleted.

Selecting the elements to pattern and the pattern curve

Selecting the elements to pattern

The first step in constructing a pattern along a curve is selecting the elements to pattern. You can select the elements to pattern in PathFinder or the graphics window.

Selecting the curve

After you select the elements to pattern, you can select any 2D or 3D sketch, curve, or model edges to pattern the elements along.

Configuring the pattern

After you select the pattern curve, you can configure the pattern. First select the pattern anchor point. The anchor point is the point where the pattern begins. The anchor point must be a keypoint on the pattern curve. Use the dynamic arrow on the anchor point to select the direction in which the pattern goes.

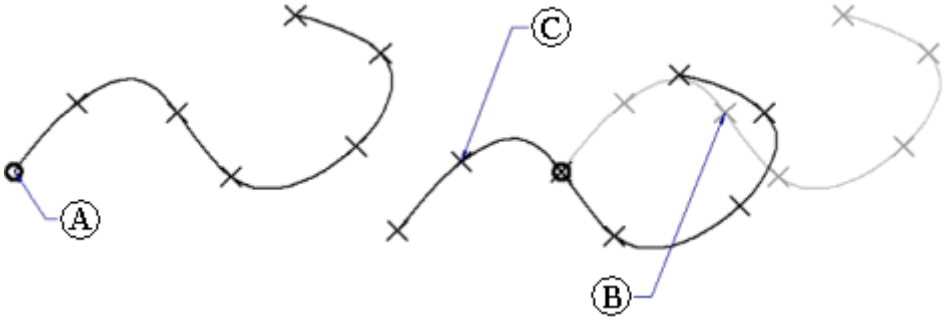
After you define the anchor point and direction, you can use the options on command bar to define the number and spacing of occurrences with the Pattern Type, Count, and Spacing options. When the Pattern Type is set to Fit, the pattern operation places the number of occurrences specified by the Count option, equally spaced. When the Pattern Type is set to Fill, the pattern operation places as

many occurrences as fits on the curve, with the distance specified by the Spacing option between each occurrence. When set to Fixed, the pattern operation places occurrences using both the Count and Spacing options.

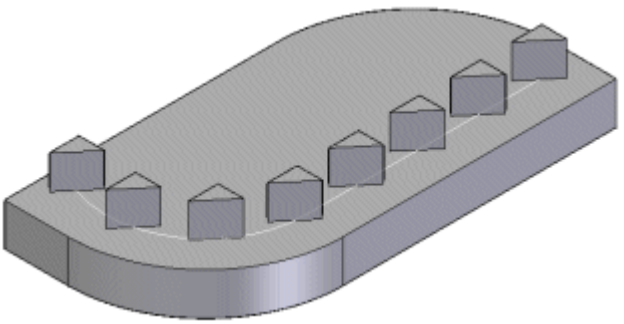
Setting transformation type

You can customize the transformation and rotation of the pattern to better capture your design intent. You can specify that occurrences be placed in the pattern linearly, keeping the same orientations throughout the pattern. Or, you can specify a transformation that will change the orientations of the occurrences depending on the input curve or a specified plane.

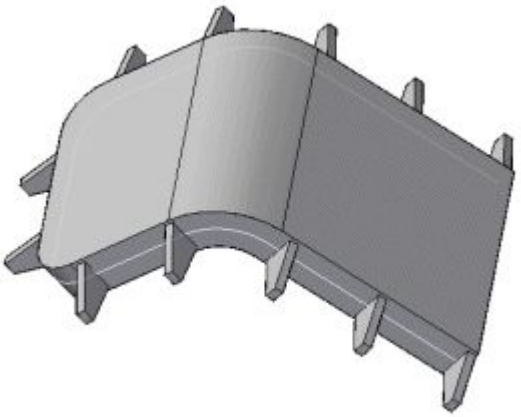
The reference point is the point in the pattern at which transformation begins. By default, the reference point is the anchor point (A). To select a different reference point, click the Reference Point button on the command bar and click a new point on the pattern (B). The pattern transforms to the new position (C).



A linear transformation orients occurrences based on the orientation of the patterned elements.



A full transformation orients occurrences based on the input curves.



A transformation from plane projects the initial occurrence and a target occurrence onto a plane, where a measured angle defines occurrence orientation.

You can also use the Rotation Type control to specify whether the input feature position or input curve position determines occurrence placement.

Controlling pattern occurrences

You can suppress occurrences in patterns along curves with the Suppress Occurrence button on command bar. After you click the Suppress Occurrence button, click the occurrence symbols for the occurrences you want to suppress. You can suppress individual occurrences, or you can use a fence to suppress adjacent multiple occurrences.

You can insert occurrences in patterns along curves with the Insert Occurrence button. After you click the Insert Occurrence button, you can click a keypoint to insert an occurrence. Use the Offset option to control its offset.

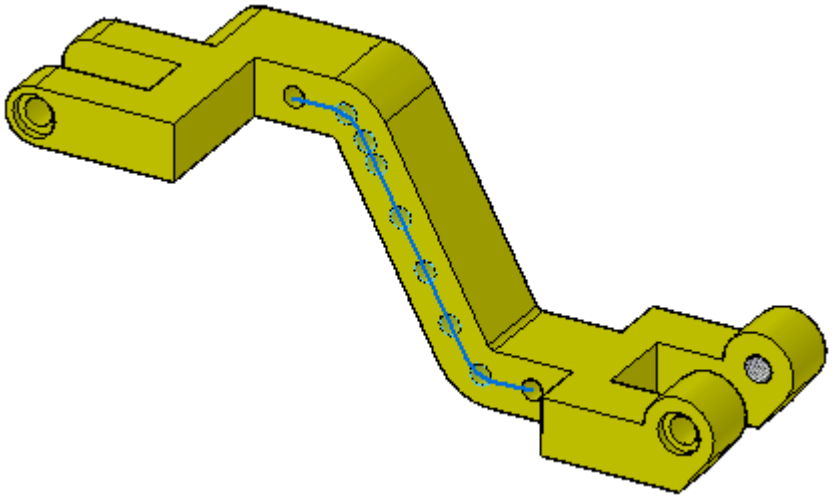
Adding new elements to an existing pattern

You can add new elements to an existing pattern using the Add to Pattern button on the command bar when you are editing an existing pattern. For example, if you add a chamfer feature to the original feature that was patterned, you can edit the pattern feature, then use the Add to Pattern button on command bar to select the chamfer and add it to the pattern.

Guidelines for creating pattern features

- You can pattern multiple elements in one operation.
- You can suppress individual pattern occurrences in a pattern along a curve.
- You can insert individual feature occurrences into a pattern along a curve.

Activity: Pattern Along Curve



Overview

This activity demonstrates the Along Curve patterning command.

Objectives

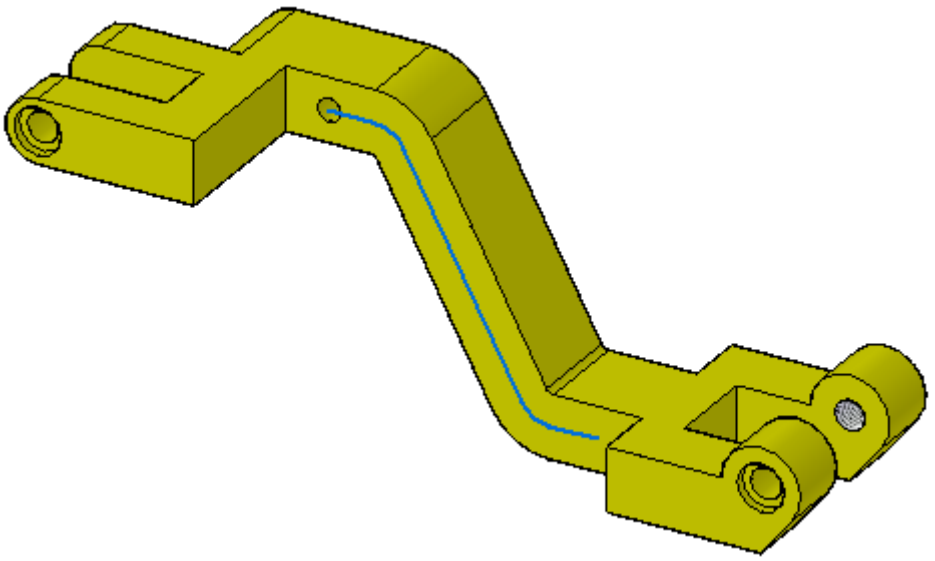
Work with a pattern of holes arrayed along a curve chain.

In this activity you will:

- Create the pattern.
- Change the pattern's parameters.
- Add an occurrence of the hole.

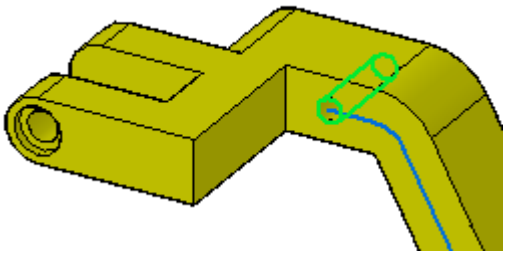
Activity: Pattern Along Curve

Open *pattern_curve.par*.



Create a pattern of holes along a curve

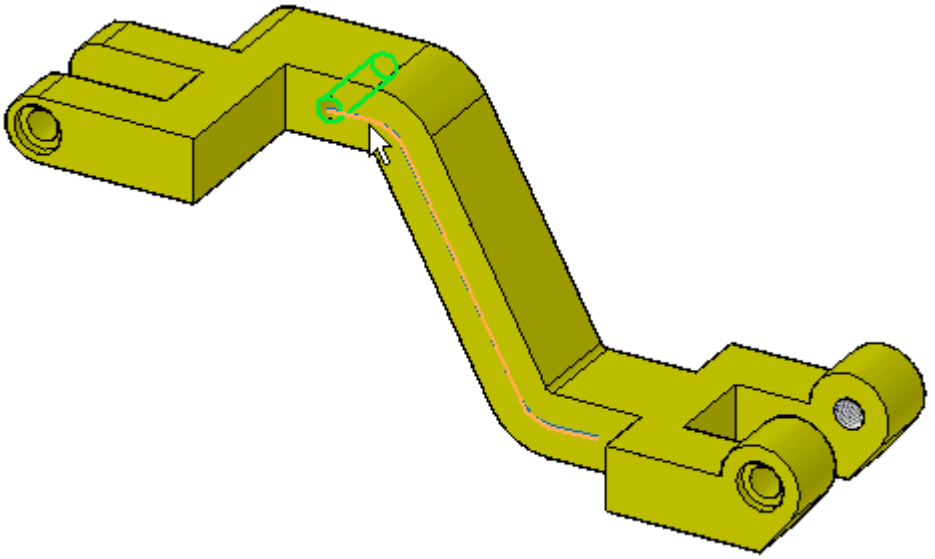
- Select the hole at the top of the angled arm.



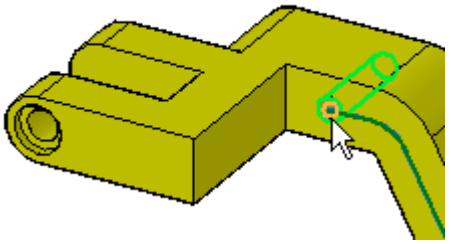
- On the Home tab® Pattern group, choose the Along Curve command.

In the command bar, select Chain from the Select list.

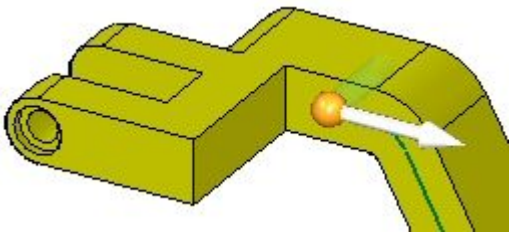
Select the curve along the angled arm and accept it on the command bar.



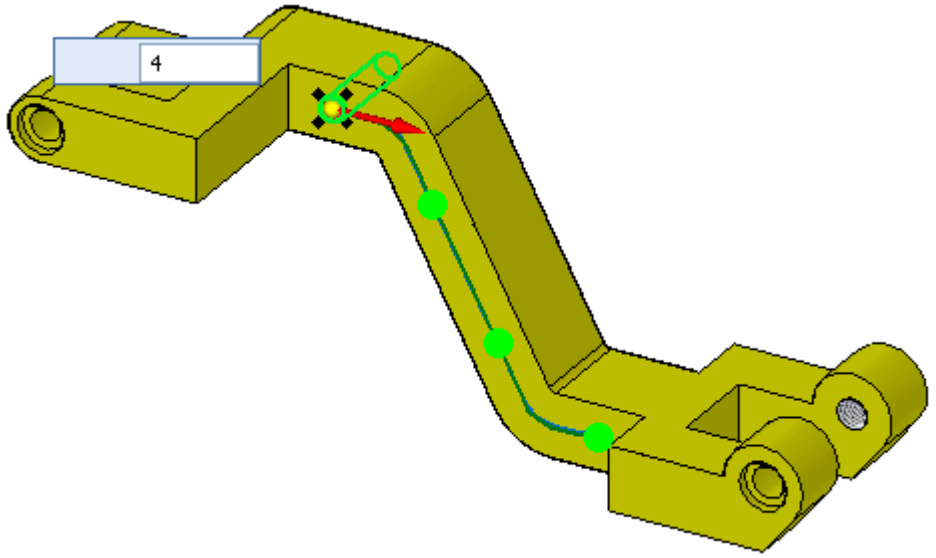
Select the left endpoint of the curve to define the anchor point.



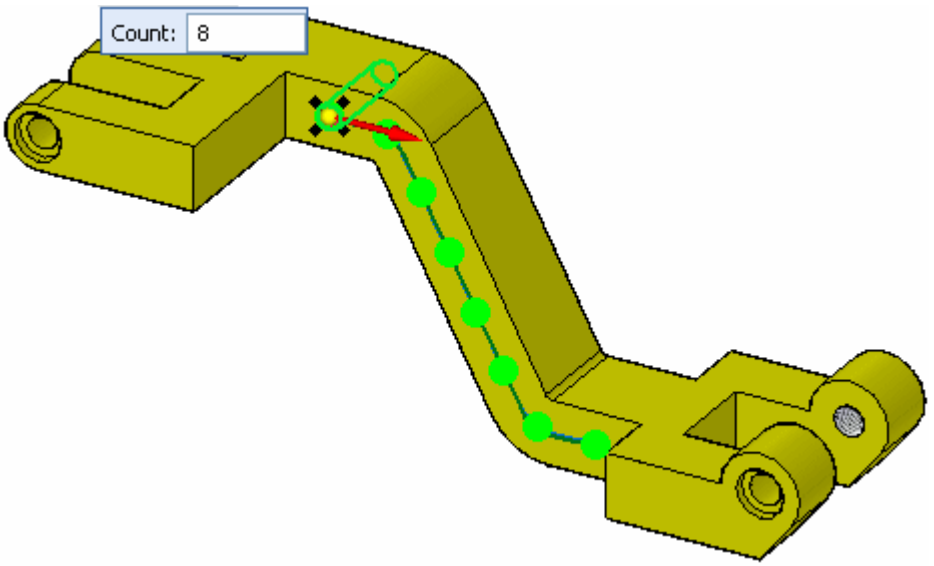
Select the pattern direction by moving the cursor until the arrow points to the right and then click to accept it.



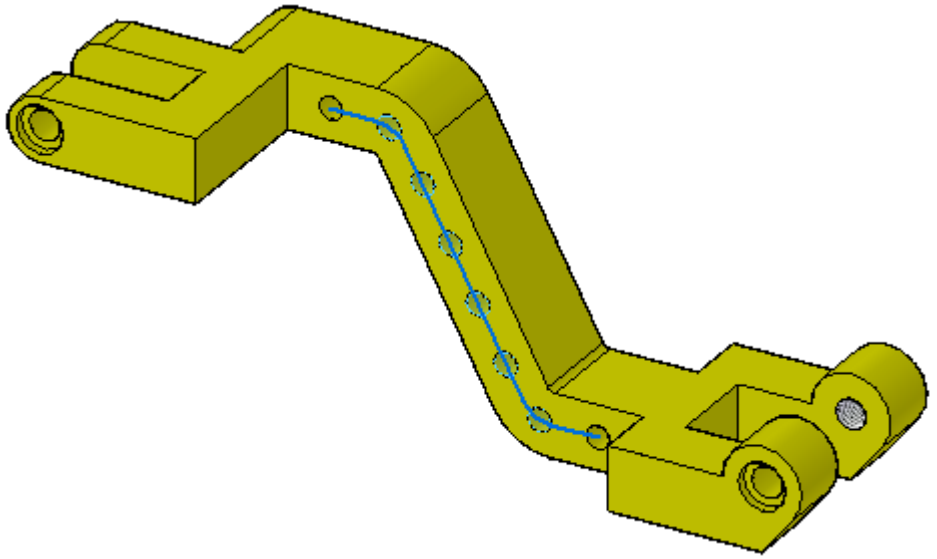
A preview is shown.



Change the Count to 8.



Accept this pattern by selecting the green check. Click the left mouse button.



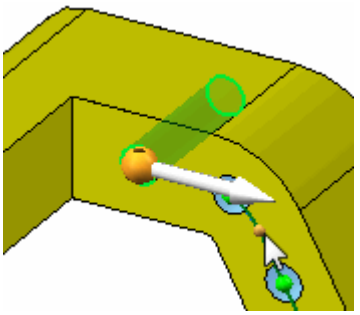
Insert an occurrence to the pattern

With the Along Curve command you can insert and offset a new occurrence by selecting a keypoint of the curve.

- Select the pattern. Click the Edit Definition handle to access the command bar.

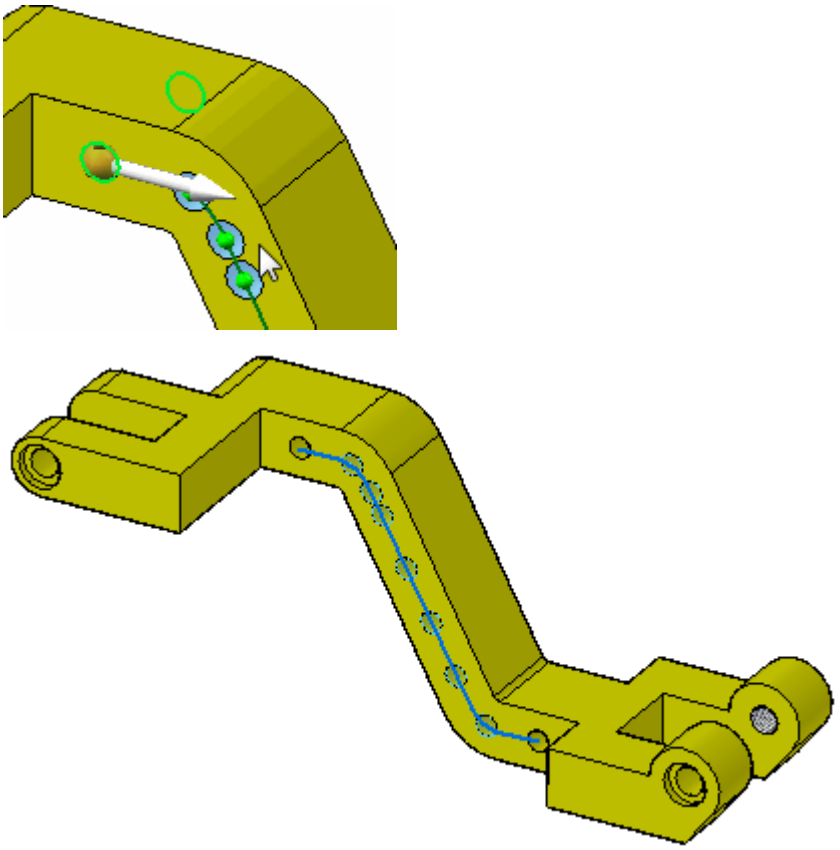
  Select the Insert Occurrence icon .

  Select the endpoint of the first curve segment in the chain.



  Type 5 in the Offset field in the command bar.

- A new hole occurrence is created at 5 mm along the curve. Click to accept the offset. Click to accept the changes and exit the command.



- Save and close this file.

Note

Just as with rectangular and circular patterns, you can suppress occurrences, add features, and modify the parent. You are free to experiment with those functions on the command bar as desired.

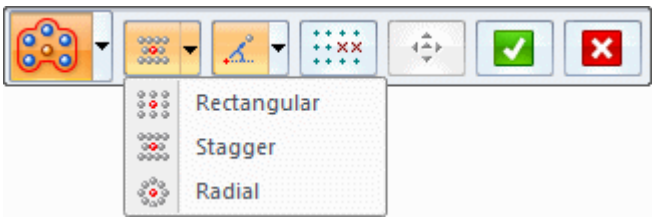
Summary

In this activity you learned how to create and edit a pattern of features along a curve. The pattern feature origin is used during pattern creation. With practice, you should be able to create any desired pattern along a curve.

Fill pattern

The Fill Pattern command creates a pattern of a selected feature(s) that completely fills a defined region(s). The fill pattern can be rectangular, staggered or radial. Each fill pattern type has a set of options to define the pattern array. You can suppress occurrences manually or with a pattern boundary offset value. You can edit fill patterns to produce the desired result.

Fill pattern types



Fill Patterning workflow

Step 1: Select feature(s) to pattern.

Step 2: On the Home tab® Pattern group® Rectangular pattern list, choose the Pattern Fill command.

Step 3: Click region to pattern fill.

Step 4: Press the Enter key, click the green check mark or right-click to place the pattern fill preview.

Step 5: On the pattern fill command bar, select the pattern fill type. Rectangular fill is the default.

Step 6: On command bar, set the desired pattern options.

Step 7: The origin of the feature(s) to pattern defaults to the centroid. Using the steering wheel, you can modify the origin, define the direction of the first pattern row and edit the spacing values. You can also click the *Edit Profile* handle to modify the pattern region.

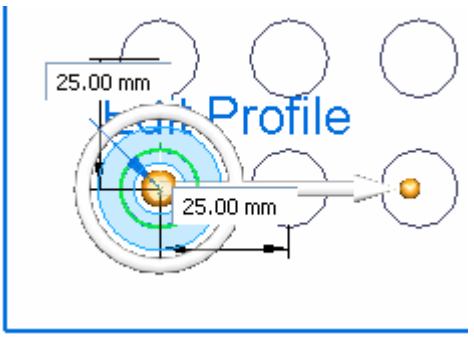
Step 8: Right-click or click the green check mark to place the fill pattern.

Step 9: Left-click or press the Esc key to end the pattern fill command.

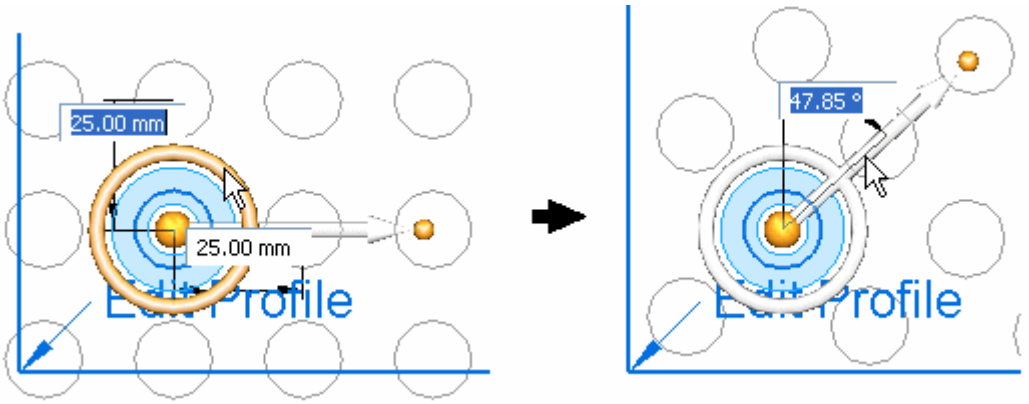
Rectangular fill

Default pattern fill type. This pattern type fills a region(s) with rows and columns of occurrences.

Two values to define row and column spacing. Use the Tab key to alternate between the spacing value boxes.

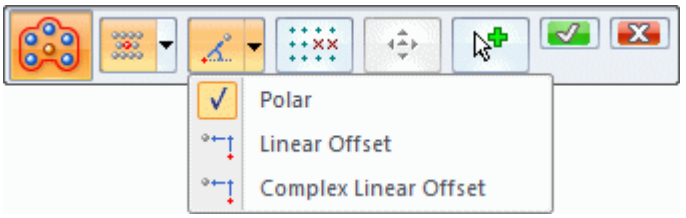


Change the direction vector for the pattern row by clicking the steering wheel torus and then enter an angular value. In a rectangular fill pattern, the columns always align perpendicular to the direction of the rows.



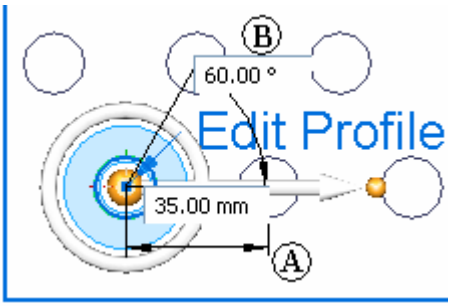
Stagger fill

This pattern type fills a region(s) with staggered rows of occurrences.

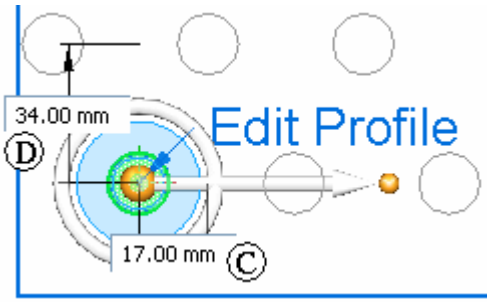


Polar and Linear offset are the options to control the staggered fill pattern.

Using the *Polar* option, (A) is the spacing of occurrences on the first row. (B) defines the offset row. The spacing is defined by an angle of rotation with a radius of the row spacing value.

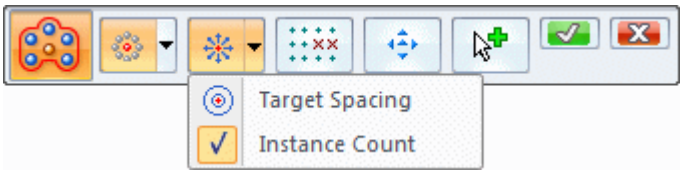


Using the *Linear Offset* option, (C) is the offset spacing of occurrences above (and below) the first row. (D) defines the spacing between rows.

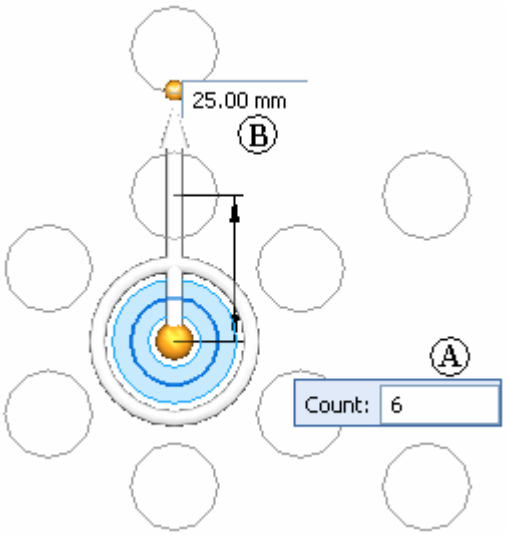


Radial fill

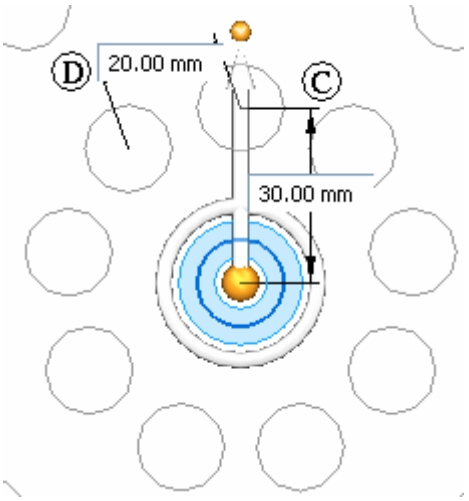
This pattern type fills a region(s) with radial rings of occurrences.



The *Instance Count* spacing option provides control of how many occurrences count box (A) per ring. The value box (B) controls the radial spacing of occurrences.

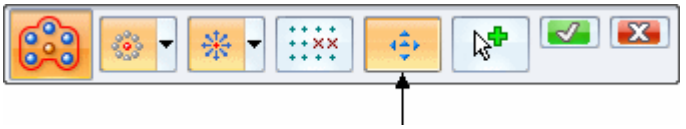


The *Target Spacing* option provides control of the radial spacing of occurrences (C) and the occurrence spacing on each ring (D).



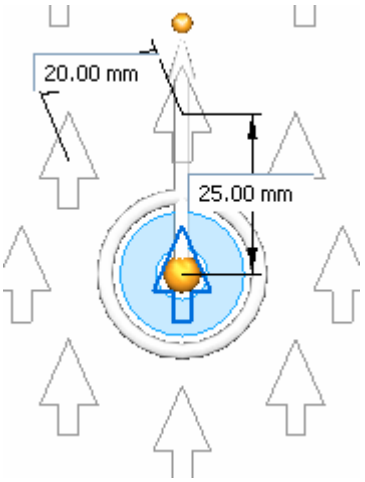
Center orient

The *Center orient* option is available with radial fill only.

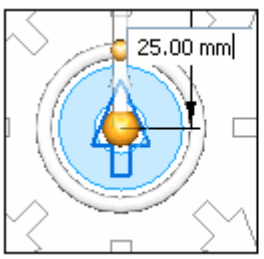


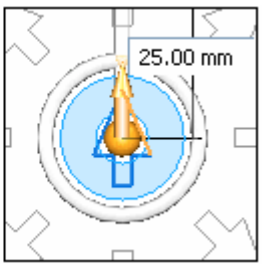
This option provides control of the orientation of the radial occurrences. When you select this option is, the steering wheel changes and an arrow inside the torus appears. This arrow orients the occurrences.

The image below shows the steering wheel display with center orient Off.

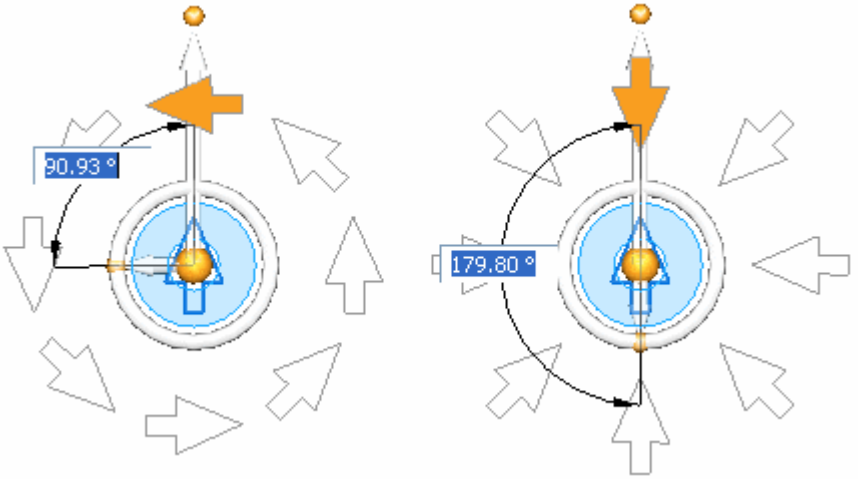


The images below show the steering wheel display when center orient is On. The steering wheel displays a knob that lies on the torus and an arrow that lies inside the torus. Select either the knob or arrow to change the orientation of occurrences.



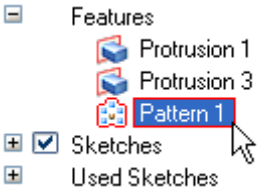


Notice that as the center orient angular value changes, the first occurrence (colored orange for clarification) on the direction vector rotates by that value.



Editing a fill pattern

You can edit fill patterns at any time. Select the fill pattern to edit by either selecting an occurrence in the pattern or by selecting the pattern feature in PathFinder.



Click the text handle *Fill Pattern* to edit the pattern.

At this point, you can make any changes to the selected pattern fill. You can even change the fill pattern type.

Add a feature to the parent features set of an existing pattern

You can add (or remove) parent features that are patterned.

Workflow

Step 1: Edit the pattern.

Step 2: Click the *Add to pattern* button on the command bar.

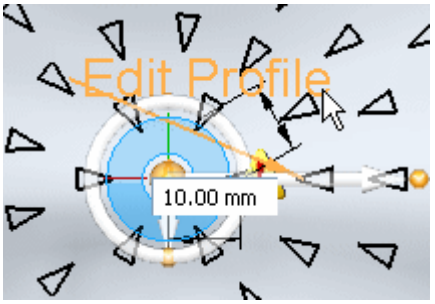
Step 3: Select feature to add or remove from parent features.

Step 4: Right-click (or green check mark) for a preview. Right-click (or green check mark) to accept.

Edit a pattern profile

When you create a fill pattern, the patterned region boundaries are copied into the pattern fill profile. The pattern fill profile is not associative to the original sketch/model edges. The pattern profile can be edited.

To edit the pattern profile click the text handle *Edit Profile*.



When you make an edit, the pattern profile changes but not the original sketch/model edges. When the edit is complete, the pattern updates to fill the updated profile region. When in the edit profile mode, an icon appears in the upper right portion of the window . Click this icon to finish the edit. The edited pattern profile must produce a valid closed region. An error results when there is a problem with the profile. If the profile is not corrected and the update is accepted, the fill pattern is deleted.

Tip

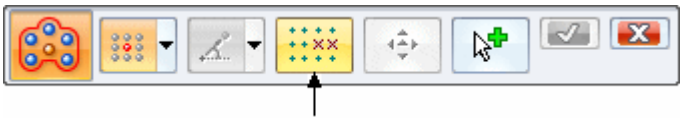
In PathFinder, turn off the display of the sketch region when editing a pattern profile. If both the pattern profile and sketch are displayed simultaneously, editing the profile pattern may be confusing. For example: If you delete a pattern profile element, the display of the sketch element remains and it appears that the deleted element is still there.

Suppressing occurrences

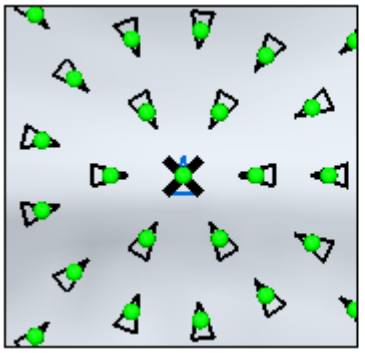
Occurrences in a pattern fill can suppressed (or hidden).

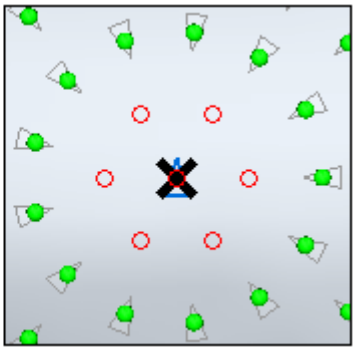
Workflow

Step 1: On the Fill pattern command bar, click the *Suppress* button.



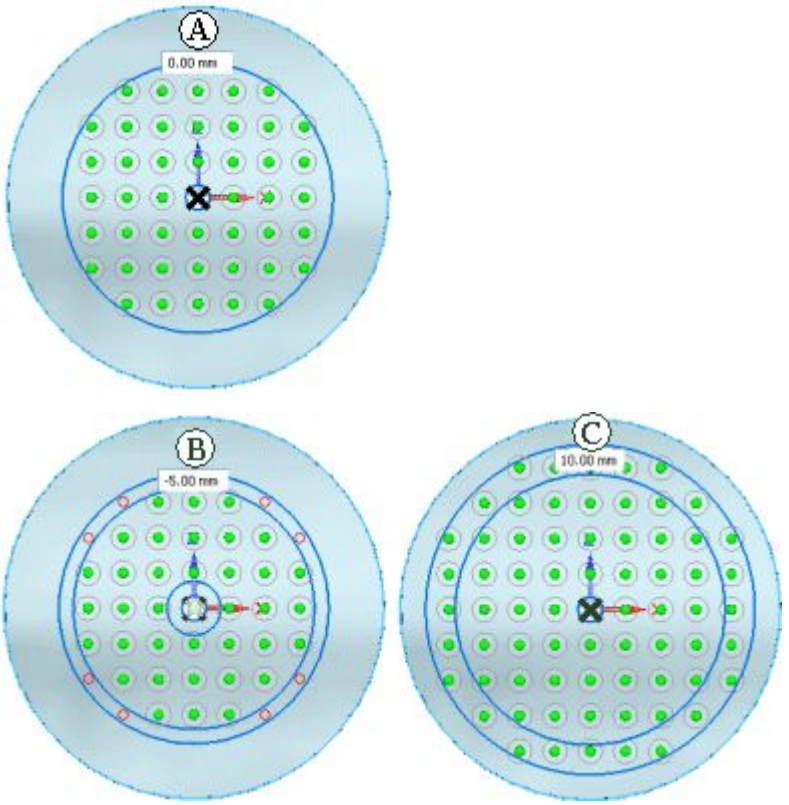
Step 2: All unsuppressed occurrences display with a green dot. Click the occurrence to suppress. The suppressed occurrences display with a red circle. Click a suppressed occurrence and it becomes unsuppressed.





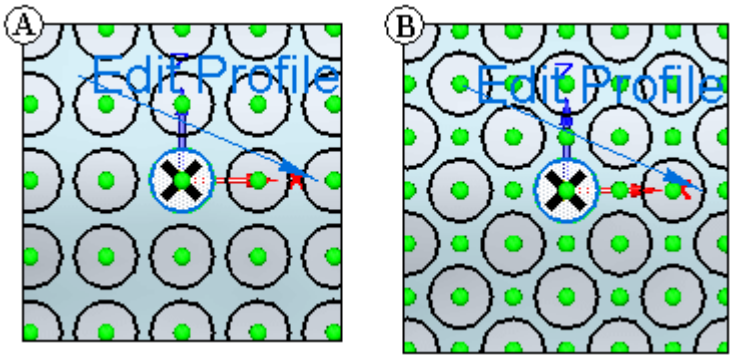
Step 3: On the suppress command bar, click *Reset* to return all occurrences to unsuppressed.

Step 4: To suppress occurrences that overlap the region boundaries, enter an offset value in the value box (A). This value is the normal distance between the occurrence and the boundary. A negative value (B) suppresses occurrences inside the region boundary by the offset value. A positive value (C) displays occurrences outside the region boundary by the offset value.



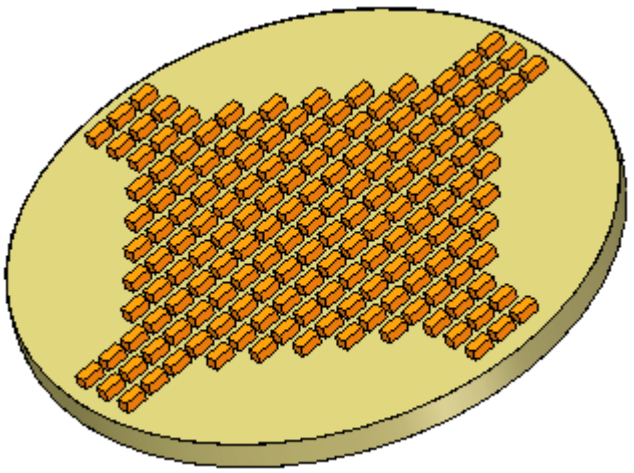
Touching or overlapping pattern features

When you define the pattern fill array, an occurrence places at every location specified by the pattern spacing or angular values. However a patterned feature may not place at that occurrence if that feature touches or overlaps the adjacent feature. In the example below, (A) rectangular pattern fill array was 10 x 10 and (B) was changed to 7 x 7. The occurrence spacing in (B) caused the pattern parent to overlap other occurrences. The pattern fill command determines which occurrences to place a pattern parent on in order to produce a pattern result.



Activity: Fill pattern

This activity covers the steps to create a fill pattern feature. Examples of a rectangular, staggered and radial pattern are shown. The activity shows how to edit an existing fill pattern definition and also how to edit a pattern region profile.

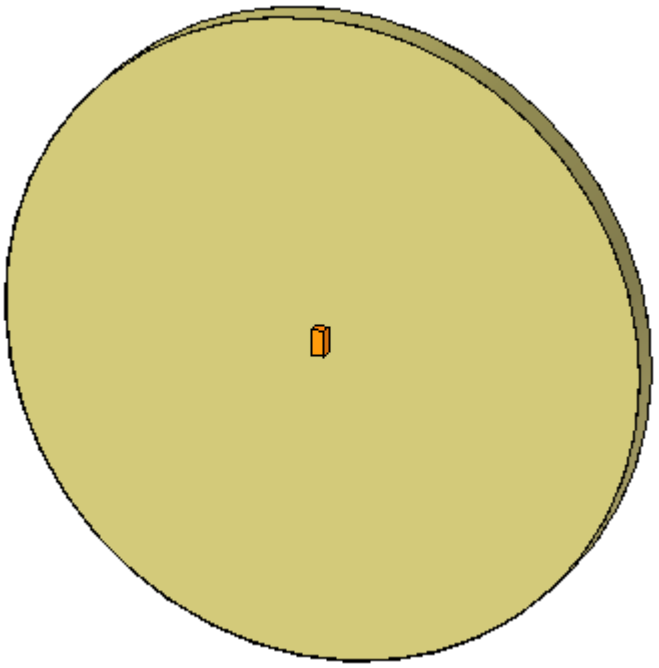


Activity: Fill Pattern

Open *fill_pattern.par*.

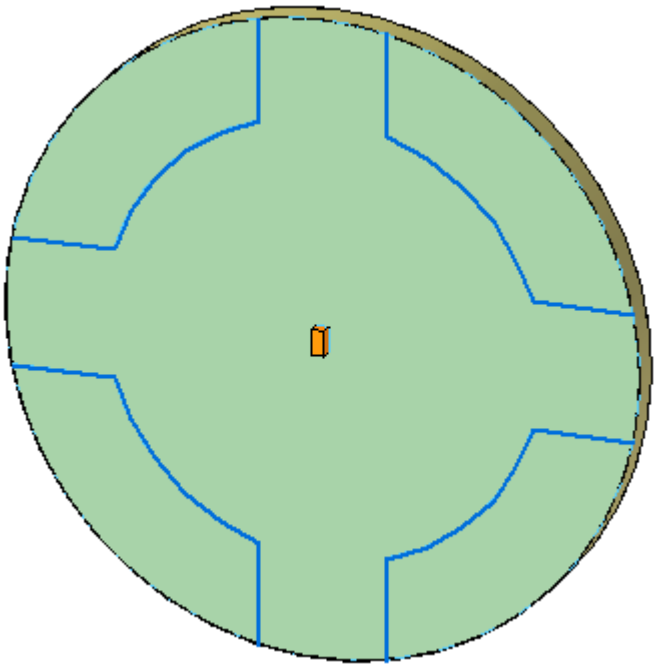
Attach feature to pattern

- The feature that we want to pattern is detached. In PathFinder, right-click on the feature named *rectangle* and then click *Attach*.



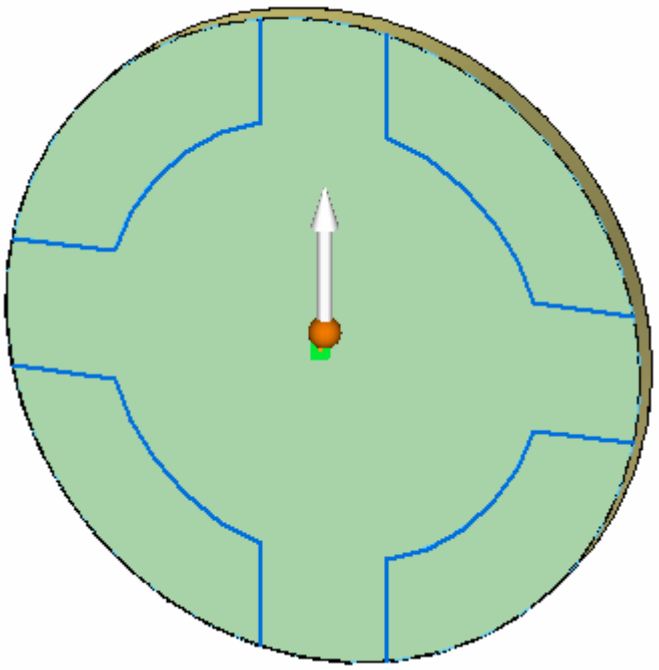
Turn on the sketch that defines the region to pattern fill

- In PathFinder, click the box on the sketch named *fill region*.



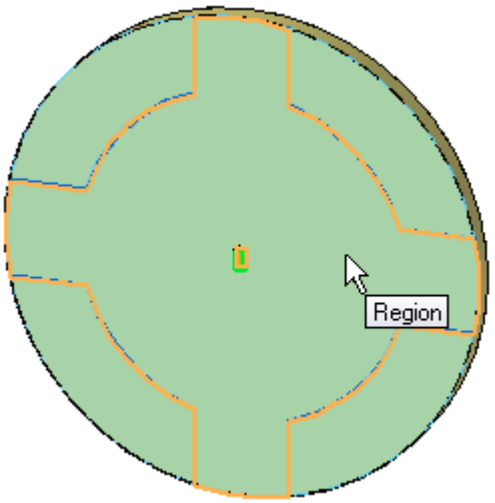
Create a rectangular fill pattern

- In PathFinder, select the feature named *rectangle*.



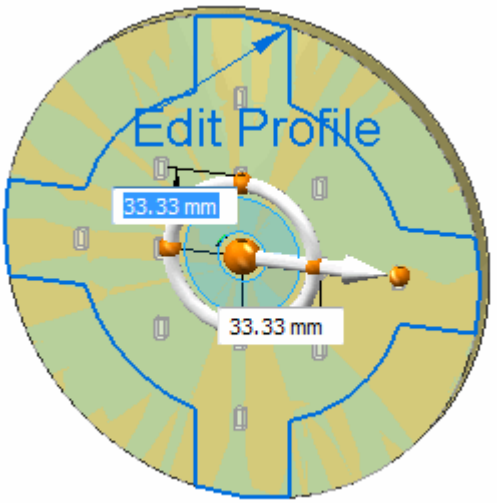
- In the Pattern group, choose the Fill Pattern command.

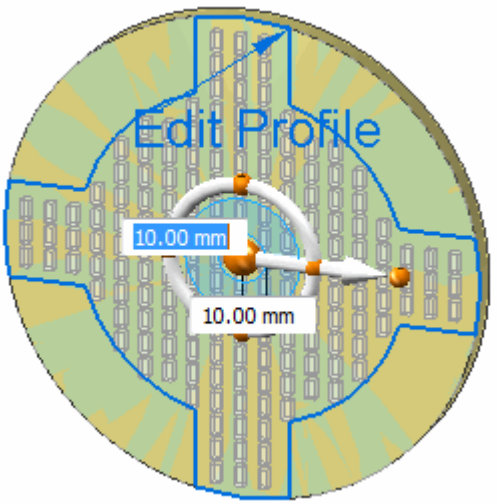
- Select the region shown.



- On the command bar, click Accept.

- In both of the dynamic edit boxes, type 10 and then press the Tab key.

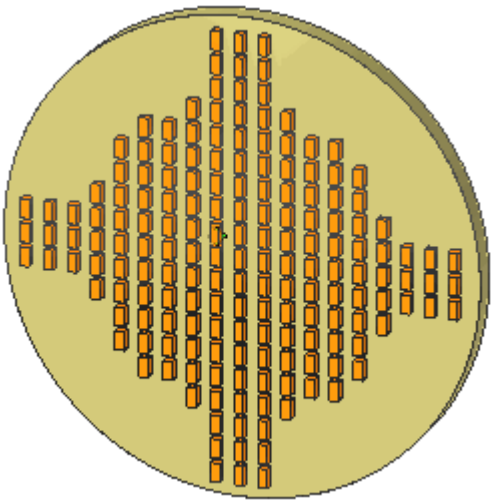




Note

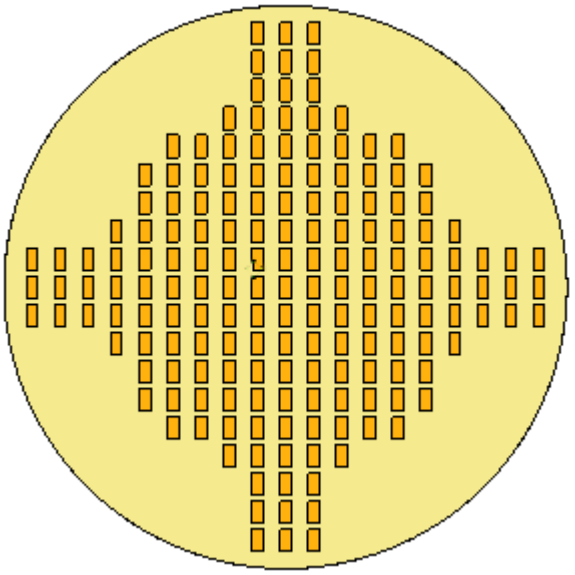
Notice that the primary axis on the steering wheel controls the first row direction. To change the direction of the first row, click the torus.

- On the command bar, click Accept. Press the Esc key to end the command.

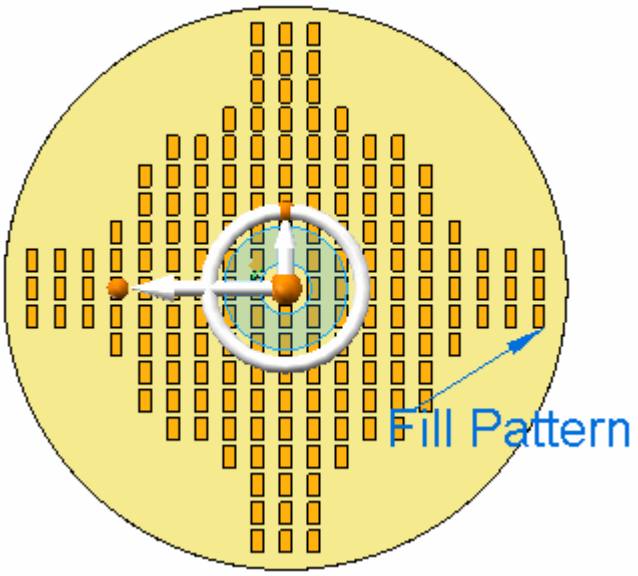


Edit the pattern

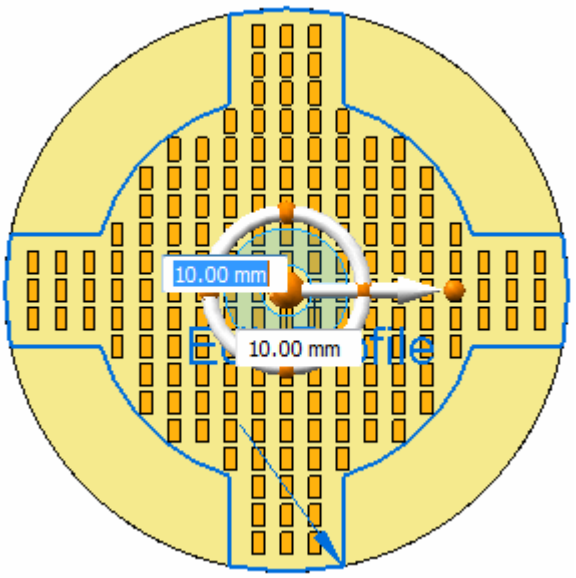
- Change display to a front view.



- In PathFinder, select the pattern feature- its name is similar to *PatternX*.



- Click the Fill Pattern handle to edit the pattern definition.



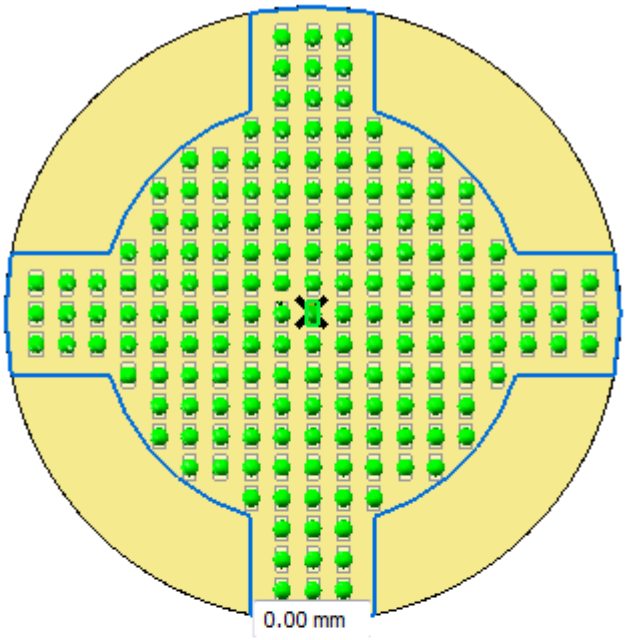
- Notice that in some locations, the patterned feature comes very close to touching the pattern boundary. The pattered feature origin can lie on the boundary. A boundary tolerance can be applied to the pattern to control whether a patterned occurrence crosses or touches the boundary. Make all pattern occurrences lie inside the boundary.

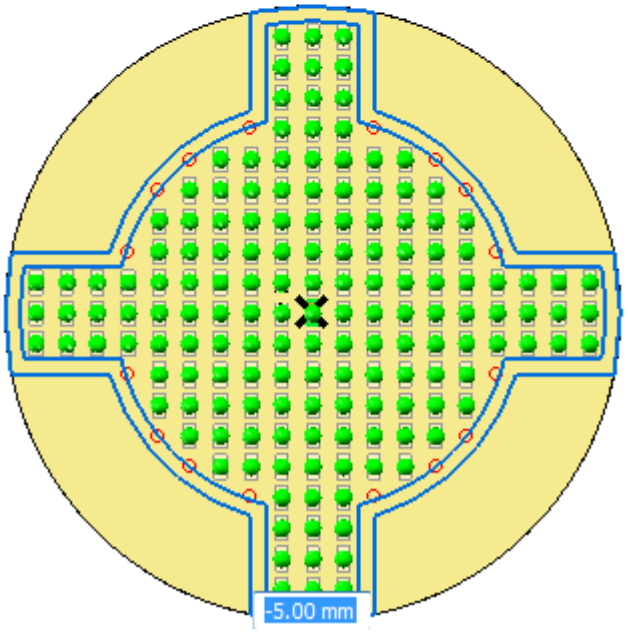
  Note

  The origin of the patterned feature is defined at the center of the rectangle.

  On the command bar, click the Suppress Instance button .

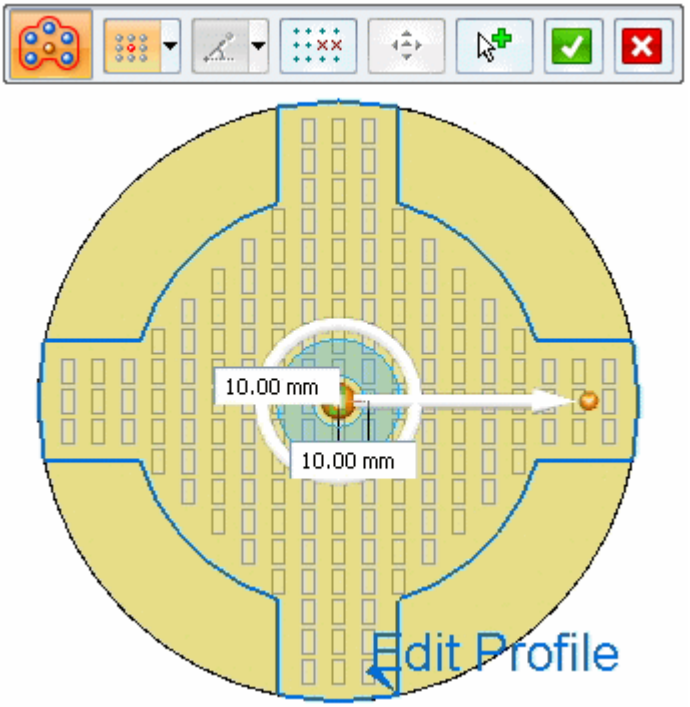
- In the dynamic edit box, type –5 and press Tab. This value offsets the boundary inward at a distance of 5. Notice that occurrences are now suppressed that touched or crossed the pattern boundary. The suppressed occurrences are denoted by a red circle.



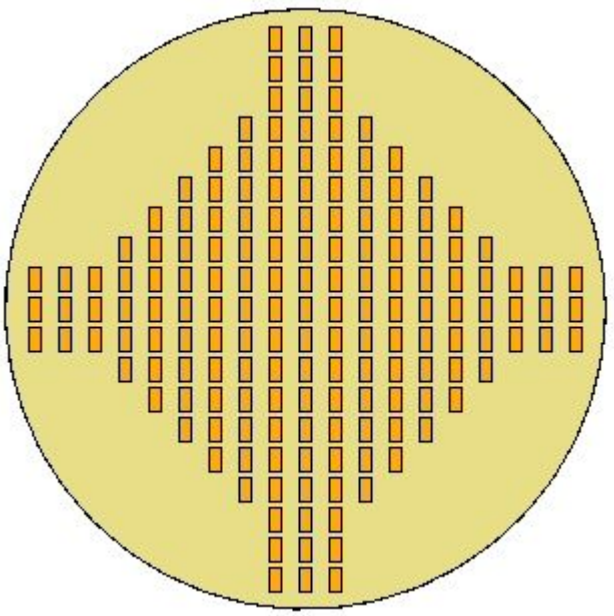


- In the Suppress command bar, click the Accept button.

- At this point, changes to any pattern definition can be made (for example: the row and column distances). Make no more changes. Click the Accept button.



- Press the Esc key to end the pattern edit.



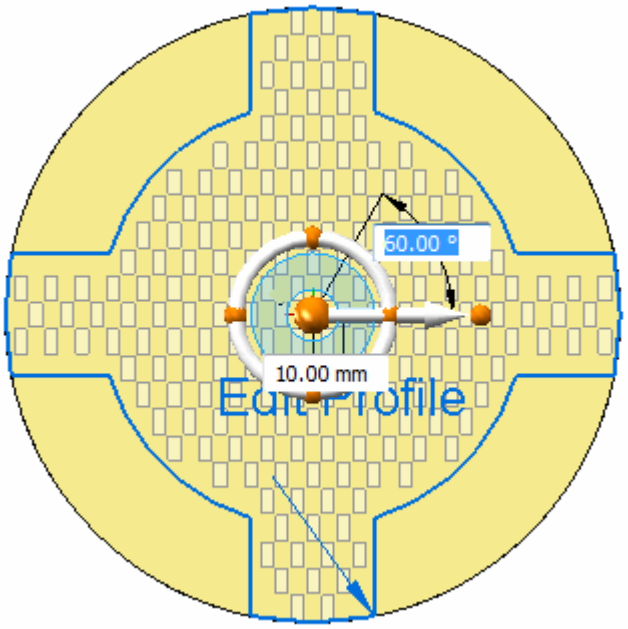
This completes the rectangular fill pattern portion of this activity.

Change the fill pattern type to staggered

- Select the fill pattern feature in PathFinder.

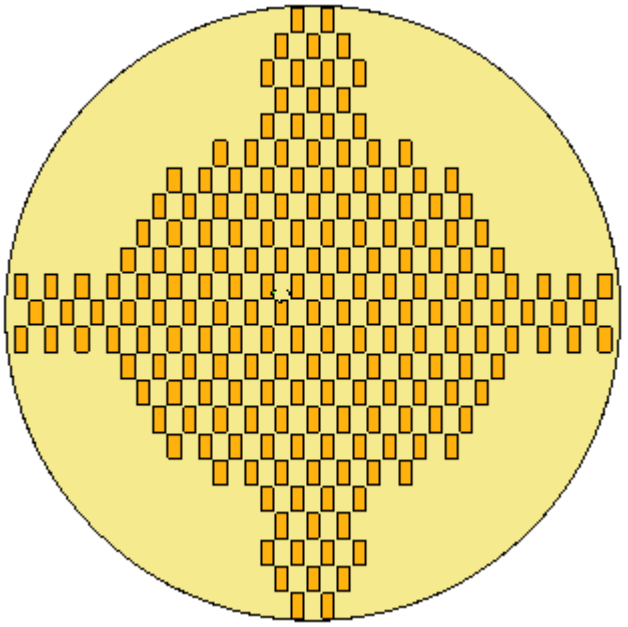
- Click the Fill Pattern text to edit the pattern. In the fill pattern command bar, click the Stagger fill pattern type.

- Notice that the occurrence vertical spacing value for a rectangular pattern is replaced with an angular value in a staggered pattern. The default Polar value of 60° produces a stagger on the second row equal to half of the first row spacing.



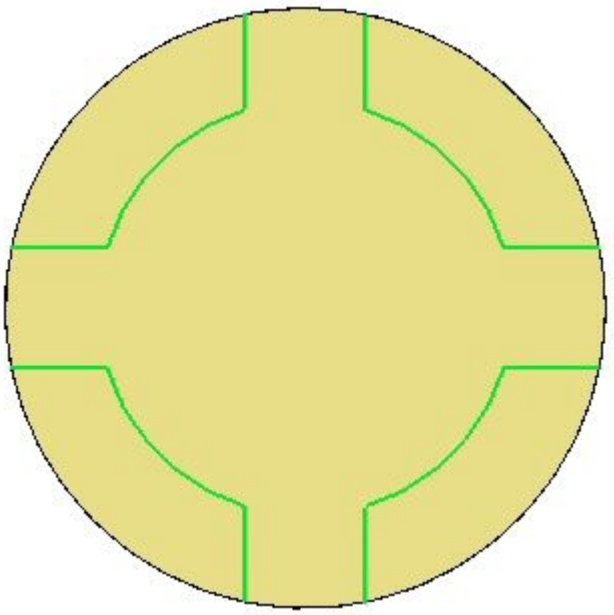
Click the Accept button.

- Press Esc to end the pattern edit.

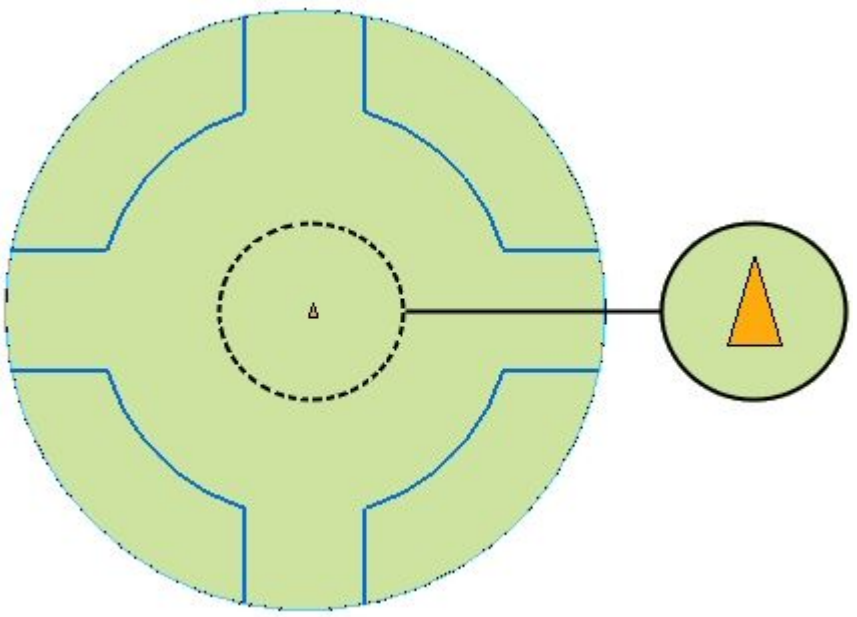


Create a radial fill pattern

- We will use a different parent feature to create a radial fill pattern. The feature is triangular shaped. Delete the fill pattern created in the previous steps.
- In PathFinder, right-click on the feature named *rectangle* and then click Detach.
- The fill pattern region sketch was moved to the Used Sketches collector after it was used to create the previous fill pattern. To get the sketch back, right-click on the sketch and click Restore.

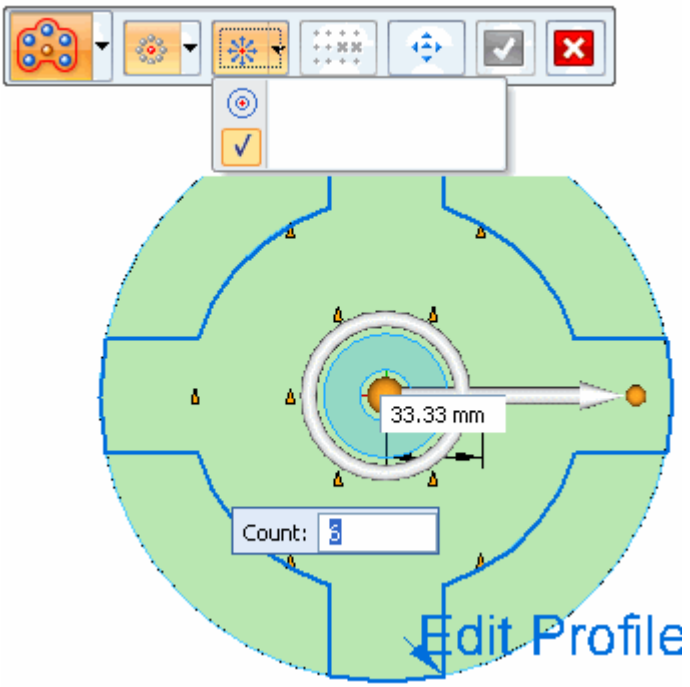


- In PathFinder, right-click on the feature named *triangle* and then click Attach.



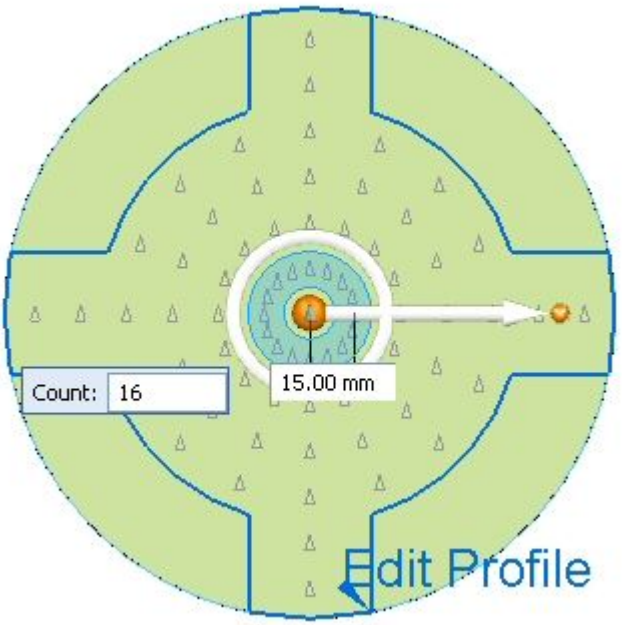
- In PathFinder, select the feature named *triangle*.
- Choose the Fill Pattern command.
- In the command bar, click the Radial fill pattern type.

- Select the same pattern region as used for the rectangular fill pattern and then click the Accept button.

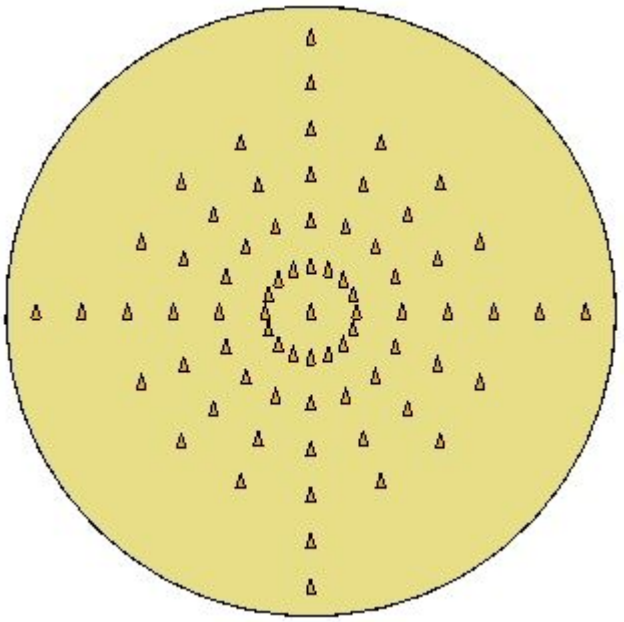


Notice that Instance Count is the default spacing.

- Change the count to 16 and the spacing distance to 15.



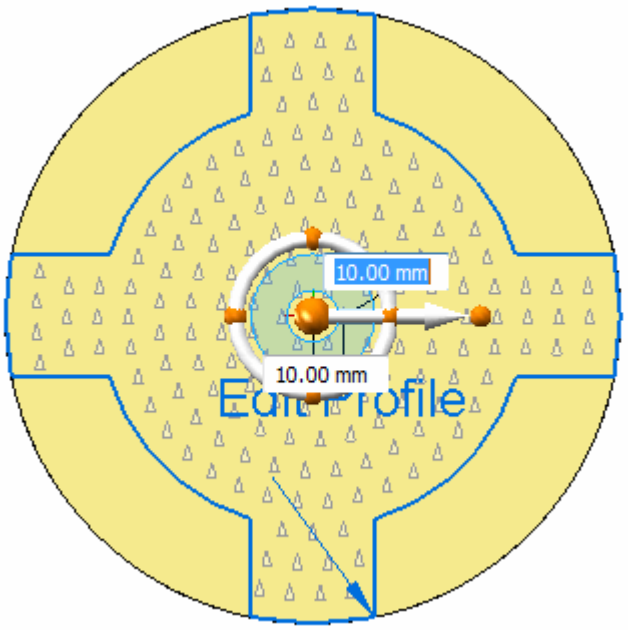
- Click the Accept button and then press Esc.



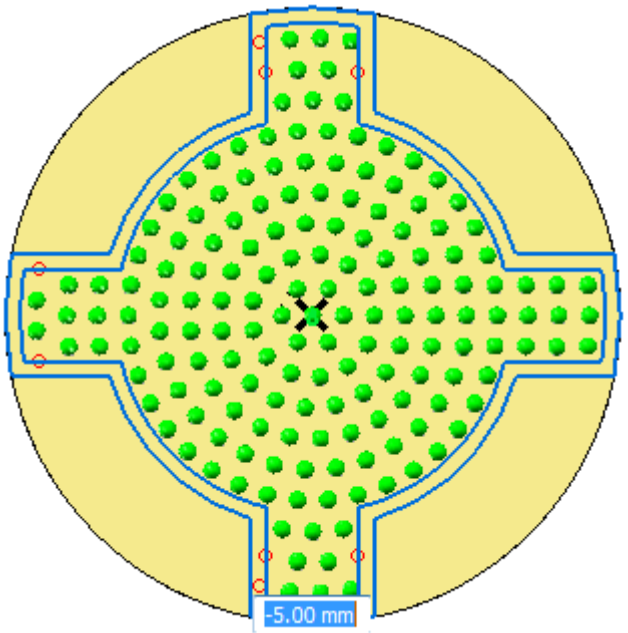
Edit the radial fill pattern

- In PathFinder, select the fill pattern feature.
- Change the spacing to Target Spacing.

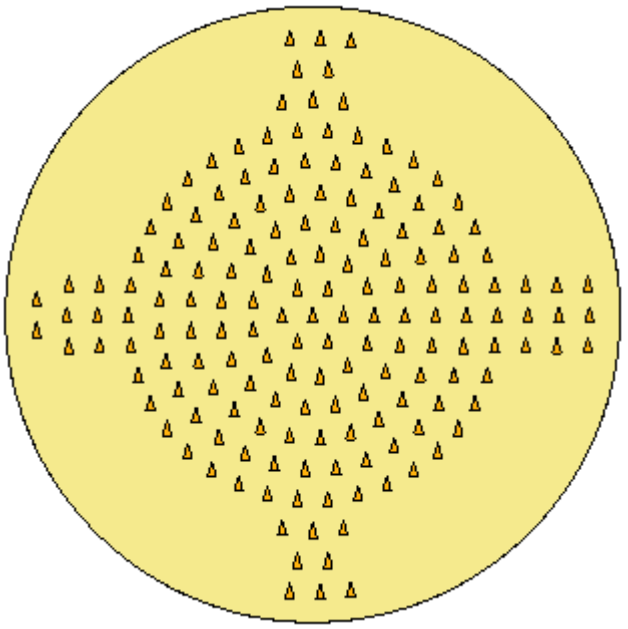
- Edit the spacing as shown.



- Edit the boundary offset to –5.



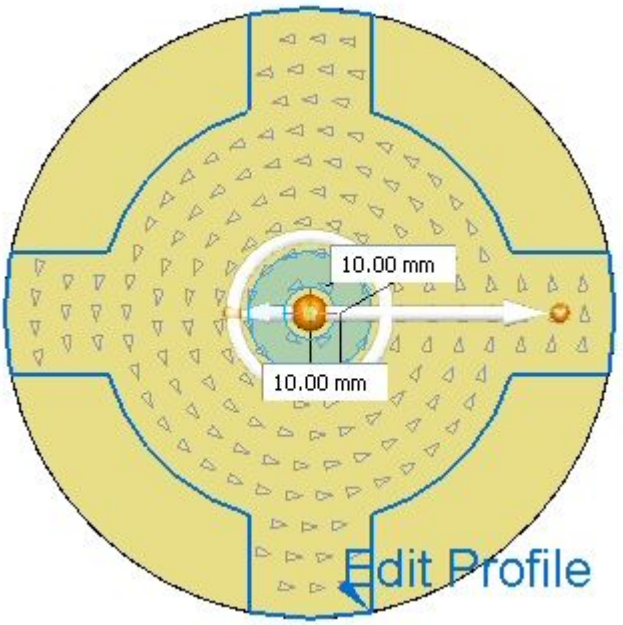
- Accept the Suppress step. Accept the pattern edit. Press Esc to end the pattern edit.



Change orientation of occurrences

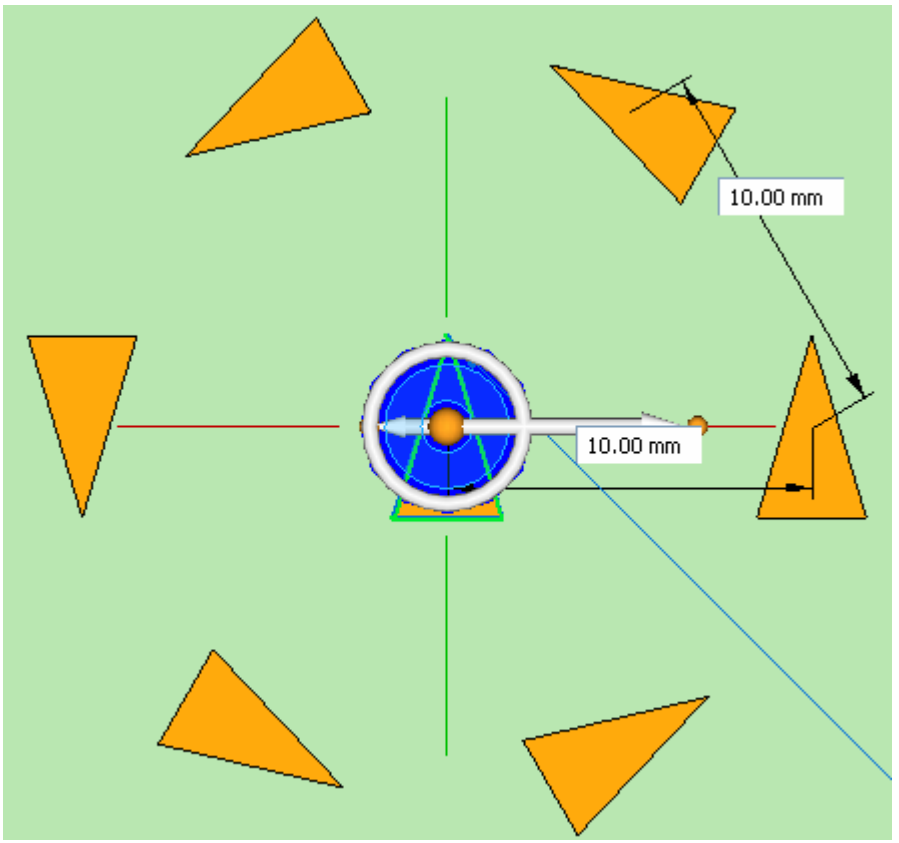
- An option available only for a radial pattern fill is the *Center Orient* option. This option provides the control of the orientation of each occurrence in the pattern. Edit the radial pattern feature.

- On the command bar, click the Center Orient option .

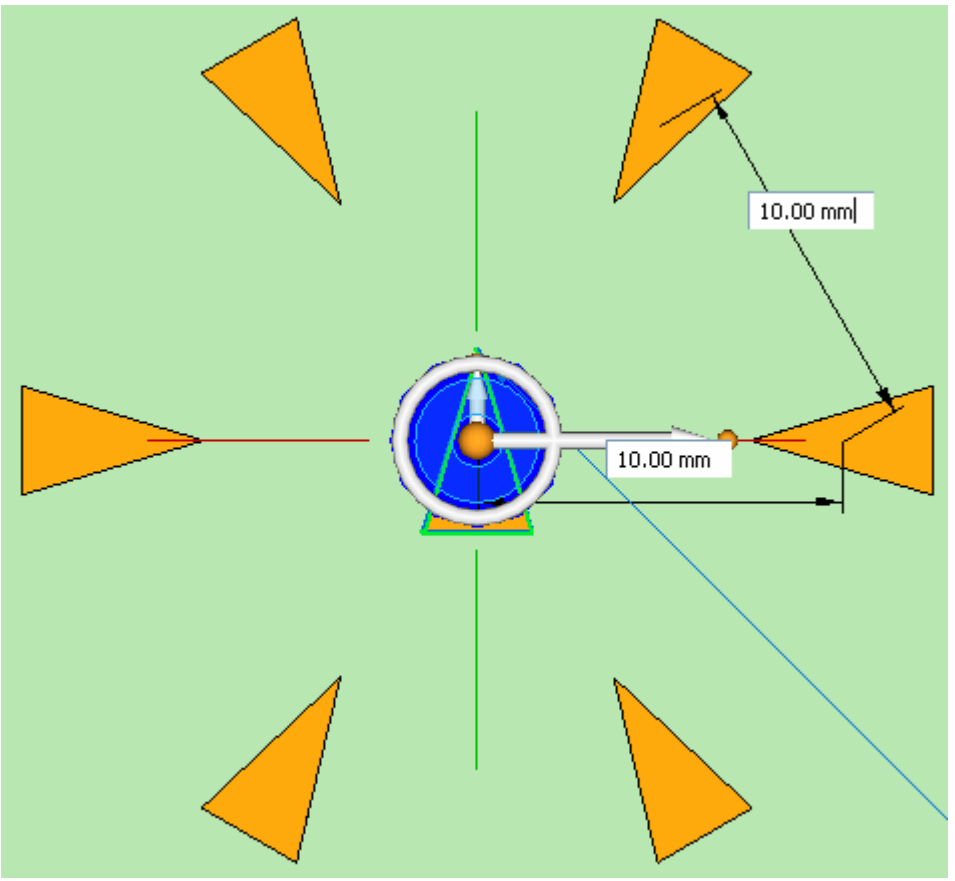


Notice all occurrences now have a new orientation.

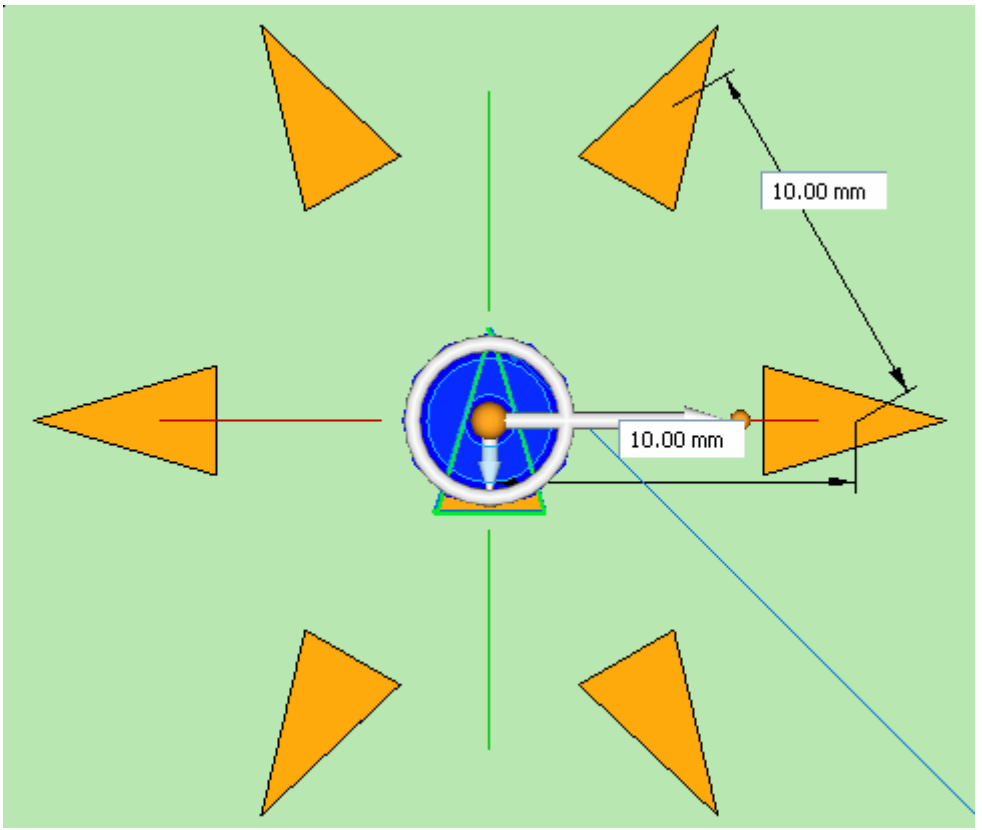
The orientation is controlled by the steering wheel's secondary axis (short arrow). The arrow points to the side of the parent feature which points to the center of the radial pattern. The following image shows the default orientation. In this example, the patterned arrows align in a counter-clock wise direction.



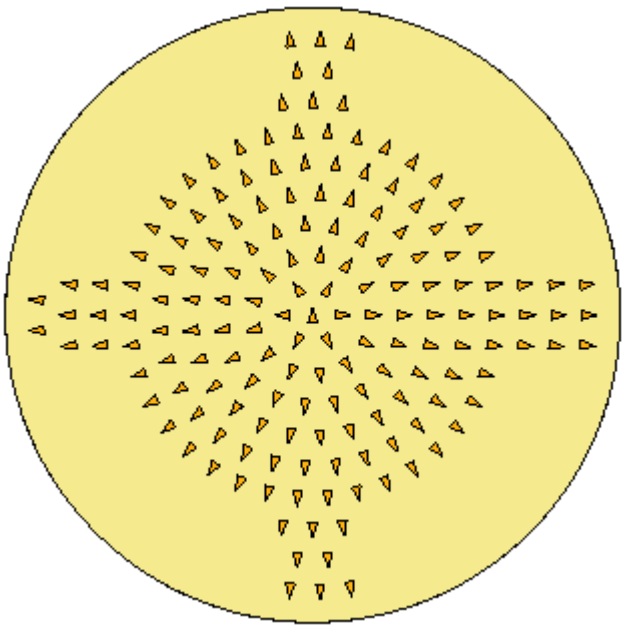
- Click on the steering wheel's torus sphere at the 12 o'clock position. All arrows point to the center.



- Change the orientation as shown. All arrows should point away from the center.



- Accept the edit and end the edit pattern command.

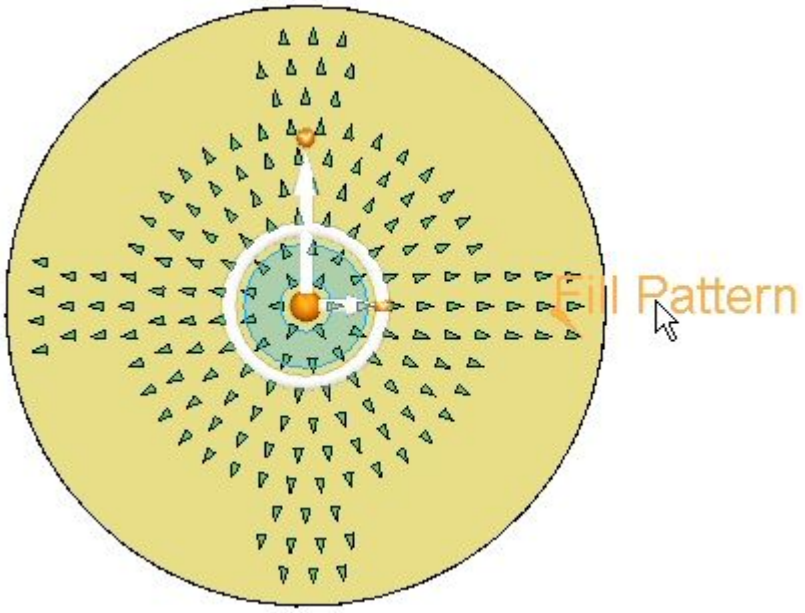


- Detach the pattern parent. In PathFinder, right-click the feature named *triangle* and choose the Detach command.

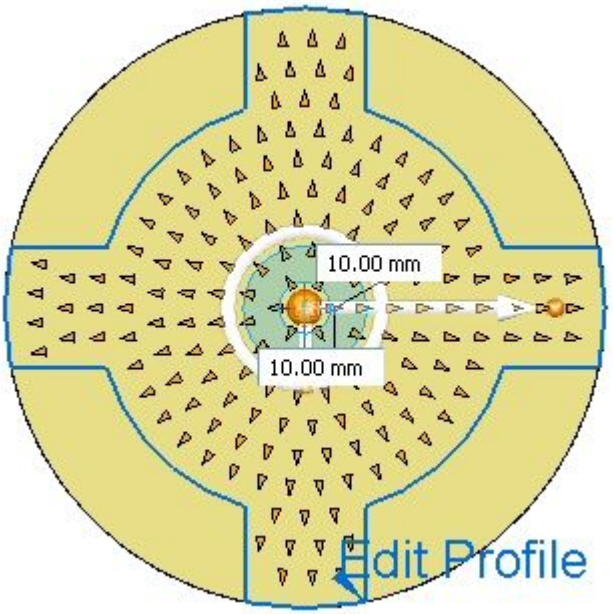
Edit the pattern fill boundary

- When a pattern fill is created, the boundaries are copied into the pattern definition. The original edges and sketch elements that define boundaries are not associative to the pattern boundaries. The original sketch is moved to the Used sketches collector.

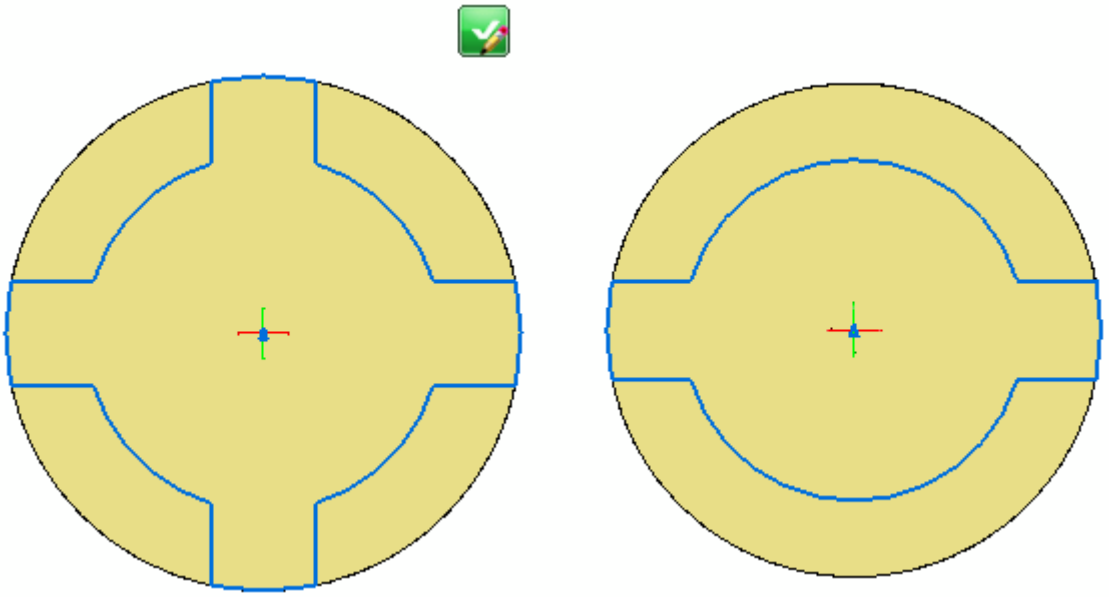
- Edit the radial pattern feature. Click the Fill Pattern handle.



- Click the Edit Profile handle.



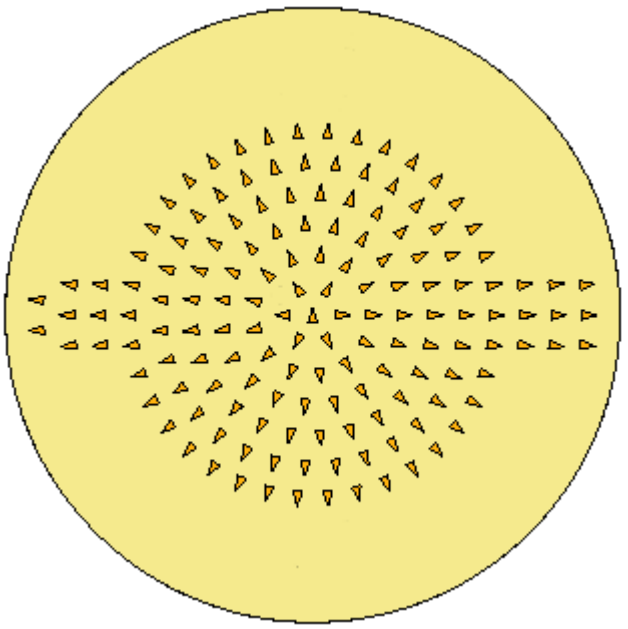
- Edit the region profile as shown. When edit is complete, click the green check in the upper right portion of the window.



Note

Hint: Use the Arc by 3 points command to place two new arcs. Use the Trim command to remove profile elements. Use the Connect relationship on the new arcs and the lines.

- Click the Accept button and then press Esc.



This concludes this activity. Close the file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create and edit a fill pattern. There are several options available to assist you in creating a desired fill pattern. Spend some time exploring these options to help master the use of the fill pattern command.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. What are the two options for defining the occurrence count and spacing of pattern occurrences?

2. When are the Rectangular and Circular pattern commands available?

3. What element types are valid for patterning?

4. In the Pattern Along Curve command, what types of curves can be used?

5. When using a Stagger fill pattern type, which of the following offset options requires an angle of rotation and a radius of the row spacing value?

Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. What are the two options for defining the occurrence count and spacing of pattern occurrences?

   Fit and Fixed.

2. When are the Rectangular and Circular pattern commands available?

   These comands become available once you have selected valid elements.

3. What element types are valid for patterning?

   You can select features, faces, and face sets as the parent elements to pattern.

4. In the Pattern Along Curve command, what types of curves can be used?

   You can pattern the elements along any 2D or 3D curve or model edges.

5. When using a Stagger fill pattern type, which of the following offset options requires an angle of rotation and a radius of the row spacing value?

   The Polar offset option.

Lesson summary

- Solid Edge provides four methods for patterning features: rectangular, circular, along a curve and a region fill.
- Patterns can be mirrored about a plane just like any single feature.
- You can suppress individual patterns occurrences or you can suppress a group of pattern occurrences. You can suppress occurrences while you are constructing the pattern or you can edit the pattern later to suppress occurrences.

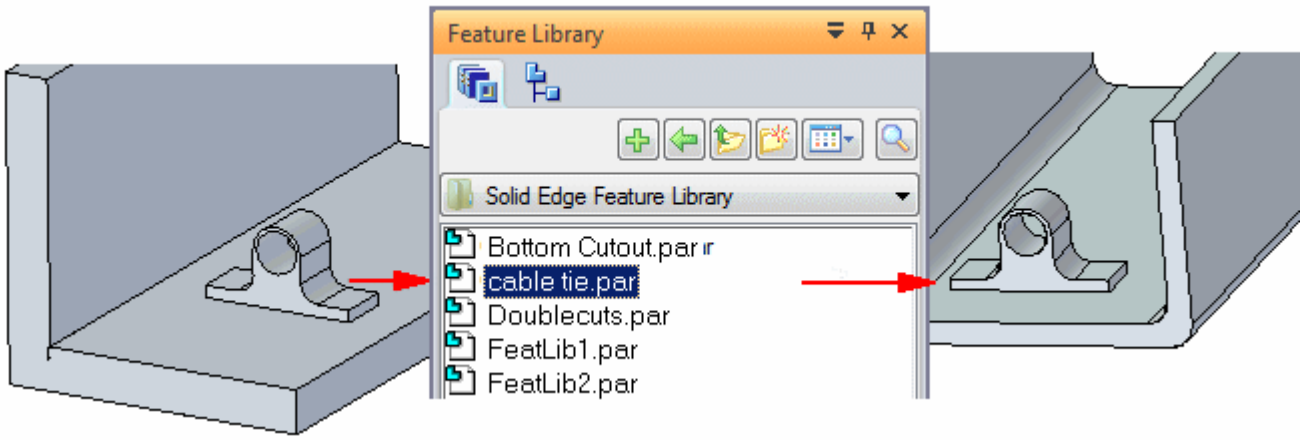
Feature libraries

You can use many of the features used for modeling in Solid Edge in a similar fashion in other designs. The Feature Library page and Teamcenter Feature Library page provides a place for you to store commonly used part and sheet metal features in an easy to access location so you create new designs with less effort and more consistency.

Note

You cannot edit the features stored in the feature library.

For example, you can construct a cable tie in one part, store the feature in a feature library location, then reuse it in a new part later.



A feature library entry may contain the following synchronous elements:

- features
- faces
- sketches
- planes
- coordinate systems
- constructions

Note

You can only place a synchronous feature library member while in the synchronous environment.

The only ordered element that you can add to the feature library is a feature. When placing an ordered feature in a feature library, the attributes for the feature are maintained.

A feature library entry cannot contain a mixture of synchronous and ordered elements.

Note

You can place an ordered feature library member while in either the synchronous or ordered environment.

Feature library members

A feature library member is a special type of Solid Edge part or sheet metal document. Feature library members typically do not have a base feature.

Defining unmanaged feature library locations

An unmanaged feature library is a folder on your computer or a network drive that is used to store feature library members. You define the location for a feature library using the Look In option on the Feature Library page. Use the Look In option to browse to an existing folder on your hard drive or a network drive. You also can use the Create New Folder button to create a new folder where you can store library members.

To avoid confusion, define standards for which folders you use as feature libraries. You should use these folders for feature library member documents only and not store other Solid Edge documents in them.

It is recommended that ordered and synchronous feature library members be added into separate folders.

Learn how to use feature libraries

A feature library tutorial is available for learning how to use feature libraries. To access the tutorials, click Tutorials on the Help menu. The feature library tutorial is located in the Sheet Metal section on the Tutorials menu.

Storing features in a library

The steps for creating an unmanaged feature library member are:

for synchronous members

Step 1: Switch to the synchronous environment.

Step 2: Select one or more synchronous elements.

Step 3: On the Feature Library page, click the Add Entry button.

Note

You can also select the synchronous elements, add them to the clipboard, and then paste into the Feature Library page.

Step 4: Define a name for the library member using the Feature Library Entry dialog box.

for ordered members

Step 1: Switch to the ordered environment.

Step 2: Select one or more ordered features.

Step 3: On the Feature Library page, click the Add Entry button.

Note

You can also select the ordered elements, add them to the clipboard, and then paste into the Feature Library page.

Step 4: Define custom prompts and notes for the library member using the Feature Set Information dialog box.

Step 5: Define a name for the library member using the Feature Library Entry dialog box.

The steps for creating a Teamcenter-managed feature library member are:

Step 1: Select a feature from the part.

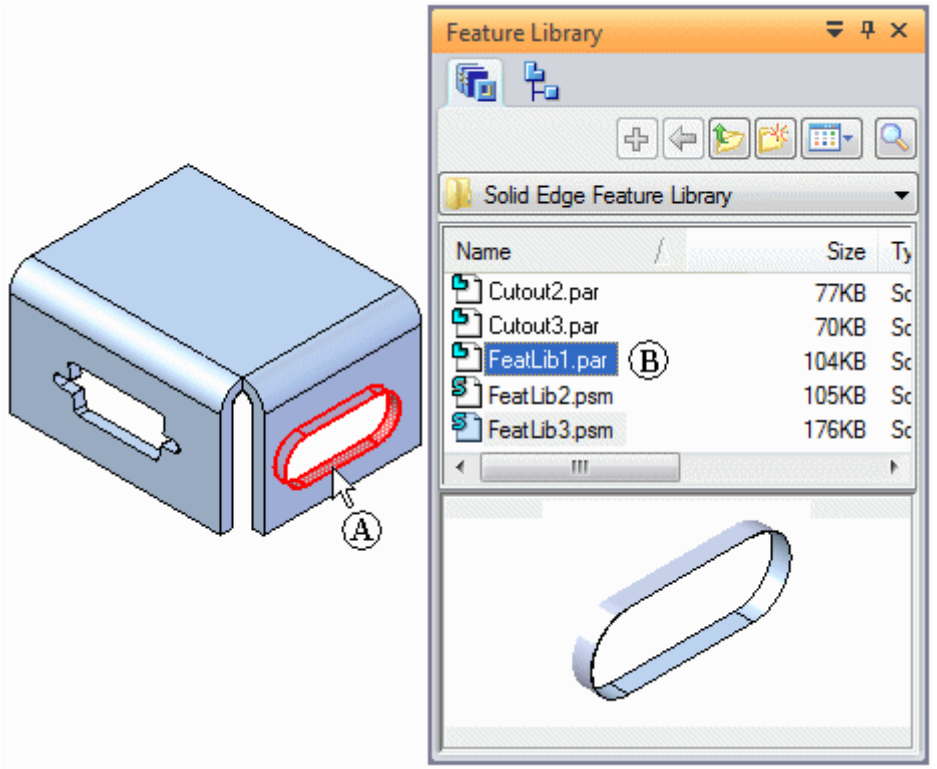
Step 2: Click the Teamcenter Feature Library tab.

Step 3: Drag the geometric feature to the Teamcenter Feature Library page.

Step 4: Complete the New Document dialog box.

A simple ordered example

To create a new ordered member in a feature library, select a feature (A). On the Feature Library page, click the Add Entry button to add the new library member to a Feature Library folder (B).



When you click the Add Entry button on the Feature Library page, the Feature Set Information dialog box appears so you can review the required and optional elements of the new library member, define custom prompts, and add notes for the library member elements.

The feature library stores each member you add as an individual document and the software assigns a default document name.

Selecting features

You can select features in the application window or on the PathFinder page. You can store a single feature in a library or you can store several features as a unit. To store multiple features as a unit, hold the Ctrl or Shift keys when you select the features.

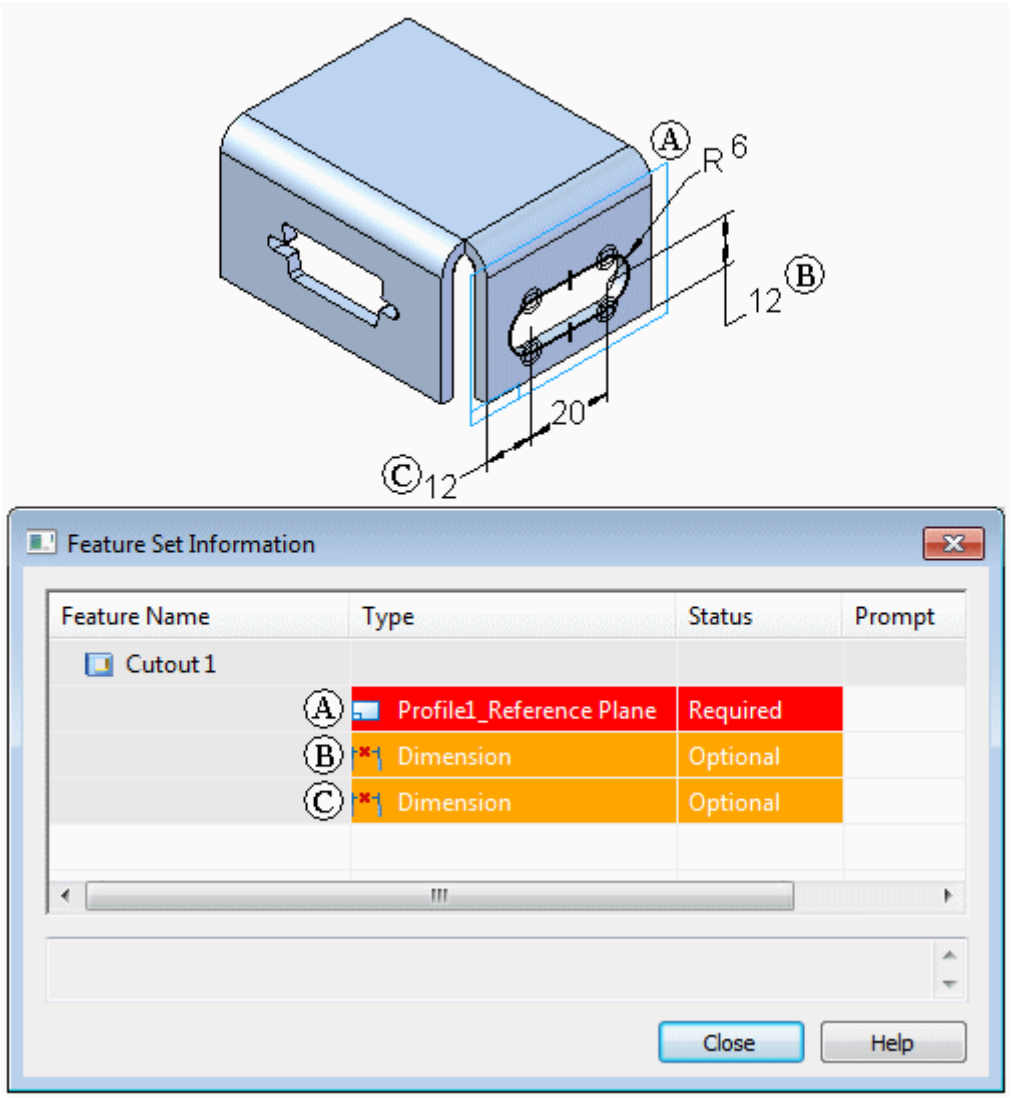
When storing a single ordered feature, only a profile-based feature is valid. When storing several ordered features, the lower-most feature in the feature set must be a profile-based feature. Subsequent features can be profile-based or treatment features.

Ordered Feature Set Information dialog box

The Feature Set Information dialog box Feature Set Information dialog box displays the features, reference planes, and dimension elements in the same sequence that will be used when the library member is placed. For example, when defining a library member for a cutout feature, the cutout feature is listed in the Feature Name column. Elements that belong to the cutout are listed in the Type column. This can include the profile plane (A) and any dimensions that reference edges outside the cutout profile (B) (C).

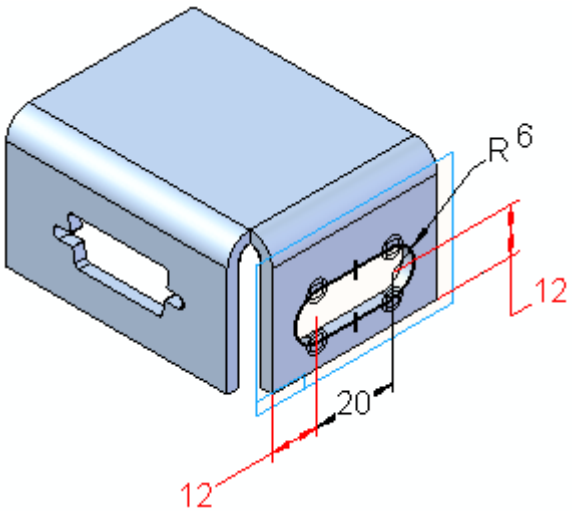
A Status column in the dialog box lists whether a library element is required or optional. A required element must be redefined when placing the library member. An optional element can be redefined when you place the library member or can be skipped and redefined later.

You can use the Prompt column to define custom prompts for each element in the Type list. This makes it easier for other users to place the library members.



Ordered dimensions that reference geometry outside the profile

When you create a new ordered feature library member, dimensions that reference geometry outside of the feature set are listed in the Feature Set Information dialog box, but you will need to redefine the external elements for the dimensions later. For example, the two 12 millimeter dimensions reference edges that are outside the library member profile.



You can redefine the dimension edges when you place the library member, or you can skip the dimensions and redefine the dimension edges by editing the feature.

Defining custom prompts and notes

To type custom prompts, double click a Prompt cell, then type the prompt you want. The prompts you type are displayed in the status bar on the command bar when you place the library feature. When you open a prompt cell, the message area at the bottom of the dialog box is also activated, so you can type more information about the element.

Closing the dialog box and renaming the library feature

When you click the Close button on the Feature Set Information dialog box, a new library member is added to the Feature Library page using a default document name. To rename a stored feature, select it in the Feature Library page, then click the Rename command on the shortcut menu.

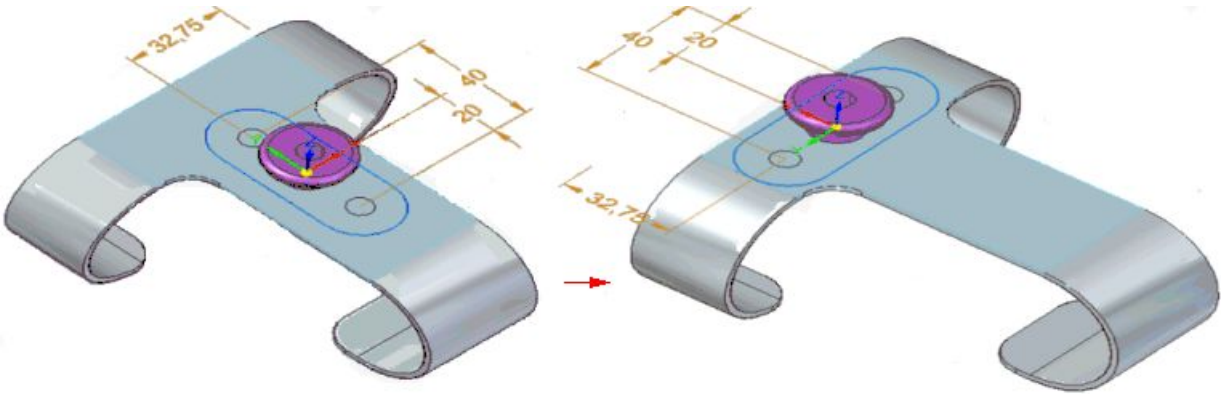
Placing feature library members

Placing synchronous feature members

You place a synchronous library member in a document by dragging the library member from the Feature Library page to the application window.

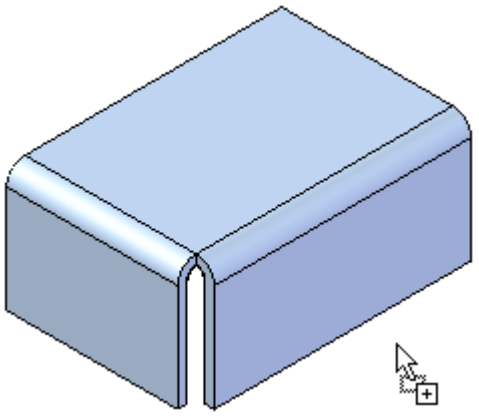
When you paste a feature library member, the origin of the steering wheel is the origin of the feature library member. The orientation and position are maintained. You cannot locate a keypoint when pasting the feature library. You can use the Move and Rotate commands to precisely position and orient the feature.

When placed, faces add as detached. You can use the Attach command to attach the geometry to the new model.

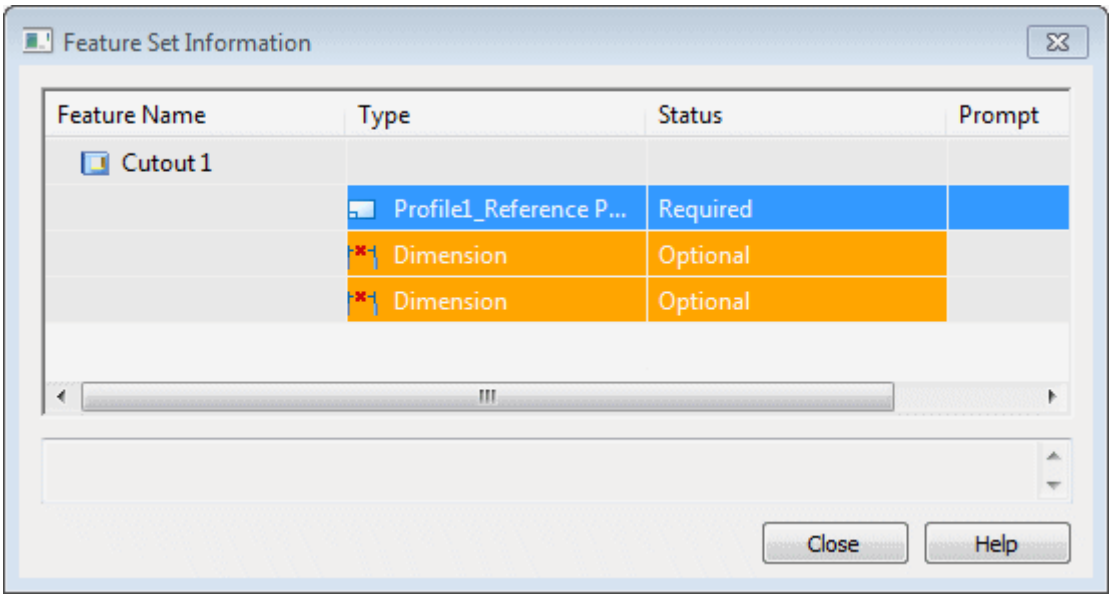


Placing ordered feature members

You place an ordered library member in a document by dragging the library member from the Feature Library page and dropping it into the application window.



When you drop the ordered member into the application window, the feature creation process starts, similar to when you create a feature from scratch. A command bar and the Feature Set Information dialog box appear, so you can define the required and optional elements for positioning the library member on your model.



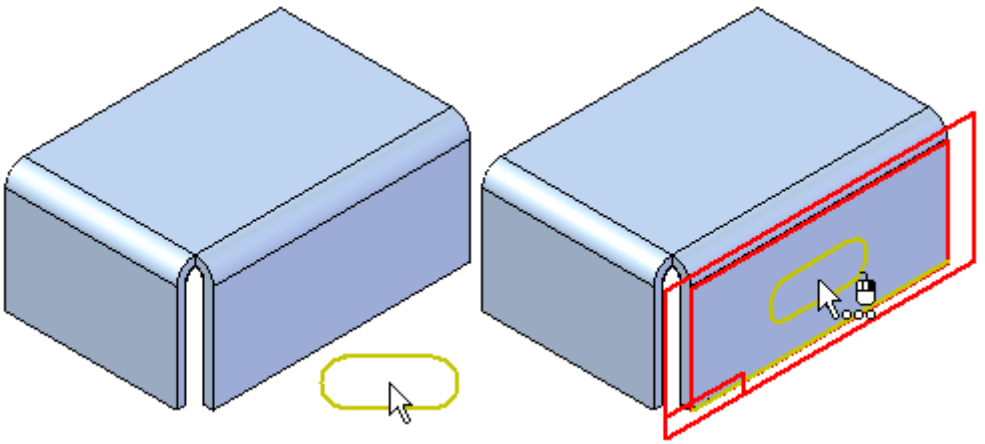
The basic steps for placing an ordered library member include:

1. Define the required elements, such as the profile plane and profile orientation.

2. Define the optional elements, such as dimensions that reference external elements.

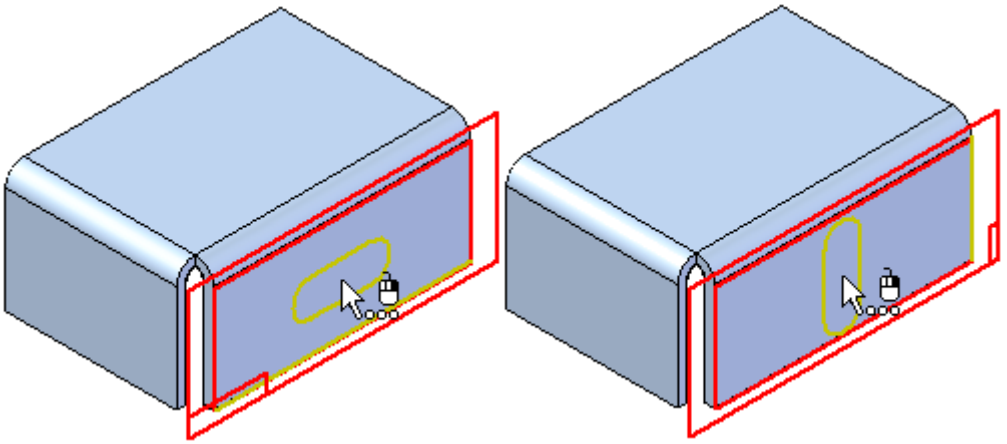
Defining the profile plane and the profile orientation

The profile for the member attaches to the cursor so you can position the feature approximately where you want it. When you move the cursor over a planar face or reference plane, the profile for the feature orients itself with respect to the x-axis of the profile plane.

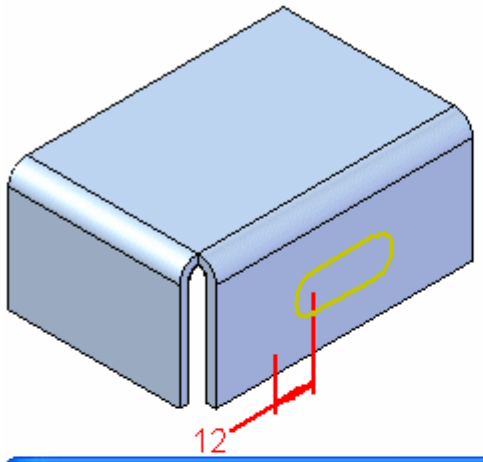


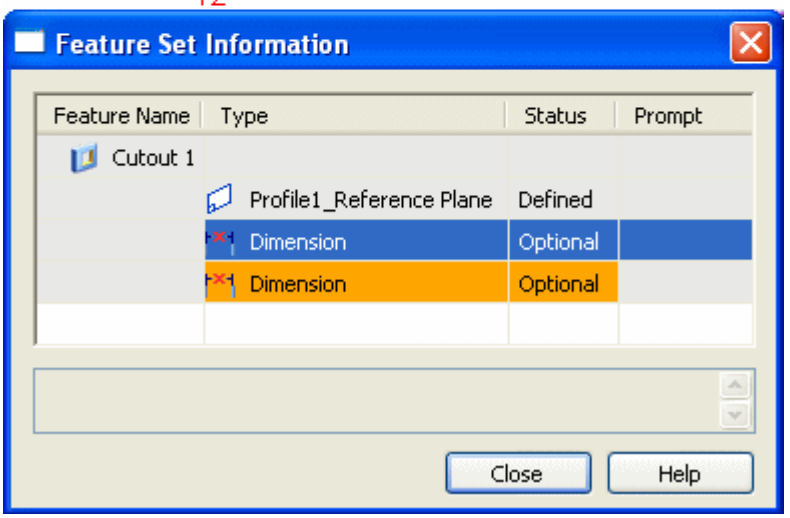
You also can select a different reference plane placement option using the Create-From Options list on the command bar.

For coincident and parallel reference planes, you can reorient the profile for the library member by defining a different x-axis for the profile plane. For example, when defining a coincident profile plane, you can use the N key on the keyboard to select the next linear edge as the x-axis. When the profile is oriented properly, click to position the library member.



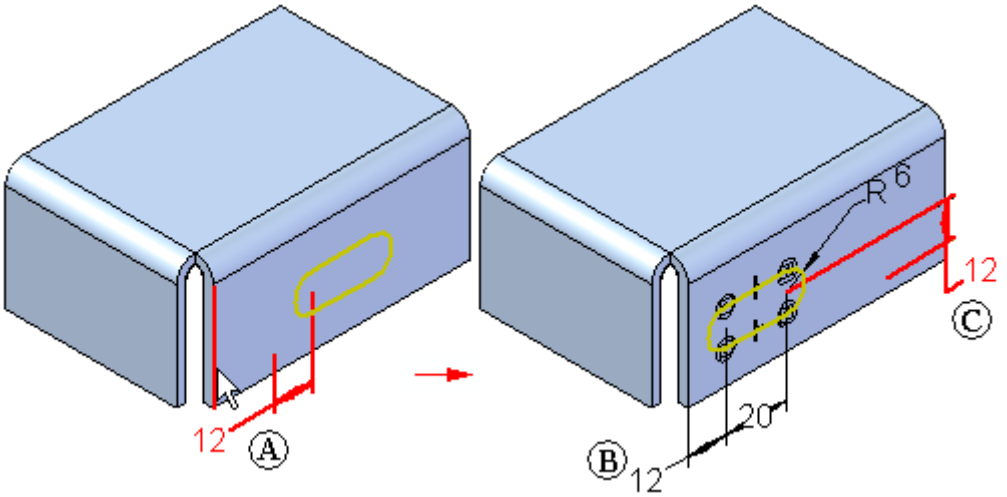
After you define the profile plane and profile orientation, the profile positions on the face, and the Feature Set Information dialog box updates to the next element in the list. If dimensions that reference external elements are in the list, the first dimension appears in the graphic window so you can redefine the external edge.



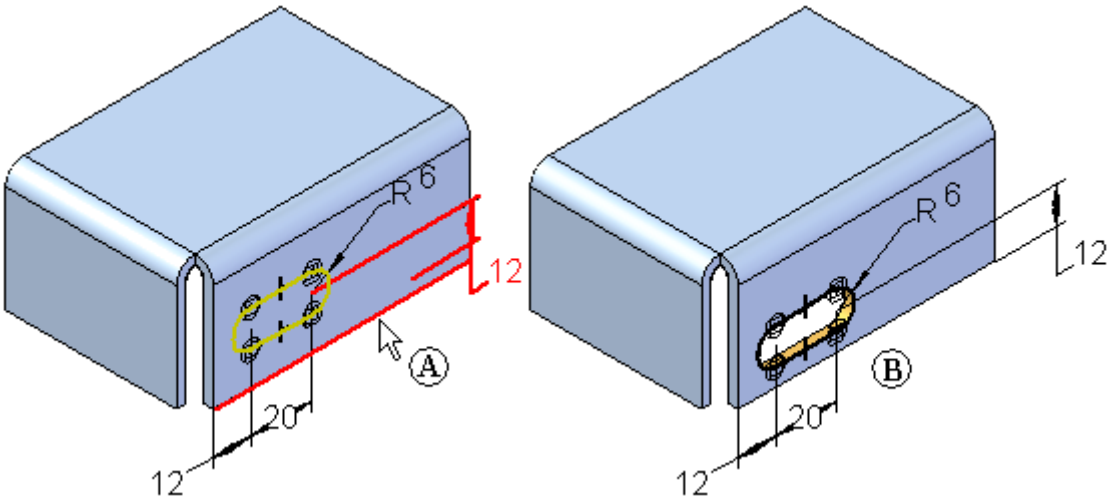


Redefining dimension edges while placing the library member

To redefine the external edge for a dimension while placing the library member, simply select an appropriate edge in the graphic window (A). The dimension attaches to the selected edge, using the dimension value that appears (B). The profile updates its position, and if another dimension that references an external element is in the list, it appears in the graphic window (C).



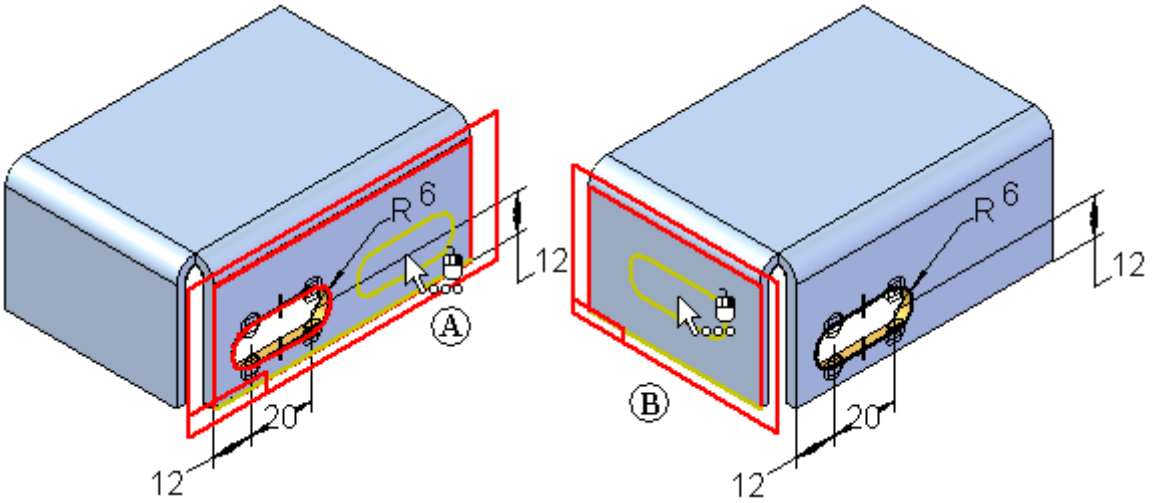
You can then select an edge for the next dimension (A), and the profile updates again (B). If this is the last element in the Feature Set Information list, the completed feature appears in the graphic window. The value of the dimensions reflects the original dimension value when you defined the library member.



If this is the only copy of the library member you want to place, you can click the Close button to close the dialog box. If you want to place another member, you can click the Repeat on the command bar.

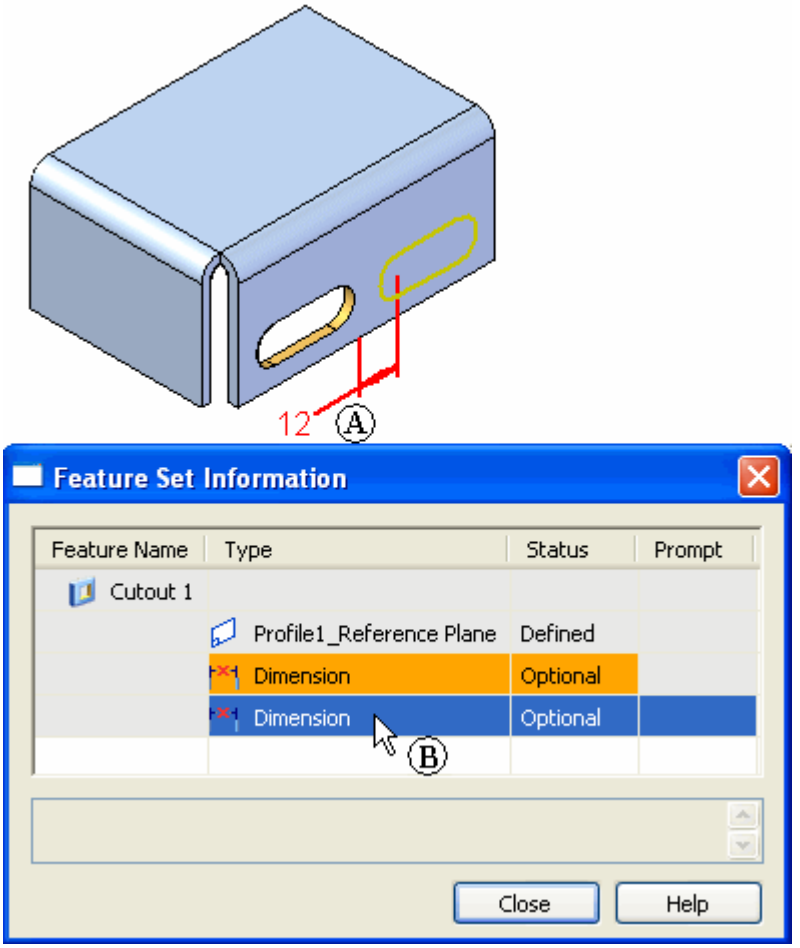
Placing additional copies of the library member

After you place a library member, you can place another copy using the Repeat button on the command bar. You can place a copy on the same face, (A), or a copy on a different face (B).

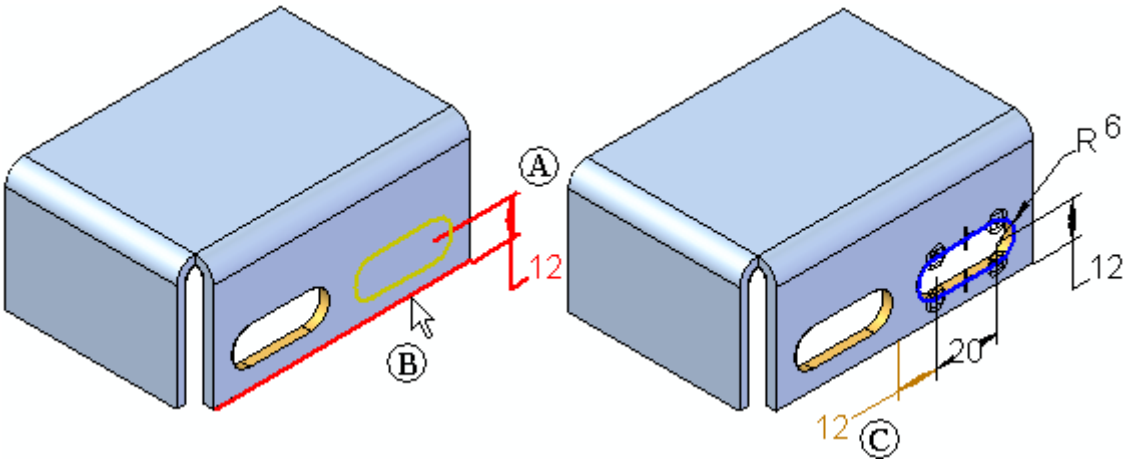


If you place another library member on the same face as the original member, you will likely want to avoid placing both copies directly on top of one another. If you select the same edges for the dimensions that reference external elements, the second member places directly on top of the first member. This can cause the feature to fail, but you can fix it by editing the dimensions for the feature later.

You can also avoid this by not selecting an edge for one of the dimensions during placement of the library member. For example, you can skip the 12 millimeter dimension shown (A), by clicking the next row in the Feature Set Information dialog box (B).



The next dimension appears in the graphic window (A). In this case, you can select the same edge (B) as the first member. The profile and feature place on the face, and the dimension you skipped appears in the failed color (C) to indicate that it needs to have its external edge defined. You can then close the dialog box and edit this feature to define the dimension edge and edit its value.

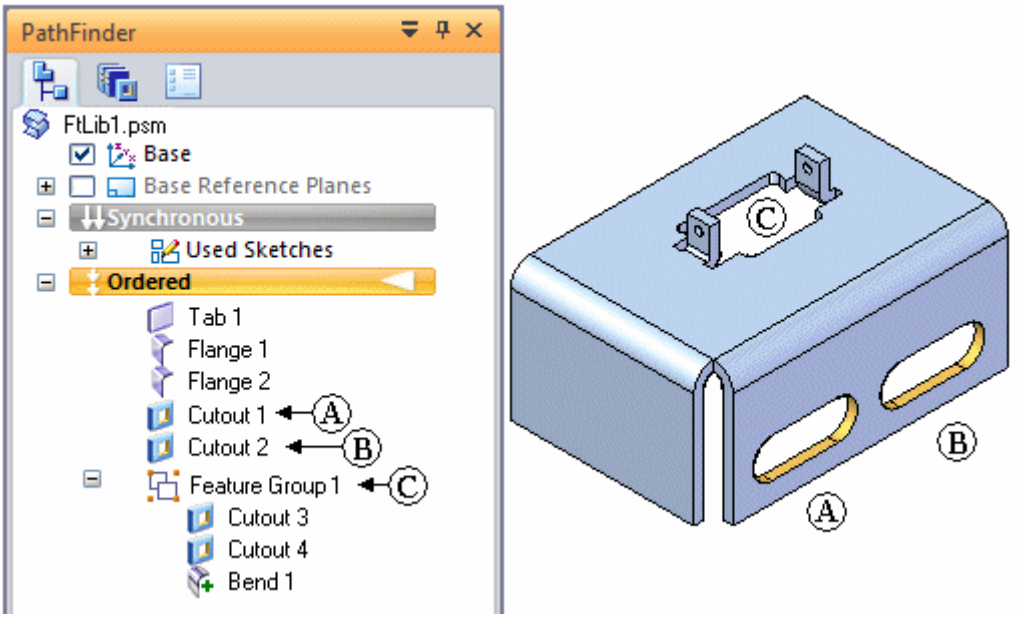


Library members with multiple features

You can create library members that contain more than one profile-based feature. For this type of member, the reference plane for each profile-based feature is captured in the Feature Set Information dialog box as a required element. You must redefine the profile plane for each feature in the library member at placement time.

Feature library member behavior after placement and feature groups

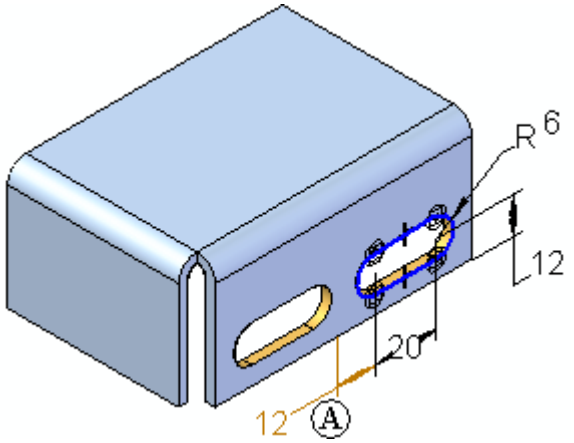
After you place a feature library member on a model, it is treated the same as features you construct manually. You edit them in the same fashion. A feature group is created in Feature PathFinder for library members that consist of multiple features. In this example, there were three feature library members placed on the model. Two with single features (A) and (B), and one with multiple features (C). Notice that only one feature group was defined.



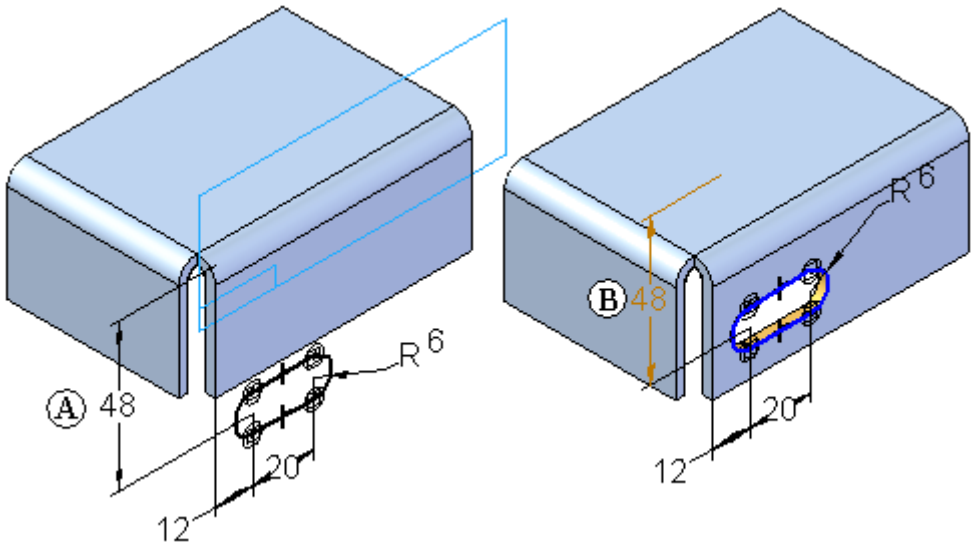
Redefining parent edges

When you bypass dimensions with references to external elements while placing an ordered library member, the dimensions appear using the Failed color (A). This makes it easy to find and redefine parent edges for the dimensions. Bypassing dimensions can be useful in the following situations:

- When placing two library members on the same face.

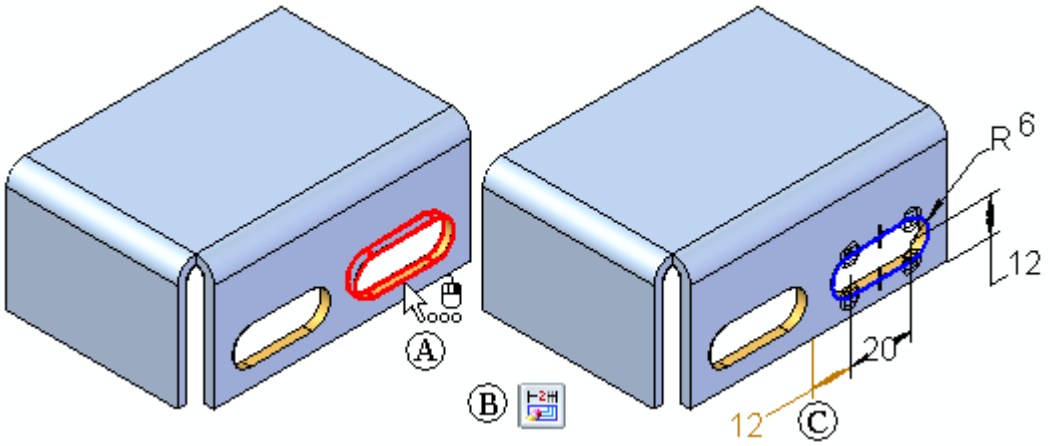


- When redefining a dimension that references an external edge at placement time would cause the feature to fail. For example, defining the 48 millimeter dimension (A) during placement forces the library member profile off the selected face, which causes the feature to fail temporarily. This can be easily fixed by editing the feature later, but it is often easier to visualize placement of a complex library member when you bypass source dimensions in these cases, as shown at (B).

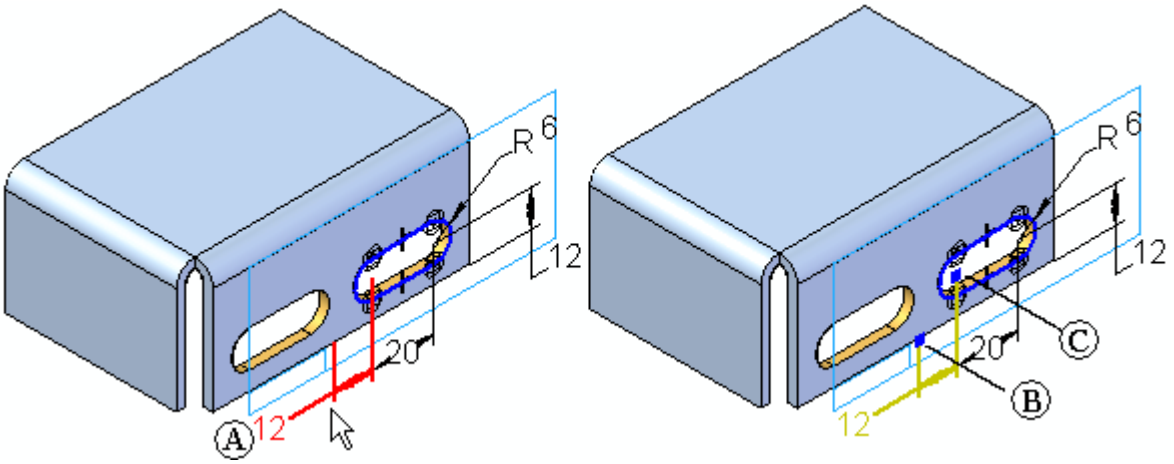


To redefine the parent edge for a dimension later, do the following:

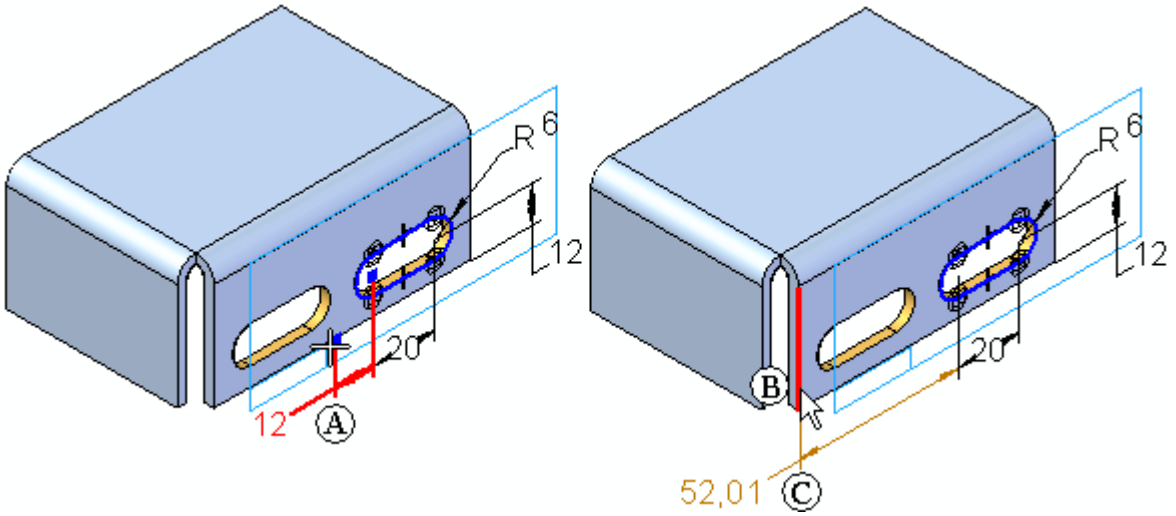
Step 1: Select the feature in Feature PathFinder or the graphic window (A), then click the Dynamic Edit button (B) on the Select Tool command bar. The profile and dimensions appear in the graphic window. Any failed dimensions (C) are displayed using the Failed color.



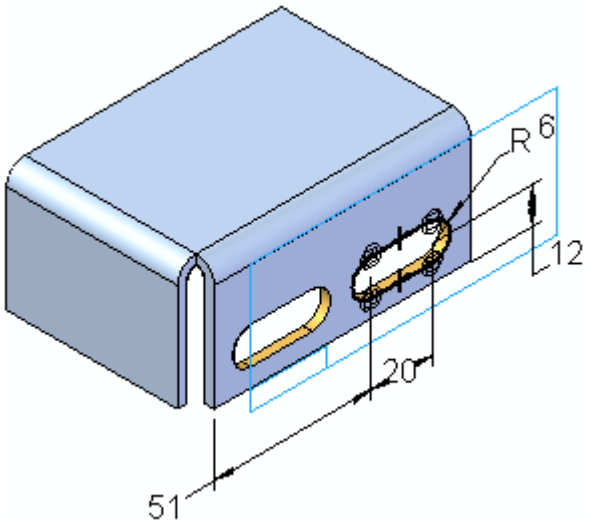
Step 2: Select the failed dimension you want to reattach (A). The dimension handles appear (B) (C).



Step 3: Position the cursor over the appropriate dimension handle (A), then drag the handle over the edge (B) to which you want to attach the dimension. Notice that the dimension value updates to reflects the current distance between the external edge and the profile element (C).



Step 4: Edit the dimension to the value you want.



Feature library guidelines

- The first feature for an ordered library member must be a profile-based feature.
- You can select one or more features.
- An ordered library member that contains a treatment feature, such as a round or chamfer, must also include the parent profile-based feature.
- Driving dimensions that reference edges outside of the select set are captured as part of the library member definition.
- Geometric relationships that reference edges outside of the select set are not captured as part of the library member definition.
- When you place an ordered library member, a command bar and Feature Set Information dialog box allow you to place the profile-based features onto reference planes you select.
- An ordered library member can contain suppressed features. When placed, the features remain suppressed.
- Library members that use a sketch profile as input are allowed as long as a feature exists on the same face as the sketch. Dimensions that reference edges outside of the select set are not captured when using sketches.
- The library member can not contain external dependencies other than dimensions. For example, you can not use edges of the model that are not included in the select set to orient a reference plane that is used to create one of the features for the library member.

Create an unmanaged feature library member

Step 1: Click the Feature Library tab.

Step 2: On the Feature Library page, use the arrow button on the Look In box to specify the location of the feature library folder.

Step 3: In the Solid Edge window or on the PathFinder page, select the feature(s) you want to copy to the feature library.

Step 4: Right-click and choose Copy. Display the Feature Library tab, right-click and choose Paste.

Note

You can also click Add Entry button to perform a copy and paste into the feature library.

Step 5:

Note

When adding ordered features, a feature library member document is added to the Feature Library tab, and the Feature Set Information dialog box appears.

In the Feature Library Entry dialog box, type a name for the library entry.

Tip

- To store multiple features as a unit, press the Shift or Ctrl keys, and select the features.
- You can use the Rename command on the shortcut menu to change the name of the new feature library member document on the Feature Library page.
- For ordered features, you can define prompts and notes for the elements in the Feature Library Information dialog box.

Place a feature library member into another document

Step 1: Open the Solid Edge document you want to place the stored feature library member into.

Step 2: In the lower left portion of the window, click the Feature Library tab.

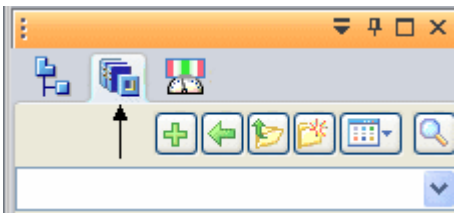
Step 3: Select the feature library member you want and drag it from the Feature Library page to the Solid Edge window.

Step 4: Position the cursor over the face you want and click to position the profile for feature library member.

Step 5: Use the Move command to precisely position and orient the feature.

Step 6: Use the Attach command to attach the geometry to the model.

Activity: Feature Libraries



Overview

This activity demonstrates the definition and use of feature libraries.

Objectives

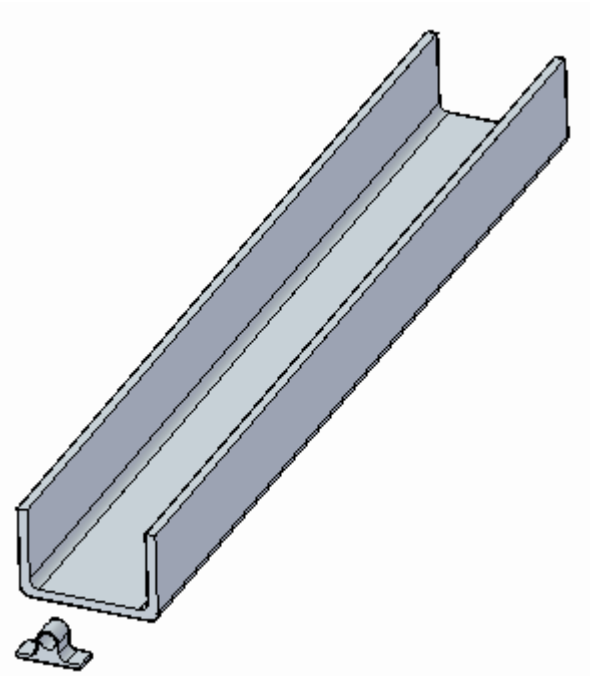
Create and place a frequently-used face set.

In this activity you will:

- Create a feature library.
- Copy a feature to the new library.
- Place the library member into two different part files.

Activity: Feature Libraries

Open *feature_library.par*.



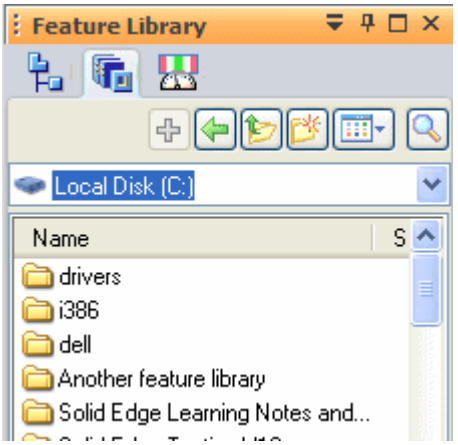
Create a feature library

- Select the Feature Library tab on the left edge of the application window, exposing the Feature Library pane.

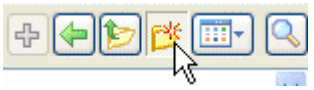
On the Look In list, change the view to the C: drive.

Note

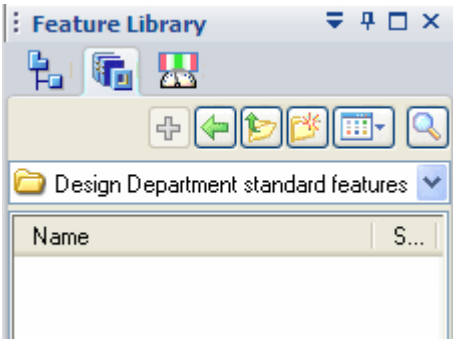
The C: drive contents will vary from those shown below.



- Click the Create New Folder button to create your own folder under the Local Disk (C:). You can type any folder name you wish.



The focus automatically changes to the new folder.

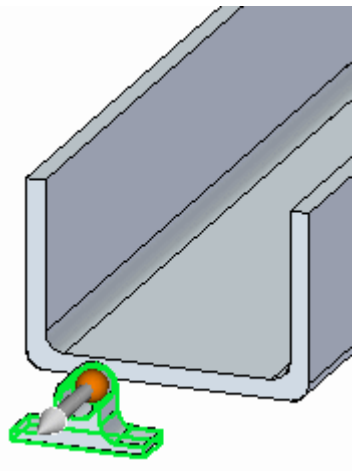


Note

The folder name shown will vary from yours.

Define a member of the feature library

- Select the *Protrusion 8* face set, either directly or from PathFinder.

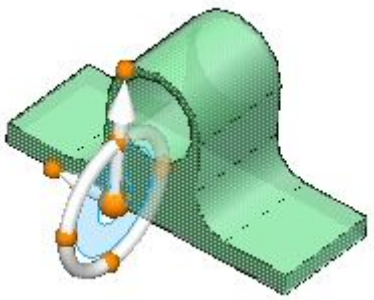


Note

It is important to position the steering wheel on a feature that is being copied so that when it is pasted to a face, the copied feature orients properly.

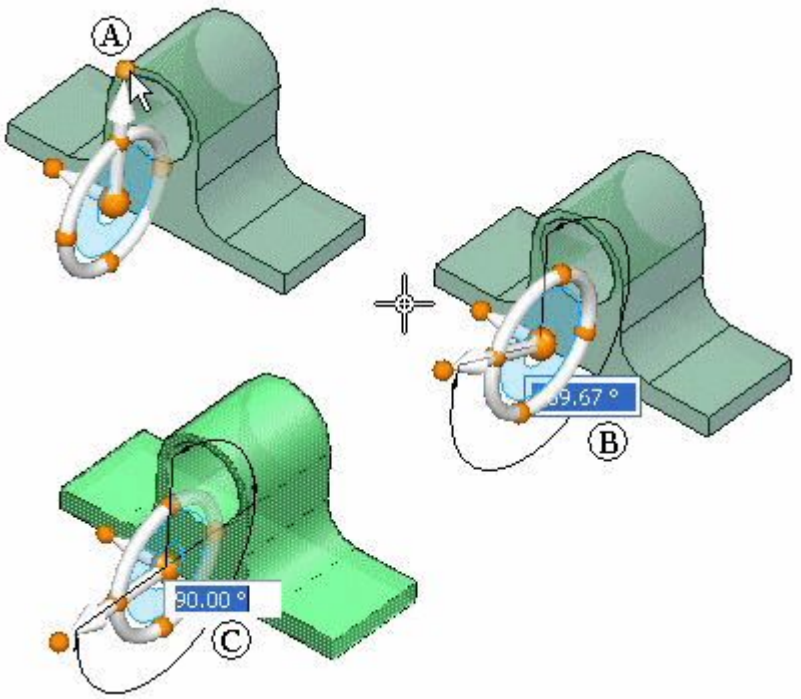
- Position the steering wheel so that the steering wheel plane lies on the bottom face.

  Click the steering wheel origin and drag it to an edge on the bottom face.

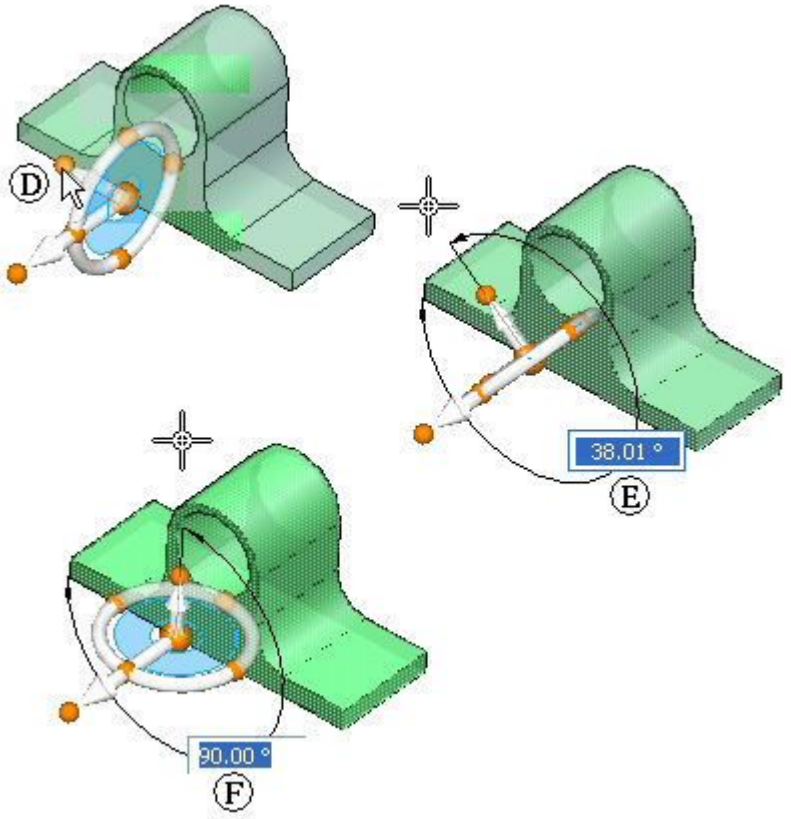


- Position the steering wheel plane to be coplanar with the bottom face.

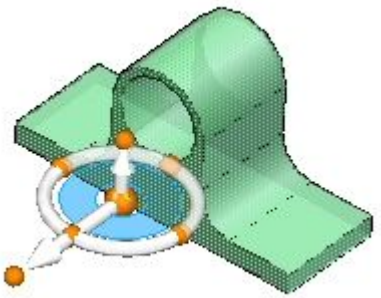
  Press the Shift key and select the knob on the end of the primary axis (A). Release the Shift key. As you move the cursor, a dynamic edit box reflects the rotation angle (B). Type 90 in the dynamic edit box (C).



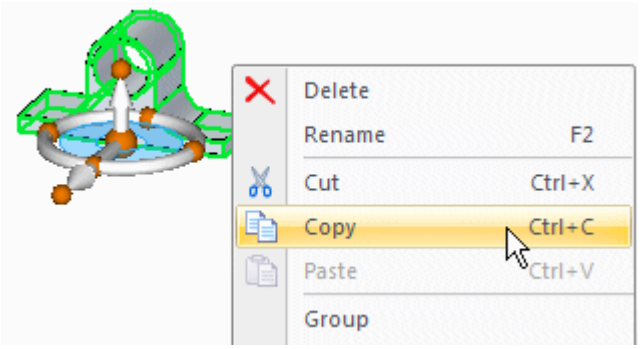
Press the Shift key and select the knob on the end of the secondary axis (D). Release the Shift key. As you move the cursor, a dynamic edit box reflects the rotation angle (E). Type 90 in the dynamic edit box (F).



Left-click to finish the rotation.



- Right-click and choose Copy, or press Ctrl+C.



Select the Feature Library tab from the left hand edge of the application window.

It should still be set to the folder created earlier. Right-click in the white space towards the bottom and choose Paste.

The Feature Library Entry dialog box appears. Type *cable_tie* for the name, then click Save.

You now have a feature library member.

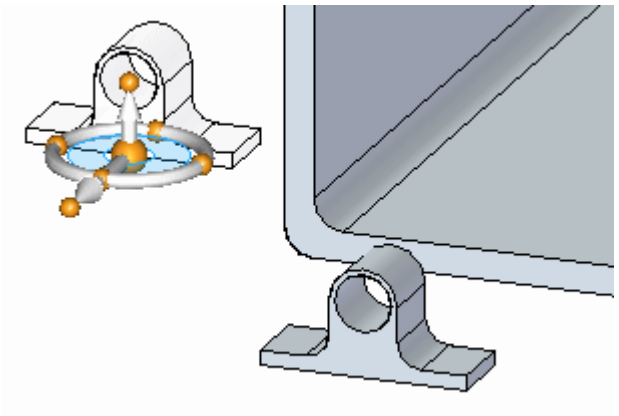
Note

You can speed up member creation by selecting the desired face set and clicking the Add button on Pathfinder.

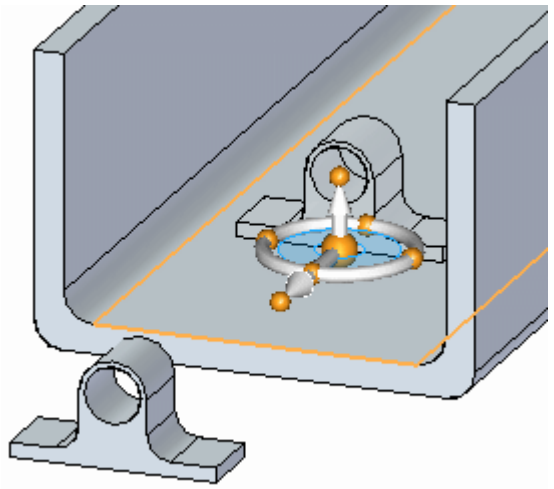
Reuse the feature library member

Since it is saved to a folder on your computer, this feature is now available to use again in this part file, as well as in other part files. You will do this in the following steps.

- Select the *cable_tie.par* in the Feature Library and drag it into the model window. Notice the feature attaches to your cursor.

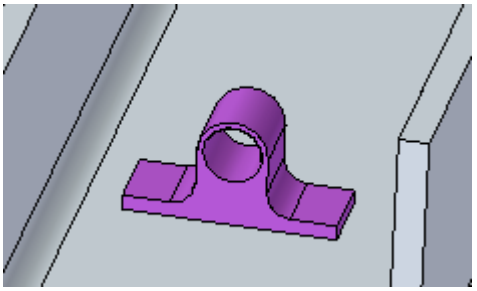


Place the bottom of the feature on the inside surface of the channel. When the surface highlights, press the F3 key to lock to that plane.

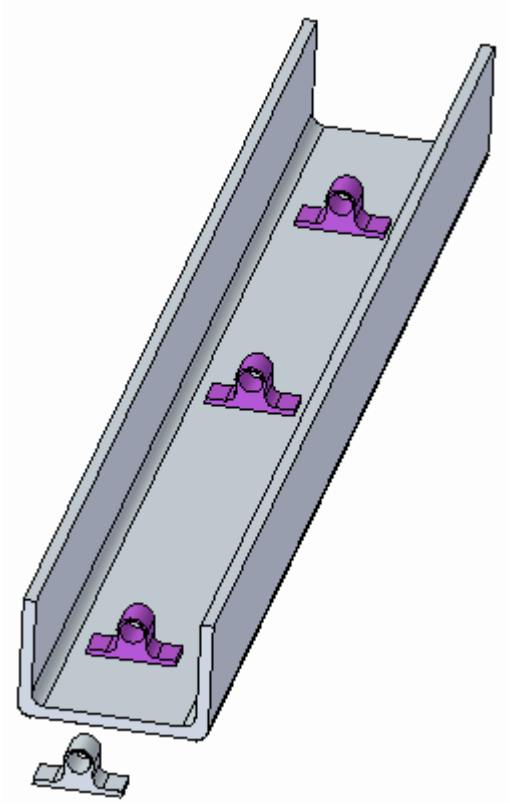


Click the left mouse button to place the cable tie.

Click the left mouse button to end the command.

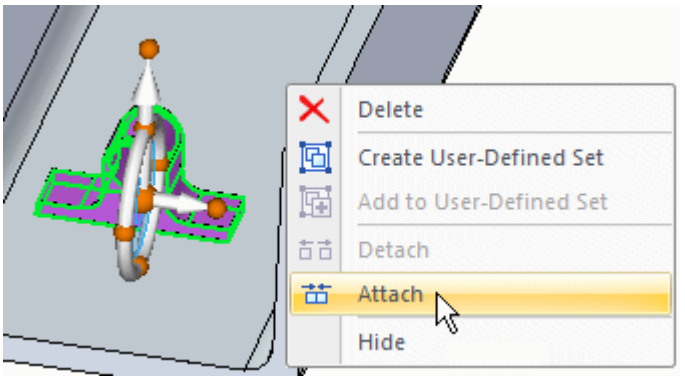


- Place two more instances of the cable tie to get the feel for this process.

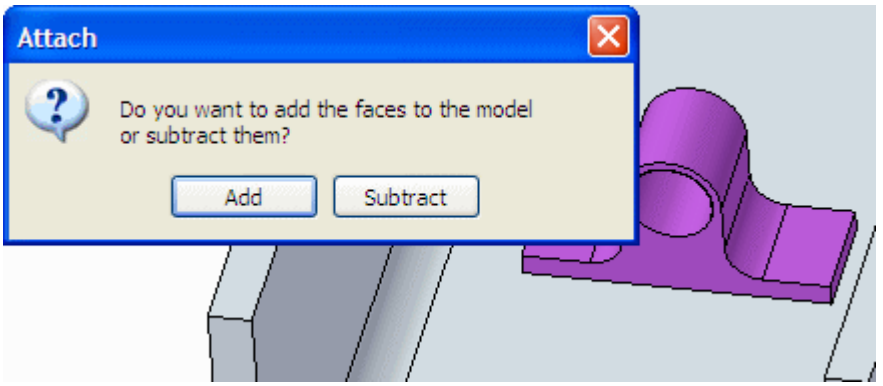


Add features to model

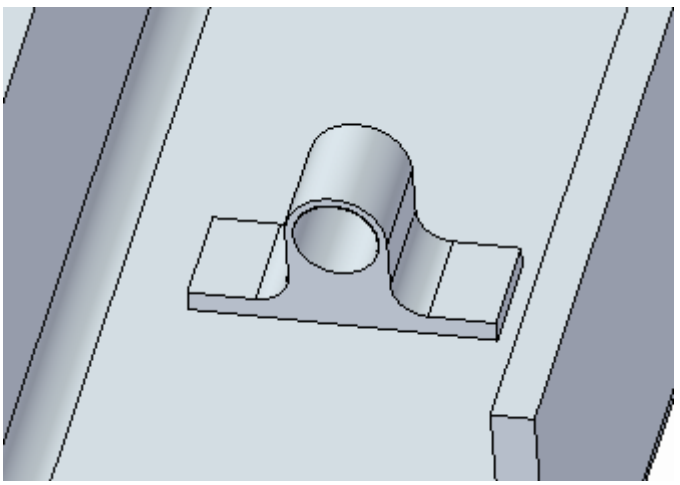
- To add the feature to the model, select the feature in PathFinder. Right-click and choose Attach from the list.



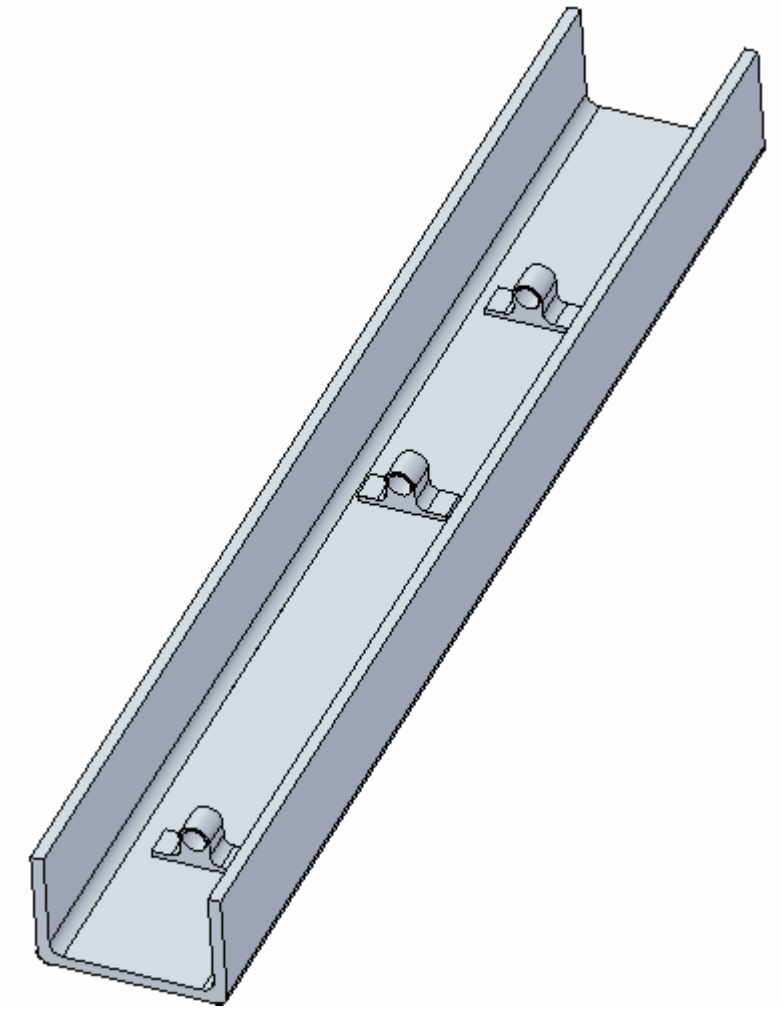
Select Add from the Attach dialog box.



The construction faces are now attached.

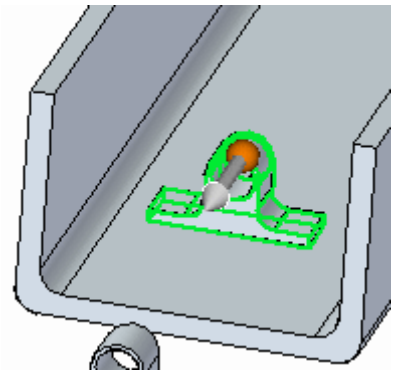


- Repeat for all three features.



Position the feature in the channel center

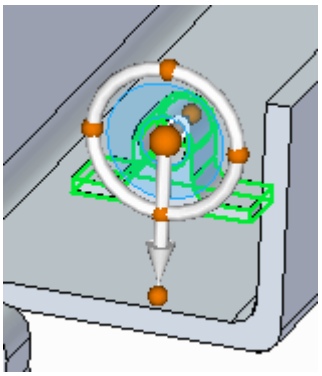
- Select the first feature you placed. You can either select it directly or in PathFinder.



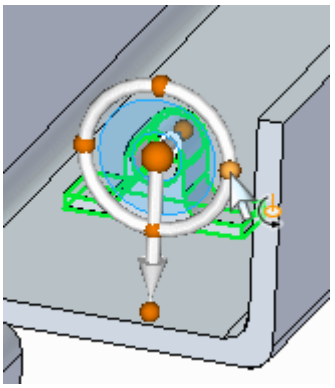
Note

You will need to use QuickPick to select the feature directly. It is faster to select it from PathFinder.

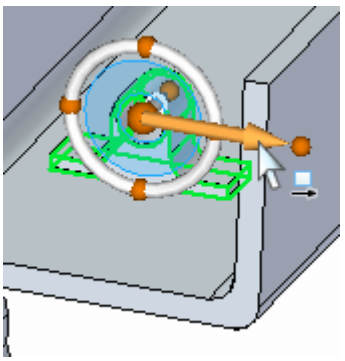
- Move steering wheel origin to the cylinder center.



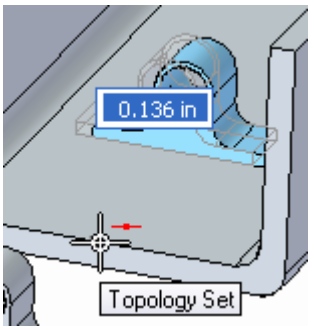
- Click cardinal point shown to define move direction.



- Click the move handle.



- Move to the midpoint of the edge shown. Click when the midpoint symbol displays. If the midpoint does not display, select the midpoint option on the command bar.



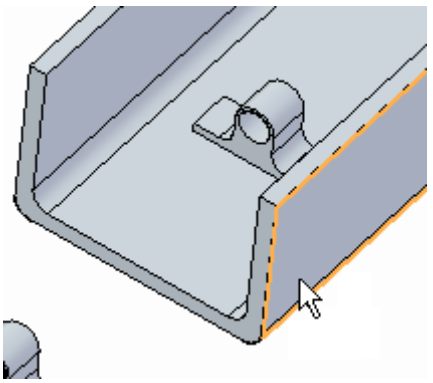
Left-click to end the move command.

Position feature along channel with a dimension

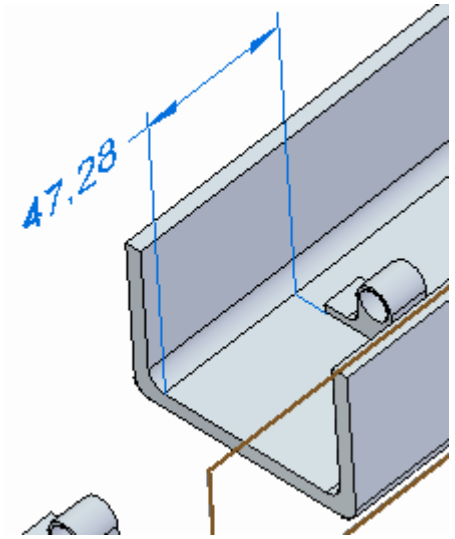
- Place a dimension from end face of channel to face of feature. Choose the Distance Between command.

- On command bar, click the Lock Dimension Plane option .

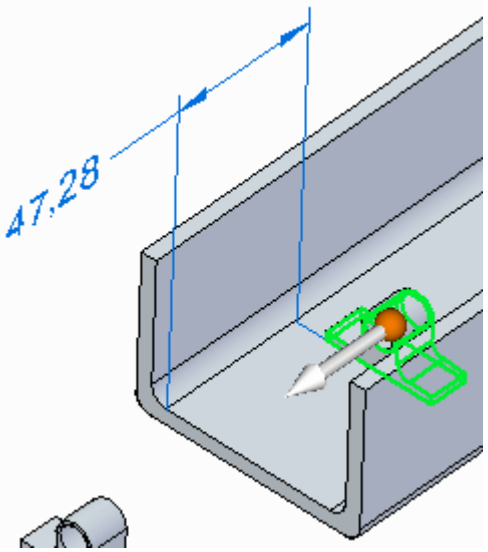
Select face shown.



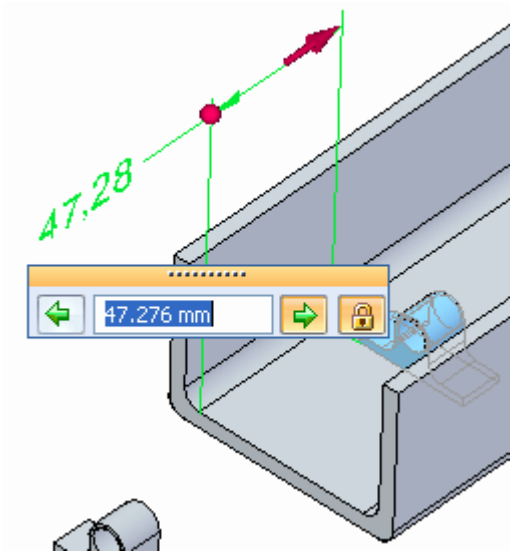
- Place the following dimension.



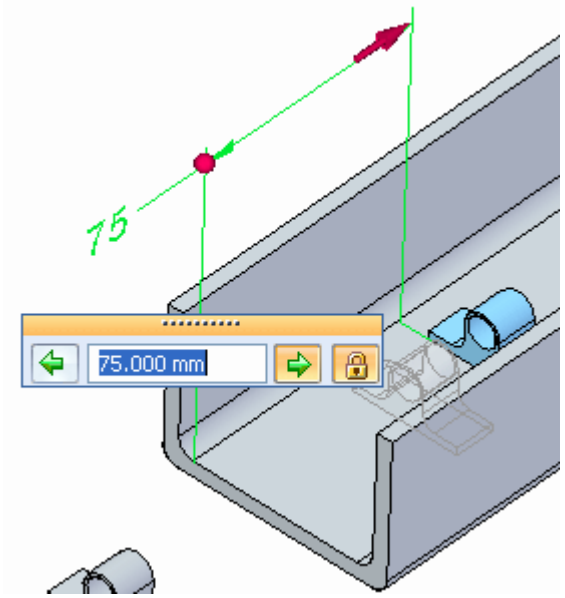
- Select the feature in PathFinder.



- Click the dimension value. Make sure the direction is as shown. Lock the dimension.



- Type 75 in the dimension edit box and press Tab.



Left-click to end the move command.

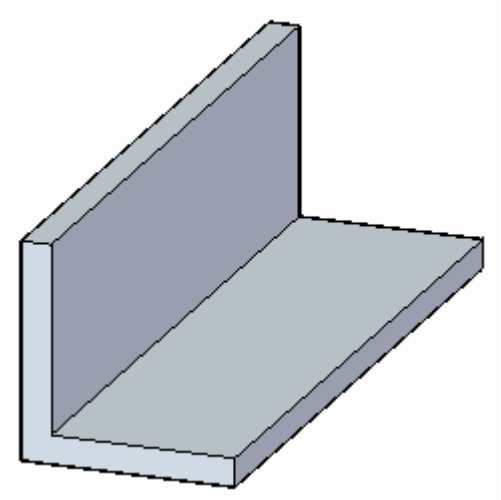
- Optional step: Center the two remaining features in the channel. Position the middle feature at the center of the channel length. Dimension feature on the other end 75 mm from channel end.

- Save and close this file.

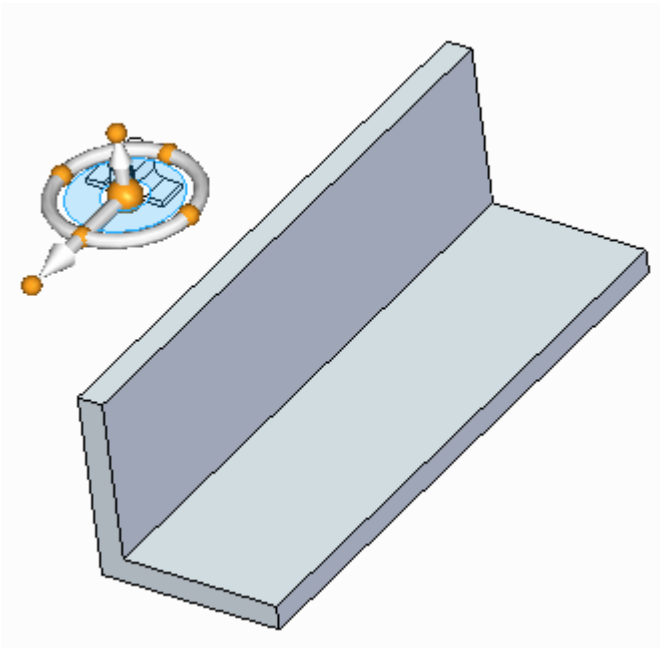
Use the feature library member in another file

The feature is available to use in other part files.

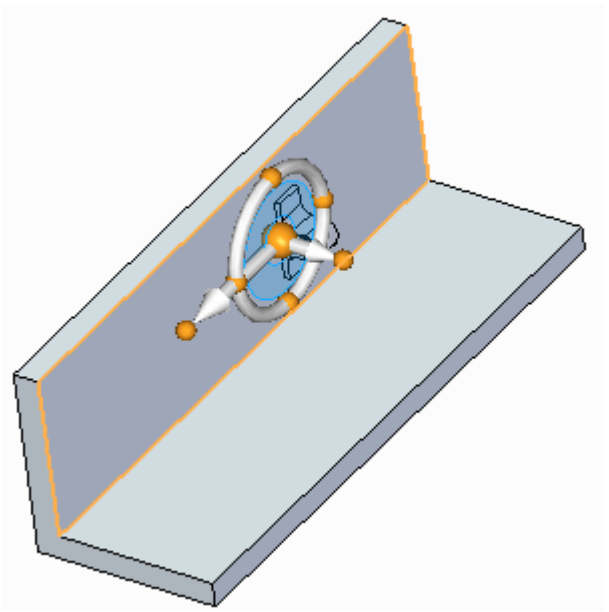
- Open the file *feature_library2.par*.



- In the Feature Library tab, navigate to the folder you created earlier.
- Select the *cable_tie.par* feature and drag it into the model window.



Highlight the face shown and press the F3 key to lock it. The feature flips. Click the left mouse button to place the tie.



- Save and close this file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create a feature library. You also learned how to add features to the library and how to place the feature into other files. Feature libraries are for storing common features that are used often in a company's design process.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the major difference between feature library entries in ordered modeling compared to synchronous modeling?

2. When placing a feature library member, what serves as its origin?

3. True or False: Driving dimensions that reference edges outside of the select set are captured as part of the library member definition.

4. Generally, why would you define construction elements (curves and points) as a first step?

Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the major difference between feature library entries in ordered modeling compared to synchronous modeling?

   In ordered modeling, only a feature can be added. In synchronous, features, faces, sketches, planes, coordinate systems and construction elements can be added.

2. When placing a feature library member, what serves as its origin?

   The origin of the steering wheel.

3. True or False: Driving dimensions that reference edges outside of the select set are captured as part of the library member definition.

   True.

4. True or False: Geometric relationships that reference edges outside of the select set are captured as part of the library member definition.

   False. Geometric relationships are NOT captured as part of the definition.

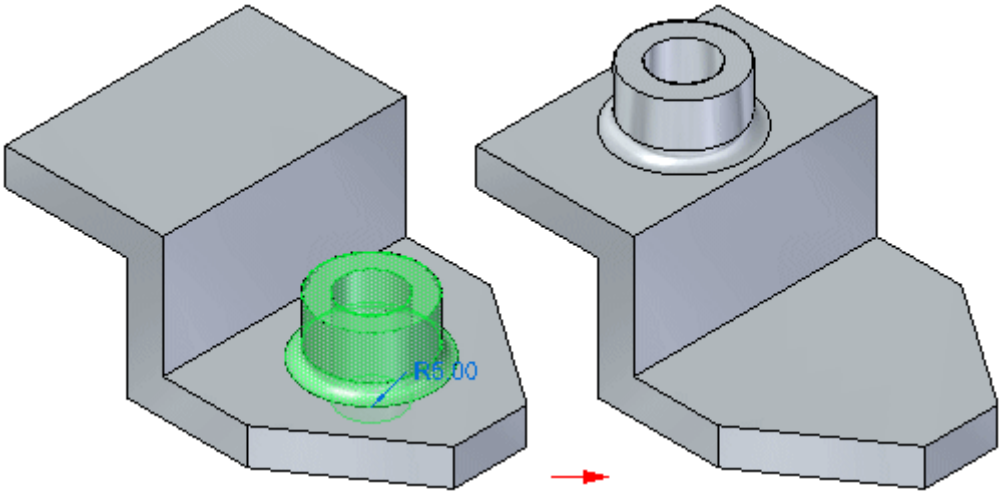
Lesson summary

- You can create a single feature library member composed of one or more features.
- Library members that use a sketch profile as input are allowed as long as a feature exists on the same face as the sketch. Dimensions that reference edges outside of the select set are not captured when using sketches.
- After you place a feature library member on a model, it is treated the same as features you construct manually. You edit them in the same fashion.

Detaching and attaching faces and features

You can modify synchronous models by detaching and attaching one or more faces or features. Detaching faces or features makes it possible to remove faces from the solid model without deleting them. This can be useful when you need to create a new variation of an existing model that does not contain some of the features on the existing model, but you want to maintain the features in the document for possible future needs.

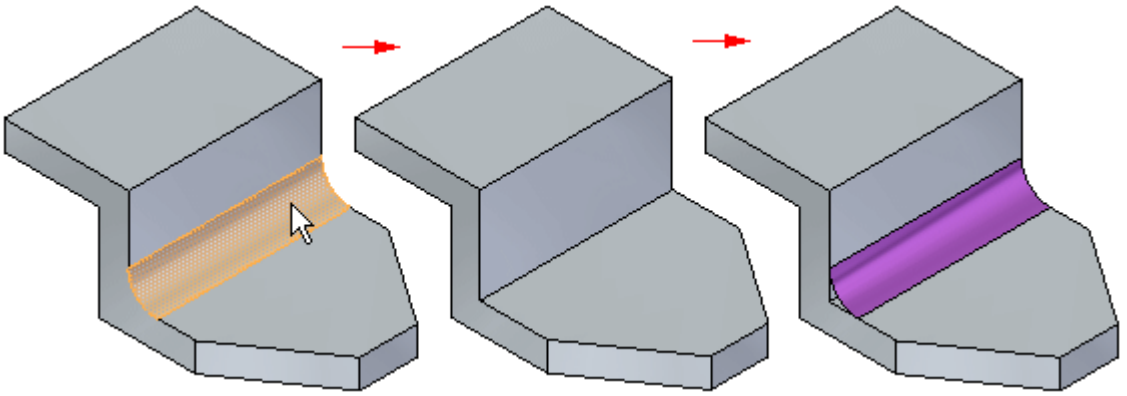
Detaching faces or features also makes it possible for you to move or rotate the face set to a new position on the model and then reattach them in the new location.



Detaching faces

You can detach faces using the Detach command on the shortcut menu when one or more faces or features are selected, or you can use the Detach option available on the Move QuickBar. You can select the faces in the graphics window or in PathFinder.

When you use the Detach shortcut menu command, the detached faces are hidden automatically in the graphics window, and the color is changed to the construction color. You can use PathFinder to display the faces.



To detach faces successfully, the integrity of the solid body must be maintained. In other words, for a detach operation to be successful, no gaps between faces are allowed. If a solid body cannot be maintained, the detach operation is unsuccessful,

and the model will not be modified. A message is also displayed to inform you that the model was not modified.

When you detach faces, adjacent faces are often modified to ensure the integrity of the solid model. For example, when you detach a blend face, such as a round, the size and shape of the adjacent faces changes.

Attaching faces

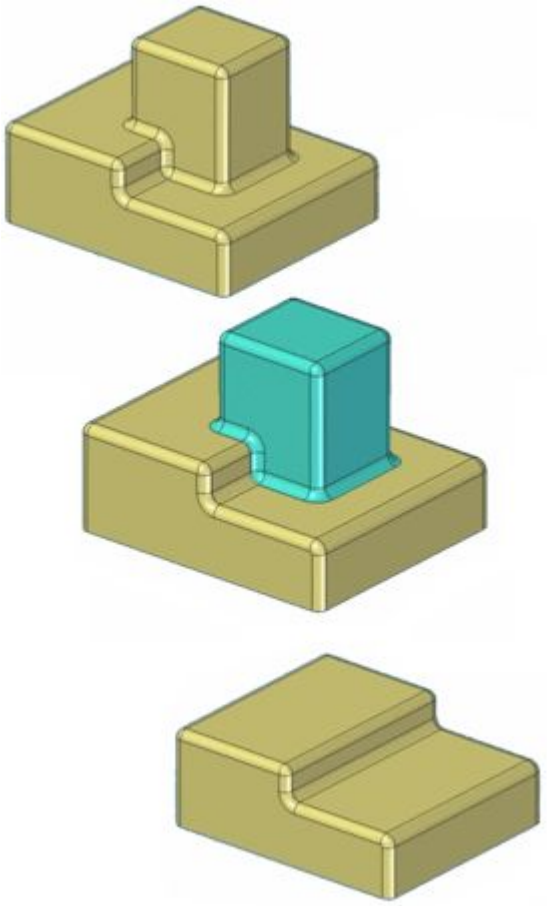
You can attach faces using the Attach command on the shortcut menu when detached faces are selected in PathFinder or the graphics window. To successfully attach, a valid solid body must be formed. If the faces you are trying to attach do not form a valid solid body, a message appears.

In some cases you may be able to adjust the position of the detached faces, and attach them successfully. In other cases, it may not be possible to form a valid body. In this situation you should consider deleting the detached faces, and model the faces or feature over again.

Detach faces

Major methods of detaching faces or features and the advantages of each:

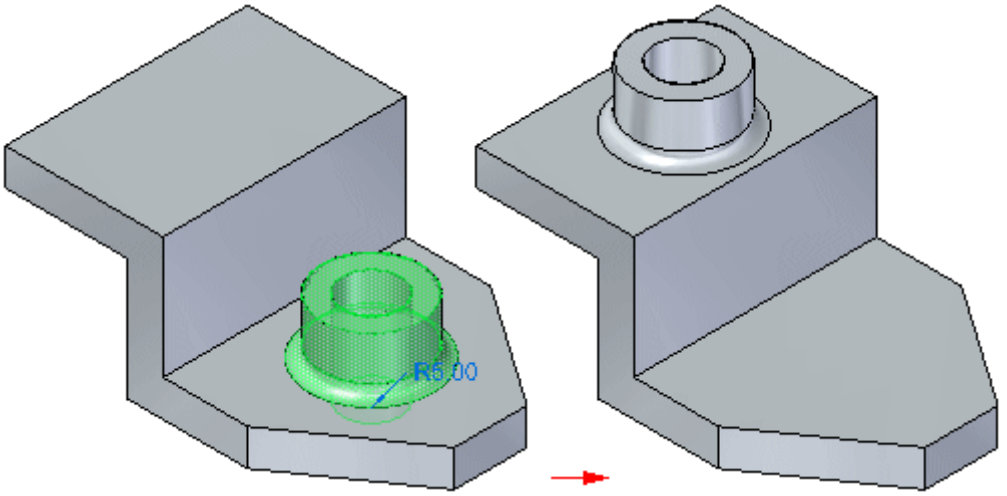
- Detach can be useful when you need to create a new variation of an existing model without compromising your current design. Use the Detach command on the shortcut menu upon selecting the faces or features.



Note

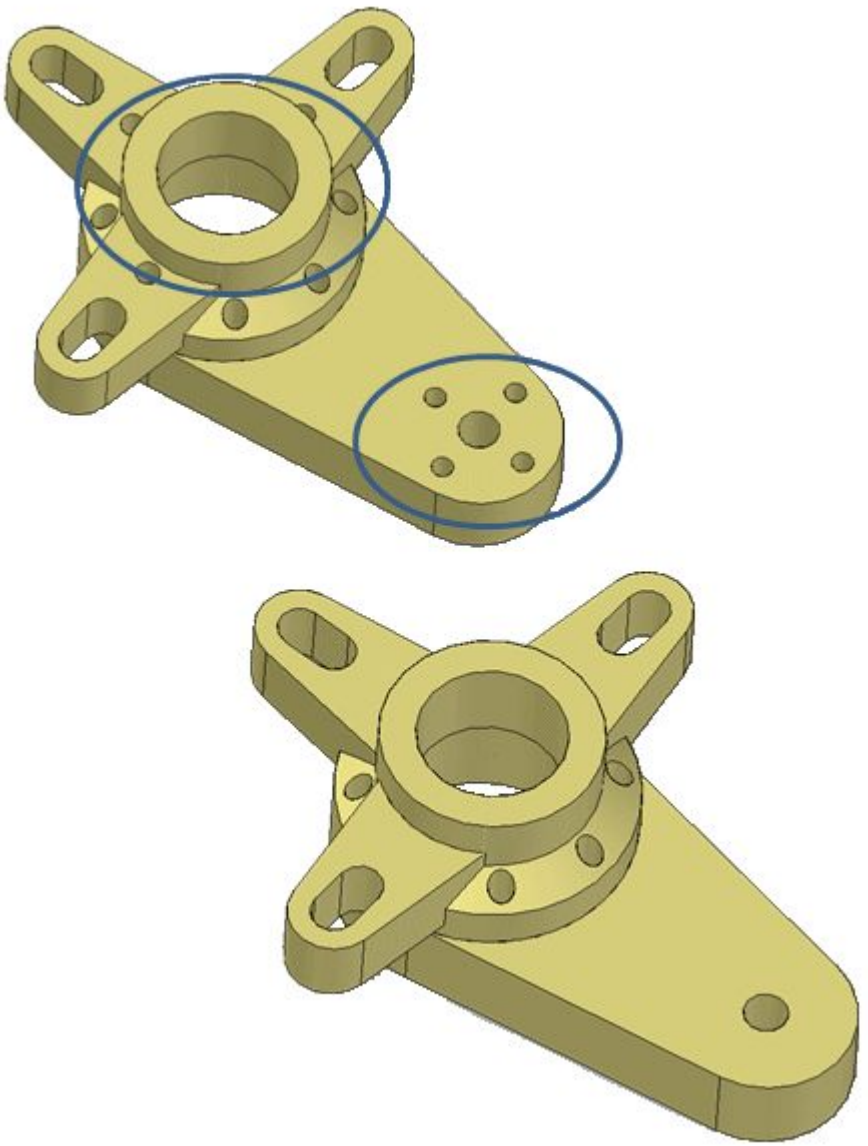
When you use this shortcut menu command, the detached faces hide automatically in the graphics window, and the color is changed to the construction color. You can use PathFinder to display the faces.

- A detached face set can move or rotate to a new position on the model and then reattach. Use the Detach option available on the Move command bar. You can select the faces in the graphics window or in PathFinder.


R6.00

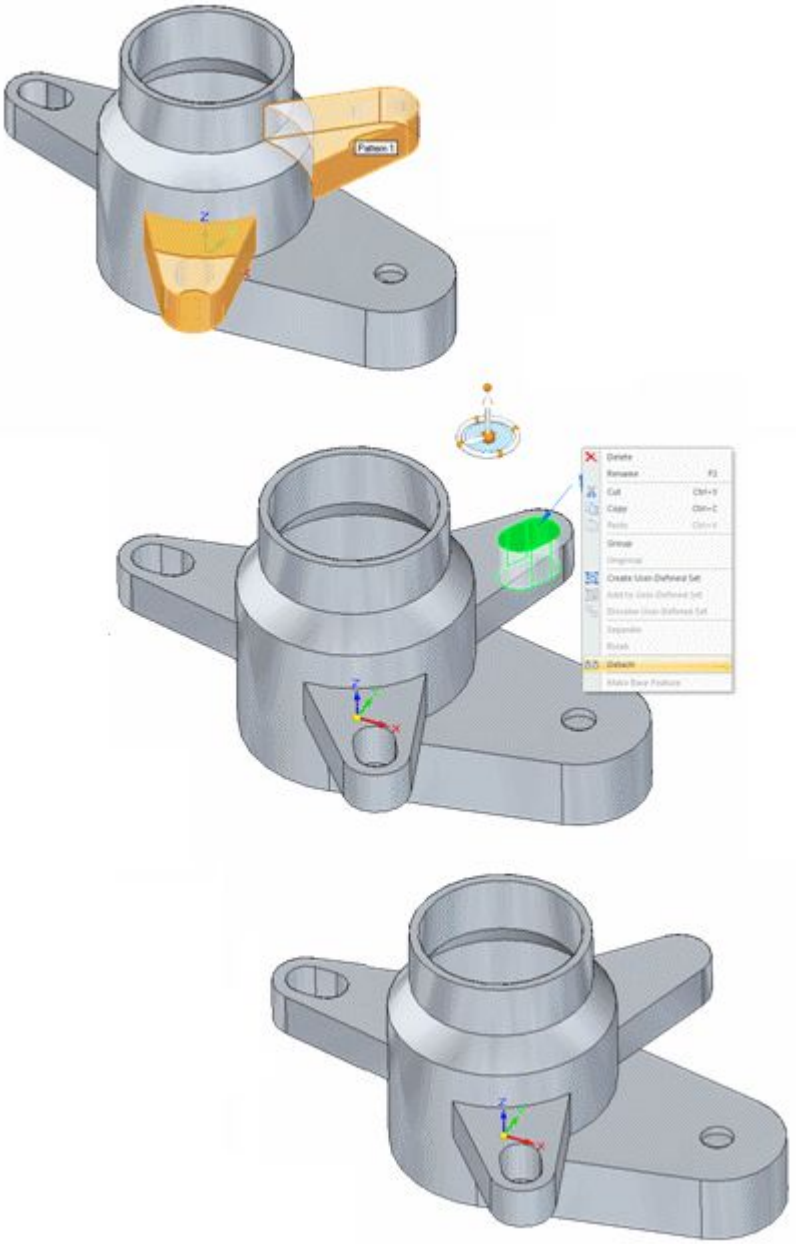
What faces can detach?

- Procedural Features may detach in their entirety.



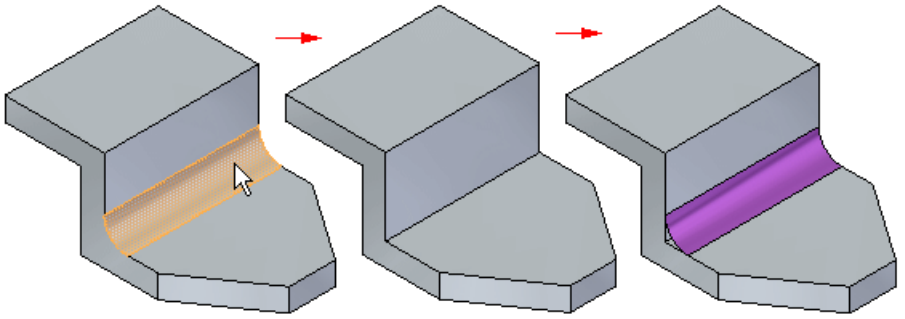
- Blends may detach.

- Faces of patterns may detach. Reattaching does not reintroduce the faces back into the pattern.



- Thin-wall faces may detach. Reattaching does not cause the thin-wall relationship to reestablish.

- A single instance of a hole group can detach.



Dimensional and geometric relationships

Internal relationships between faces that detach are maintained.

External relationships to faces outside the faces being detached are kept, but suppressed.

Note

To detach faces successfully, the integrity of the solid body must be maintained. In other words, for a detach operation to be successful, no gaps between faces are allowed. If a solid body cannot be maintained, the detach operation is unsuccessful, and the model will not be modified. A message is also displayed to inform you that the model was not modified.

Note

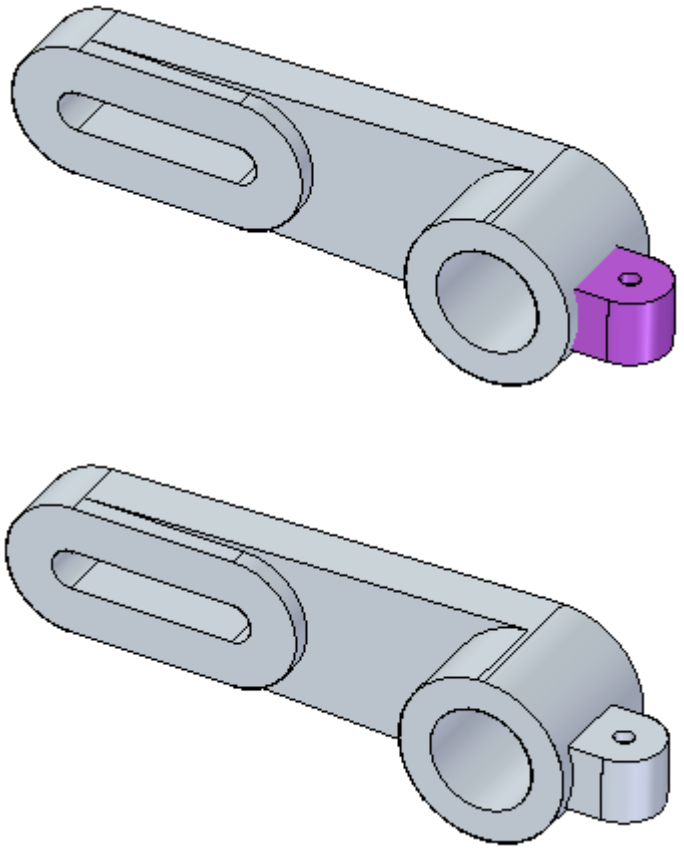
When you detach faces, adjacent faces are often modified to ensure the integrity of the solid model. For example, when you detach a blend face, such as a round, the size and shape of the adjacent faces changes.

Attach faces

Detached faces can be selected in PathFinder or the graphics window, and reattached to the model using the shortcut menu Attach command.

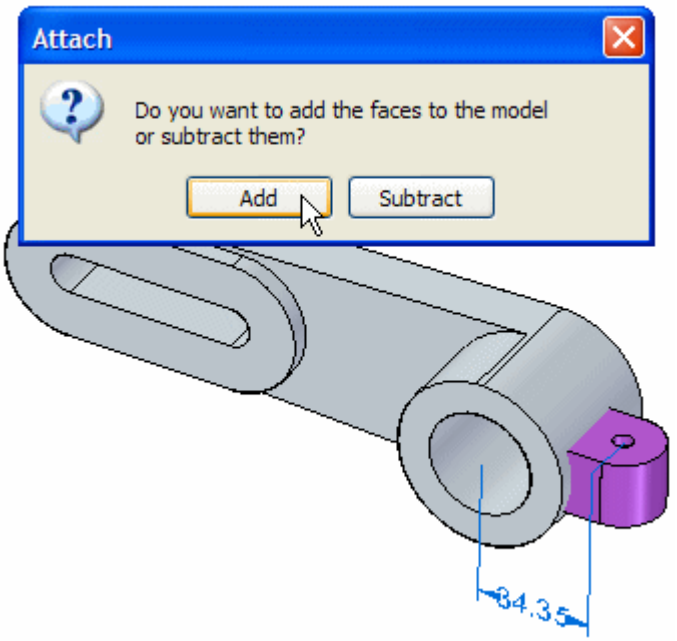
What faces can attach?

- Any selected construction body can attach to the design model.



- Faces attaching that do not have add/remove attributes on the edges of the model require the user to specify the behavior at the time of attaching.
  - When attaching a sheet body with no add/remove attributes, the user is required to specify a side.

– When attaching a solid body, the user must specify the behavior at the time of attaching (Add or Subtract).



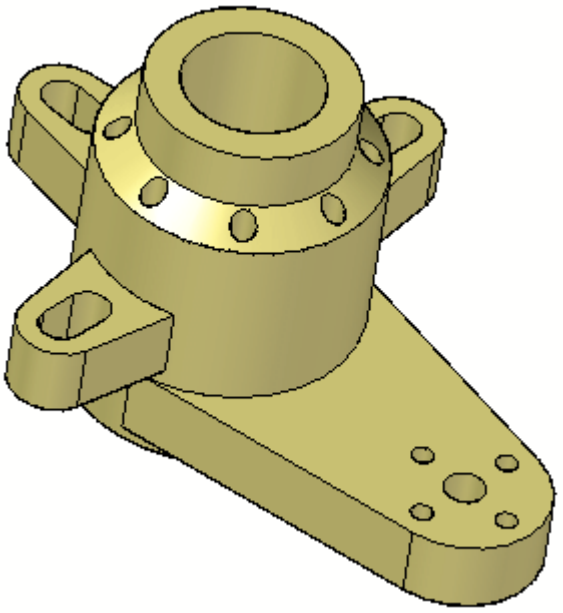
Note

To successfully attach, a valid solid body must be formed. If the faces you are trying to attach do not form a valid solid body, a message appears.

Note

In some cases you may be able to adjust the position of the detached faces, and attach them successfully. In other cases, it may not be possible to form a valid body and you should consider deleting the detached faces, and re-model them.

Activity: Detach and attach face sets



Overview

This activity demonstrates the method of detaching and attaching faces in response to a design change.

Objectives

Detach an existing set of faces and make a change to the model. Then reattach them within the same part.

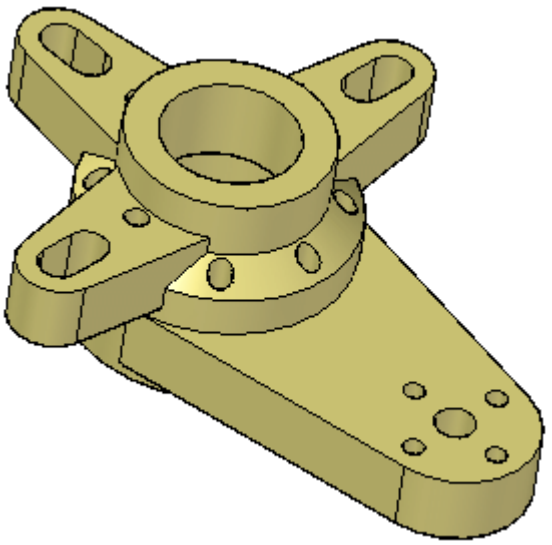
In this activity you will:

- Detach faces.
- Extend a face (representing the design change).
- Reattach the faces.

Activity: Detach and attach face sets

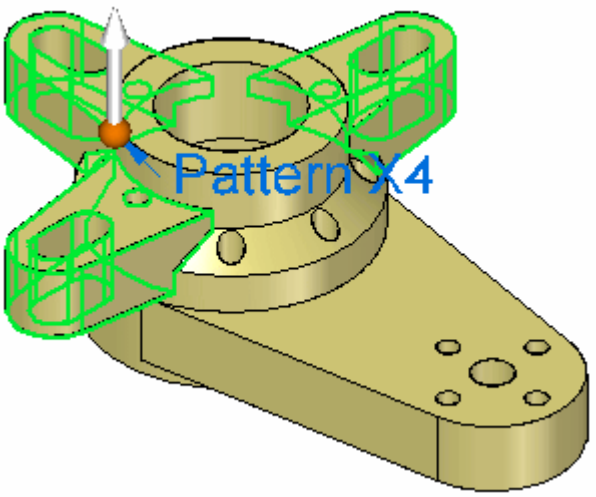
In this activity, you will respond to a major design change. Three mounting arms remain in place as the height of the body increases.

Open *detach.par*.

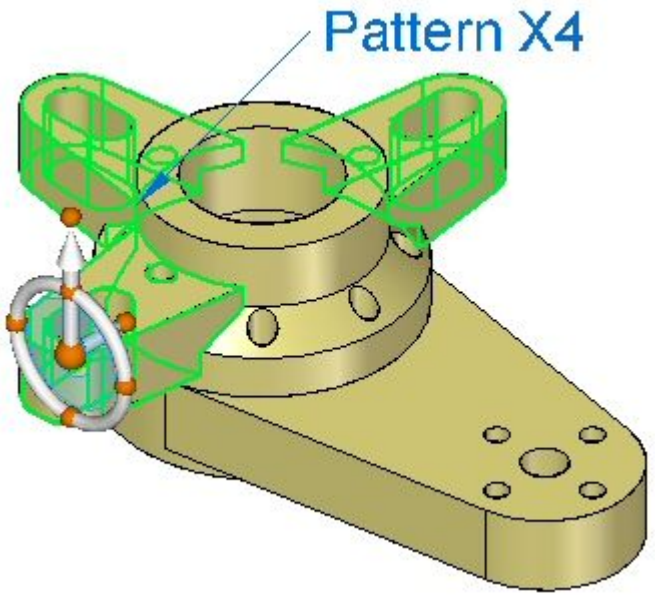


Detach faces

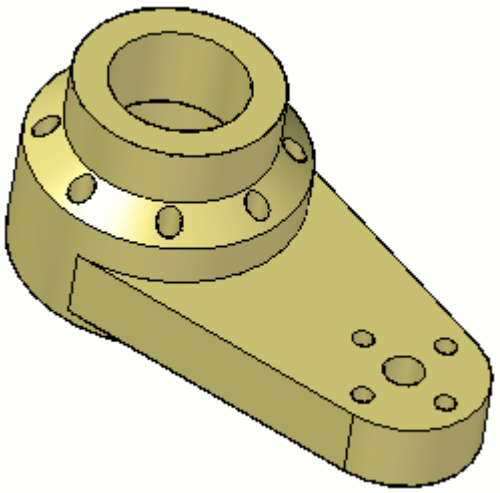
- In PathFinder, select the features *Ear, Slot, Pattern4*.



- Right-click and select Detach.

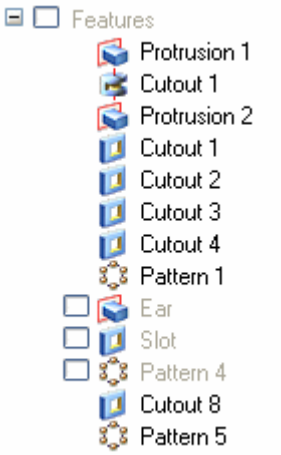


The faces disappear from the display.

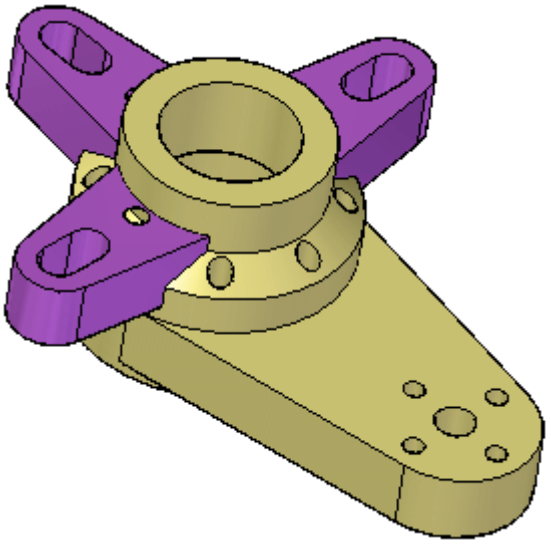


Note

These detached face sets appear gray in PathFinder.



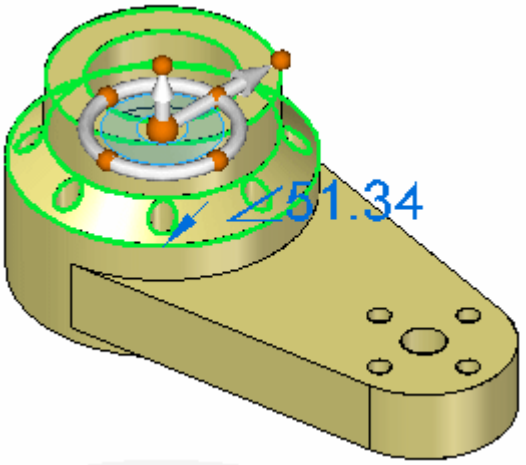
Optional: To display the detached face sets, click the check box in PathFinder.



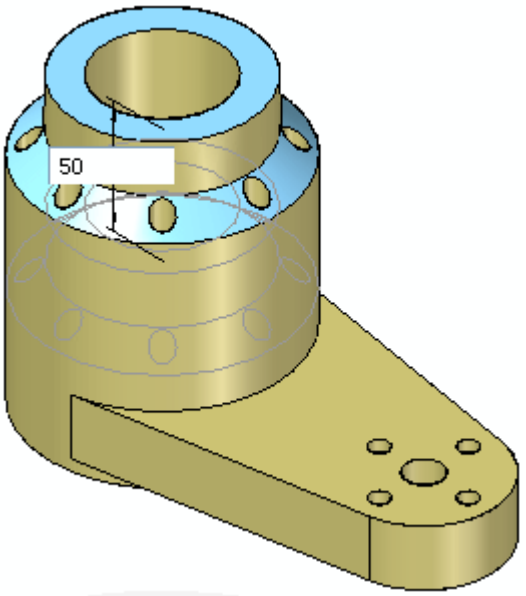
- Ensure display of the detached face set is off.

Modify the height of the part

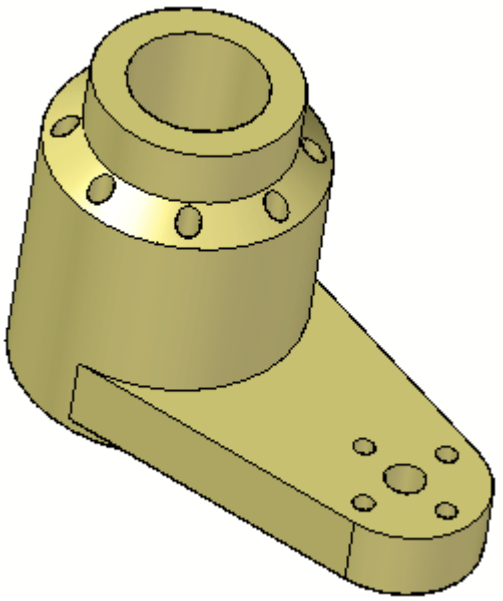
- Select the top and beveled faces shown.



Move the selected faces a distance of 50 mm.

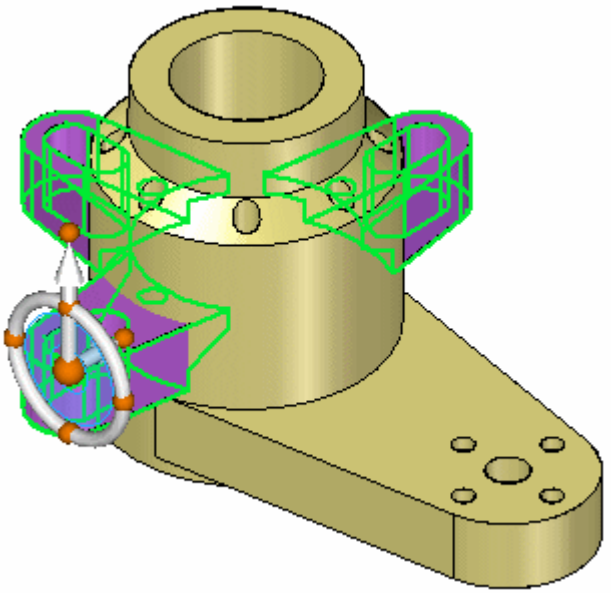


- Press Esc to finish.



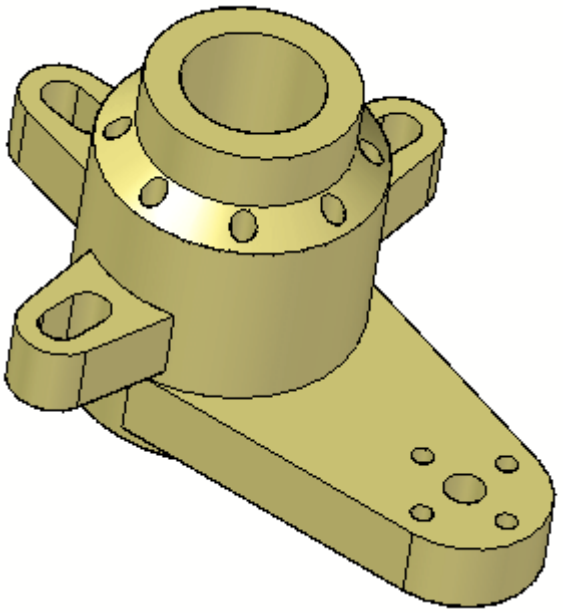
Attach the face set

- Turn on display of the detached face sets *Ear, Slot, Pattern4* and select them, either graphically or from Pathfinder. The latter method is often easier.



- Right-click and choose Attach.

You can see the face sets attach by their color change.

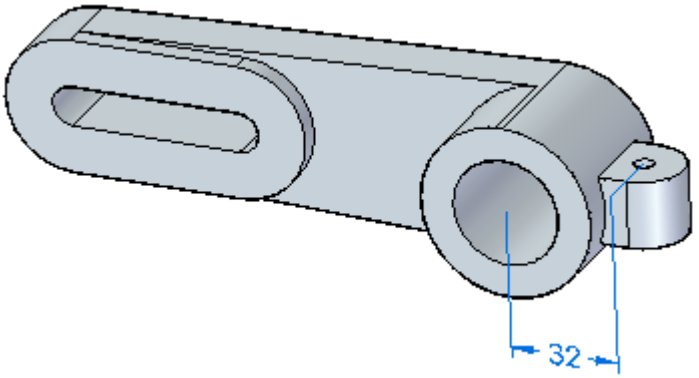


- Save and close this file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to detach features and then make model changes. After changes were made, you learned how to reattach the detached features. The detached features are listed in PathFinder. Their display can be turned on or off.

Activity: Attach



Overview

This activity demonstrates how to attach faces.

Objectives

Attach a mounting tab to an anchor bracket.

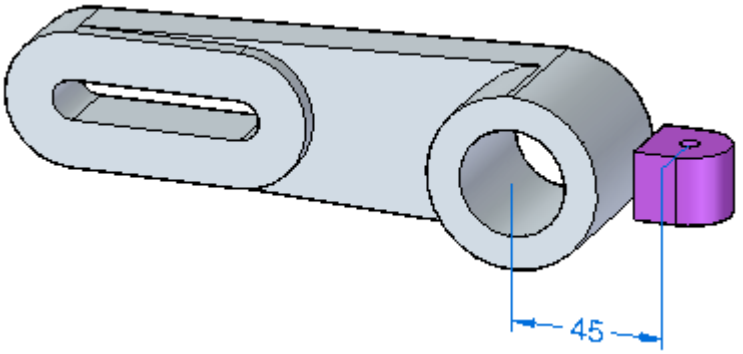
In this activity you will:

- Move faces.
- Attach the faces.

Activity: Attach

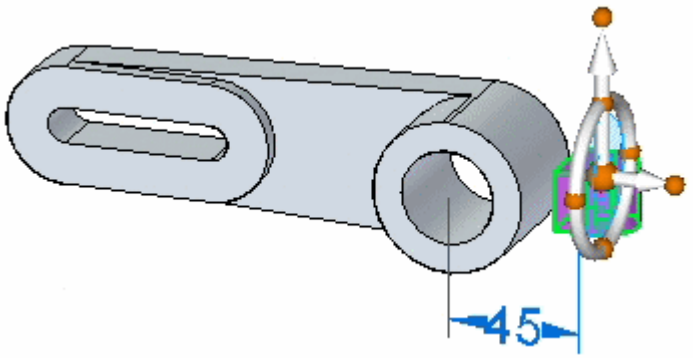
Attach a mounting tab to an anchor bracket.

Open *attach.par*.

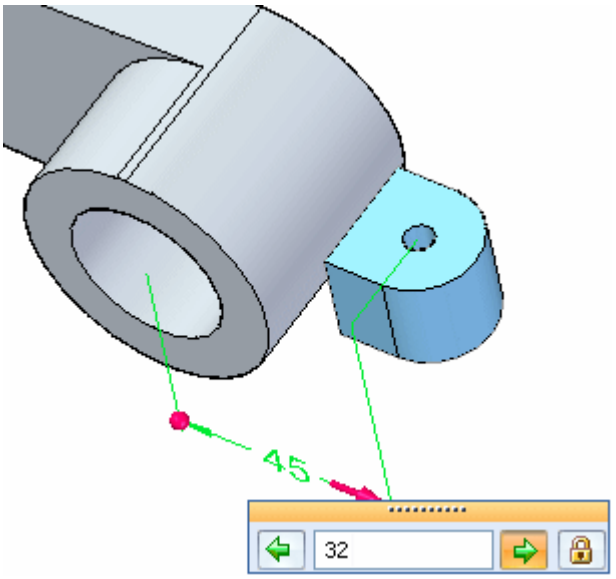


Move faces

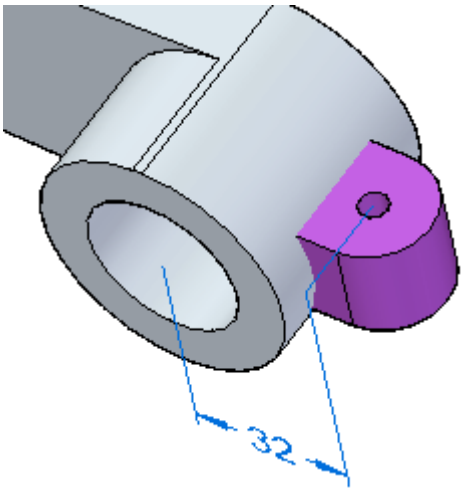
- In PathFinder, select the detached protrusion.



- While the feature is selected, click the 45 mm dimension. Make sure the dimension direction is as shown. Change the dimension to 32 and press the Enter key.

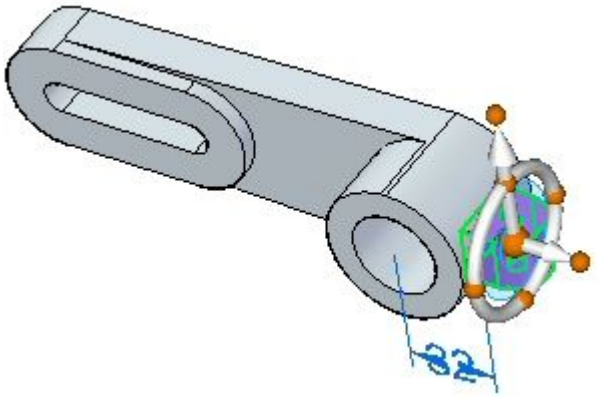


Click the left mouse button to finish the move.



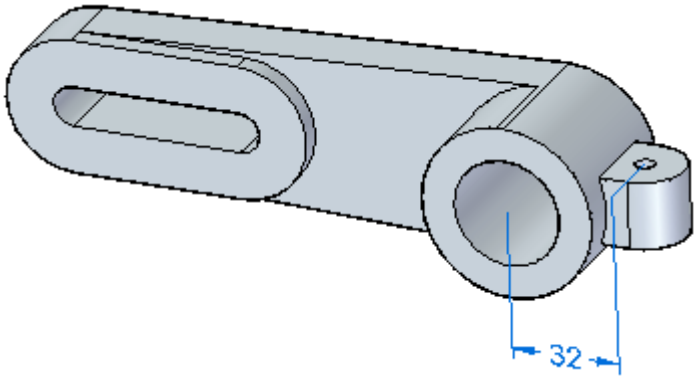
Attach the faces

- Select the detached protrusion again; right-click and select Attach.



On the Attach dialog, select Add.

The protrusion attaches. Notice the color change from that of construction faces to model faces.



- Save and close the file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to attach a detached feature. Detached faces display with a construction face color. As the faces attach to the solid model and form a volume, the faces turn the color of the solid model faces.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. If you wish to detach faces from a model, what condition must exist for the detach operation to be successful?

2. What elements can be detached?

3. For a successful attach operation, what must be formed?

Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. If you wish to detach faces from a model, what condition must exist for the detach operation to be successful?

   No gaps between faces are allowed. If a solid body cannot be maintained, the detach operation is unsuccessful, and the model will not be modified

2. What elements can be detached?

   Entire procedural features, blends, faces of patterns, faces from thin-walls and a sigle instance of a hole group.

3. For a successful attach operation, what must be formed?

   A valid solid body must be formed. If the faces you are trying to attach do not form a valid solid body, a message is displayed.

Lesson summary

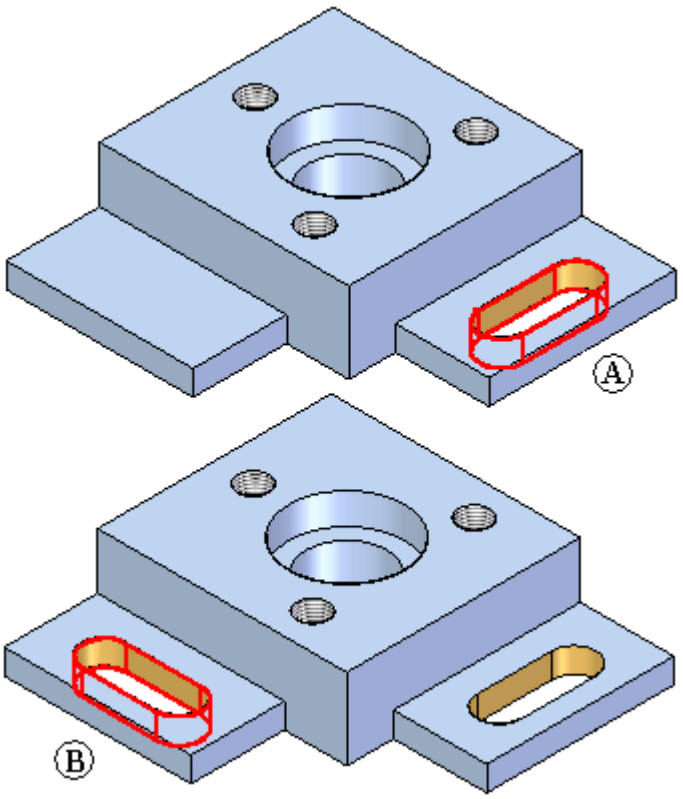
- You can modify synchronous models by detaching and attaching one or more faces or features. Detaching faces or features makes it possible to remove faces from the solid model without deleting them.

- This can be useful when you need to create a new variation of an existing model that does not contain some of the features on the existing model, but you want to maintain the features in the document for possible future needs.

- Detaching faces or features also makes it possible for you to move or rotate the face set to a new position on the model and then reattach them in the new location.

Cutting, copying, and pasting model elements

You can cut, copy, and paste part and model elements using the Windows clipboard. For example, you can copy the cutout feature (A), then paste it to a new location on the part (B).



Eligible element types

You can cut, copy, and paste the following element types:

- Model faces
- Solids
- Surfaces
- Face sets
- Manufactured features
  - Occurrences
- Sketches
  - Sketch elements
- Reference objects
  - Reference planes
  - Base reference planes omitted from copy and cut operations

  - Coordinate systems

- Bodies

You can select multiple objects to copy. You can have a mixed set of sketches, faces, manufactured features, and reference planes. If ineligible elements are found in the select set, an error message is displayed and you can remove the ineligible elements from the select set.

You can copy and paste elements from one source to many targets. For example, in Synchronous documents, you can copy or cut from a part document and paste them to another part document. Any 3D elements copied or cut from the part document are filtered and will not be pasted.

In draft documents, 2D elements can be copied or cut and pasted to another draft document or to a Synchronous part document. When pasting into a draft file, only the 2D elements are pasted. Any 3D elements are filtered from and not pasted. All sketch geometry is compressed to a single plane when pasted to a draft document.

Copying and cutting elements

When you select a set of elements to cut or copy, the following information is added to the clipboard:

- The current orientation of the select set relative to base reference planes of the source document.
- PathFinder Structure
  - Any complete face sets
  - Occurrence structure of any procedural feature
- Individual elements
  - Loose faces that do not comprise a complete face set
  - Sketch elements, but not an entire sketch
  - Face style override, if defined
- User defined sets
  - All eligible items contained in the collection

Patterns behave differently depending on what is selected. When a pattern or all occurrences of a pattern is selected for copy, the following information is recorded:

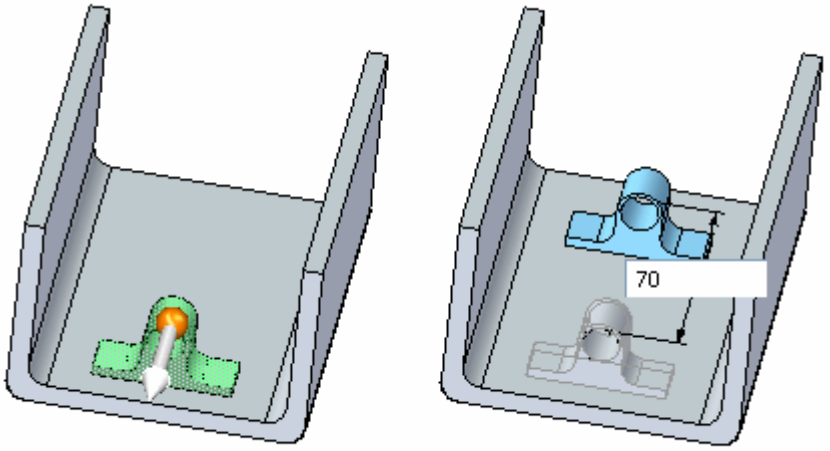
- All occurrences of the pattern
- Occurrence structure
- Pattern attributes
- All information needed to regenerate the pattern

When a pattern occurrence is selected for copy, the following information is recorded:

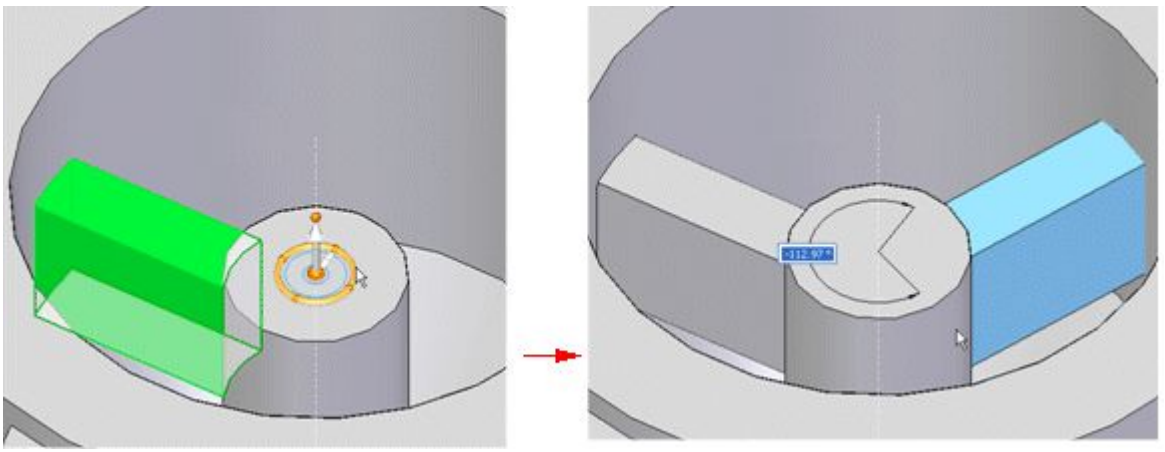
- Face geometry
- If multiple, but not all, occurrences are copied, only the geometry is copied.

There are several ways to copy an element.

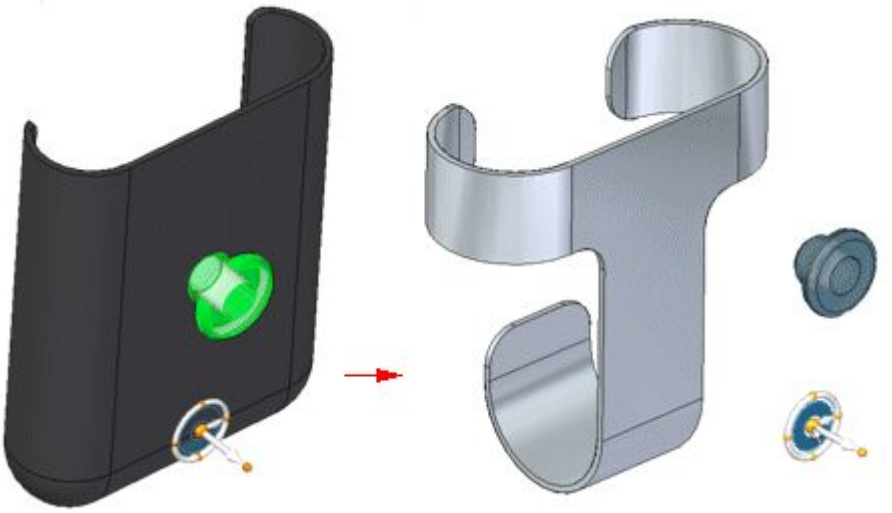
- Select the element you want to copy, press the Ctrl key, and click an arrow of the steering wheel that is in the direction you want to copy. To complete the copy, drag the cursor to a new location and either click or type in a distance to copy the element.



- Select an element, then click the Copy button on the command bar after initiating a move or rotate.
- Right-click an element and select Copy.
- Press Ctrl+C on an element.
- To copy during rotate, press the Ctrl key, and click a torus of the steering wheel. To complete the copy, drag the cursor to a new location and either click or type in an angle to copy the element.



When you select geometry to copy, the steering wheel appears. The location and orientation of the steering wheel is recorded. The steering wheel location is relative to the selected geometry and the orientation is recorded relative to the source document.



Copying 2D elements

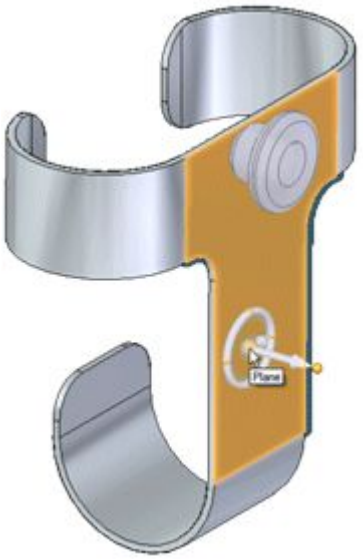
When copying 2D elements, sketches and sketch elements follow the same rules as solids. You can copy the entire sketch or the sketch elements that make up the sketch. You can select multiple sketches collected from any plane.

Copying reference objects

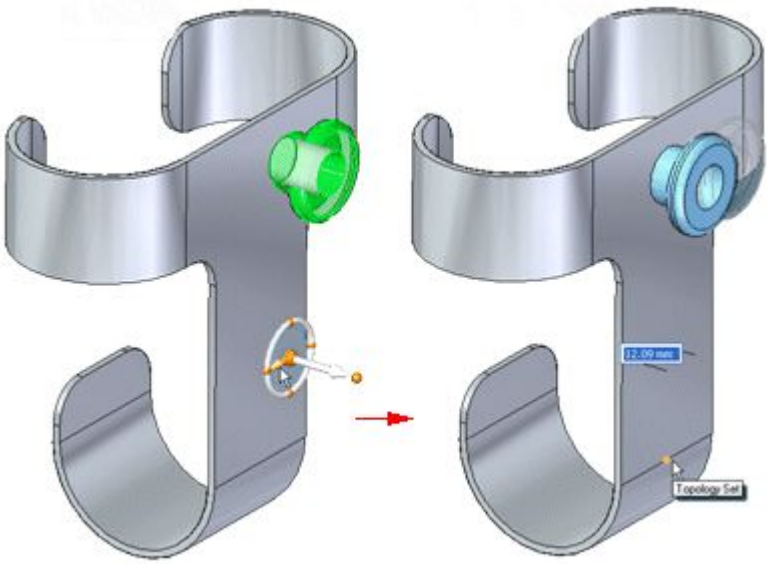
Reference objects such as planes and coordinate systems can be copied and pasted. When pasted to a model, the elements are added to the target document's PathFinder. The steering wheel provides orientation when the objects are pasted in the model.

Pasting elements

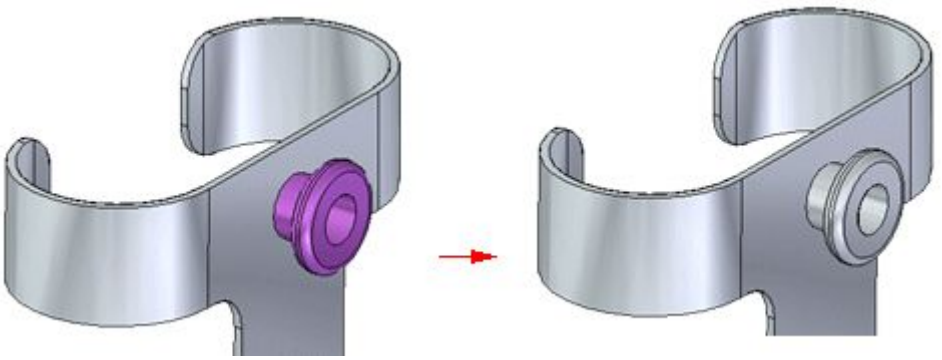
The Paste command inserts elements at a specified location. When pasting elements, you can press F3 to lock to a plane.



Once pasted, you can use the steering wheel to move the geometry into the desired position and orientation.



When placed, any closed solid volumes are pasted to the models as solids. However, faces and manufactured features are added as detached geometry. Once pasted, use the Attach command to attach the geometry as a solid to the model.



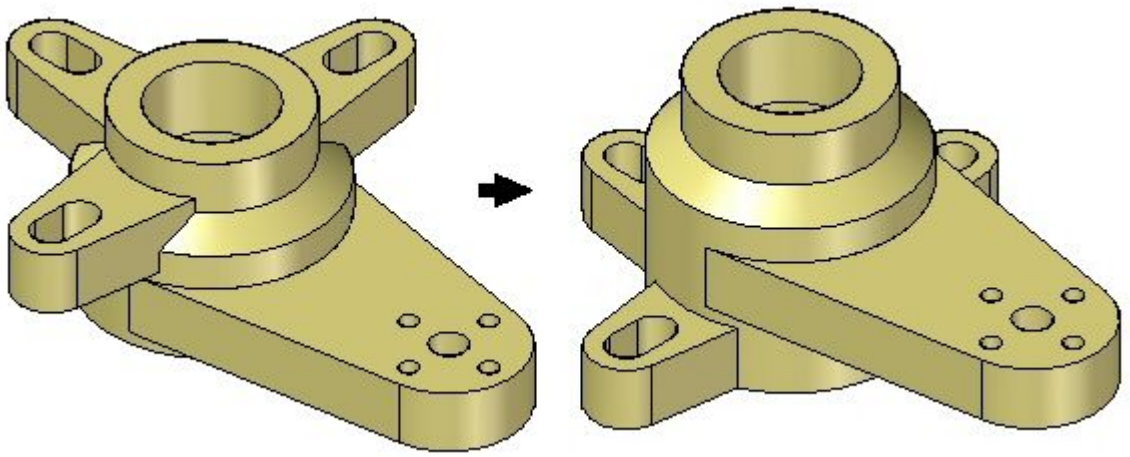
Note

You can move or rotate the geometry before or after it has been attached.

Pasting 2D elements

When a 2D element is pasted, the element's orientation is relative to its native sketch plane. If the sketch being pasted is coincident with another sketch plane in the target document, then it is absorbed to the existing sketch. If the sketch is not coincident with any other sketch plane, then it creates a new sketch plane. Sketches with new planes are added to the PathFinder as new sketches.

Activity: Copy and move face sets



Overview

This activity demonstrates the method of copying and moving design features within a part due to a design change.

Objectives

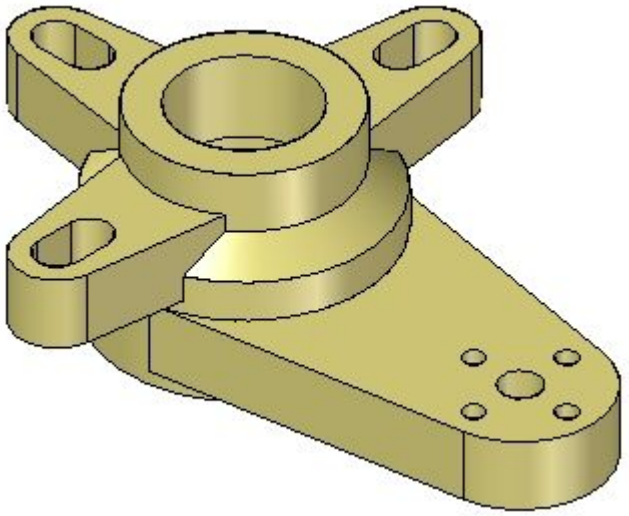
In this activity you will:

- Extend a face (this represents the design change).
- Copy a face set.
- Drag this set into another position.
- Delete the original set.

Activity: Copy and move face sets

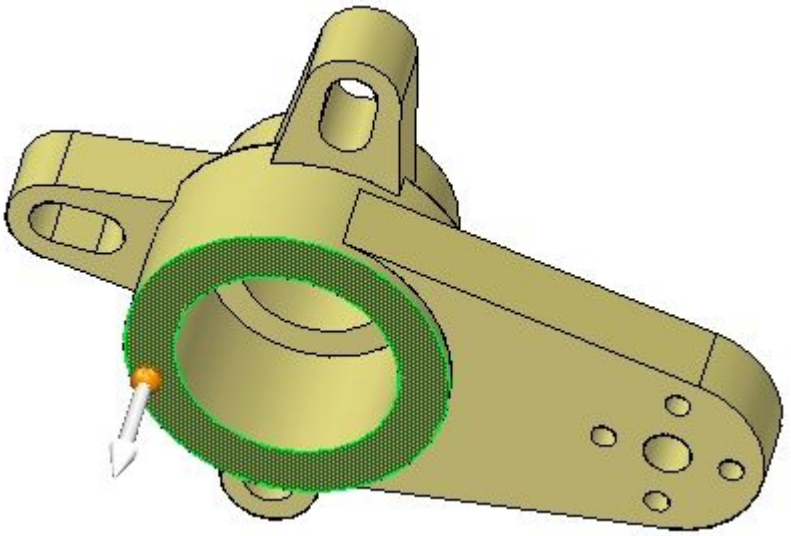
In this activity, you will respond to a major design change. Three mounting arms have to move as the body of this part gets taller.

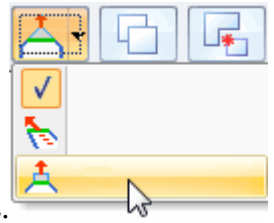
Open *cut_copy.par*.



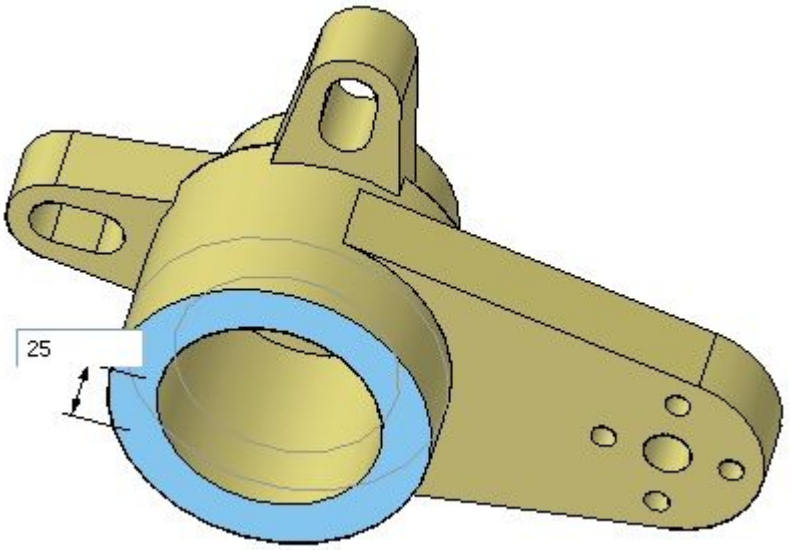
Modify the height of the part

- Rotate the view so you can see the bottom and select the bottom face.

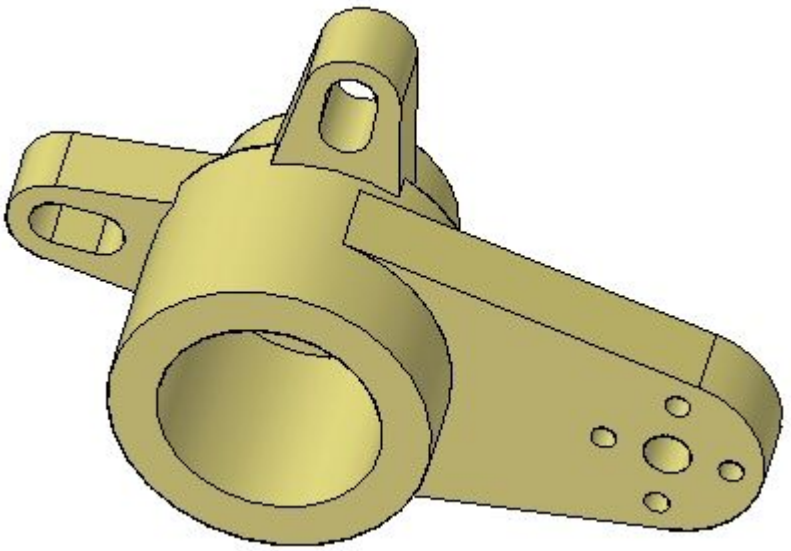


- In the *Move— Connected faces* option on the command bar, select  **Lift**.

Extend the face a distance of 25 mm.

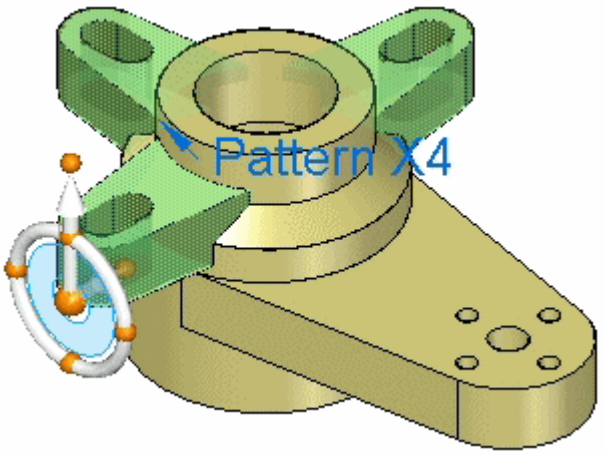


- Click the left mouse button to finish.



Copy and move the face set

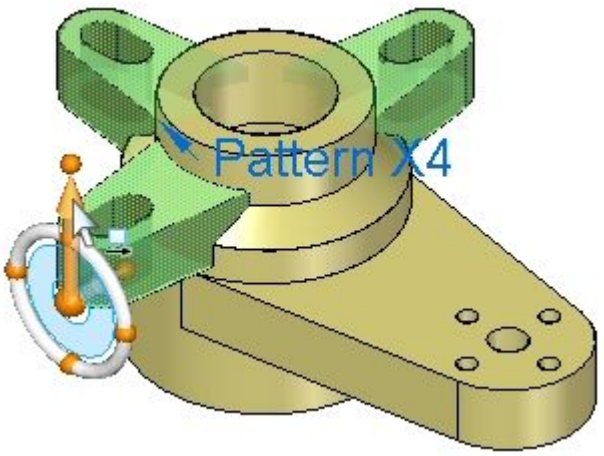
- Select the features *Ear, Slot and Ear and Slot Pattern*, either graphically or from PathFinder. Make sure the steering wheel origin lies on an edge of the bottom of the select set.



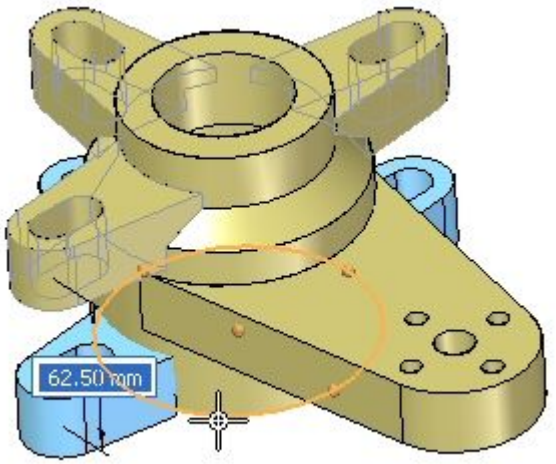
Note

You may have to rotate the primary axis such that it points upward as shown.

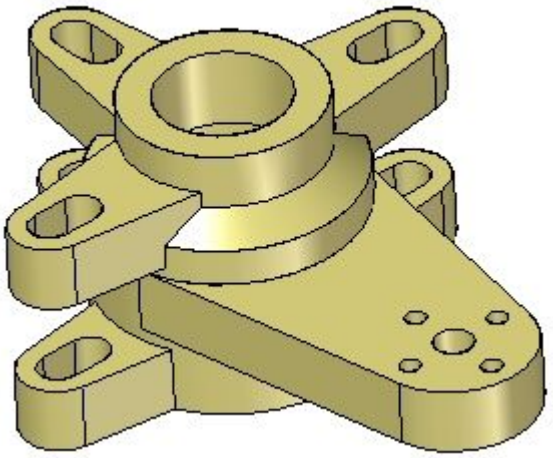
- While holding down the Ctrl key, drag the face set along the primary axis of the steering wheel.



You can see a copy of the original set is connected to your cursor, and you can move it dynamically. Instead of entering a specific value in the dialog box, select the edge of the bottom face.



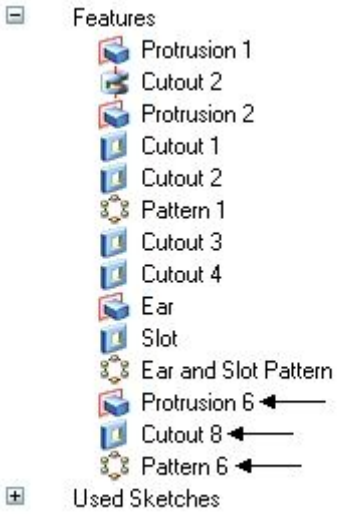
The copied set locks to the bottom face.



Click the left mouse button to finish.

Note

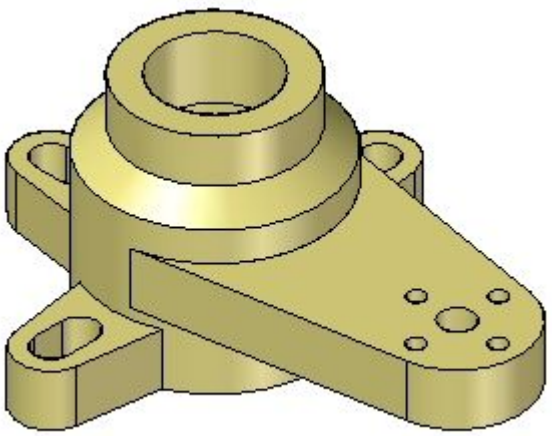
Note the addition of the copied set in PathFinder.



- Select the original face set: *Ear, Slot and Ear and Slot Pattern* .

  Delete this set by either

  - Right—click and choose Delete, or
  - Pressing the Delete key.

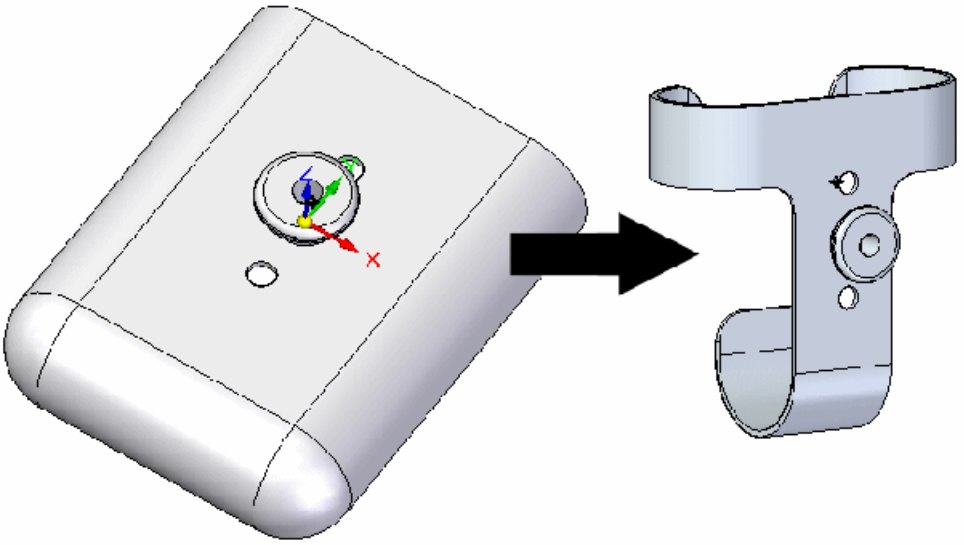


- Activity complete. Save and close the file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to copy and move a select set. The same operation could be accomplished by using the detach option. The select set would then have to be attached after movement.

Activity: Copy and paste face sets



Overview

This activity demonstrates the method of copying and pasting design features from one document to another.

Objectives

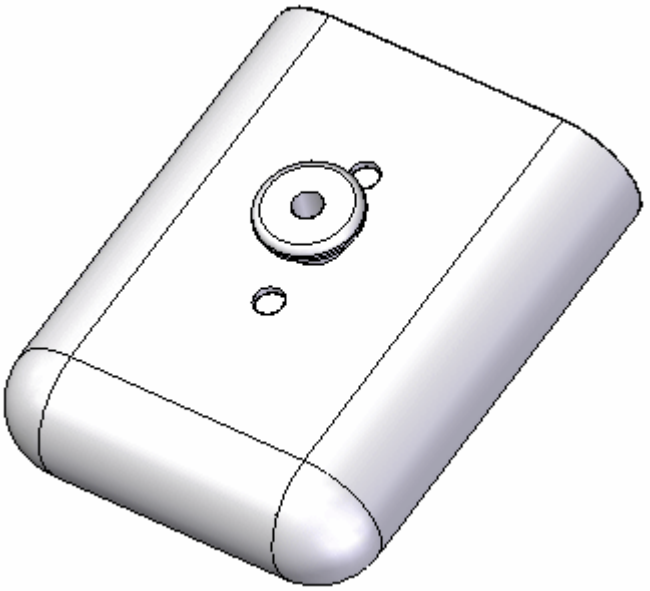
Copy an existing set of design features and paste them onto another part.

In this activity you will:

- Create a user-defined set of design features.
- Copy this set from its resident document.
- Paste this set into another part document.
- Attach the pasted geometry.
- Precisely dimension the face set.

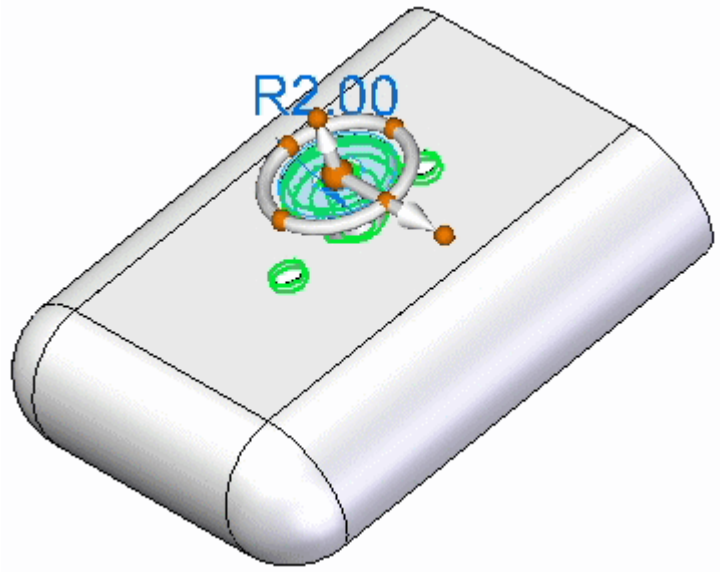
Activity: Copy and paste face sets

Open *copy1.par*.



Copy face sets

- Select *Protrusion 8, Protrusion 9, Round 10, Hole 2*. All features associate with the clip button.

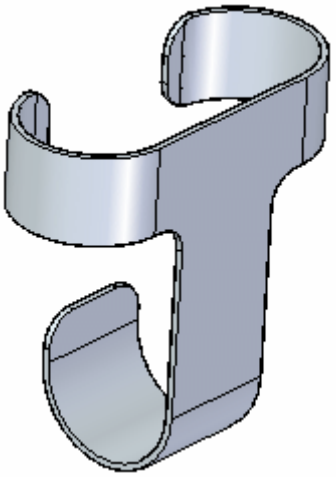


- Copy this set by one of the following.
  - Use the right mouse button Copy shortcut menu option.
  - Press Ctrl+C.

Paste the face set into another part document

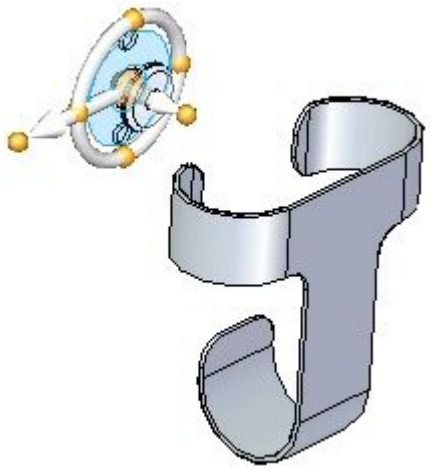
Paste the copied clip and hole features onto an alternate cell phone belt-carrier.

- Open the *copy2.par* part file.

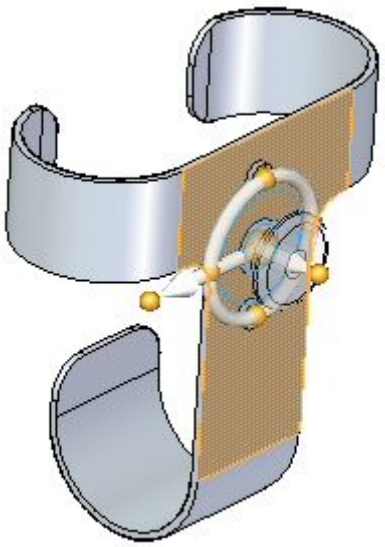


- Paste the previously-selected set by either of the following.
  - Press Ctrl+V, or
  - Use the right mouse button Paste option

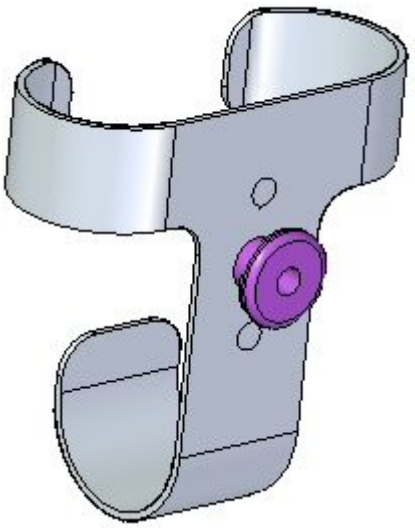
  You can see the set in this document. Note that the pasted set connects to your cursor, and you can move it around.



Move the set over the front face of the carrier and press the F3 key to lock that plane.

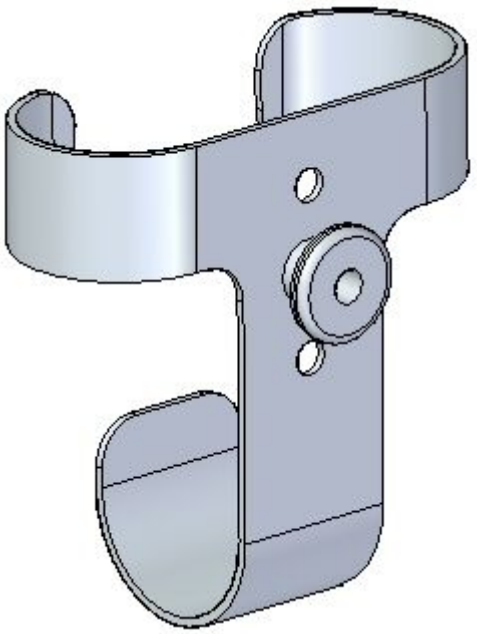


Position it as shown, and click the left mouse button to paste it.



- Attach the set to the carrier part using the right mouse button option Attach.

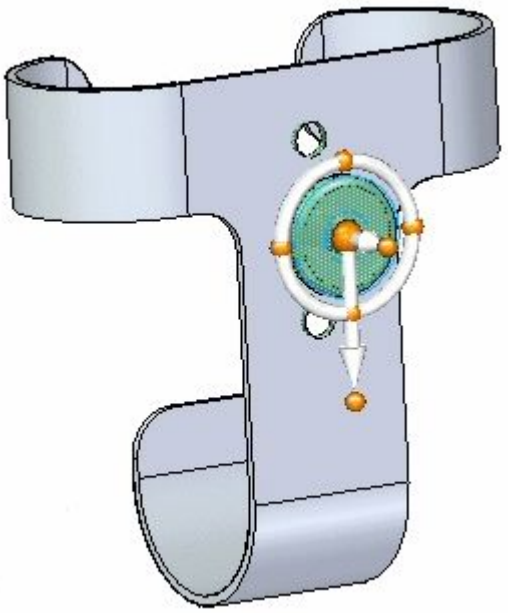
The set converts from construction faces to faces on this design body.



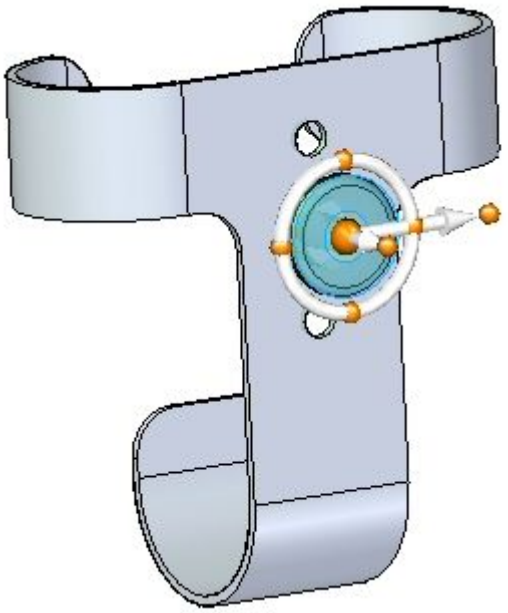
Position the pasted set

When pasted, the clip/hole set places randomly on the design body. Align the set on the vertical center of the face.

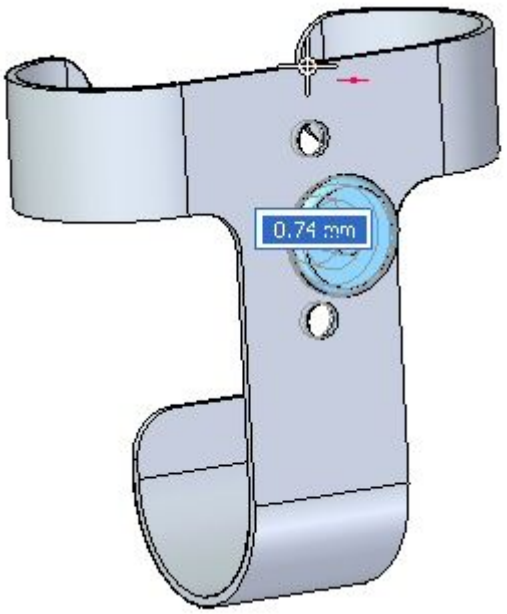
- In PathFinder, select the set of features. Position the steering wheel origin at the hole center shown.



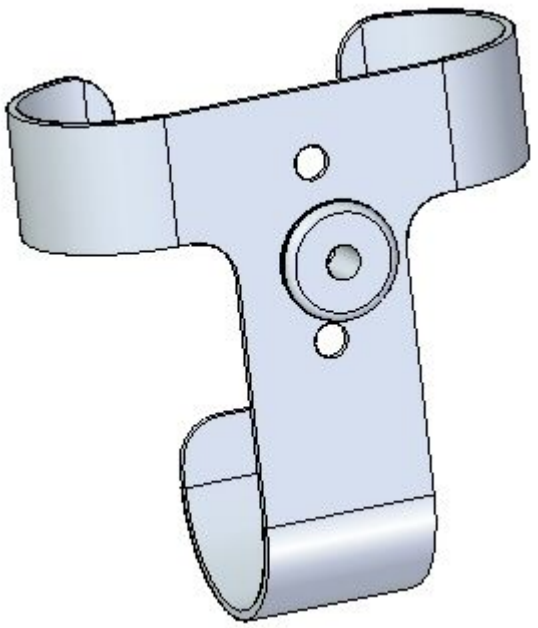
- Rotate the primary axis of the steering wheel as shown. This is your move direction.



Select the primary axis and in the command bar, select *Midpoint* in the Keypoints option. Click when the midpoint symbol on the top edge appears. Press Esc.



- Activity complete. Save and Close both part files.



Summary

In this activity you learned how to copy feature(s) to the clipboard. The copied features can be pasted into the same file or another file.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. How do you copy an element during rotate?
2. Can you paste copied faces to a model?

Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. How do you copy an element during rotate?

   To copy during rotate, press the Ctrl key, and click a torus of the steering wheel. To complete the copy, drag the cursor to a new location and either click or type in an angle to copy the element.

2. Can you paste copied faces to a model?

   Yes. Faces are added as detached geometry. Once pasted, use the Attach command to attach the geometry as a solid to the model.

Lesson summary

- When a 2D element is pasted, the element's orientation is relative to its native sketch plane. If the sketch being pasted is coincident with another sketch plane in the target document, then it is absorbed to the existing sketch. If the sketch is not coincident with any other sketch plane, then it creates a new sketch plane.

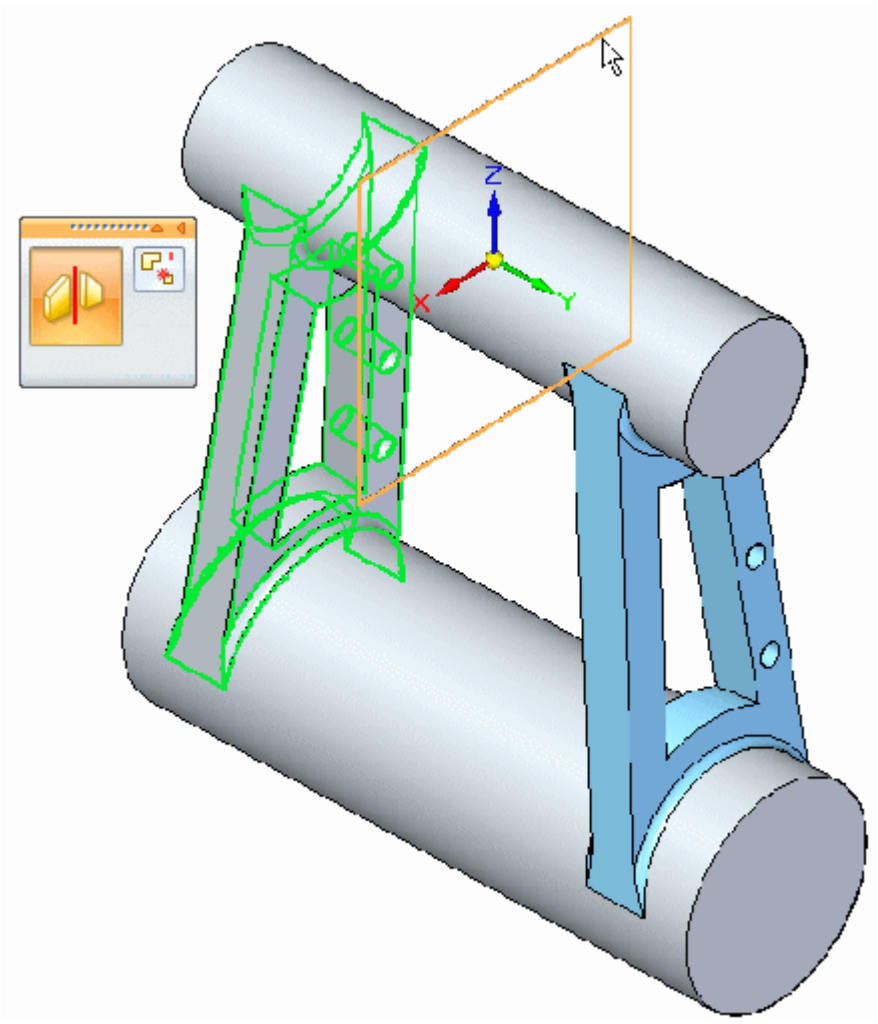
- You can select multiple objects to copy. You can have a mixed set of sketches, faces, manufactured features, and reference planes. If ineligible elements are found in the select set, an error message is displayed and you can remove the ineligible elements from the select set.

Mirror

Constructs a mirror copy of selected elements about a plane you define.

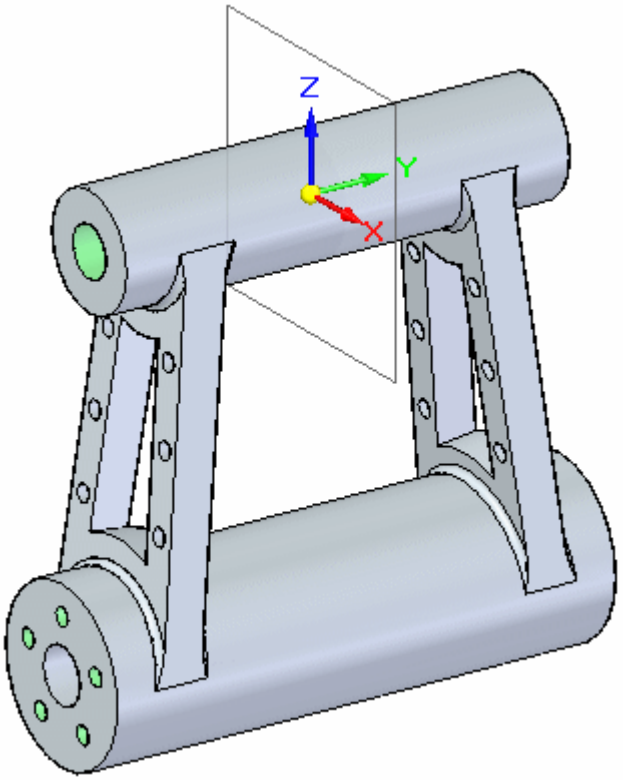
You can mirror any of the following:

- Faces of the model body
- Surfaces
- Face Sets
- Procedural Features, such as Hole Occurrences and Patterns
- Entire model body



The mirror plane can be a reference plane or a planar face.

Activity: Mirror faces and features



Overview

This activity demonstrates the method of mirroring faces and features.

Objectives

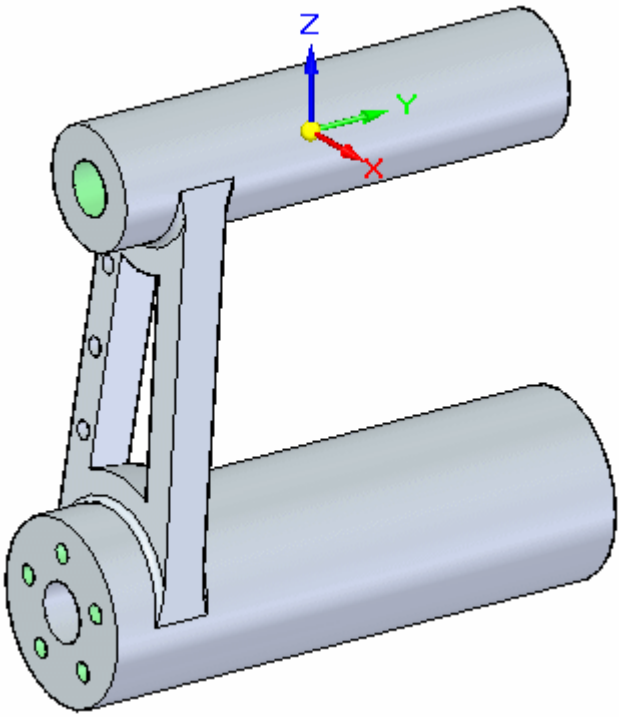
In this activity you will:

- Mirror hole features.
- Mirror other elements such as faces and body features.

Activity: Mirror faces

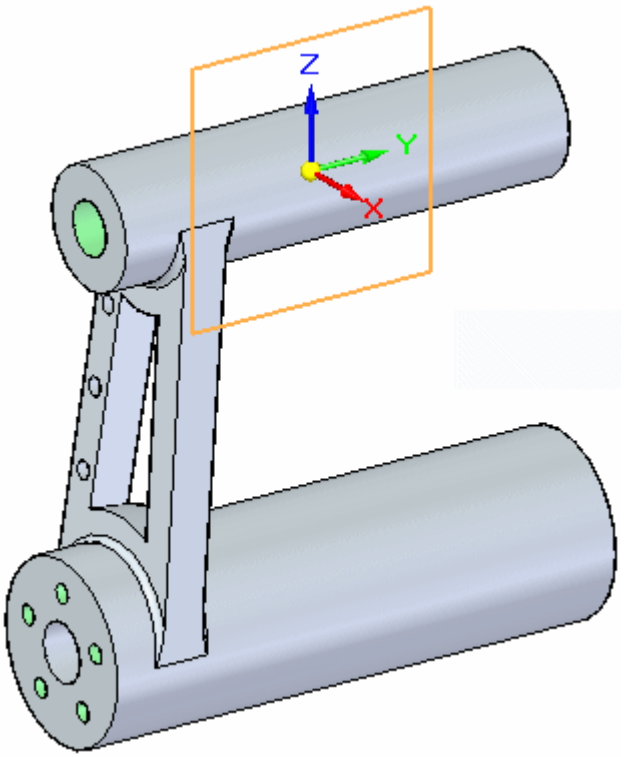
In this activity, you will mirror holes as well as faces.

Open *mirror.par*.

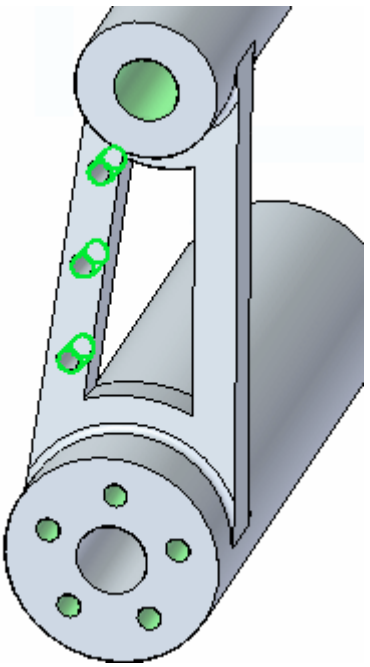


Mirror holes

- Show the Right (yz) reference plane.

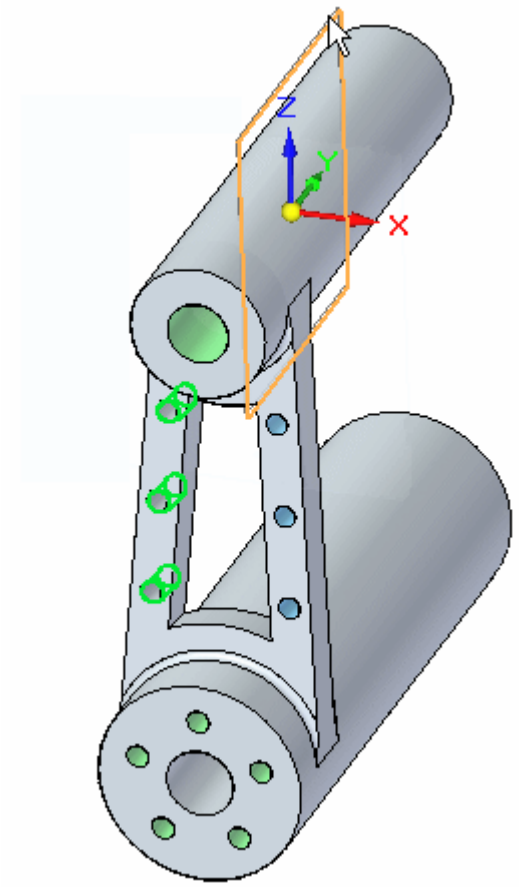


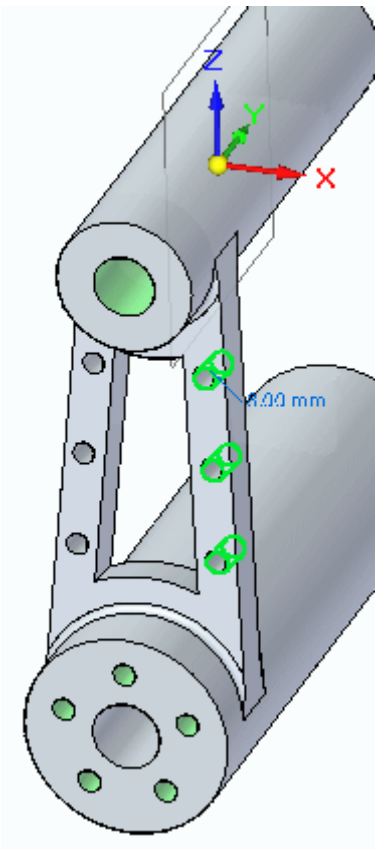
- Select the *Hole 102* group.



- On the Home tab® Pattern group, choose the Mirror command.

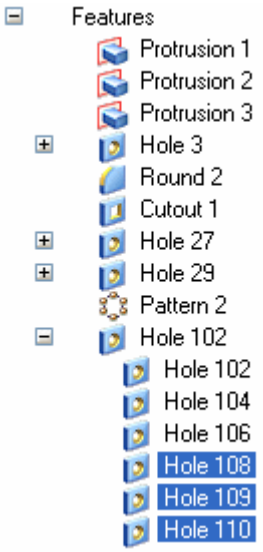
Select the Right base reference plane as the mirror plane.





Note

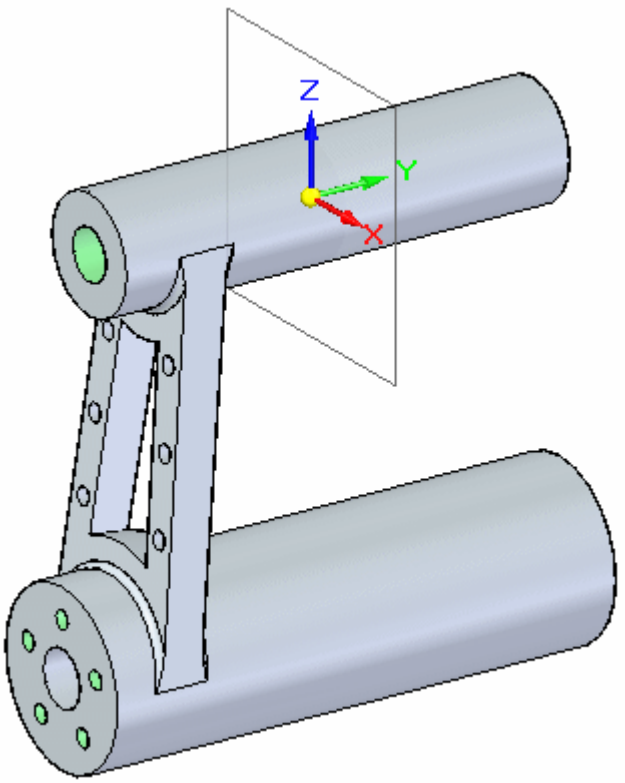
Notice from Pathfinder that the new hole occurrences are placed into the same hole group as the originals.



Press Esc to finish.

Mirror multiple elements

- Turn on the Front (xz) reference plane. Turn off all other reference planes.



- Select the following elements using PathFinder.

  Protrusion 3

  Hole 3

  Round 2

  Cutout 1

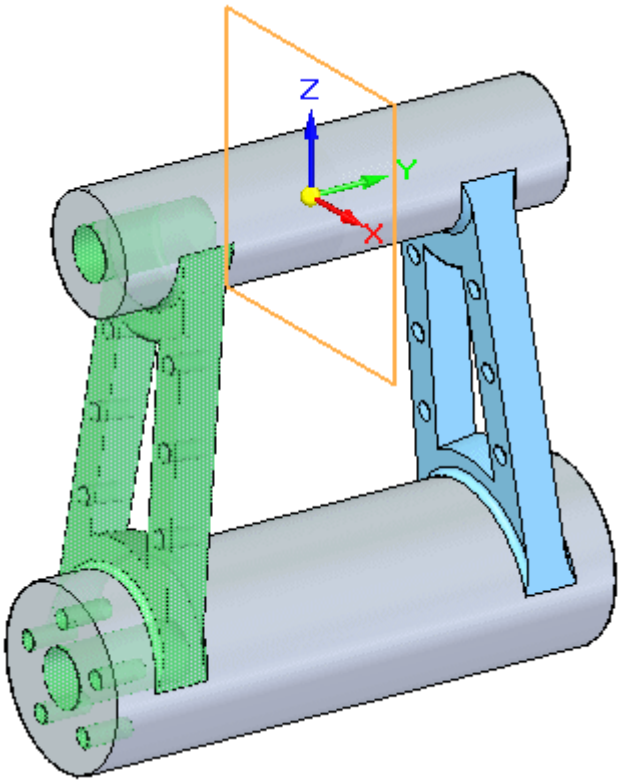
  Hole 27

  Hole 29

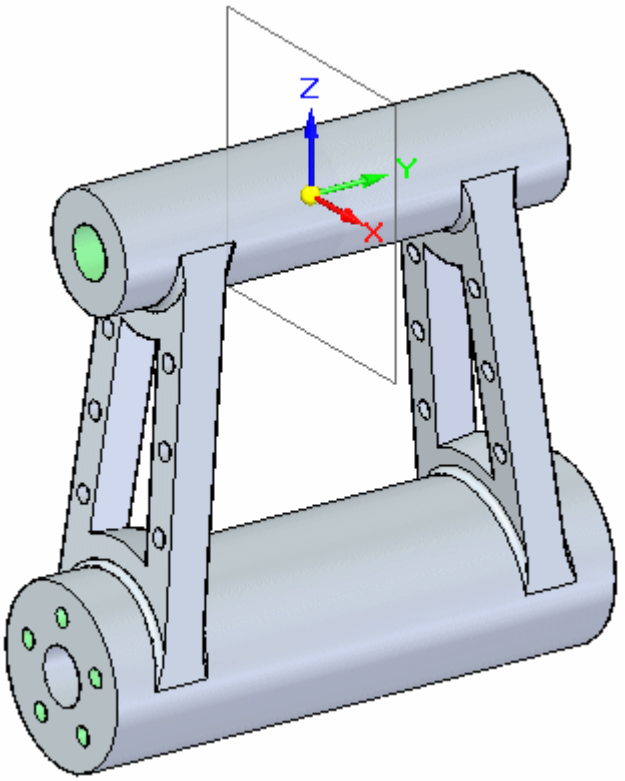
  Pattern 2

  Hole 102

  Choose the Mirror command, using the Front reference plane as the mirror plane.

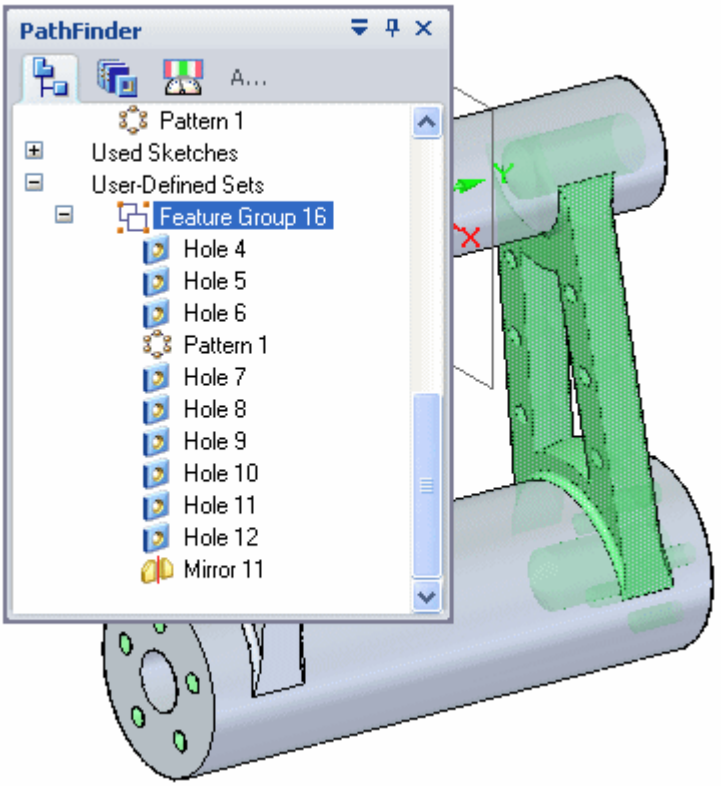


Press Esc to finish.



Note

Note in PathFinder that the mirrored elements organize into a new User-Defined Set.



- Save and close the file.

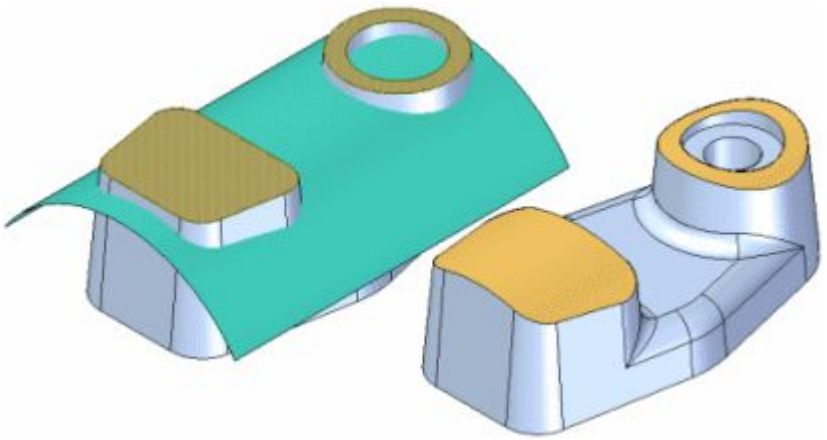
Summary

In this activity you learned how to mirror feature(s). Select the feature(s) to be mirrored and then select a mirror plane. If multiple features are selected to mirror, these mirrored features are collected into a user-defined set.

Replace Face command

Replaces selected faces on a part. The replacement face can be a construction surface, a reference plane, or another face on the part. When replacing more than one face, the faces being replaced cannot touch each other.

When you replace a face using a construction surface, the construction surface is hidden automatically when you finish the feature.



If edges on the face you are replacing have rounds applied, the rounds are reapplied after you complete the replace face operation.

Plastics design features

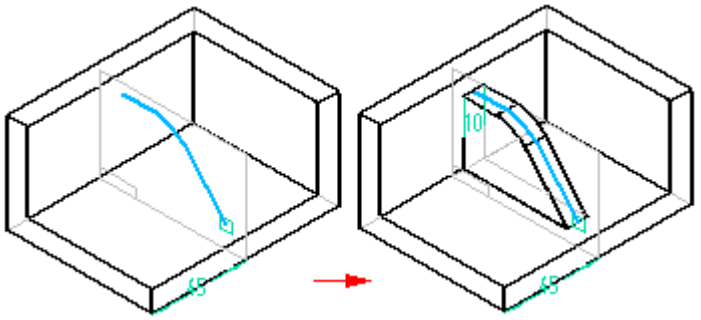
There are several feature types which you use extensively in the design of plastic parts, often in the consumer products we use every day.

Solid Edge provides the following commands:

- Rib
- Web network
- Vent
- Lip

Rib command

Constructs a rib by extruding a profile. The Direction and Side steps allow you to control the shape of the rib.



Constructing a synchronous rib feature

When you choose the synchronous Rib command, the command bar guides you through the following steps. The Rib command requires an existing sketch.

Step 1: Select Step—Select the sketch elements that define the rib feature.

Step 2: Rib Thickness Step—On the dynamic edit box, type in the rib thickness value and press the Tab key.

Step 3: Extent Step—Option to extend the ends of the sketch elements until they intersect the part.

Step 4: Finite Depth Step

Option on–Sets the rib extent so that the sketch elements are projected a specified distance to either side of the profile plane. (The rib does not project all the way to the existing faces on the part.) Type the distance in the value edit box.

Option off–Extends the faces on the rib that are perpendicular to the sketch plane to the existing faces on the part.

Step 5: Alignment Step—Define the side of the sketch to create the rib on.

Step 6: Side Step—Use the steering wheel to define direction for the rib.

Step 7: Finish Step—Click the Accept button to create the feature.

Constructing an ordered rib feature

When you select the Rib command, the command bar guides you through the following steps:

Step 1: Plane or Sketch Step—Define the profile plane for the rib or specify that you want to use an existing sketch.

Step 2: Draw Profile Step—This step automatically activates when you define the reference plane for the rib. When editing a rib, you can select this step to edit the rib profile.

Step 3: Direction Step—Define the direction you want to project the profile to form the body of the rib.

Step 4: Side Step—Define the side to which you want to offset the profile to form the thickness of the rib.

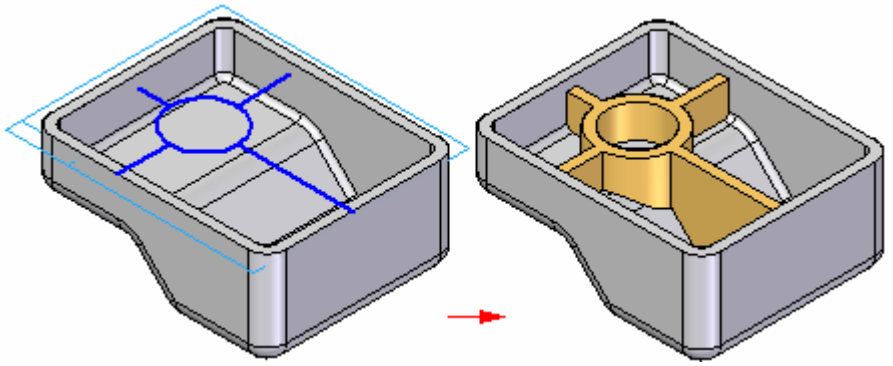
Note

By default, all ribs offset symmetrically. If you do not want the rib offset symmetrically, click the Side Step button, and define the side of the profile you want to offset.

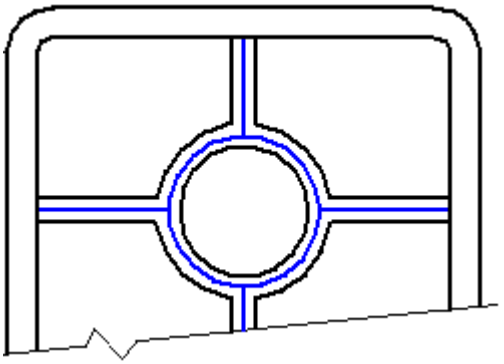
Step 5: Finish Step—Process the input and create the feature.

Web Network command

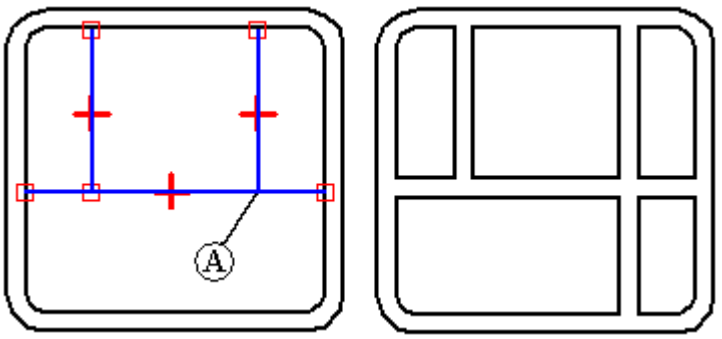
Constructs a series of webs. All webs constructed in the same operation become part of a single web network feature.



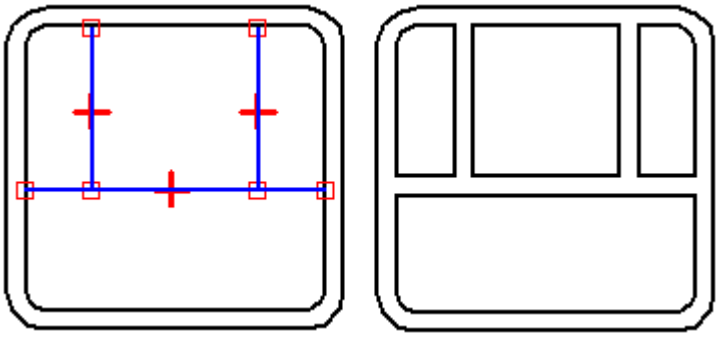
The web network is constructed perpendicular to the sketch plane. The web material thickness is always applied symmetrically on both sides of the web sketch. This differs from the Rib command, which allows you to specify a material side for a rib.



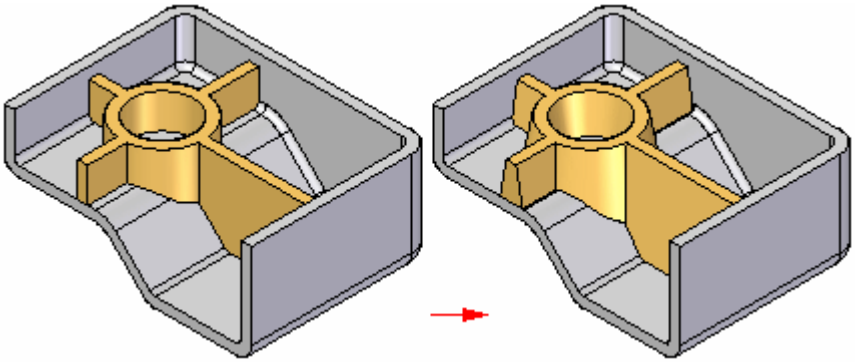
When constructing complex web networks using the Extend Profile option, the results can be affected by connect relationships on profile element vertices. For example, when no connect relationship is applied between the vertical profile line (A) and the horizontal line, the corresponding web is extended to the edge of the part.



If a connect relationship is applied to the vertex, the web does not extend.



You can also specify that draft is added to the faces on a web network feature that are perpendicular to the profile plane.



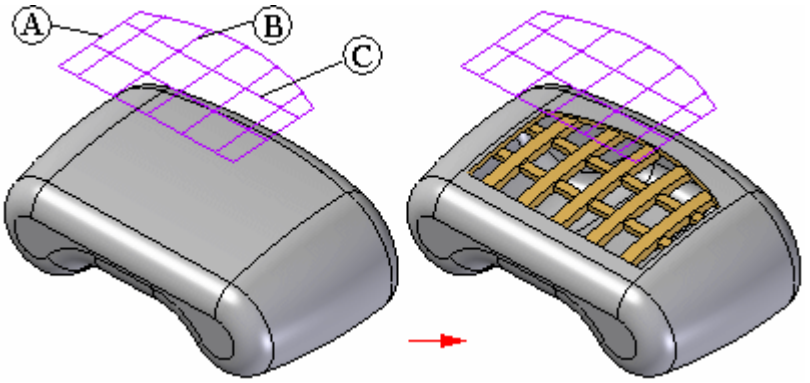
Controlling the web network definition

In the ordered environment, the sketch used to create the web network controls the feature. Use the Edit Profile command to add dimensions and to add or remove elements.

In the synchronous environment, the initial sketch defines the web network. The sketch is consumed during feature creation and is not associated with the web network feature. After the feature is created, you can add dimensions to control the web network. You can dimension to the midpoint of a rib. On the command bar, you must turn on the midpoint keypoint option to locate the rib midpoint to dimension to it. To delete a rib section, you select both faces on either side of the rib to remove and press the Delete key. To add a new section to the web network, you must create a new rib.

Vent command

Constructs a vent. You construct a vent feature by selecting elements from a single, existing sketch. The sketch defines the exterior boundary element (A), ribs (B), and spars (C) for the vent feature. The exterior boundary must be a closed element and cannot pass through any surfaces on the design model. The ribs and spars can be open or closed elements.



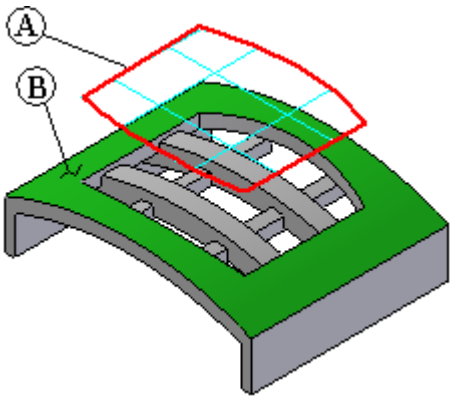
You can use the Vent Options dialog box to define rib and spar properties, such as thickness, depth, draft and rounding properties. You can also specify whether the ribs or spars extend past the opening created by the boundary element, and whether the ribs or spars are offset from the entrance surface.

Note

You must have both a solid body and a sketch in a Part document before you can construct a vent feature.

Vent construction details

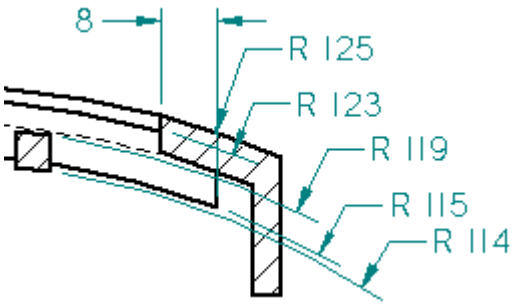
The top and bottom surfaces on the ribs and spars are constructed by offsetting the first surface (entrance surface) that the boundary element cuts. For example, the boundary element (A) for the vent shown cuts through a cylindrical surface (B) with a radius value of 125 millimeters. The top and bottom faces of the ribs and spars will then also be cylindrical.



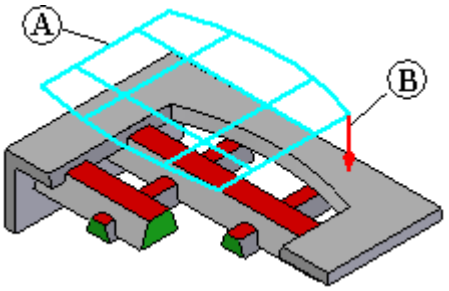
The cylindrical radius value of the top and bottom faces of the ribs and spars is determined by the values you enter in the Vent Options dialog box for the rib and spar properties for Offset and Depth.

Property	Rib	Spar
Thickness	8 mm	5 mm
Extension	8 mm	3 mm
Offset	2 mm	6 mm
Depth	8 mm	5 mm

For example, the top face of the rib has a radius value of 123 millimeters because an offset value of 2 millimeters was specified for the top face of the rib. The radius value of the bottom face of the rib is determined by the values for the Offset and Depth property. In this example, the bottom face of the rib has a radius value of 115 millimeters (125 - (8+2)). Similar results are shown for the top and bottom faces on the spar (119 mm and 114 mm). Also notice the rib extension value of 8 mm.

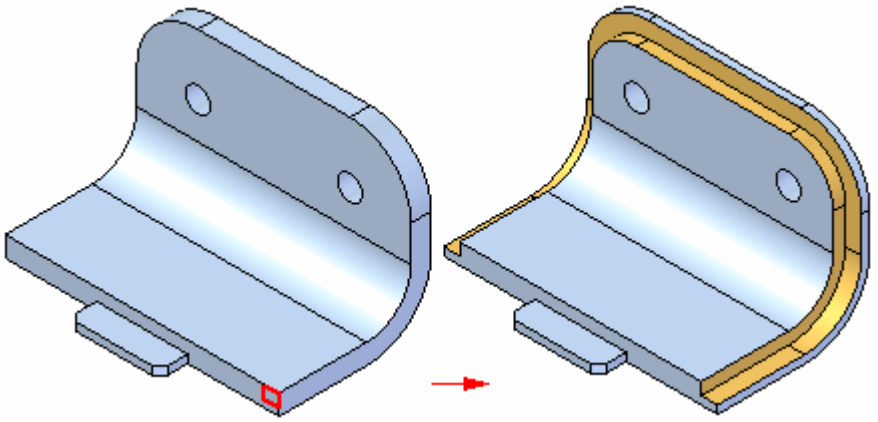


Draft angle for a vent feature is defined relative to the sketch and extent direction for the feature. For the following vent feature, the sketch (A) is positioned above the part, and the extent (B) is defined downward toward the part. The red faces on the ribs and spars are then considered outside faces, and the draft direction was defined as outward, which adds material.



Lip command

Creates a lip or groove on a part. You can specify whether material is added to form a lip, or removed to form a groove. The cross section shape cannot be changed. Only the dimensions that control the size of the rectangular cross section can be modified.

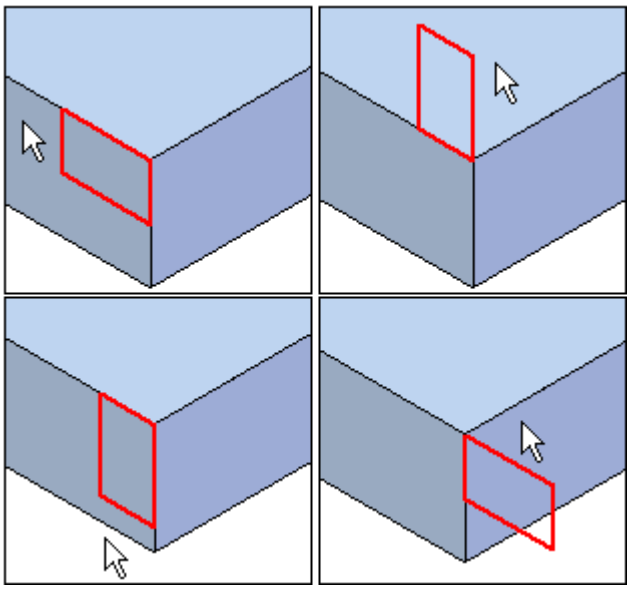


Selecting edges

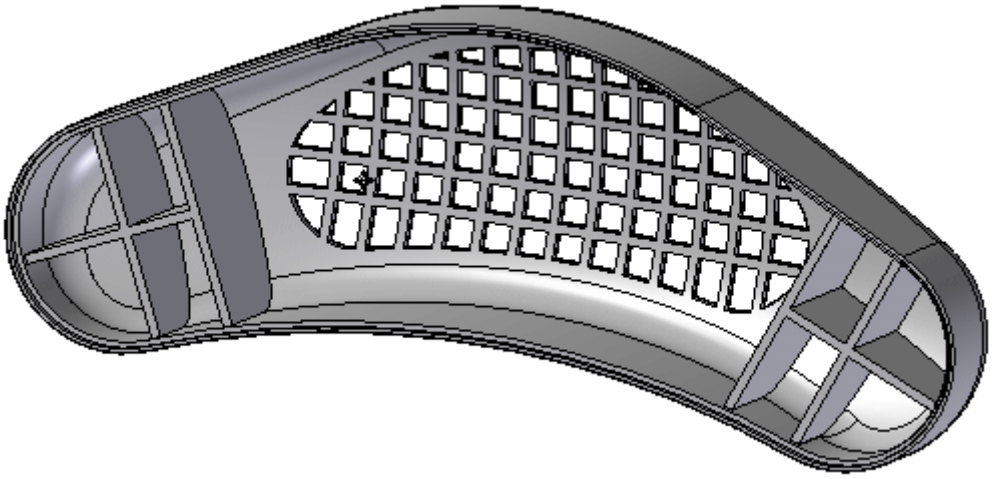
The first step in adding a lip or groove feature is to specify which edges to add it to. You can select the edges individually, or you can select a chain of edges. The edges must be connected.

Defining the shape and direction

After selecting the edges, type the feature height and width in the command bar boxes. A dynamic representation of the feature is displayed. Move your cursor until the lip or groove is in the position you want, then click.



Activity: Functional features in consumer products



Overview

This activity demonstrates the placement of several functional features commonly used in plastic part design.

Objectives

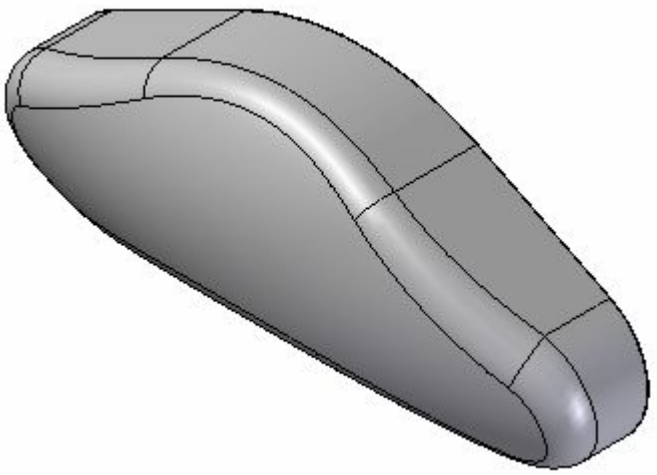
Use the following commands to finish the design of an automotive speaker grille.

- Vent
- Web network
- Lip

Activity: Functional features in consumer products

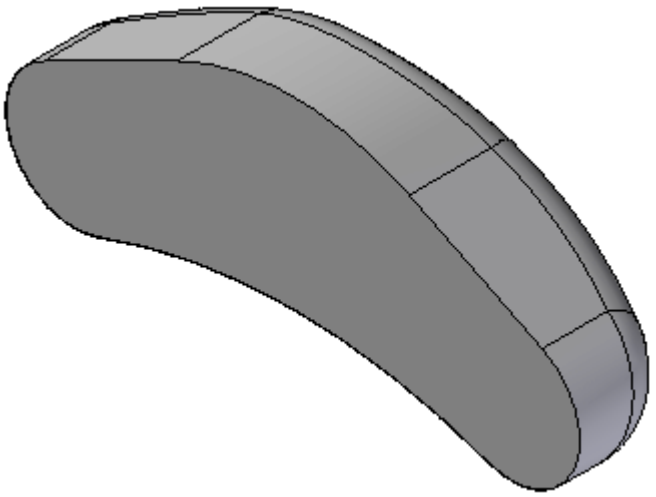
In this activity, you will add several features to further the design of a speaker cover.

Open *plastics.par*.



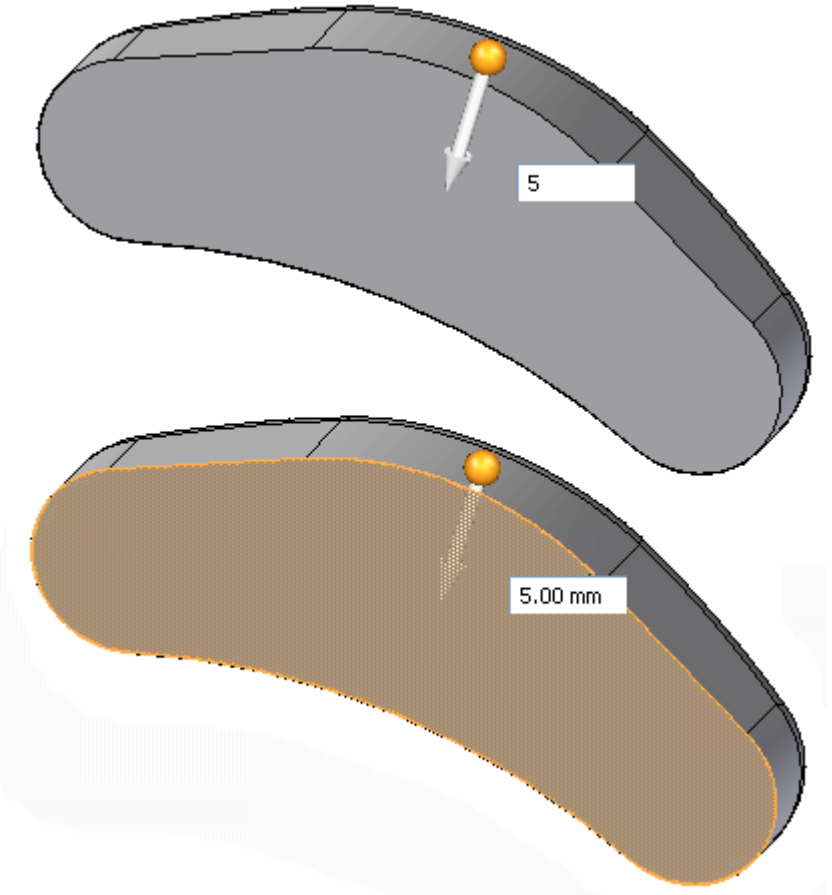
Apply a thin wall

- Rotate the view 180° about the Z-axis to see the backside of this model.

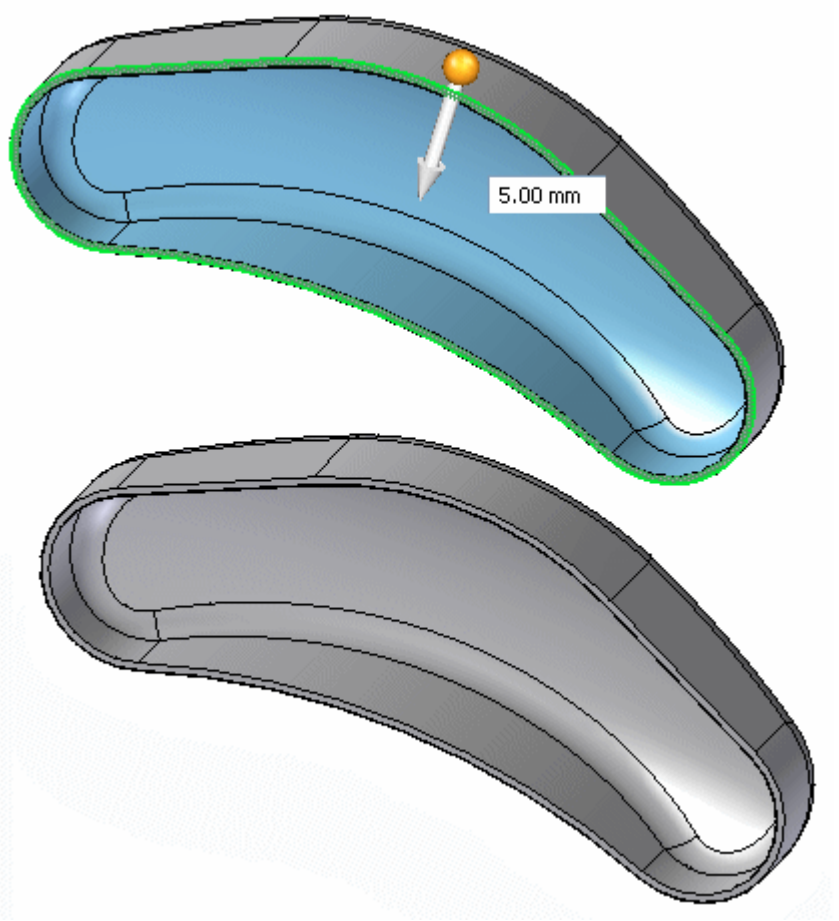


- On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Thin Wall command .

The part selects automatically. Type 5.00 mm for the thickness. Ensure the arrow points inward towards the model's center and select the back planar face as the open face.



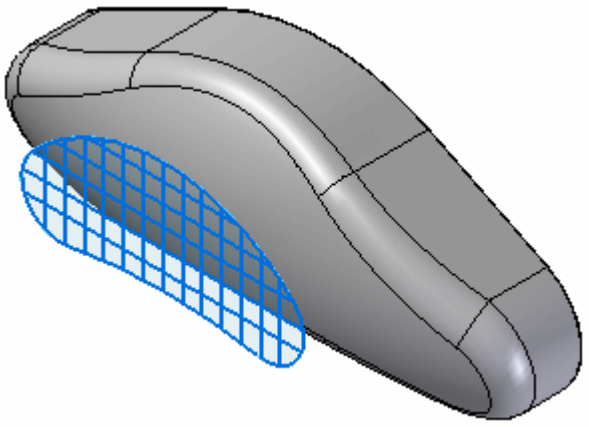
The preview shows the material is removed. Click the right mouse button to finish.



Return to an isometric view by pressing Ctrl + I.

Add a vent feature

- In PathFinder, click the plus sign on the *Sketches* collector. Click the *Vent Sketch* box to turn on the sketch display.



- On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Vent command .

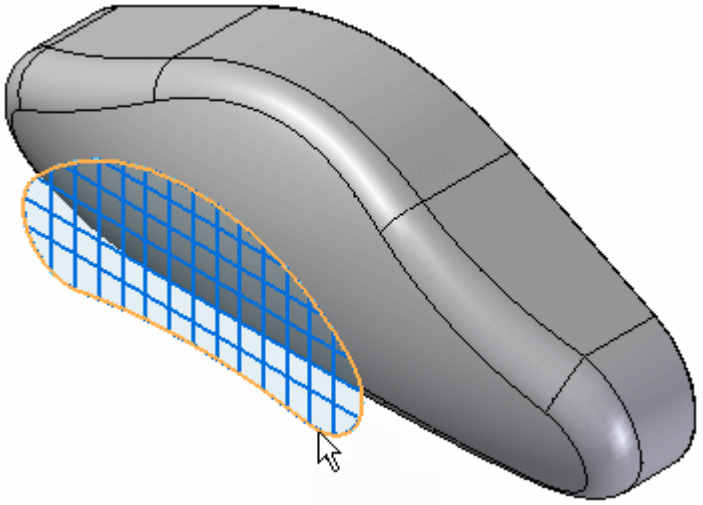
  Note

  The vent command is located on the Thin Wall drop list.

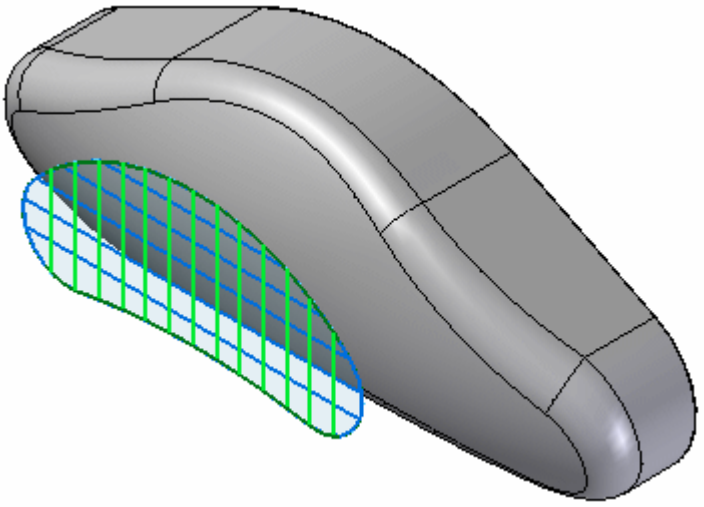
  In the Vent Options dialog box, set the thickness and depth for the ribs and spars as shown in the table below and select OK.

	Ribs	Spars
Thickness	5.00 mm	5.00 mm
Depth	5.00 mm	5.00 mm

- Select the chain shown to define the vent's boundary and then click accept in the command bar.



- Select the 13 vertical lines for the rib definition.

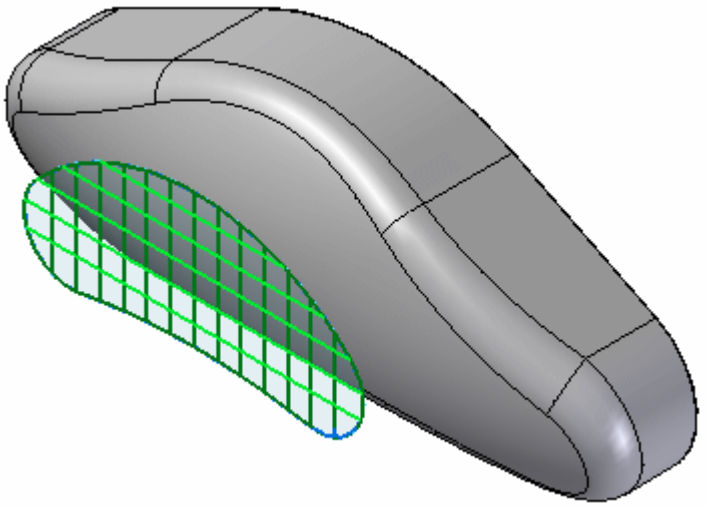


Accept these in the command bar.

Note

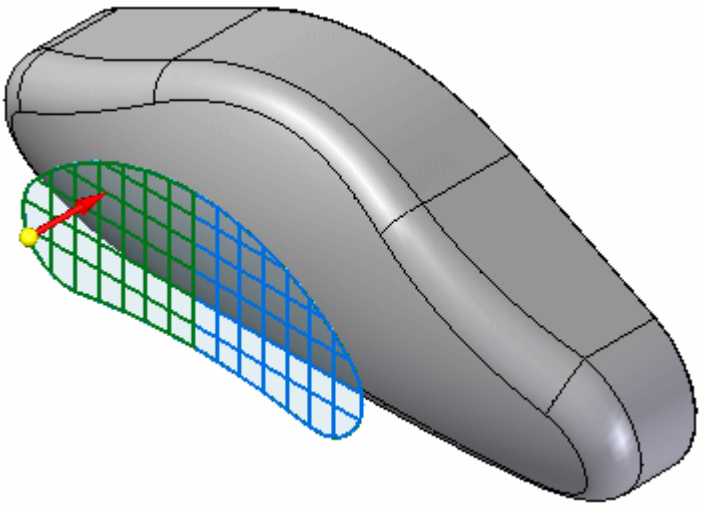
To deselect an element from the rib definition step, hold the Ctrl key down and select the element.

- Select the 5 horizontal lines for the spar definition.

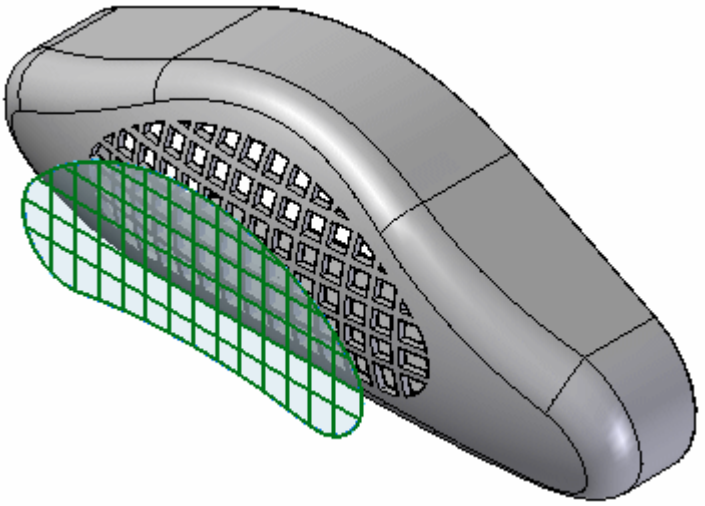


Accept these in the command bar.

- Select the side shown for the Extent.



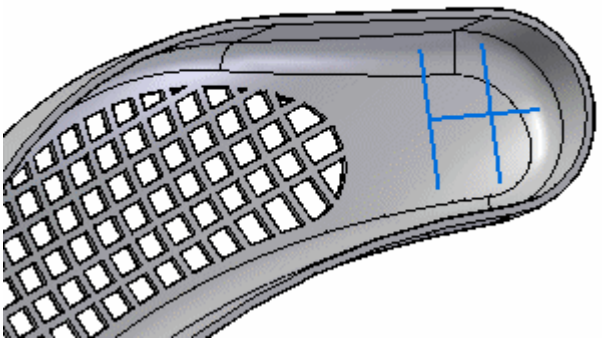
The vent feature takes a short time to process. When finished, you see the preview. Click Finish in the command bar.



- In the PathFinder, open the *Sketches* collector and turn off *Vent Sketch*.

Add a web network

- Rotate the view to see the backside. In the *Sketches* collector, turn on the sketch named *Rib Network Sketch*.

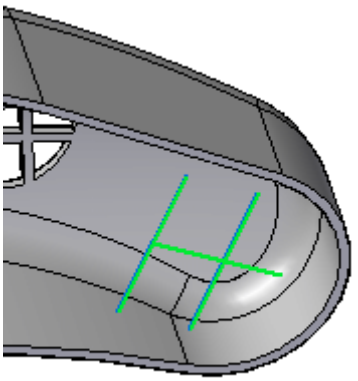


- On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Web Network command .

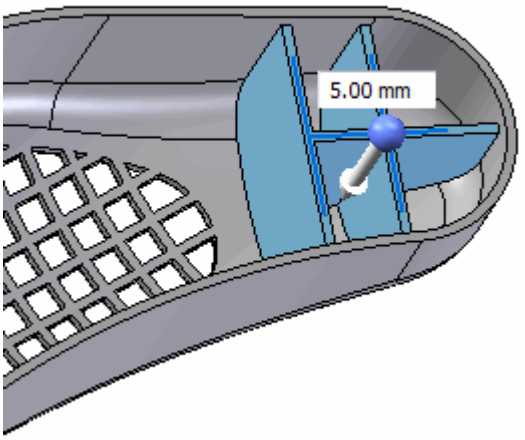
Note

The Web Network command is located in the Thin Wall drop list.

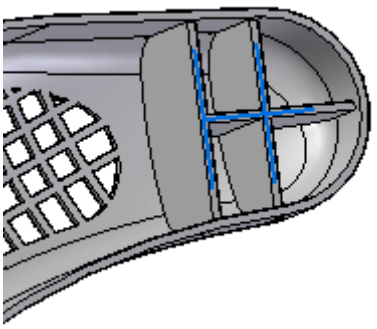
Select the 3 lines in the sketch. Click Accept in the command bar.



- For the direction step on command bar, type 5.00 mm for the thickness.



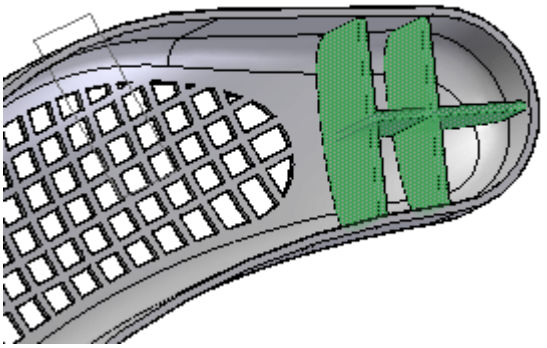
- Select *Finish* in the command bar.



Mirror the web network

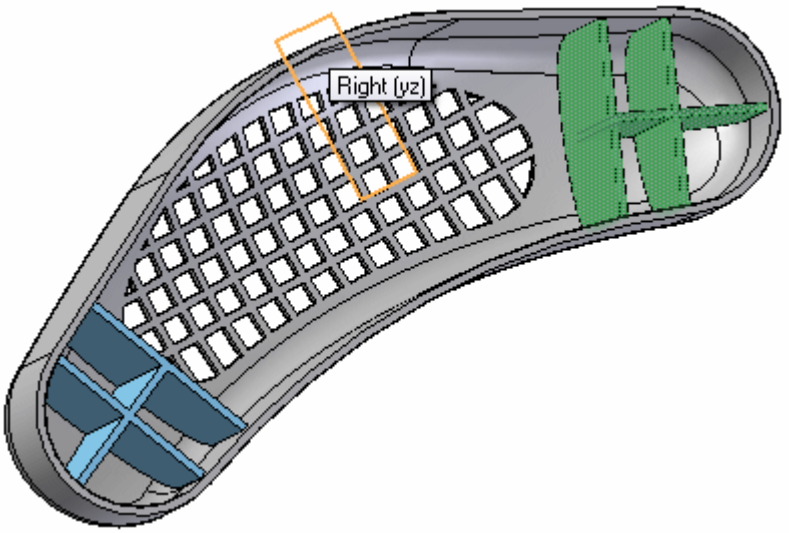
- Turn on the display of the Right (yz) reference plane. This plane will be the mirror plane.

- Select the web network feature.

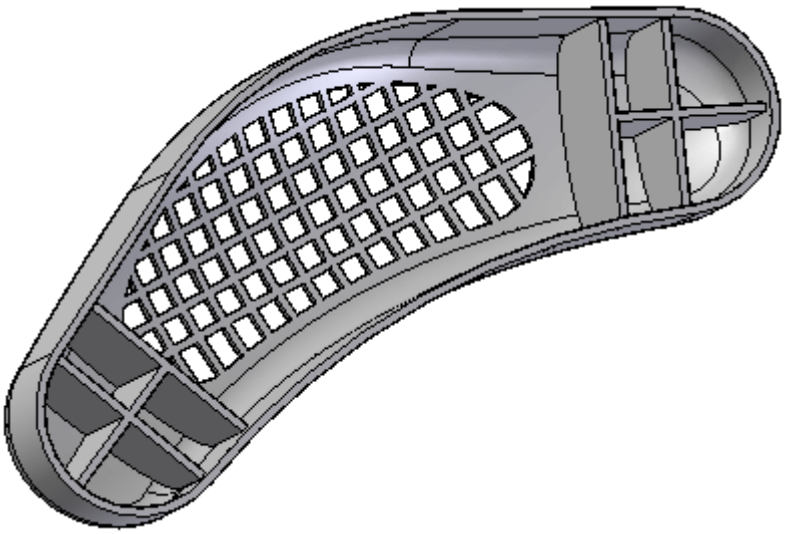


- On the Home tab® Pattern group, choose the Mirror command.

- Select the Right (yz) base reference plane as the mirror plane. The preview shows the results.



Left-click to finish. Turn off the reference planes.



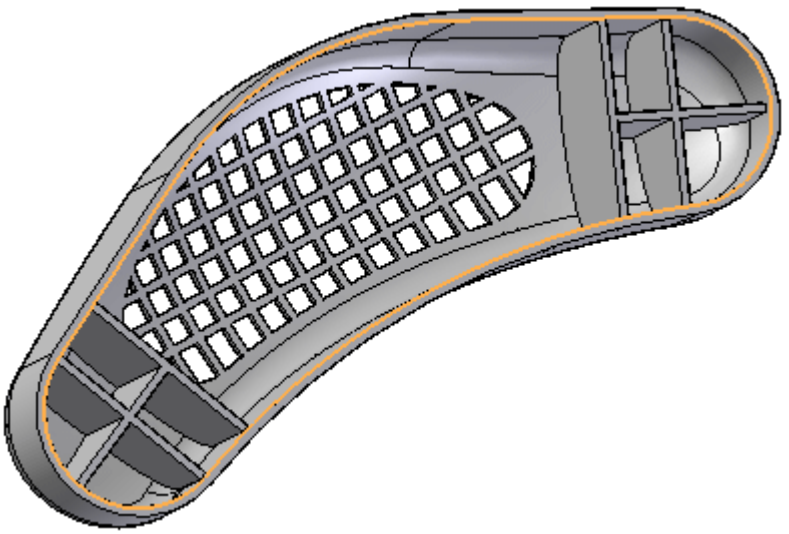
Add a lip feature

- On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Lip command .

  Note

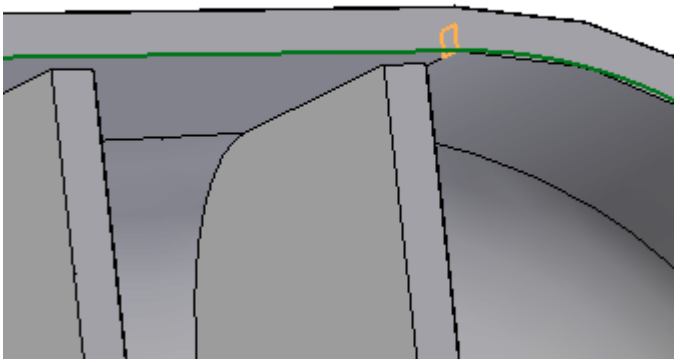
  The Lip command is located in the Thin Wall drop list.

- Select the inside edge of the thin wall and Accept in command bar.



- On the Lip command bar, type 3 for the width and 5 for the height.

A rectangle appears where the lip begins. Zoom in for closer view.

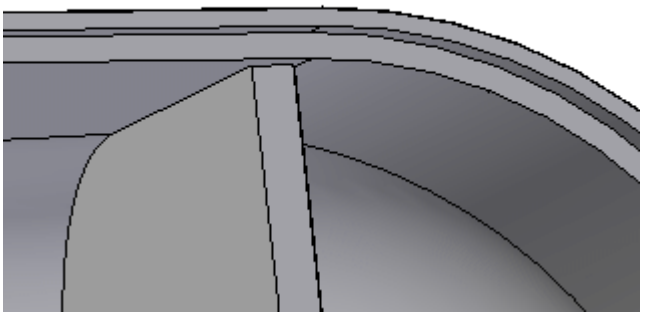


There are 4 possible positions for the rectangle. Position the rectangle as shown above to remove material from the thin wall.

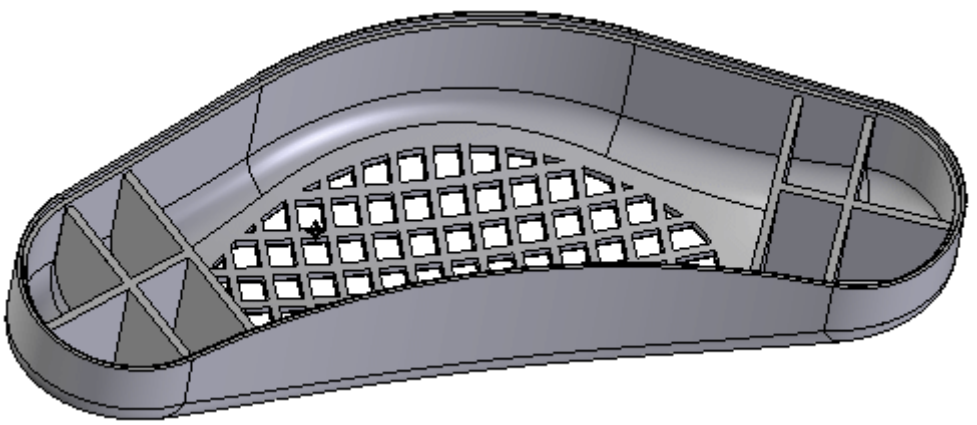
Note

The long side of the rectangle should be pointing down along the part wall.

Click to create the lip.



- Select *Finish*. The lip is placed.



- Save and close this file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create *vent* and *web network* features. Since there are several steps in creating these features, be sure to use the command bar to go back to a previous step if the desired results are not achieved.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. How do you define the side to which you want to offset the profile to form the thickness of a rib?

2. Can you do the same action as in #1 above to a web network?

3. What two things must you have in a Part document before constructing a vent feature?

4. What is the difference between a lip and a groove?

Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. How do you define the side to which you want to offset the profile to form the thickness of a rib?

   Click the Side Step button, and define the side of the profile you want to offset.

2. Can you do the same action as in #1 above to a web network?

   No. Web material thickness is always applied symmetrically on both sides of the sketch.

3. What two things must you have in a Part document before constructing a vent feature?

   You must have both a solid body and a sketch in a Part document before you can construct a vent feature..

4. What is the difference between a lip and a groove?

   A lip is created by adding material, and a groove is formed by removing material.

Lesson summary

- Ribs, web networks, vents and lips/grooves are all features used extensively in the design of plastic parts. Many consumer products (cell phones, watches, cooking utensils and computing tablets being common examples) are constructed out of plastic parts.

Lesson

7 *Modeling synchronous and ordered features*

Modeling synchronous and ordered features

In a Solid Edge modeling document, two environments coexist for creating model features. The two environments are synchronous and ordered. You create synchronous features in the synchronous modeling environment. You create ordered features in the ordered modeling environment. A model can contain only synchronous features, only ordered features, or a combination of both feature types.

A synchronous feature is a collection of faces that define the feature shape. There is no history retained of how a synchronous feature was created. You can edit the faces of a synchronous feature.

An ordered feature is history based. You can edit an ordered feature by returning to any step used in the feature creation process. You do not edit faces of an ordered feature.

Opening a Solid Edge modeling document

- The Solid Edge Options® Helpers page provides a setting for the modeling environment to use when a new document opens. The default setting is Synchronous modeling.
- If an existing modeling document contains only synchronous elements, the document opens in the synchronous environment.
- If an existing modeling document contains only ordered elements or a combination of ordered and synchronous elements, the document opens in the ordered environment.

Moving between modeling environments

You can switch between environments at any time during the modeling process.

- Right-click in PathFinder or the graphics window to activate the shortcut menu, and then choose either *Transition to Synchronous* or *Transition to Ordered*, depending on the environment that is active.
- If a model contains both synchronous and ordered features, click the Ordered environment bar or the Synchronous environment bar in PathFinder.
- On the ribbon, from the Tools tab® Model group, choose the modeling environment to transition to.

  Note

  Each environment presents its own set of modeling commands.

Feature display

In the ordered modeling environment, ordered and synchronous features appear.

In the synchronous modeling environment, only synchronous features appear.

Editing features

In ordered modeling, selecting an ordered feature displays the Edit Feature command bar for ordered editing.

In ordered or synchronous modeling, selecting a synchronous body face displays the steering wheel for synchronous editing.

Moving ordered features to synchronous

You can convert ordered features to synchronous features while in a part or sheet metal modeling file. The conversion performs by moving ordered features into the synchronous portion of the PathFinder tree. This move results in the feature geometry consuming into the synchronous body and therefore available for synchronous editing.

The move to synchronous workflow occurs only when the file is in the ordered environment. Single features or any number of features can convert with the Move to Synchronous command.

The ordered conversion is one way only. Synchronous features cannot convert to ordered features.

Note

You can also convert ordered features to synchronous features at a file level with the Convert command. Multiple files can process simultaneously.

Feature conversion must start at the top of the ordered feature tree and be in a contiguous order. All features in the tree above the selected feature include in the conversion. Mirror and pattern features require both child and parent features for conversion to be successful. If any of the parents in the select set have a child relationship to either a mirror or pattern feature, all features above these children features are in the select set.

If a problem occurs in the conversion process, the Undo command is available.

A Move to Synchronous dialog displays to alert the users if additional dependency found, and to provide any warning message that may affect the outcome of the move. This dialog only displays when warnings exist and or there are additional dependencies found.

Warning message: Feature dependency found. It is recommended that all dependencies be moved with the selected feature.

You can click the “Selection only” button in the dialog to exclude the dependencies from the Move operation.

Note

It is recommended to recompute the ordered node, and resolve any possible warnings or failures before moving the ordered features to synchronous.

Moving local dimensions and sketches

When ordered local dimensions move to synchronous, Solid Edge attempts to locate and bind dimensions to a vertex. If no vertex is found, then the dimensions become dangling dimensions. Once moved, all ordered dimensions, except for dangling dimensions, display along with the synchronous dimensions in the Dimensions node of the Synchronous portion of PathFinder. All ordered dimensions that are driving or driven dimensions move as driven dimensions. When you do a Move to Sync for a feature at a time,Solid Edge creates a user defined set each time there are dangling dimensions.

Note

Synchronous does not support dimensions between a part edge and a reference plane. Therefore, dimensions placed between an ordered part edge and a reference plane move to synchronous as dangling dimensions.

Local profile sketches in ordered convert as used sketches when they move to synchronous. The profile sketch name in synchronous is the same as the ordered feature name.

Activity: Creating ordered features

This activity guides you through the process of creating ordered features. Learn how to switch between modeling environments.

Activity: Creating ordered features

Create a new part document

When creating a new part document, you can control the environment to begin modeling in. The Solid Edge Options dialog provides a setting to start in Synchronous or Ordered environment. The default setting is Synchronous environment.

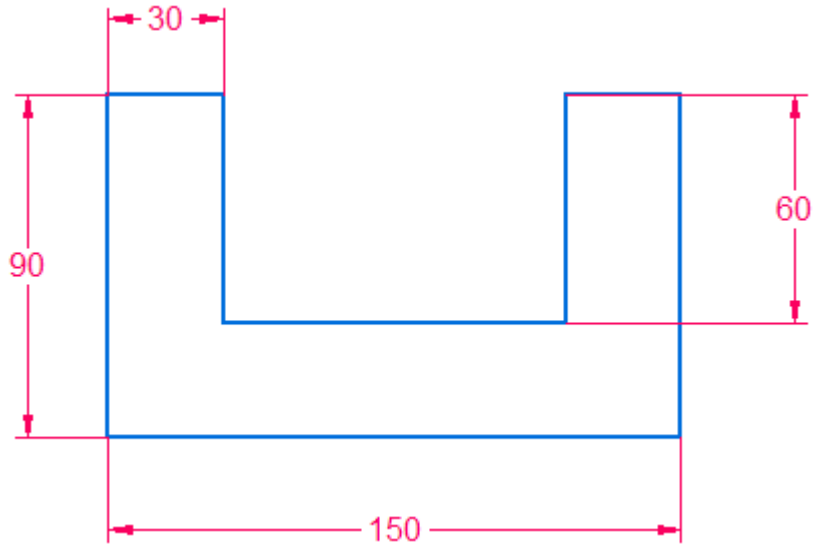
Note

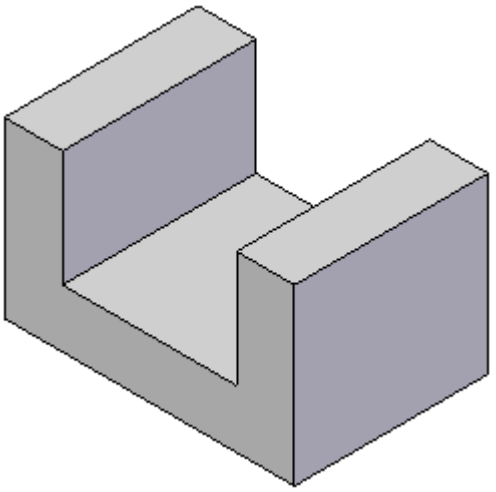
Existing files that contain only synchronous elements, open in the synchronous environment. Existing files that contain only ordered elements or a combination of ordered and synchronous elements, open in the ordered environment.

- Start Solid Edge ST4.
- On the Start-up page, click the Application button.
- Click Solid Edge Options.
- On the Solid Edge Options dialog, click the Helpers page.
- On the Helpers page, under *Start Part and Sheet Metal documents using this environment:*, click the Ordered button. Click OK.
- On the Start-up page, under Create, click ISO Part.

Create an ordered base feature

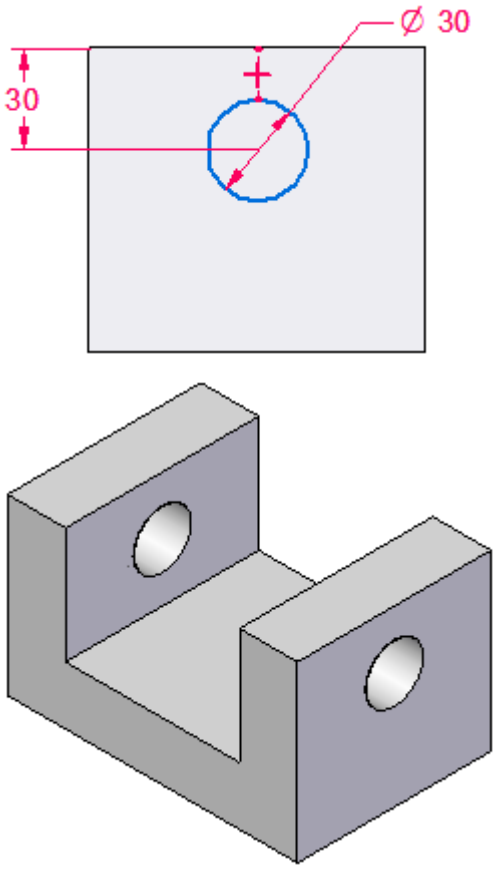
- Create an extrusion with the cross-section shown. Extend symmetrically at a distance of 100 mm.





Create an ordered cut feature

- Create a cut with the cross-section shown. Extend through all.



Transition to the Synchronous environment

There are three ways to transition to the other environment.

1. Right-click in PathFinder or modeling window and choose Transition to Synchronous (or Transition to Ordered).
2. On the Tools tab® Model group, click the environment to transition to.
3. In PathFinder, click the environment bar to transition to.

Note

An environment bar is only available for selection if features exist in that environment.

- Transition to the Synchronous environment using a method of your choice.

Note

Notice that the ordered features do not appear. Only synchronous features appear in the Synchronous environment. In the Ordered environment, both synchronous and ordered features appear.

Transition to the Ordered environment

- Click the Ordered environment bar to transition back to the Ordered environment.

  Ordered

- Save the file as *ordered.par*.
- Close the file.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create ordered features. You also learned how to switch between modeling environments.

Activity: Creating both ordered and synchronous features in a model

This activity guides you through the process of creating both ordered and synchronous features in the a model. Learn how to edit both feature types and how to convert an ordered feature to a synchronous feature.

Activity: Creating ordered and synchronous features in a model

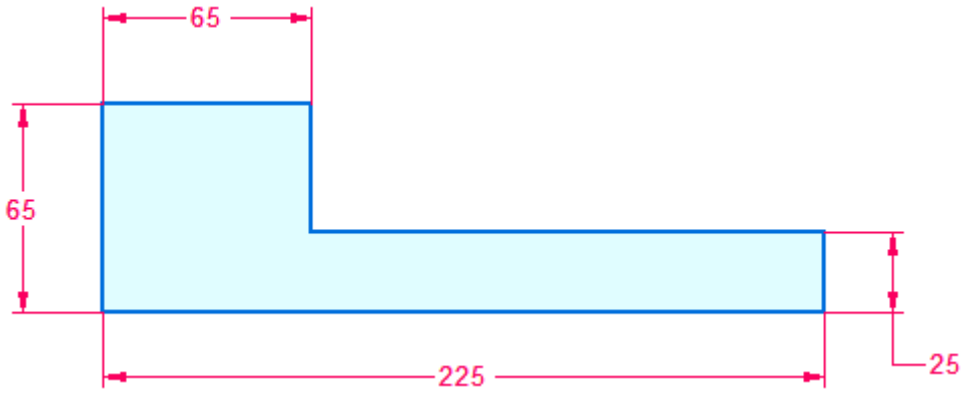
Create a new part document

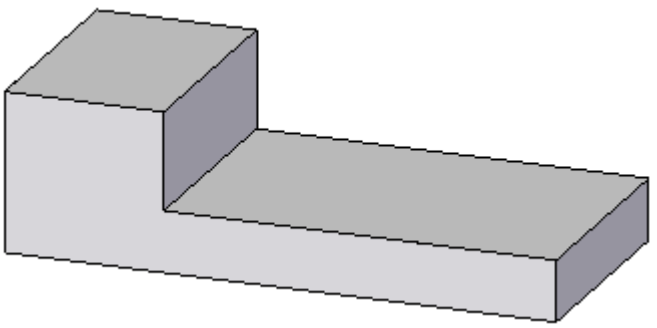
- Create a new part document.
- Switch to the Synchronous environment. See the previous activity (Creating ordered features) if you need help switching modeling environments.

Synchronous

Create a synchronous base feature

- Create an extrusion with the cross-section shown. Extend symmetrically at a distance of 100 mm.

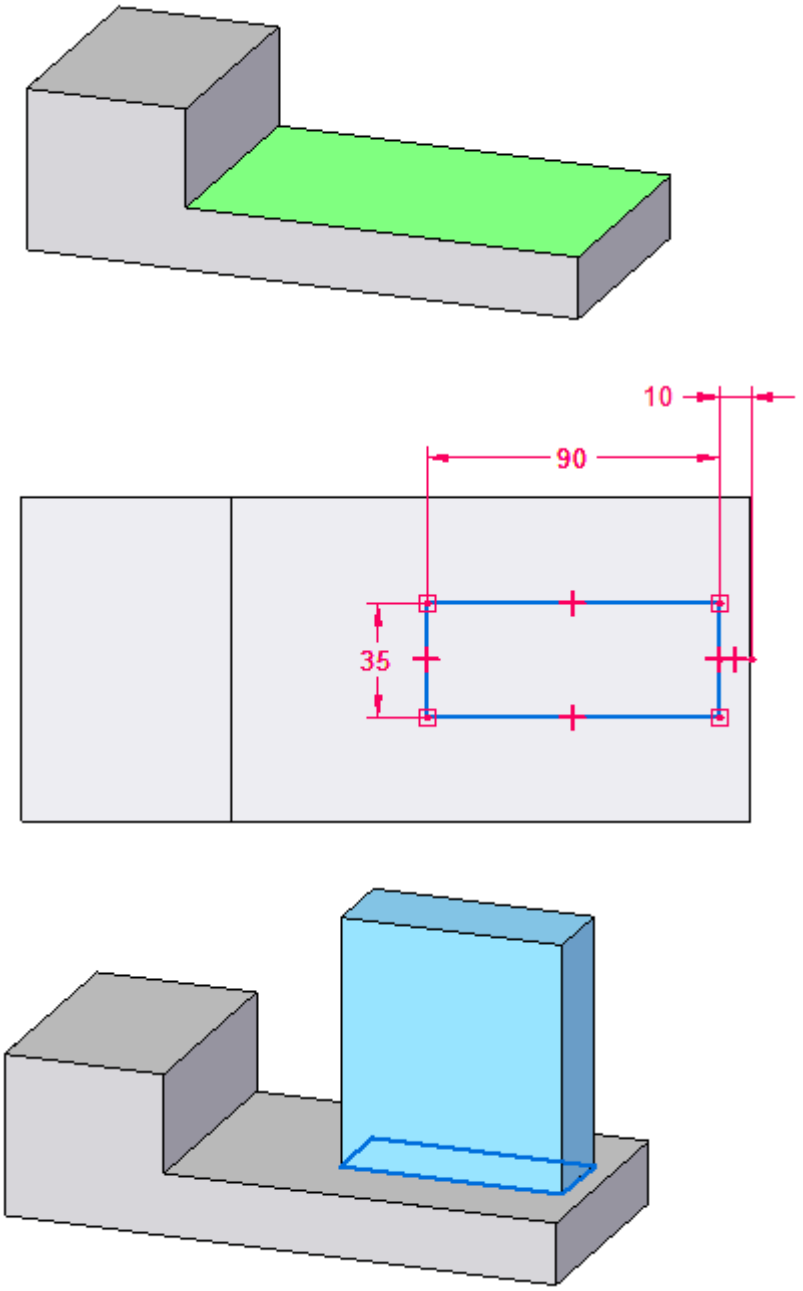




Create an ordered feature

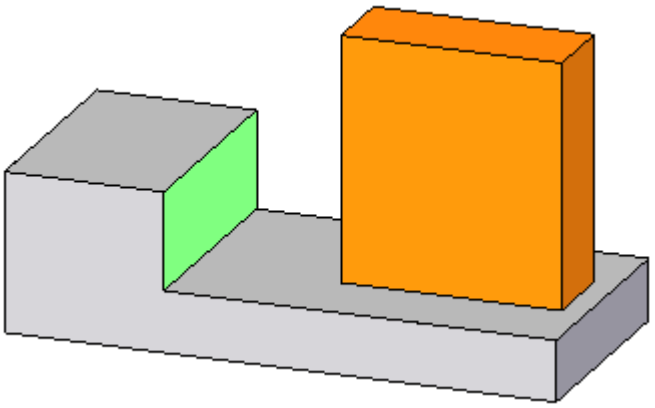
- Transition to the ordered environment.

- Create an extrusion with the cross-section shown. Extend upward at a distance of 100 mm. Draw the cross-section on the green face.

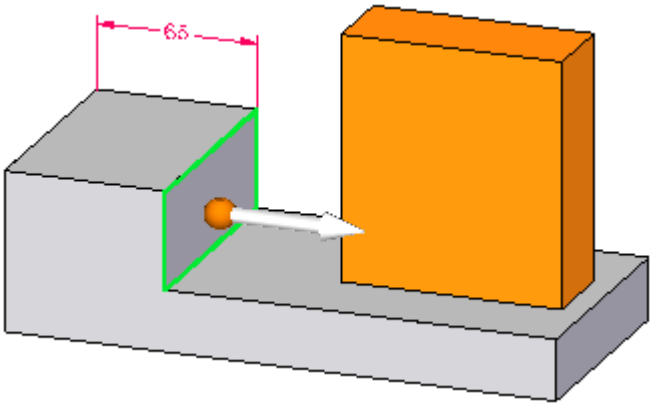


Edit a synchronous feature face while in the ordered environment

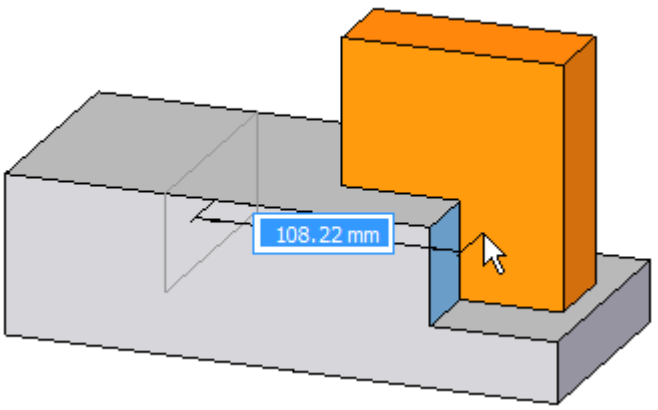
Move the green face on the synchronous feature. The ordered feature is colored orange for clarity only.



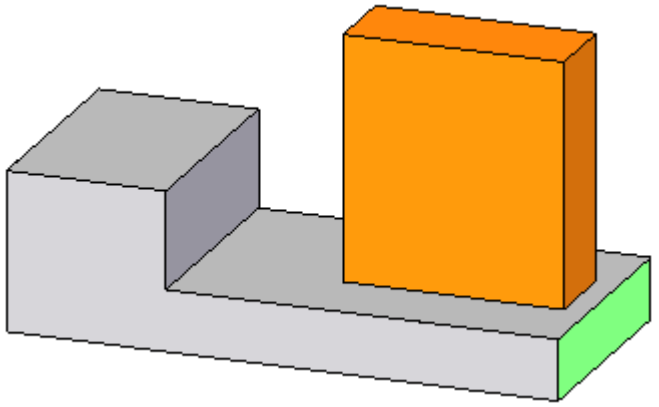
- Select the green face. Notice the face has a locked dimension on it. This dimension migrates from the sketch to the feature. Either delete the dimension or unlock the dimension.



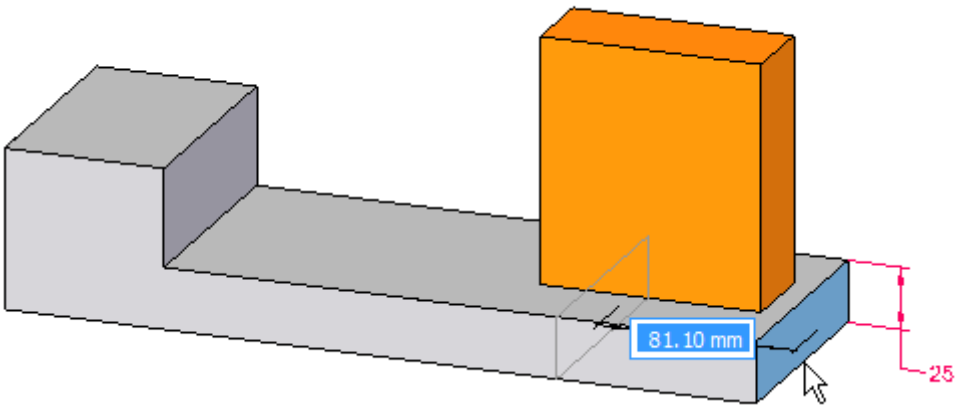
- Select the move handle and drag the face in an area around the ordered feature. Notice how the ordered feature is recognized during an edit. Press the Esc key to end the move operation.



- Select the green face. Notice the face has a locked dimension on it. This dimension migrates from the sketch to the feature. Either delete or unlock the (225 mm) dimension.



- Select the move handle and drag the face to the right. Notice how the ordered feature moves with face. This occurs because the ordered feature sketch was dimensionally locked to the synchronous feature edge. Press the Esc key to end the move operation.



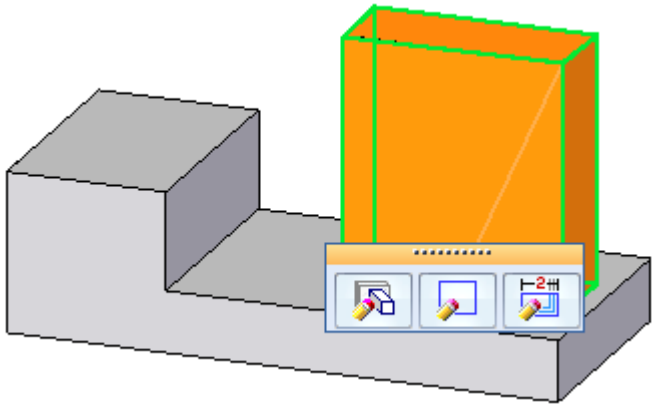
Transition to synchronous

- Switch to the synchronous environment. Notice the ordered feature does not display.

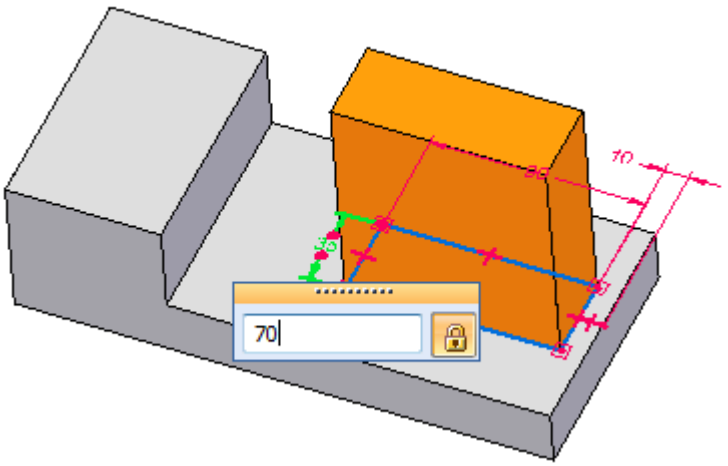
Edit the ordered feature

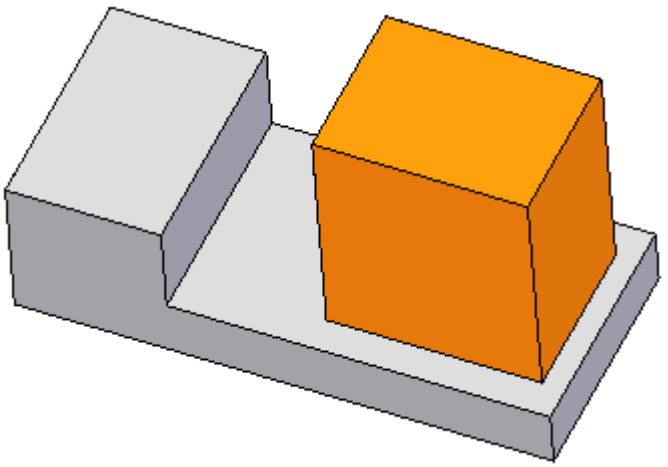
- Switch to the ordered environment.

- Select the ordered feature.



- Click the Dynamic Edit button. Change the 35 mm dimension to 70 mm.





Convert the ordered feature to a synchronous feature

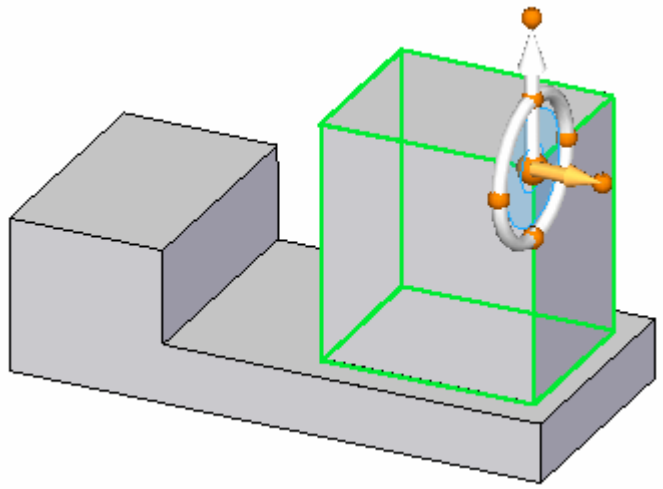
An ordered feature converts to a synchronous feature by moving the ordered feature to the synchronous portion of the PathFinder. Once converted, all dimensions are dropped. The converted feature can be manipulated as an entire synchronous feature or have individual face(s) manipulated.

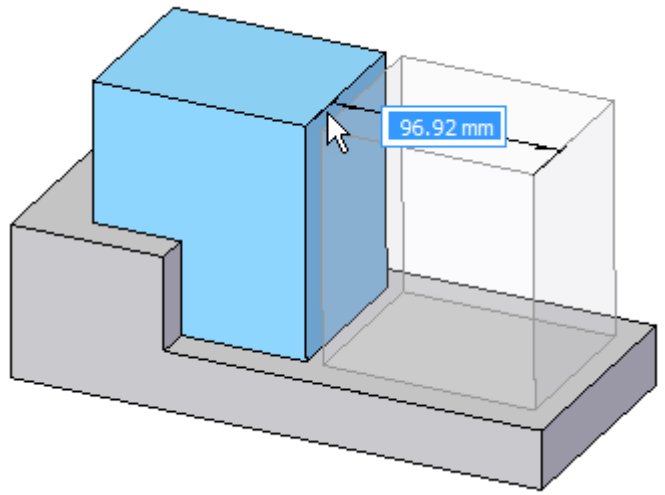
- You must be in the ordered environment to convert ordered features. In PathFinder, right-click on the ordered protrusion feature.
- On the shortcut menu, choose the Move to Synchronous command.

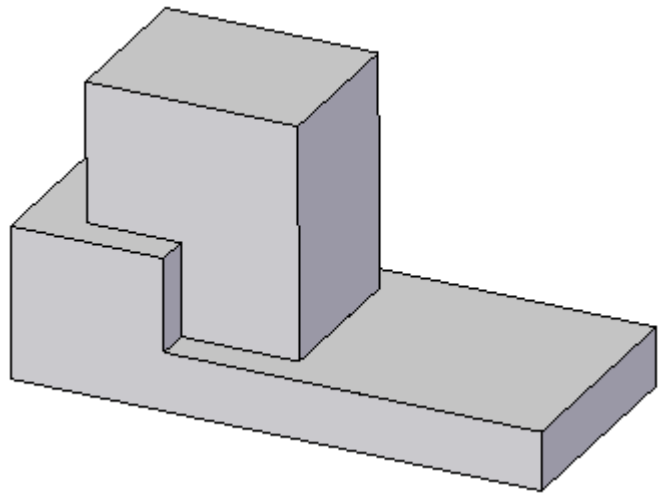
Move the converted feature

- In PathFinder, select the converted protrusion.

- Click the move handle and move feature to the approximate location shown and click.







This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create both ordered and synchronous features in a single model. You also learned how to edit both feature types and how to convert an ordered feature to a synchronous feature.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. What is an ordered feature?
2. What is a synchronous feature?
3. What are the differences in ordered and synchronous environments?
4. How do you convert ordered features to synchronous features?
5. How do you convert synchronous features to ordered features?

Answers

1. What is an ordered feature?

   An ordered feature is history based. Sketches drive the feature definition. You can go back and edit the any step in the creation of the feature.

2. What is a synchronous feature?

   A synchronous feature has no history. Once you create a feature, you cannot go back and edit any step in the feature creation process. Model faces drive the model. You manipulate faces to edit a synchronous model. Some features have handles where you change a value that defines the feature.

3. What are the differences in ordered and synchronous environments?

   - In the synchronous environment, only synchronous features and sketches display.
   - In the ordered environment, both synchronous and ordered features and sketches display.
   - Each environment presents its own command ribbon bar.

4. How do you convert ordered features to synchronous features?

   Select the ordered feature in PathFinder, right-click and choose the Move to Synchronous command.

5. How do you convert synchronous features to ordered features?

   You cannot convert synchronous features to ordered features.

Lesson summary

Solid Edge provides environments for modeling either synchronous or ordered features. You work in a single model file with only synchronous features, only ordered features, or a combination of both features types. You can convert ordered features to synchronous features.

Modeling ordered features activities

This section is a collection of activities that focuses on modeling ordered features.

Sketching activities

Learn the tools for creating sketches that describe a feature cross-section.

Using IntelliSketch

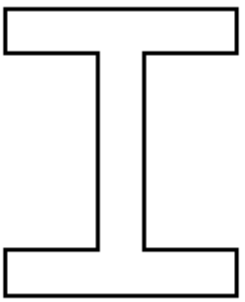
Create a sketch in this activity. Apply relationships, dimensions and variables to the geometry so that you can reliably and predictably change the shape of the profile by editing dimensions.

Activity: Using IntelliSketch

Objectives

Create an ordered sketch in this activity. You can also perform this activity in the synchronous environment with a slightly different interface. Apply relationships, dimensions and variables to the geometry so that you can reliably and predictably change the shape of the profile by editing dimensions.

- The sketch is in the shape of a cross-section of an I-beam.
- Relationships, dimensions and variables control the width of the web and flanges of the “I” shape.



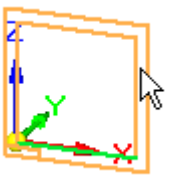
- ▸ Create a new part document.
- ▸ Make sure you are in the Ordered environment.

  Ordered

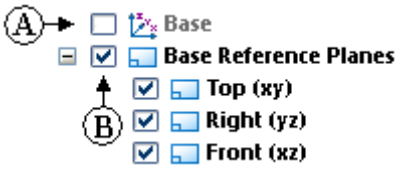
Draw the sketch

Draw an “I” shaped sketch.

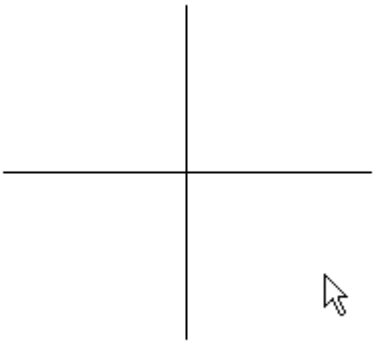
- ▸ On the Home tab® Sketch group, choose the Sketch command.
- ▸ Select the reference plane shown.



- In PathFinder, turn off the display of the base coordinate system (A) and turn on the display of the base reference planes (B).

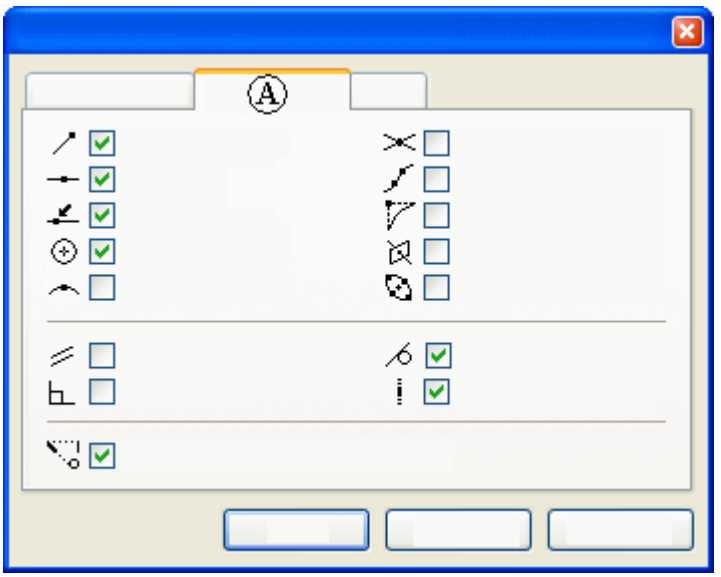


- Fit the window and zoom out until the base reference planes appear as shown.



- On the Home tab® IntelliSketch group, choose IntelliSketch options.

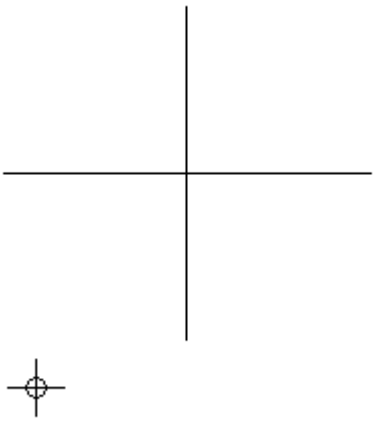
- On the Relationships page (A), set the options shown. Click OK.



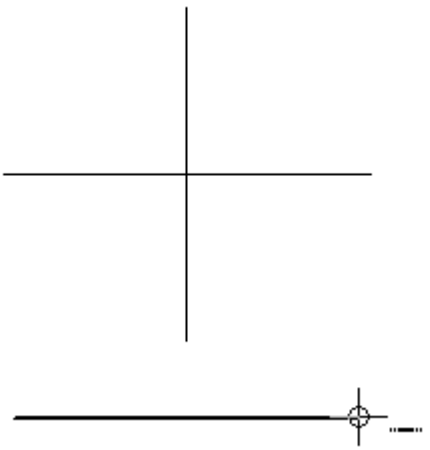
- In the IntelliSketch group, click the Horizontal or Vertical option to make it recognizable if a line is horizontal or vertical during placement.

- On the Home tab® Draw group, choose the Line command .

- Draw the first line by positioning the cursor below and left of the reference planes as shown and click to place the first point of the line.



- Place the second point by moving the cursor to the right. When the horizontal indicator is shown and the line is approximately in the same position as shown below, click to place the line.



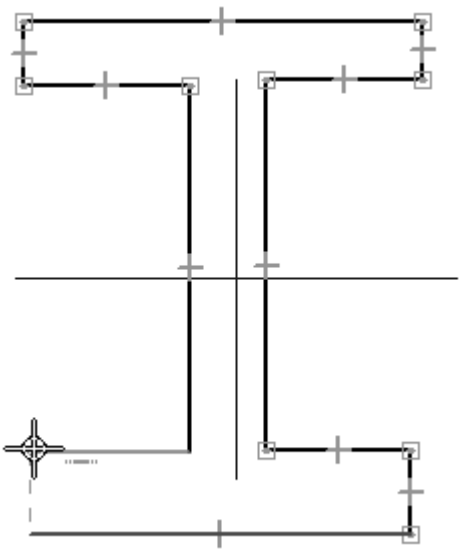
- Continue drawing the “I” shape with the following considerations. Draw each segment with the horizontal or vertical indicator displayed. Exact lengths of the lines are unimportant at this stage.

  Note

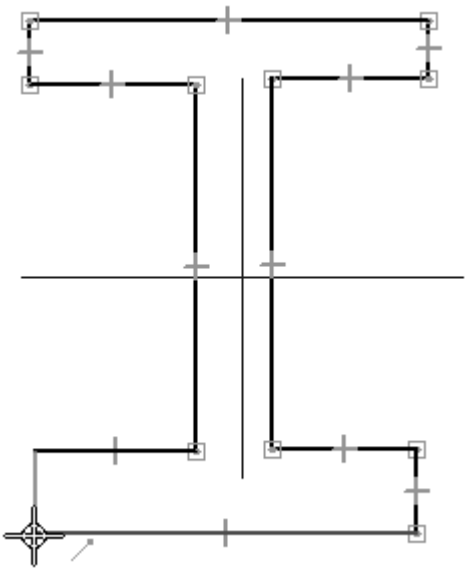
  If you make a mistake, you can delete a line by first clicking the Select tool , selecting the line, and pressing the Delete key on the keyboard.

  Also by choosing the Undo command , you can step back through the creation of the sketch.

- Draw the rough shape of the “I” in a counterclockwise order. Use the alignment indicator to position the endpoint of the next to the last line above the left endpoint of the first line as shown. To activate the alignment indicator for the last segment, brush (move the cursor over without clicking) the horizontal line.

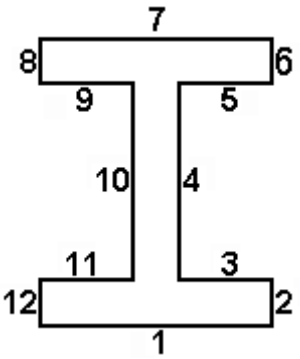


- To place the last segment, click on the endpoint of the first line when the endpoint indicator is displayed as shown.



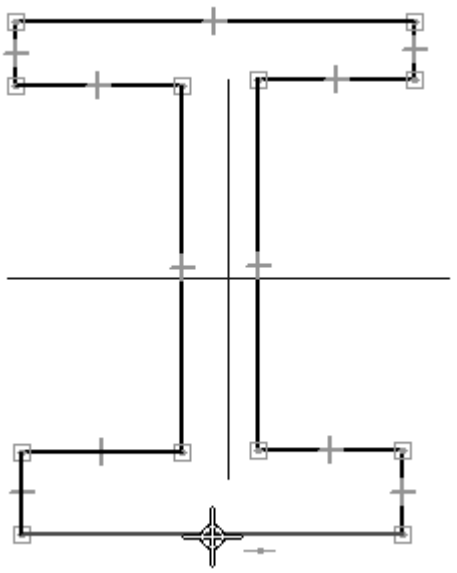
Add relationships

Add relationships to control the behavior of the shape. When you anticipate the need to make a shape symmetrical, it is useful to establish relationships between the geometry of the shape and reference planes. Reference the line segments by numbers as shown.

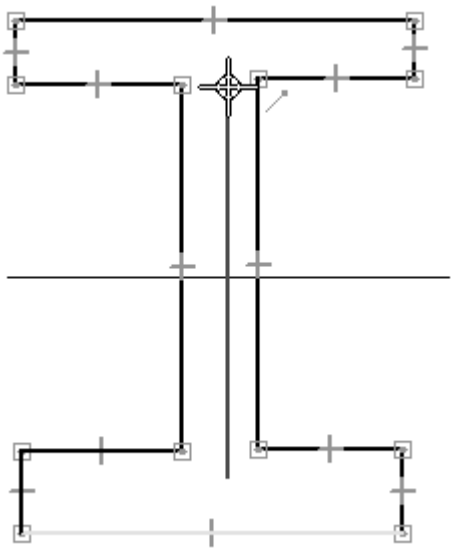


- In the Relate group, choose the Horizontal/Vertical command .

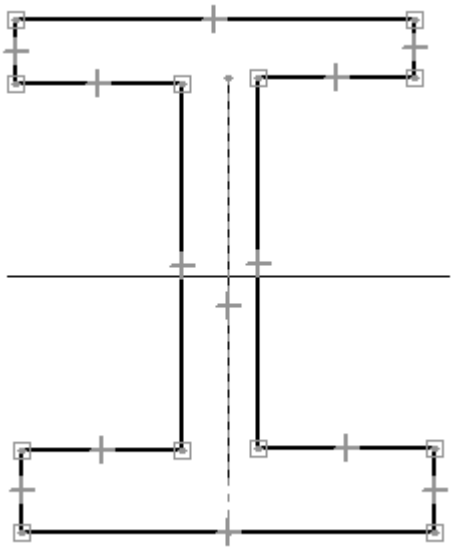
- Position the cursor over middle of segment 1. When the midpoint indicator displays, click.



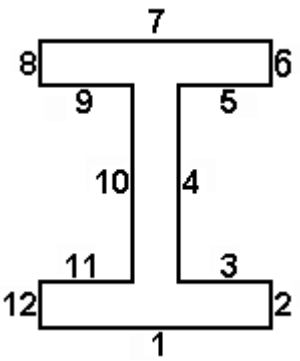
- Move the cursor to the top of the vertical reference plane, and when the endpoint indicator displays, click.



- A relationship applies represented by a dashed line that forces the midpoint of segment 1 to remain vertically aligned with the endpoint of the reference plane.



- In the Relate group, choose the Equal command .



- Select segment 1, then select segment 7. This applies an equal relationship to the lines, which keeps their lengths the same while other constraints alter the shape of the profile. Line segment 1 is equal to line segment 7.

- Continue applying the equal relationship between the following lines:

  2 and 12

  8 and 6

  8 and 12

  11 and 3

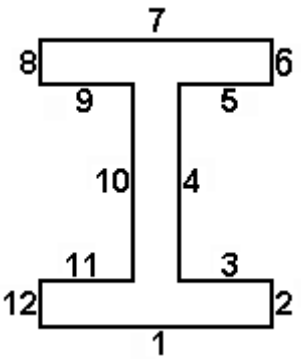
  9 and 5

  9 and 11

  10 and 4

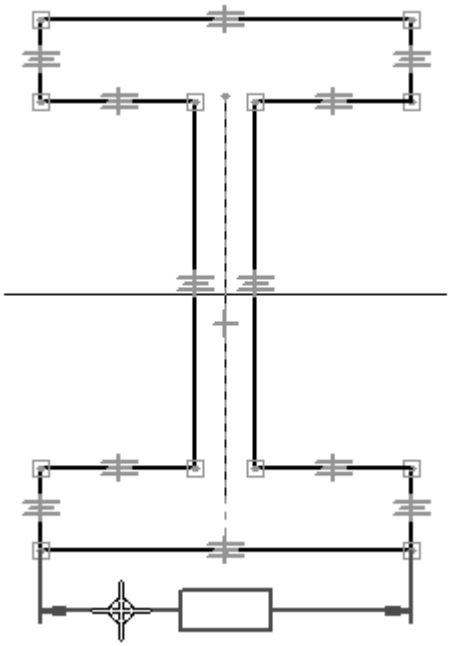
Add dimensions

Add dimensions to control the size of the shape.



- In the Dimension group, choose the SmartDimension command .

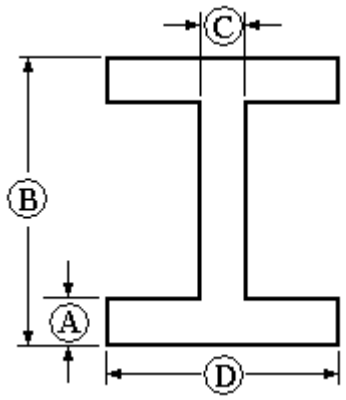
- Select segment 1, position the dimension below the line, and then click to place it.



- Dimension segment 12 in the same way.
- Choose the Distance Between command .
- Select segment 10, select 4, position the dimension above the ”I” shape, and then click to place it. Right-click to restart the Distance Between command.
- Dimension the distance between segments 1 and 7 in the same way.

Edit dimension values

Edit the dimensions placed in the previous step. Because of the dimensions and relationships defined, the shape responds to dimensional changes predictably.



- Choose the Select Tool command.

- Select dimension (A). Type 15 and then press the Enter key.
- Select dimension (B) and change the value to 120.
- Select dimension (C) and change the value to 12.
- Select dimension (D) and change the value to 95.
- Practice altering the shape by editing the values of the dimensions (A, B, C, D) and observe how the shape responds. Return the dimension values to those shown above.

Using dimension variables

Dimensions and relationships make it easier to control the shape of a profile. Variables are used to make the shape of a profile parametric. Formulas are applied that define mathematical relationships between variables and dimensions. In this step, make the width of the web (dimension (C)) 2/3 the thickness of the flange (dimension (A)), and make the flange height (dimension (B)) 3/4 the flange width (dimension (D)).

Each time a dimension is placed, a randomly named variable is created to represent it. Rename the variables and assign mathematical expressions to further control the behavior of the shape.

- Right-click on the 95 mm dimension. Choose the Edit Formula command on the shortcut menu. The Edit Formula command bar displays to edit the dimension name and formula. In the Name: field, change the variable name to D and then press the Enter key. Click the Select tool to end the dimension edit.
- Repeat the previous step to make the following dimension edits:

15 mm dimension	Name=A
120 mm dimension	Name=B
12 mm dimension	Name=C

Note

To enter a formula, click the formula field, type the formula, and press the Enter key. Basic mathematical operators in formulas can be used:

+ to add

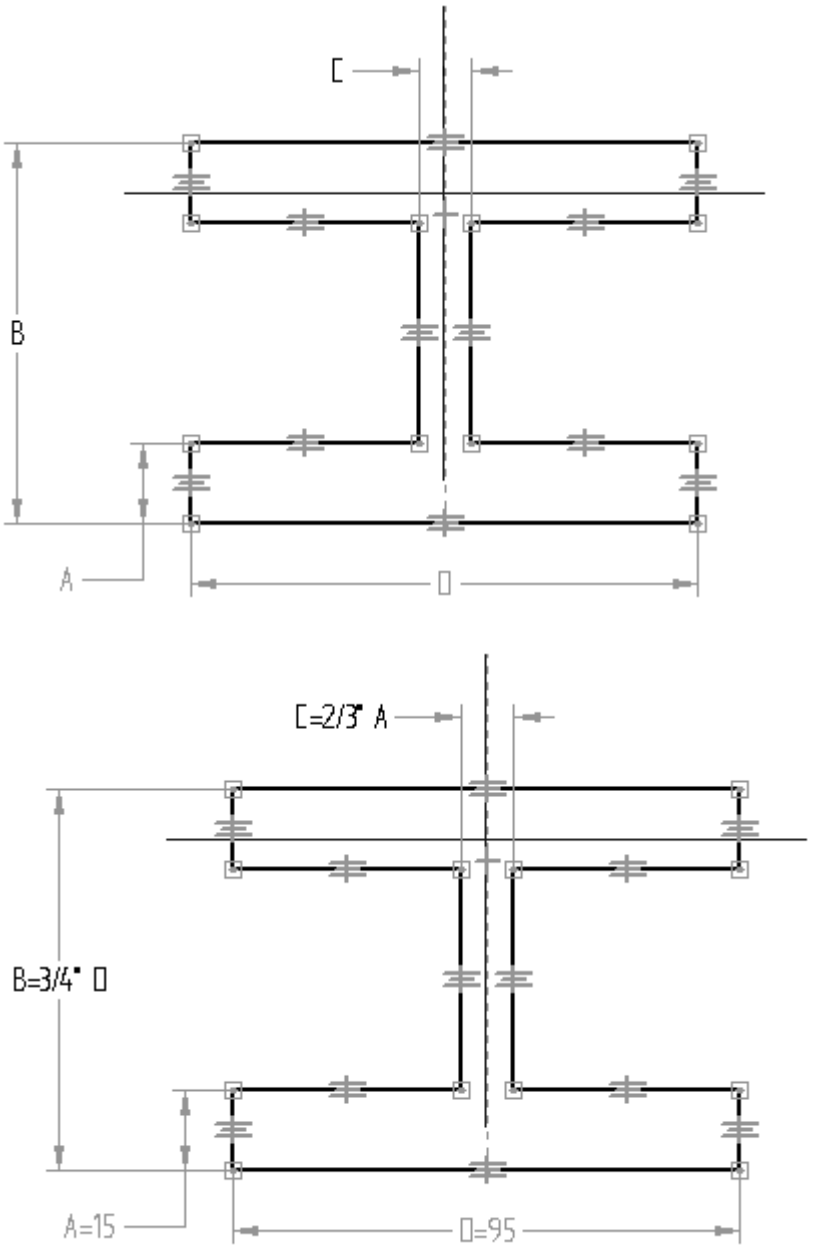
- to subtract

* to multiply

/ to divide

Mathematical functions can be grouped with parenthesis if necessary. Many functions are available. For more information, see the Variables Help topic.

- Assign a mathematical expression to dimensions named B and D. Right-click the 120 mm dimension and choose Edit Formula. In the Formula field, enter 3/4*D and press the Enter key.
- Edit the formula for the 12 mm dimension. In the Formula field, enter 2/3*A and press the Enter key.
- Notice the dimension display below. On the shortcut menu, the Show All Values option is on. All variable names or formulas can be shown.



Using the Variable Table

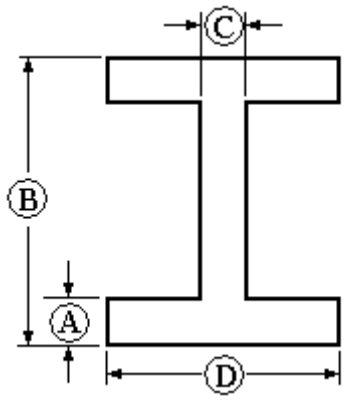
The same operations performed in the previous could also be done using the Variable Table.

- On the Tools menu® Variables group, choose the Variables command to display the Variable Table.
- Notice the same fields as in the Edit Formula command bar are available. Click the field to edit, type in the appropriate value and then press the Enter key.

  Note

  The shadowed values represent values that cannot be directly changed because they are controlled by relationships, dimensions or formulas.

- Close the variable table by clicking the X in the upper right corner.
- On the sketch, modify the dimension values of (A) and (D) and observe how the sketch responds.



Save the sketch

- Choose Close Sketch to complete the Sketch.

  You can also complete the sketch by clicking the checkmark located in the upper left corner of the sketch window.

- On the command bar, click Finish.
- Close and save this file as *Ishape.par*. This completes this activity.

Summary

In this activity, you learned how to use dimensions and relationships to control the size and position of 2D geometry in a profile. You also learned how to use mathematical formulas within the variable table to establish relative behavior between geometry. This is useful in establishing design intent within a model. If a critical dimension changes, the profile adjusts itself predictably and accordingly.

Applying sketch relationships (collinear, parallel, equal)

In this activity, learn to use more relationships in the profile/sketch environment.

This activity covers the collinear, parallel, and equal relationships.

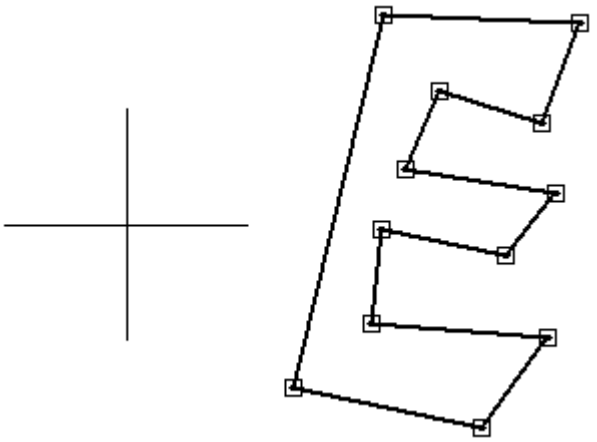
Activity: Applying sketch relationships (collinear, parallel, equal)

Objectives

In this activity, learn to use more relationships in the profile/sketch environment.

This activity covers the collinear, parallel and equal sketch relationships.

- Open *sketch_a1.par*.



Apply relationships

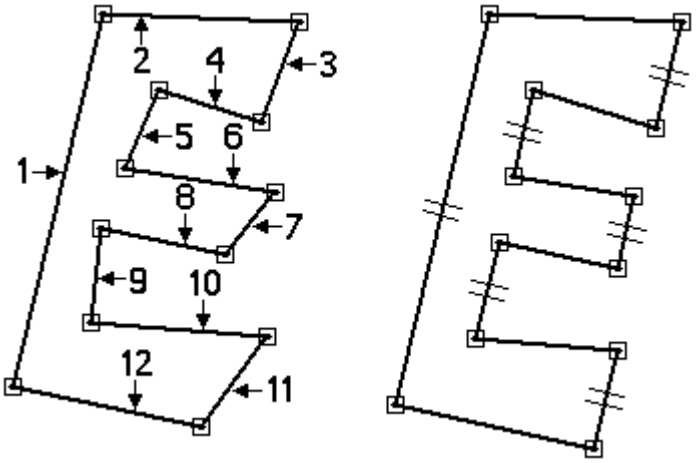
Apply relationships to control the E shape.

> **Note**
>
> No horizontal/vertical relationships are used. This allows the sketch to rotate at any angle and maintain the E shape.

- In Pathfinder, right-click on the sketch named *Sketch A*. On the short cut menu, choose the Edit Profile command.

- Define the shape by applying parallel relationships. The first element you select is made parallel to the second element selected. In the Relate group, choose the Parallel command .

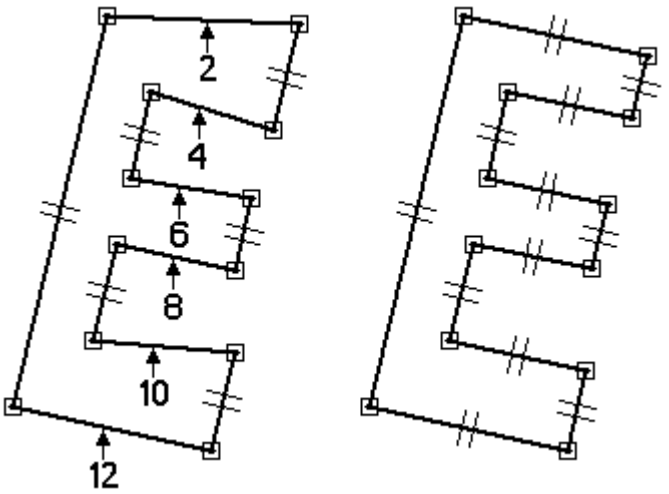
- Select the line segments as described below.
  - Click (3), then click (1).
  - Click (5), then click (1).
  - Click (7), then click (1).
  - Click (9), then click (1).
  - Click (11), then click (1).



Continue adding parallel relationships

Continue to add parallel relationships to the remaining line segments.

- Apply the parallel relationships shown:
  - Click (10), then click (12).
  - Click (8), then click (12).
  - Click (6), then click (12).
  - Click (4), then click (12).
  - Click (2), then click (12).

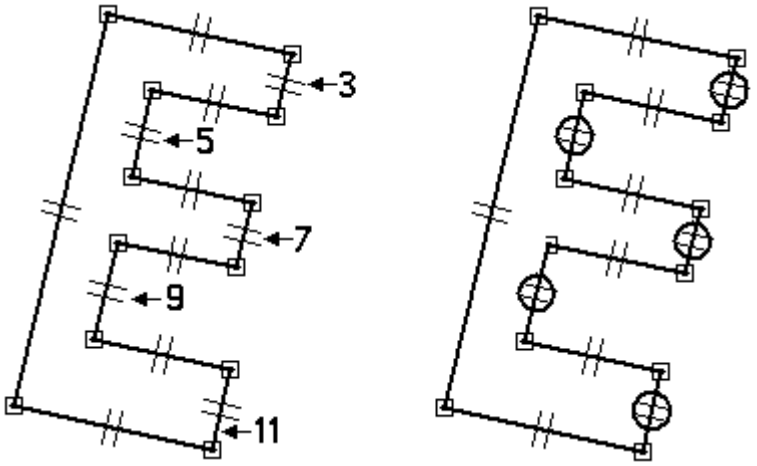


Apply collinear relationships

Apply collinear relationships to align line segments. The first line segment you select is made collinear to the second line segment selected.

- Choose the Collinear command .

- Select the line segments as shown.
  - Click (7), then click (11).
  - Click (3), then click (11).
  - Click (5), then click (9).

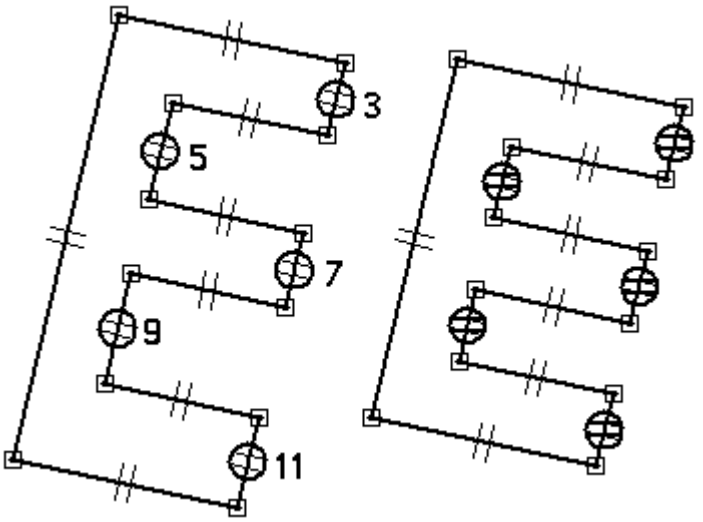


Apply equal relationships

Apply equal relationships to control the thickness of the E shape.

- Choose the Equal command .

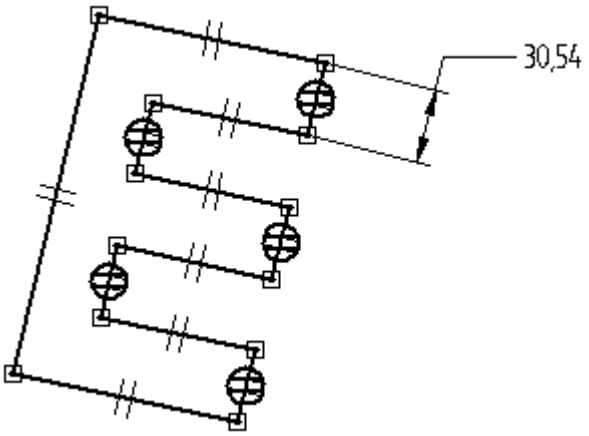
- The first line segment you select is made equal to the second line segment selected.
  - Click line segment (5), then click line segment (3).
  - Click line segment (7), then click line segment (3).
  - Click line segment (9), then click line segment (3).
  - Click line segment (11), then click line segment (3).



Add dimensional constraints

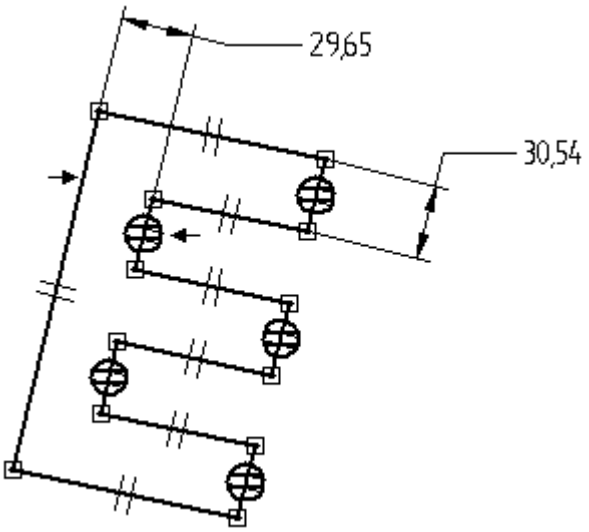
Add dimensional constraints to complete the E shape.

- Choose the SmartDimension command .
- Dimension the line as shown. The value is not important at this point.

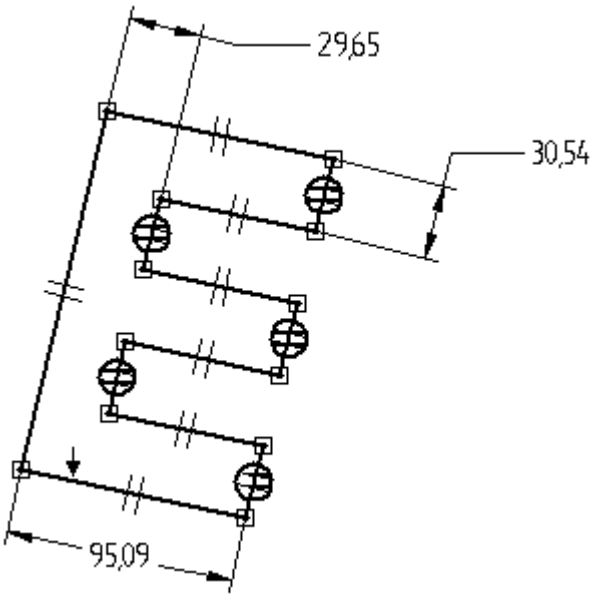


- Choose the Distance Between command .

- On the command bar, click the By 2 Points option.
- Dimension the two line segments as shown. Click on the lines (do not click the endpoints or midpoints).



- Choose the SmartDimension command and dimension the line segment shown.

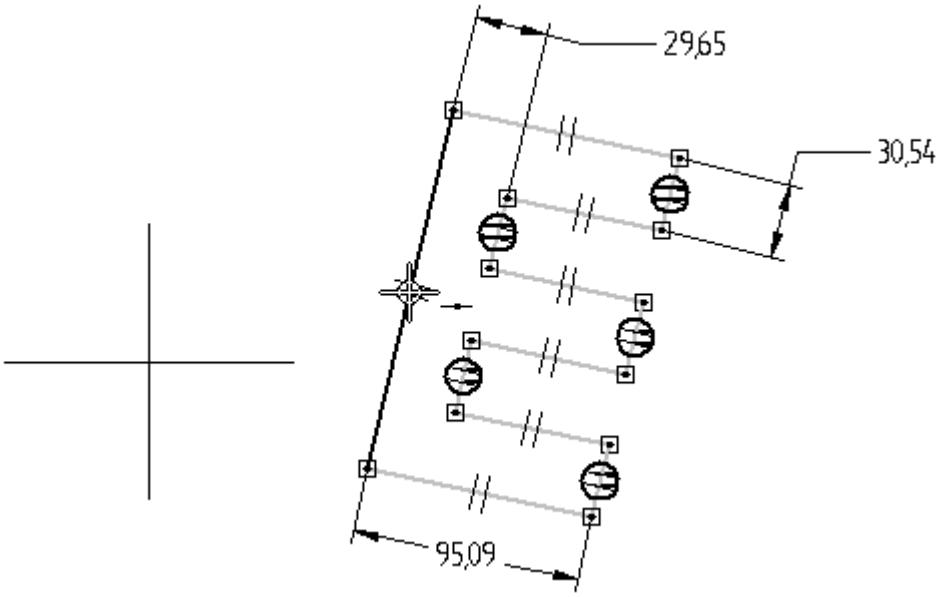


Align the sketch

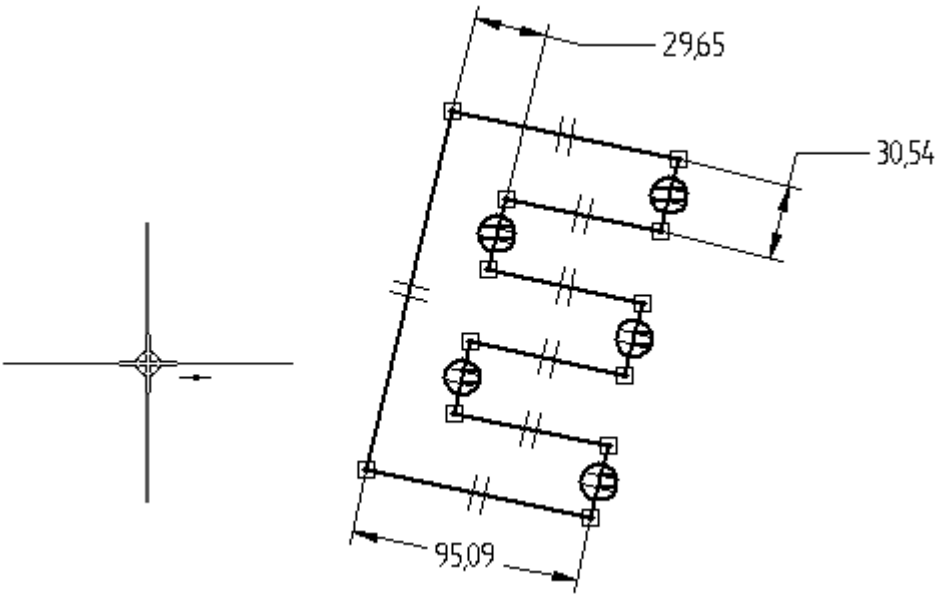
Align the midpoint of the left line segment to the center of the reference planes.

- Choose the Horizontal/Vertical command .

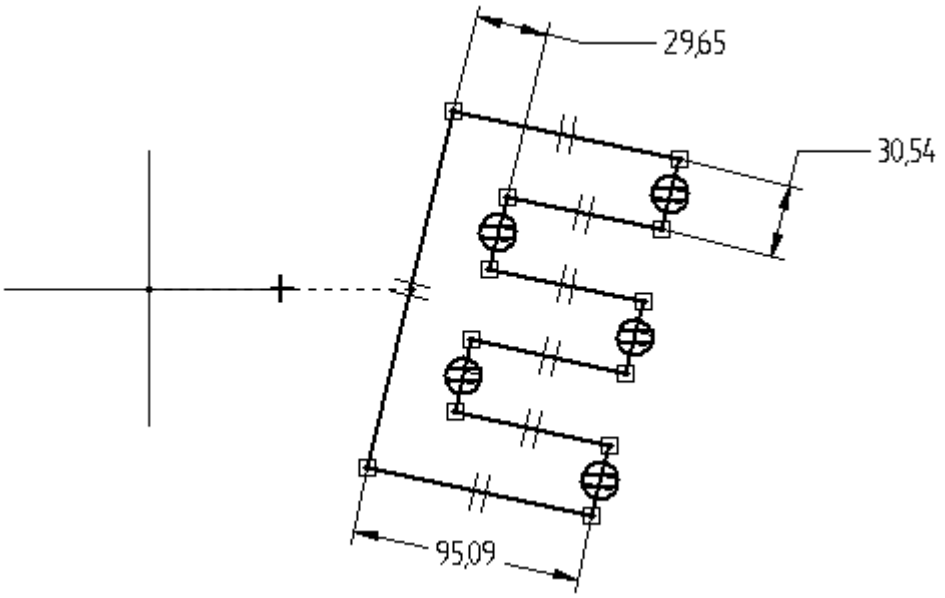
- Click on the midpoint of the left line segment as shown.



- Click on the midpoint of the reference plane edge as shown.

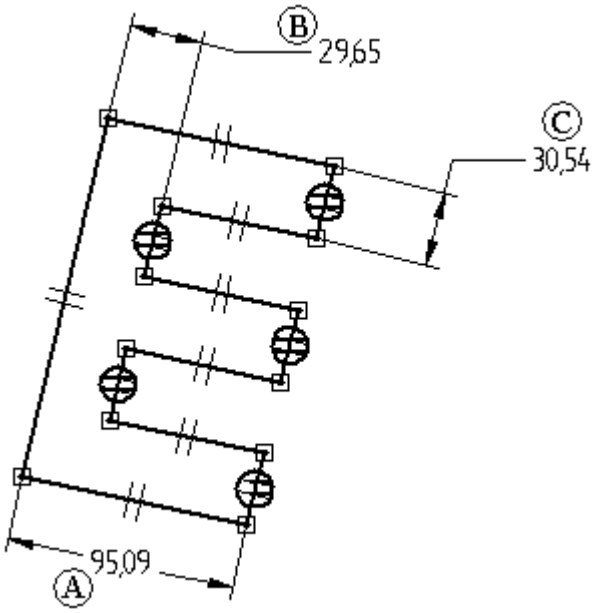


- The midpoint of the left line segment aligns with center of the reference planes.



Edit the dimensions

Edit the dimensions to complete the E shape.



- Edit the dimensions as shown.
  - Dimension (A) = 200
  - Dimension (B) = 50
  - Dimension (C) = Dimension (B)

Note

How to make two dimensions equal

Step 1: Right-click on dimension (C).

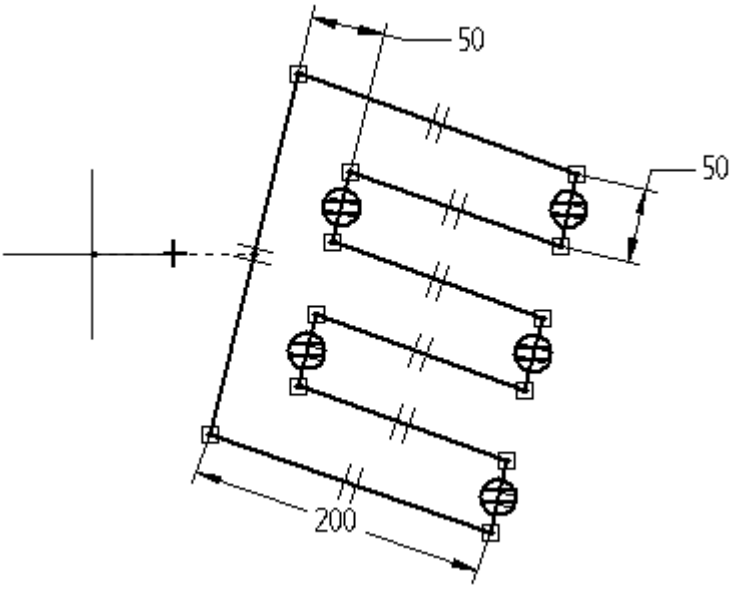
Step 2: On the shortcut menu, choose the Edit Formula command.

Step 3: On the Edit Formula command bar, in the Formula field, type = and then click on dimension (B).

Step 4: Click the Accept button.

Step 5: Click the Select tool to end Edit Formula.

- The result should be as shown.

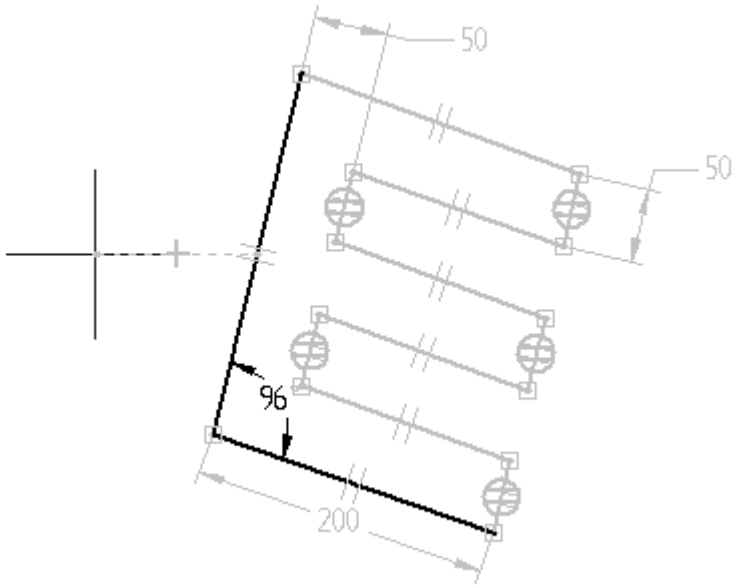


Add angular dimensions

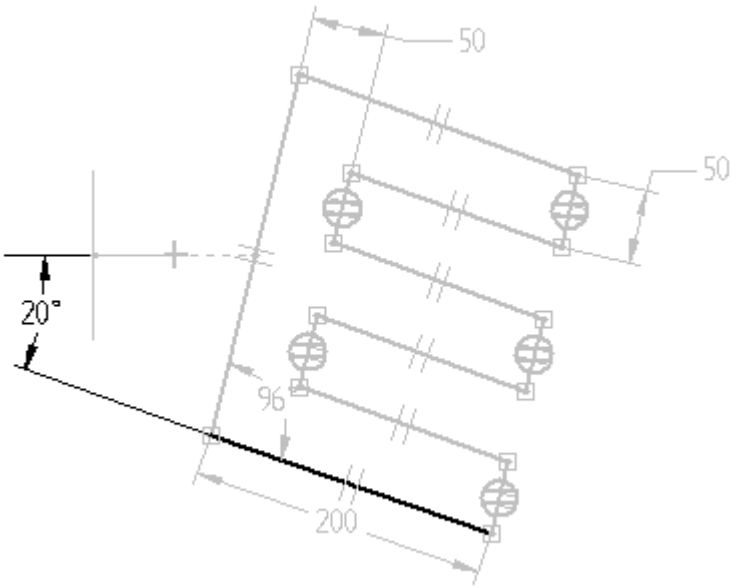
Add angular dimensions which controls the shape and orientation relative to the horizontal reference plane.

- Choose the Angle Between command .

- Place the dimension shown by clicking on the two lines (do not select any keypoints).



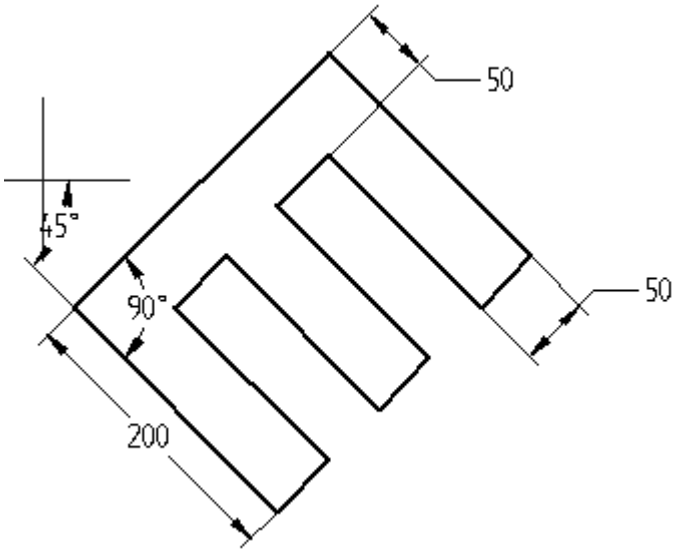
- Place an angular dimension between the horizontal reference plane and the bottom line segment to control the E shape orientation. First right-click to restart the Angle Between command. Click the horizontal reference plane and the bottom line segment as shown (again do not click any keypoints).



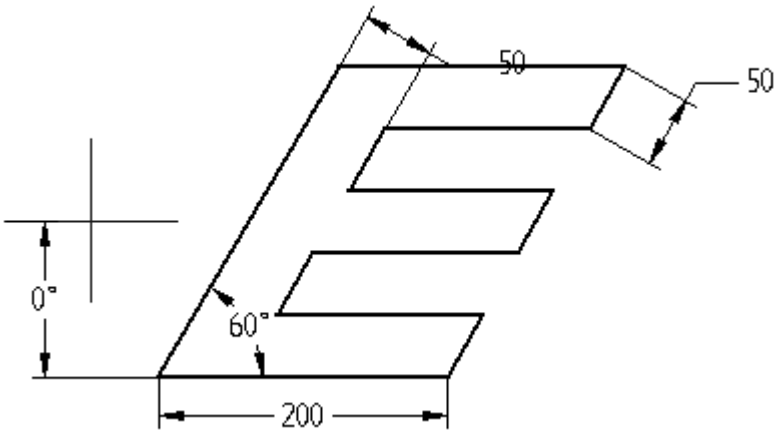
Edit the angular dimensions

Edit the angular dimensions to observe the control over the shape and orientation.

- Orientation angle = 45, shape angle = 90



- Orientation angle = 0, shape angle = 60



- Click Close Sketch. On the command bar, click Finish.
- This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity, you learned how to use dimensions and relationships to position a profile containing interior features. Relationships were used to position various features relative to each other. By varying the dimensions, you are able to control the size and position of the interior features and maintain design intent.

Applying sketch relationships (symmetric)

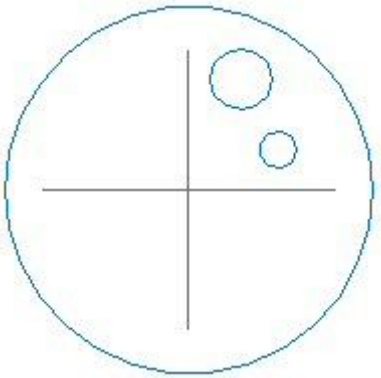
In this activity, learn to use symmetric relationships in the profile/sketch environment.

Activity: Applying sketch relationships (symmetric)

Objectives

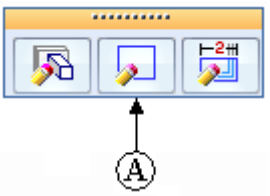
In this activity, use the symmetric relationships in the profile/sketch environment.

- Open *sketch_b1.par*.

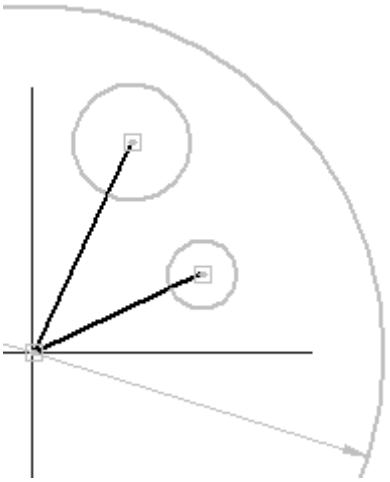


Add construction elements

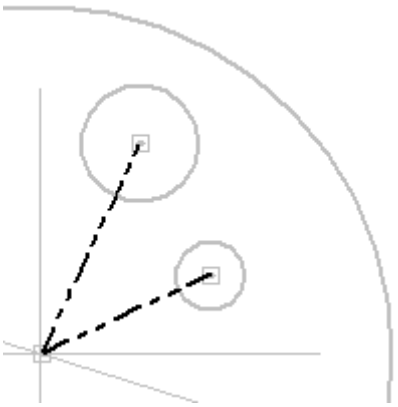
- Select the sketch in the window and then click the Edit Profile command (A).



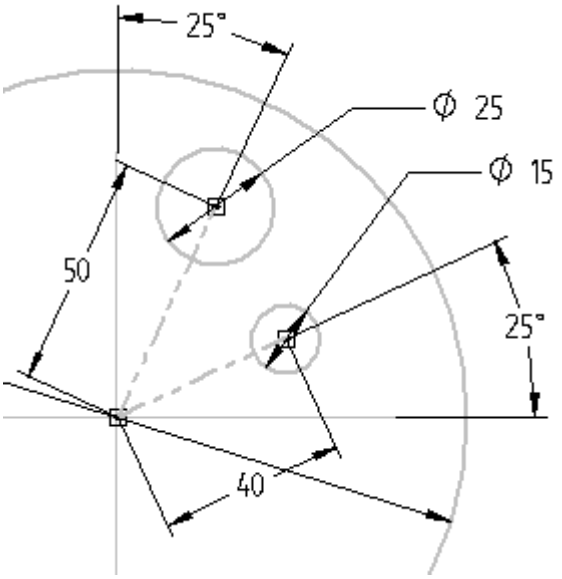
- Place the lines as shown. Lines connect to the centers of the circles and center of the reference planes.



- Change the two lines to construction elements. In the Draw group, choose the Construction command . Select the two lines just placed.



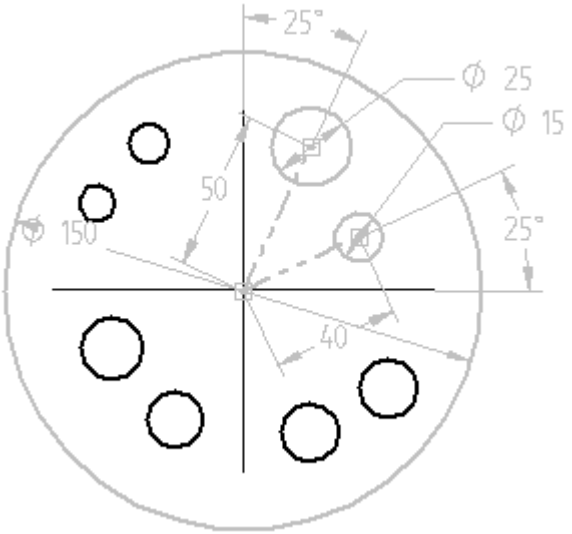
- Dimension the circles and lines as shown.



Place circle sketch elements

Place six circles in the remaining three quadrants of the main circle.

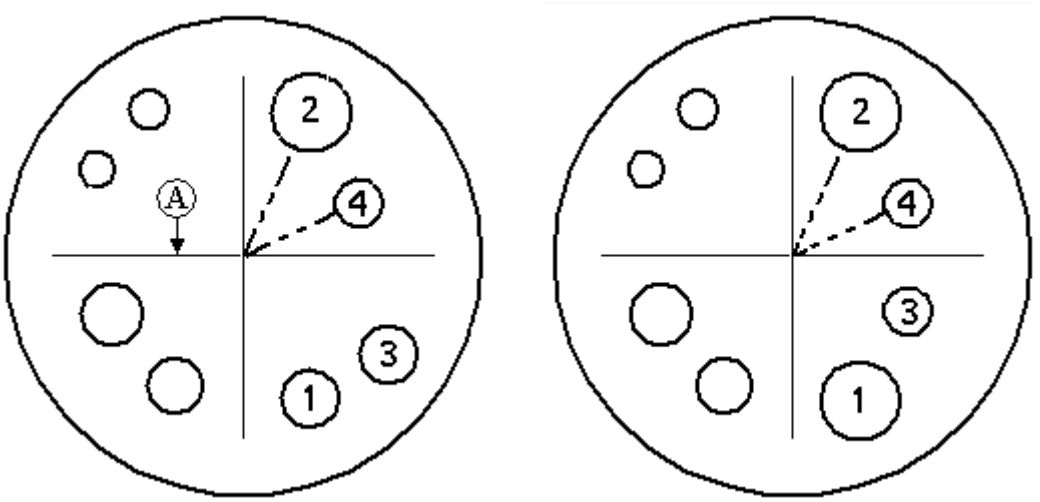
- Place the circles as shown. Position and size do not matter. Be sure not to pick up any relationships from other geometry while placing the circles. If you have problems doing this, place a circle outside the main circle and then drag it inside the main circle.



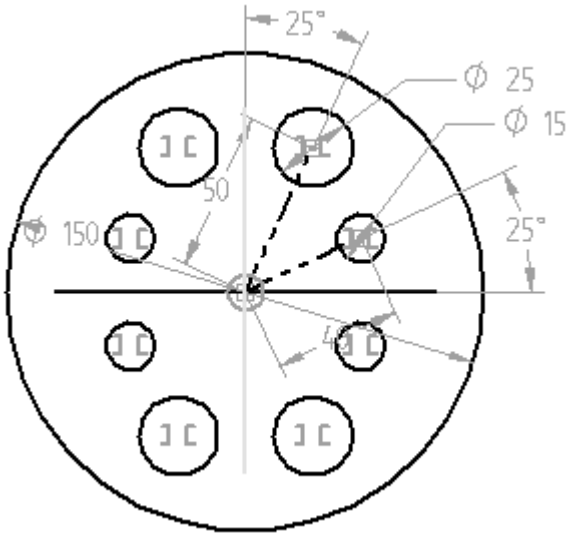
Apply symmetric relationships between the circles

- In the Relate group, choose the Symmetric Relationship command .

- Click the horizontal reference plane (A). Click circle (1) and then click circle (2). Circle (1) is now symmetrical to circle (2). Click circle (3) and then click circle (4). Circle (3) is now symmetrical to circle (4).



- Apply symmetric relationships to the remaining circles using the vertical reference plane as the symmetry axis. In order to do this you must select a new symmetry axis. Choose the Set Symmetry Axis command .
- Click the vertical reference plane.
- Click the Symmetric Relationship command and then click the remaining circles to apply symmetry as shown.

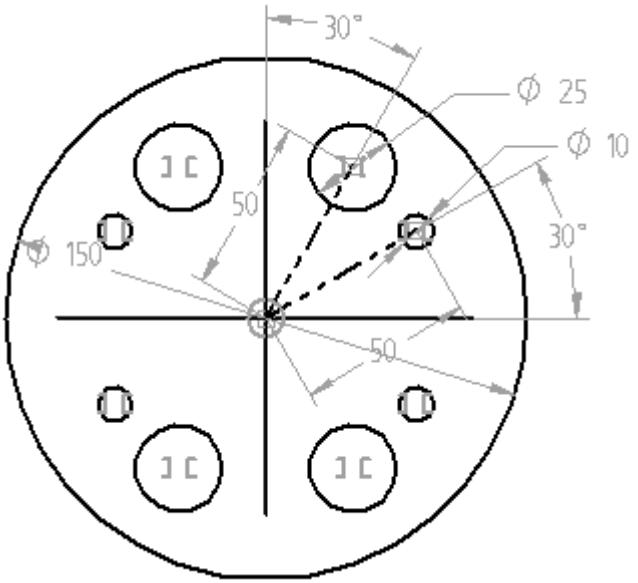


Edit dimensions

Edit the dimensions and observe the results.

- Edit the 40 dimension on the angled construction line to 50.

- Edit both 25° dimensions to 30°.
- Edit the 15 diameter to 10.



- Choose the Close Sketch command. On the command bar, click Finish.
- Close the file and do not save. This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity, you learned how to use dimensions and relationships to position a profile containing interior features. Relationships were used to position various features relative to each other. By varying the dimensions, you are able to control the size and position of the interior features and maintain design intent.

Using construction elements in a profile

In this activity learn to use construction elements when drawing a profile or sketch in order to capture design intent.

Activity: Using construction elements in profiles

Overview

In this activity, learn to use construction elements when drawing a profile or sketch in order to capture design intent.

Objectives

After completing this activity, you are able to:

- Use construction elements to simplify profile or sketch construction.
- Use the construction elements to drive the resulting geometry (a cutout feature).

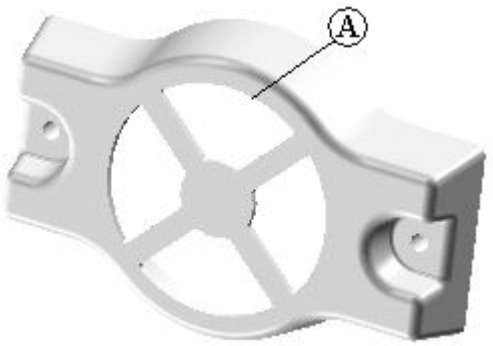
In this activity, examine a specific feature within a part. You do not construct the part in this activity, but you draw the profile for the feature. To simplify profile creation, use a construction element in the Sketch drawing environment. As previously mentioned, construction elements aid in profile creation but are ignored during profile validation checks.

Note

Construction elements serve as skeletal elements that helps drive the other elements in the profile.

Examining the Problem

Examine the patterned cutout feature (A).



Each of the four cutouts must sweep 90°. A narrow web of material must occupy space between each cutout to avoid breakout. To create this model, use construction elements to locate the cutout, provide the mechanism for the sweep angle, and provide the distance between each cutout.

Create part document

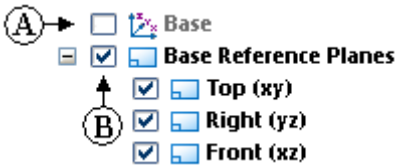
- Create a new ISO part document.

- Make sure you are in the ordered environment.

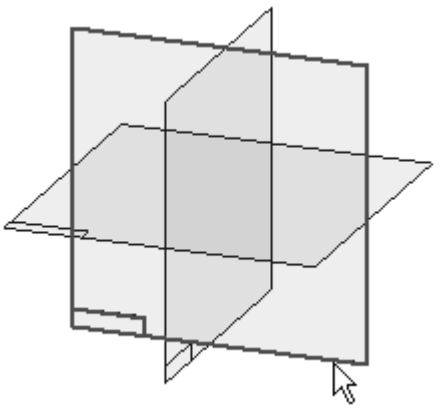
Define the sketch plane

- Choose the Sketch command .

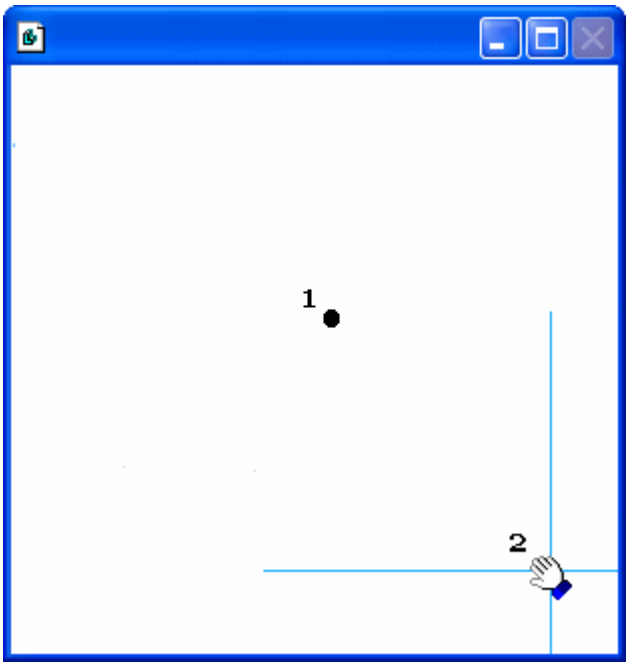
- In PathFinder, turn off the display of the base coordinate system (A) and turn on the display of the base reference planes (B).



- Select the reference plane shown.



- On the status bar, click the Pan command . Hold the left mouse button at the center or intersection of the reference planes. Move the cursor from position 1 to the lower right corner of the Sketch window (position 2). This moves the reference planes out of the way and prevents unwanted relationship placement between a profile element and a reference plane.

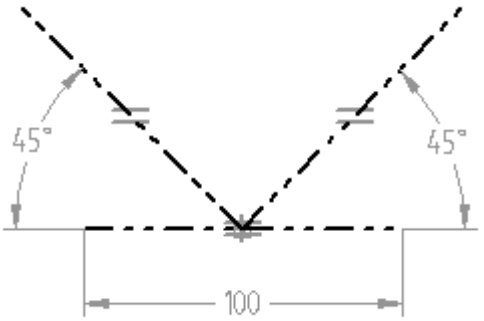


Construct a sketch

- Choose the Line command. Draw the three lines as shown in the illustration.
- Add the dimensions and edit their values as shown.
- Make each of the lines construction geometry.

  In the Draw group, choose the Construction command and select each of the three lines.
- The angled lines attach to the horizontal line at its midpoint.

- Using the Equal relationship, make each of the angled lines equal to the horizontal line.

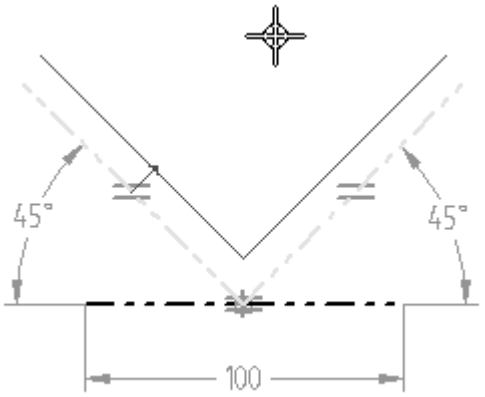


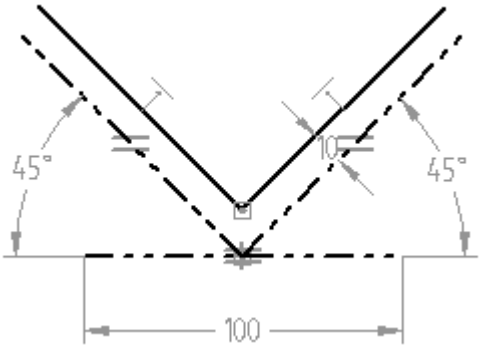
Add lines

Add lines using the Offset command .

- In the Draw group, choose the Offset command.
- Type a value of 10 for the offset distance.
- Set the Chain option in the Offset Select box.

- Offset the two angled lines as seen in the illustration below.
- Click the Accept button to confirm selection. Move the cursor to the interior of the "V" shape as shown and click.

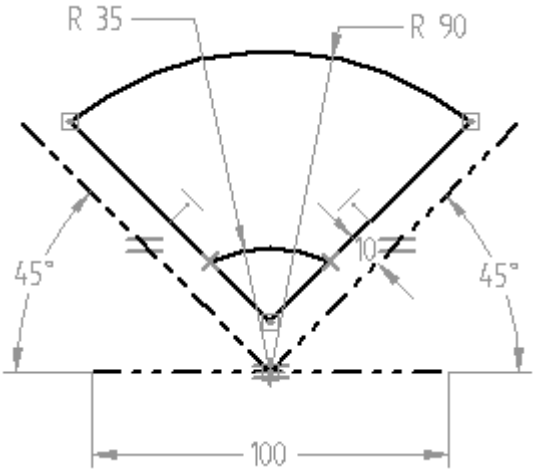




Place two arcs

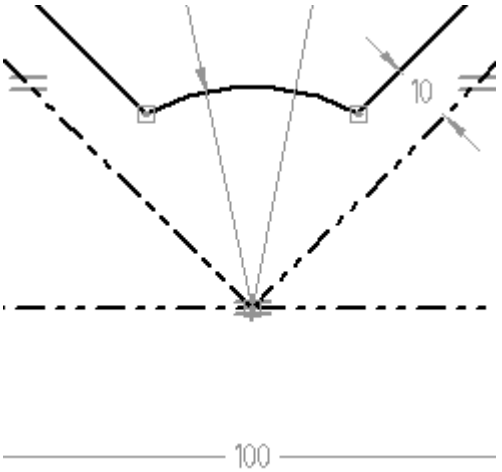
- Choose the Arc by Center command . Place two arcs as shown in the following illustration.
  - Both arc center point origins are the midpoint of the horizontal construction line.
  - Small arc Point-2 is on the left angled line, Point-3 on the right-angled line.
  - Large arc Point-2 connects to the end point of the left angled line, and Point-3 connects to the end point of the right-angled line.

- Use SmartDimension to dimension the two arcs and edit the values of the dimensions to those shown in the illustration.



Trim the sketch elements

- Choose the Trim command .
- Trim away the offset lines below the small arc. The result of the trim is shown.

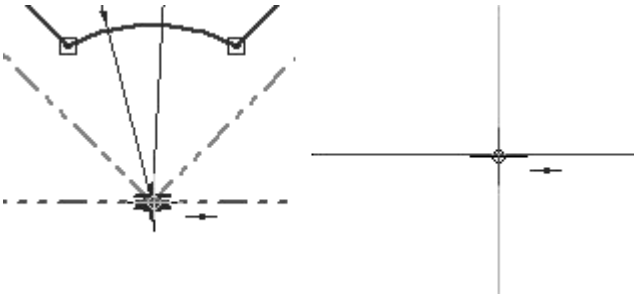


Relationship assistant

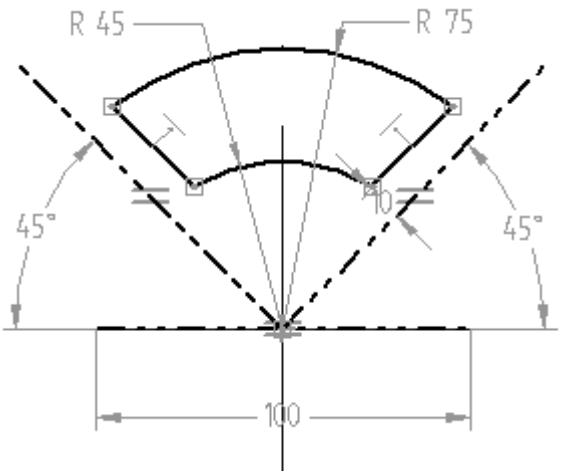
- On the Home tab® Relate group, choose Relationship Assistant. Use the Show Variability command to verify that the profile has only two degrees of freedom.

- Resolve the two remaining degrees of freedom.

  In the Relate group, choose the Connect command and place a Connect relationship between the midpoint of the horizontal construction line, as seen in the illustration to the left, and the midpoint of a reference plane, as seen in the illustration to the right. This anchors the profile and eliminates any remaining degrees of freedom.



- Edit the dimension values as shown in the illustration and then change them back to the original values. This sketch is ready to be used in a feature function such as cutout.



- This completes the activity. Close the file and save as *cutout.par*.

Summary

In this activity, you learned how to use construction elements, dimensions and relationships to position a profile. Design intent is maintained by positioning the construction elements. Construction elements do not become a part of the feature but are handy in controlling the position of the geometry.

Creating ordered base feature activities

Constructing ordered features from sketches

This activity demonstrates how to construct ordered features using sketches. The sketches to construct the individual features of the solid model are provided.

Activity: Constructing a model from sketches

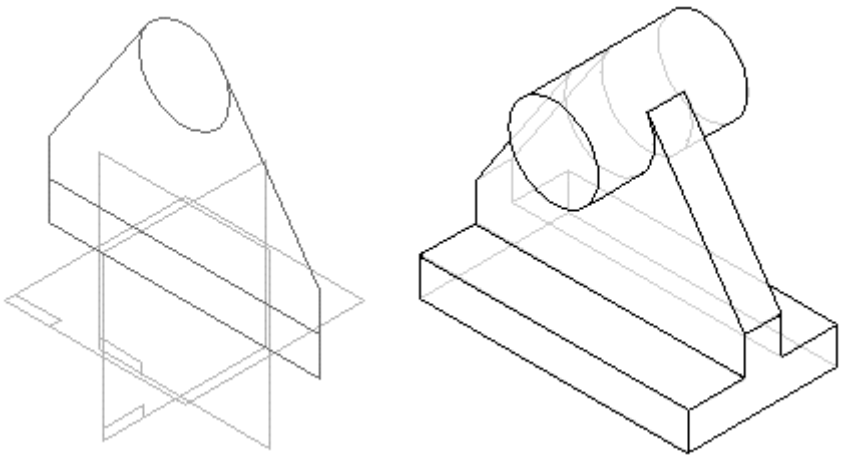
Overview

This activity demonstrates how to construct an ordered solid model using sketches. The sketches you will use to construct the individual features of the solid model are provided.

Objectives

In this activity you will:

- Use the Extrude command.
- Create multiple protrusions from a single sketch.
- Use the Include command.
- Use the Trim command.
- Apply profile relationships.



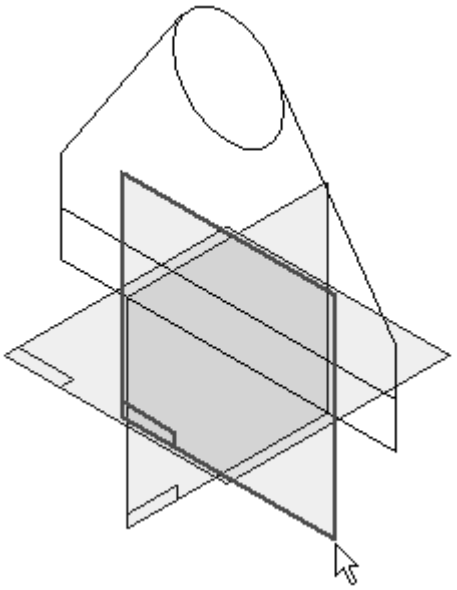
Open an existing part document

- Open *bracket02.par*. Notice that this file contains a sketch. Use this sketch to construct two protrusions. This will demonstrate how a single sketch can be used to create multiple features.

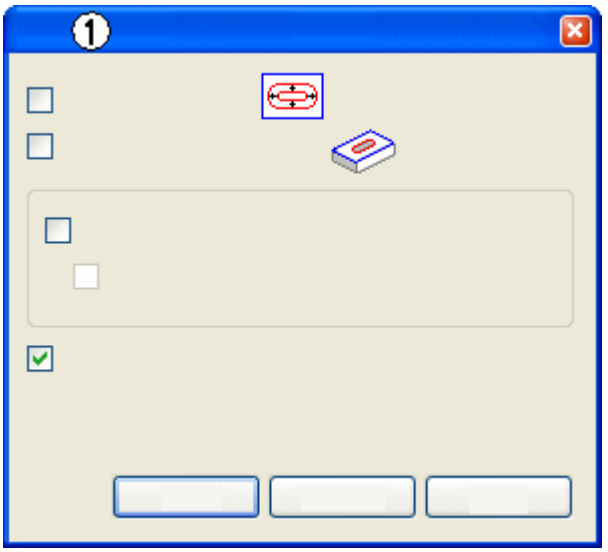
Construct the base feature

Use the Extrude command to construct the base feature of the part. Rather than draw the profile of the protrusion, include elements from an existing sketch.

- In the Solids group, choose the Extrude command .
- On command bar, click the Coincident Plane option.
- Select the reference plane shown.



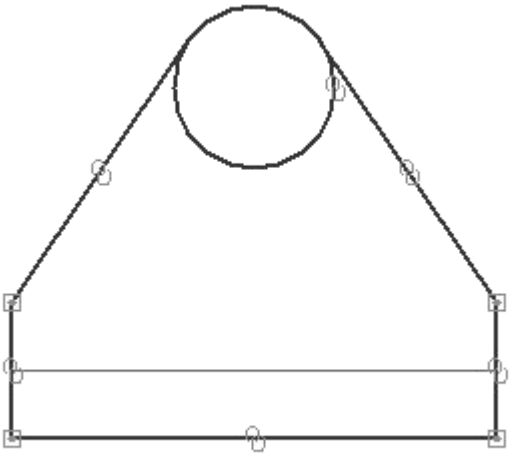
- Choose the Fit command .
- Right-click in PathFinder and choose Hide All ® Reference Planes.
- In the Draw group, choose the Include command .
- When the Include Options dialog box (1) is displayed, set the options shown in the illustration and click OK.



- The Include command bar (1) is appears as shown. Change the Select option (2) to Single Wireframe (3).

- Choose the Fit command.

- Select the elements shown in bold in the illustration to include them in the profile. Include all elements except for the top horizontal line. The link symbols indicate that the elements have been included.



Edit sketch elements

The elements included from the sketch do not form a valid profile. The elements must be modified. Trim an element and apply relationships to create the final shape.

- In the Draw group, choose the Trim command .

- Select the bottom portion of the circle. The full circle is trimmed to an arc with its endpoints connected to the two angled lines. Notice that only the element included in the profile is trimmed. The original circle in the sketch remains intact.

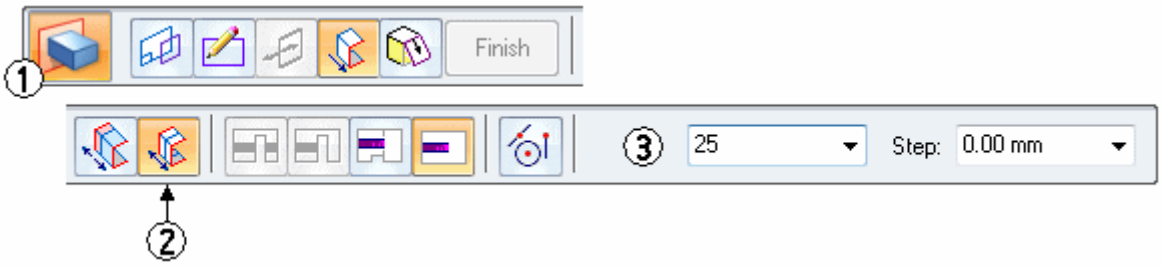
- In the Relate group, choose the Tangent command .

- Select the intersection between the line and the arc to place the Tangent relationship. Do this to both sides of the arc. Notice the tangent relationship handles.

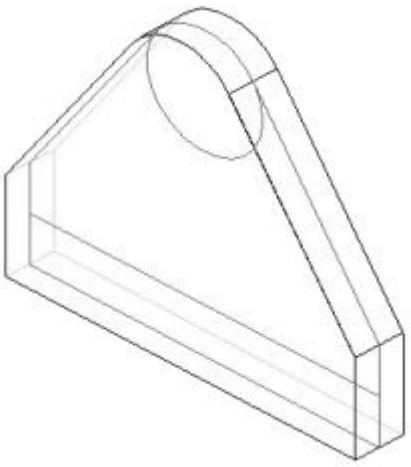
- The profile step is complete. Choose the Close Sketch command.

Extent definition step

- On the Extrude command bar (1), click the Symmetric Extent option (2). Type 25 in the Distance box (3) and press the **Enter** key.



- Click Finish to complete the extrusion. The sketch is still displayed with the new protrusion.

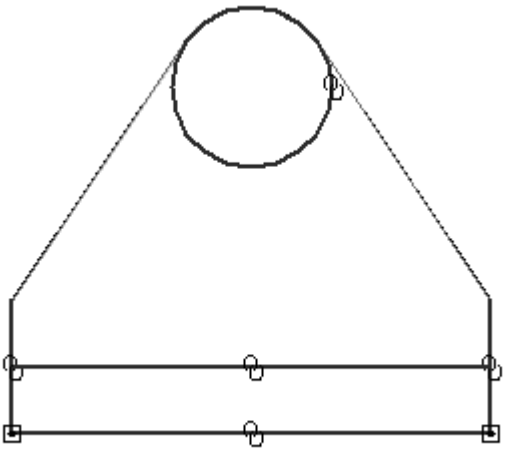


- Save the file. Choose the Save command .

Construct another profile using the same sketch

Construct another profile using the same sketch. Use the same profile plane used in the previous feature.

- Choose the Extrude command.
- In the Sketch Step, select Last Plane. This uses the same reference plane specified for the previous protrusion feature.
- Choose the Include command. Click OK on the Include Options dialog box and select the elements shown in bold. Use the Fit command to fit all of the profile elements into the profile window.

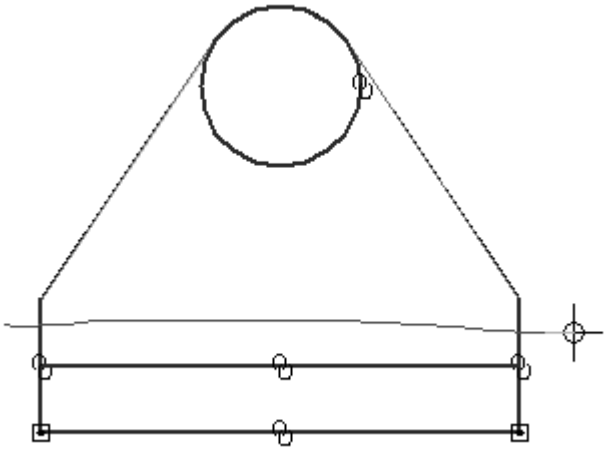


Trim sketch elements

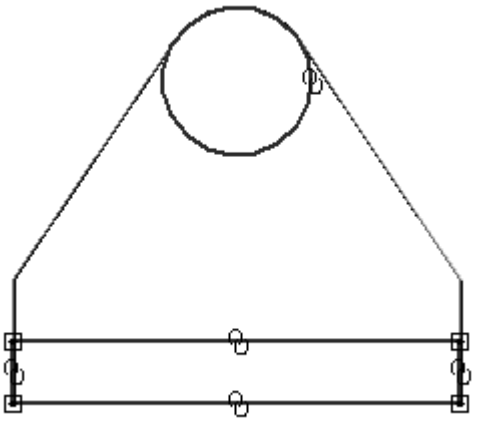
Trim the included sketch elements to complete the profile.

- Choose the Trim command .

- Click and drag the cursor across the lines shown.



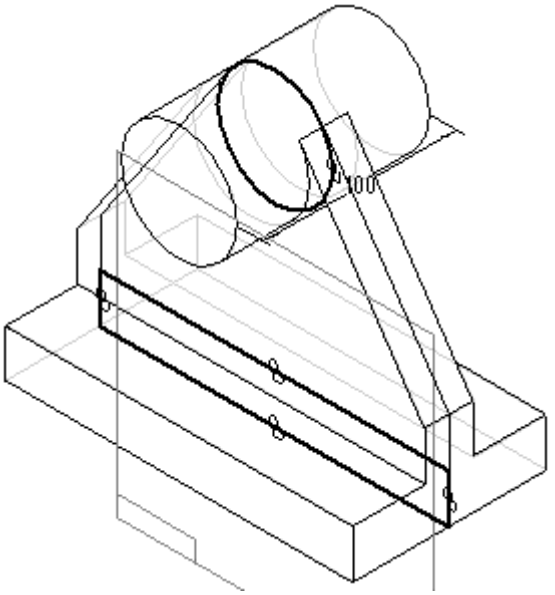
- When the mouse button is released, the trim completes. Notice that the Link symbol on the two vertical lines moves.



- The profile step is complete. Choose Close Sketch.

Extent definition step

- Click the Symmetric Extent option, type 100 in the Distance box, and then press the **Enter** key.



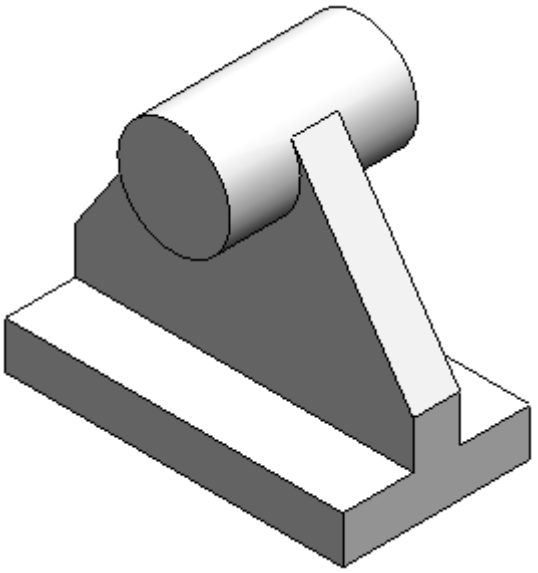
- To complete the protrusion, click Finish.

Turn off the sketch display

The two protrusions are complete. Turn off the display of the sketch to show only the finished part.

- Click the Select Tool, and then right-click in an open space of the model window..
- On the short-cut menu, choose the Hide All® Sketches command to turn off the display of the sketch you used to construct the protrusions.
- Choose the Fit command to view the entire part.

Save and close the file. This completes the activity.



Summary

In this activity you learned how to create features from sketch geometry. Because the geometry is associative, changes in the sketch will also change the features that are derived from the sketch.

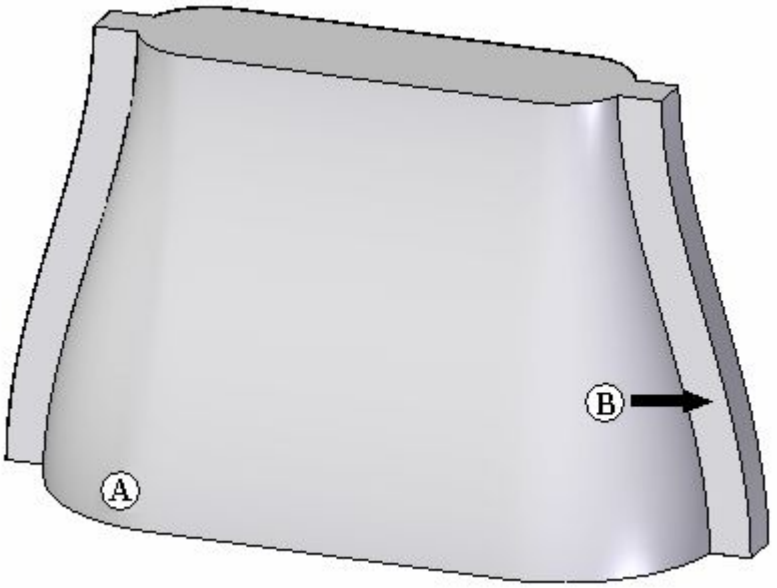
Creating a loft and swept protrusion

In this activity, construct a solid model using the Loft and Swept Protrusion commands. Edit end conditions and curves to adjust the overall shape of the model.

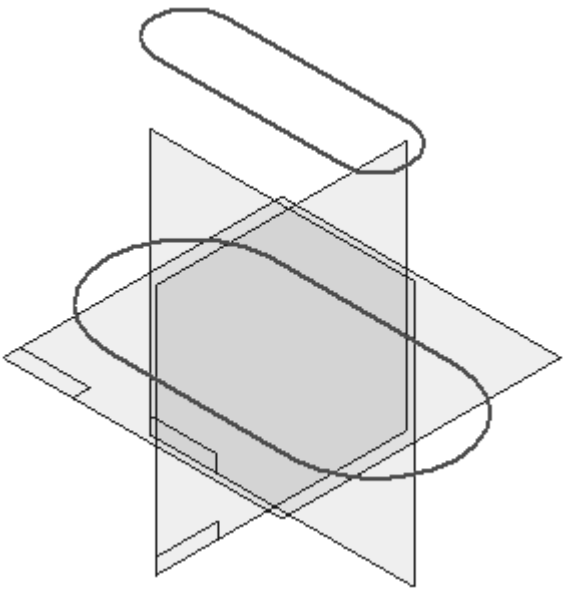
Activity: Creating a loft and swept protrusion

Objectives

In this activity, construct a solid model using the Loft (A) and Swept Protrusion (B) commands. Edit end conditions and curves to adjust the overall shape of the model.



- Open *loft.par*. This file contains sketches and curves that will be used to model the part.

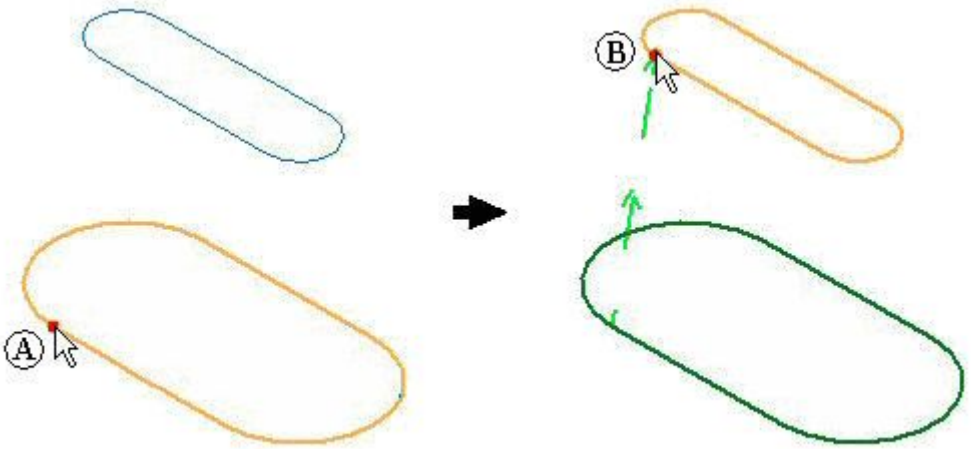


Create a loft protrusion

Create a loft protrusion using sketches provided in the file.

- On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Loft command in the Add drop down list .
- Hide the reference planes.
- Select the sketch (labeled base sketch) at location (A) shown for the first cross-section.

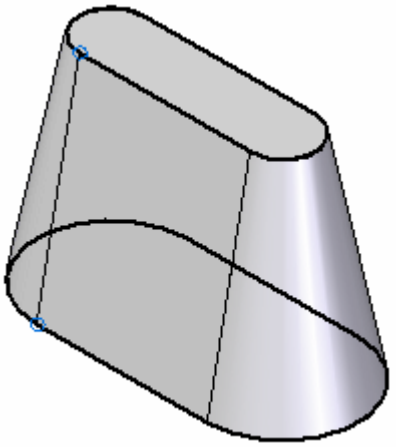
  Select the sketch (labeled top sketch) at location (B) shown for the second cross-section.



Note

It is important to select the cross-sections at start locations where a twist will not be introduced in the geometry (or a self-intersecting result). If this condition occurs, an error message displays.

- On the command bar, click Preview. Do not click Finish.



Note

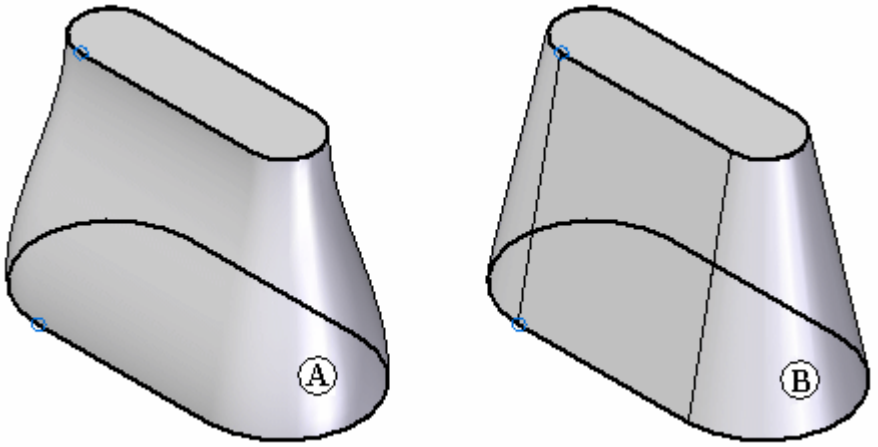
The result shown above uses the default end-condition of “Natural”. This is where the cross-sections connect using a linear vector.

Edit end conditions

- On command bar, click the Extent Step.

- Change the end-conditions of both cross-sections. Set both End 1: (A) and End 2: (B) to“Normal to section” (C). This setting creates a lofted feature where the surface starts and ends with a normal vector to the cross-sections.

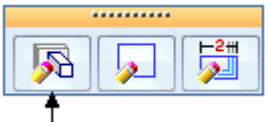
- Click Preview and then click Finish. Notice the results [(A) Normal to section, (B) Natural].



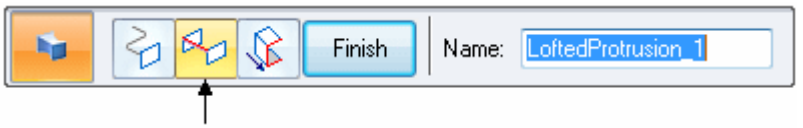
Add guide curves

Add guide curves to further control the overall shape of the lofted protrusion feature. Edit the definition of the lofted protrusion completed in the previous step.

- Turn on the display of curves. In PathFinder, click the check box on the curves named *side curve 1*, *mirrored side curve 1*, *side curve 2* and *mirrored side curve 2*.
- Click the Select tool and then select the protrusion in the part window.
- Click Edit Definition.



- On command bar, click the Guide Curve step.

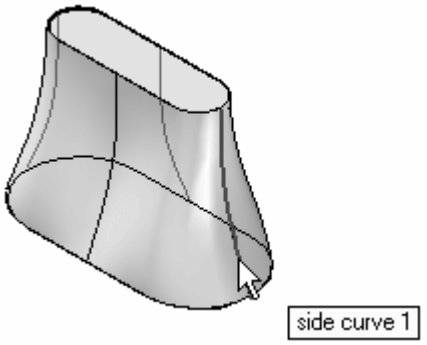


- Select each curve and then click the Accept button. Select and accept only one curve at a time. The right-mouse button or Enter on the keyboard can also be used to accept the guide curve.
- After selecting all four curves, click the Preview button.
- Notice how the shape of the loft protrusion follows these guide curves. Dynamically rotate the model to better observe the shape. Click Finish.

Edit the guide curves

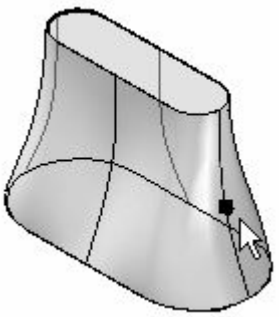
Continue to refine the loft protrusion shape by editing the guide curves. When one curve is edited, the curve on the opposite side will adjust automatically because it is a mirrored element.

- Click the Select tool.
- Select curve named *side curve 1*.



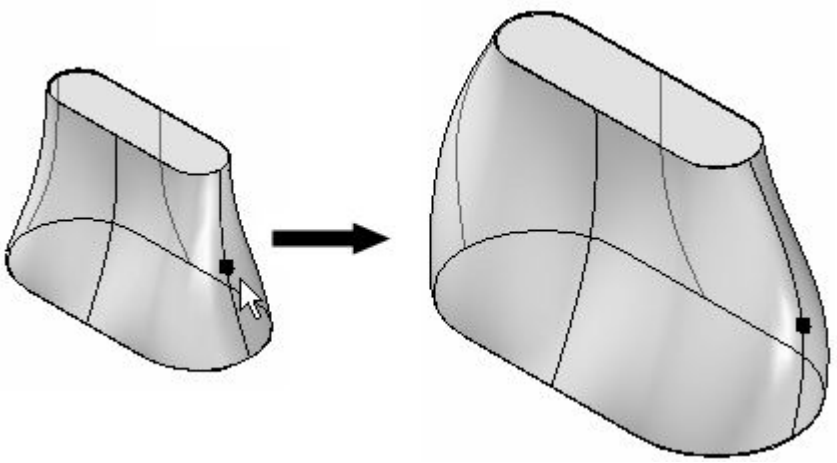
- Click the Dynamic Edit button.

- Select the green dot on the curve. This will be the edit point on the curve.

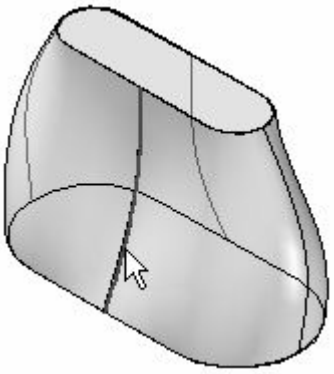


- Click the Relative/Absolute Position button . Absolute uses the actual X-Y-Z coordinates for positioning. Relative uses a delta distance for positioning. Use relative positioning.

- Type 25 in the dX: field and press the Enter key. This moves the edit point 25 units in the positive X direction and 0 units in the Y and Z direction. The edit is made when the Enter key is pressed. Each time the Enter key is pressed after this point will apply a move again of the values displayed in the ribbon bar delta fields.

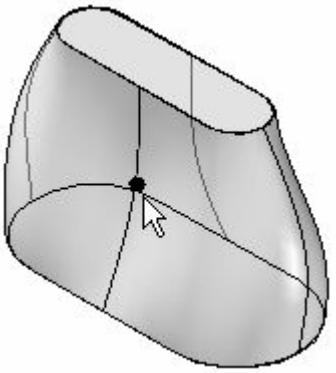


- Click the Select tool.
- Select curve named side curve 2.



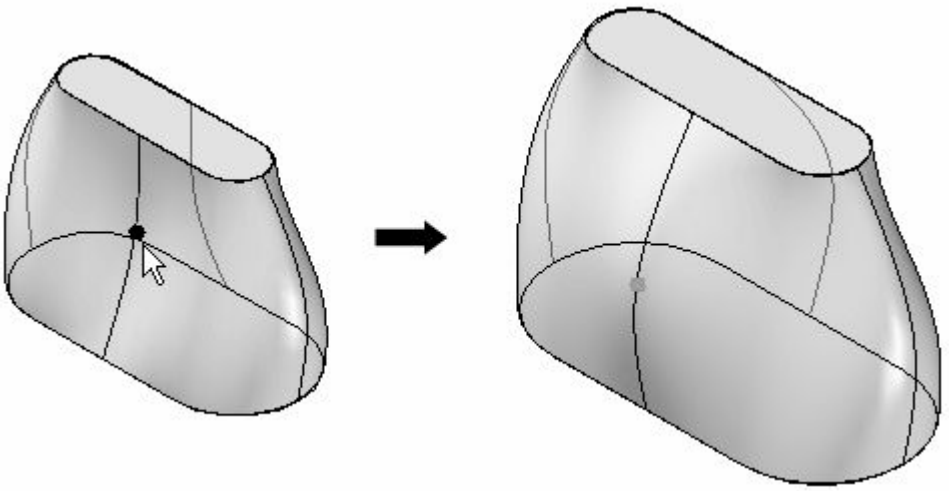
- Click the Dynamic Edit button.

- Select the green dot on the curve. This will be the edit point on the curve.



- Click the Relative/Absolute Position button.

- Type -25 in the dY: field and press the Enter key. This moves the edit point 25 units in the negative Y direction and 0 units in the X and Z direction. The edit is made when the Enter key is pressed.



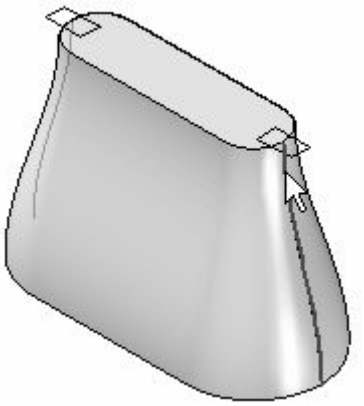
- Continue to modify the shape on your own. This completes this portion of the activity. Close and do not save the file.

Create a swept protrusion

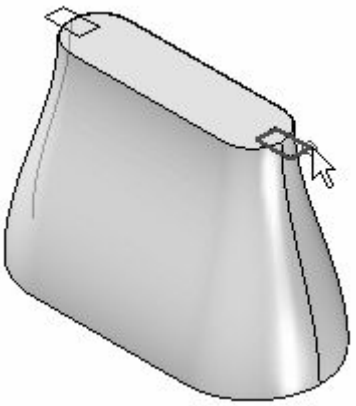
- Open *sweep.par*. This file contains sketches and curves to use to define swept protrusions.

- The curves provided were created using the project curve onto surface command. This command is not be covered in this course. These are the trace curves for the swept feature. Lines, arcs, curves, etc. can be used to define the path trace for the sweep.

- On the Home tab® Solids group, choose Swept Protrusion command on the Add drop down list .
- On the Sweep Options dialog box, click the Single path and cross section option. Click OK.
- Select the curve shown.



- Click the Accept button (or right-click) to accept the trace curve.
- The cross section select step is now active. Select the sketch as shown for the cross section.



- On the command bar, click Finish.
- Repeat the previous steps to create a swept protrusion on the opposite side.
- Hide the curves and sketch. Right-click in the part window and choose Hide All ® . Curves. Choose Hide All ® . Sketches.
- This completes the activity. Close the file.

Summary

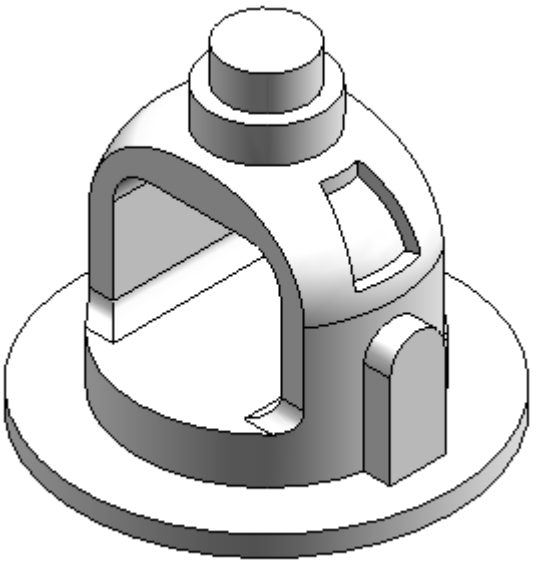
In this activity you learned how to create both a swept protrusion and a lofted protrusion. To better manage the geometry, sketches were used to define the cross sections to be swept and lofted. Guide paths were used to control the transition of geometry between cross sections.

Creating profile-based ordered features activity

This activity demonstrates the construction of profile-based features.

Construct a revolved protrusion and then add cutouts and secondary protrusions.

Use the following commands to create profile-based features: (revolve, extrude, cut, revolved cut, select from sketch, parallel plane, profile, mirror, fillet, include, trim).



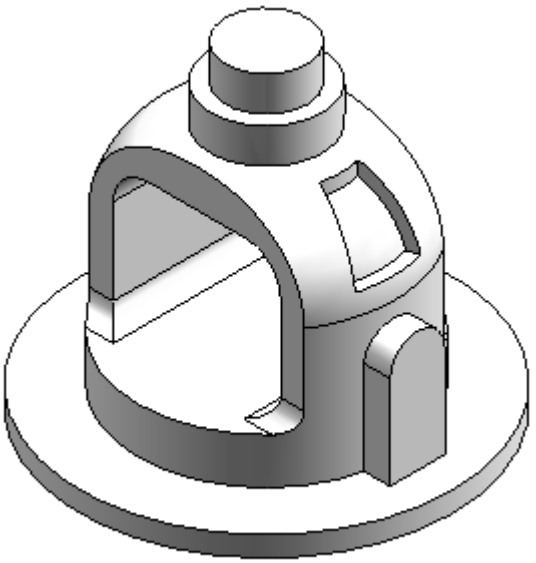
Activity: Creating profile-based features

Overview

This activity demonstrates the construction of profile-based features.

Objectives

Construct a revolved protrusion and then add cutouts and secondary protrusions.



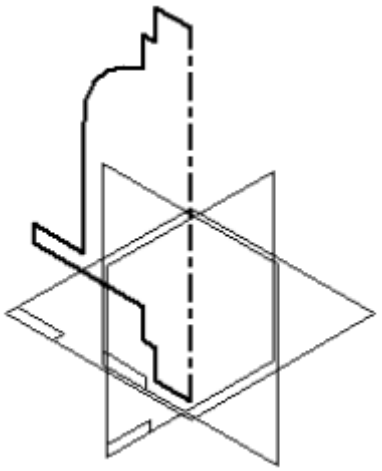
- Open *bell.par*.

Create a revolved protrusion

Create a revolved protrusion using the sketch provided with the file.

- On the Home tab® Solids group, choose the Revolve command .
- In the Sketch step, click the Select from Sketch option.
- In the part window, select the sketch and then, click the Accept button.

- For the axis of revolution, select the vertical dashed line.



- On the command bar, click Revolve 360° .
- Click Finish.
- The sketch and axis of revolution are no longer needed. Turn off their display. Right-click in the part window. Choose Hide All® Sketches and choose Hide All® Reference Axes.

Create an extrusion

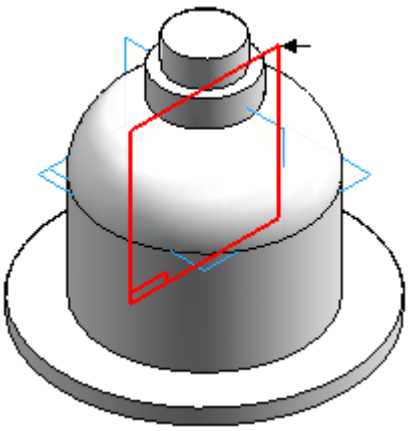
Create an extrusion. Draw the profile on a parallel plane.

- In the Solids group, choose the Extrude command .
- In the Sketch step, click the Parallel Plane option.

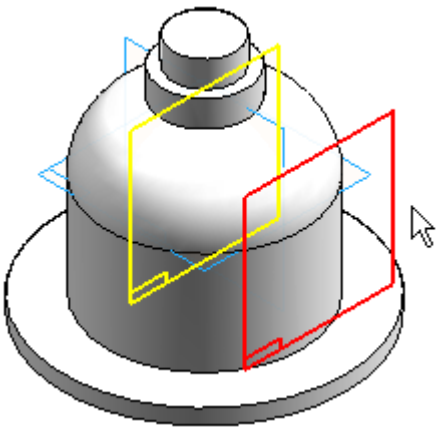
- Select the reference plane shown.

  Note

  Throughout this activity, hidden lines and reference planes are removed from illustrations for clarity.



- Type 82.5 in the Distance box and press the Enter key.
- Move the cursor to the bottom right of the window, and click to define the location of the new parallel reference plane.



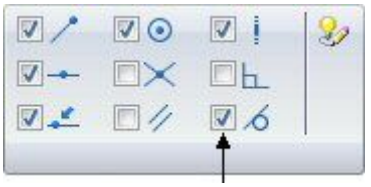
- Choose the Fit command .

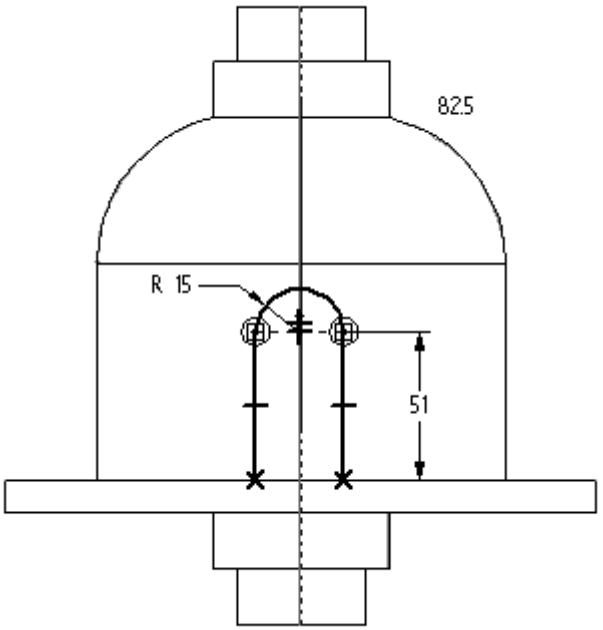
- In the Draw group, use the Line command to draw the profile shown. Draw the profile with the same dimensional values and relationships shown below. Notice the vertical relationship between the midpoint of the vertical reference plane and the center of the profile arc.

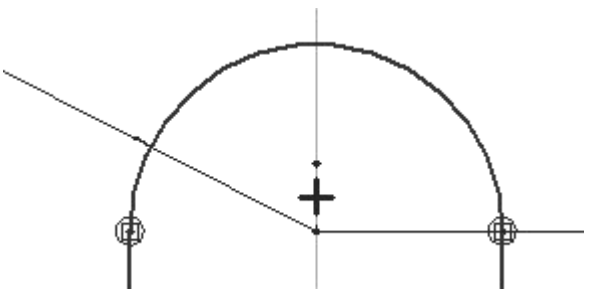
  Note

  Within the line command, press A on the keyboard or click the arc option on the ribbon bar to enter arc mode. Once you place the arc, the command reverts back to line mode. When in arc mode, notice the intent zones available for arc placement.

  Turn on the Tangent option in IntelliSketch. This applies a tangent relationship when placing the arc.





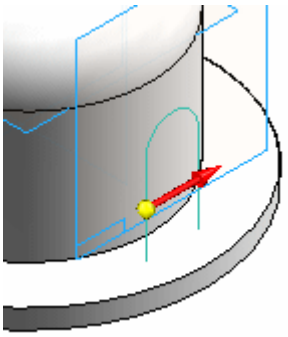


- Choose Close Sketch.

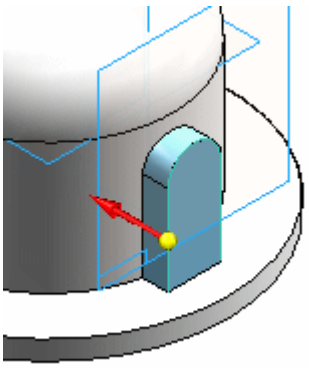
- Move the cursor so that the arrow points as shown and click. This will add material to the inside of the profile.

  Note

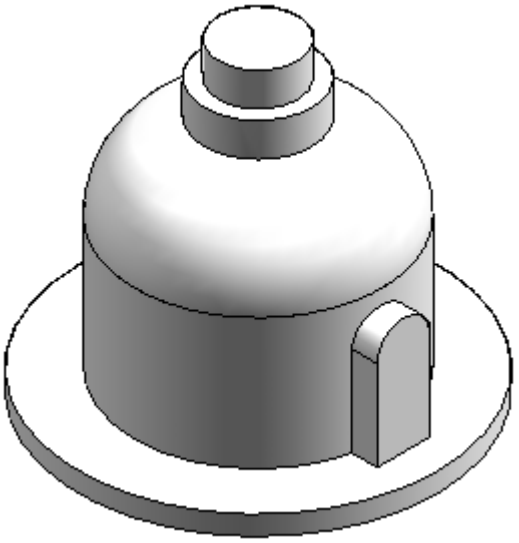
  Notice the side step on command bar. When you use an open profile, you must specify the side of the profile to add material to.



- On command bar, click Through Next.
- Move the cursor so that the arrow points as shown and click.



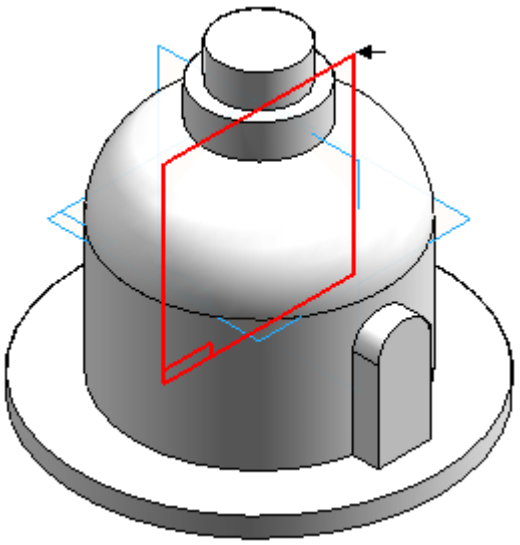
- Click Finish to complete the protrusion.



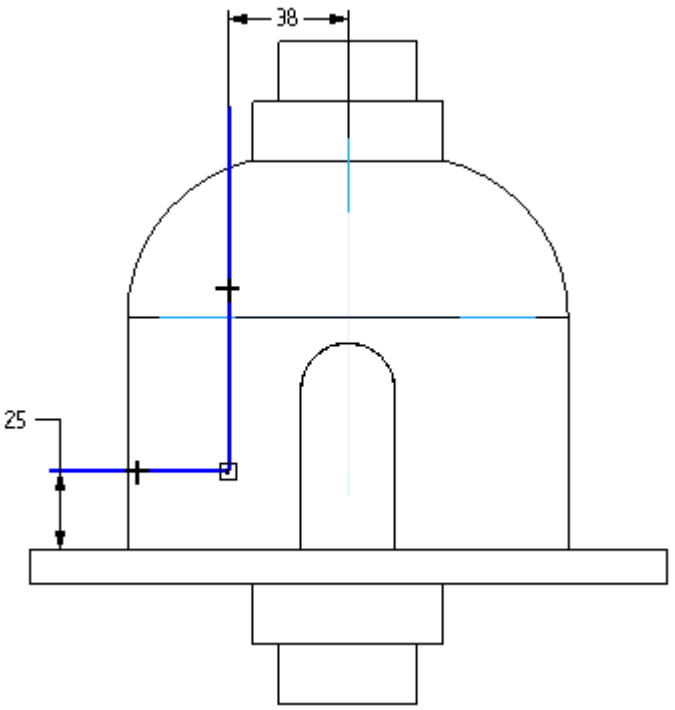
Remove material from the base feature

Remove material from the part using an open profile.

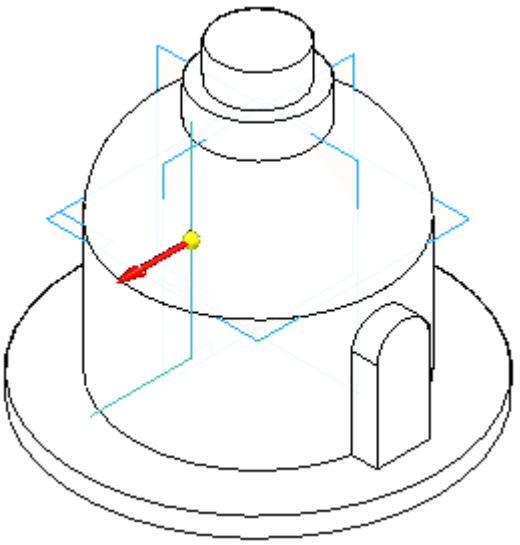
- Choose the Cut command .
- On command bar, click Coincident Plane from the plane type list. Select the reference plane shown.



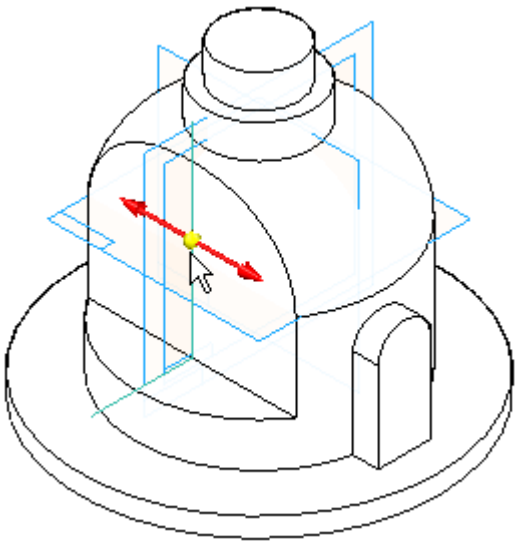
- Draw the open profile.



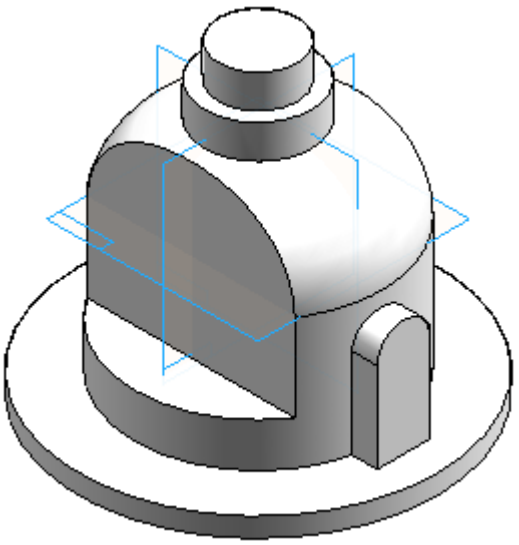
- Click Close Sketch.
- Position the direction arrow as shown to remove material outside the open profile.



- On command bar, click the Through All extent option. Position the arrow as shown to remove material in both directions.

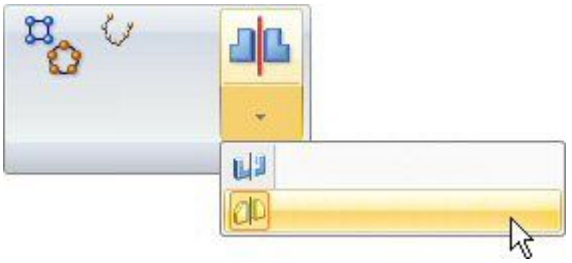


- Click Finish.

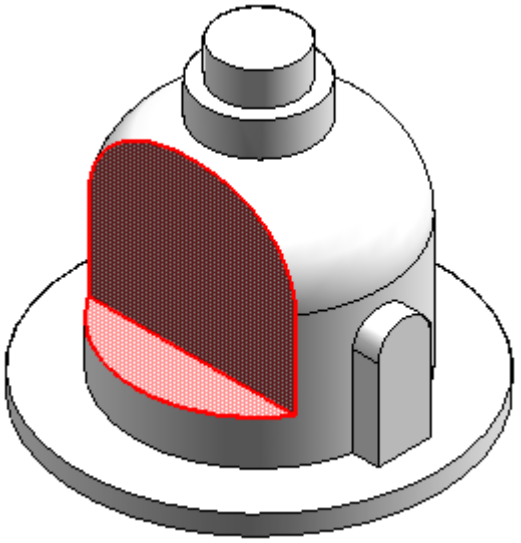


Mirror the cutout feature

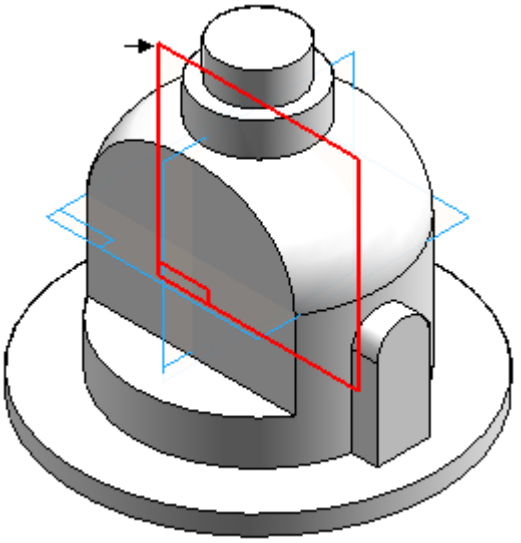
- In the Pattern group, choose the Mirror Copy Feature command on the Mirror drop down list.



- Select the cutout feature.



- On command bar, click the Smart option and then click the Accept button.
- Select the Front (xz) reference plane as the mirror plane.

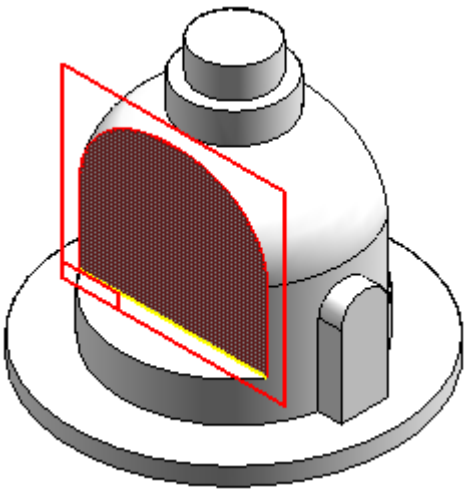


- Click Finish.

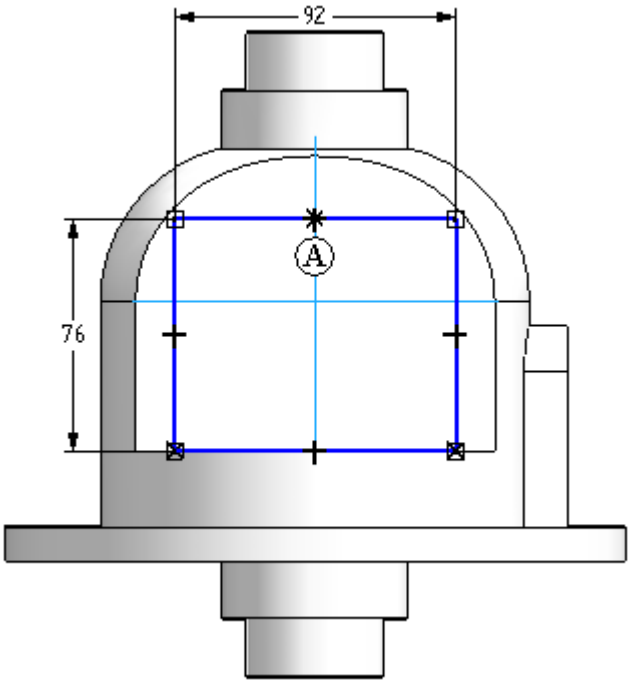
Remove material from part

Remove material from the middle of the part using a closed profile.

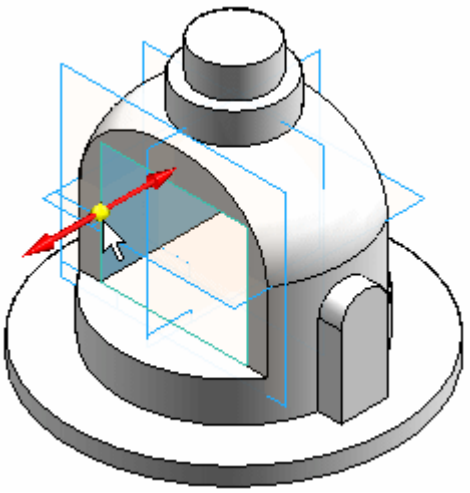
- Choose the Cut command .
- Select the reference plane shown.



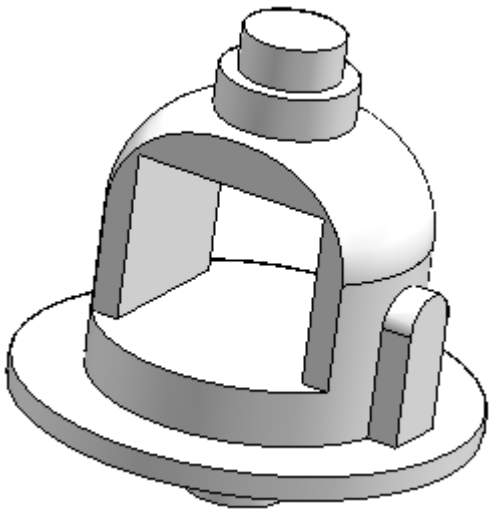
- Draw the profile. Connect the midpoint of the top line segment to the vertical reference plane (A).



- Click Close Sketch.
- Click the Through All extent option. Position the arrow as shown to remove material in both directions.



- Click Finish.



- Save the file.

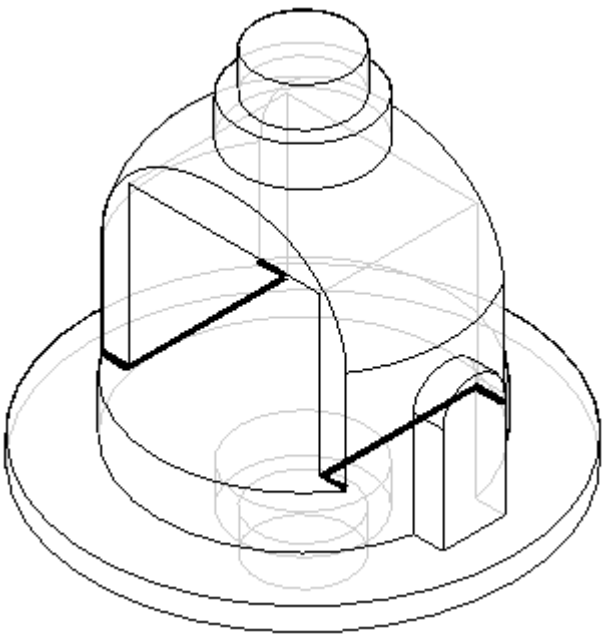
Add rounds

Round edges of the cutout features.

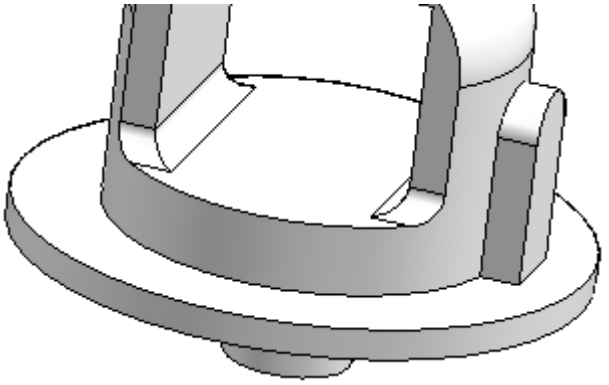
Note

The Constructing treatment features self-paced course (spse01530) covers rounding. It is appropriate at this point to add rounds to the part.

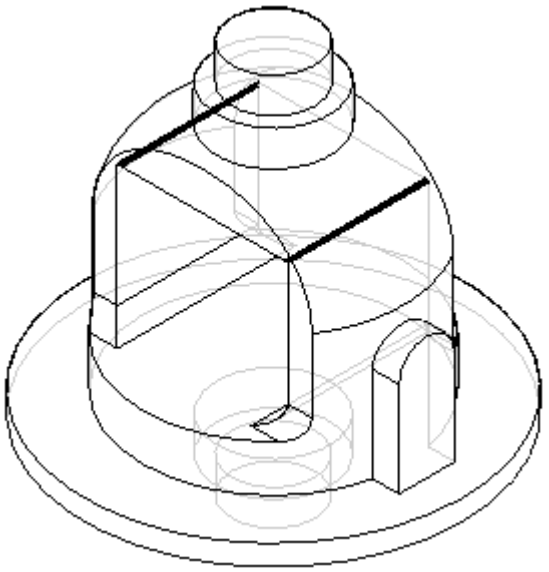
- In the Solids group, choose the Round command .
- Select the six edges as shown.

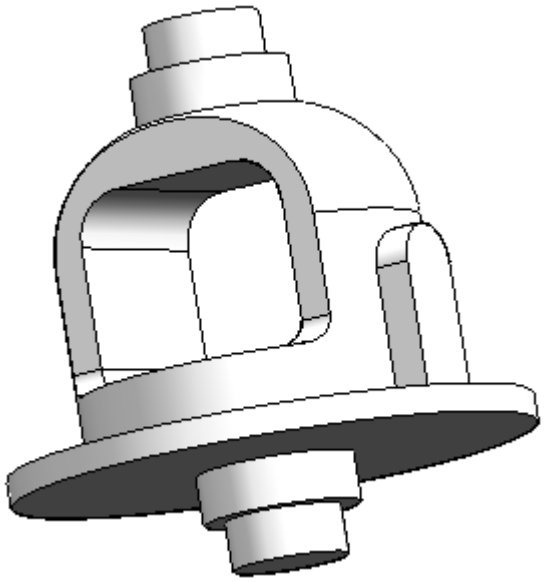


- Type 10 for the radius and then click the Accept button.
- Click Preview then click Finish.



- Place 19 mm rounds on the two edges shown.



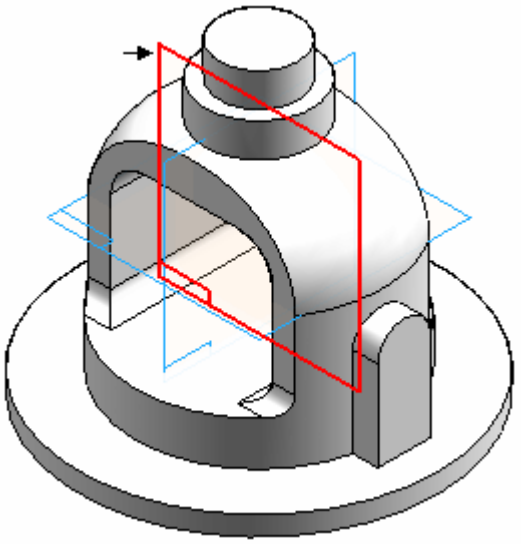


Add a revolved cutout

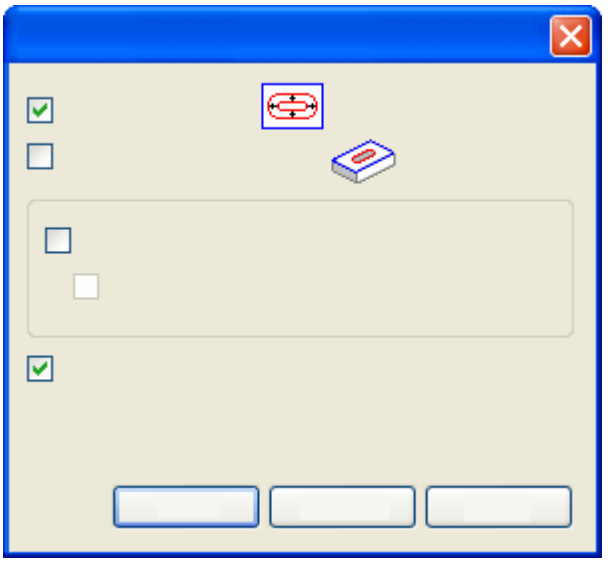
Add a revolved cutout to the part. To create this cutout, include and offset an existing part edge.

- Choose the Revolved Cut command .

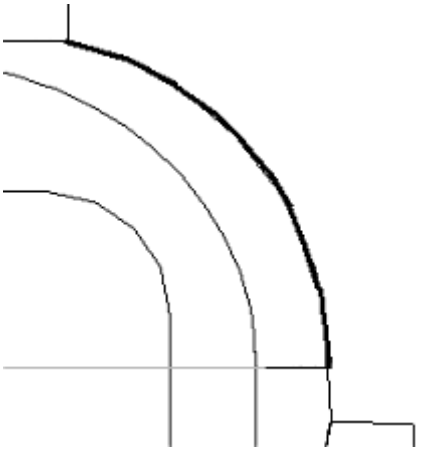
- Select the reference plane as shown.



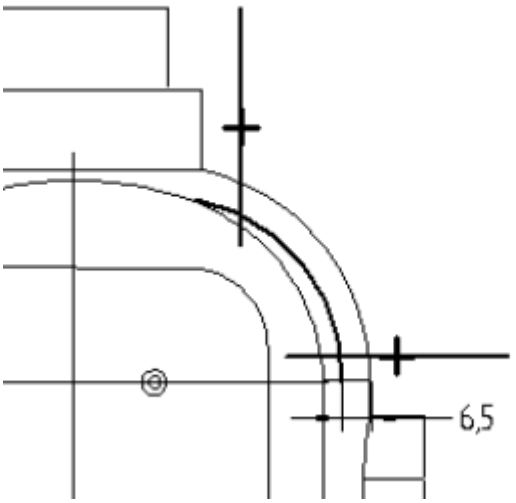
- In the Draw group, choose the Include command .
- On the Include Options dialog box, set the Include with offset option and click OK.



- Select the arc shown, and on the command bar click the Accept button.

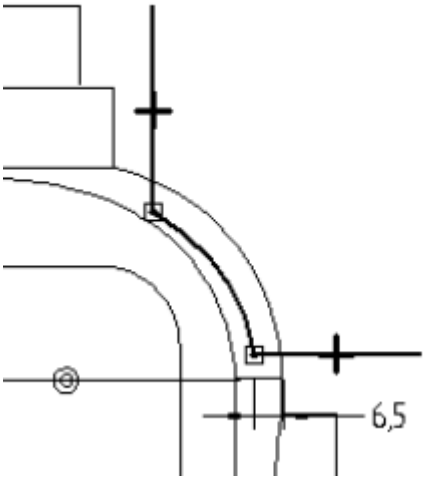


- Type 6.5 in the Distance field and press the Enter key.
- Click inside the arc to accept the offset. Notice that the system places a dimension between the offset element and the arc from which it is offset.
- Draw a horizontal line and a vertical line as shown.

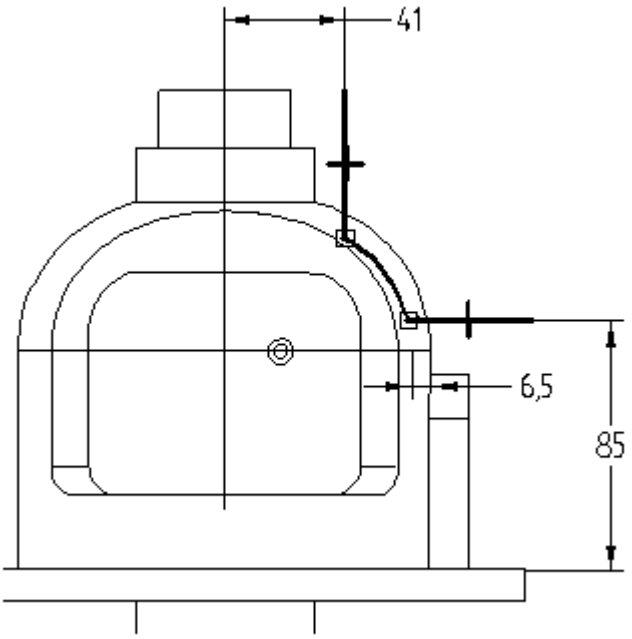


- Choose the Trim command .

- Trim away the lines and arc to produce the following profile shape. If a mistake is made, click Undo and repeat the step.

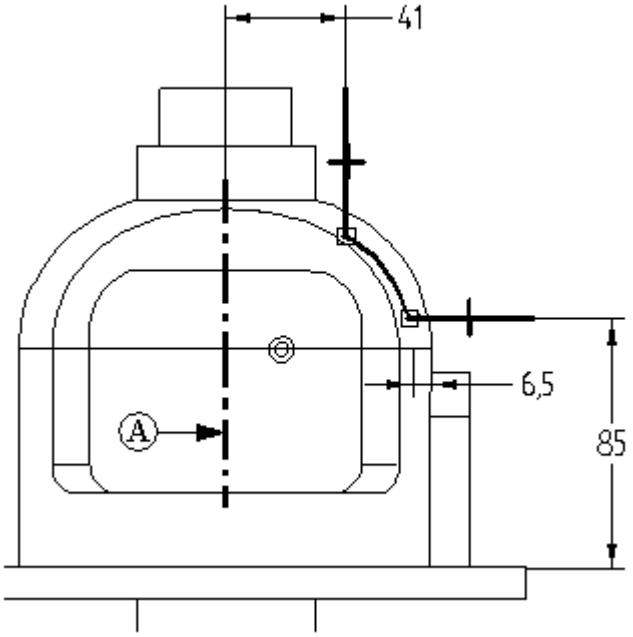


- Choose the Distance Between command , and place dimensions as shown. Edit the values of the dimensions to the values shown below.



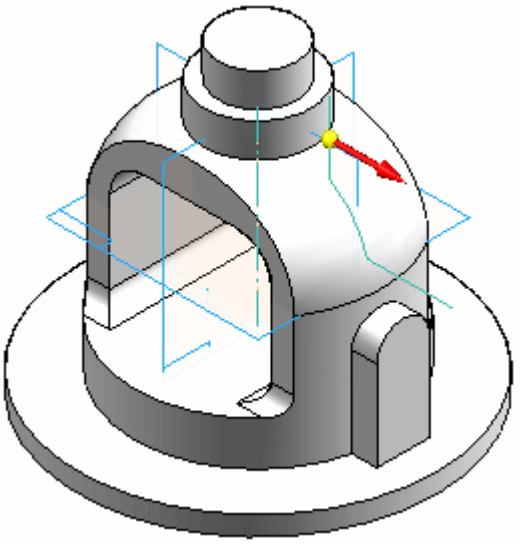
- Click the Axis of Revolution command .

  To define the axis of revolution, select the reference plane labeled (A).



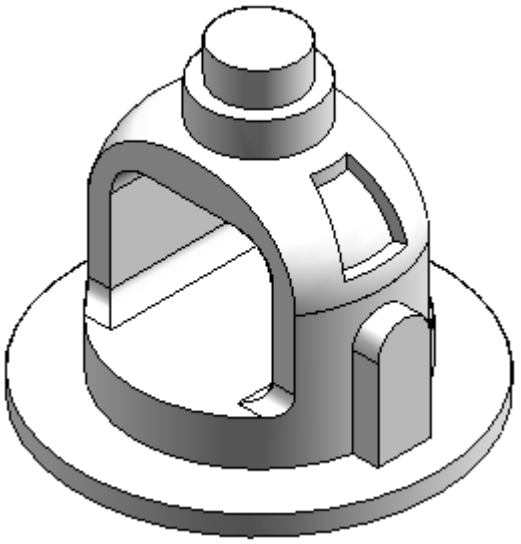
- Click Close Sketch.

- To define the direction of material removal, position the cursor so that the arrow points to the outside of the part, and click.



- On command bar, click the Symmetric Extent button. Type 30 in the Angle field and then press the Enter key.

- Click Finish to complete the revolved cutout.



- Save and close the file. This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create a base feature and then construct additional features to complete the part. The include command used existing geometry which made the features associative. Because the geometry is associative, it will respond predictably to modifications. An open profile in the Revolved Cut command was used to show that the profile adjusts itself to intersect the face of the protrusion it is cutting.

Miscellaneous activities

Constructing a mouse base

In the following activity, construct a computer mouse base. This activity reinforces the feature construction techniques you have already learned, and it utilizes treatment features.

Activity: Constructing a mouse base

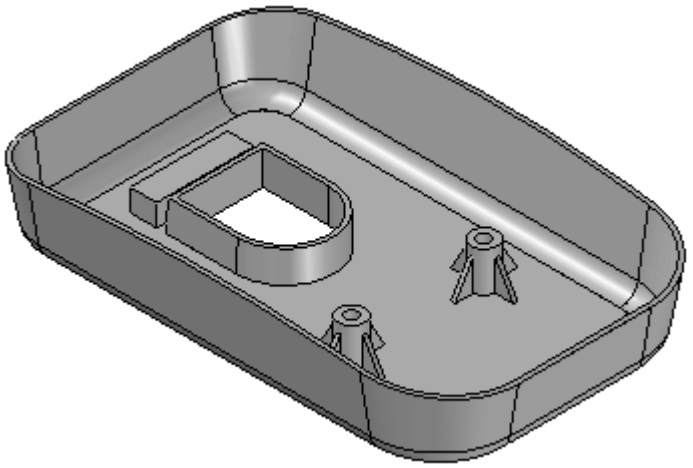
Overview

Construct the computer mouse base shown in the illustration. This activity reinforces the ordered feature construction techniques you have already learned, and it utilizes treatment features.

Objectives

In this activity, learn how to:

- Construct a solid model with holes, cutout, and draft.
- Use the Thin Wall command.
- Use the Mounting Boss command.
- Use PathFinder to select features.



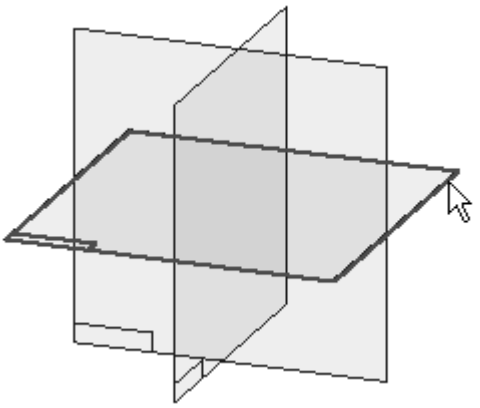
- ▸ Create a new ISO part file.
- ▸ Make sure you are in the ordered environment.

Create the base feature

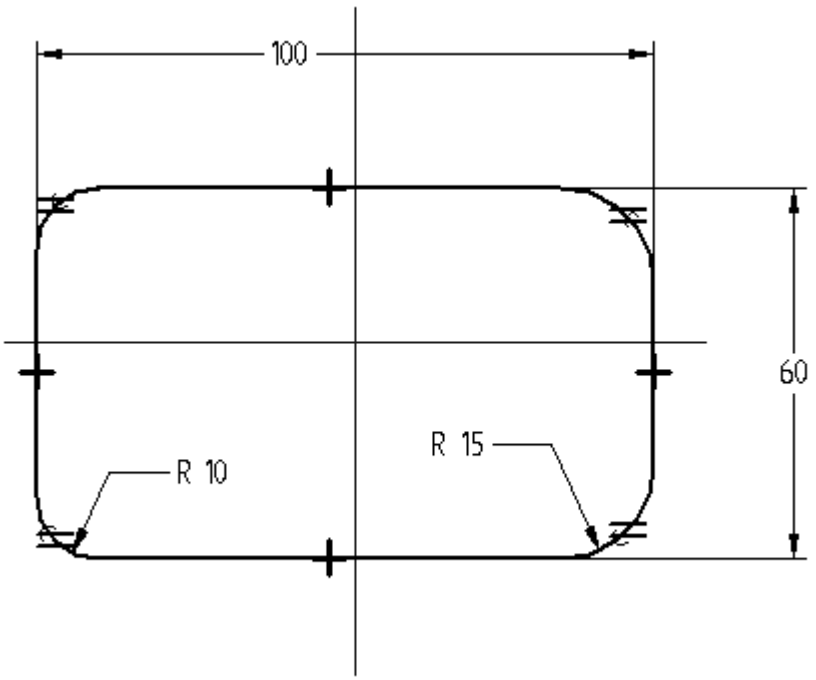
Create an extrusion as the base feature for the mouse.

- In PathFinder, turn off the base coordinate system display. Turn on the base reference planes display.

- Choose the Extrude command.
- On the command bar, click the Coincident Plane option, and select the reference plane shown.



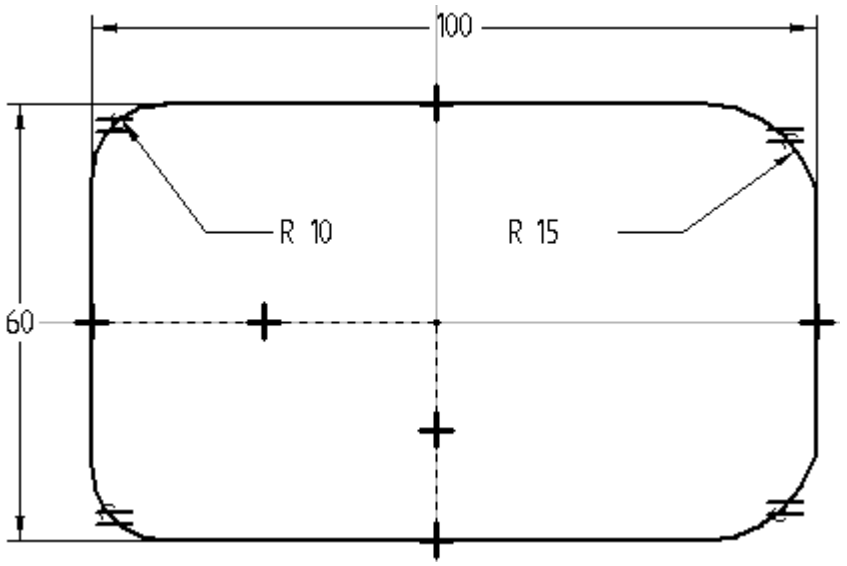
- Draw the profile.



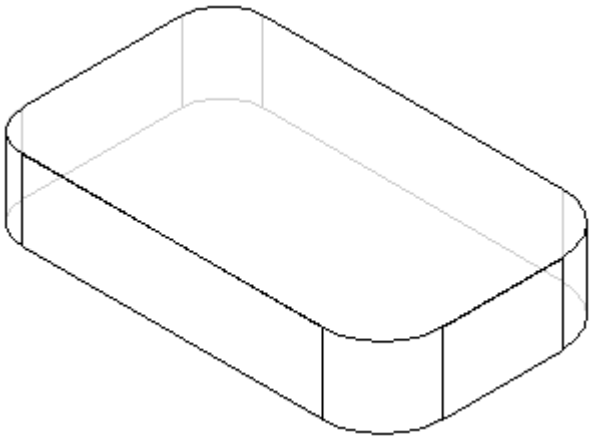
- Place Horizontal/Vertical relationships to center the profile on the midpoints of the reference planes.

  Note

  Fillets (R 10 and R 15) are in two places with equal relationships applied.

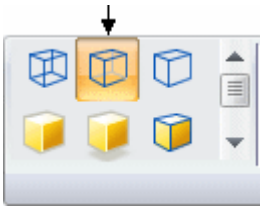


- Click Close Sketch.
- Extend the profile upward 20 and click Finish.



- Hide all reference planes.

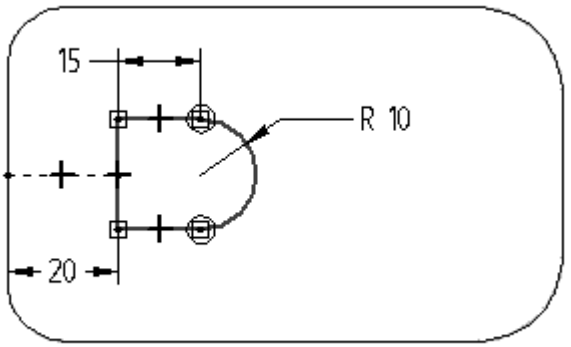
- Change the display of the part. In the Styles group, click the Visible and Hidden Edges display.



Create a cutout

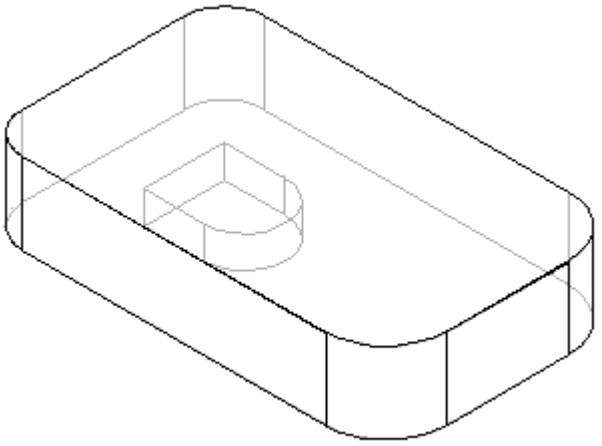
Create a cutout on the bottom side of the part.

- Choose the Cut command.
- Use the reference plane used to create the base feature. On command bar, select the Last Plane option.
- Draw the profile and apply the dimensional constraints.



- Click Close Sketch.
- On command bar, click the Finite Extent option, and in the Distance box type 8.

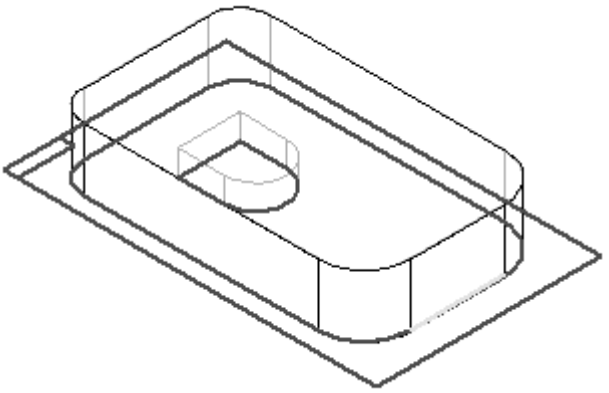
- Project the cutout upward, and finish the feature.



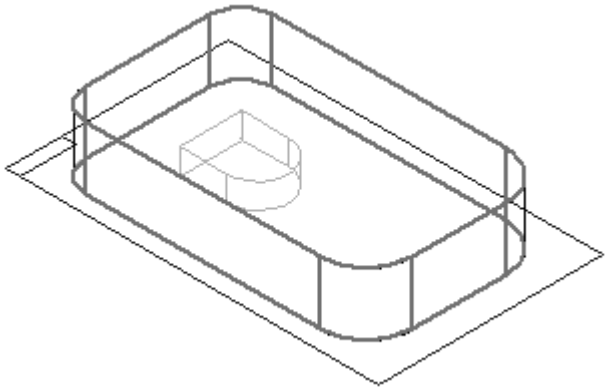
- Save the file as *mouse.par*.

Apply draft to the part

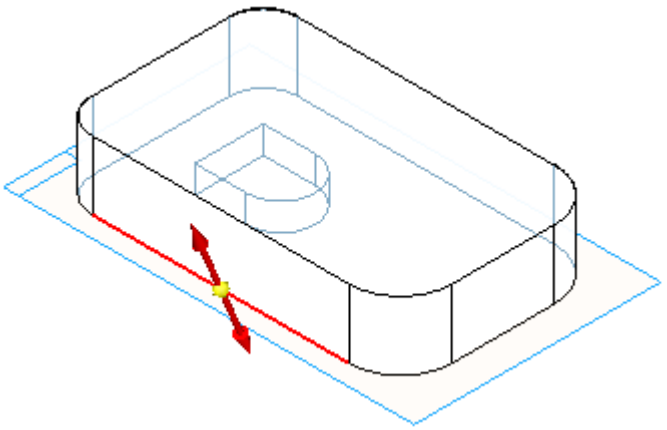
- In the Solids group, choose the Draft command .
- For the Draft Plane Step, select the bottom face as shown.

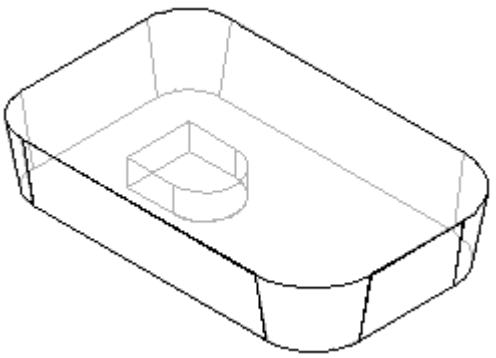


- For the Select Face Step, select one side face of the mouse base. All side faces of the mouse base should highlight. The default Select option is set to Chain which selects all chained faces not parallel to the draft plane.



- Type 10 in the Draft Angle field, and click the Accept button.
- You can specify different draft angles for multiple faces in the Select Face Step. If no other faces are to be drafted, click Next to leave the Select Face Step
- For the Draft Direction Step, orient the direction as shown so that the draft is applied outward, and then click.



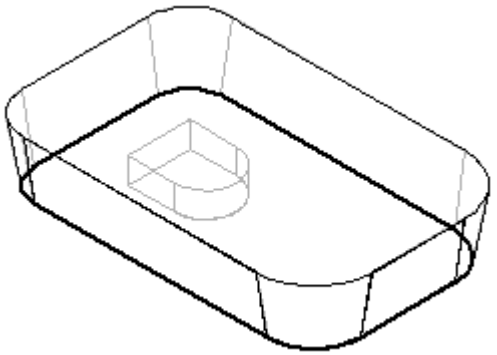


- Click Finish.

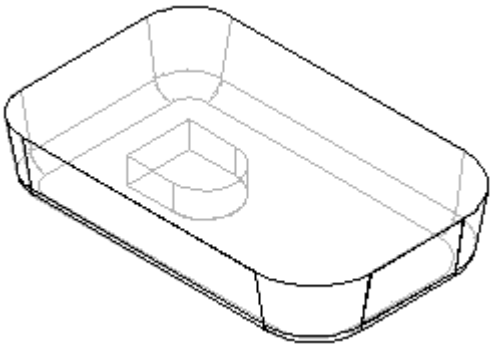
Add a round

Add a round feature to the bottom edge of the part.

- Choose the Round command .
- For the Select Step, identify the edges to round. On command bar, in the Select box, click the Chain option. This lets you select a connected chain of edges with one click.
- Select the chain of edges around the bottom face of the part as shown.



- Type 5 in the Radius field and click the Accept button.
- Use the default parameters. Skip the Round Parameters Step. Click Preview and then Finish.



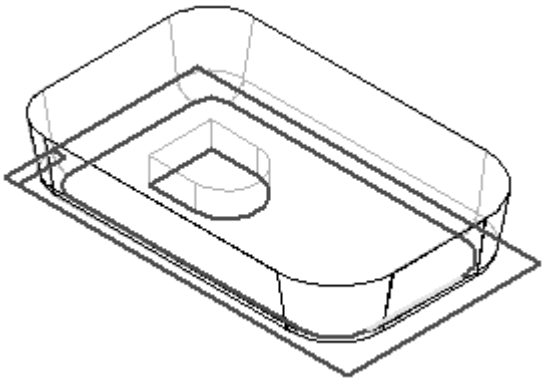
- Save the document.

Add draft

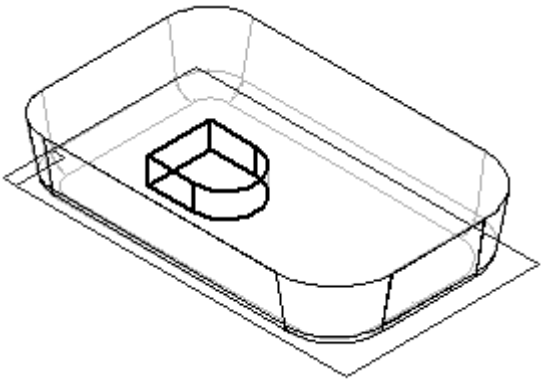
Add draft to the cutout feature in the part.

- Choose the Draft command.

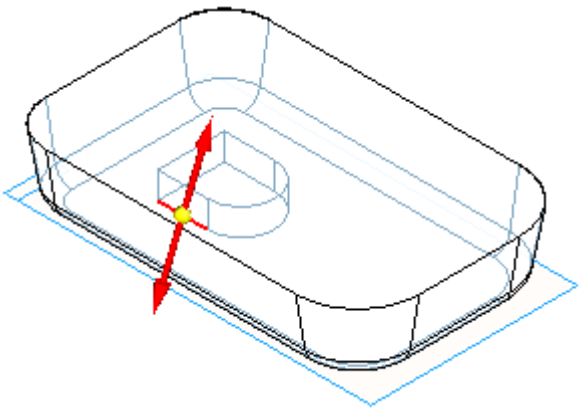
- Use QuickPick to select the bottom face to define the draft plane as shown.



- Select the chain of faces that form the sides of the cutout. Click once to select the three faces that are tangent to each other, and click once more to select the remaining face.



- Type 2 in the Draft Angle field and click the Accept button.
- Click Next.
- Orient the draft direction as shown, and then click to accept.



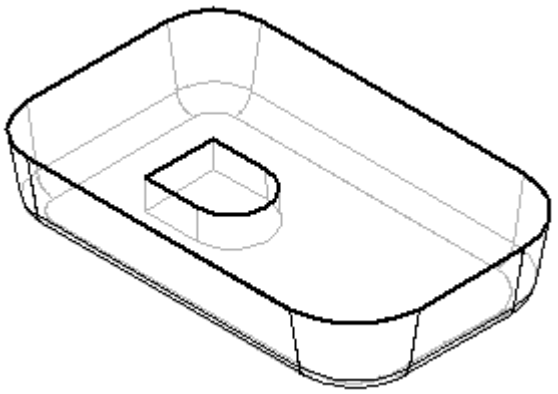
- Click Finish.

- Save the file.

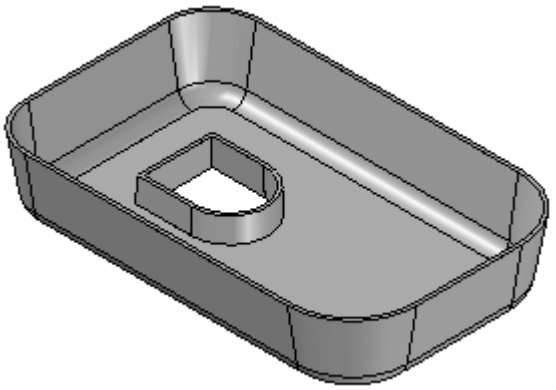
Apply a thin wall feature

Use the Thin Wall command to remove the interior material from the part.

- Choose the Thin Wall command.
- For the Common Thickness Step, specify the thickness to apply to all faces of the part. In the Common Thickness box, type 1 and press the Enter key.
- For the Open Faces Step, select the top face of the part and the top face of the cutout as the open surfaces.



- Click the Accept button to accept the faces.
- You can apply unique thickness to faces of the part. To skip this step, click Preview to process the thin wall. Click Finish to complete the feature placement.
- Click the Shaded with Visible Edges display.

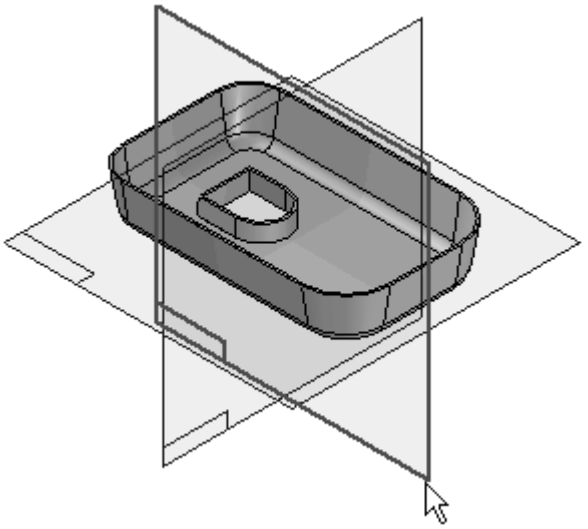


Add a cutout

Add a cutout to remove material from the top of the mouse base.

- Right-click in the part window and click Show All ® Reference Planes.

- Choose the Cut command, and select the reference plane shown.

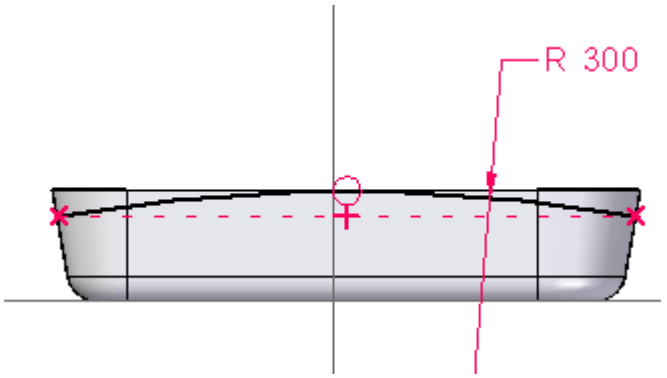


- Choose the Arc by 3 Points command , and place an arc that touches the two sides and is tangent to the top of the part. The command is in the Draw group on the Tangent Arc drop list.

  Note

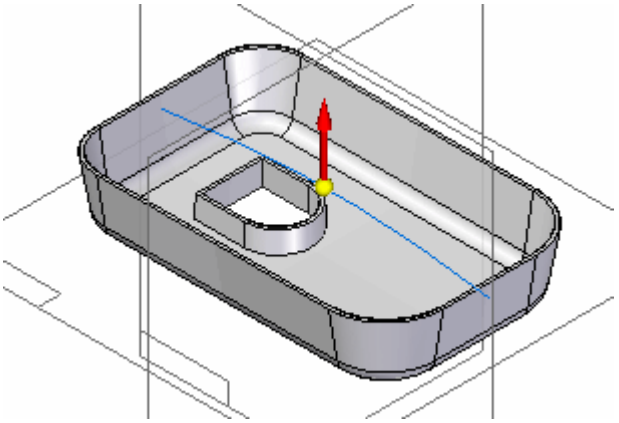
  The first and second points define the arc sweep. The third point defines the radius.

- Place and modify the dimension as shown. Add a Horizontal relationship to the two endpoints of the arc as shown.

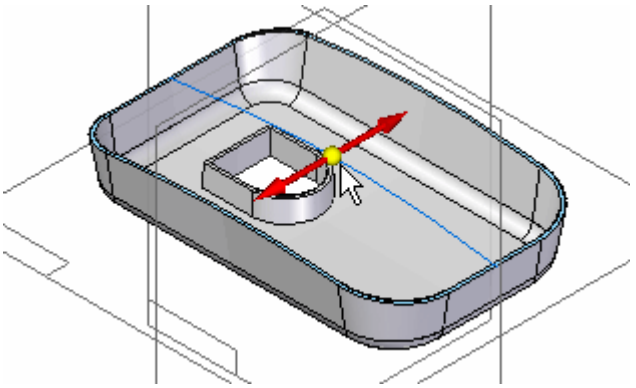


- Click Close Sketch.

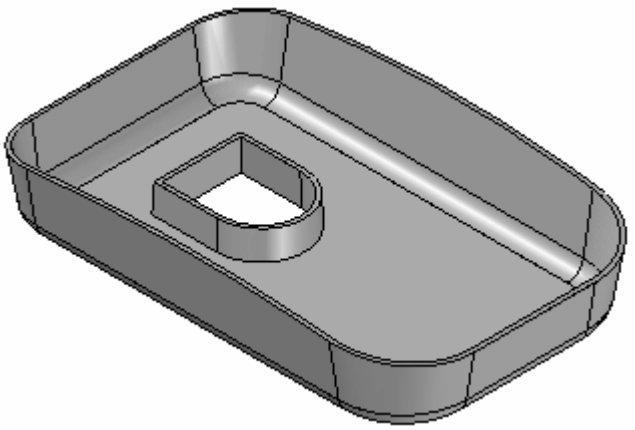
- For the Side Step, position the cursor as shown in the illustration and click.



- On command bar, set the Extent to Through All. Position the cursor so that arrows point from both sides of the profile and click.



- Finish the cutout and save the file.
- Hide all reference planes.

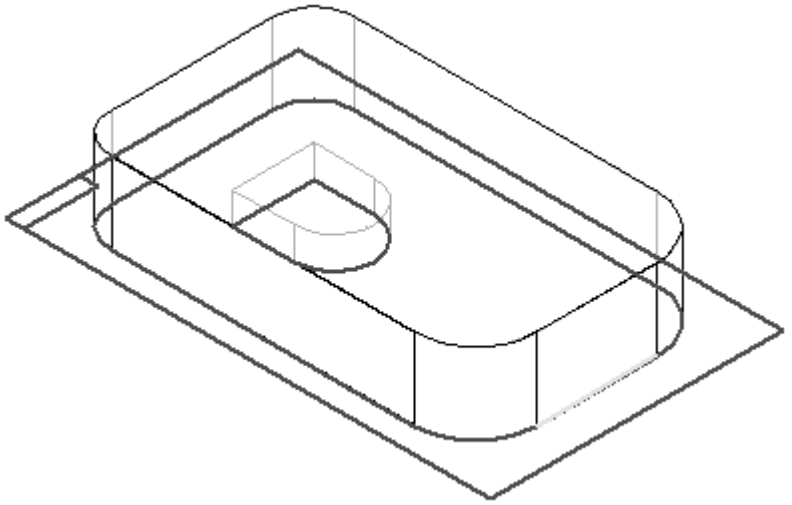


Add a cutout and use GoTo

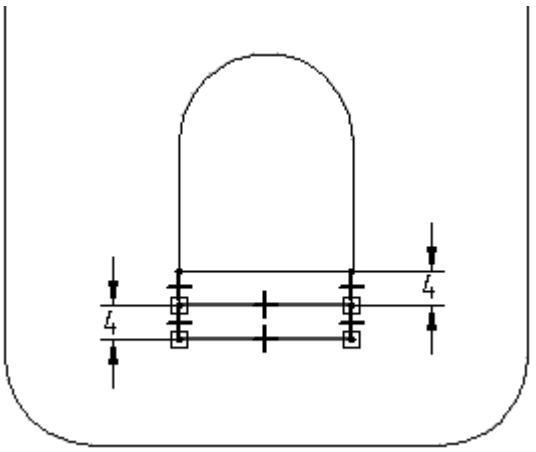
Add another cutout. Since the part is thin walled, the additional cutout is not thin walled unless it is constructed before the thin wall step. The following steps

demonstrate how to go back in the creation process to a point before the thin wall had been applied and place another cutout.

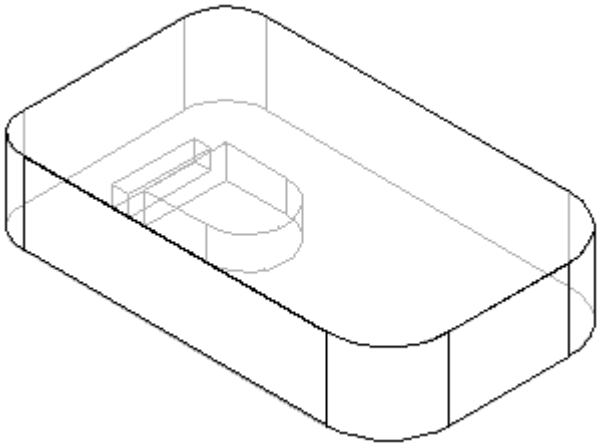
- Change display to Visible and Hidden Edges.
- Choose the Select Tool.
- In PathFinder, right-click on the feature named *Cutout 1*, and on the shortcut menu, select the GoTo command.
- Choose the Cut command and use QuickPick to select the reference plane shown.



- Draw the rectangular profile.



- Click Close Sketch and project the cutout upward 5 using the Finite Extent option.

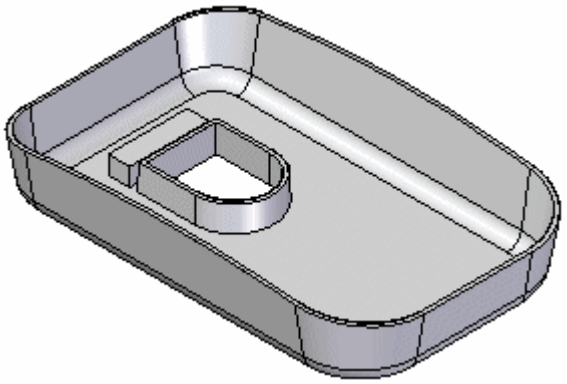


- Click Finish.

> **Note**
>
> Since this cutout was placed before the thin wall feature, use the GoTo command to apply the thin wall to the new cutout.

- Choose the Select Tool.

- Right-click on the last feature listed in Feature PathFinder, and select the GoTo option from the shortcut menu. The part returns to the thin wall state. The cutout just constructed has thin wall sides because it was placed before the thin wall feature.

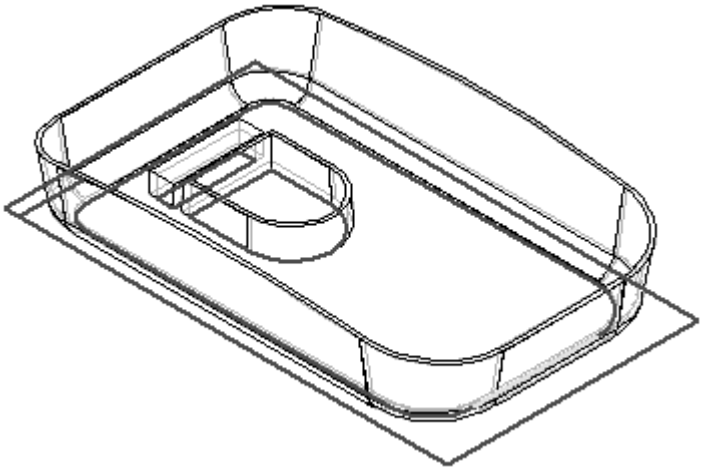


Add mounting boss features

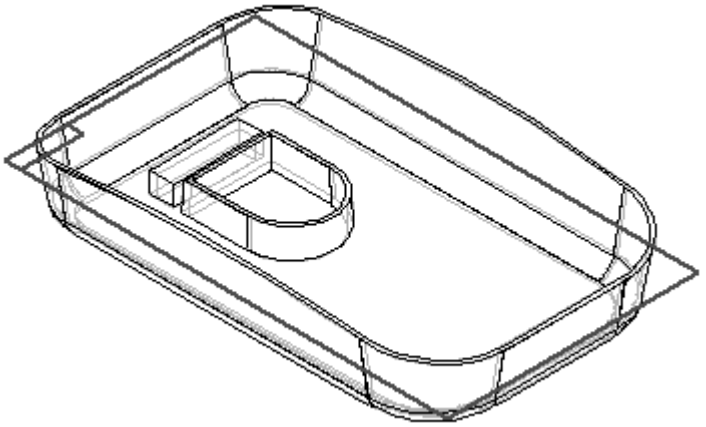
- In the Solids group, choose the Mounting Boss command on the Thin Wall drop list.

- On the Mounting Boss command bar, click the Parallel Plane option.

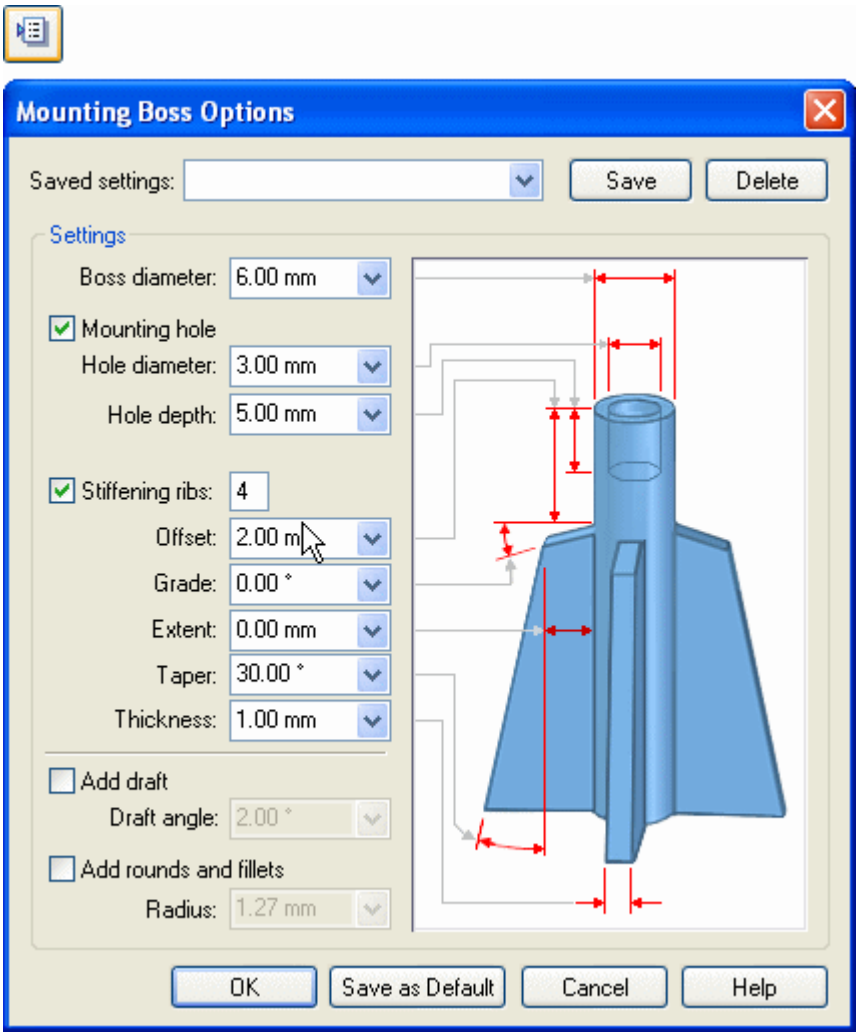
- Select the bottom plane as shown.



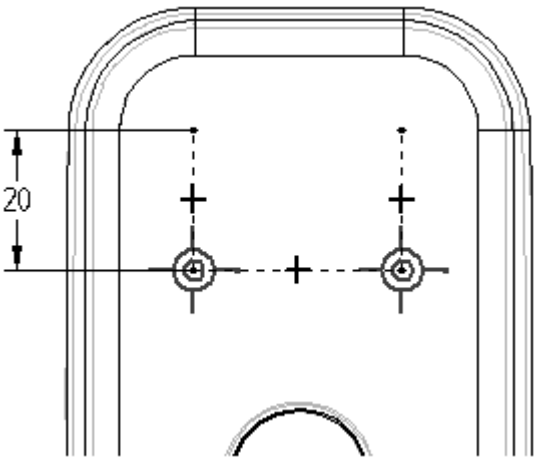
- On the command bar, type 10 in the Distance field. Position the parallel plane above the bottom plane as shown and click.



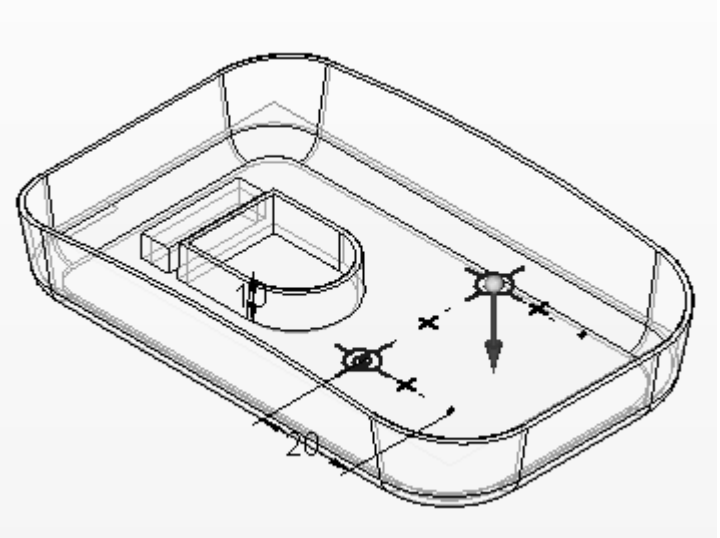
- On the command bar, click the Mounting Boss Options button and set the Mounting Boss Options as shown and click OK.



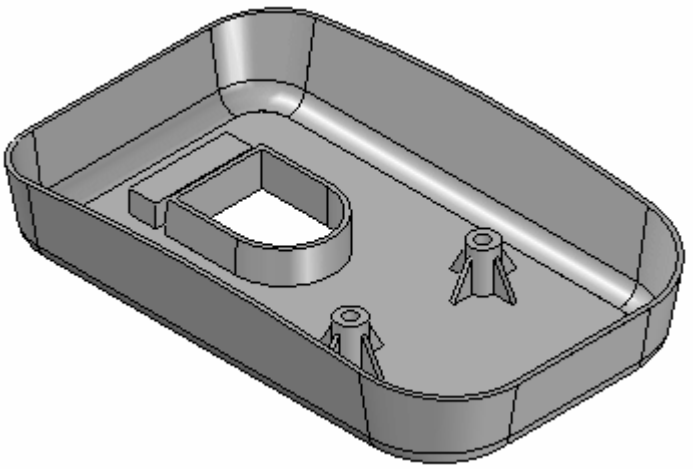
- Position the bosses as shown and then click Close Sketch.



- Define the extent direction as shown.



- Click Finish.



- Save the document and close the file. This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to add draft to some of the faces of a molded part. You learned how use the GoTo command to insert a feature at a desired location within Feature Pathfinder. You learned to place bosses using the Mounting Boss command.

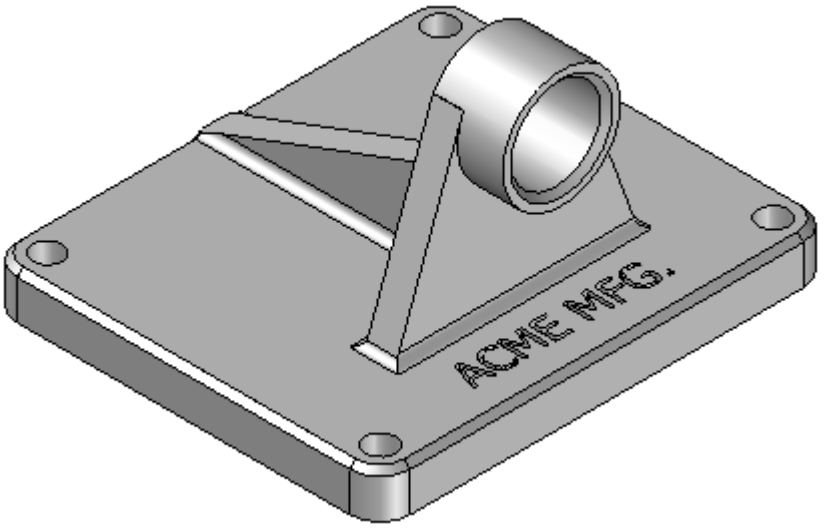
Embossing text on a part

This activity covers the procedure of embossing text characters onto a simple model of a casting.

Activity: Embossing text

Overview

This activity covers the procedure of embossing text characters onto a simple model of a casting.



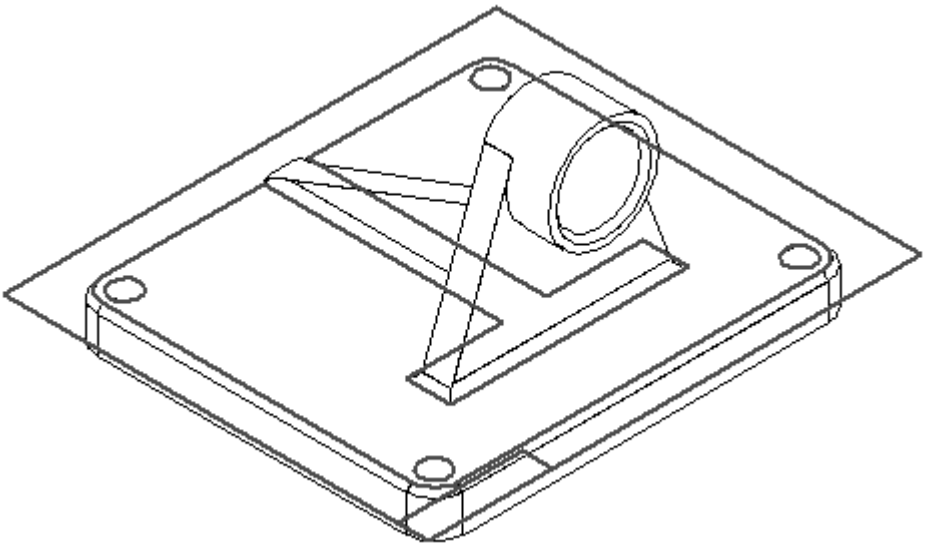
- Open *support.par*.

Create a sketch containing the text profile

To emboss text on a part, create a sketch containing the text profile.

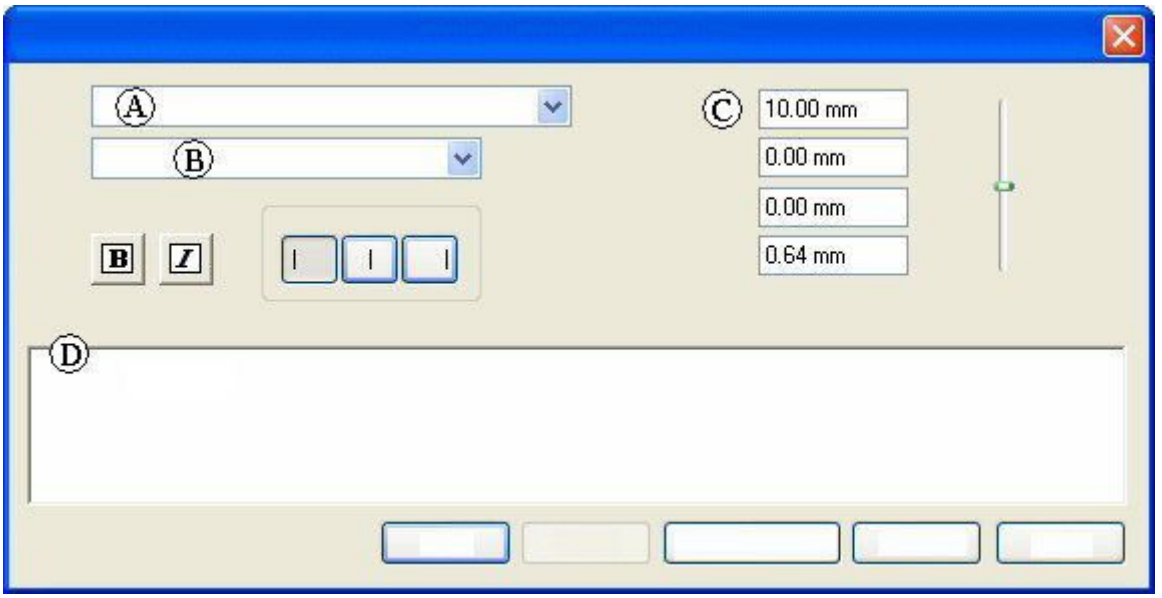
- Choose the Sketch command .

- Select the face shown for the sketch plane.

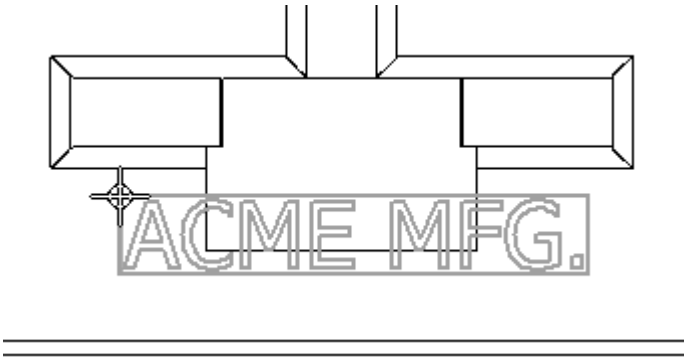


- On the Tools tab® Insert group, choose the Text Profile command .

- In the Text dialog box, set the values as shown. In the Font field (A), type Tahoma. In the Script field (B), type Arabic. In the Font size control fields (C), set the values shown. In the Text box (D), type *ACME MFG.* and click OK.



- Position the text in the approximate position shown, and click.

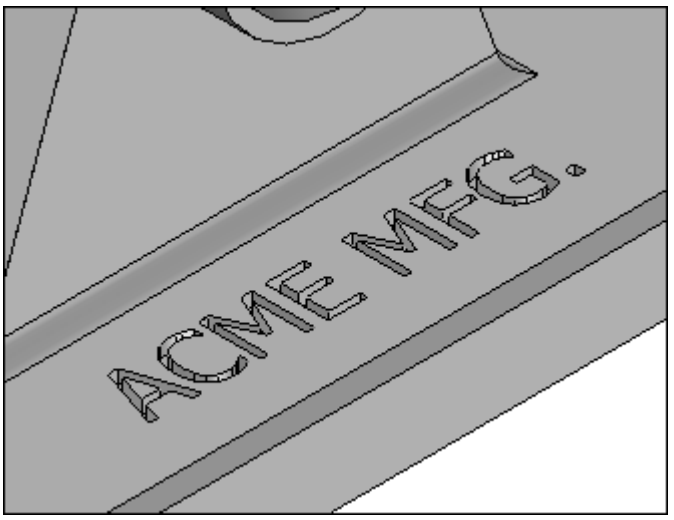


- Click Close Sketch to complete the profile.
- Click Finish.

Cut the text profile from part

Use the Cut command and the text sketch created in the previous step to remove material from the part.

- Choose the Cut command.
- On command bar, click the Select from Sketch option.
- Select the sketch (text) and click the Accept button.
- In the distance box, type 2 and press the Enter key.
- Click below the profile to extend the text into the part.
- Click Finish to complete the cutout.
- Hide all sketches.



- Save the file as *myblock.par*.

- Close the file. This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create and add embossed text to a part.

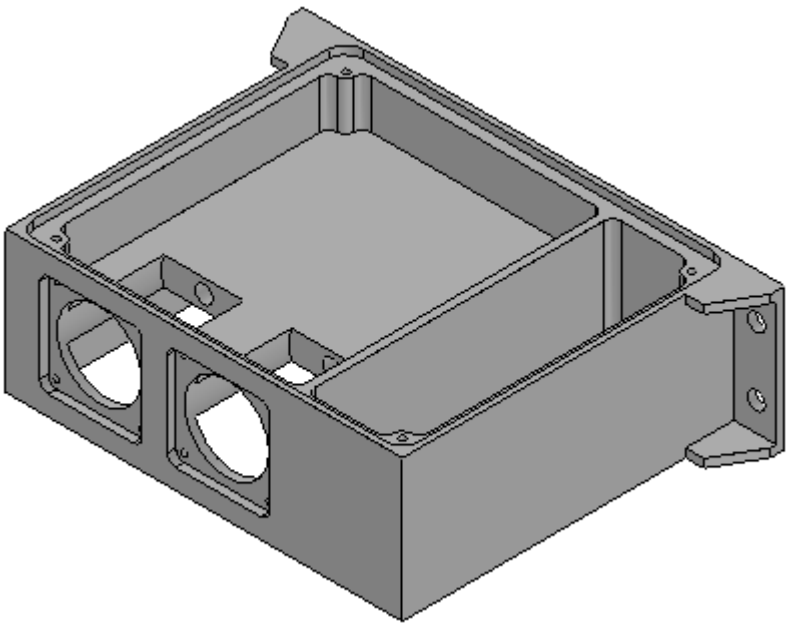
Modeling a machined part

This activity uses treatment feature commands, cutouts, rounds, patterns, mirror copied features, ribs, lip and hole. This activity is advanced and it might take a while to complete. There is a stopping point in the activity you can decide to continue or finish later. Pay careful attention to the instructions and illustrations.

Activity: Modeling a machined part

Overview

This activity uses ordered treatment feature commands, cutouts, rounds, patterns, mirror copied features, ribs, lip and hole. This activity is advanced and it might take a while to complete. There is a stopping point in the activity where the you can decide to continue or finish later. Pay careful attention to the instructions and illustrations.



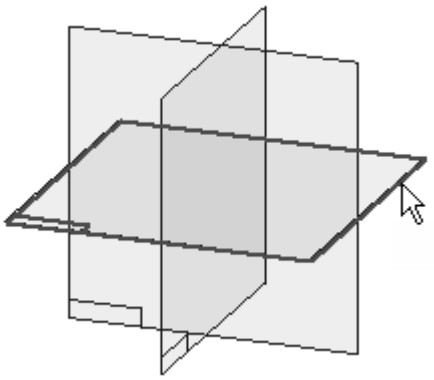
- Open a new ISO part file. Save the file as *machine01.par*.
- Make sure you are in the ordered environment.

Create the base feature

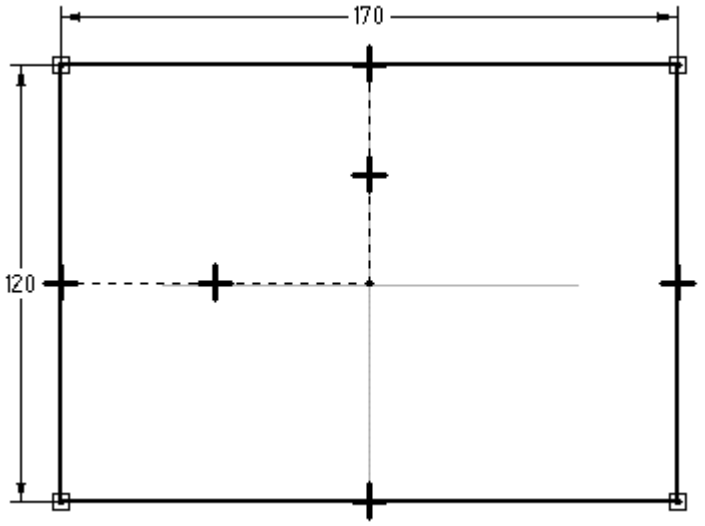
Begin the activity by creating a rectangular extrusion as the base feature for this part.

- In PathFinder, turn off the display of the base coordinate system. Turn on the display of the base reference planes.
- Choose the Extrude command.

- For the plane step, select the reference plane shown.

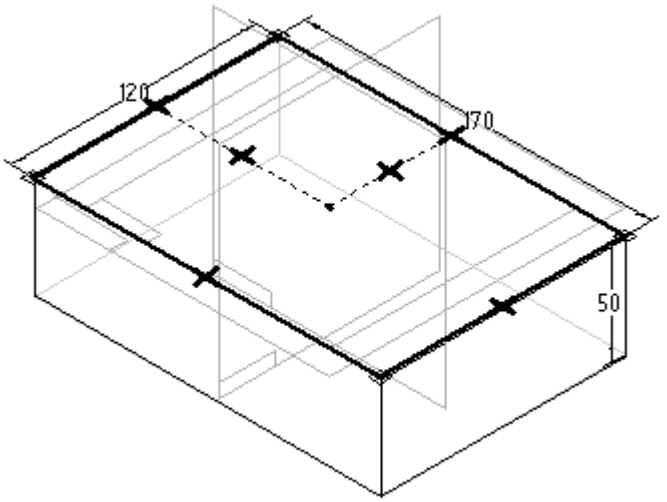


- Draw the profile and center the profile at the intersection of the default reference planes.



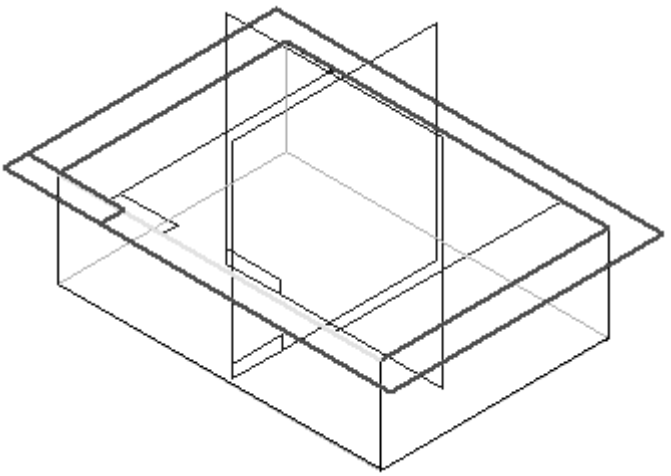
- Choose Close Sketch.

- Extrude the profile 50 mm below the reference plane and click Finish

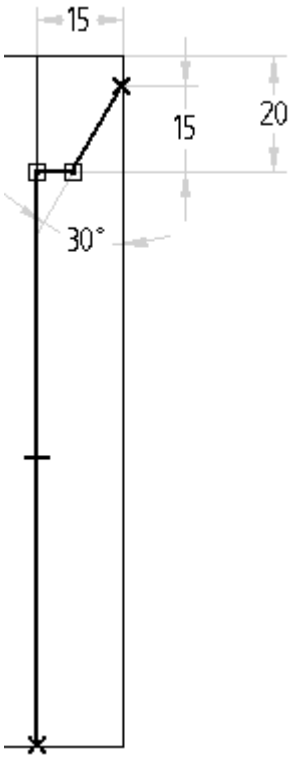


Add a cutout to the base feature

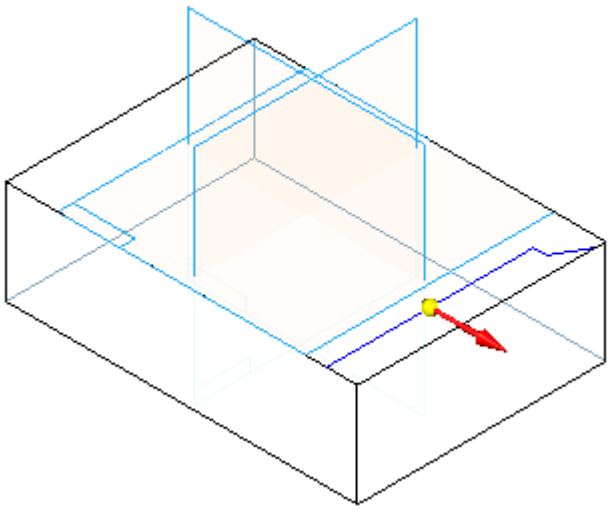
- Choose the Cut command.
- Select the Coincident Plane option and orient the plane as shown.



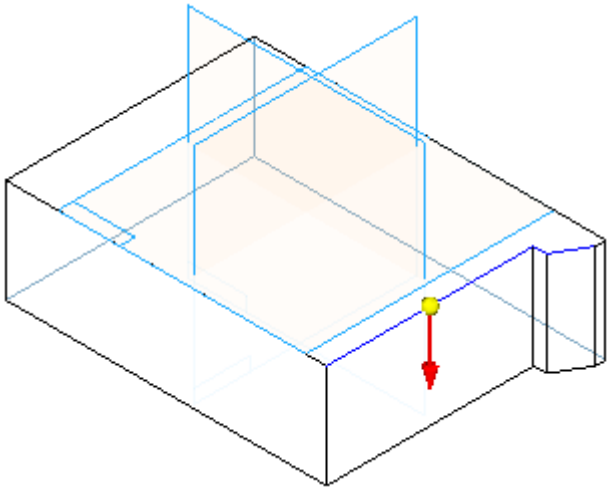
- On the right side of the part, draw the profile.



- Choose Close Sketch.
- Click as shown for direction to remove material.



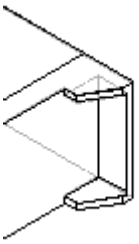
- For the Extent step, on the command bar, select the Through All option and click the direction as shown.



- Click Finish.

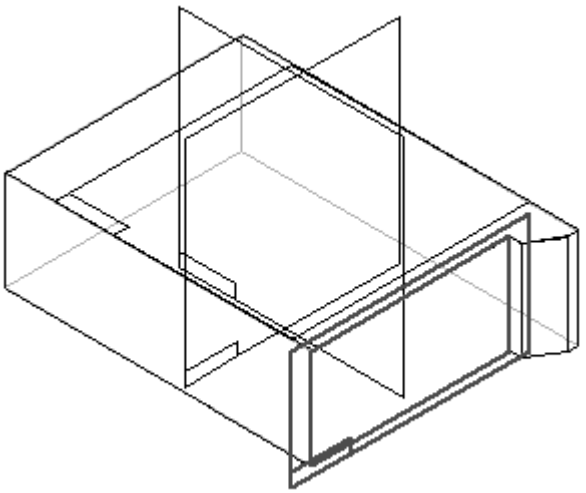
Create a cutout

Create a second cutout on a side face created by the cutout in the previous step. The cutout looks like the one shown.

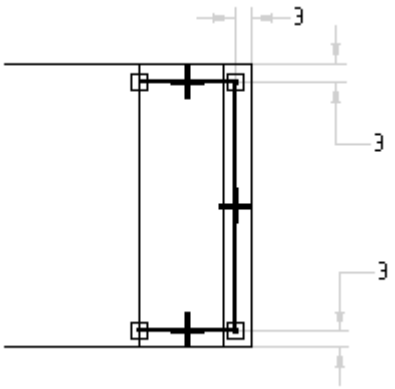


- Choose the Cut command.

- For the profile plane, select the right surface shown using the Coincident Plane option on the command bar.

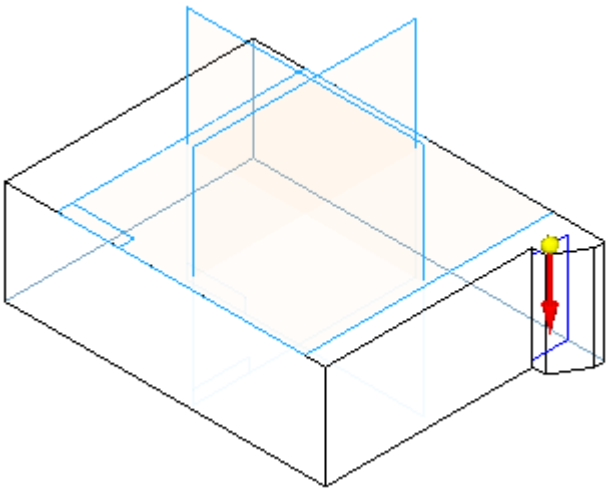


- Draw the open profile.

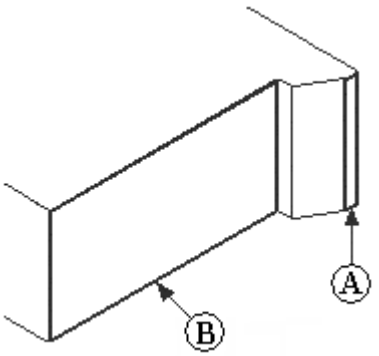


- Choose Close Sketch.

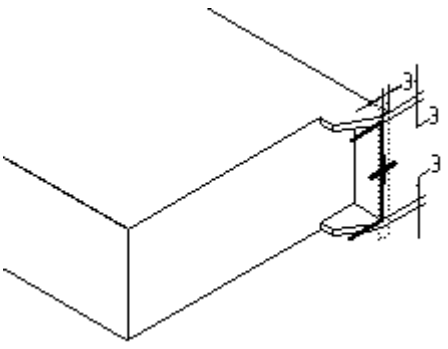
- For the Side step, position the cursor so the arrow points to the inside of the profile, as shown, and click.



- For the Extent Step, on the command bar, click the From/To Extent button. Make the depth of the cutout from surface (A) to surface (B).

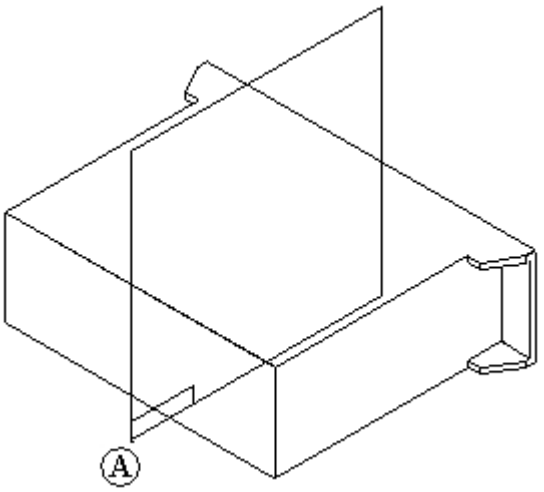


- Click Finish.

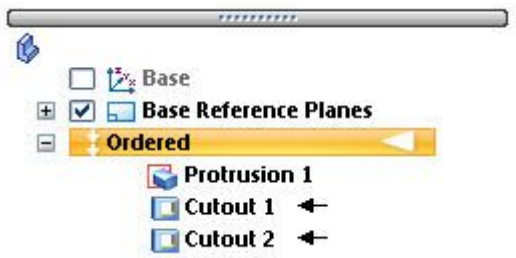


Mirror cutouts

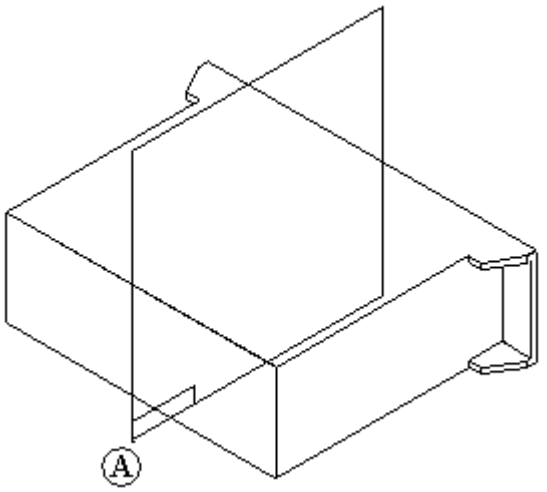
Mirror the cutouts created in the previous two steps about reference plane (A). Using this reference plane, which lies at the center of the part, ensures that the two cutouts are mirrored symmetrically on the opposite side of the part.



- In the Pattern group, on the Mirror drop list, choose the Mirror Copy Feature command .
- On command bar, click the Smart button.
- Select the two cutout features in PathFinder and click the Accept button.



- For the plane to mirror about, select reference plane (A).

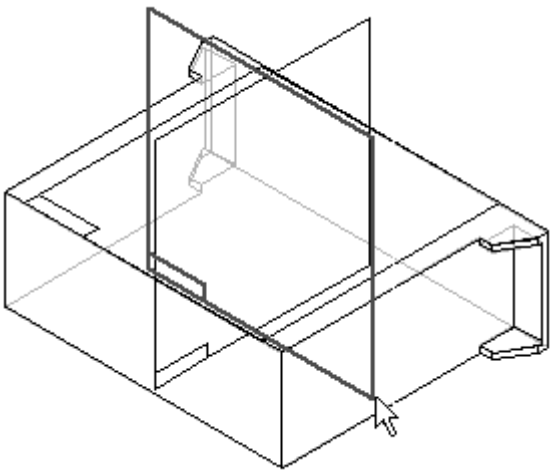


- Click Finish.

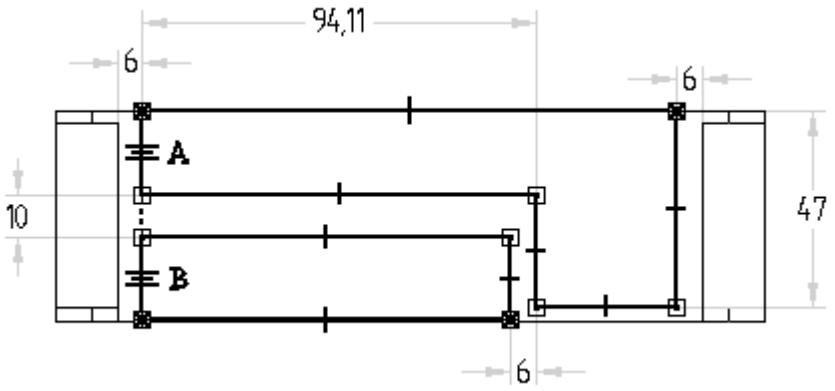
Create a cutout

Create a cutout using two profiles created in a single profile step. This allows removing or adding material of a complex shape in a single step.

- Choose the Cut command.
- Select the reference plane shown.

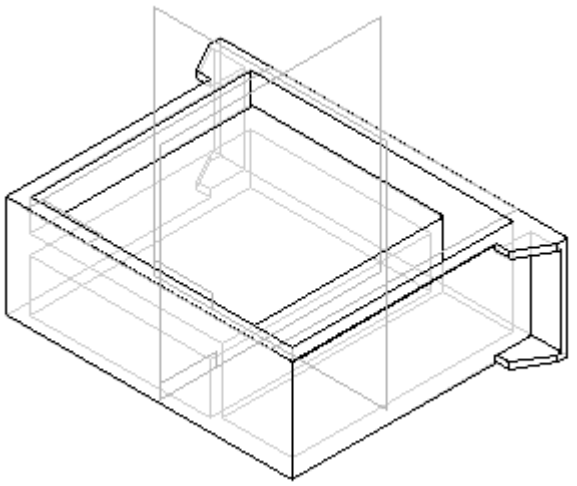


- Draw and dimension the two profiles as shown. The top and bottom lines are coincident with the part edges. Notice that lines A and B have equal relationships applied.



- Click Close Sketch.

- For the extent step, use the Through All extent and click the Symmetric Extent button. Type 108 in the Distance field and press Enter.



- Click Finish.

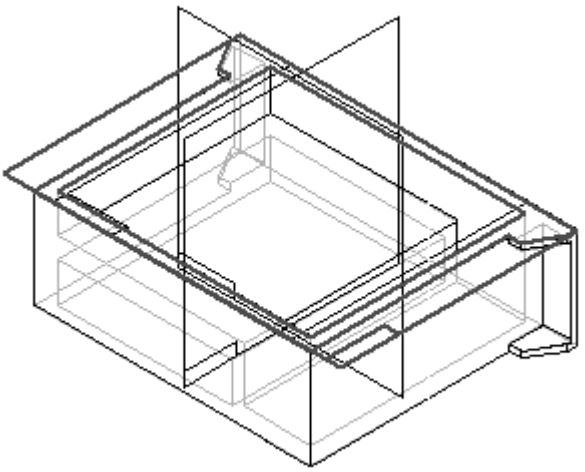
Construct a rib

Construct a rib to strengthen the interior of the part.

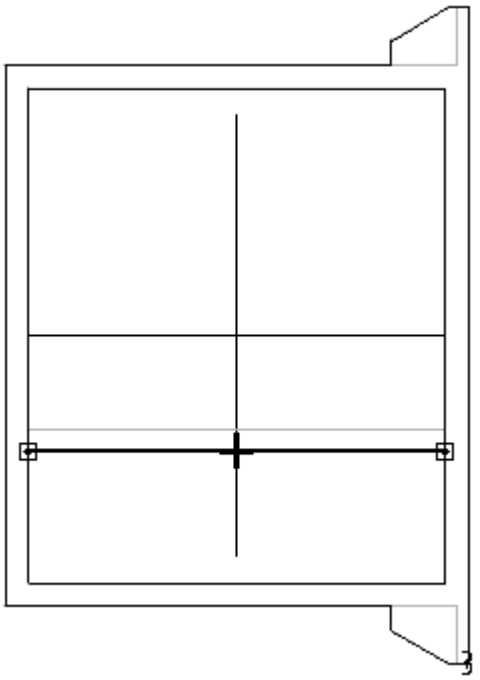
- In the Solids group, on the Thin Wall drop list, choose the Rib command .

- On command bar, click the Parallel Plane option.

- Select the top face as shown.

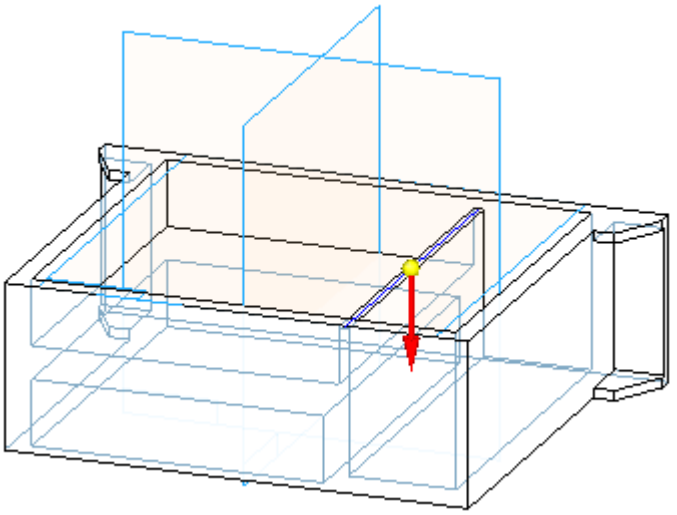


- On the command bar, type 3 and position the cursor so the parallel plane is placed below the top face and click.
- Draw the rib profile. Looking down from the top of the model, the profile endpoints are connected to the cutout edges.

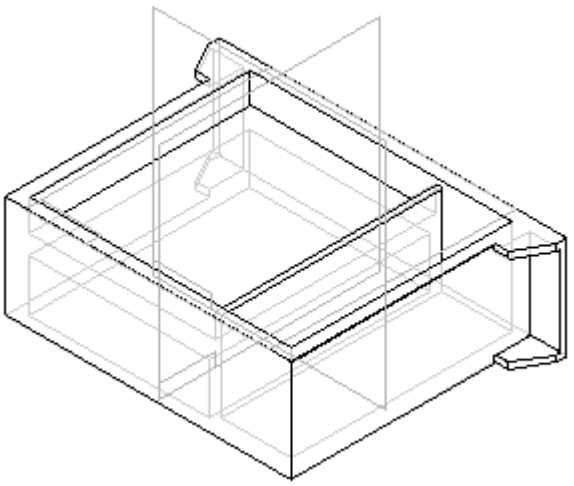


- Choose Close Sketch.
- On the command bar, type 3 for rib thickness.

- Select the direction shown.



- Click Finish.

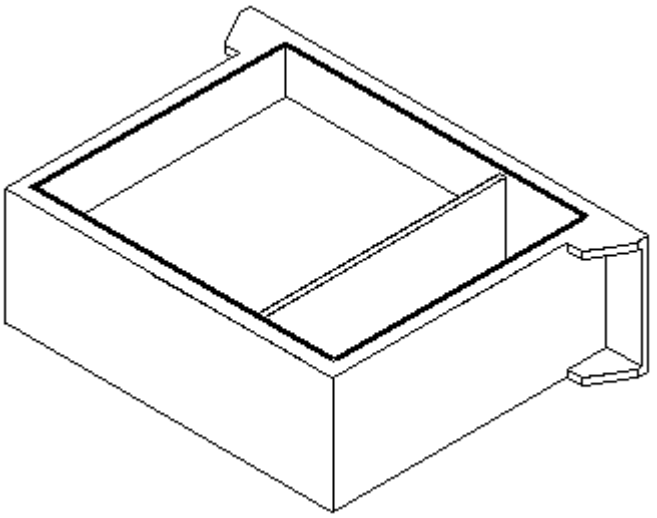


Create a groove

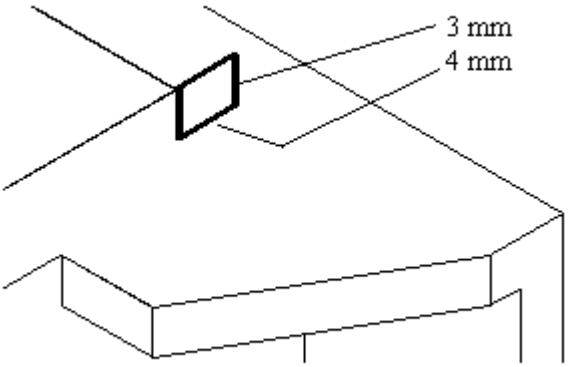
Create a groove around the top inside edge of the part. Use the Lip command. Use this command to add material to create lips or remove material to create grooves.

- On the Thin Wall drop list, choose the Lip command .

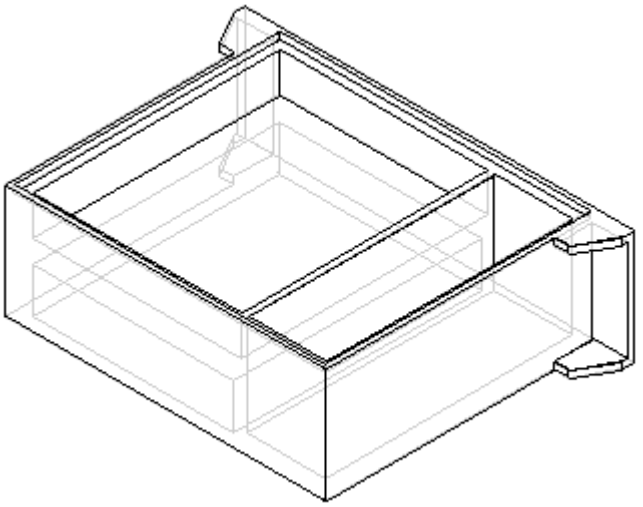
- Select the four edges shown and then click the Accept button.



- On the command bar, type 4 for the width and 3 for the height. Use the Zoom command to adequately see this rectangle. This rectangle defines whether material will be added to create a lip or removed to create a groove. Position the rectangle as shown to create the groove.



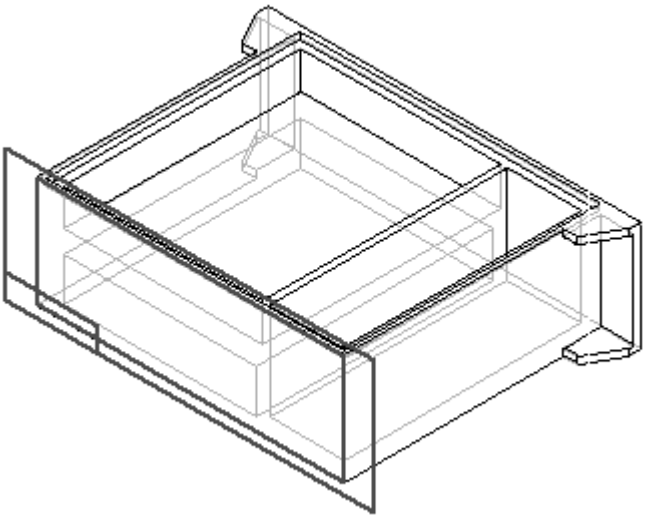
- Click Finish.



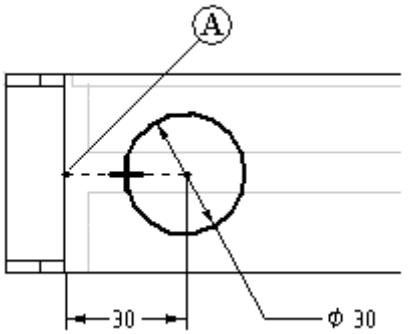
Create circular cutout

Create a circular-shaped cutout and remove a finite amount of material from the part. The Hole command could be used here, however in this step the Cut command and a circular profile is used.

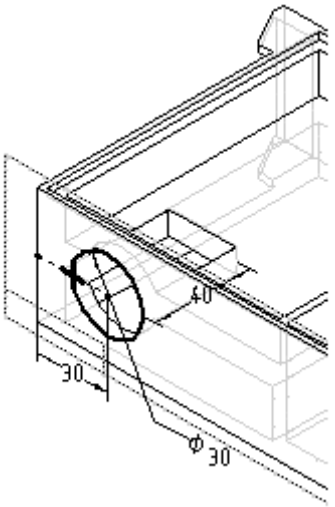
- Choose the Cut command.
- Select the profile plane as shown.



- Draw and dimension the profile. Center the circle on midpoint of line (A).



- Choose Close Sketch.
- In the Distance box, type 40 for the extent and position the cutout into the part.



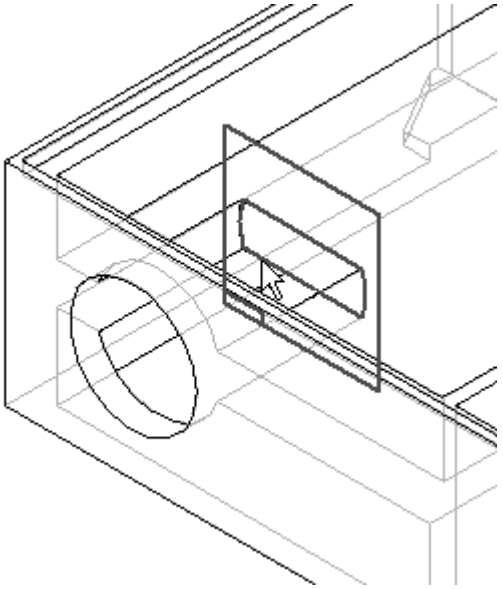
- Click Finish.

Construct a hole

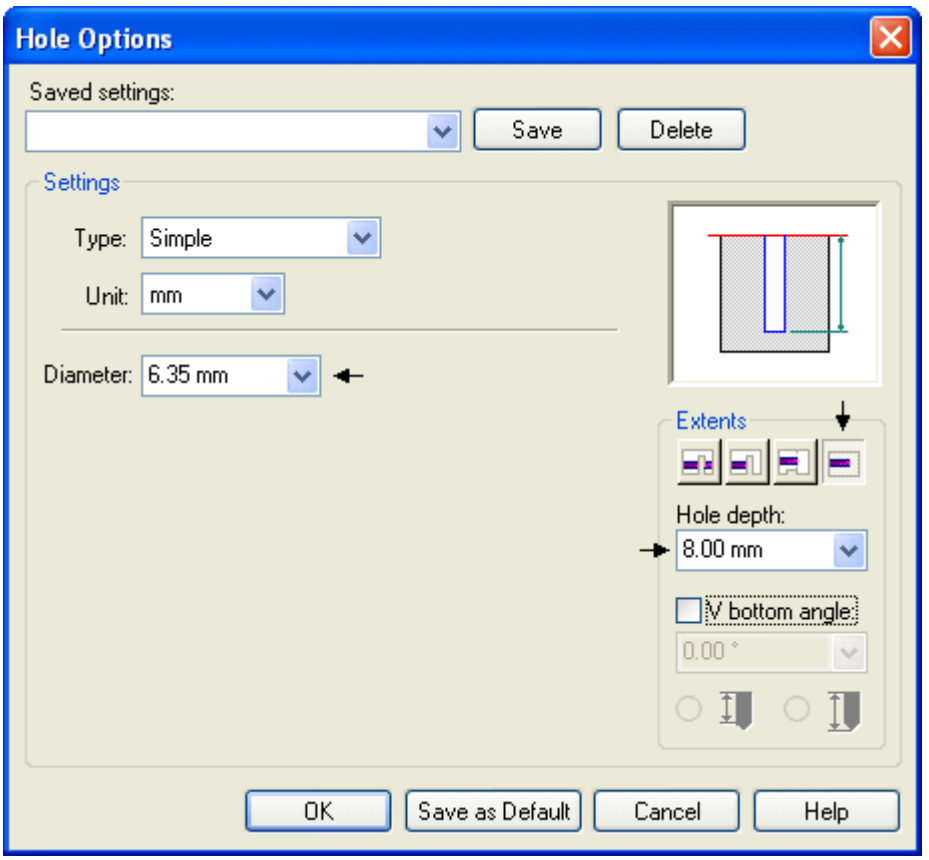
Construct a hole at the rear of the cutout created in the previous step.

- Choose the Hole command .

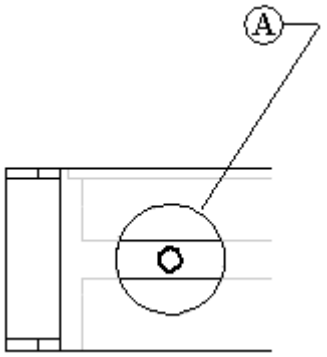
- Select the profile plane as shown.



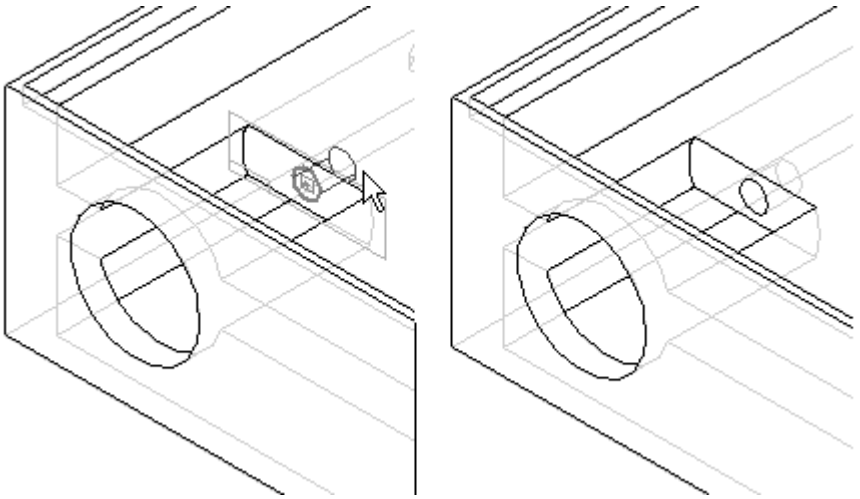
- On the command bar, click the Hole Options button . Type 6.35 for the Diameter, select the Finite extent and Hole Depth of 8. Click OK.



- Place the hole centered on circle (A).



- Choose Close Sketch.
- Position the extent to the right as shown and click.



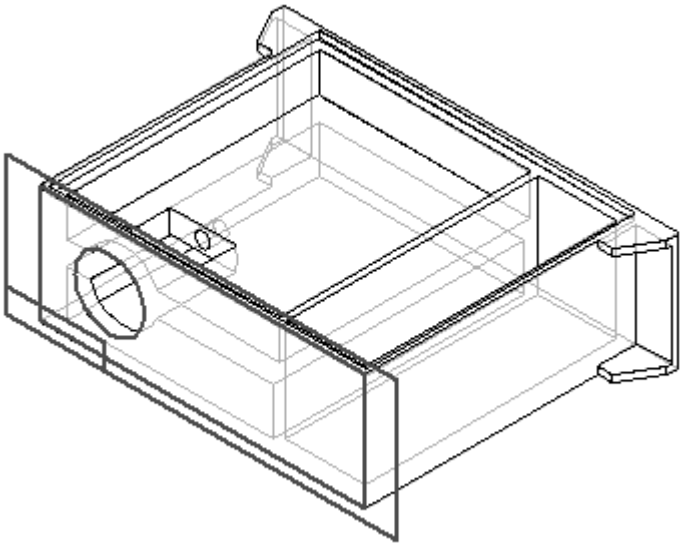
- Click Finish.

Create a cutout

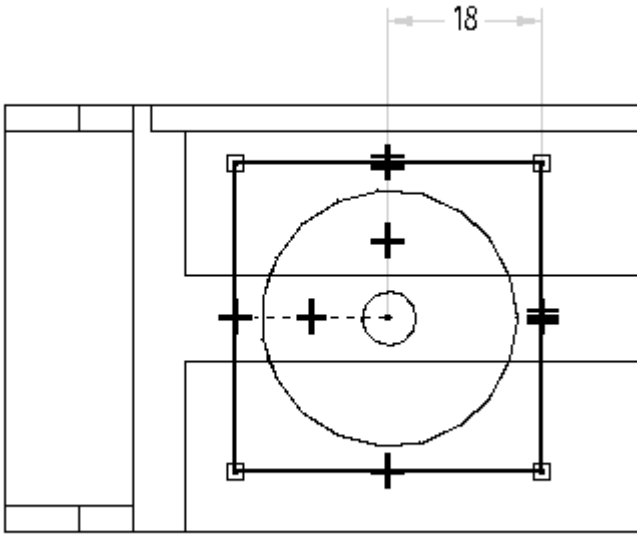
Create another cutout on the part. This cutout will surround the circular cutout created earlier.

- Choose the Cut command.

- Select the profile plane as shown.

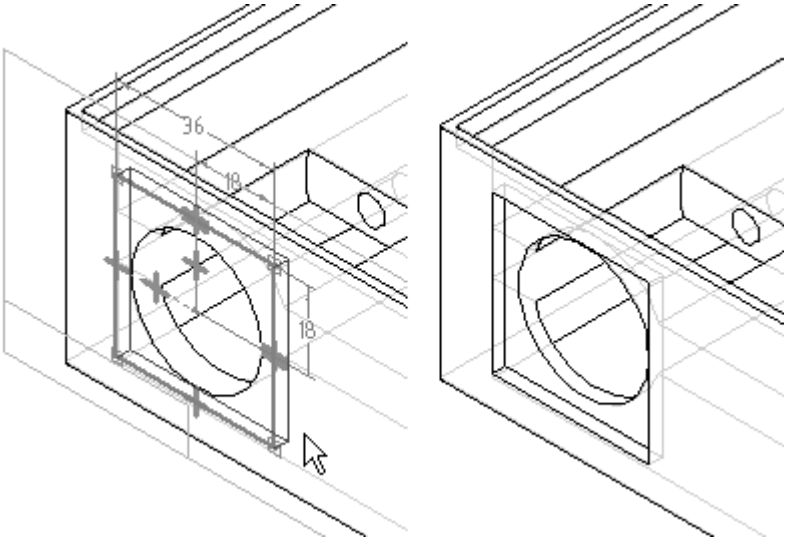


- Draw and dimension the profile. Use Horizontal/Vertical and Equal relationships to center the square profile around the circular cutout from the previous step.



- Choose Close Sketch.
- Click the Finite Extent button, and type 3 in the Distance field.

- Position the cursor so that material is removed from the part and click.

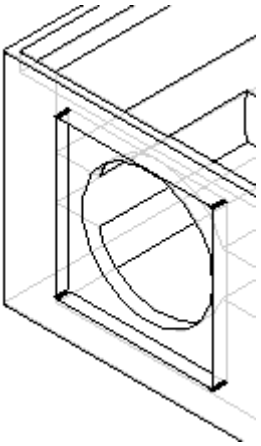


- Click Finish.

Add rounds

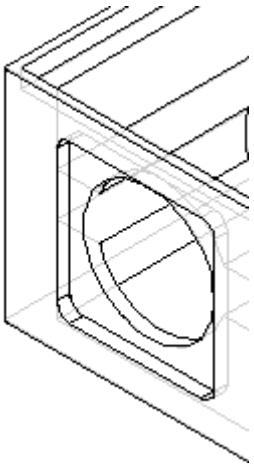
Add rounds to the cutout.

- Choose the Round command.
- Select the four edges as shown.



- Type 3 in the Radius field, and then click the Accept button.

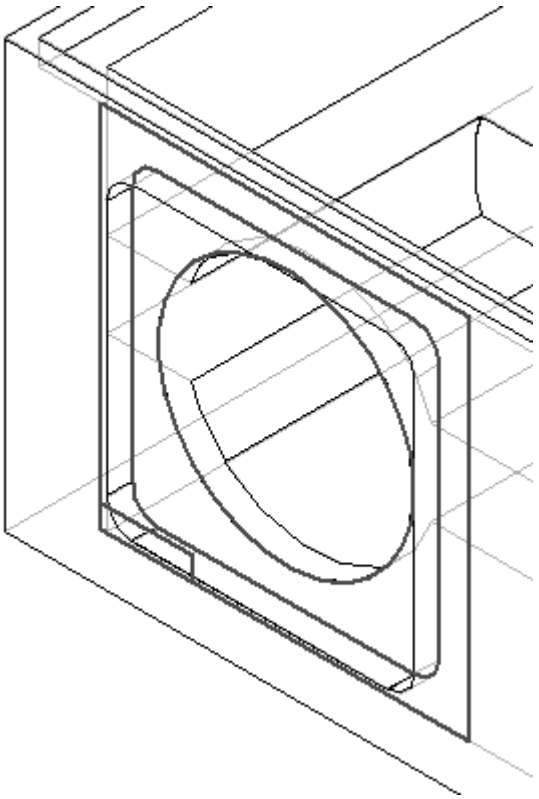
- Click Preview and Finish.



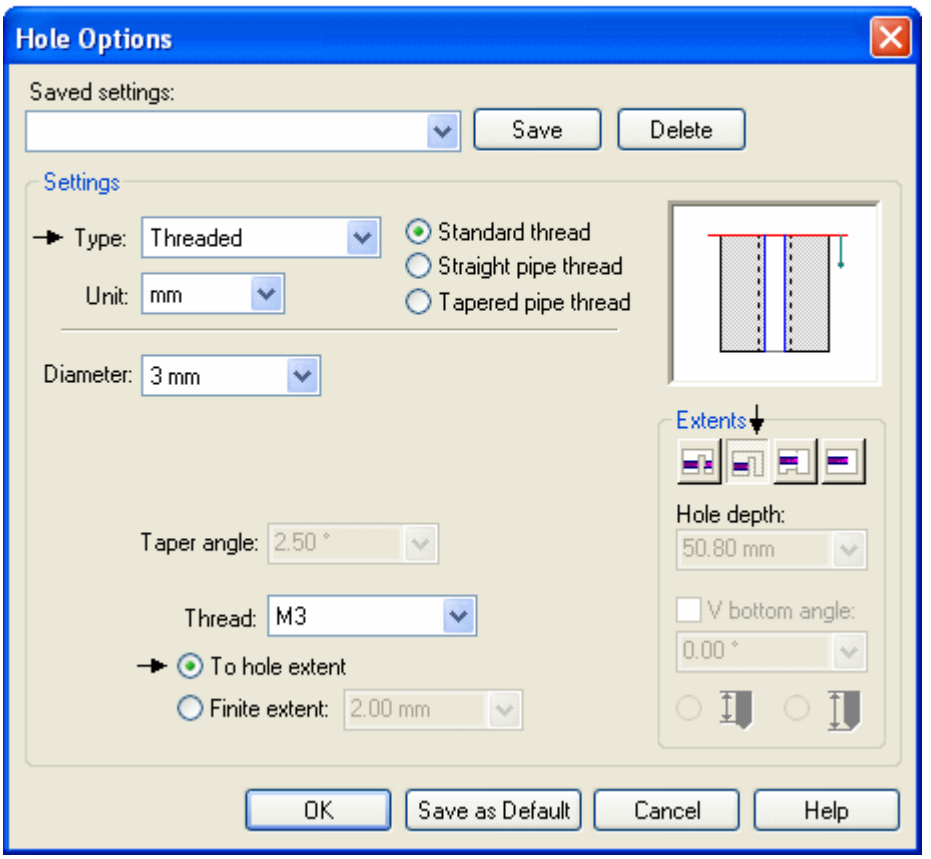
Add holes

Add a series of holes to the surface created by the rectangular cutout.

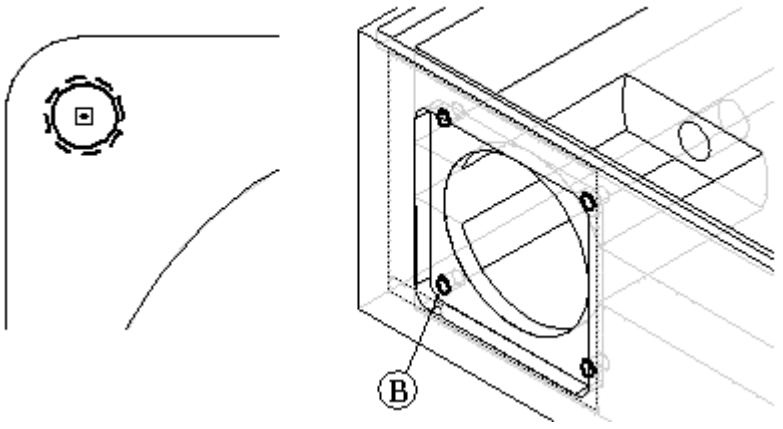
- Choose the Hole command.
- Select the profile plane as shown.



- Click the Hole Options button and set the options as shown. Click OK.

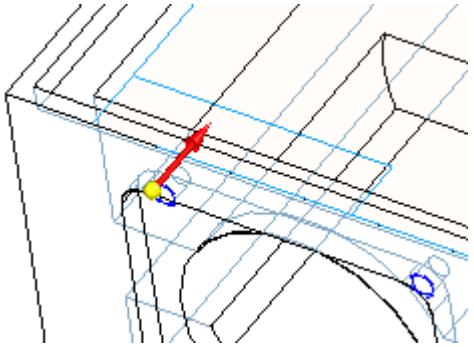


- Place four holes as shown (B). Center the holes on the rounds you created in the previous step. The dashed line around the hole profile indicates a threaded hole.

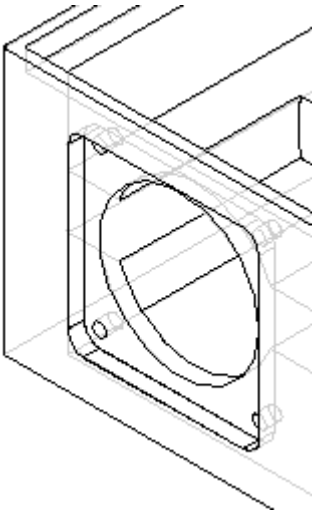


- Choose Close Sketch.

- Position the direction arrow to point towards the interior of the part and click.



- Click Finish.

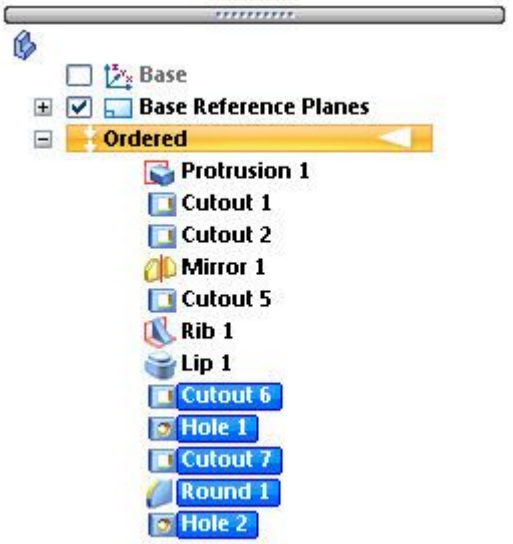


Create a pattern of features

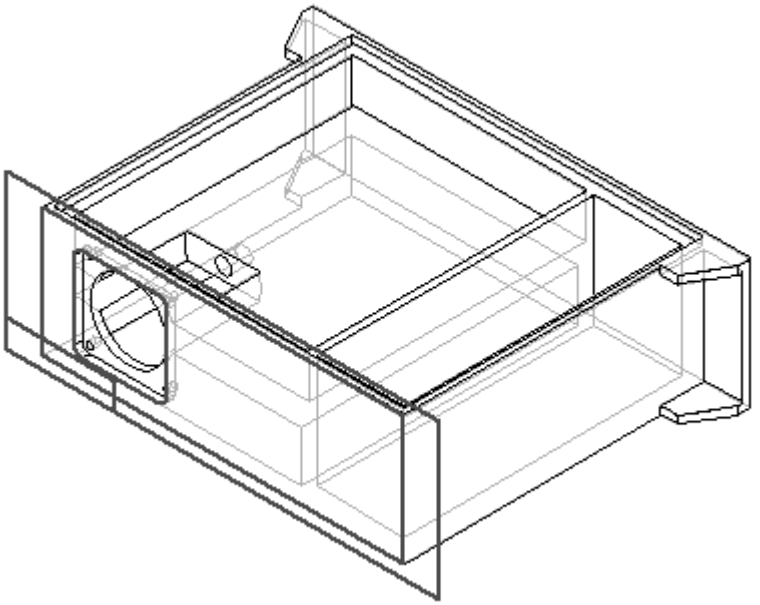
Pattern the five features, which include the circular cutout, single hole, square cutout, rounds, and series of four holes.

- Choose the Pattern command and on the command bar, click the Smart option.

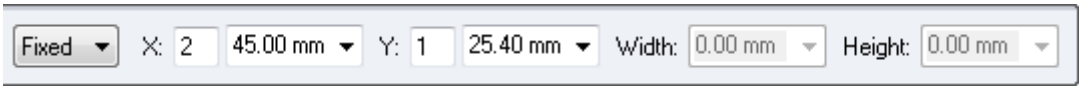
- Select the features shown below to pattern.



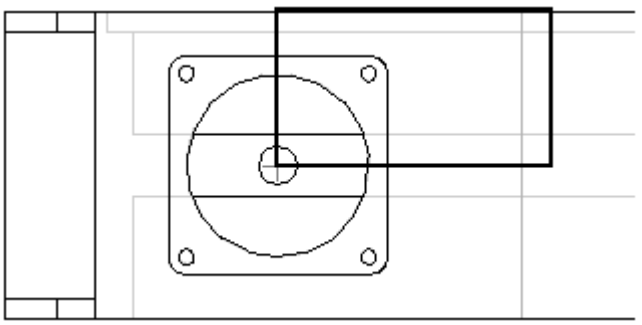
- Click the Accept button.
- Select the pattern reference plane as shown.



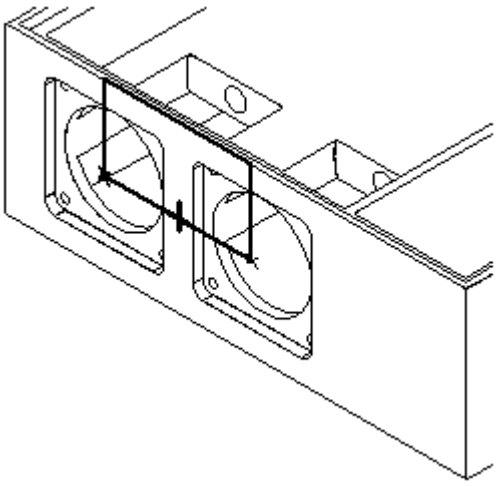
- On the command bar, type the following patterning parameter values.



- Define the pattern profile by selecting the first point in the center of the small hole and then position the rectangle as shown.



- Choose Close Sketch.



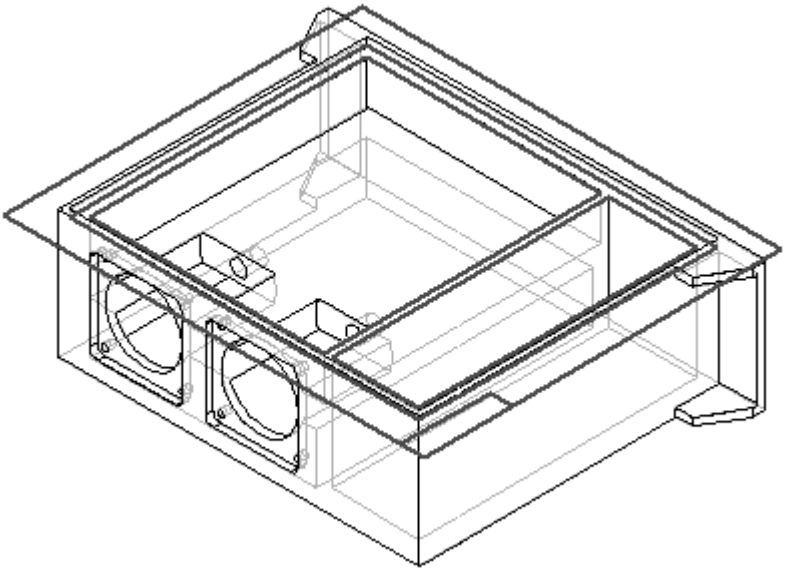
- Click Finish.

Create an extrusion

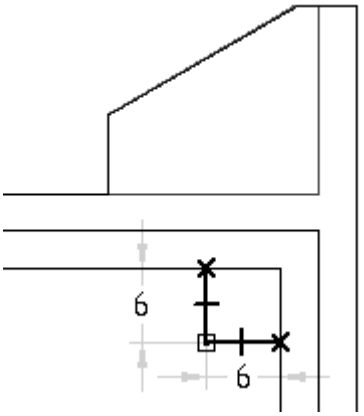
Use the Extrusion command to add material in the corner of the part. It serves as a boss for the model.

- Choose the Extrude command.

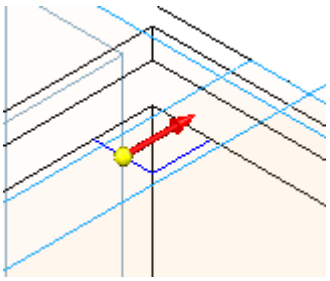
- Select the profile plane as shown.



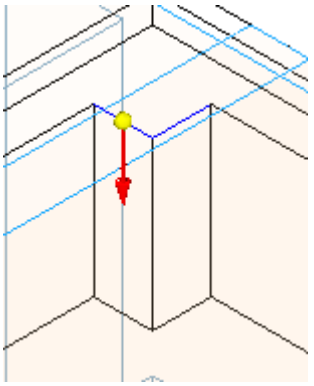
- Draw and dimension the profile.



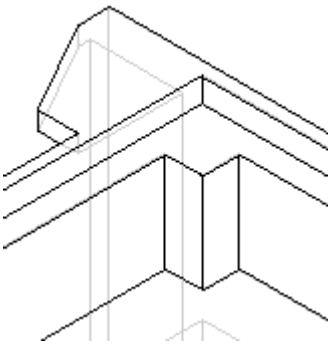
- Choose Close Sketch.
- Position the direction arrow as shown and click.



- For the extent step, on the command bar, click the Through Next button. Position the cursor so that the material is added below the profile as shown and click.



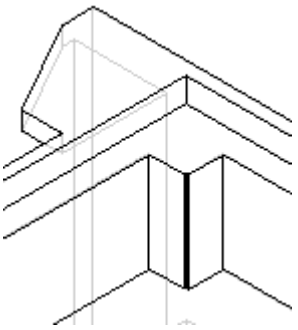
- Click Finish.



Apply a round

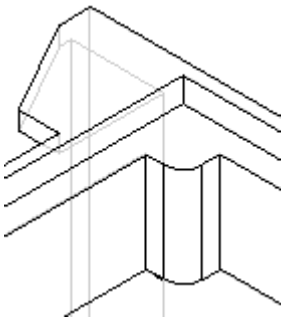
Apply a round to the material added in the previous step.

- Choose the Round command.
- Select the edge shown.



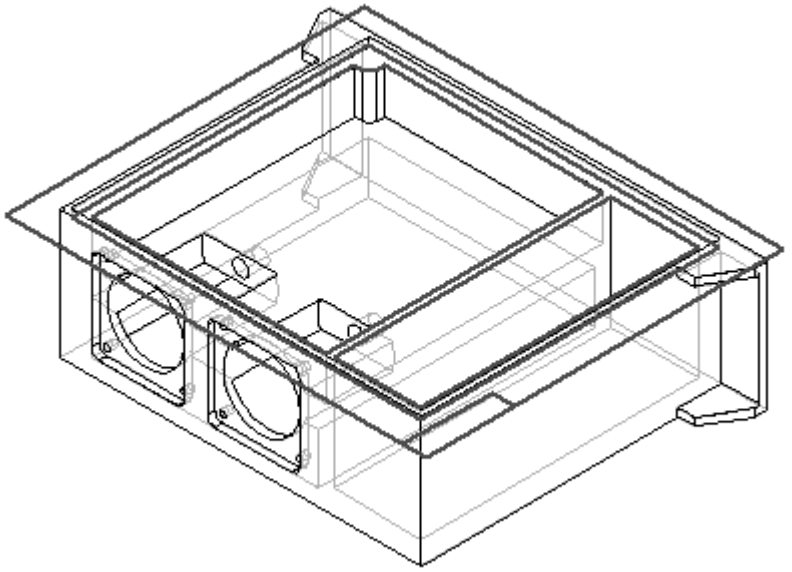
- Type 3 in the Radius field, and then click the Accept button.

- Click Preview and Finish.

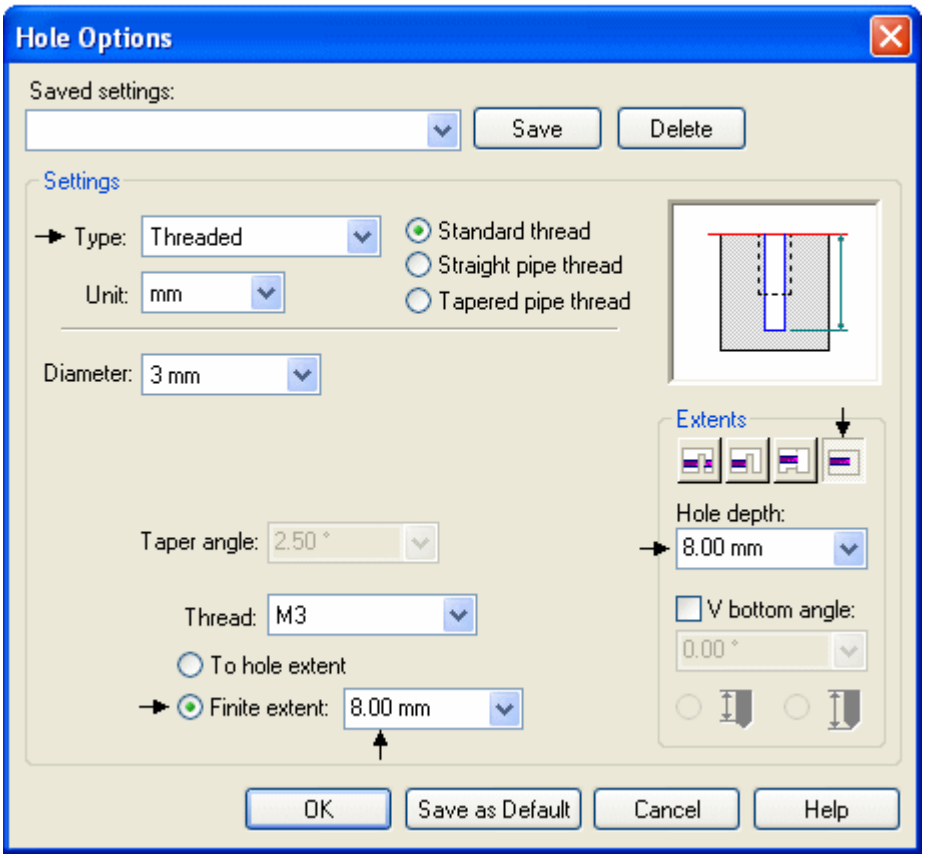


Add a threaded hole

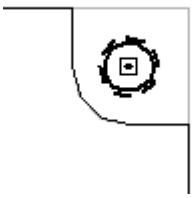
- Choose the Hole command.
- Select the profile plane as shown.



- Click the Hole Options button and set the options as shown. Click OK.

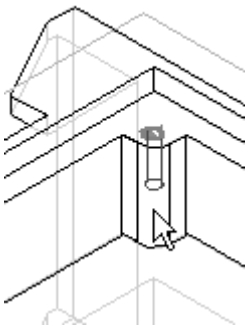


- Place the hole concentric with the arc.

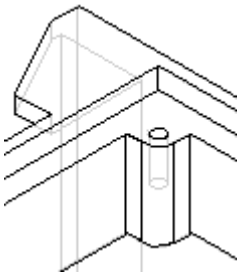


- Choose Close Sketch.

- Position the cursor so that the extent is defined as shown and click.



- Click Finish.

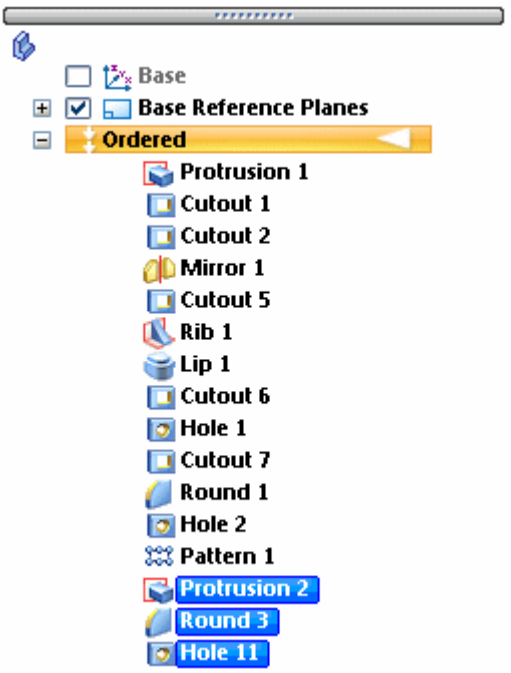


Mirror features

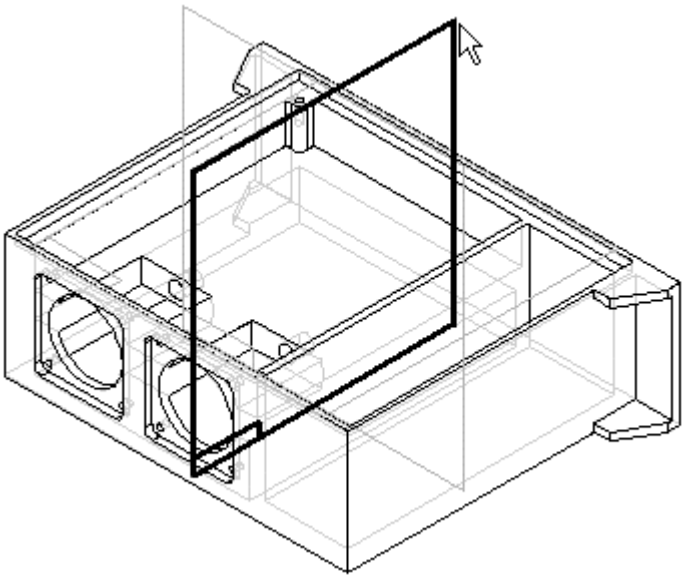
Mirror the features created in the previous steps. These include the rectangular boss, round, and hole.

- Choose the Mirror Copy Feature command.
- Click the Smart button.

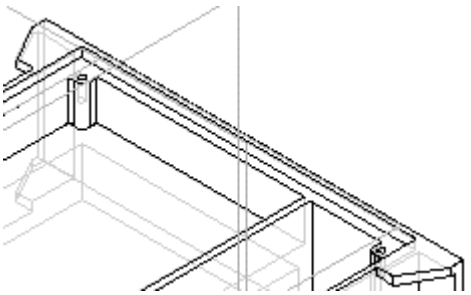
- In PathFinder, select the last three features constructed, protrusion, round and hole. Click the Accept button.



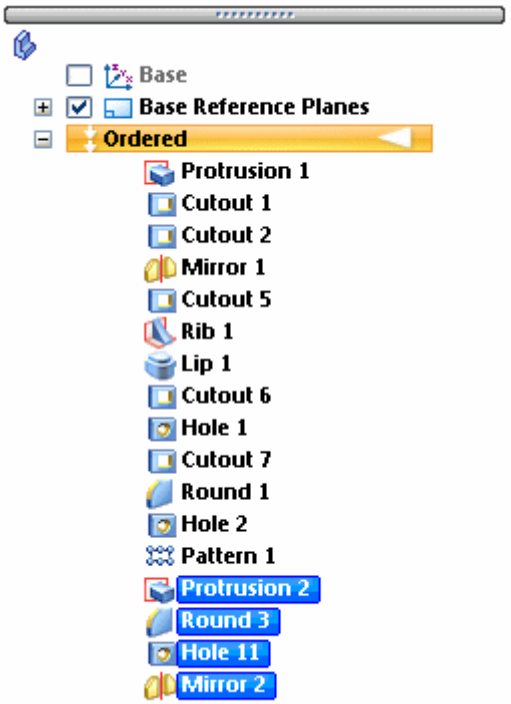
- Select the reference plane shown as the plane to mirror the features about.



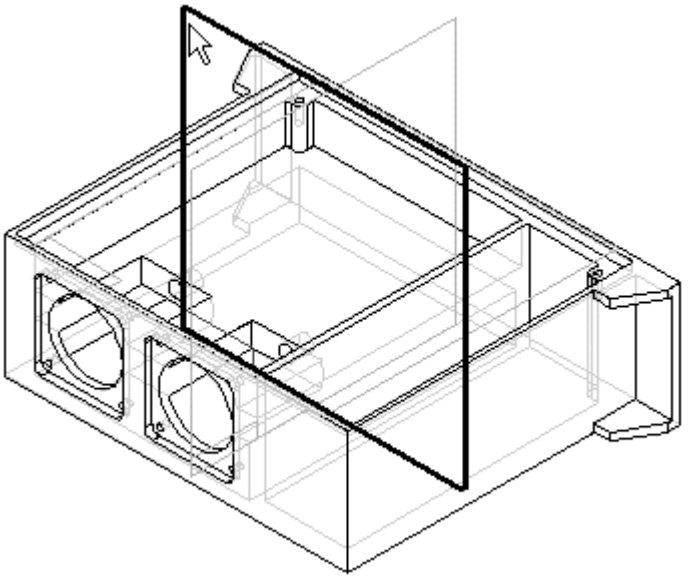
- Click Finish.



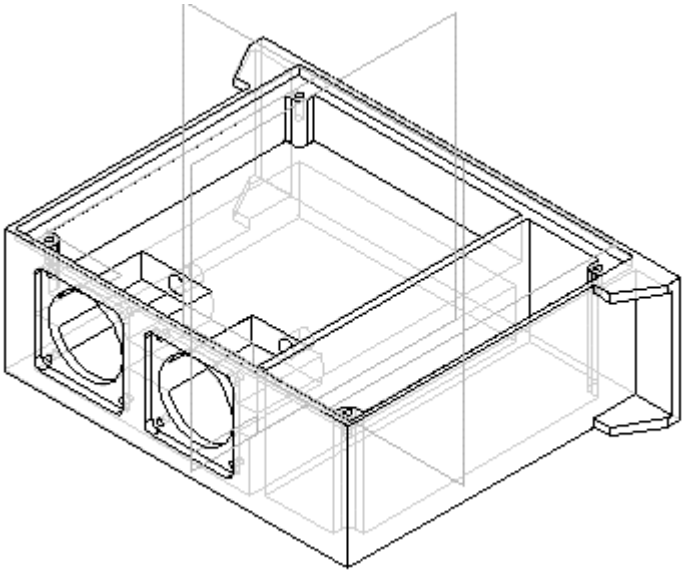
- Choose the Mirror Copy Feature command.
- Click the Smart button.
- In the PathFinder, select the protrusion, round, hole and mirror features. Click the Accept button.



- Select the reference plane shown as the plane to mirror the features about.



- Click Finish.



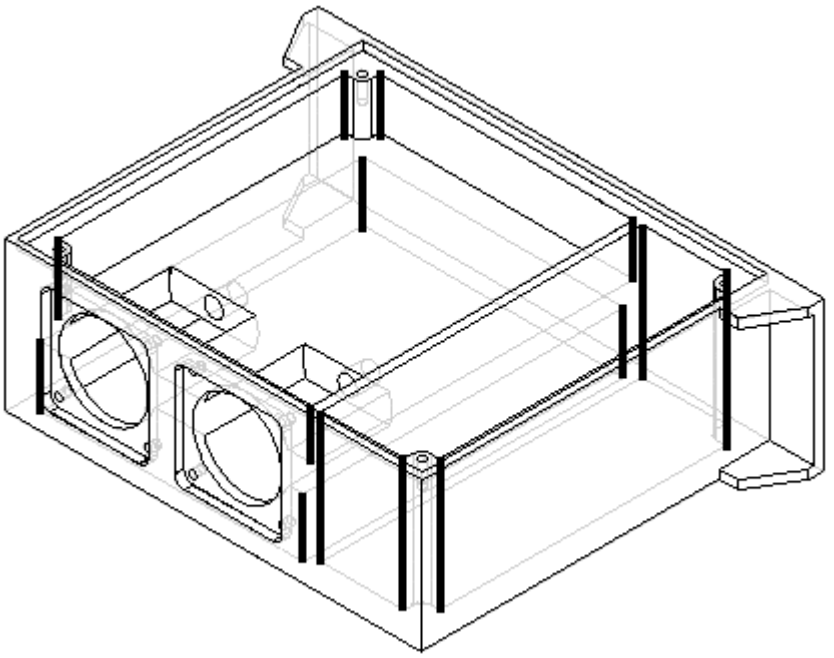
Note

In order to save time, you may stop at this point. The remainder of the activity covers adding more rounds and holes. Save the file at this point and finish later.

Add rounds to the inside edges

- Choose the Round command.

- Select the edges shown.



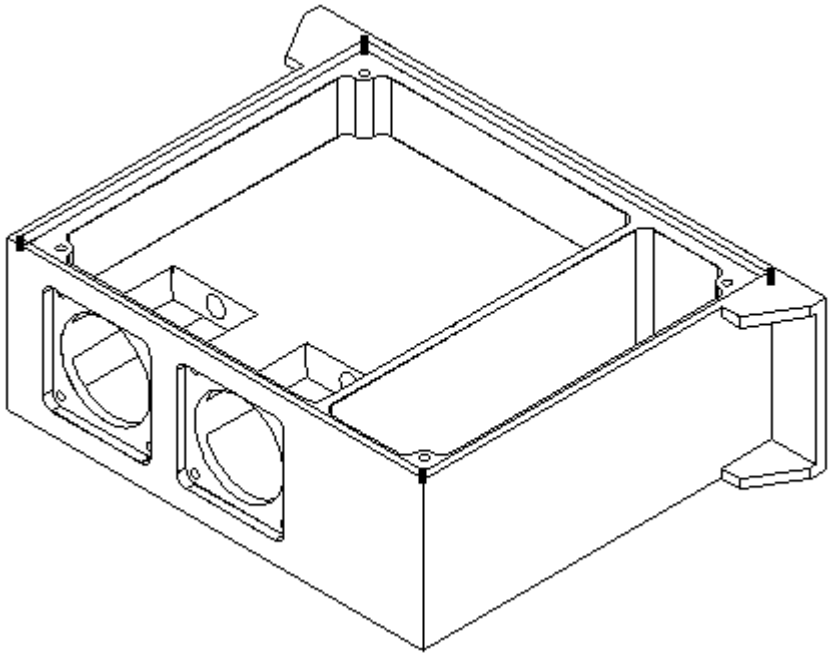
- Type 3 in the Radius field. Click the Accept button.
- Click Preview and Finish.

Add rounds

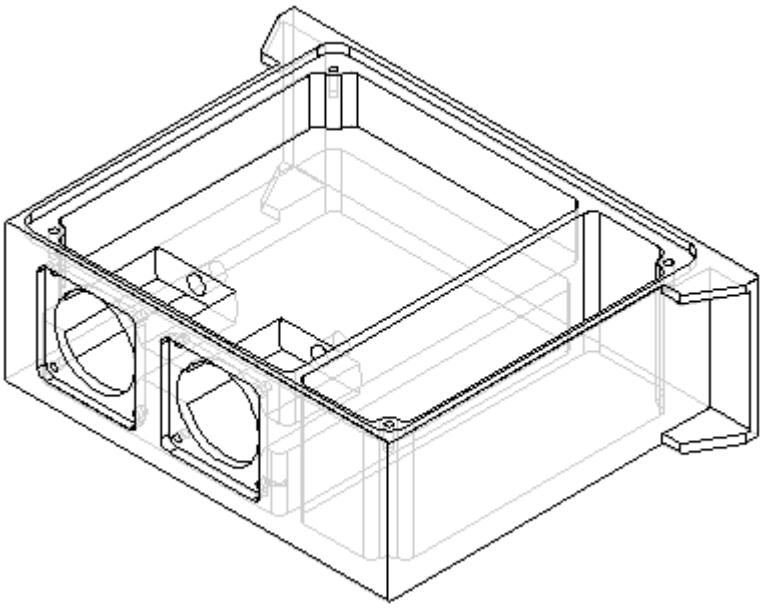
Add rounds to more of the interior edges of the part.

- Choose the Round command.

- Select the edges shown.



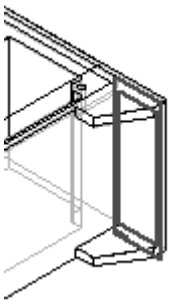
- Type 6 in the Radius field. Click the Accept button.
- Click Preview and Finish.



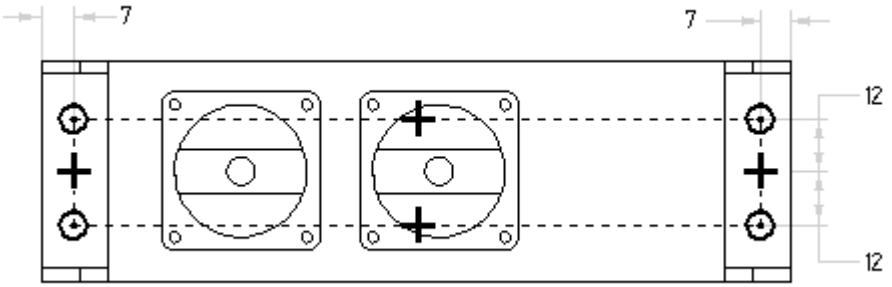
Add holes to the part

- Choose the Hole command.

- Select the profile plane as shown.

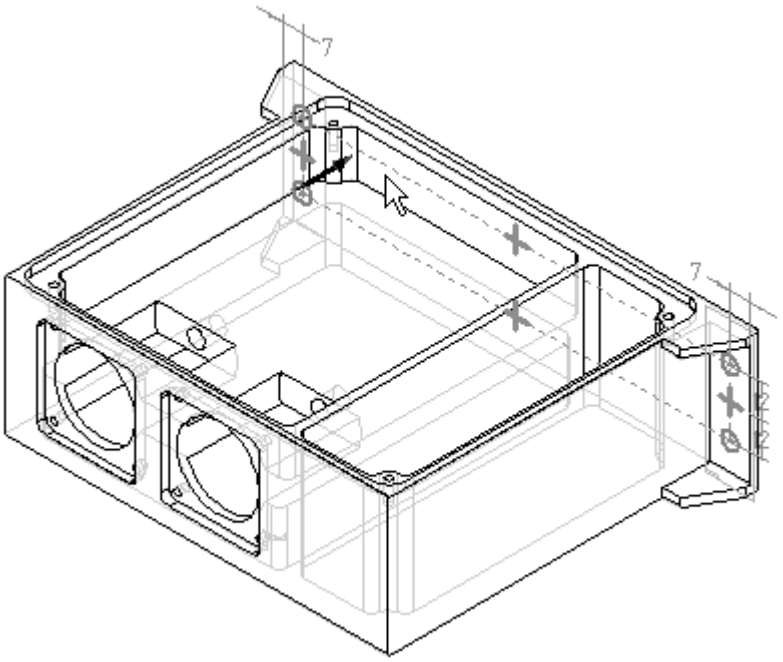


- On the Main toolbar, click Fit.
- Click the Hole Options button. Type 6.35 for the hole diameter and click OK.
- Place and dimension four holes.

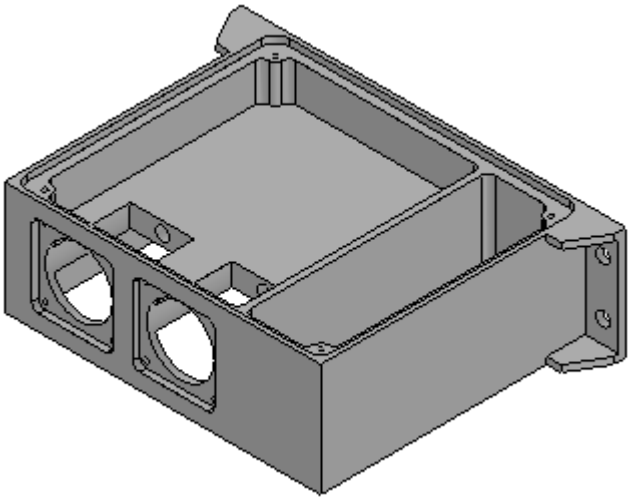


- Choose Close Sketch.
- Click the Through All button.

- Position the cursor so that the direction arrow is displayed as shown, and click.



- Click Finish.
- Close and save the file. This completes the activity.



Summary

In this activity you modeled a machined part that included cutouts, rounds, patterns, mirror copied features, ribs, lip and holes. In this activity, non profile based features were used to more efficiently model the machined part.

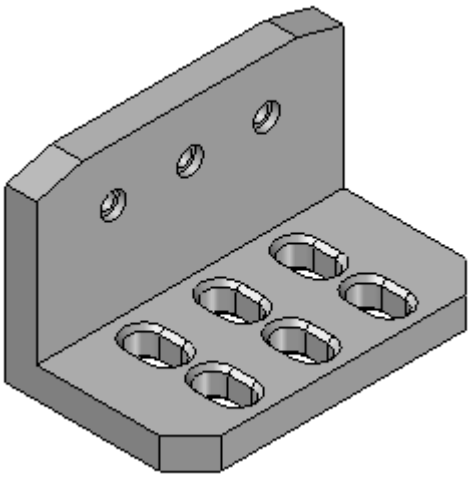
Constructing a bracket

In this activity, construct a solid model and create holes, chamfer, and pattern features.

Activity: Constructing a bracket

Objectives

In this activity you will construct a solid model and create holes, chamfer, and pattern features.



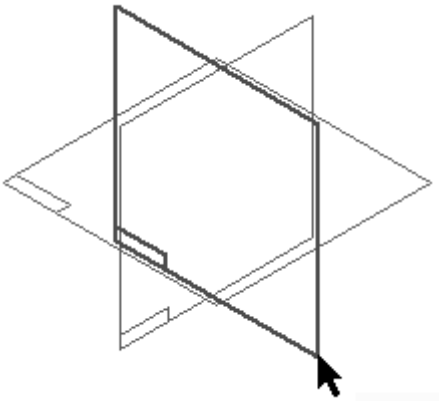
- Create a new ISO part file.
- Make sure you are in the ordered environment.

Construct the base feature

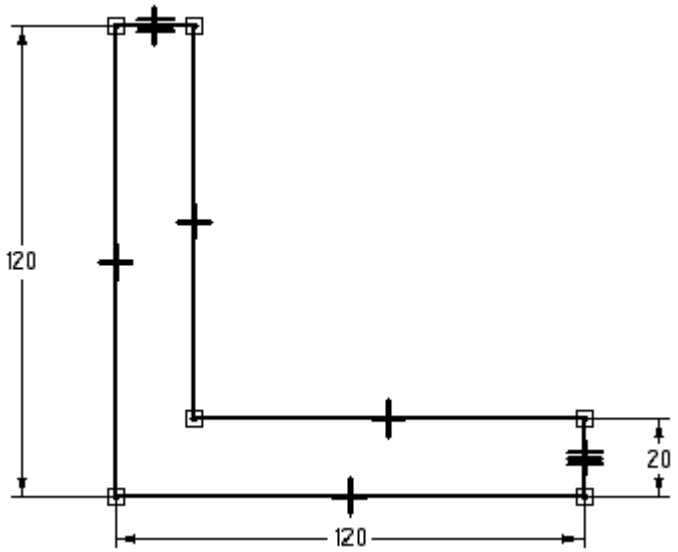
Create an L-shaped extrusion as the base feature. In subsequent steps, use additional features to create the final part shown above.

- Choose the Extrude command.
- Turn on the display of the base reference planes.

- Set the Create-from option to Coincident Plane, and select the reference plane shown.

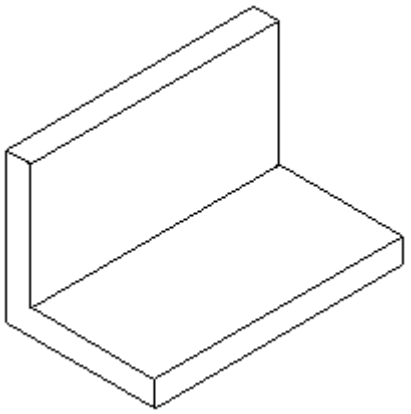


- Hide all reference planes.
- Draw the profile.



- Use an equal relationship, as shown above, to make the two shorter lines equal to one another.
- Choose Close Sketch to complete the profile.
- On command bar. click the Symmetric Extent button. Type 200 in the Distance field and press the Enter key.
- Fit the view.

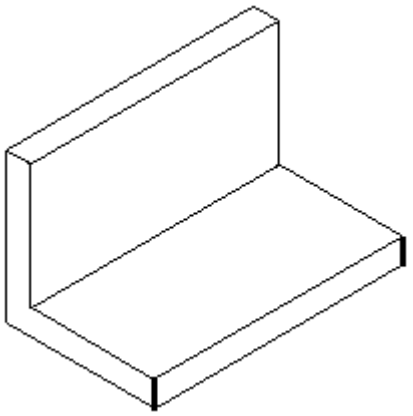
- Click Finish.



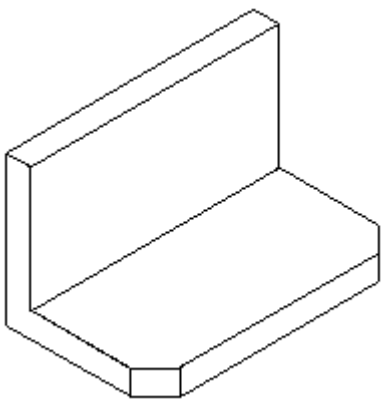
Add a chamfer feature

Add a chamfer treatment feature to the base feature.

- In the Solids group, on the Round drop list, choose the Chamfer command.
- Select the two short vertical edges on the front of the part as shown.



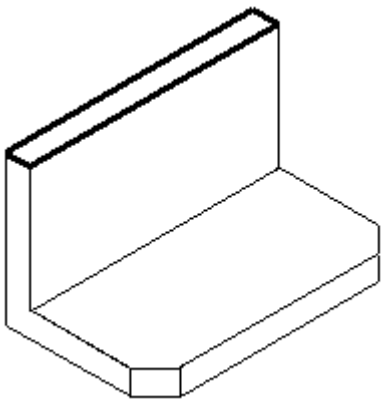
- On the command bar, type 20 in the Setback field and click the Accept button.
- Click Finish.



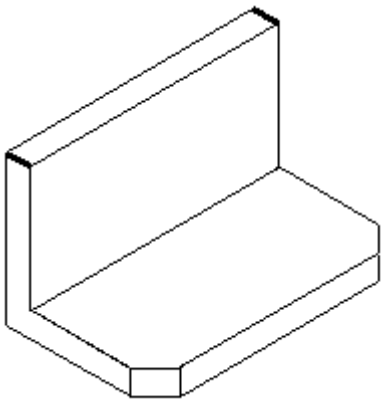
Add chamfer feature

Change the chamfer option settings and add another set of chamfers with an angle and setback.

- Choose the Chamfer command.
- On command bar, click the Chamfer Options button. Click the Angle and setback option and then click OK.
- Notice that after setting the Angle and Setback option, the command bar changes to include the Select Face step.
- Select the top face and then on the command bar click the Accept button.

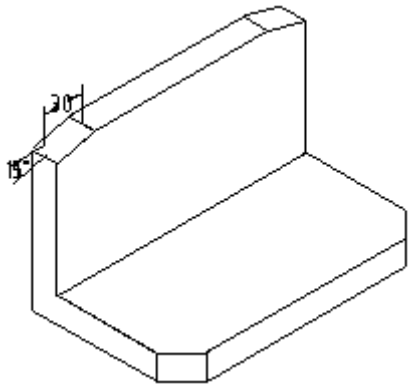


- Select the short edge on each end of the top face.



- Type 30 in the Setback field and type 15 in the Angle field.

- Click the Accept button to apply these values.

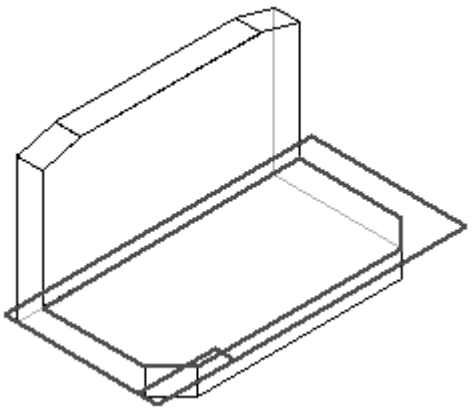


- Click Finish.
- Save the file as *angle.par*.

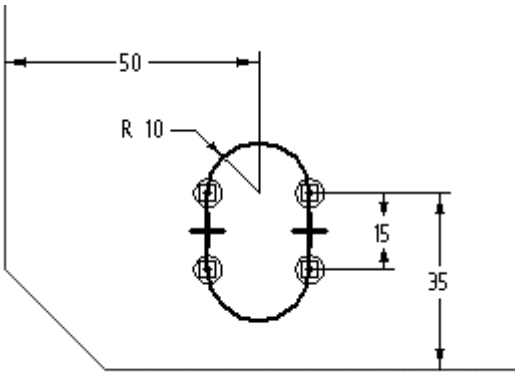
Construct a cutout

Construct a cutout on the front horizontal face shown.

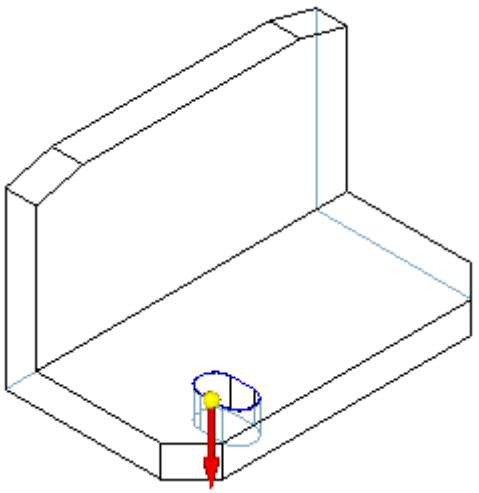
- Choose the Cut command.
- Select the horizontal face shown to define the reference plane.



- Draw the profile. Use the Line command and toggle between the Line and Arc modes.



- Choose Close Sketch.
- On command bar, click the Through Next option, and position the cursor to project the cutout downward.



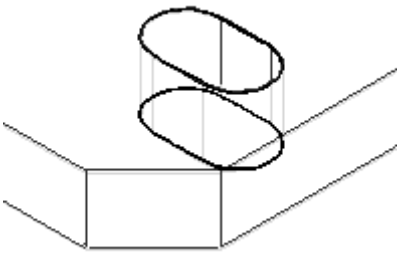
- Click Finish.

Add a chamfer

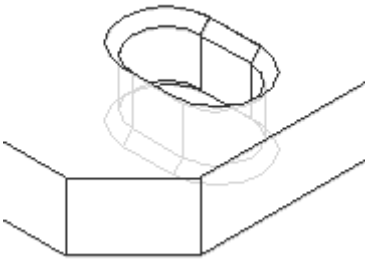
Add a chamfer to the cutout constructed in the previous step.

- Choose the Chamfer command.
- On command bar, change the chamfer setting to Equal setbacks..

- Select the top and bottom edges of the cutout.



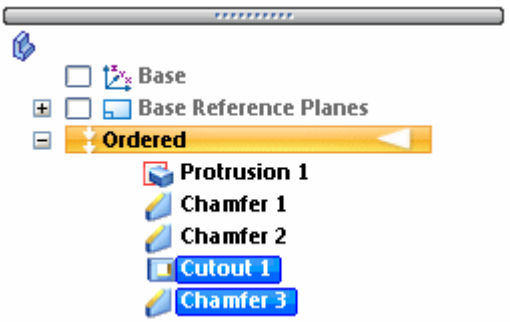
- In the Setback box, type 3 and click the Accept button.
- Click Finish.



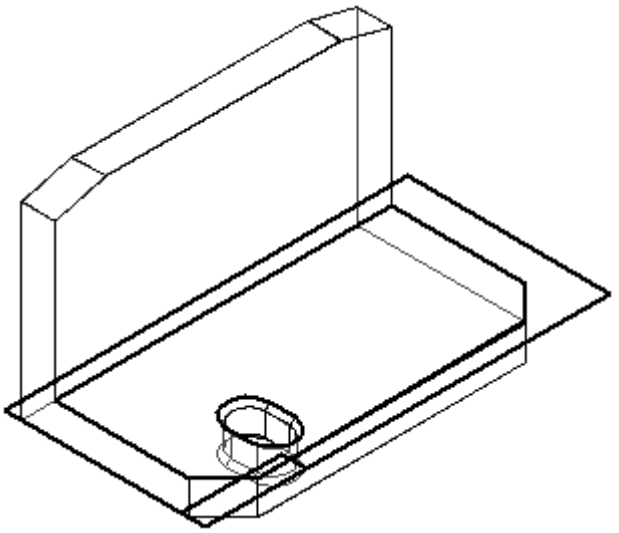
Pattern features

Pattern the cutout and chamfer. Since the cutout is the parent feature of the chamfer, the cutout must be patterned with the chamfer.

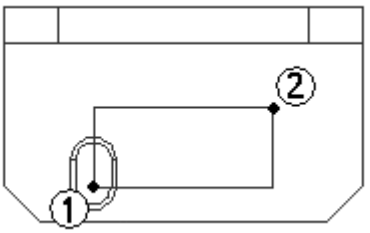
- Choose the Pattern command and on command bar, click the Smart option.
- On PathFinder, select Cutout 1 and Chamfer 3 as the features to pattern. Click the Accept button.



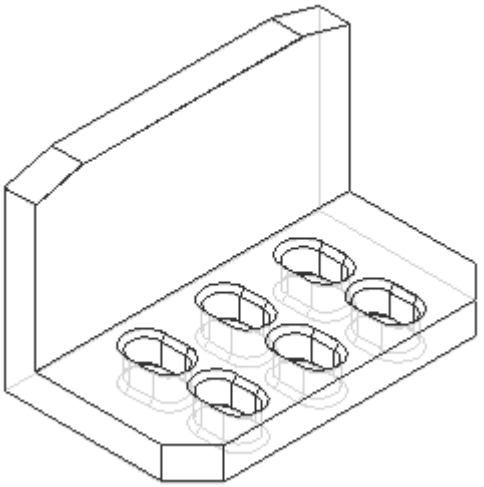
- Select the reference plane to place the pattern on. Use the same profile plane that was used for the Cutout feature.



- In the Features group, click the Rectangular Pattern command.
- Set the Pattern Type to Fixed. Set the X count to 3 and the Y count to 2. Type 50 for the X spacing and 45 for the Y spacing. Press the Enter key.
- Click the center of the arc in the bottom of the cutout to define the start point of the pattern profile (1), and then position the rectangle defining the pattern up and to the right (2).



- Choose Close sketch.

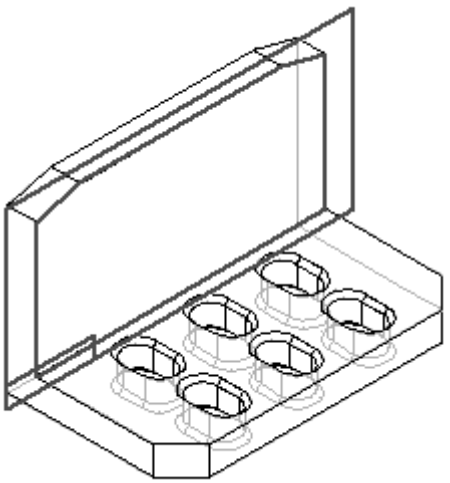


- Click Finish to complete the feature.
- Save the file.

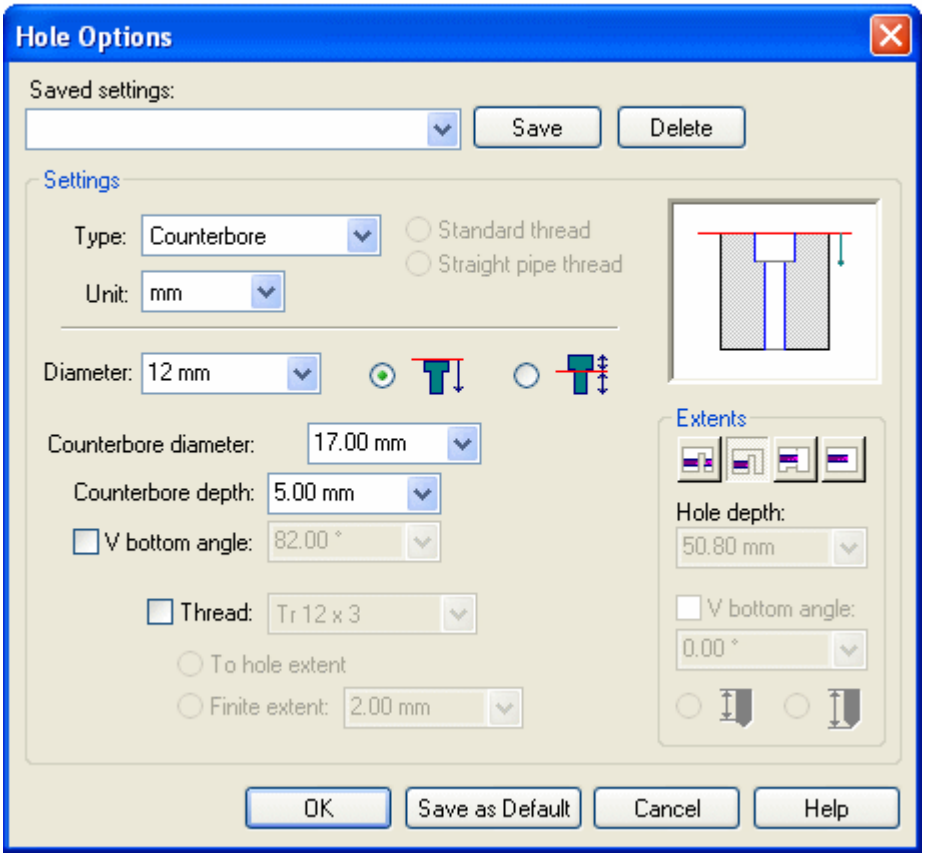
Add hole features

Add holes to the vertical front face of the part.

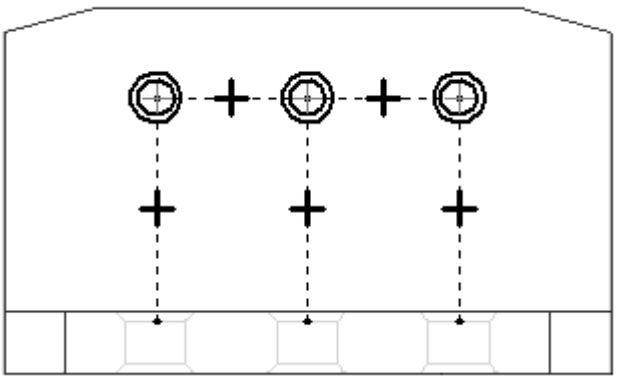
- Choose the Hole command.
- Select the front vertical face of the bracket as shown.



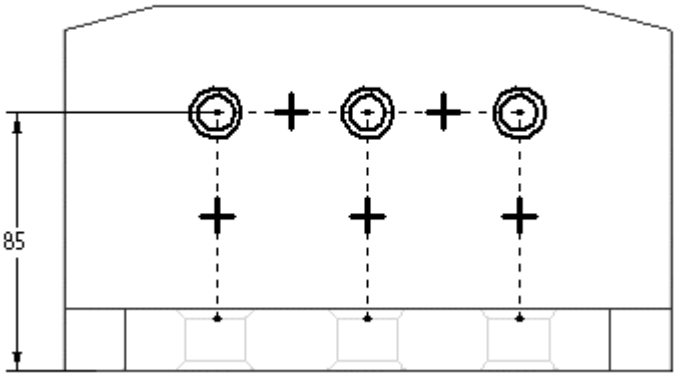
- Click the Hole Options button and set the options shown and click OK.



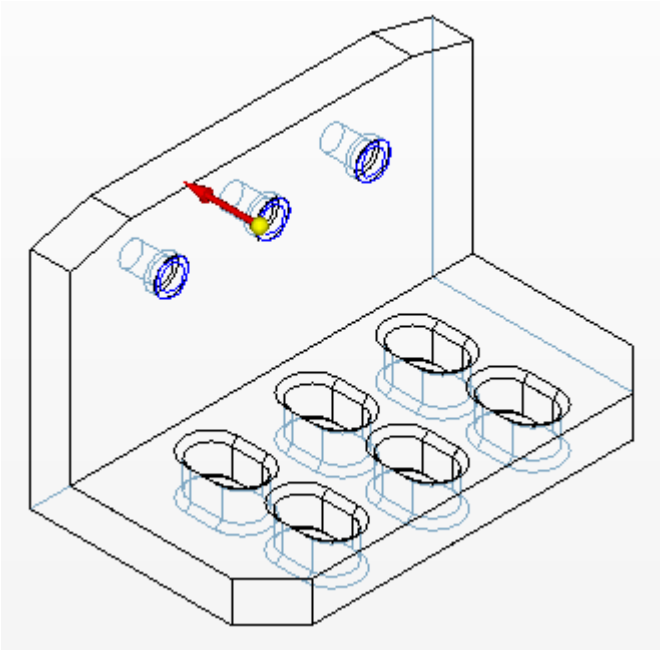
- Place a hole centered over each slot. Align the holes as shown.



- Dimension the location of the holes as shown.



- Choose Close Sketch.
- Specify the extent direction shown in the illustration.



- Click Finish.
- Save and close this file. This completes the activity.

Summary

In this activity you learned how to create a chamfer feature and to create a pattern consisting of more than one feature. You used the hole command to create the counterbored holes in the bracket.

Lesson

8 *Modeling assemblies*

Solid Edge Assembly

An assembly is a collection of parts and subassemblies that are positioned in a meaningful way. The parts can be in their final orientation, or have freedom of movement in translation and rotation. Solid Edge Assembly provides the tools needed to lay out and position the parts relative to each other. Many methods exist to accomplish this task and these approaches to building assemblies will be covered in this text.

Objectives

This lesson introduces the Solid Edge Assembly interface and discusses the different workflows for creating an assembly with the most commonly used part relationships.

Placing parts in assemblies

You can place any of the following types of solid parts in Solid Edge assemblies using the Parts Library tab:

- A part constructed in the Solid Edge Part environment.
- A part constructed in the Solid Edge Sheet Metal environment.
- Another assembly constructed in the Solid Edge Assembly environment.
- Any file that is open in Solid Edge other than a draft file.

To place parts that were constructed in other CAD formats, you must first convert them to Solid Edge part files.

Note

When you add an Insight-managed document to an assembly, Solid Edge uses the SearchScope.txt file to prevent you from creating links to documents with duplicate IDs. The SearchScope.txt file must list at least one managed workspace, or you will not be able to place managed parts in assemblies.

Sharing assemblies

You can place parts in assemblies by selecting them from a local folder path or from a network share. If you use local folder paths, other Solid Edge users who access the assembly over a network will not be able to view its parts and subassemblies. If you intend to share an assembly over a network, you should always select the parts through a network share, even if they are stored on your computer.

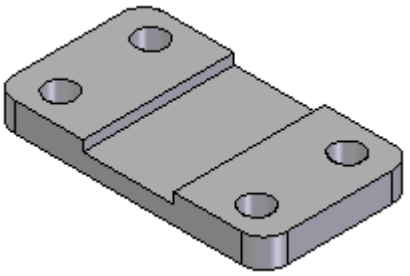
To do this, use the arrow on the right side of the Look In option on the Parts Library tab to browse to and select the folder on a network drive where the part or subassembly is stored.

The network share approach also allows you to build an assembly using parts that are stored on several computers on your network. For example, your company may have one or more computers that are used as servers, where commonly used parts are stored.

Placing the first part in an assembly

To start the part placement process, in the Parts Library tab, select the part you want, then drag it in the assembly window. You can also start the part placement process by double-clicking the part in the Parts Library tab.

The first part you place into an assembly is important. It serves as the foundation upon which the rest of the assembly will be built. Therefore, the first part should represent a fundamental component of the assembly. Because the first part is placed grounded, you should pick a part with a known location, such as a frame or base.

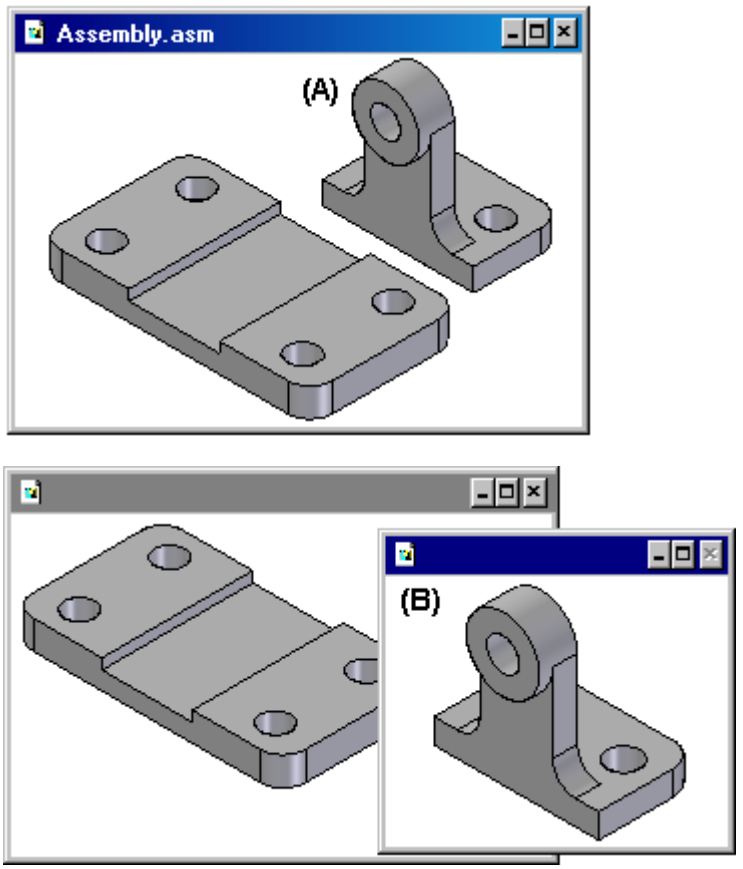


Although Solid Edge makes it easy to edit parts during the design cycle, the first part you place in the assembly should be as completely modeled as possible. In the same way, although it is easy to delete parts from assemblies and change assembly relationships, the first part you place should remain grounded and not be deleted.

To reposition the first part, you should first delete the ground relationship. You can then apply assembly relationships between the first part and the assembly reference planes or subsequent parts you place in the assembly.

Placing additional parts in an assembly

You can use the Assembly tab on the Options dialog box to specify whether subsequent parts are temporarily placed in the assembly window (A), or displayed in a separate Place Part window (B).



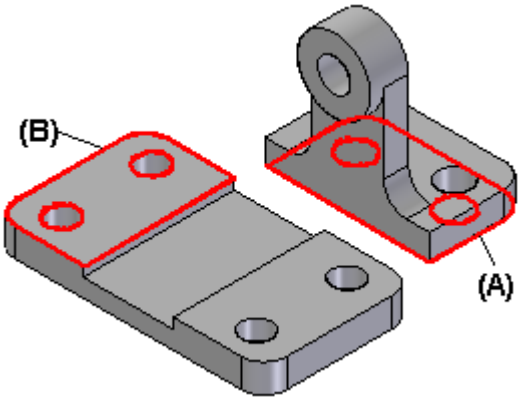
When you set the Do Not Create a New Window During Place Part option, the part is temporarily placed in the assembly window at the location where you dragged and dropped the part. To make the positioning process easier, drop the part in a location where it is easy to select the positioning elements you want to use. If you start the part placement process by double-clicking the part in the Parts Library tab, the display area of the assembly window is adjusted so you can see the new part.

When you clear the Do Not Create a New Window During Place Part option, the part is displayed in a separate Place Part window. If the active window is maximized, the Place Part window is also maximized, essentially hiding the assembly window from view. Due to this, beginning users should not maximize the active window. Let the windows overlap, and this will make placing parts into the assembly and applying relationships much easier.

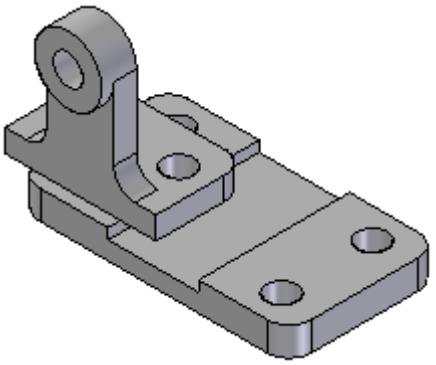
Positioning parts

You use assembly relationships to position the new part relative to a part already in the assembly. The Relationships Types option on the Assemble command bar contains a wide range of assembly relationships for positioning parts relative to one another.

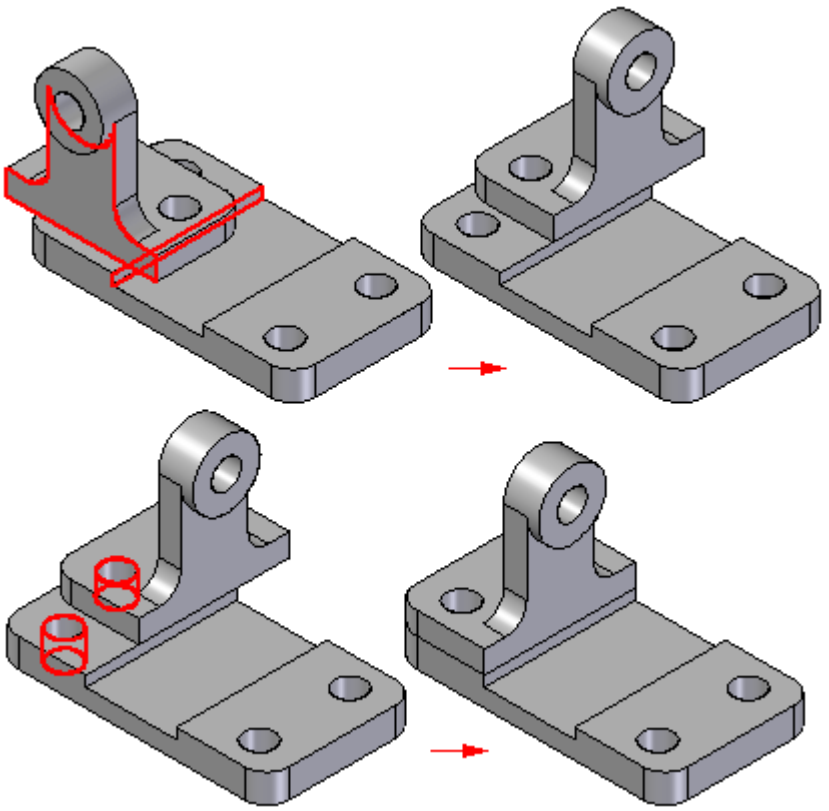
In addition to traditional assembly relationships, the FlashFit option reduces the steps required to position a part using the mate, planar align, or axial align relationships. This option is recommended in most situations. For example, you can use FlashFit to mate a face on the placement part (A) with a face on the target part (B).



After you apply the first assembly relationship, the new part is repositioned within the assembly.



As you apply the remaining assembly relationships, the software positions and reorients the part in the assembly.



Additional parts can be positioned relative to any part in the assembly, or even relative to more than one part in the assembly. You can also position a part relative to an assembly sketch.

For more information on positioning parts using assembly relationships, see the Assembly Relationships Help topic.

Note

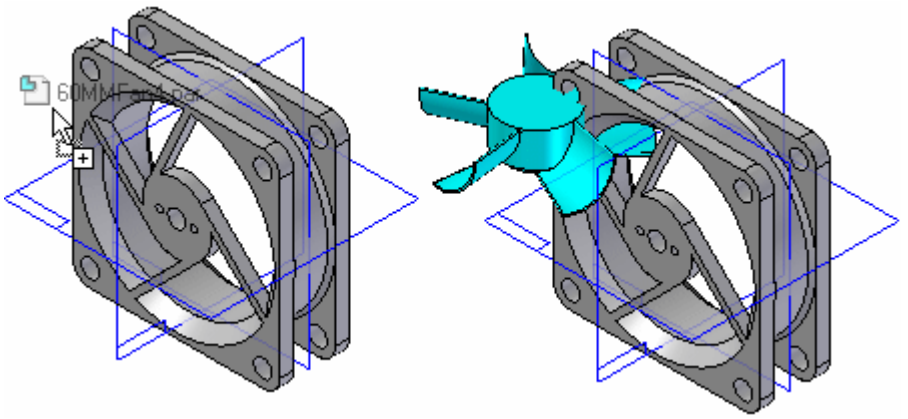
By default, Solid Edge maintains the relationships with which you position the part. If you clear the Maintain Relationships command on the Parts Library shortcut menu, the relationships will be used only for positioning, and the part will be grounded. Grounded parts do not update their positions when you make design changes.

Placing parts that are not fully positioned

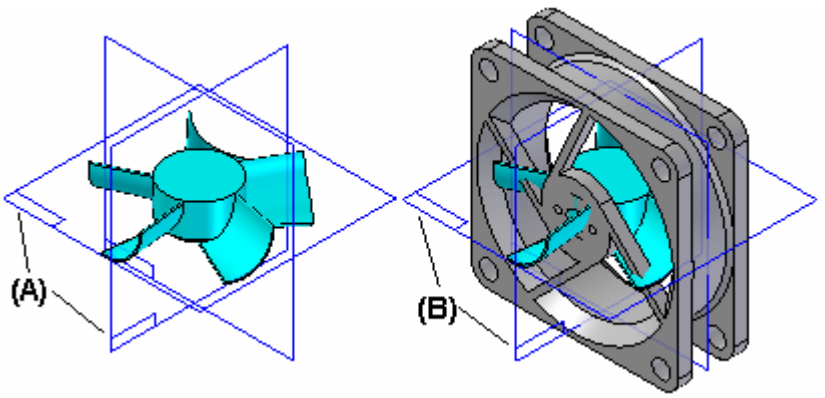
It is a good idea to fully position parts as you place them into assemblies. Fully-positioned parts will update their positions more predictably when changes are made. At times, though, you may want to place a part without fully positioning it. For example, you may be placing another part later that will be used to complete the positioning of both parts.

You can use the Esc key to interrupt the placement sequence at any time. If no relationships have been applied, the part is placed in the assembly at the same relative position it occupies in the part document. In other words, the part is placed in the assembly such that the base reference planes in the part document (A) are coincident with the base reference planes in the assembly (B).

If you work with the Do Not Create a New Window During Place Part option set, the part is placed in the assembly at the location you dragged and dropped it into the assembly.



If you work with the Do Not Create a New Window During Place Part option cleared, the part is placed in the assembly such that the base reference planes in the part document (A) are coincident with the base reference planes in the assembly (B).



You can also interrupt the placement process by selecting another command, for example, the Select tool.

Placing the same part more than once

If you want to place the same part in an assembly more than once, you do not have to use the Parts Library tab every time. After you place the part the first time, you can select it, copy it to the Clipboard, and then paste it into the assembly.

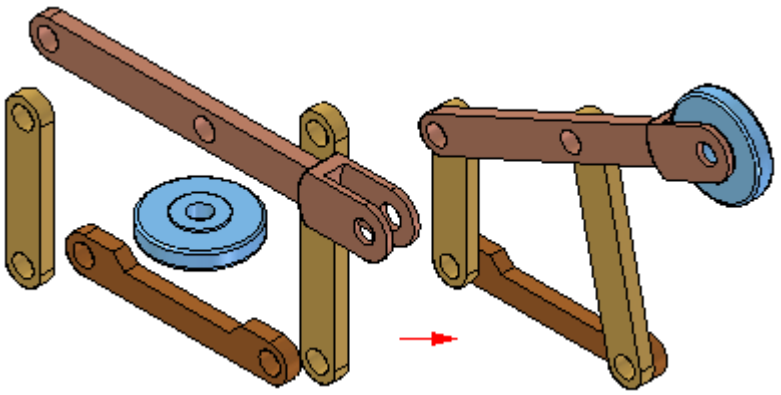
When you select the Paste command, the part is displayed in a separate window, as if you had selected it from the Parts Library tab. You can then apply assembly relationships between the new part and the other parts in the assembly.

You can also use PathFinder to place an existing part into an assembly again. Select the part in PathFinder, then drag and drop it into the assembly window.

If a part is being placed in the assembly several times using the same relationship scheme, you can use the Capture Fit command to store the relationships and faces used to position the part the first time. This reduces the number of steps required to define each relationship when you place the part again. When you place the part later, you do not need to define which relationship and face you want to use on the placement part. You only need to select a face on the target part in the assembly for each relationship.

Positioning a set of parts

You can use the Assemble command to position a set of parts relative to each other without fully constraining each part in an ordered sequence. This type of workflow can make it easier to position a set of interrelated parts, such as when building a mechanism.



First, drag and drop the set of parts into the assembly. Then click the Assemble command and apply relationships between one part and the other parts. To position a different part, click the right mouse button.

Finding parts

If you do not know the name and location of a part or subassembly, you can define search criteria using Search button on the Parts Library tab. You can then double-click the name of the part or subassembly from the list of search results to start the part placement process.

Part placement properties

When you place a part or subassembly into an assembly, Solid Edge sets properties that determine the following:

- The placement name of a part or subassembly.
- Whether the part is selectable or not selectable.
- The quantity of the part.
- The x, y, and z location for grounded parts or parts or not positioned using assembly relationships.
- Whether the part is displayed in a higher level assembly.
- Whether the part is displayed in a drawing of the assembly.
- Whether the part is considered a reference part in a drawing or parts list.
- Whether the part is used in a report, such as a Bill of Material.
- Whether the part is used in mass property calculations of the assembly.
- Whether a part is used in an interference analysis calculation.

You can also change these properties later using the Occurrence Properties button on the Place Part command bar or the Occurrence Properties command when selecting assembly components.

Placing simplified parts

The Use Simplified Parts command on the Parts Library shortcut menu allows you to specify whether you want to use the simplified or designed version of a part when placing it in the assembly. When you have the Use Simplified Parts command set (there is a check mark adjacent to the command), any faces that were deleted when simplifying the part will not be available for positioning purposes. To make these faces available, clear the Use Simplified Parts command.

Placing subassemblies

You can place a Solid Edge assembly document into another assembly in much the same way you place an individual part. When placing an assembly, in the Place Part window, you must first select the placement part in the assembly you want to use for positioning purposes, then the face on the part.

If you are placing a large subassembly, you can save a display configuration in the subassembly first, then use this configuration to make placement easier. For example, you can hide all the parts, except those that will be used to position the subassembly. Before you place the subassembly, make sure the Use Configuration command on the shortcut menu is set. Then, when you place the subassembly, you can select the configuration name from the Configuration list on the Use Configuration dialog box. Subassemblies also place faster if parts have been hidden.

When placing a subassembly using FlashFit or the Reduced Steps mode, the placement part step is skipped. You specify the placement part by selecting a face on the placement part you want.

The placement part must be active before you can select a face. If the placement part is not already active, you can use the Activate Part button on the Place Part command bar to activate the placement part.

> **Note**
>
> When placing parts into a subassembly, you can set an option that controls whether the part is displayed in higher level assemblies. If the Display When Assembly Is Attached As Subassembly option on the Properties dialog box is cleared for a part, that part will not be displayed in PathFinder or the graphics window in higher level assemblies.

Locating parts

The parts and subassemblies used to build an assembly can be located on different computers on a network. To locate a part or subassembly, you can use the Assembly Statistics command on the Inspect tab to display the document name and location. When the Assembly Statistics dialog box is displayed, select any document in the list, then right-click, and then set the Show Document Name and Location option.

Non-graphic parts

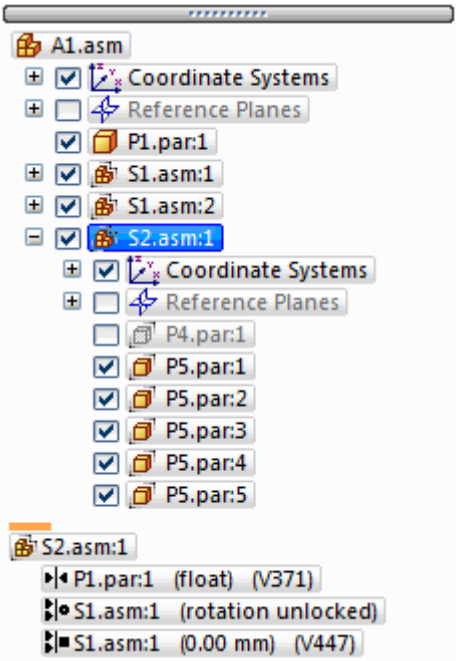
Sometimes you need to place parts in assemblies that have no model associated with them, so they can be documented in a parts list or bill of materials. For example, items such as paint, grease, oil, and so forth require no model, but a part must exist in the assembly for them to show up in the documentation for the assembly. Solid Edge allows you to create non-graphic parts by adding custom properties to an empty part document. You can then place the part in the assembly without positioning it with assembly relationships, by pressing the Shift key, then dragging the part into the assembly.

PathFinder in assemblies

The PathFinder tab helps you work with the components that make up your assembly. It provides alternate ways to view the composition and arrangement of the assembly, besides looking at the graphics in a regular assembly window. You can also use PathFinder to in-place activate a part or subassembly so you can make edits to individual assembly components while viewing the entire assembly.

The PathFinder tab is available when you work in an assembly or a subassembly within the active assembly.

In the Assembly environment, you can also use PathFinder to view, modify and delete the assembly relationships used to position the parts and subassemblies, reorder parts in an assembly, and to help you diagnose problems in an assembly.



In the Assembly environment, PathFinder is divided into two panes. The top pane lists the components of the active assembly in a folder tree structure. Listed components can include: parts, subassemblies, assembly reference planes, and assembly sketches.

The bottom pane shows the assembly relationships applied to the part or subassembly selected in the top pane.

Using the top pane

The top pane of PathFinder allows you to do the following:

- View components in collapsed or expanded form. For example, when you expand a subassembly, you can view all of its parts.
- Highlight, select and clear components for subsequent tasks.
- Determine the current status of the components within the assembly.
- Determine how the assembly was constructed.
- Reorder parts within an assembly.
- Rename reference planes, sketches, and coordinate systems.

When you pass your cursor over a component in the top pane of PathFinder, it is displayed in the graphics window using the Highlight color. When you click a component it is displayed using the Select color. This allows you to associate the component entry in PathFinder with the corresponding component in the graphics window.

> **Note**
>
> When you pass your cursor over or click the top-level assembly in PathFinder, it does not display in the highlight or select color. This improves performance when working with large assemblies.

Because the highlight and selection of components in large assemblies can impact performance, options are available on the Assembly tab on the Options dialog box that allow you to improve the performance when working with large assemblies. For example, options are available that allow you to simplify the display of highlighted and selected components in the graphics window and to disable the highlight of components in the graphics window when you pass your cursor over them in PathFinder.

For more information on improving performance in large assemblies, see the Working with large assemblies efficiently Help topic.

Determining the status of a component

The symbols in PathFinder reflect the current status of the components in the assembly. The following table explains the symbols used in the top pane in PathFinder:

Legend	
	Active part
	Inactive part
	Hidden part
	Unloaded part
	Part that is not fully positioned
	Part that has conflicting relationships
	Linked part
	Simplified part
	Missing component
	Alternate components part
	Part position is driven by a 2D relationship in an assembly sketch
	Displayed assembly
	Adjustable Part
	Adjustable Assembly
	Driven Reference
	Fastener System
	Pattern group
	Pattern item
	Reference planes
	Reference plane
	Sketch
	Noncombinable sketch (synchronous only)
	Combinable sketch (synchronous only)
	Active sketch (synchronous only)
	Group of parts and subassemblies
	Motor
	Available
	In Work
	In Review
	Released
	Baselined
	Obsolete

Note

The symbols in PathFinder can also represent combinations of conditions. For example, a symbol can show that a part is hidden and not fully positioned:

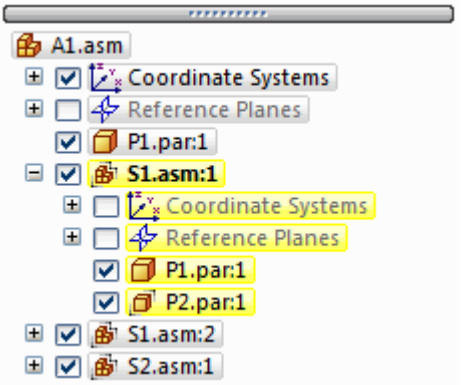
Determining how the assembly was constructed

The components in the top pane of PathFinder are listed in the order in which they were placed in the assembly. This can be useful when evaluating design changes. For example, if you delete a single assembly relationship from a part, the symbols for other parts could also change to indicate that the parts are no longer fully positioned. This occurs because the positioning of the other parts depended upon the part from which you removed the relationship. In this example, reapplying the single relationship should cause the other parts to also become fully positioned again.

Making changes to assembly components

You can use the top pane of PathFinder to open or in-place activate a part or subassembly so you can make design modifications. For example, you can select a part in PathFinder, then use the Edit command on the shortcut menu to in-place activate a part. You can then add, remove, or modify features on the part while viewing the other assembly components. You can also use geometry on the other assembly components to help you construct or modify features on the part. When you use the Open command to open an assembly component, you cannot view the other assembly components.

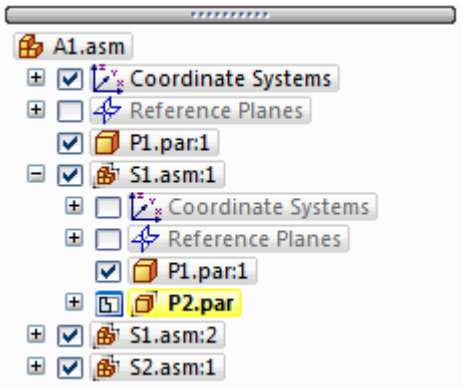
When you in-place activate a subassembly, the display of PathFinder changes to make it easier to determine your current position within the assembly structure. For example, while in the top-level assembly A1.asm, if you in-place activate into subassembly S1.asm:1, subassembly S1.asm:1 is displayed using bold text and a contrasting background color is used for the subassembly and its components.



When you in-place activate a part for editing, you do not need to return to the assembly first to in-place activate another part or subassembly in the assembly.

You can select another part or subassembly in PathFinder and use the Edit command on the shortcut menu to in-place activate the component for editing. When you are finished making the design changes, you can use the Close and Return command on the Home tab to return to the original assembly.

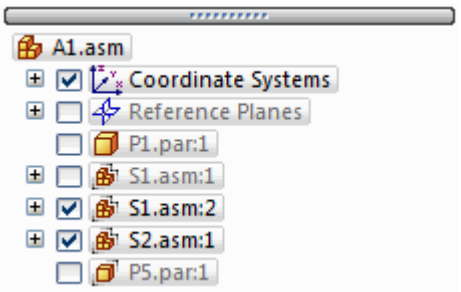
When you in-place activate a part or subassembly for editing, you cannot collapse the assembly structure to which the part or subassembly belongs within PathFinder. For example, in the following illustration, part P2.par:1 has been in-place activated and it is in subassembly S1.asm. If you click the minus (-) symbol adjacent to S1.asm to collapse its structure, it will remain expanded.



Changing the display status of assembly components

You can use the top pane of PathFinder to control the display status of assembly components. For example, you can hide parts and subassemblies to make it easier to position a new part you are placing in an assembly. You can use the checkboxes adjacent to the assembly components in PathFinder to control component display or shortcut menu commands when one or more components are selected.

The color of the text in PathFinder also indicates whether a component is displayed or hidden.



Reordering parts within an assembly

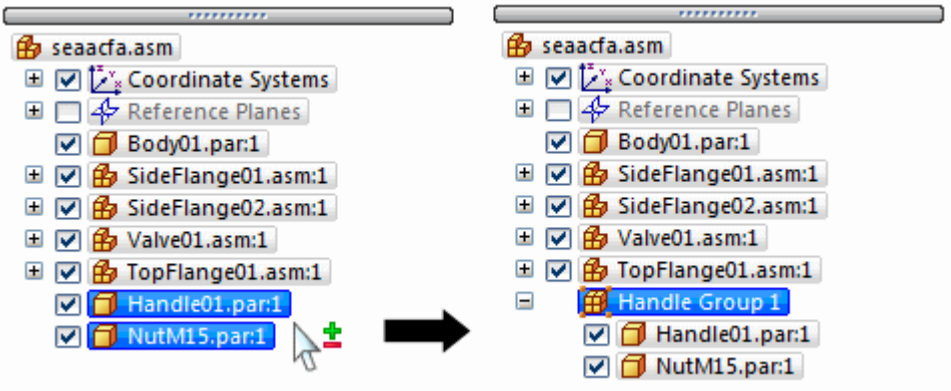
PathFinder allows you to drag a part to a different position within an assembly. As you drag the part, PathFinder displays a symbol to show where you can reposition the part in the assembly structure. The part will be positioned below the highlighted part occurrence in PathFinder.

Grouping parts and subassemblies within an assembly

PathFinder allows you to select a set of parts or subassemblies in the active assembly, then specify that the selected components are a group using the Group command on the shortcut menu. The set of components is then collected into a group entry in PathFinder. You can then expand, collapse, or rename the group to a more logical name. Defining a group of parts reduces the space requirements for a set of parts, and allows you to gather together a set of similar parts into a logical group. This can make it easier to select the parts for other operations, such as displaying and hiding a set of parts.

You cannot select nested parts or nested subassemblies.

Grouping components is also useful when working with large assemblies that contain few or no subassemblies. You can select a set of parts, define them as a group with the Group command on the Pathfinder shortcut menu, then use the Rename command to rename the group to a more logical name.



Note

Some assembly commands create a group of components automatically. For example, the Move Components command creates a group entry in PathFinder when you set the Copy option on the command bar.

You can ungroup a group using the Ungroup command on the shortcut menu when a group is selected in PathFinder.

The Select Components command , on the shortcut menu when you select a group entry in PathFinder, activates additional commands and options for manipulating groups that would otherwise be disabled. For example, after selecting a group with the Select Components command, you can then apply a face style to the group of parts, or transfer the group of parts to another assembly.

Renaming PathFinder entries

You can use PathFinder to rename an entry for an assembly reference plane, sketch, group, or coordinate system. To rename an entry, select it in PathFinder, right-click and then click Rename. In the name box, type the new name for the entry.

Finding parts

In a complex or unfamiliar assembly, it can sometimes be difficult to determine which subassembly a particular part is contained in. You can use the Scroll To Part command to quickly find a part in PathFinder. When you select a part in the assembly window, then click the Scroll To Part command on the shortcut menu, the display of PathFinder scrolls to the selected part. If the part is in a subassembly, the listing for the subassembly is expanded to display the part.

Replacing the file name with the document name formula value

You can use the Document Name Formula dialog box to replace the file name displayed in PathFinder with a value composed of document properties. Refer to the Replace a file name with a property value help topic for instructions.

You can combine properties with additional characters to replace the file name. For example, you can separate two properties with dashes, such as Document Number–Revision Number.

If a property does not exist or does not have a value, the property name is displayed in place of the property value, and the file name is displayed in parentheses after the value.

Note

The Property list displays the properties that you can use to replace the file name. You can add a property that is not in the active document by typing [property name] in the Formula field.

Using the bottom pane

When you select a part or subassembly in the top pane of PathFinder, you can use the bottom pane to view and modify the assembly relationships between the selected part and the other parts in the assembly. The document name is also displayed, as well as a symbol that represents the type of relationship. The following table explains the symbols used in the bottom pane in PathFinder:

Legend	
	Ground relationship
	Mate relationship
	Planar align relationship
	Axial align relationship
	Connect relationship
	Angle relationship
	Tangent relationship
	Gear relationship
	Suppressed relationship
	Failed relationship

When you select a relationship in the bottom pane you can do the following:

- View which elements were used to apply the relationship.
- Edit the fixed offset value of the relationship.
- Change the offset type of the relationship.
- Delete the relationship.
- Suppress the relationship

Viewing assembly relationships

When you select a relationship in the bottom pane, the elements used to apply the relationship are highlighted in the assembly window. For example, if you select a planar align relationship, the planar faces or reference planes that were used to apply the relationship highlight in the assembly window. This can help you determine how design changes need to be applied.

Modifying assembly relationships

When you select a relationship in the bottom pane, you can use the relationship command bar to edit the fixed offset value or change the offset type. For example, you may want to change a mate relationship from a fixed offset to a floating offset.

Note

If you change the offset type from fixed to floating, you may have to make other relationship edits to ensure that the part remains fully positioned.

Deleting assembly relationships

If you delete an assembly relationship, the symbol next to the part in the top pane changes to show that the part is no longer fully positioned. The part is also placed on the Error Assistant dialog box list. It is good practice to apply a new relationship to the affected parts as soon as possible. If you delete too many relationships without applying new ones, it could become difficult to fully position the affected parts. If this occurs, you may have to delete the affected parts from the assembly and place them again.

Replacing relationships

After you place a part in an assembly, you can replace any of its relationships. Select the part in PathFinder or in the graphics window, then click the Edit Definition button on the command bar. You can then select the relationship you want to replace from the Relationship List box on the command bar. Use the Relationship Types button to specify the new relationship you want to apply.

Note

You can also delete the current relationship in the bottom pane of PathFinder and apply a new one using the Assemble command bar.

Conflicting relationships

If you change the design of parts in an assembly, some assembly relationships may no longer be applicable. When this occurs, the symbol next to the part or subassembly in the top pane of PathFinder will change to indicate that there are conflicting relationships and the part will be placed on the Error Assistant dialog box list.

When you select the conflicted part or subassembly, the symbols for the affected relationships in the bottom pane of PathFinder are displayed in red. You can then evaluate the relationship scheme to determine how to repair the assembly. For example, you can delete the affected relationships and apply new relationships to fully position the part.

Suppressing assembly relationships

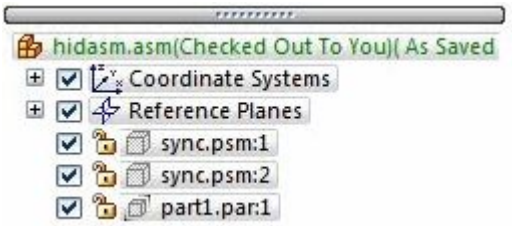
You can use the Suppress command on the shortcut menu to temporarily suppress an assembly relationship for a part. Suppressing an assembly relationship allows you to use the Drag Part command to evaluate how the part interacts with other parts in the assembly. When you suppress an assembly relationship, the symbol for the part in the top pane of PathFinder changes to indicate that the part is no longer fully positioned. Also, a symbol is added adjacent to the suppressed relationship in the bottom pane to indicate that the relationship is suppressed.

Note

You can use the Unsuppress command on the shortcut menu to unsuppress the relationship

Displaying document status in PathFinder

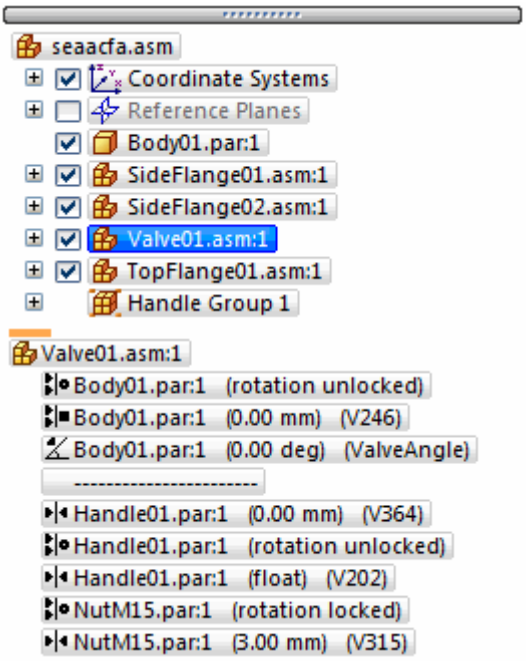
You can display the document status for components in PathFinder. For example, in an Insight-managed document, the status can be Available, In Work, In Review, Released, Baseline or Obsolete. The Status® Display Status command on the PathFinder shortcut menu turns on and off the display of symbols adjacent to the document names in PathFinder. For more information, see the Displaying and updating status for documents in assemblies Help topic.



Legend	
	Available
	In Work
	In Review
	Released
	Baselined
	Obsolete

Dashed line in the bottom pane

Often a dashed line is displayed between sets of relationships in the bottom pane of PathFinder. The relationships above the dashed line were applied to parts that are above the selected part in the top pane of PathFinder. The relationships below the dashed line were applied to parts that are below the selected part in the top pane of PathFinder. You can edit the relationships above the dashed line and below the dashed line. For example, when you select *Valve01.asm*, the relationships above the dashed line were applied to *Body01.par*, which is above *Valve01.asm* in the top pane of PathFinder. The relationships below the dashed line were applied to *Handle01.par* and *NutM15.par* , which are below *Valve01.asm* in the top pane of PathFinder.

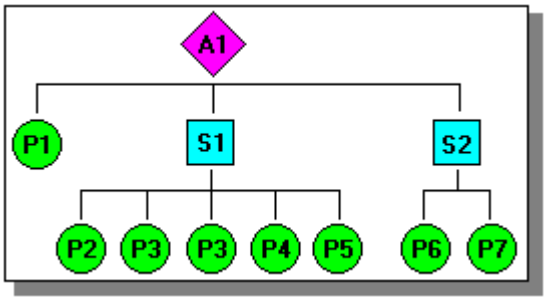


Managing relationships in nested assemblies

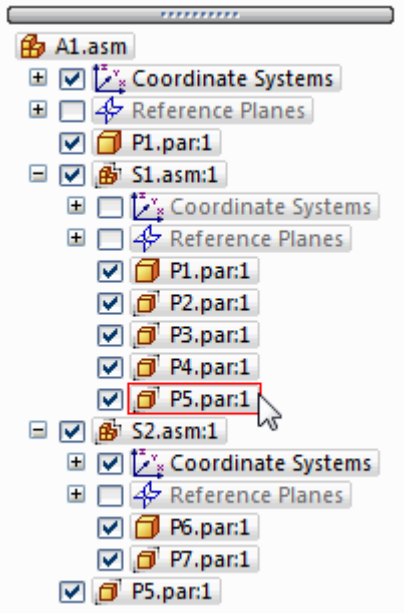
PathFinder does not display relationships applied outside the active assembly. Before you can view, modify, or delete an assembly relationship from a nested subassembly, you must first open or in-place activate the subassembly where the relationship was applied.

You can use the top pane of PathFinder to determine at which level in a multi-level assembly a particular part was placed. You can then select the subassembly in the top pane of PathFinder and use the Open or Edit commands on the shortcut menu to open or in-place activate the subassembly to modify or replace the relationship.

For example, assembly A1 in the next illustration was built using part P1 and subassemblies S1 and S2. Subassembly S1 was built using parts P2, P3, P4 and P5. Subassembly S2 was built using parts P6 and P7. If you want to change a relationship used to position part P5, you have to open or in-place activate subassembly S1.



You can find part P5 by viewing the assembly in the top pane of PathFinder, as shown in the next illustration. Since part P5 is indented under subassembly S1, you would have to open or in-place activate subassembly S1 in order to view, modify, or remove any relationships that control part P5.



Assembly relationships

When placing a part or subassembly into an assembly, you must define how the part will be positioned with respect to the other parts in the assembly by applying assembly relationships. Available relationships include ground, mate, planar align, axial align, parallel, connect, angle, cam, gear, tangent, and center-plane.

In addition to the traditional assembly relationships listed above, the FlashFit option reduces the steps required to position a part using the mate, planar align, or axial align relationships.

The relationship options and FlashFit are located on the Relationship Types list on the Assemble command bar.

Part positioning workflows

Solid Edge provides several workflows for positioning parts in an assembly:

- FlashFit
- Traditional Workflow
- Reduced Steps
- Capture Fit

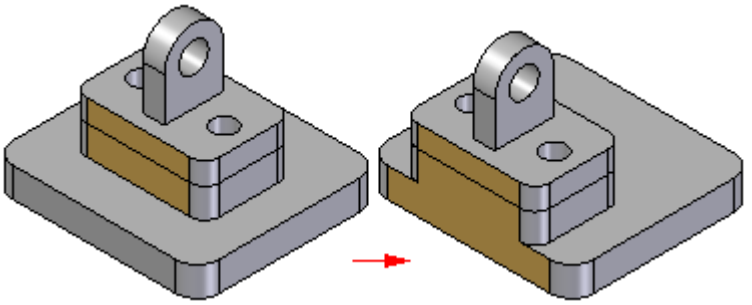
Note

New users should focus on learning both FlashFit and the Traditional Workflow. As your expertise in building assemblies increases, you can explore the other workflows available. All the workflows are discussed in more depth later in this topic. The Slider tutorial demonstrates FlashFit capabilities.

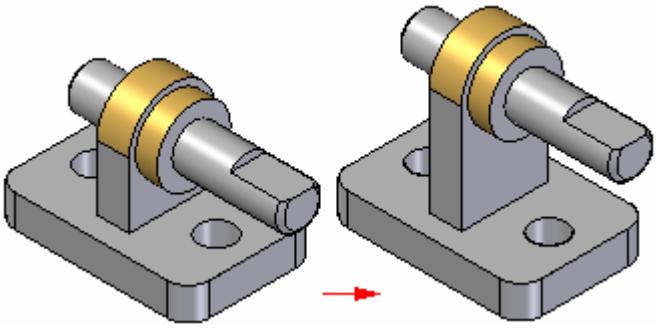
Maintaining assembly relationships

By default, Solid Edge maintains the relationships with which you position the part. If the Maintain Relationships command is set on the Parts Library shortcut menu when you place a part, the relationships that you apply also control the behavior of the part when it is modified. For example:

- If you apply a planar align relationship between two parts, they remain aligned when either part is modified.



- If you apply an axial align relationship between two parts, they remain axially aligned when either part is modified.



Note

You can view, modify, and delete assembly relationships using the Assembly PathFinder tab.

If the Maintain Relationships command is cleared when you place a part, you must still use assembly relationships to position the part in the assembly. However, instead of applying these relationships on the part, the software applies a ground relationship. Grounded parts do not update their positions in the assembly when other parts are modified.

Capturing design intent

To fully control one part in relation to the other parts in an assembly, you must use a combination of assembly relationships. There is often more than one way to apply relationships that will position a part correctly. It is important to choose the way that best captures design intent, because this makes your assembly easier to understand and edit.

It may be helpful to keep in mind how the part will react to future modifications when positioning a part. Although the part may be positioned correctly using a particular set of assembly relationships, it may not behave as you expect when modifications are made.

As you gain experience placing parts in an assembly, you may find it useful to make minor design modifications and observe how the parts in your assembly react. If the assembly does not behave as you expect, you can delete the relationships and reapply them using a different approach. As you become more experienced, it will become easier to see which set of relationships correctly positions the parts, and gives you the behavior you want when design modifications are made.

Assembly relationships and part movement

When a part is fully positioned in an assembly, it cannot move in any direction in relation to the assembly. The first assembly relationship you place controls some part movement, but the part is still free to move in some direction by sliding along or rotating around the X, Y, or Z axes.

Applying more relationships controls more movement until the part is fully positioned. The types of relationships you apply and the options you use determine how the relationships control part movement.

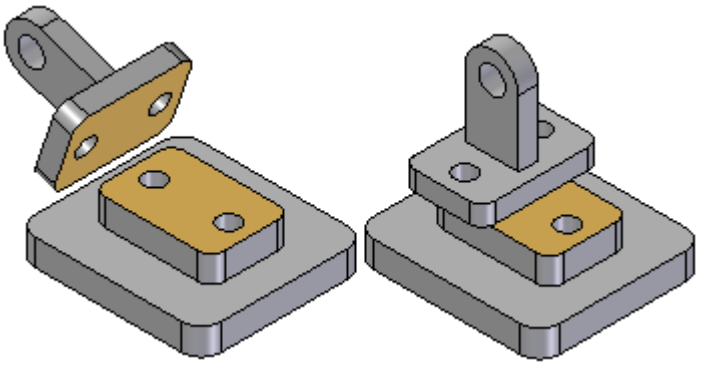
FlashFit

As discussed earlier, the FlashFit option reduces the steps required to position parts using mate, planar align, and axial align relationships when compared to the traditional workflow. Because many parts are positioned using these relationships, FlashFit is appropriate in most situations.

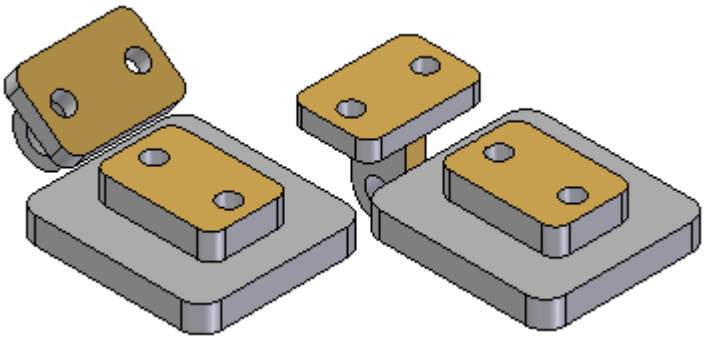
When you position a part using FlashFit, you first select a face or edge on the placement part. You then select a face or edge you want on the target part and let the inference logic built into Solid Edge determine the most likely relationship, based on the target part element.

For example, if you choose a planar face on the placement and target parts, the software assumes that you want to establish a mate or planar align relationship. When you select the target part element, the placement part is positioned in the assembly using the closest solution.

- If the two faces you select are closer to a mate solution, a mate relationship is applied.

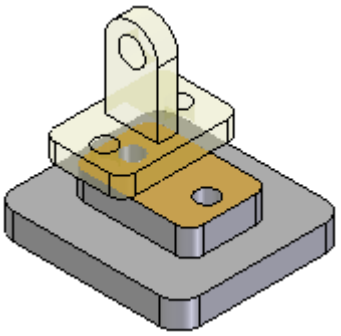


- If the two faces you select are closer to a planar align solution, a planar align relationship is applied.



A Flip button on the command bar allows you to select the alternate solution. You can also use the Tab key to select an alternate solution.

When using FlashFit to position a part, it is displayed translucent to make it easier to differentiate from the other parts in the assembly.



When possible, FlashFit moves the first part you select when applying the relationship, and the second part remains stationary. If the first part you select is fully constrained, the second part will move.

You can then use FlashFit to define the additional relationships required to fully position the part in the assembly, or select another relationship type.

Note

When placing a subassembly using FlashFit or the Reduced Steps mode, the parts in the subassembly must be active before you can select a face. If the subassembly is not already active, you can use the Activate Part button on the Assemble command bar to activate the placement part in the subassembly which contains the face you want to select.

FlashFit also allows more flexibility to use edges, in addition to faces, when positioning a part using mate, axial align, and planar align relationships.

This can be especially useful when positioning a fastener, such as a bolt into hole. For example, when positioning a part using an axial align relationship, you cannot use a circular edge to position a part. With FlashFit, you can use a circular edge on both the placement part and target part to completely position the part in two steps.

FlashFit options

The Options dialog box on the command bar allows you to set the FlashFit options you want to use. For example, you can specify the element types you want FlashFit to recognize when placing a part. This allows you to tailor the behavior of FlashFit for the part you are currently placing.

Moving and rotating parts with FlashFit

When using FlashFit, you can also move or rotate the placement part into a more convenient location. To move the part, position the cursor over the part and drag the cursor.

To rotate the part, press the Ctrl key while dragging the cursor. If any relationships have been applied to the placement part, the movement or rotation is limited to the available degrees of freedom.

Traditional part positioning workflow

The traditional workflow walks you through every step required to position a part using assembly relationships. For new users, this allows you to gain a full understanding of the part positioning process. A command bar, which is unique to each relationship, guides you through the positioning process.

The traditional workflow is also preferred when positioning parts using relationships that FlashFit does not recognize, such as angle, cam, parallel, and tangent relationships.

Reduced steps

The Reduced Steps option eliminates the part selection and accept steps in the traditional workflow. You can set this option using the Options dialog box on the Assemble command bar. When the Reduced Steps option is set, you specify the placement part and target part by selecting a face on each part. This reduces the number of steps from five to three for a typical mate relationship. There is some trade-off when using this option. Since the part in the assembly is no longer selected as a separate step, surfaces or cylinders on every active part are available for selection.

In large assemblies or in assemblies with numerous overlapping parts, positioning one part precisely to another can prove time consuming. In such cases, use QuickPick to filter the selection process.

> **Note**
>
> When this option is set, you must specify the offset type and offset value before selecting the target face. If you want to use a reference plane on the target part to position the placement part, you must display the reference planes first.

Capture fit

The Capture Fit command captures the assembly relationships and faces used to position a part or subassembly in the active assembly. When you place the part or subassembly again, you simply select the faces on a new target part already in the assembly to position the new part or subassembly. This reduces the number of steps required to position the part.

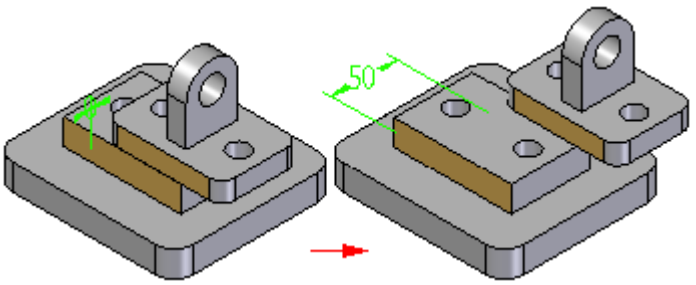
If you used the Insert option to position a part, the Capture Fit command will capture a mate and an axial align relationship, since these are the relationships that the Insert option actually places.

You can also capture relationships by setting the Automatically Capture Fit When Placing Parts option on the Options dialog box on the Assemble command bar.

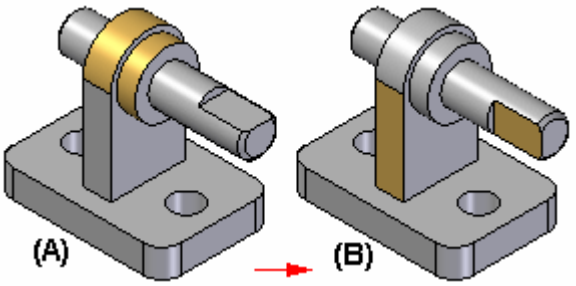
> **Note**
>
> The Capture Fit command cannot capture Angular relationships.

Defining offset values

Some relationships let you define fixed or floating offsets between the parts, such as the mate and align relationships. To specify an offset type, click one of the two offset buttons on the command bar. When you specify a fixed offset, you can type a dimensional value for the offset distance. For example, when you define a fixed offset for a planar align relationship, you can edit the value so that the parts are no longer co-planar.



A floating offset is useful when you need to control the orientation of a part with respect to another part, but it is impossible to define a fixed dimensional value. For example, you can use a floating offset to control the rotational orientation of a part. When you apply an axial align relationship using the Unlock Rotation option between a cylindrical shaft and the cylindrical face on another part (A), you can then use a planar align relationship, with a floating offset (B), to control the rotational orientation of the shaft.



If you try to apply a fixed offset for the planar align relationship, a message is displayed, saying that the fixed option conflicts with another relationship.

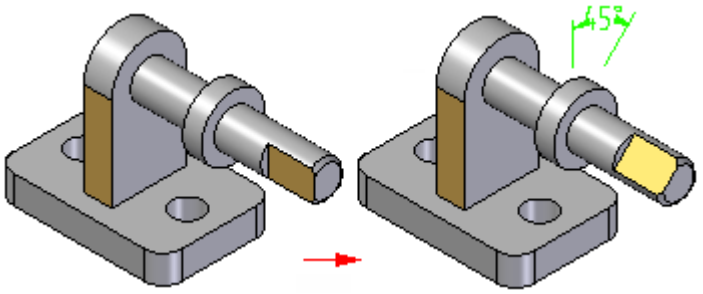
Note

The range offset command is not intended to be used to for geometric tolerances. Depending on the relationships used to position the part are defined, this may result in an over constrained condition and cause errors.

Locking and unlocking rotation on axial align relationships

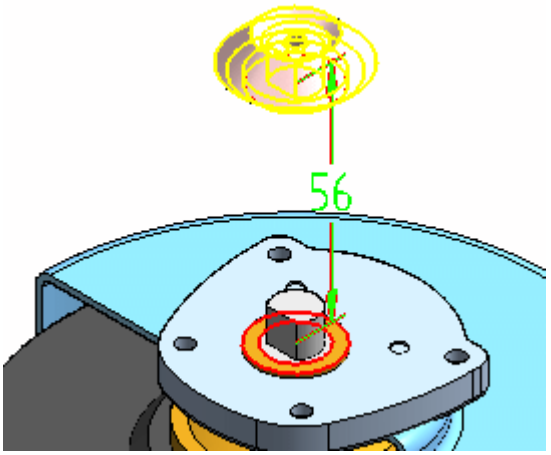
When you apply an axial align relationship, you can use the Lock Rotation and Unlock Rotation buttons on the command bar to specify whether the part is free to rotate around the axis of rotation. The Lock Rotation option is useful when the rotational orientation of the part is not important, such as placing a bolt into a hole. When you set the Lock Rotation option, the rotational orientation of the part is locked at a random position, but one less relationship is required to fully position the part.

When you set the Unlock Rotation option, you can define the rotational orientation you want by applying another relationship. For example, you can apply an angle relationship.



Assembly relationship dimensions

When positioning parts using assembly relationships, driving or driven dimensions are created and displayed when appropriate. For example, when you position a part using a mate relationship with a fixed offset, a driving dimension is created.



When you position a part using a mate relationship with a floating offset (the offset value is controlled by another relationship), a driven dimension is created, which cannot be edited to reposition the part. Zero and negative value dimensions are supported.

When you apply or edit an assembly relationship, you can select and edit the driving dimension to change the offset value. You can use the Show All Dimensions option on the Options dialog box on the command bar to control whether the dimensions are displayed or hidden. When you set this option, dimensions display when you select a part and then click the Edit Definition button on the command bar. You can then select a dimension and edit its value using the command bar. When you clear this option, no dimensions are displayed, except for when you select a relationship in the bottom pane of PathFinder. When you select a relationship in the bottom pane of PathFinder, the dimension is displayed and selected, which allows you to edit its value using the command bar.

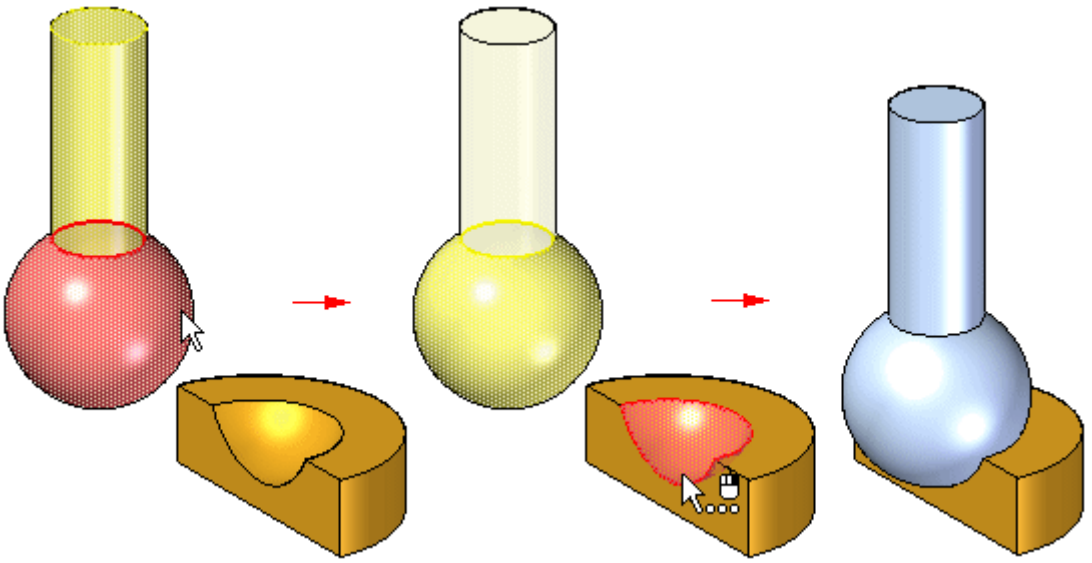
Dimensions are only created when appropriate for the relationship options you are using. Dimensions are created when using the mate, planar align, connect, angle, tangent, and parallel relationships. Dimensions are not created when using axial align, ground, or cam relationships.

Assembly Relationship Assistant command

When working with assemblies whose parts are oriented correctly, but do not have assembly relationships, such as assemblies that were imported into Solid Edge from another CAD system, you can use the Assembly Relationship Assistant command to apply relationships between the parts and subassemblies. The relationships are applied based on their current geometric orientation. For more information, see the Assembly Relationship Assistant command Help topic.

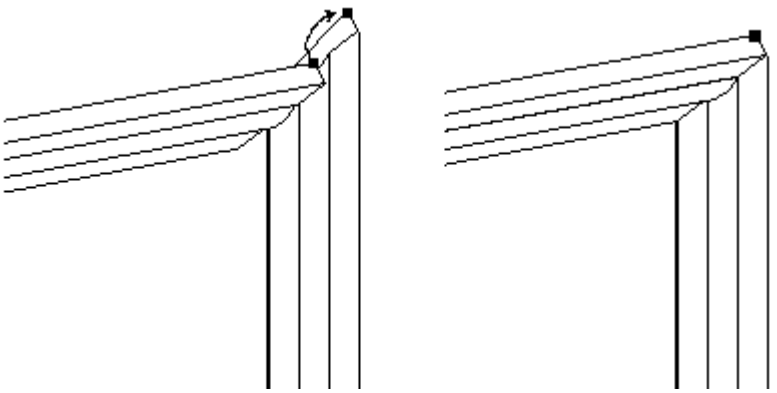
Applying a connect relationship

When two parts in an assembly cannot be positioned properly by mate and align relationships, you can position them using connect relationships. A connect relationship positions a keypoint on one part with a keypoint, line, or face on another part. For example, you can apply a connect relationship to position the center of a spherical face on one part with respect to a spherical face on another part.

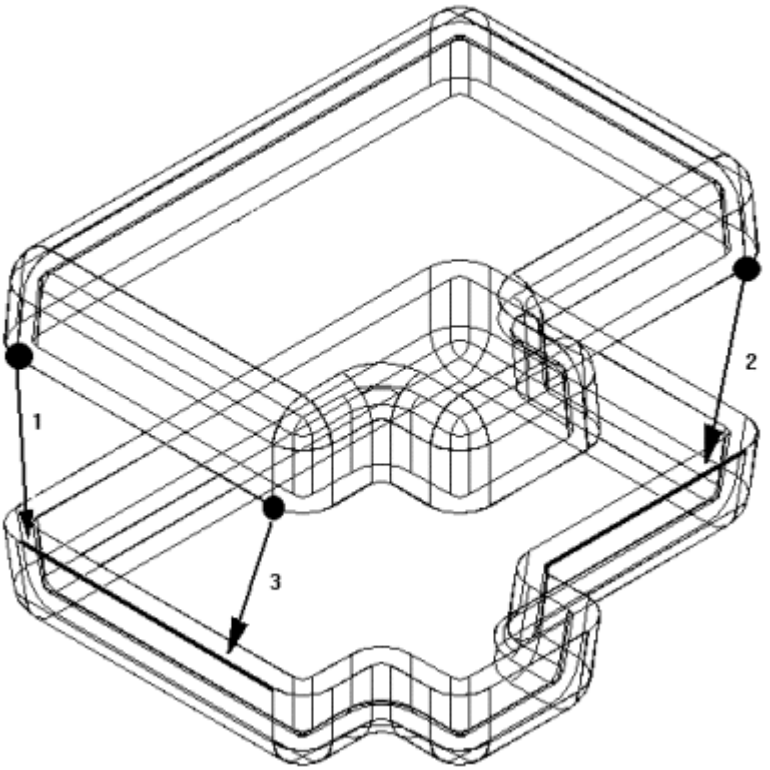


You can use the following methods to apply connect relationships:

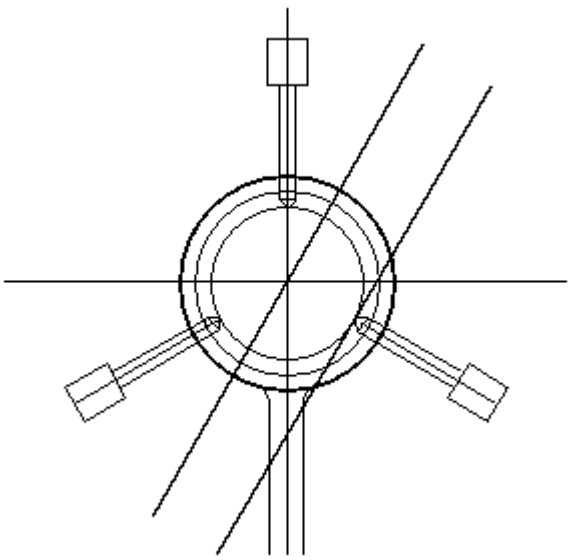
- Point-to-Point: In the following figure, a mate relationship is applied between the mitered corners of the parts. A connect relationship, which ties a point on one part to the appropriate point on another, connects the two corners properly. A floating align relationship between the back surfaces fully positions the part.



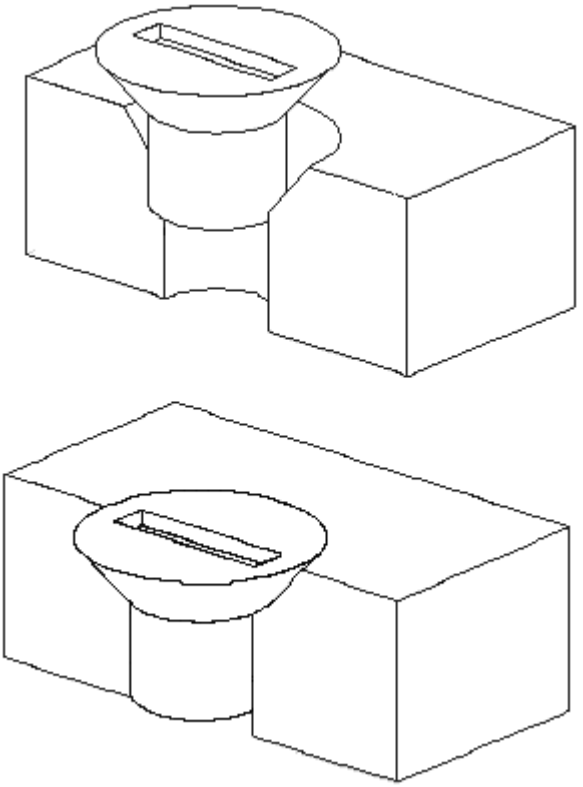
- Point-to-Line: In the following example, a mate relationship is applied between the faces of the two parts. Because the sides of each part are drafted, there are no part faces which you can use to apply a planar align relationship. You can apply three connect relationships between the keypoints on the top part and the linear edges on the bottom part.



- Point-to-Plane: In the following example, the lower right pin is positioned to a depth that just touches the surface of a reference plane.



- Cone-to-Cone: In the following example, the cone on the fastener is connected to the cone on the countersunk hole on the plate. When you add a connect relationship between two conical faces, the keypoint that represents the theoretical intersection of the individual cones are connected. You can also apply an offset value to a connect relationship between two conical faces.



Recognizable elements for the connect relationship

Keypoints

- End points of lines, arcs, and ellipses
- Midpoint of a line (edge centerline)
- Arc center point
- Circle center point
- Elliptical element center point
- Spherical surface center point
- Conical surface center point

Lines

- Linear edges (including tangent edges)
- Reference axis

Surfaces

- Planar part surfaces
- Reference planes

Connect relationship combinations

- Connect a point on the first part to a point on the second part
- Connect a point on the first part to a line on the second part
- Connect a point on the first part to a face on the second part
- Connect a line on the first part to a point on the second part
- Connect a face on the first part to a point on the second part

Note

You can also use an axial align or a connect relationship to position a part with respect to a keypoint or a line in an assembly sketch.

Differences between assembly relationships and sketch relationships

The relationships that you apply between the parts and subassemblies of an assembly differ from the relationships that you apply while working with part sketches. For example:

- There are no relationship handles added to the assembly to show that a relationship has been applied. Instead, the relationships between parts are shown in PathFinder.
- Except for the ground relationship, all assembly relationships are defined between the part or subassembly you are placing and a part or subassembly already placed in the assembly.
- You cannot use dimensioning commands to place relationships between parts and subassemblies in an assembly.

Positioning parts using coordinate systems

You can also position parts in an assembly using coordinate systems. You do this by first defining coordinate systems in the part document on both the placement and target parts. You can then use the Planar Align relationship, Mate relationship, and Match Coordinate Systems option on the Assemble command bar to position the placement part.

For example, with the Match Coordinate Systems option, the placement part is positioned using planar align relationships that match the three principal axes on the coordinate system for the placement part and the target part. This allows you to position the placement part using fewer steps than applying three separate planar align relationships. This can be useful when working with a common part that is placed into an assembly multiple times in the same position relative to a target part.

Capture Fit command

Captures the assembly relationships and faces used to position a part or subassembly already placed in the assembly. You can then place the part or subassembly again later using fewer steps. You can use the Capture Fit dialog box to specify which relationships you want to capture.

If you used the Insert option to position a part, the Capture Fit command will capture a mate and an axial align relationship, since these are the relationships that the Insert option actually places.

You can also capture relationships by setting the Automatically Capture Fit When Placing Parts option on the Options dialog box on the Place Part command bar.

Note

The Capture Fit command cannot capture angular relationships.

Capture Fit dialog box

Capture the assembly relationships for a part

1. In the assembly window, select a part for which you want to capture relationships.
2. Choose Home tab® Relate group® Capture Fit .
3. In the Capture Fit dialog box, use the Add and Remove buttons to specify which relationships you want to capture, and then click OK.

Tip

- You can also select the part you want to use in PathFinder.
- When you use the Capture Fit command, the relationships and faces used to position the part or subassembly the first time are stored so you can place the part using fewer steps later.
- If you used the Insert option to position a part, the Capture Fit command will capture a mate and an axial align relationship, since these are the relationships that the Insert option actually places.
- The Capture Fit command cannot capture angular relationships.
- You can also capture relationships by setting the Automatically Capture Fit When Placing Parts option on the Options dialog box on the Place Part command bar.

Activity: Positioning parts with mate, axial align, planar align and insert

Overview

This activity shows the process of positioning parts using mate, axial align, planar align and insert. The parts will be positioned with the reduced steps option turned off to better understand the workflow options in the command bar. Then the same parts will be placed with the reduced steps option turned on to show how the process can be streamlined.

> **Note**
>
> FlashFit is a preferred method of quickly positioning parts in an assembly and will be covered in another activity. This activity forces you to manually position parts so that you will understand what is occurring when parts are positioned using flashfit and how to change a single relationship to reposition a part if an edit is later required.

Objectives

Parts will be added to an assembly using the commands mate, planar align, axial align and insert

In this activity you will:

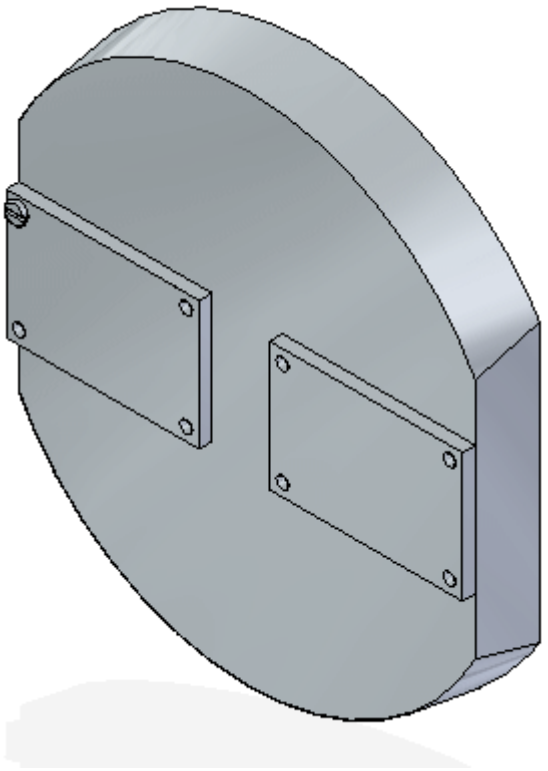
- Learn how to position parts using the commands mate, axial align, planar align and insert without using reduced steps.
- Learn how the command bar reflects the workflow during the positioning of parts.
- Use reduced steps to position parts with mate, planar align, axial align, and insert.

Activity

In this activity you will learn the procedure for positioning parts in an assembly using the mate, planar align and axial align relationships.

Activity: Placing parts using mate, planar align, and axial align

This activity will position a part with reduced steps turned off to show the complete sequence of steps involved in positioning a part. The second part will be placed with reduced steps turned on to show a more efficient method of positioning parts.



Create a new assembly and position the first part

In this step, you will create a new assembly using the Synchronous ISO Assembly template. You will click the Parts Library on pathfinder and browse to the folder containing the assembly class files.

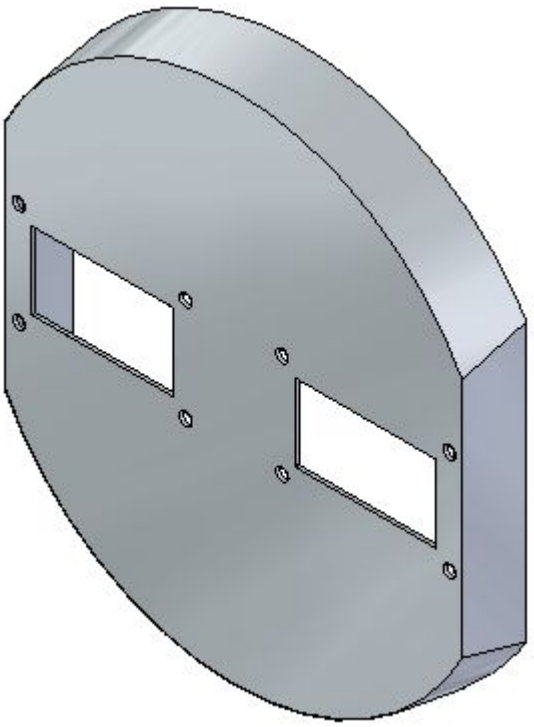
- Create a new assembly. After the assembly opens, click the Application button.

Choose Solid Edge Options, and then click the assembly tab. Check the box as shown.

- From the Parts Library in PathFinder, drag the part *dome.par* in the assembly window.

Note

The first part placed in the assembly is placed as a grounded part.

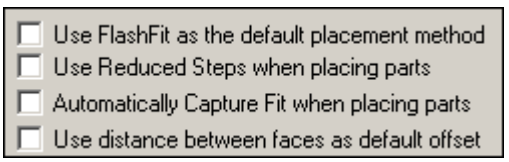


Applying a mate relationship

In this step you will drag the part *a1_part.par* into the assembly window and apply a mate relationship.

- Click the Options button on the command bar.

- Set the options shown and then click OK. Make sure the reduced steps option is *off* and FlashFit as the default placement method is *off*.

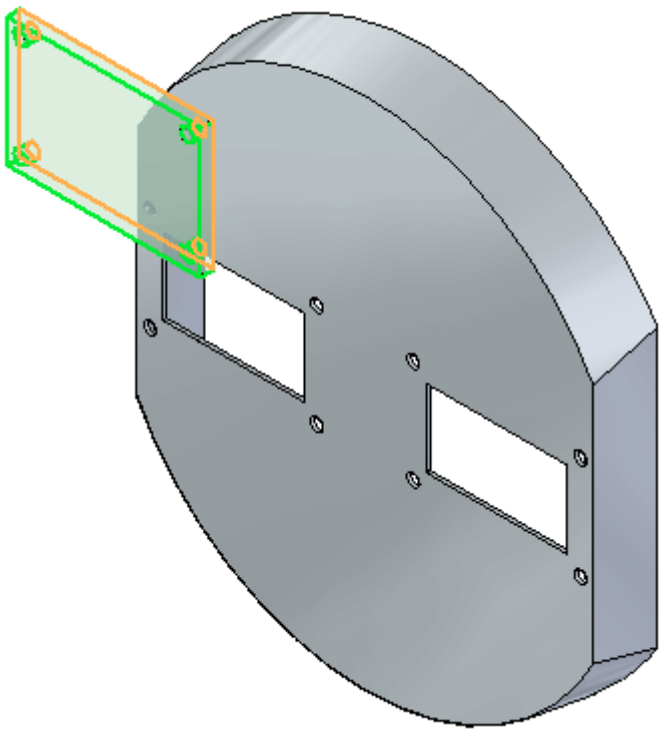


- Select the Mate Relationship.

Note

The Locate Steps group on the command bar reflects the current placement step in the workflow. Notice the step is currently the Placement Part - Element step and you are being prompted to select an element of the placement part. For this relationship, select a face.

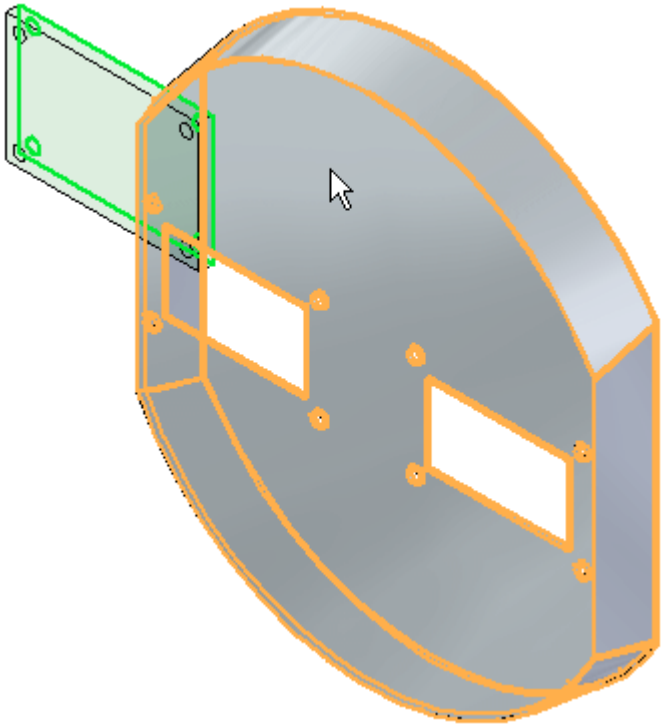
- Select the face shown.



Note

The command bar shows the Target Part step is active, and you are being prompted to select the target part. This part has the face you will apply the mate relationship to. If you selected the wrong face in the previous step, you can back up by clicking the button corresponding to that step and then select the proper geometry again.

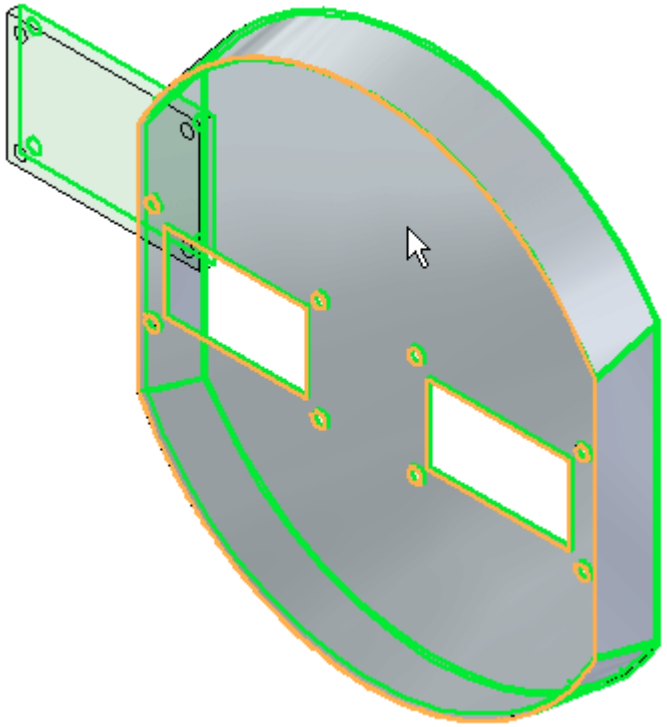
- Select the target part, *dome.par* as shown.



Note

Notice the Target Part - Element step is active, and you are being prompted to select the target part element. This element is the face the mate relationship will be applied to.

- Select the face shown on *dome.par*.



- Right-click or click the OK button to accept. The mate relationship is applied.

Applying a planar align relationship

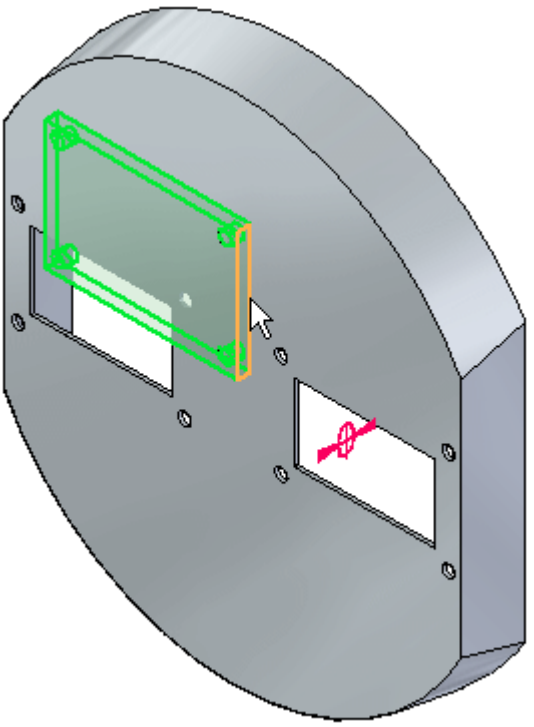
Once this relationship is established, the relationship list increments to the next relationship. Relationship 2 will be a planar align.

- Set the relationship type to Planar Align.

Note

The Locate Steps group on the command bar reflects the current placement step in the workflow. For this relationship, you will select a face.

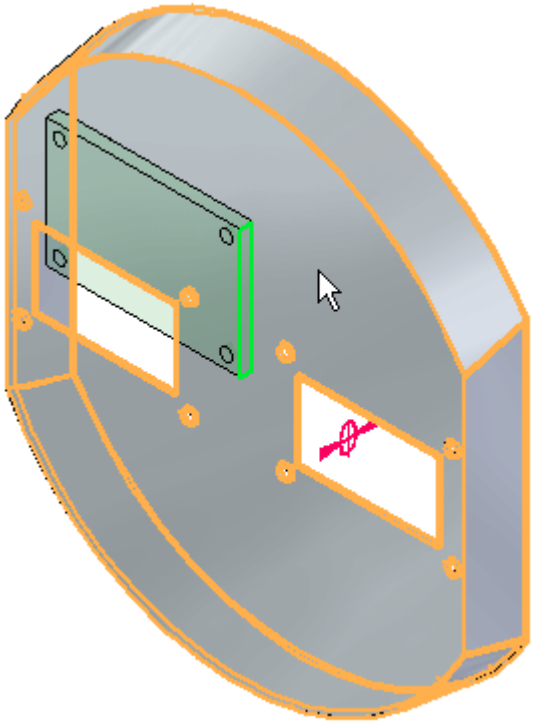
- Select the face shown.



Note

The Locate Steps group on the command bar reflects the current placement step in the workflow. This part has the face you will apply the planar align relationship to.

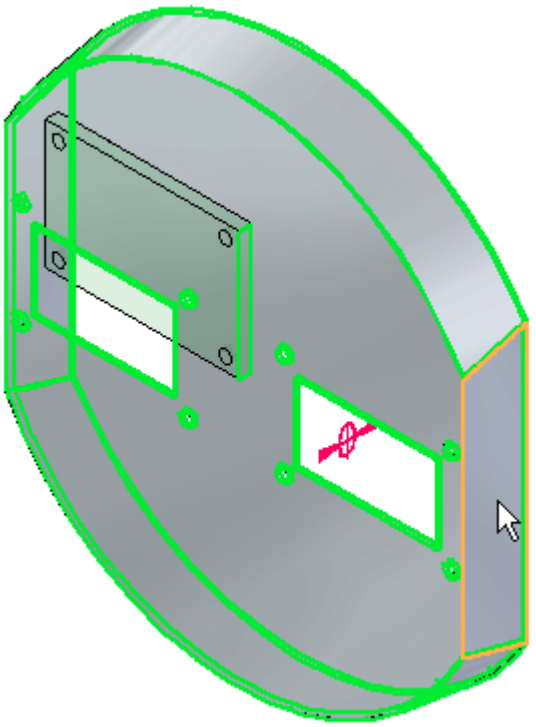
- Select the target part shown.



Note

The Locate Steps group on the command bar reflects the current placement step in the workflow. Select the element that is the face you will apply the planar align relationship to.

- Select the face shown.



- Right-click or click the OK button to accept. The planar align relationship is applied.

Applying an axial align relationship

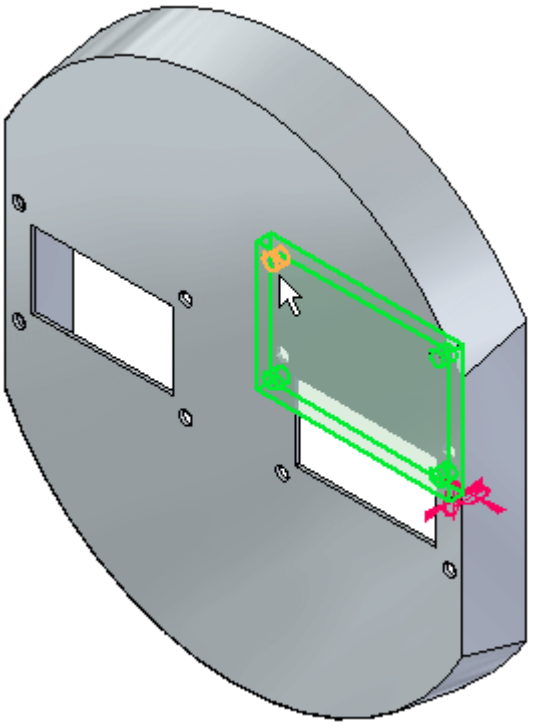
The relationship list increments to the next relationship. Relationship 3 will be an axial align.

- Set the relationship type to Axial Align

Note

The Locate Steps group on the command bar reflects the current placement step in the workflow. For this relationship, you will select a cylindrical face.

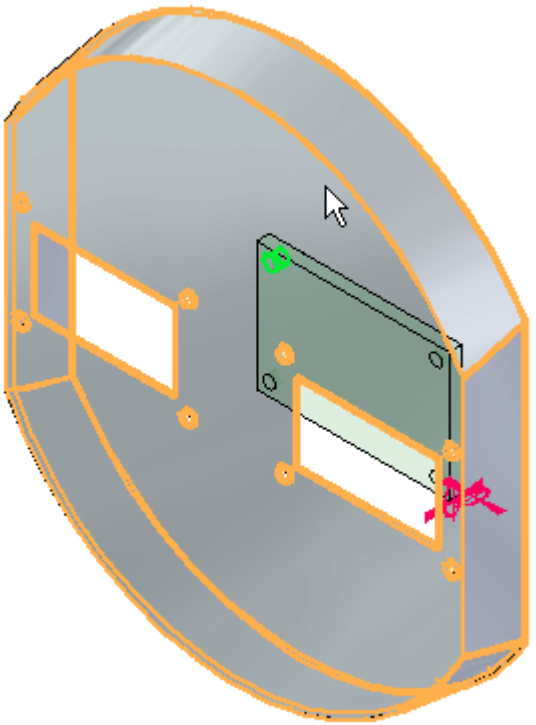
- Select the cylindrical face shown.



Note

The Locate Steps group on the command bar reflects the current placement step in the workflow. This part has the cylindrical face you will apply the axial align relationship to.

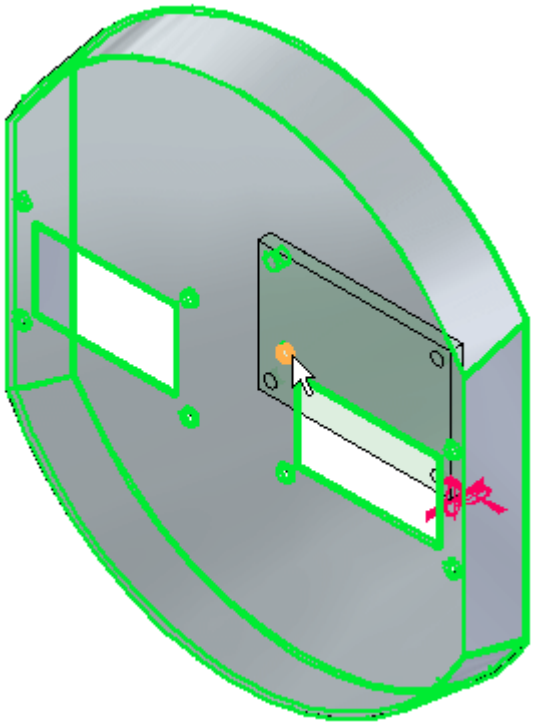
- Select the target part shown.



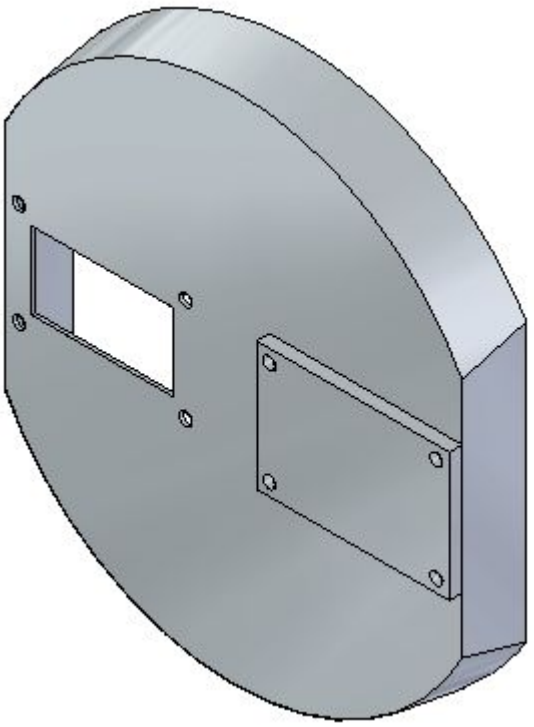
Note

The Locate Steps group on the command bar reflects the current placement step in the workflow. This element is the cylindrical face you will apply the axial align relationship to.

- Select the cylindrical face shown.



- Right-click or click OK to accept. The axial align relationship is applied, and the part is fully positioned.



Applying a mate relationship with reduced steps

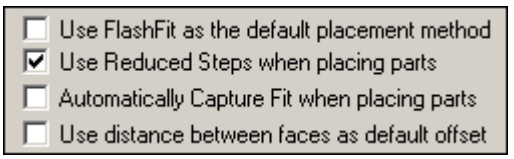
Another occurrence of the part *a1_part.par* will be placed. The sequence of steps will be the same except reduced steps will be used.

Note

When the reduced steps option is used, the step for selecting the target part is eliminated. Valid features on every part are available for selection and the target part is determined from the part containing the feature. This option is more efficient in most cases, however in large assemblies where an area can be congested with many parts, it is desirable to have more control by manually choosing the target part as was shown in the previous steps.

- From the Parts Library, drag the part *a1_part.par* into the assembly window. You will apply a mate relationship.
- Click the Options button on the command bar.

- Set the options shown. Make sure the reduced steps option is *on* and FlashFit as the default placement method is *off*.

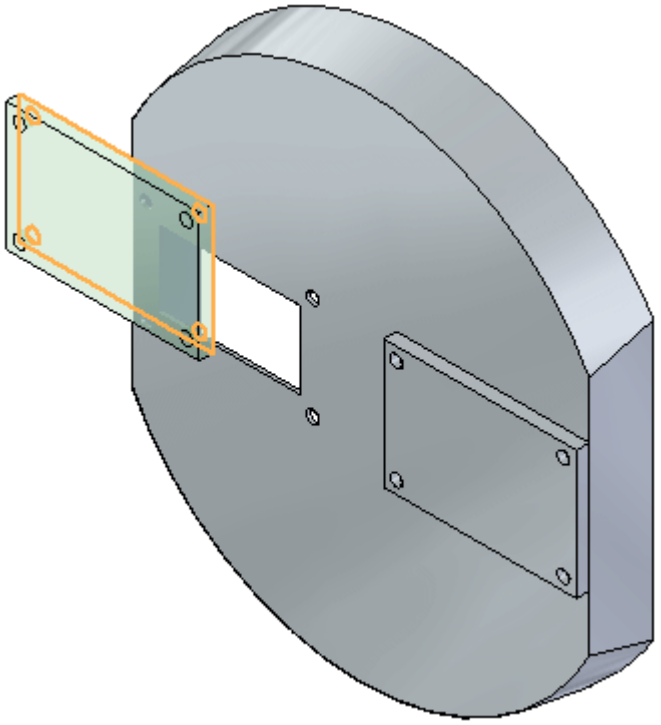


- Select the mate relationship.

Note

The command bar reflects the placement step in the workflow. Notice the step is currently the element step and you are being prompted to select an element of the placement part. For this relationship, you will select a face.

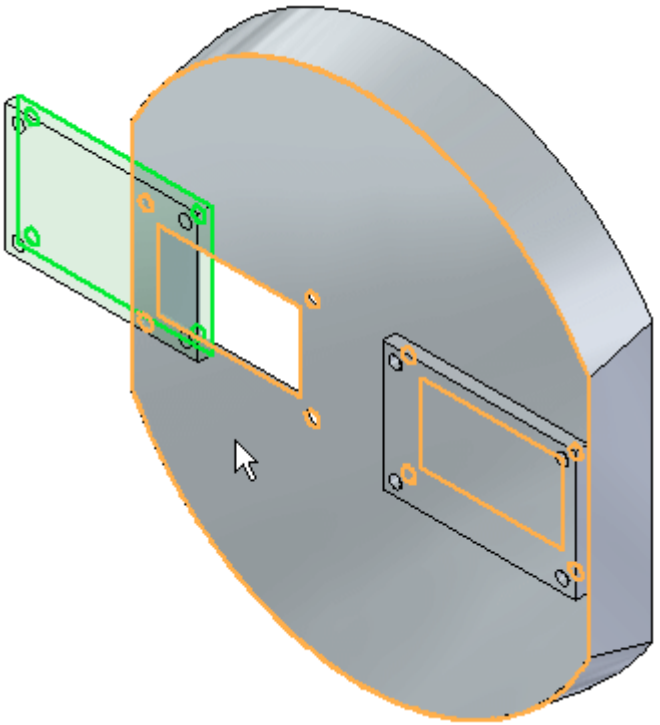
- Select the face shown.



Note

Because the reduced steps option is set, the command bar reflects the placement step in the workflow. Notice the step is now the target part element, and you are being prompted to select the target part element. This element is the face the mate relationship will be applied to. The target part is automatically assigned and is the part on which the target element belongs.

- Select the face shown.



- The mate relationship is applied.

Note

Using reduced steps, there is no need to click OK to complete. Once the target element is selected, the relationship is established.

Applying a planar align relationship with reduced steps

Once this relationship is established, the relationship list increments to the next relationship. Relationship 2 will be a planar align.

- Set the relationship type to Planar Align.

Note

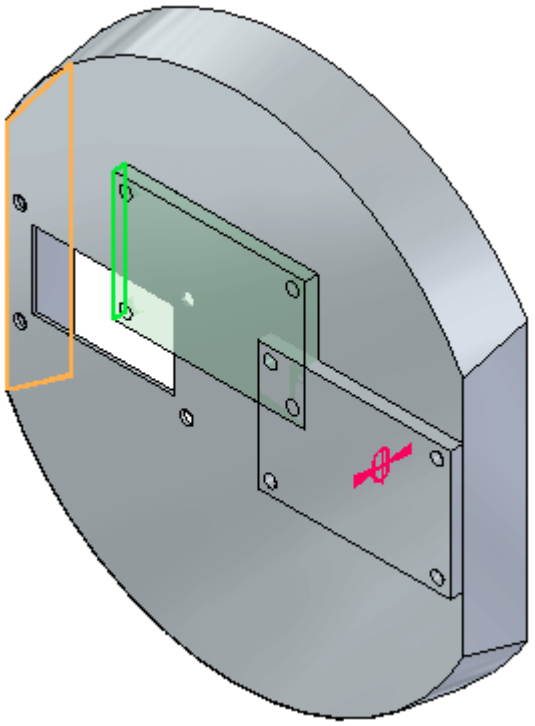
The command bar reflects the placement step in the workflow. Notice the step is currently the element step and you are being prompted to select an element of the placement part. For this relationship, you will select a face.

- Select the face shown.

  Note

  The command bar reflects the placement step in the workflow. Notice the step is now the target part element, and you are being prompted to select the target part element. This element is the face you will apply the planar align relationship to.

- Select the target part element shown.



The planar align relationship is applied.

Applying a axial align relationship with reduced steps

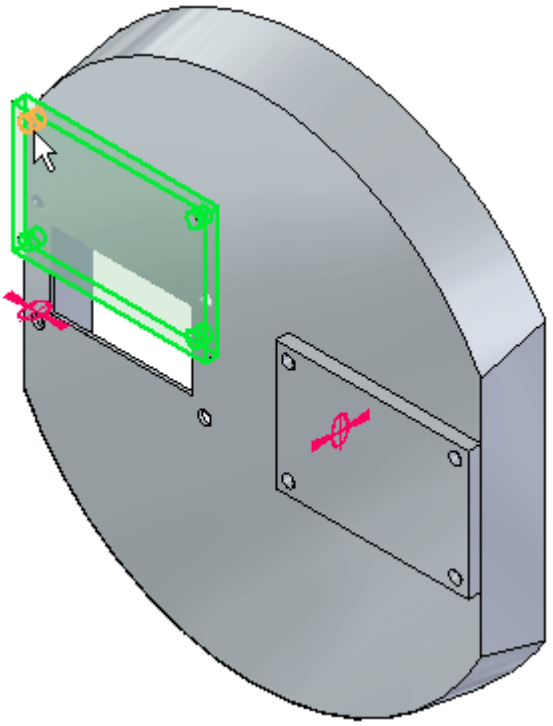
Once this relationship is established, the relationship list increments to the next relationship. Relationship 3 will be an axial align.

- Set the relationship type to Axial Align

Note

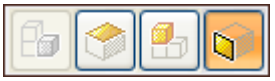
The command bar reflects the placement step in the workflow. Notice the step is currently the element step and you are being prompted to select an element of the placement part. For this relationship, you will select a cylindrical face.

- Select the cylindrical face shown.

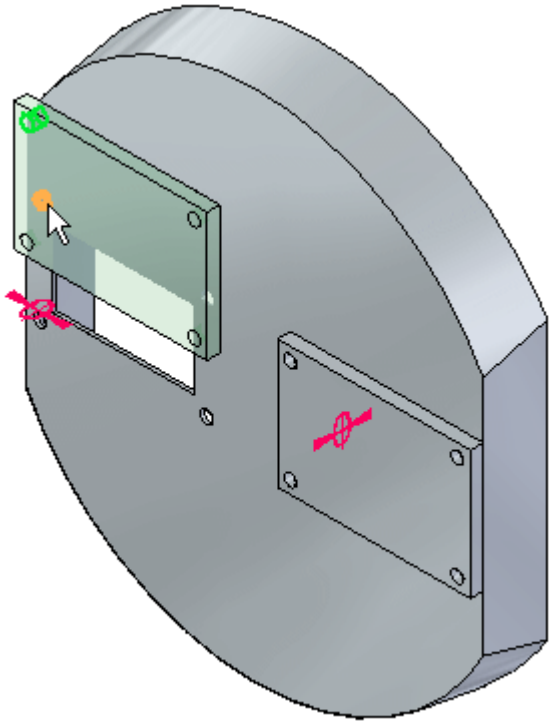


Note

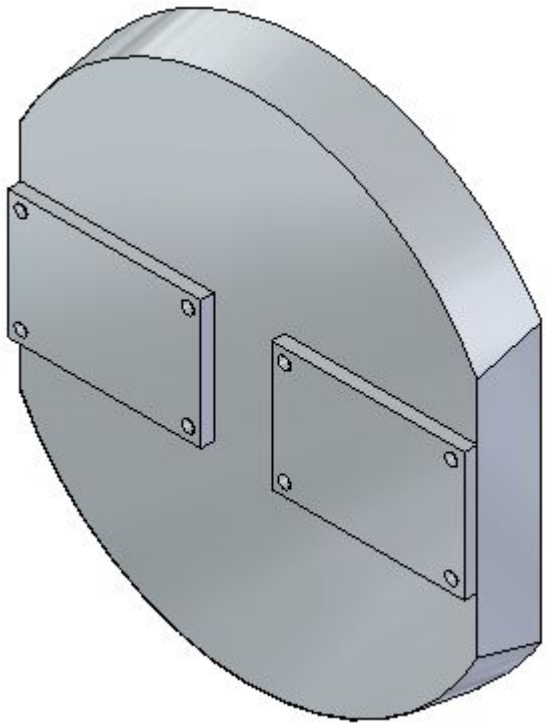
The command bar reflects the placement step in the workflow. Notice the step is now the target part element, and you are being prompted to select the target part element. This element is the cylindrical face you will apply the axial align relationship to.



- Select the cylindrical face shown.



The axial align relationship is applied, and the part is fully positioned.



Placing a fastener with the Insert command

Insert will be used to position a fastener in a hole.

Note

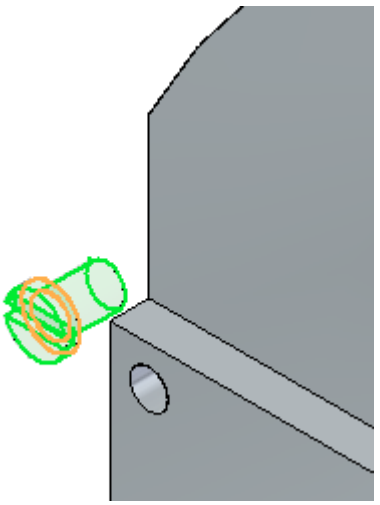
Insert requires a mate and an axial align. Once you have established these relationships, the rotation of the axial align is locked and the part is fully positioned.

- Drag the part *10mm_fastener.par* into the assembly window.
- Select the Insert Command.

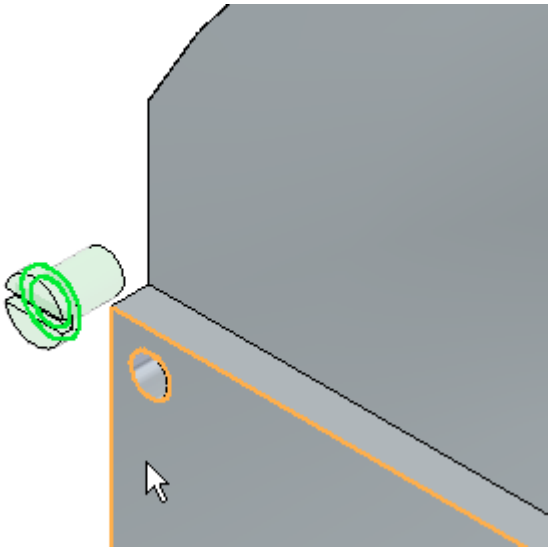
Note

The mate relationship will be established first, then the axial align. Because of the number of faces to choose from, Quickpick will be used to aid in the selection.

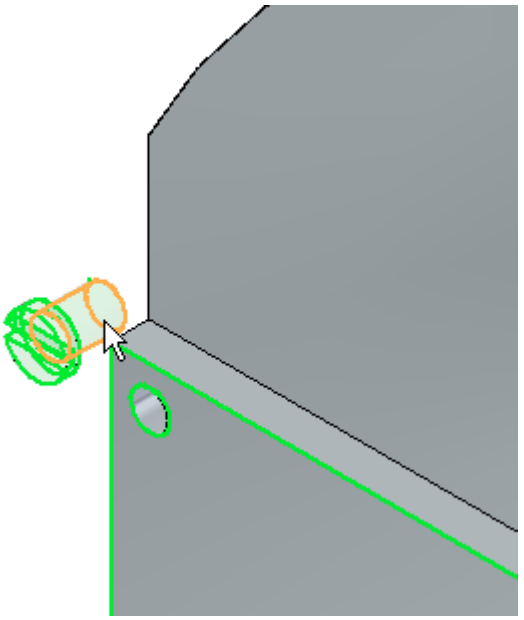
- Fort the mate relationship, select the face shown.



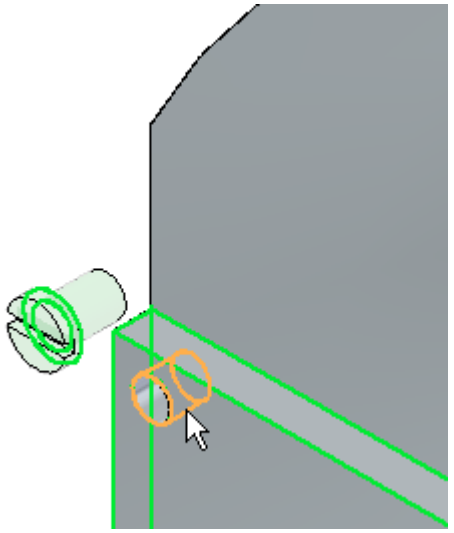
- Select the target face for the mate relationship as shown.



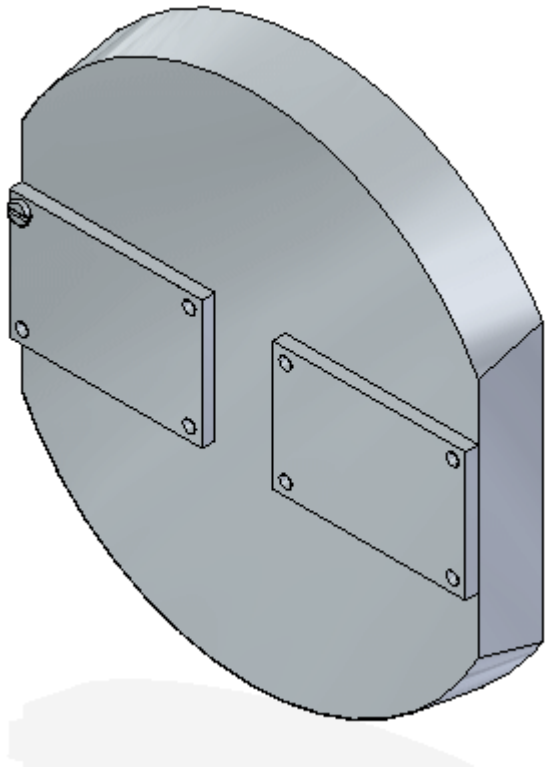
- For the axial align relationship, select the cylindrical face shown.



- For the target face of the axial align, select the face shown.



- The fastener is placed and fully positioned, with the rotation locked. Click the Select tool to exit. Close the assembly document without saving.



Activity summary

In this activity you learned the workflow for establishing relationships needed to position parts in an assembly. You also learned that using the reduced steps option streamlines the process of positioning parts.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. What are the steps required to apply a mate relationship without using flashfit or reduced steps?

2. What is the difference between mate and planar align?

3. What is a floating offset?

4. Are linear edges valid for the placement of an axial align relationship?

5. When using reduced steps, which step is eliminating when creating a relationship?

Answers

1. What are the steps required to apply a mate relationship without using flashfit or reduced steps?

   a. Select the face to mate on the placement part.

   b. Select the target part.

   c. Select the face to mate to on the target part.

   d. Select the face to mate to on the target part.

   e. Enter an offset distance (optional).

   f. Click OK.

2. What is the difference between mate and planar align?

   Mated faces face each other. Faces that are planar aligned face the same direction.

3. What is a floating offset?

   A floating offset forces the faces to be parallel and the distance between the faces is determined by other relationships.

4. Are linear edges valid for the placement of an axial align relationship?

   Linear edges can be used to define an axial align relationship, as well as cylindrical features, constant radius features such as rounds or fillets.

5. When using reduced steps, which step is eliminating when creating a relationship?

   Valid features are found on all active parts and the selection of the target part is not required.

Lesson summary

In this lesson you learned the workflow for establishing relationships needed to position parts in an assembly. You also learned that using the reduced steps option streamlines the process of positioning parts.

Activity: Placing parts in an assembly using FlashFit

Overview

In this activity, FlashFit will be used to position parts in a valve assembly.

Objectives

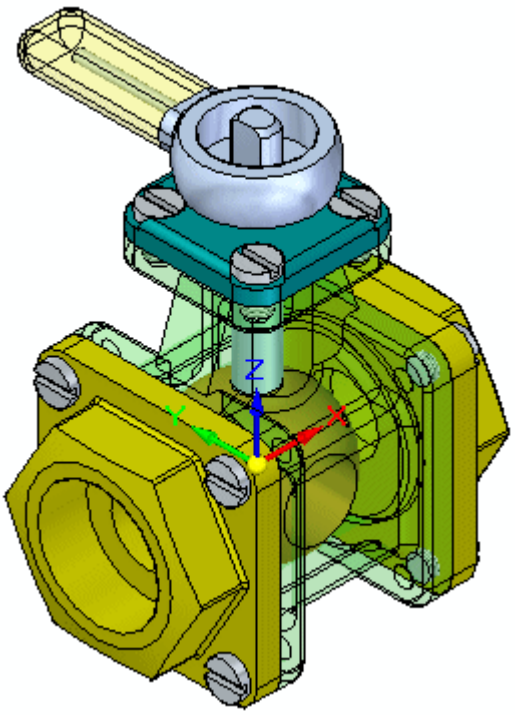
The objective of this activity is for you to be able to use appropriate relationships to position parts in an assembly.

Activity

In this activity you will learn the procedure for positioning parts in an assembly using FlashFit to achieve the relationships of mate, planar align and axial align.

Activity: Placing parts in an assembly with FlashFit

You will use FlashFit to position parts and subassemblies in completing the valve assembly.

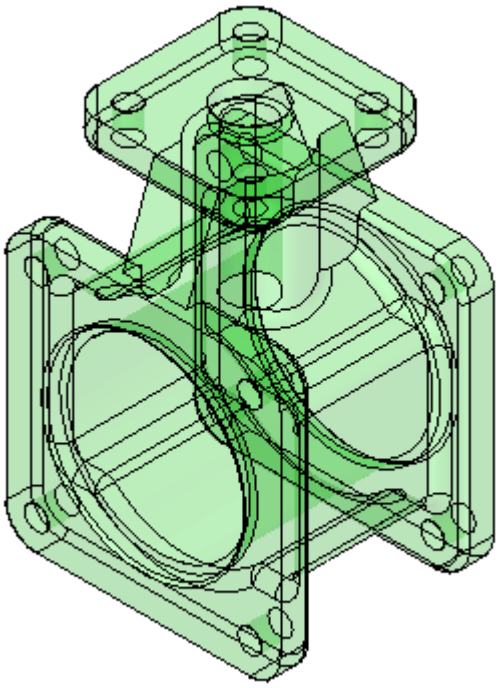


Place the first part in the assembly.

Create a new assembly and place the first part.

- Create a new assembly file.

- On the assembly PathFinder, click the Parts Library and drag *st_v_housing.par* into the assembly window. The first part placed in a new assembly file is grounded.



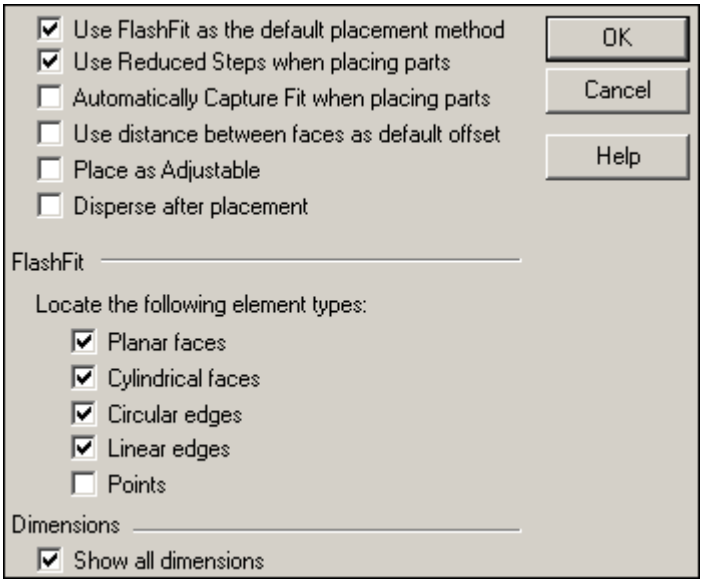
Use FlashFit to position the valve parts and subassemblies

Use FlashFit to position the valve parts. Before placing additional parts, set the FlashFit parameters. Once the parameters are set, the part will be positioned.

- From the Parts Library, drag the subassembly *st_v_handleball.asm* into the assembly window.

- Click the Options button on the command bar.

- Set the Options shown and then click OK.



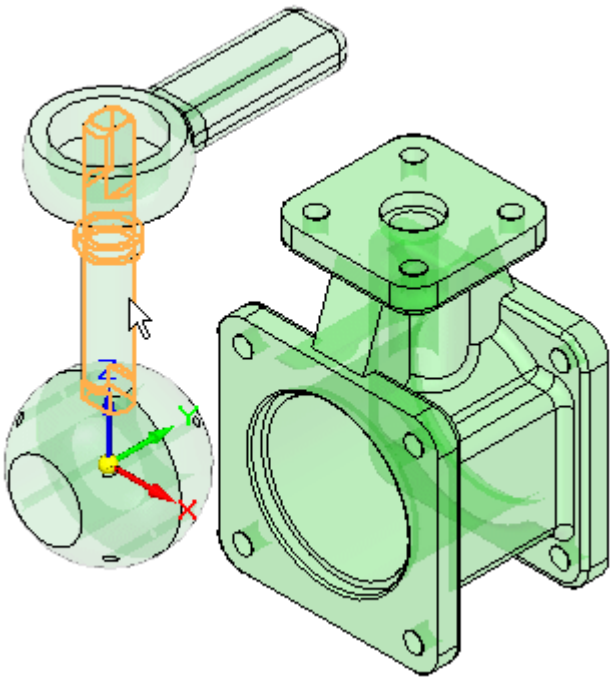
- Set the relationship type to FlashFit.

- On the command bar, click the Activate Part button.

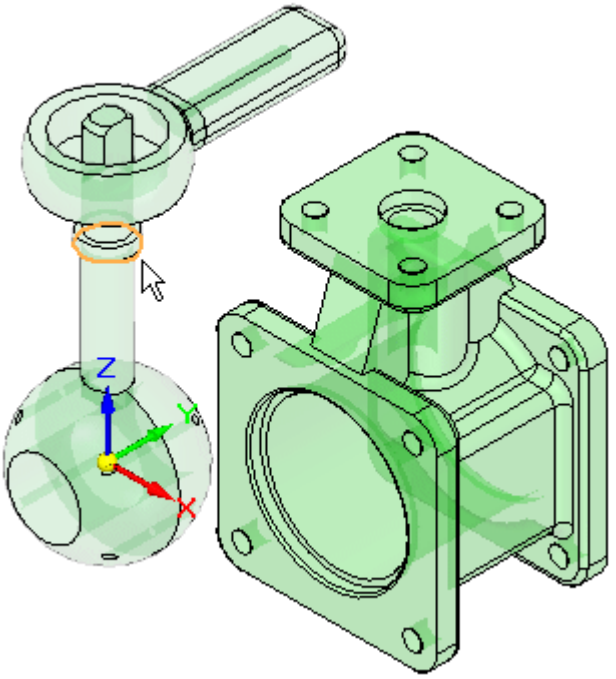
Note

When positioning a subassembly using reduced steps, the parts making up the subassembly come in as inactive. The parts containing the geometry needed to position the subassembly need to be activated.

- Select *st_v_shaft.par* to activate it. Right-click to exit the Activate command and continue.



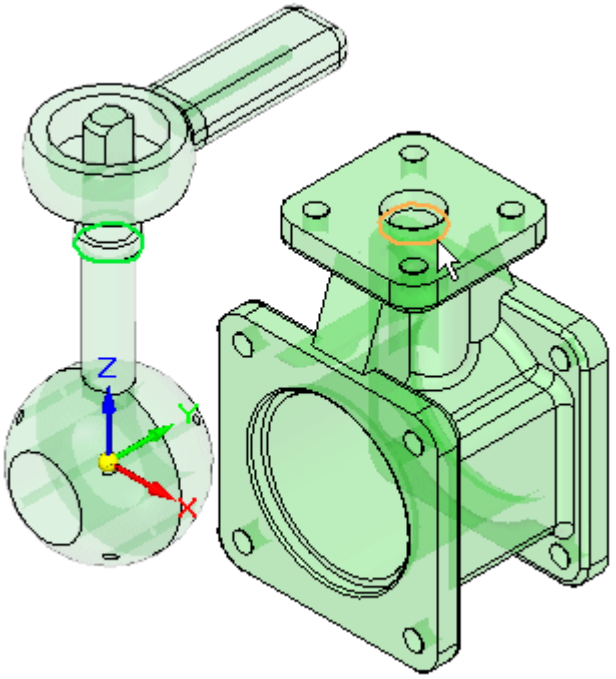
- Select the circular edge shown. Use QuickPick for an accurate selection.



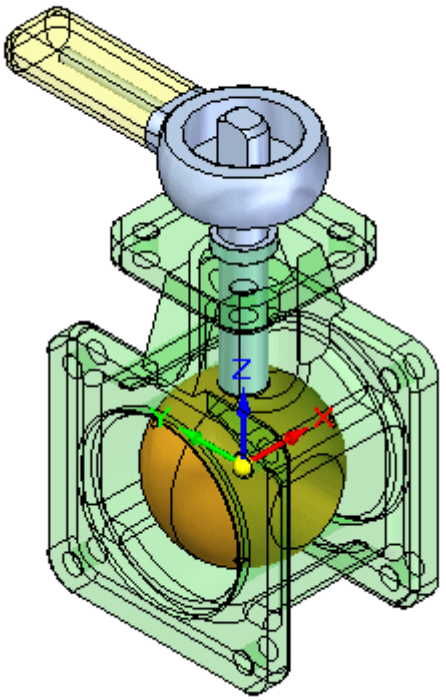
Note

Matching circular edges with FlashFit is the equivalent of using the Insert command. A Mate relationship, and an Axial Align relationship with locked rotation is created.

- Select the inner lip of the center hole of the housing.



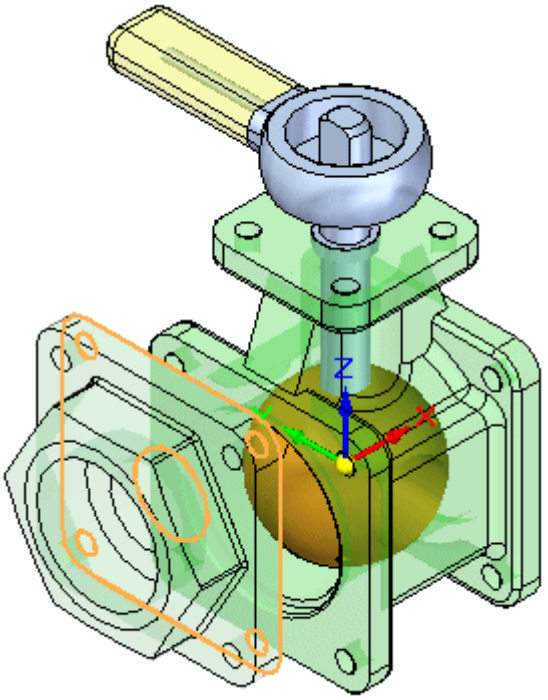
- The subassembly is positioned.



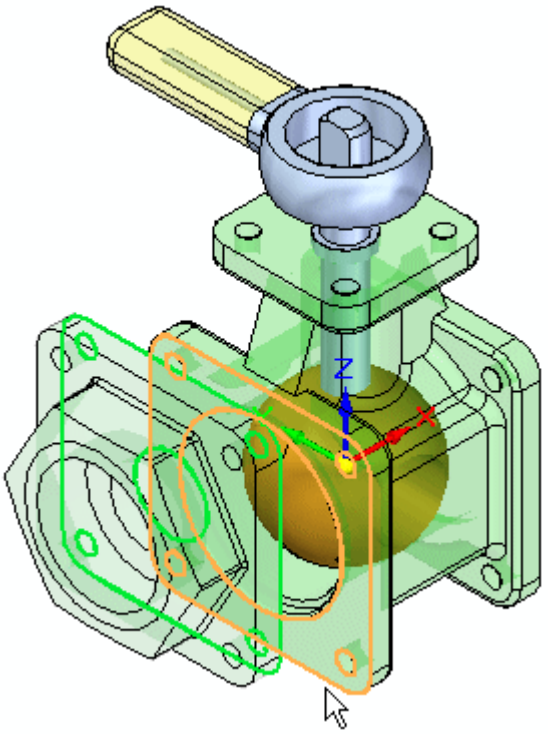
Place the remaining parts

Place additional parts in the assembly until finished.

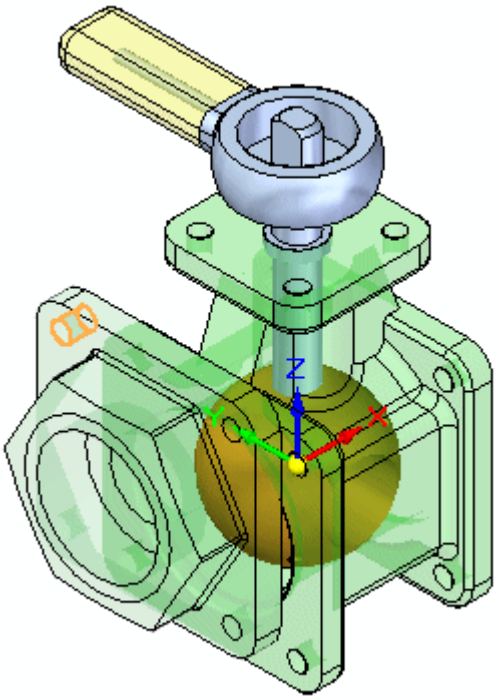
- Drag *st_v_endplate.par* into the assembly window.
- Use QuickPick to select the face shown.



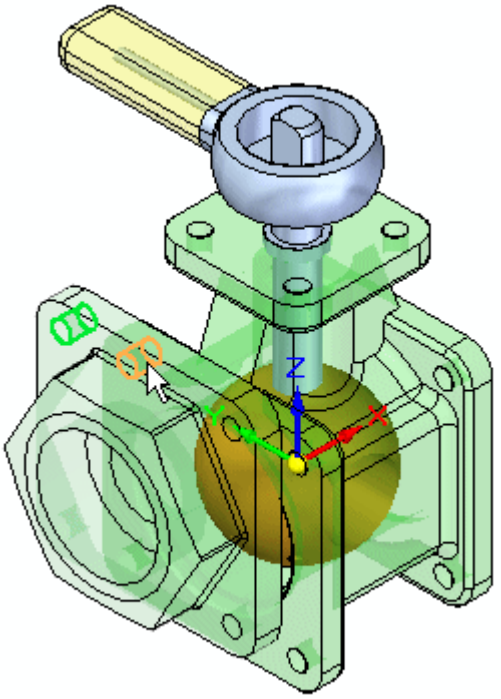
- Select the target face on the housing as shown. A Mate relationship is applied.



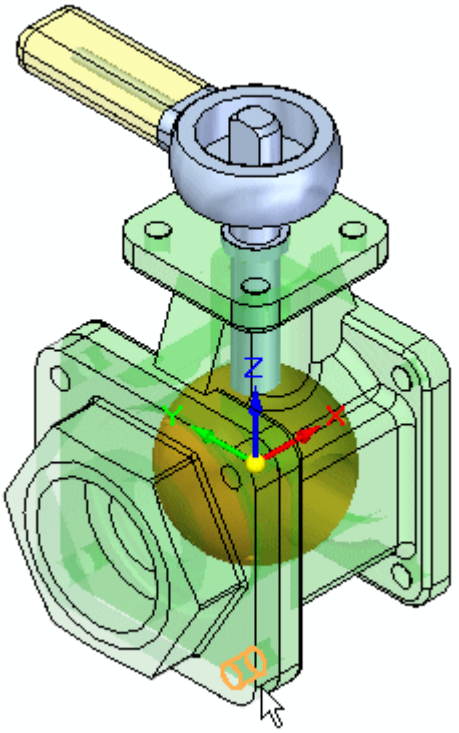
- The next two relationships will be established using alignment of holes in the parts. Select the cylindrical face on the *st_v_endplate.par* as shown.



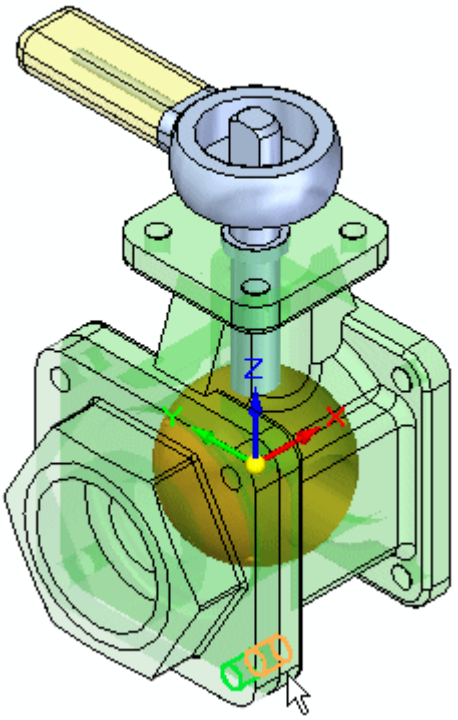
- For the target, select the cylindrical face shown. An Axial Align relationship is applied.



- For the last relationship needed to completely position the part, select the cylindrical face shown.



- For the target, select the cylindrical face shown. An Axial Align relationship is applied and the part is positioned.

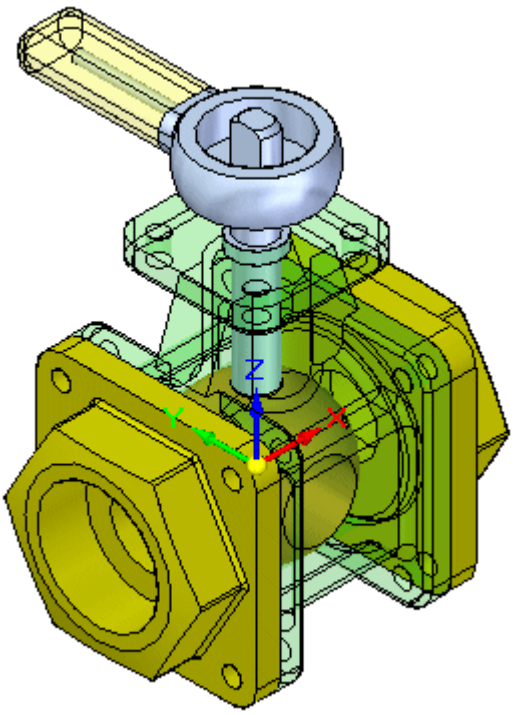


- Drag another occurrence of *st_v_endplate.par* into the assembly window.

- Place *st_v_endplate.par* on the opposite side of the housing from the one just place using the same procedure you used to place the previous part.

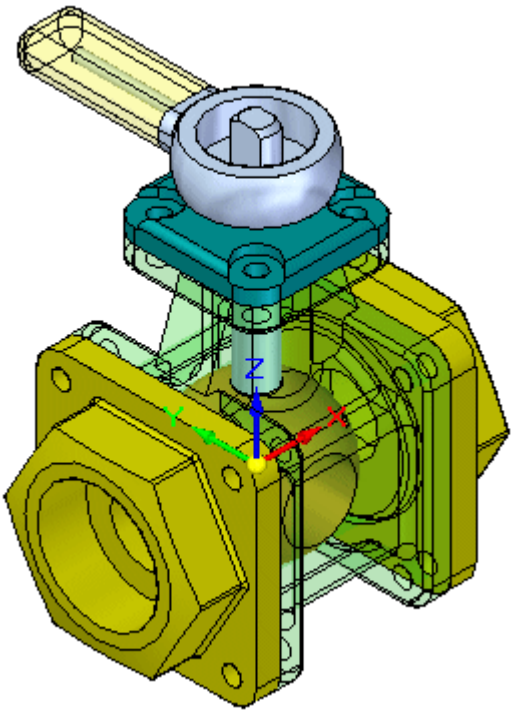
  Note

  FlashFit will assign either a mate or a planar align to flat faces based on the closest orientation of the two faces being positioned. In this case, if a planar align is assigned rather than a mate, use the flip button to change the relationship type to a mate. Flip



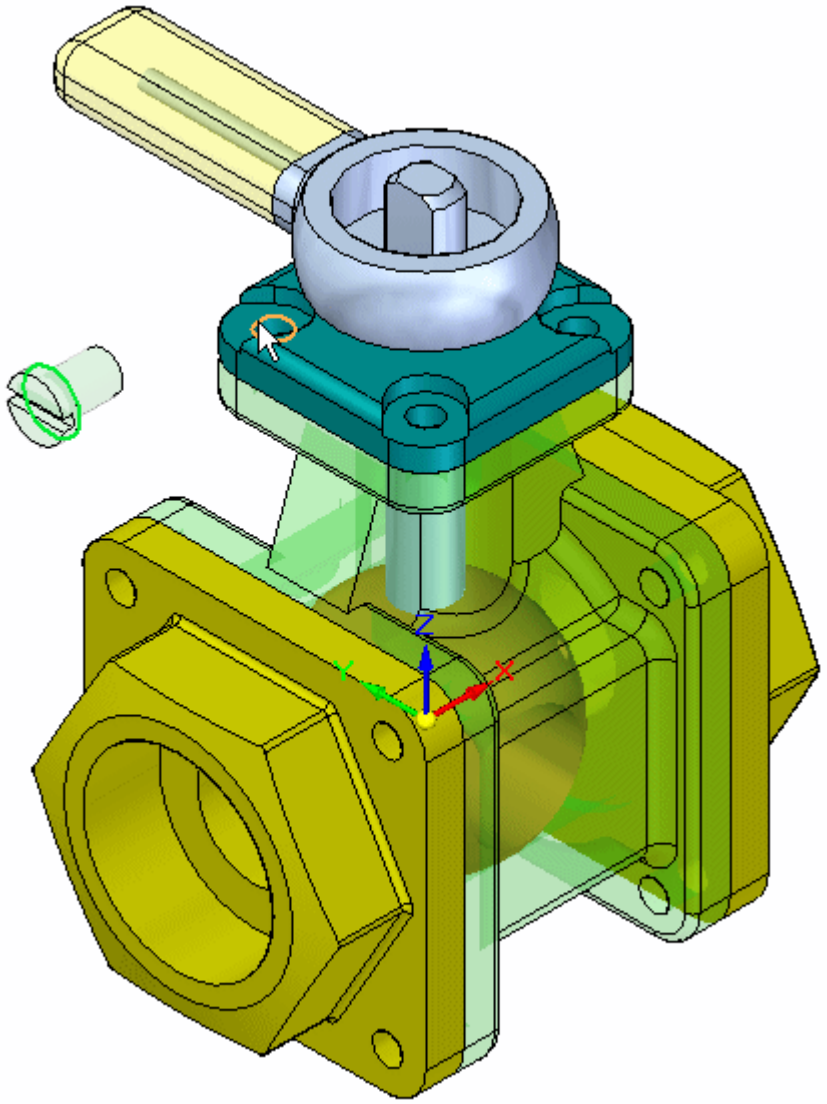
- Drag *st_v_top.par* into the assembly window.

- Use FlashFit to position *st_v_top.par* as shown. The procedure is similar to the one used to place the previous two parts.



- Drag *10mm_fastener.par* into the assembly window.
- Using QuickPick, select the circular edge shown.

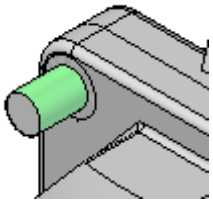
- For the target, select the circular edge shown on the top cap. The fastener is placed.



- Place additional occurrences of *10mm_fastener.par* in the remaining holes on the valve using the same procedure.

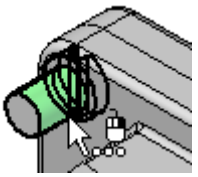
Note

If FlashFit positions the fasteners incorrectly as shown, follow the steps outlined to correct the placement. The reason for the incorrect placement of the fastener is that FlashFit determines whether to apply a Planar Align or a Mate relationship to the fastener based on the orientation of the face relative to the placement face. If the part faces are closer to a planar align relationship, then that is what is applied. Prior to selecting the circular edges in FlashFit, the fastener can be rotated into the approximate desired orientation by holding Ctrl while dragging it. This will result in correct placement and is easier than correcting the placement using Flip outlined below.

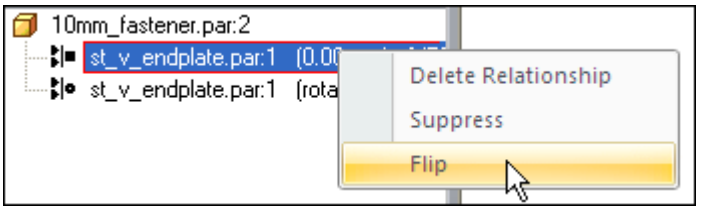


- Click the Select command.

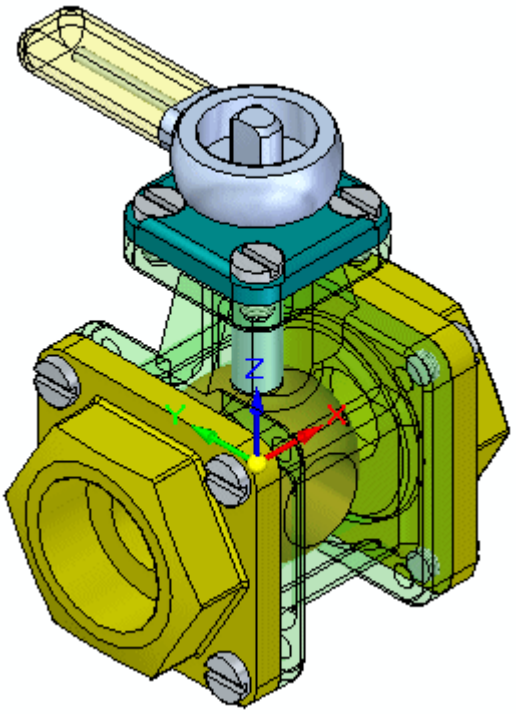
- Select the fastener.



- In the lower pane of PathFinder, right-click the Planar aAlign relationship, and then click Flip.



- This completes the activity. Close the assembly document without saving.



Activity Summary

In this activity you learned how to place parts and subassemblies from a Parts Library and position them in an assembly. FlashFit consists of the Mate, Planar Align and Axial Align relationships and determines which is appropriate. When using FlashFit and selecting circular edges, fasteners can quickly be positioned because the rotation of the fastener is locked and the part becomes fully constrained.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. Which relationships will flashfit attempt to create when positioning a part in an assembly?

2. When a circular edge is used on both the placement part and the target part, which relationships are created?

3. How does flashfit determine whether to place a mate or a planar align relationship when flat faces are selected?

4. If a planar align relationship is incorrectly created using flashfit, how can a mate relationship be assigned instead?

5. After a part is added from the parts library, how can it be approximately positioned to the target geometry?

6. If a relationship is created erroneously, how do you change or remove the relationship?

Answers

1. Which relationships will flashfit attempt to create when positioning a part in an assembly?

   Flashfit creates a mate, a planar align or an axial align relationship.

2. When a circular edge is used on both the placement part and the target part, which relationships are created?

   Using circular edges with flashfit is similar to the insert command and has fewer steps. Like the insert command, using circular edges with flashfit is ideal for the placement of fasteners. The edges are placed concentric creating a mate and axial align with the rotation locked.

3. How does flashfit determine whether to place a mate or a planar align relationship when flat faces are selected?

   The closest orientation is chosen. If the faces are approximately facing each other, mate is selected. If the faces are oriented approximately in the same direction, a planar align relationship is created.

4. If a planar align relationship is incorrectly created using flashfit, how can a mate relationship be assigned instead?

   Click the flip command before proceeding to the next positioning step.

5. After a part is added from the parts library, how can it be approximately positioned to the target geometry?

   Drag the part to a new position with the left mouse button. Rotate the part by holding the CTRL key and dragging with the left mouse button.

6. If a relationship is created erroneously, how do you change or remove the relationship?

   Edit the relationship by clicking on the part with the select tool. The relationships appear in the lower pane of assembly pathfinder and can be edited, suppressed or deleted from there.

Lesson summary

In this lesson you learned how to place parts and subassemblies from a Parts Library and position them in an assembly. FlashFit consists of the Mate, Planar Align and Axial Align relationships and determines which is appropriate. When using FlashFit and selecting circular edges, fasteners can quickly be positioned because the rotation of the fastener is locked and the part becomes fully constrained.

More Assembly Relationships

Positions the selected part or subassembly into the active assembly. Parts are positioned in assemblies using a combination of assembly relationships.

Relationship List

Lists the relationships applied to the part. You can replace a previously applied relationship by selecting a relationship from the list and then selecting a new relationship from the Relationship Types list.

Relationship Types

Lists the assembly relationship types you can apply. Parts can be positioned using the following relationship options:

Insert

Connect

Angle

Tangent

Cam

Parallel

Match Coordinate Systems

Gear/Motion

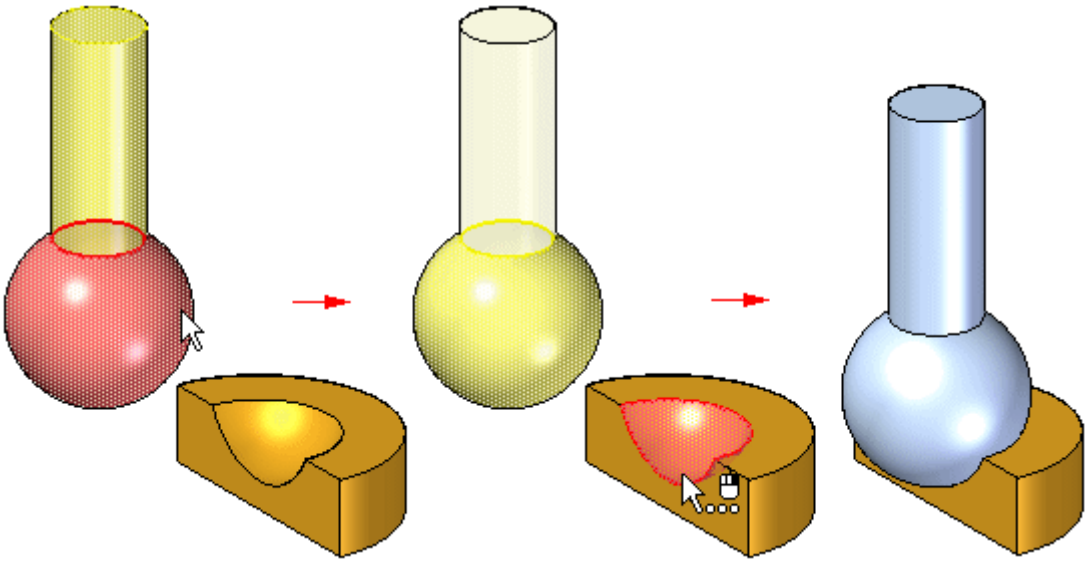
Note

The Insert option applies a mate relationship with a fixed offset value and an axial align relationship with its rotational value fixed.

Connect Relationship

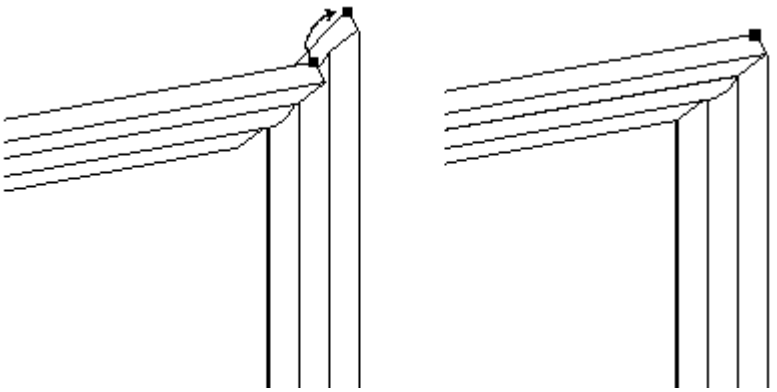
Applying a connect relationship

When two parts in an assembly cannot be positioned properly by mate and align relationships, you can position them using connect relationships. A connect relationship positions a keypoint on one part with a keypoint, line, or face on another part. For example, you can apply a connect relationship to position the center of a spherical face on one part with respect to a spherical face on another part.

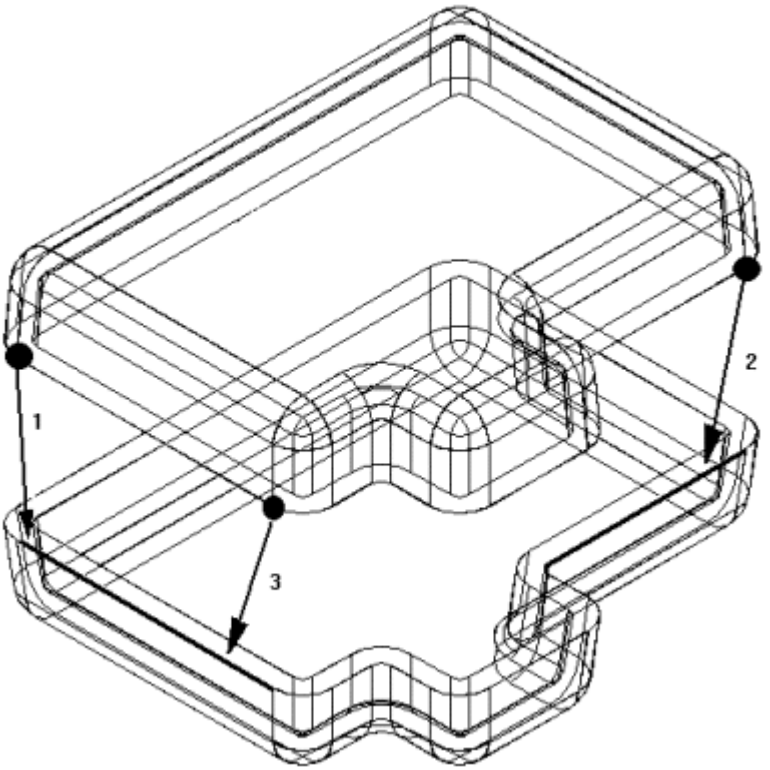


You can use the following methods to apply connect relationships:

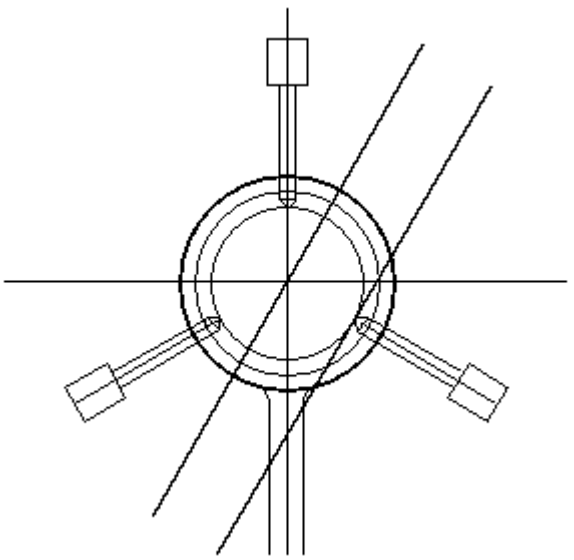
- Point-to-Point: In the following figure, a mate relationship is applied between the mitered corners of the parts. A connect relationship, which ties a point on one part to the appropriate point on another, connects the two corners properly. A floating align relationship between the back surfaces fully positions the part.



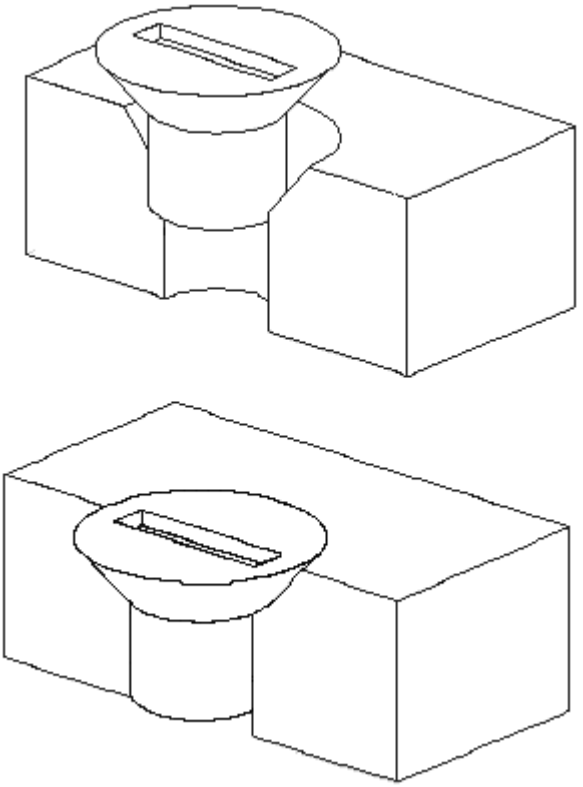
- Point-to-Line: In the following example, a mate relationship is applied between the faces of the two parts. Because the sides of each part are drafted, there are no part faces which you can use to apply a planar align relationship. You can apply three connect relationships between the keypoints on the top part and the linear edges on the bottom part.



- Point-to-Plane: In the following example, the lower right pin is positioned to a depth that just touches the surface of a reference plane.



- Cone-to-Cone: In the following example, the cone on the fastener is connected to the cone on the countersunk hole on the plate. When you add a connect relationship between two conical faces, the keypoint that represents the theoretical intersection of the individual cones are connected. You can also apply an offset value to a connect relationship between two conical faces.



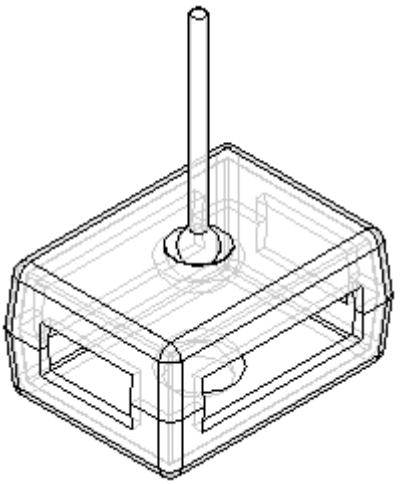
Activity: Positioning assembly parts using the connect relationship

Overview

The objective of this activity is to position a part in an assembly using the connect relationship.

Activity

In this activity you will use the connect relationship to position a part. The faces of the parts have draft angles and because of this the connect relationship will need to be used rather than the planar align relationship.



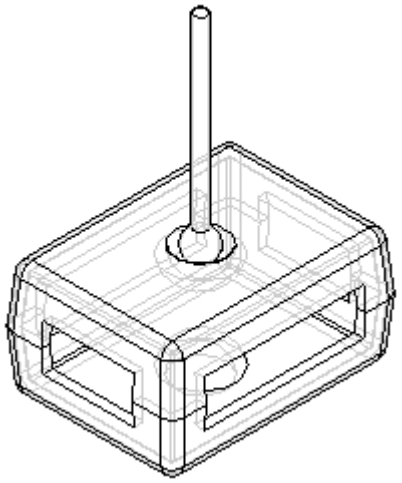
Activity: Positioning assembly parts using the connect relationship

Overview

This activity shows several options available that are used to position parts within an assembly using the connect relationship.

Objectives

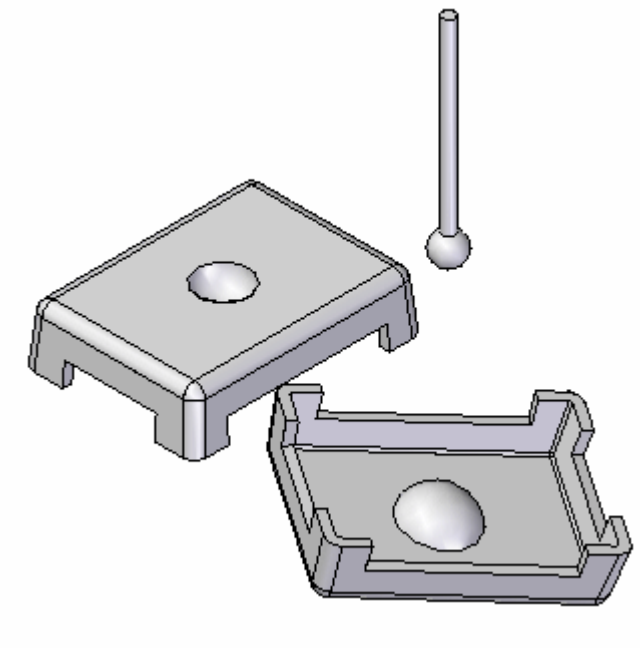
An assembly with several unconstrained parts will be opened. The Connect relationship will be used to position the parts.



Open the assembly

Open the assembly containing the parts to be positioned, and you will set the desired parameters.

- Open *Connect.asm* and activate all the parts.



- Click the Application button. Click Solid Edge Options, and then click the Assembly tab. Check the box as shown.

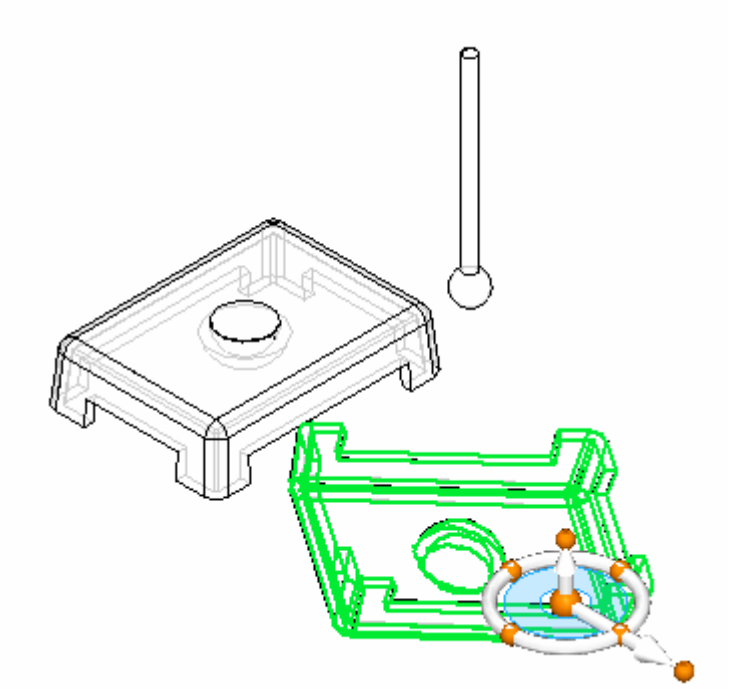
Position the lid by connecting 3 points

Use the Connect relationship to position the lid. Position the lid by connecting three of the corner arc centers together. This will completely position the lid.

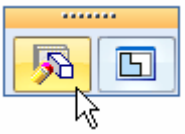
> **Note**
>
> The connect relationship recognizes key topological features to position parts. Like the axial align option, linear edges can be connected. Endpoints and midpoints of linear elements are valid for connecting, as well as arc and circle centers.

- Set the display to Visible and Hidden Edges. By exposing the hidden edges, locating desired geometry is more efficient.

- Click the Select command, and then select the lid shown.

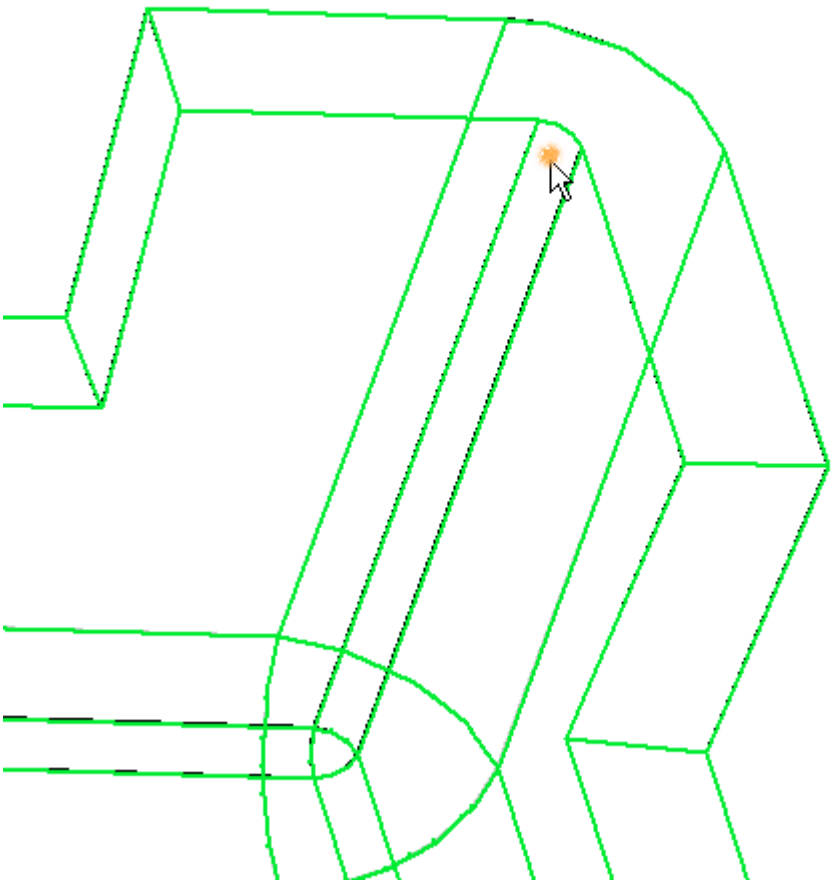


- To position the part, select the part with the select tool and then click the edit definition button.

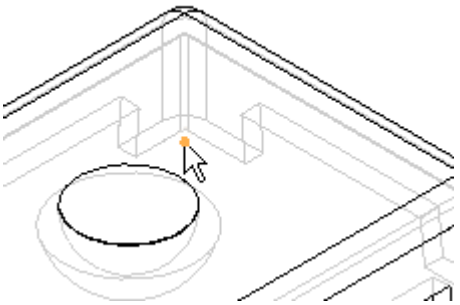


- Set the relationship type to Connect.

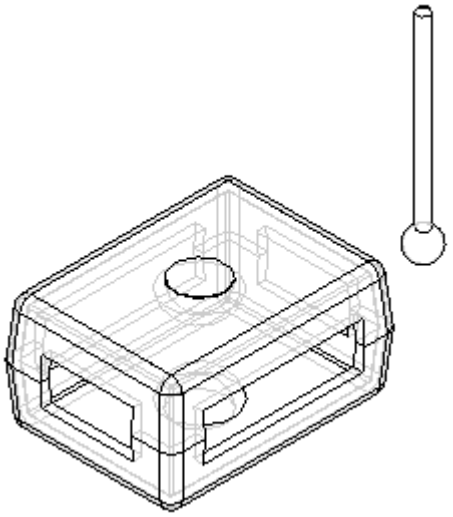
- Select the point on the arc center of the lid as shown.



- Select the corner of the other lid shown as the target point for the first relationship.



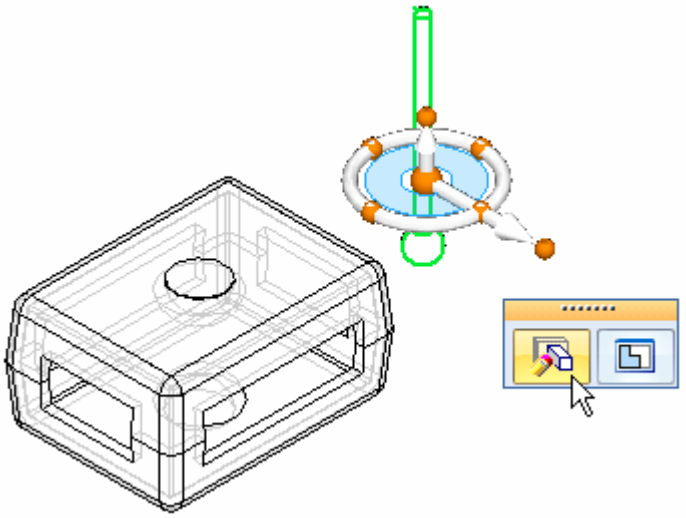
- Repeat these steps for any two of the remaining three corners. The lid is then completely positioned.



Use spherical faces to define a connect relationship

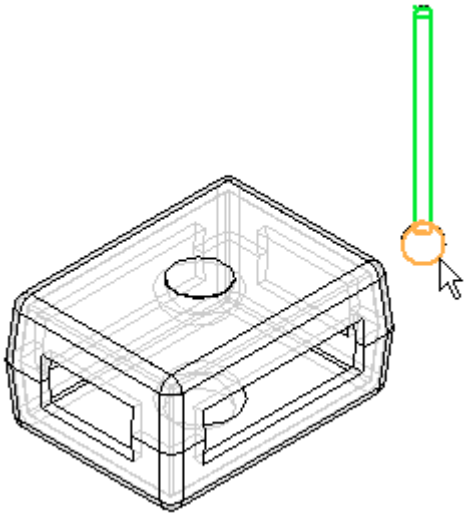
Position the center of the sphere on the knob to the center of the half sphere depression in the lid. This shows how spherical faces can be positioned using the Connect relationship.

- Click the Select tool and select the knob. Then click the Edit Definition Command as shown.

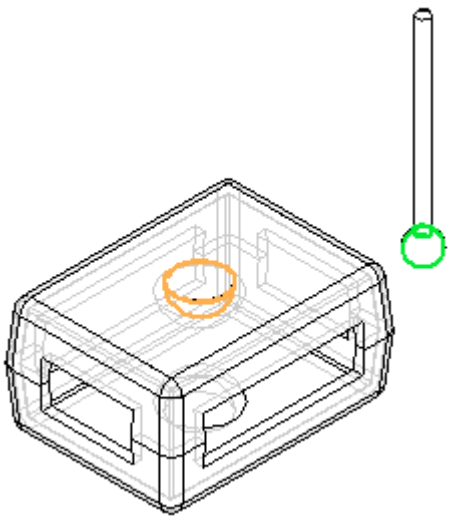


- Set the relationship type to Connect.

- Select the face of the sphere on the knob as shown.



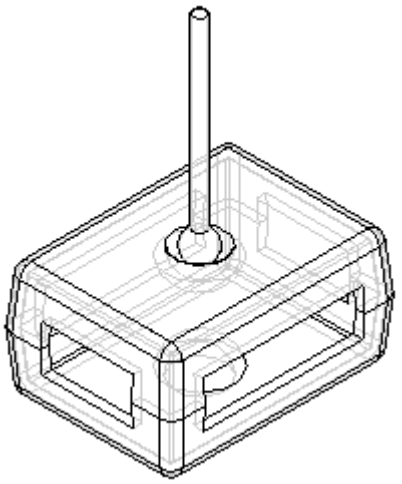
- As the target, select the face shown. You may need to use QuickPick to make the selection more efficient.



Note

The center of the sphere on the knob is now connected to the center of the spherical depression on the face. The knob has freedom to pivot about this point. Other relationships, such as Mate with a floating offset can be used to exactly position the knob.

- As an optional step in this activity, use the Mate relationship to completely position the knob as shown. You may also want to use the parts reference planes to help position the knob. Close the assembly without saving. This completes the activity.



Activity summary

In this activity you learned to use the Connect relationship to position a lid using points, and to position a knob by connecting sphere centers together.

This activity is complete.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. Give an example of why a connect relationship would be used to position a part rather than mate or planar align relationship.

2. Give some examples of valid geometry that can be used to create a connect relationship.

3. Give some examples of connect relationship combinations.

Answers

1. Give an example of why a connect relationship would be used to position a part rather than mate or planar align relationship.

   Molded parts where the drafted faces exist do not work well with planar align or mate relationships. Ball and socket scenarios where concentric spheres need to be positioned is another example of using the connect relationship. The connect relationship is useful in these situations.

2. Give some examples of valid geometry that can be used to create a connect relationship.

   Examples of valid geometry for the connect relationship:

   - End points of lines, arcs, and ellipses
   - Midpoint of a line (edge centerline)
   - Arc center point
   - Circle center point
   - Spherical surface center point
   - Conical surface center point
   - Linear edges
   - Reference planes
   - Reference axis
   - Planar part surfaces

3. Give some examples of connect relationship combinations.
   - Connect a point on the first part to a point on the second part
   - Connect a point on the first part to a line on the second part
   - Connect a point on the first part to a face on the second part
   - Connect a line on the first part to a point on the second part
   - Connect a face on the first part to a point on the second part

Lesson summary

In this lesson you learned to use the Connect relationship to position a lid using points, and to position a knob by connecting sphere centers together.

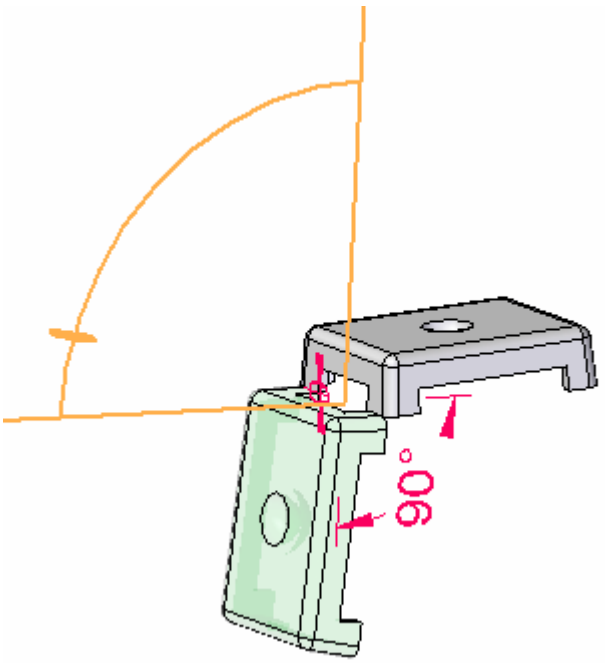
Activity: Positioning assembly parts using the angle relationship

Overview

The objective of this activity is to position a part using the angle relationship.

Activity

In this activity you will position a part using the angle relationship, then modify the value of the angle and observe the change in position.



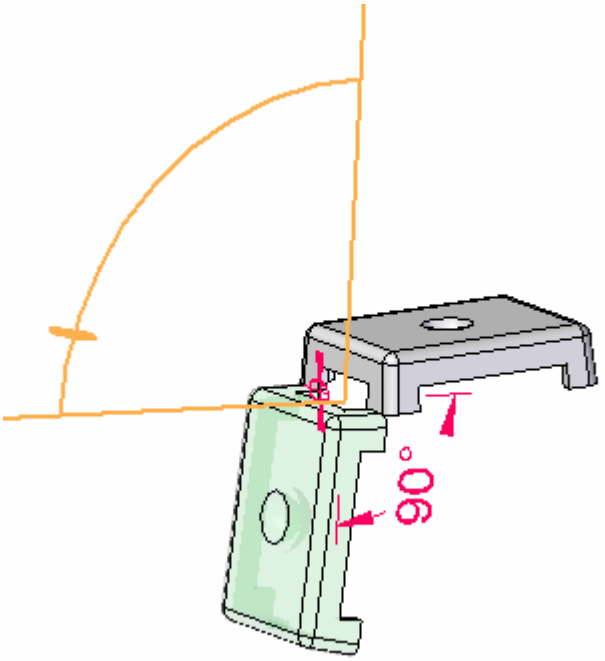
Activity: Positioning assembly parts using the angle relationship

Overview

This activity shows several options available that are used to position parts within an assembly using the Angle relationship.

Objectives

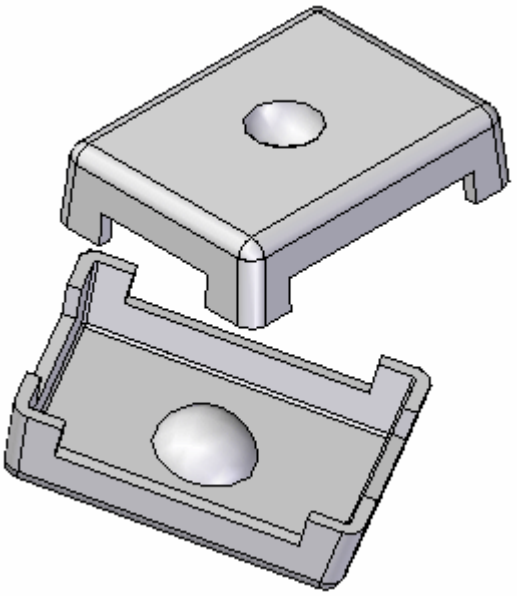
An assembly with unconstrained parts will be opened. The Angle relationship will be used to position the parts.



Open the assembly

Open the assembly containing the parts to be positioned, and then set the desired parameters.

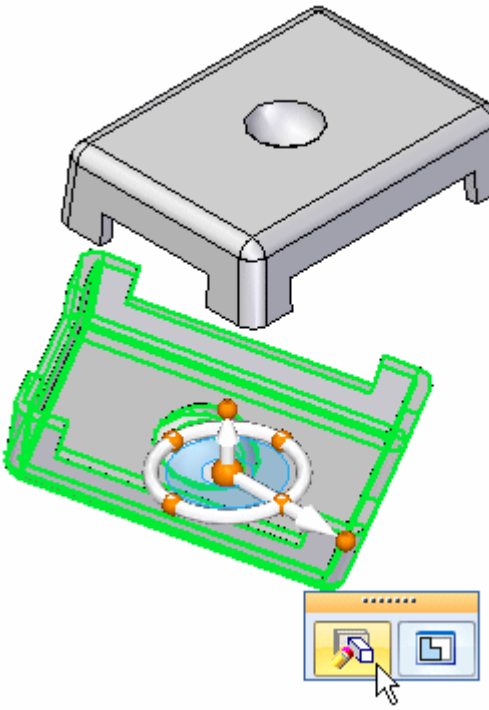
- Open *Angle.asm* with all the parts active.



Create a connect relationship

To position the lid, the first relationship you establish will be the Connect relationship.

- Click the Select command and select the part shown. Then click the Edit Definition button as shown.

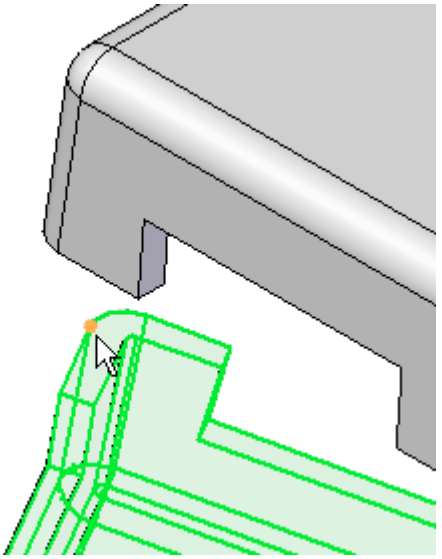


- Select the Connect relationship.

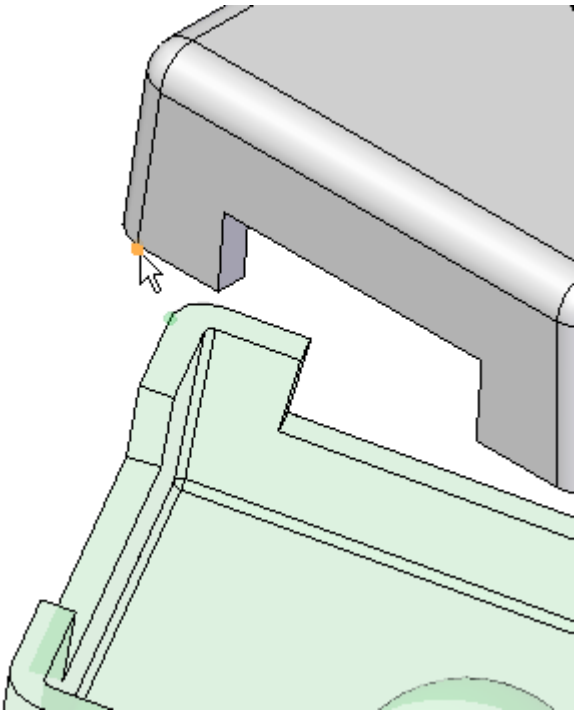
- Select the vertex point shown.

Note

You may have to rotate the view to better identify the point.



- For the target, select the vertex point shown.

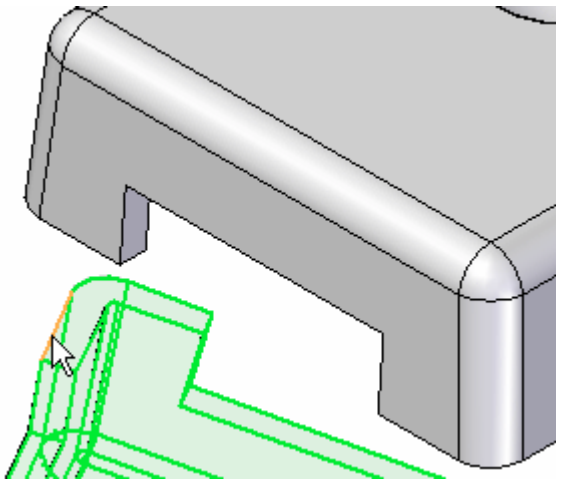


Create an axial align relationship

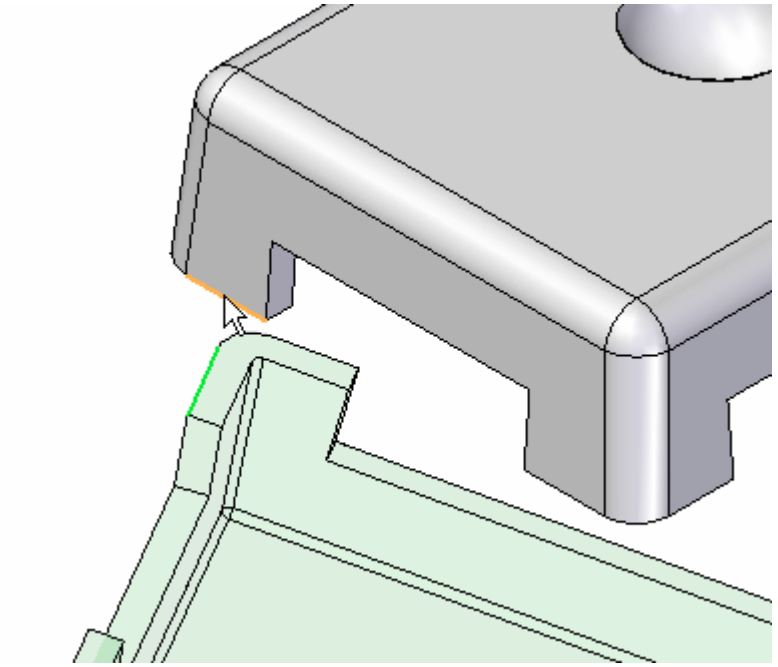
Use the Axial Align relationship for the second relationship.

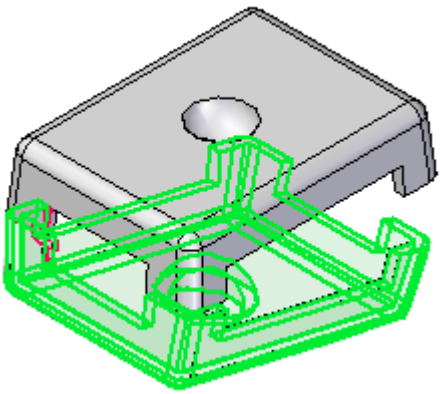
- Click the Axial Align relationship.

- Select the linear edge shown.



- For the target, select the linear edge shown.



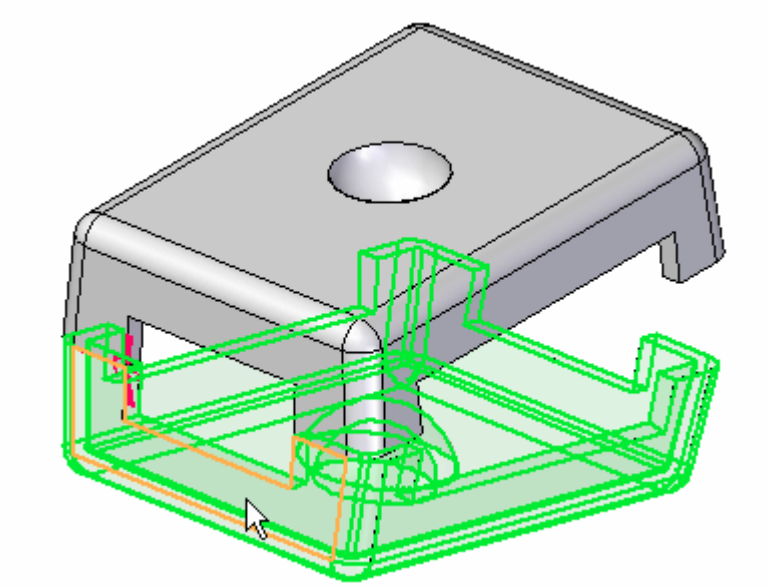


Position the lid using the angle relationship

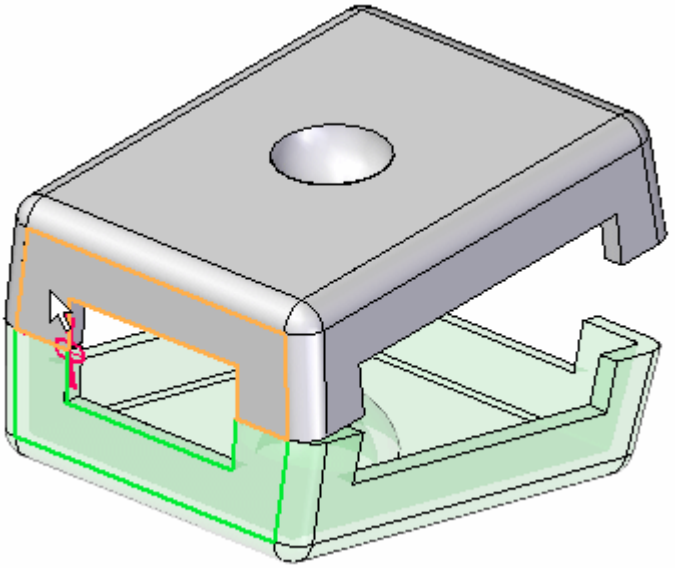
Use the Angle relationship to position the lid. Once placed, the angular value will be able to be modified to reposition the orientation of the lid.

- Select the Angle Relationship.

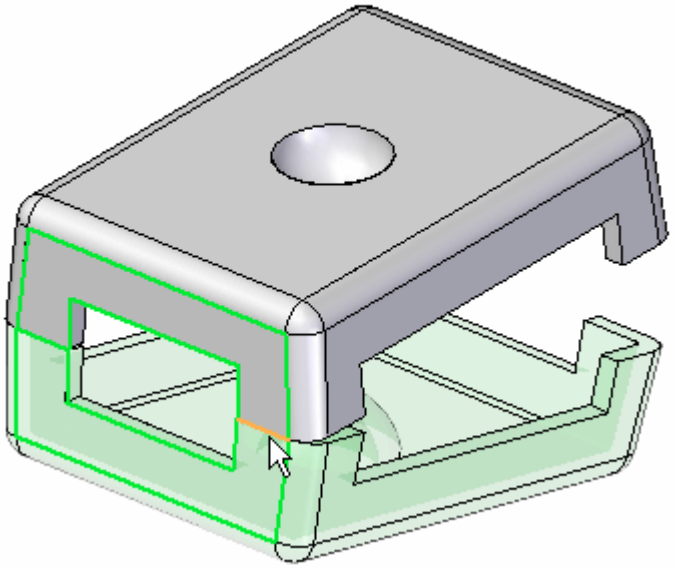
- Select the face shown as the face to measure to.



- Click the face shown as the face to measure from.



- When prompted to click on a plane in which the angle measurement will lie, click the edge shown.



Note

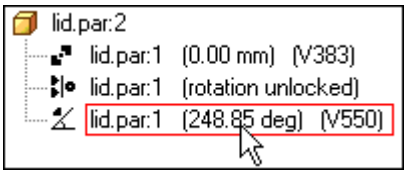
The Angle measurement is established.

- Click the Select tool.

Edit the angle

Edit the angle and the position of the lid will change.

- Press Ctrl+R on the keyboard to rotate the view to a right view.
- In PathFinder, select *lid.par:2* and then, in the lower pane, select the Angle relationship.

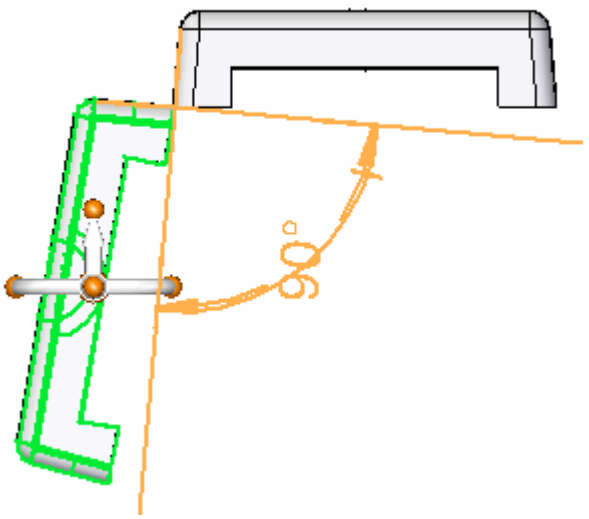


Note

Variable names and angle values may differ from the picture shown. This is not a problem.

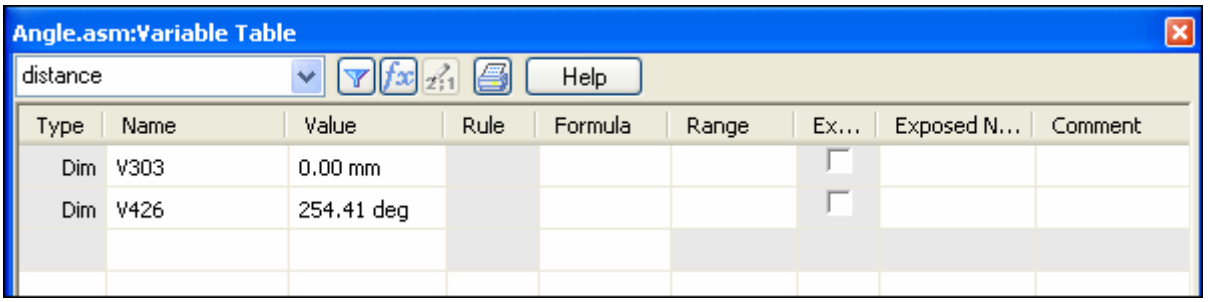
- On the Placement command bar, click the Angle Format list, and then move the cursor over the eight options. Notice the difference in how the angle is measured in each of the different options.

- Click the Angle format which gives the measurement shown below. Change the angle to 90°.



- Change the angle to different values and observe the behavior. Change the angle to 190°.

- On the ribbon, choose Tools tab® Variables to display the Variable Table. Notice this angular value is shown here and can be edited from the Variable Table. Also the angular value can be driven via a formula to other values within the table.



- This completes the activity. Close the assembly document without saving.

Activity summary

In this activity you learned to use the Angle relationship to position a lid, and modify the value of the angle to change the position of the lid.

This activity is complete.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. What steps are used to place an angle relationship?

Answers

1. What steps are used to place an angle relationship?

   The following steps define an angle relationship:

   - Select the face on the placement part to measure the angle from.
   - Select the target part.
   - Select the face on the target part to measure the angle to.
   - Select the axis or plane the dimension will be placed on.
   - Enter the angular value.
   - Select the angle format. This shows the 8 options on how the angle is defined.
   - Click OK.

Lesson summary

In this lesson you learned to use the Angle relationship to position a lid, and modify the value of the angle to change the position of the lid.

The Assemble command

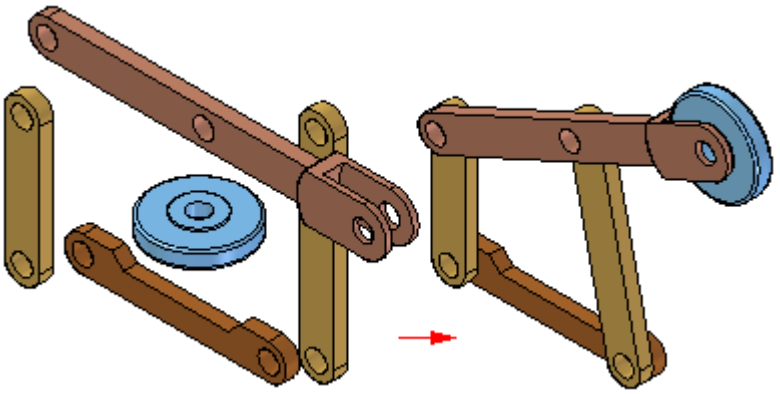
The Assemble command is an alternative method of positioning multiple parts in an assembly that have been placed in an assembly, but that are yet to be positioned. Utilizing Flashfit techniques, the Assemble command allows changing parts with a right mouse click.

Assemble command

Positions parts in an assembly. You can use this command to position a single part in an assembly, or you can use this command to position several parts relative to each other without fully constraining each part in an ordered sequence.

This type of workflow can make it easier to position a set of interrelated parts, such as when building a mechanism.

After dragging and dropping a set of parts into an assembly, you can use the Assemble command to apply relationships between one of the parts and one or more target parts. To position a different part, click the right mouse button.



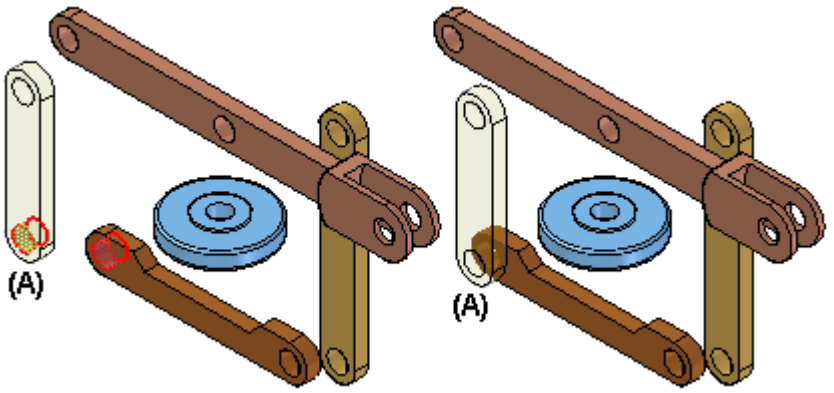
To position a series of parts using the Assemble command, you first drag and drop the set of parts into the assembly using the Parts Library tab.

If it is a new assembly, the first part is automatically grounded. When you drag and drop the second part into the assembly, the Assemble command bar is displayed, but you can continue to drag and drop parts into the assembly without positioning them.

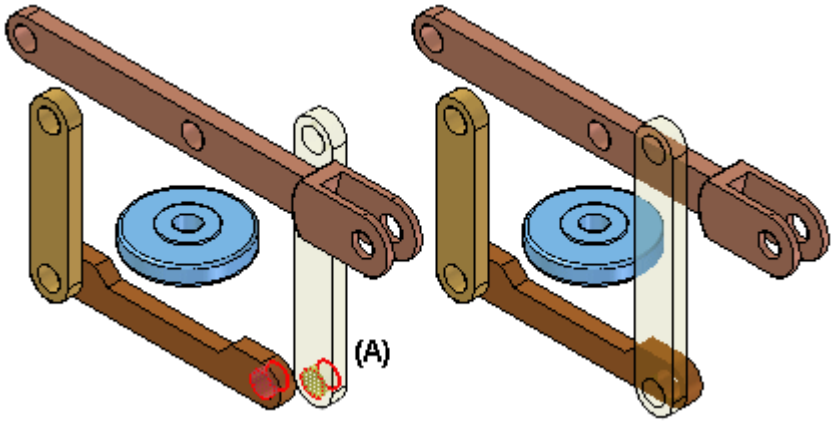
After the set of parts is placed in the assembly, you can use the Assemble command to position the parts.

When you click the Assemble command, the Assemble command bar is displayed. You can use the FlashFit option to apply a mate, planar align, or axial align relationship, or choose from the complete set of ordered relationships.

After you apply a relationship between two parts, the first part you select (A) remains selected so you can apply additional relationships to the part.



To position a different part, click the right mouse button. You can then select a different part (A) and apply the relationships you want.



The Assemble command is tightly integrated with the FlashFit positioning option. When you click the Assemble command, FlashFit is the default option. For more information on FlashFit, see the Assembly Relationships topic.

Assemble command bar

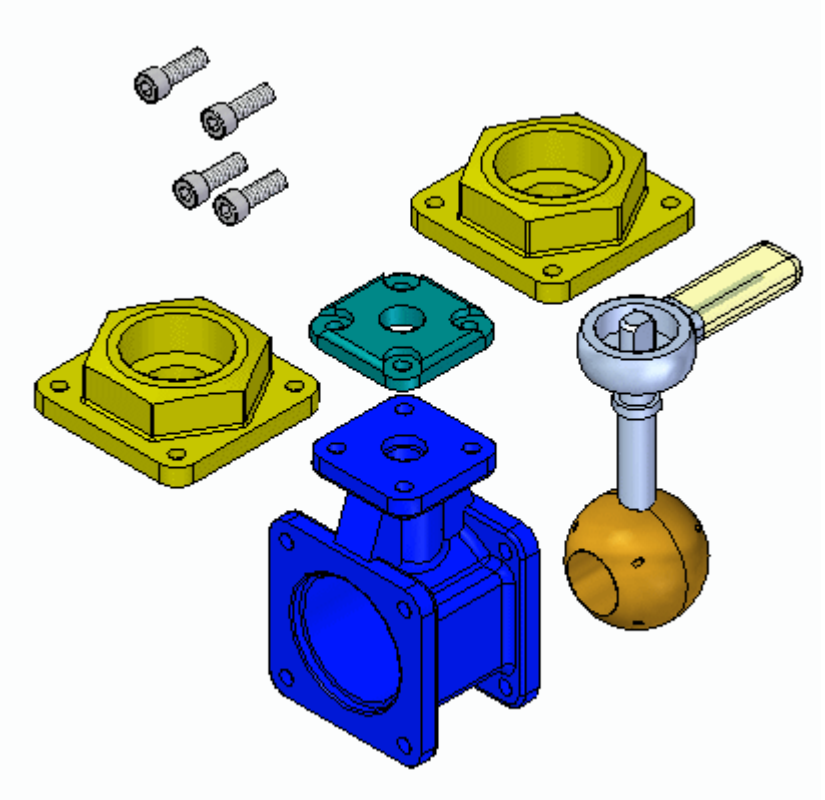
Activity: The Assemble command

Overview

The objective of this activity is to understand how to position parts using the Assemble command.

Activity

In this activity you will learn how to use the Assemble command.



Activity: Assemble command

Overview

When you complete this activity, you will be able to position parts in an assembly using the Assemble command. This activity teaches how to use the Assemble command to manipulate and fully position parts in an assembly.

Objectives

The activity consists of the following:

- Settings that affect the Assemble Command
- Manipulation and positioning of parts using the Assemble Command
- Editing and error recovery

Note

Positioning parts with the Assemble command:

There are many ways to correctly assemble the parts and subassembly associated with this activity. You will not be given specific instructions on how to assemble these parts other than the order in which to assemble the parts. How a part is positioned using FlashFit is predictable. With the Assemble command however, parts can be positioned incorrectly or over constrained. This activity will purposely position a part incorrectly so that the steps to correct the positioning will be covered.

The rules on the behavior of the Assemble command are listed next. You will be instructed to use these rules where appropriate.

Note

Assemble Command guidelines

The following guidelines are used in positioning the parts in this assembly using the Assemble command.

- In the assembly you will be working with *valve_housing.par* which was placed first and is grounded. The other parts will be positioned relative to this previously positioned part.

- FlashFit is the default assembly relationship creation mode and should be used.

- Once you select a part to position, it will become transparent. Once it is fully positioned, or another part is selected, it will no longer be transparent.

- If, in the middle of positioning a part, you decide to position another part, right-click to release the current part. It will no longer be transparent. The next part you select will then become transparent.

- If you work in wireframe, rather than shaded, you will not have the visual benefit of the selected part being transparent. For that reason, it is suggested that you use Shaded with Visible Edges display mode while using the Assemble command.

- Once a part is selected, it can be dragged to a new position with the left mouse button. The selected part is the part you are applying relationships to. Right-click to release the part.

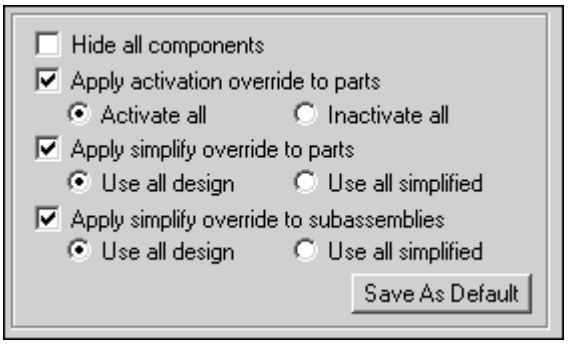
- To rotate a selected part that is unconstrained, use Ctrl + left mouse button.

- FlashFit will determine whether to use a Mate or Planar Align relationship based on the closest orientation of the faces being matched. It is good practice to rotate the selected part into the approximate position before selecting the faces. After FlashFit, if the faces are 180° out of position, click the Flip button on the command bar.

- Matching circular edges will quickly position a part, such as a fastener, in one operation. The centerlines are superimposed and the rotation is locked. You can unlock the rotation by editing the relationships in Assembly PathFinder. Refer to the section of this activity that addresses editing and error recovery.

Assemble command setup

Open *assemble.asm* making all the parts active by using the settings shown in the open dialog box.



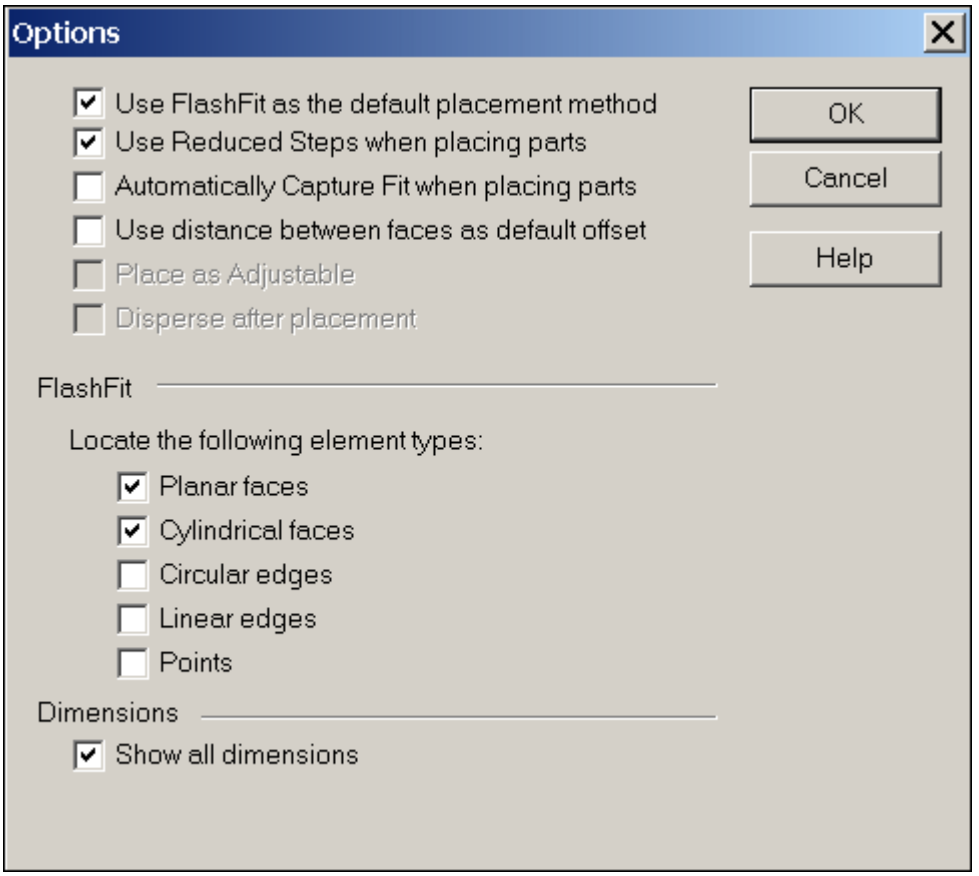
- Choose the Home tab->Assemble group->Assemble command..

- Click the Options button on the command bar.

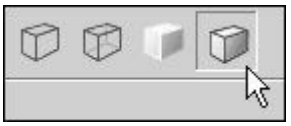
- Set the options shown below, then click OK.

  Note

  The behavior of positioning faces with FlashFit will first be shown. For other parts, edges will be used.



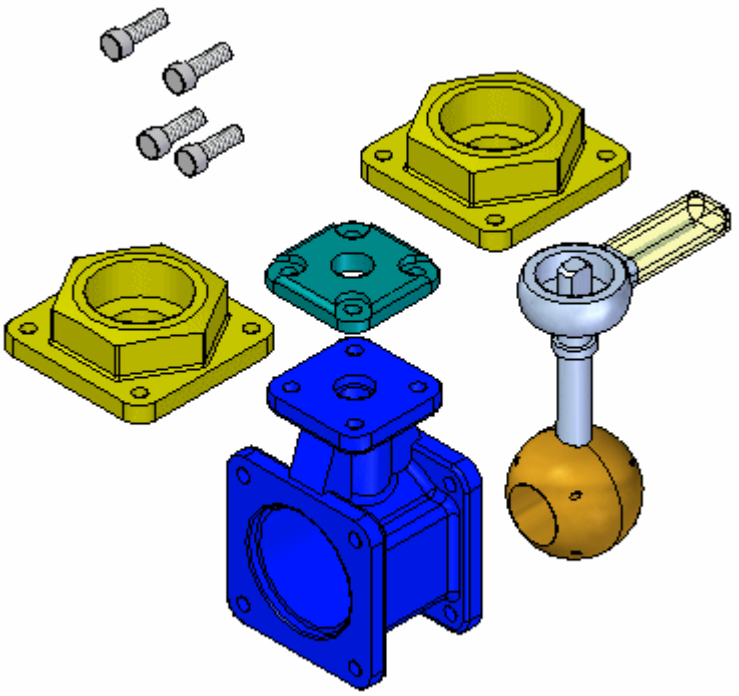
- Click Shaded with Visible Edges.



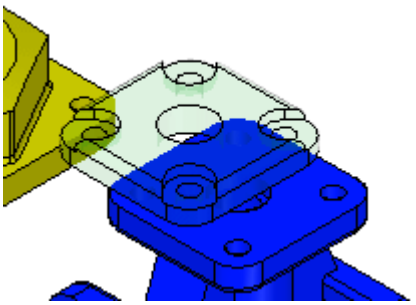
Assemble the parts beginning with the top cap

Move the parts to their approximate final position. Select a part to move. The part will become transparent. With the left mouse button, drag the part to the position shown. Right-click to release the part and left-click to select a different part to drag.

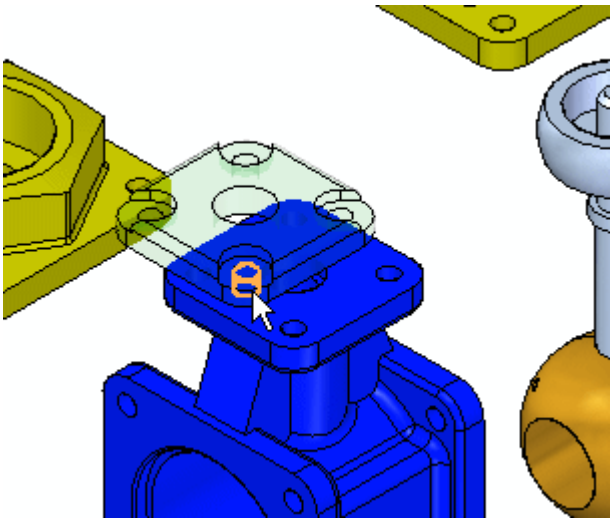
- Position all the parts approximately as shown.



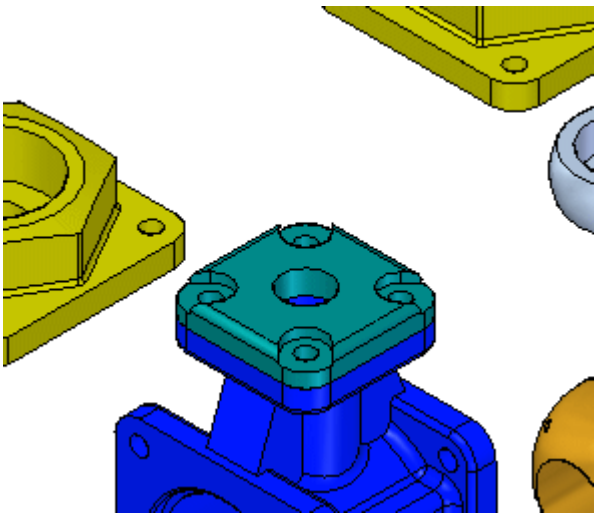
- Right-click to release the last part selected. Select the top cap. Zoom in on the top face of the valve housing. Using FlashFit, mate the bottom face of the top cap to the top face of the valve housing as shown.



- Select the cylindrical face of a hole on the top cap, and then select the cylindrical face of a hole in the top of the valve housing, as shown.



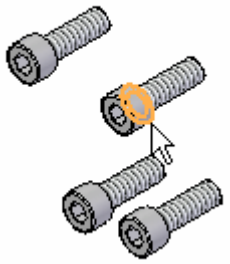
- To completely position the part, repeat the previous step beginning with a different cylindrical face in the top cap, and a corresponding cylindrical face in the valve housing. Once the part is completely positioned, it will become shaded and no longer be transparent.



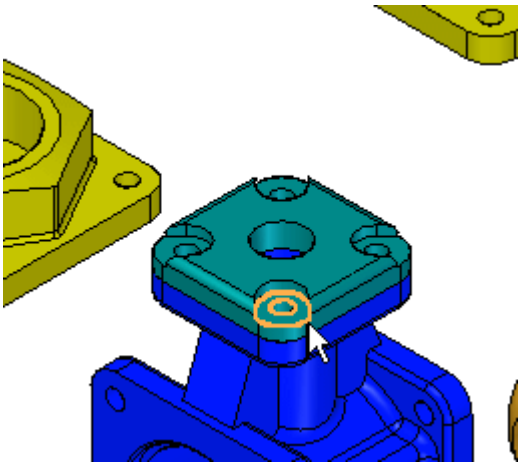
Position the first fasteners on the top cap

Position the first fastener on the top cap.

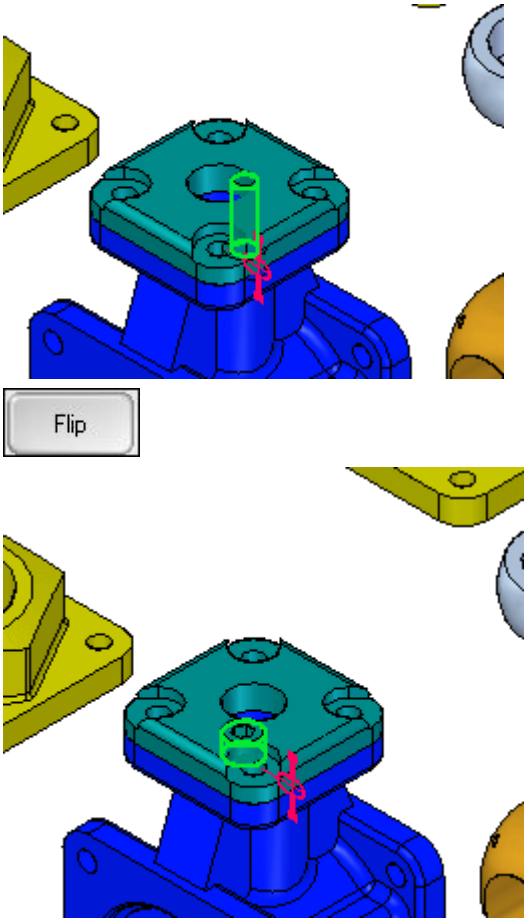
- To begin positioning the next part, select the face shown of one of the fasteners.



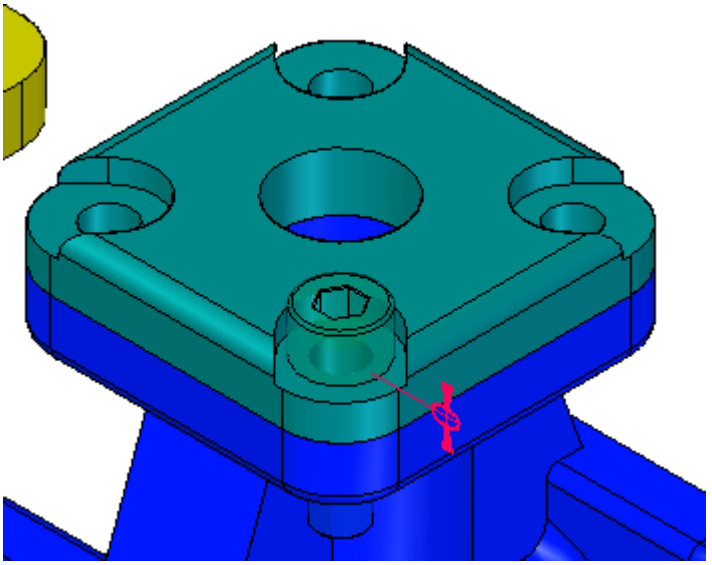
- Select the face of the top cap as shown.



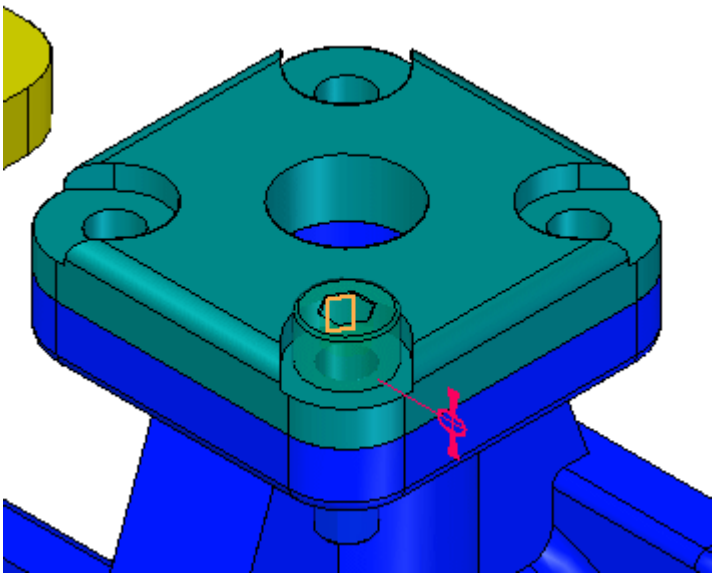
- FlashFit determines whether to apply a mate or planar align relationship based on the orientation of each of the faces. If the fastener is placed reversed, as shown, click Flip on the command bar to correct.

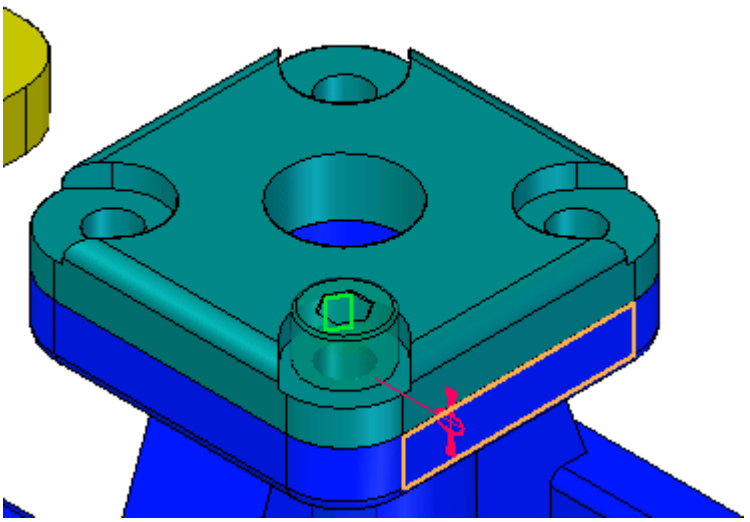


- Select the cylindrical shaft of the fastener and the cylindrical face of the corresponding hole. The fastener is positioned in the hole, but is transparent because there is freedom in the axis defined by the center of the shaft.



- Select the flat face on the head of the fastener as shown, and then select the face on the top cap as shown. The bolt rotates such that the planes become parallel and a floating offset is applied which locks the rotation of the bolt.

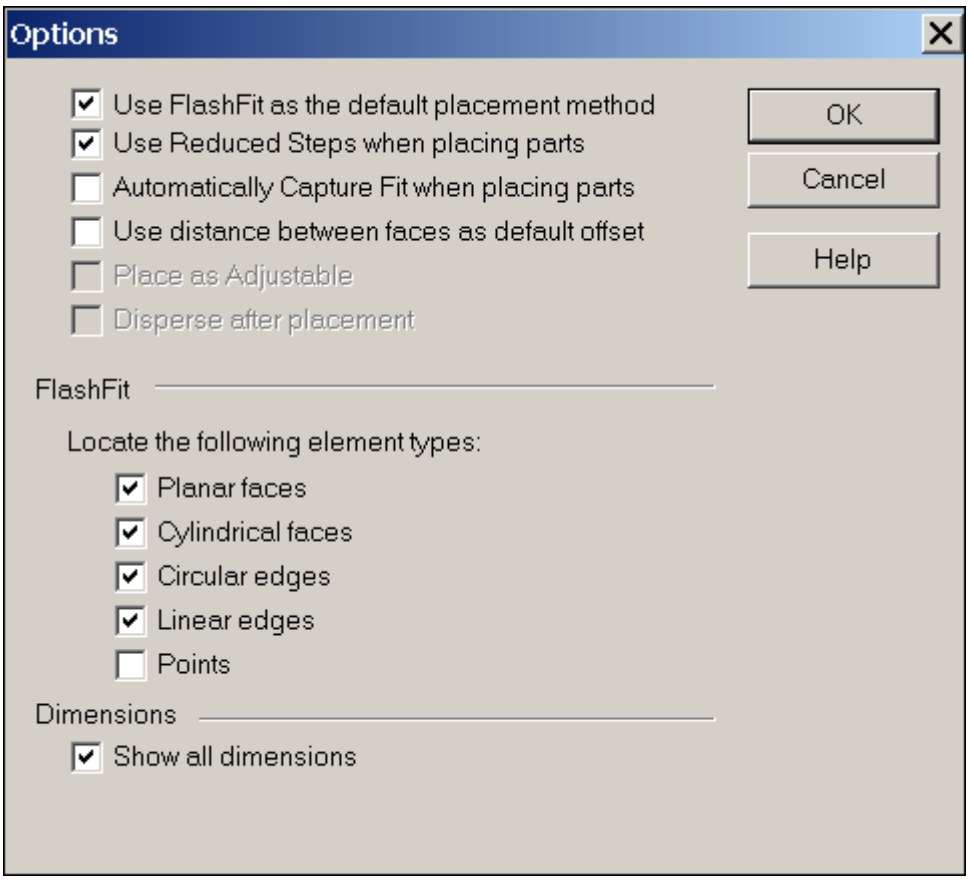




Position the other fasteners using edge selection

You will now position other fasteners by using FlashFit and selecting circular edges.

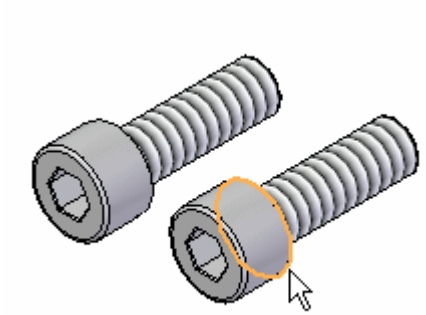
- Click the options button on the command bar and set the options as shown.

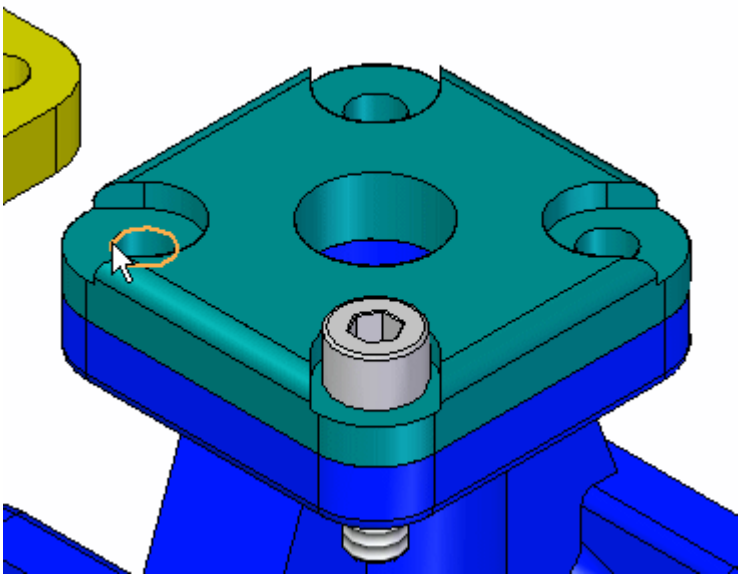


- Position the fastener using the edges shown below.

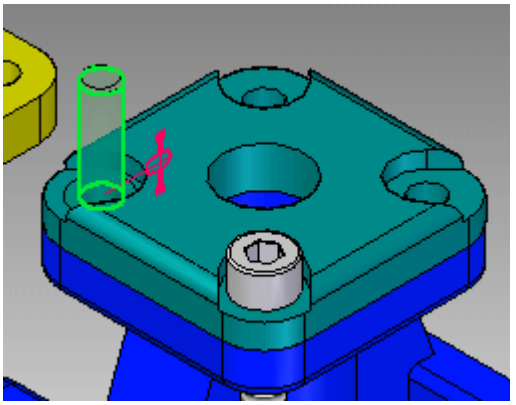
  Note

  Positioning by matching circular edges completely constrains the part by fixing the rotation. This is the preferred method.





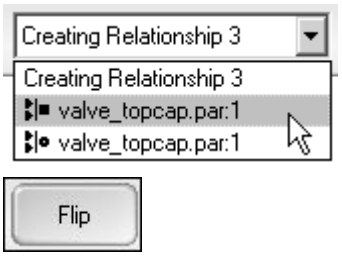
- If the fastener becomes oriented as shown, it is because the original orientation of the faces of the fastener was closer to a planar align relationship rather than a mate relationship.



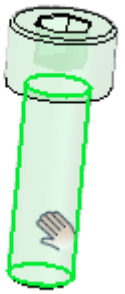
Note

Because the part is completely constrained, the Assemble command has released this fastener and is ready to position another part. The fastener has become shaded indicating it is fully positioned. To position this fastener correctly, you will need to temporarily exit the Assemble command by clicking the Select tool. Once the fastener is positioned correctly, click the Assemble command to continue positioning parts.

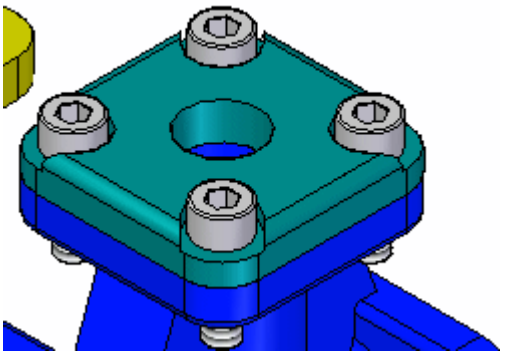
- If the fastener was placed upside down, select the fastener. It will become transparent. Select the mate relationship, click Flip, then click OK to correctly position the fastener.



- To position the remaining two fasteners, use these steps. Click the Assemble command and select one of the remaining fasteners. To rotate the fastener into the approximate vertical position, click and hold Ctrl while you left-click and then drag.



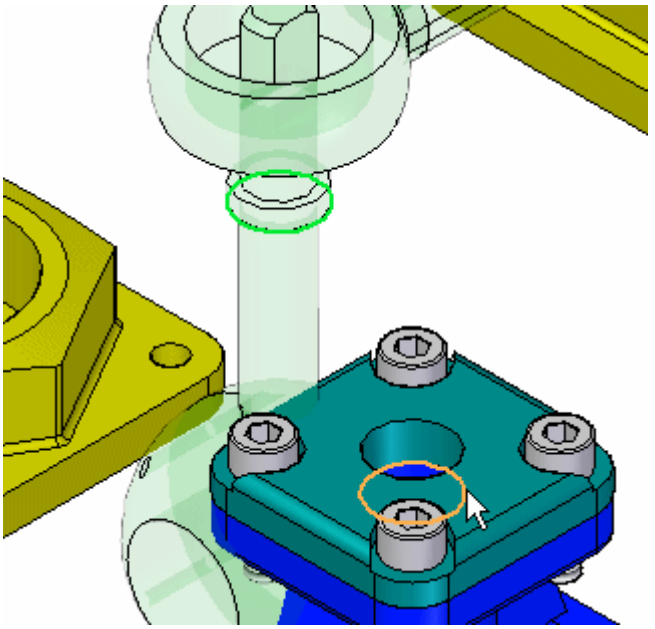
- Position the fastener by selecting the same circular edges as the previous part. The fastener will be oriented correctly because the orientation was close to the final position. Right-click to clear the selection when done.



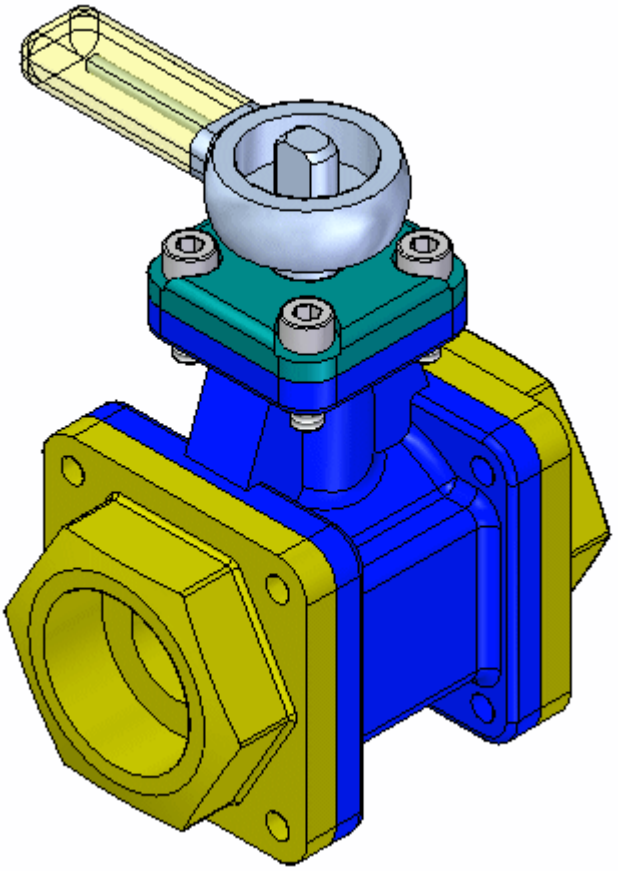
Position the handle subassembly

You will now position the handle subassembly by using FlashFit and selecting circular edges.

- Position the subassembly *handle and ball.asm* by selecting the circular edges as shown.



- Use the Assemble command and the techniques learned from the previous steps to position each endcap into the correct position on the valve housing. This completes this activity. Close the assembly document.



Activity summary

In this activity you learned how to use the Assemble command to quickly assemble a group of parts into an assembly. If all the parts making up an assembly are placed in an assembly window, the Assemble command can be used to complete the positioning of the parts into the final assembly.

This completes the activity.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. How do you move an unconstrained assembly component when using the assemble command?

2. How do you rotate an unconstrained assembly component when using the assemble command?

3. How do you select a different assembly component to position without exiting the assembly command?

Answers

1. How do you move an unconstrained assembly component when using the assemble command?

   Drag using the left mouse button.

2. How do you rotate an unconstrained assembly component when using the assemble command?

   Hold the CTRL key and drag with the left mouse button.

3. How do you select a different assembly component to position without exiting the assembly command?

   Right click to release the current assembly component, the select the next component to position.

Lesson summary

In this lesson you learned how to use the Assemble command to quickly assemble a group of parts into an assembly. If all the parts making up an assembly are placed in an assembly window, the Assemble command can be used to complete the positioning of the parts into the final assembly.

Designing in the context of an assembly

When designing in the context of an assembly, you can construct the parts with either ordered or synchronous geometry based on which is appropriate for the desired outcome.

In the activity, you will experience designing parts in context of a top level assembly using the tools provided.

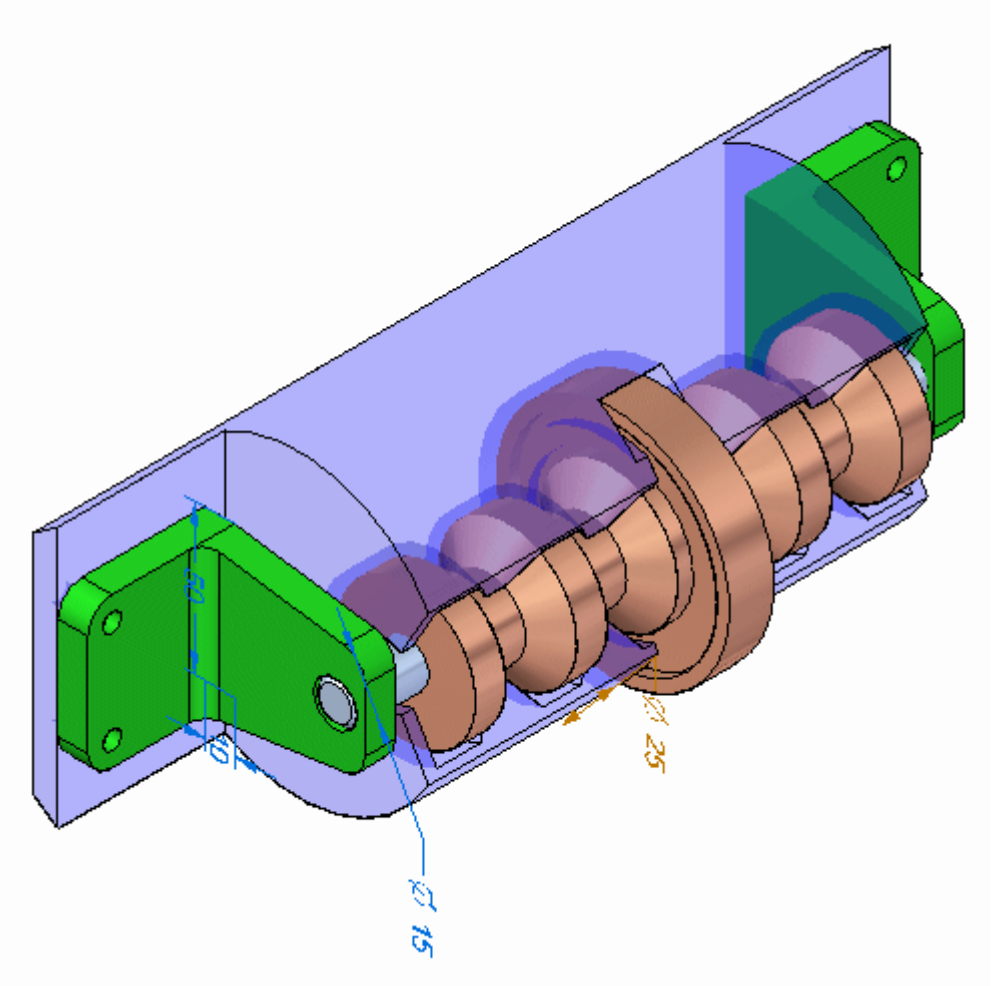
Activity: Designing in the context of a synchronous assembly

Overview

The objective of this activity is to explore designing in the context of an assembly with Solid Edge synchronous technology. You will open an existing assembly and use adjacent parts to refine the sizing and spacing of the faces and parts in the assembly. You will also used geometry from one part to create a cavity in an adjacent part.

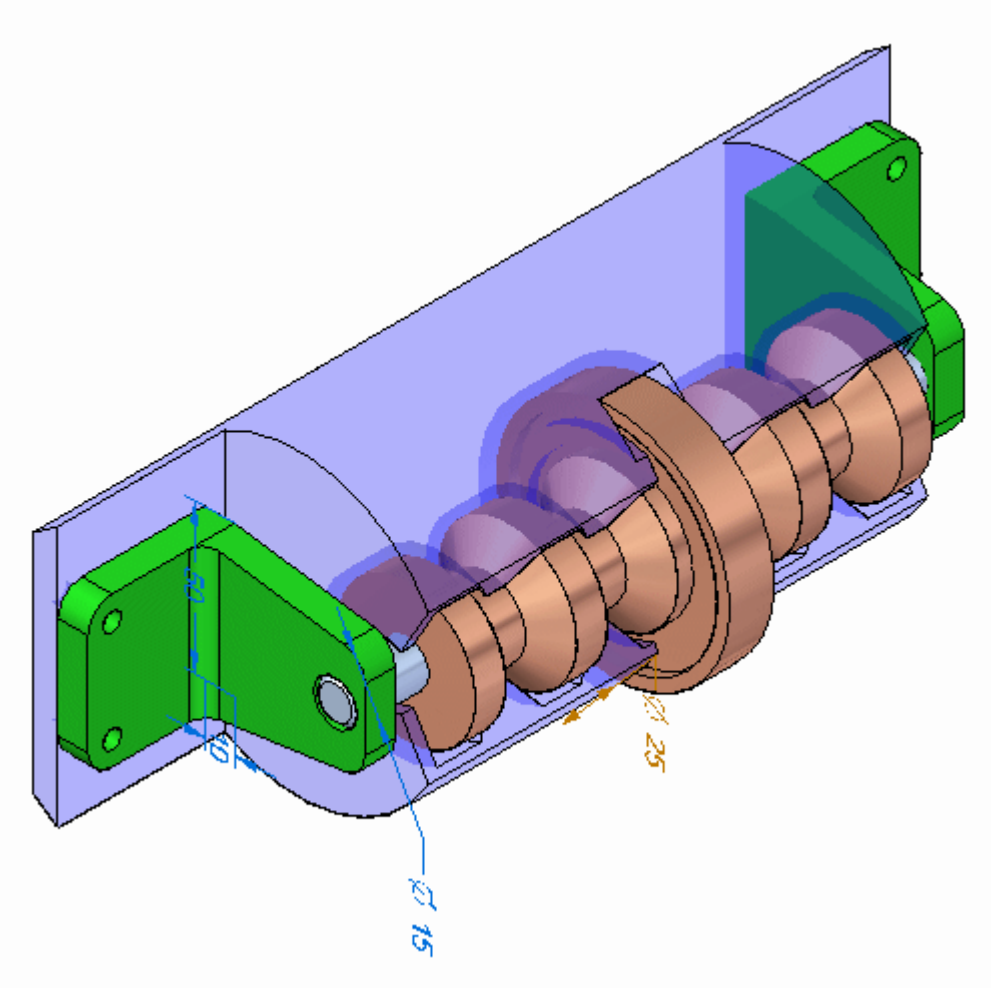
Activity

In this activity you will learn how synchronous technology can be of benefit when designing in the context of an assembly.



Activity: Designing in the context of a synchronous assembly

In this activity, you will modify parts in the context of the assembly using Solid Edge.

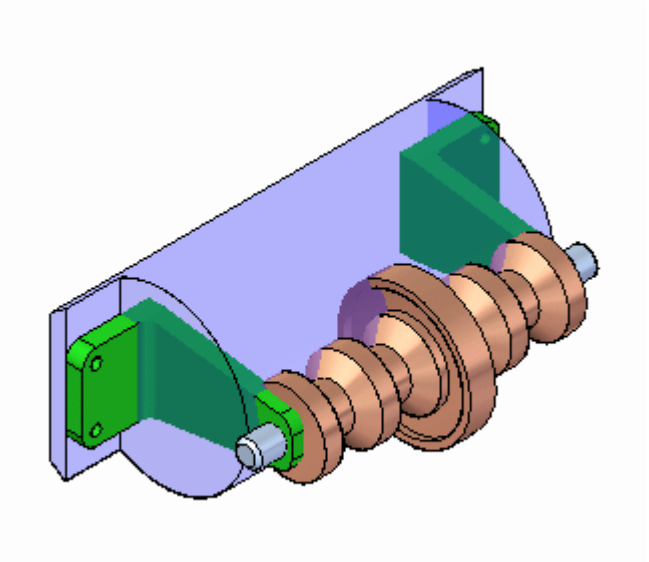


Open the assembly

Open *spindle_cover.asm* with all the parts activated.

> **Note**
>
> Click the Select command and click on each part in PathFinder. Each relationship that has been used to position the assembly can be viewed by moving the cursor over the relationships in the lower pane of PathFinder. These existing assembly relationships as well as Live Rules are honored when manipulating geometry with Solid Edge.

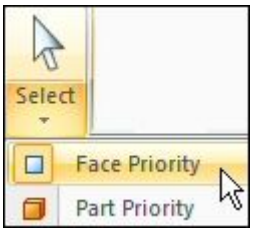
- Open *spindle_cover.asm*. Activate all the parts.



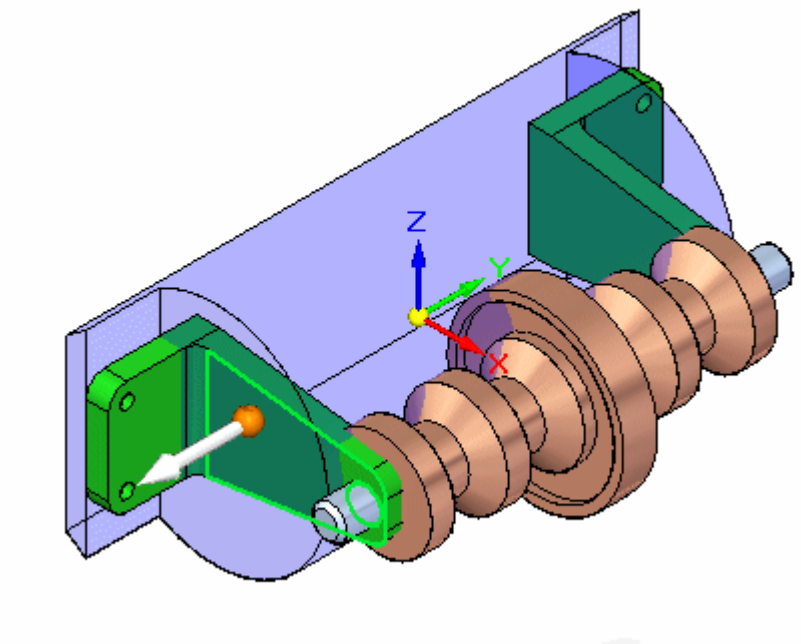
Modify the plastic part to make the brackets fit

The brackets holding the axle do not fit correctly on the plastic cylindrical part, and the face of the plastic part that the brackets attach to is not wide enough to accommodate the brackets. You will modify the parts in the context of the assembly to correct these problems.

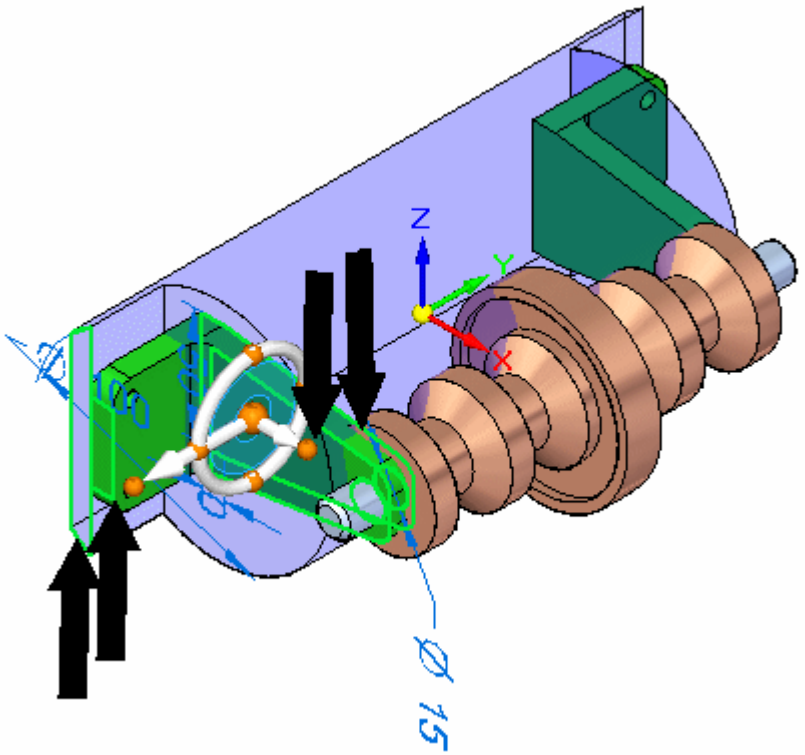
- Set the Selection Priority to Face.



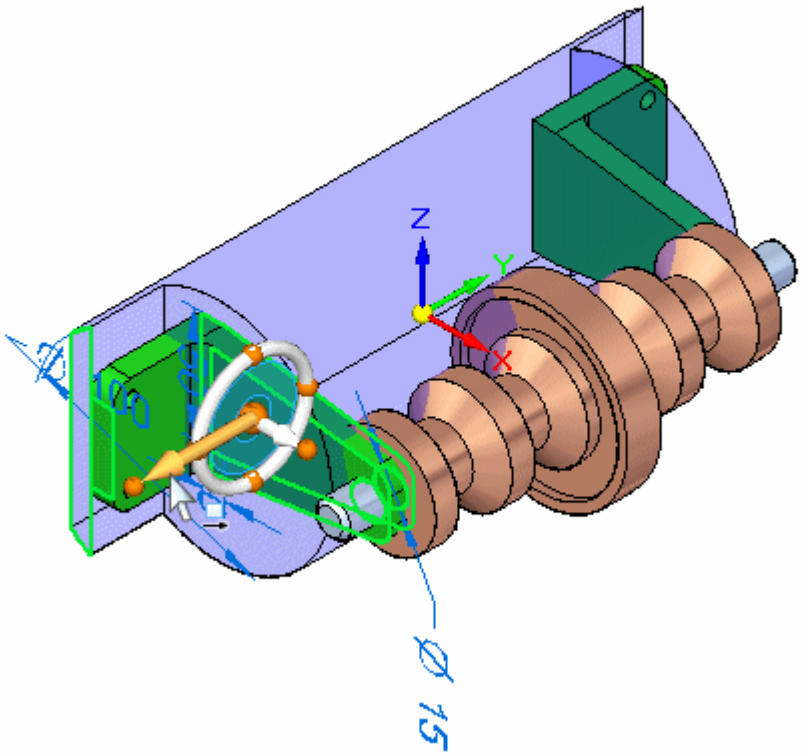
- Select the face shown with the steering wheel in the position shown.



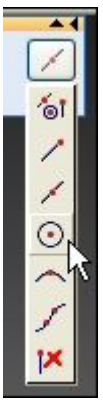
- Select the additional faces shown. You should have a total of 4 faces selected.



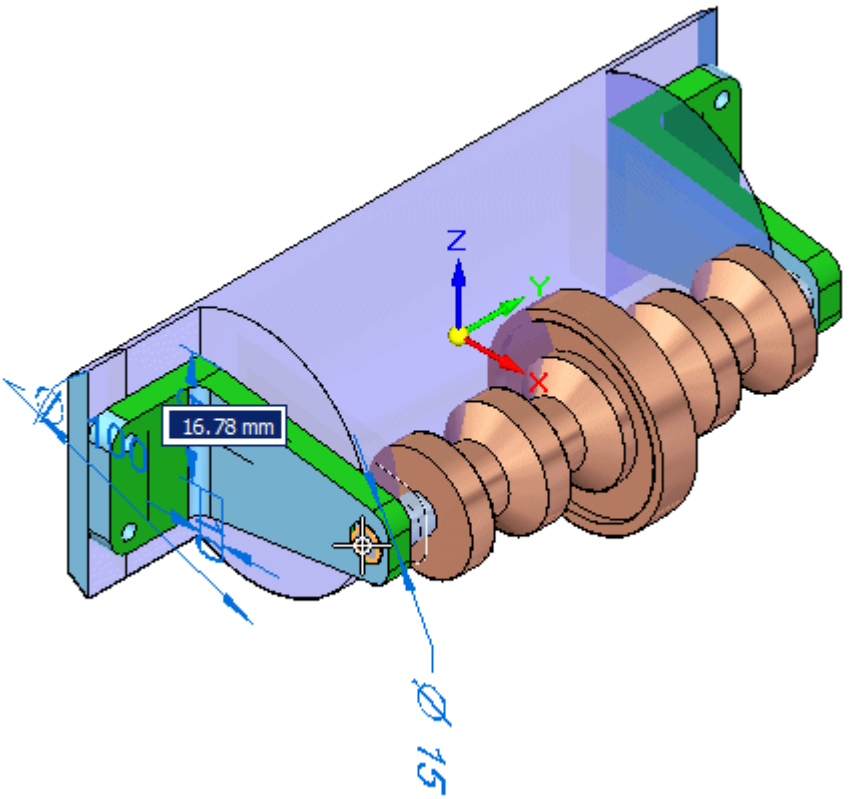
- Select the axis of the steering wheel as shown.



- On the QuickBar, select the circle center key point.



- Click the circular center of the end face of the axle. The 4 faces will move.



Note

Because symmetry about the base reference planes is set in live rules, the parts are modified on the opposite side as well.

- Clear the Selection.

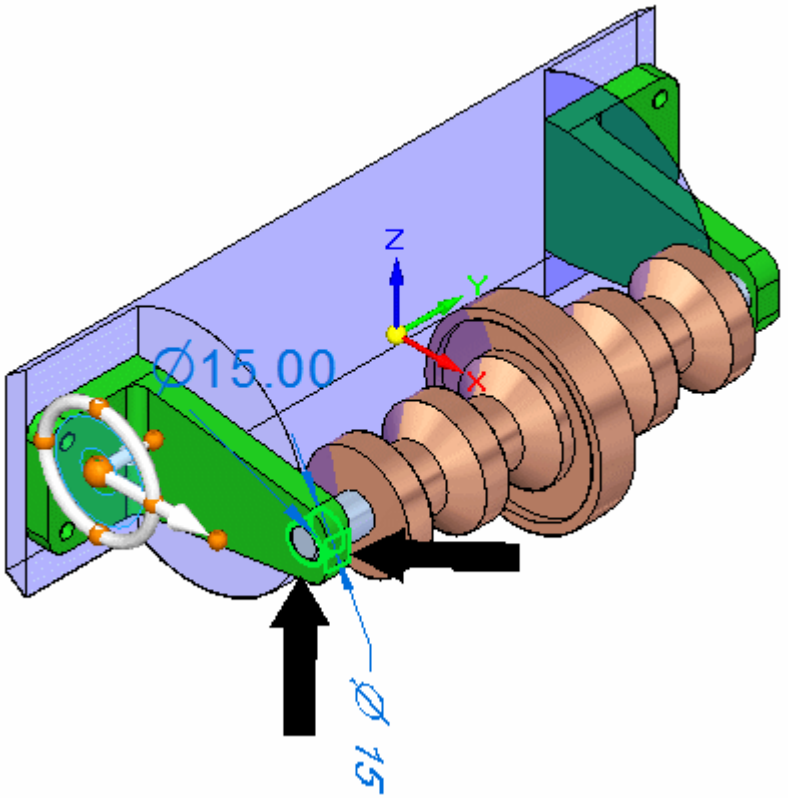
Shorten the brackets

Because the brackets are too tall, the axle is too far out from the plastic housing. You will shorten the bracket.

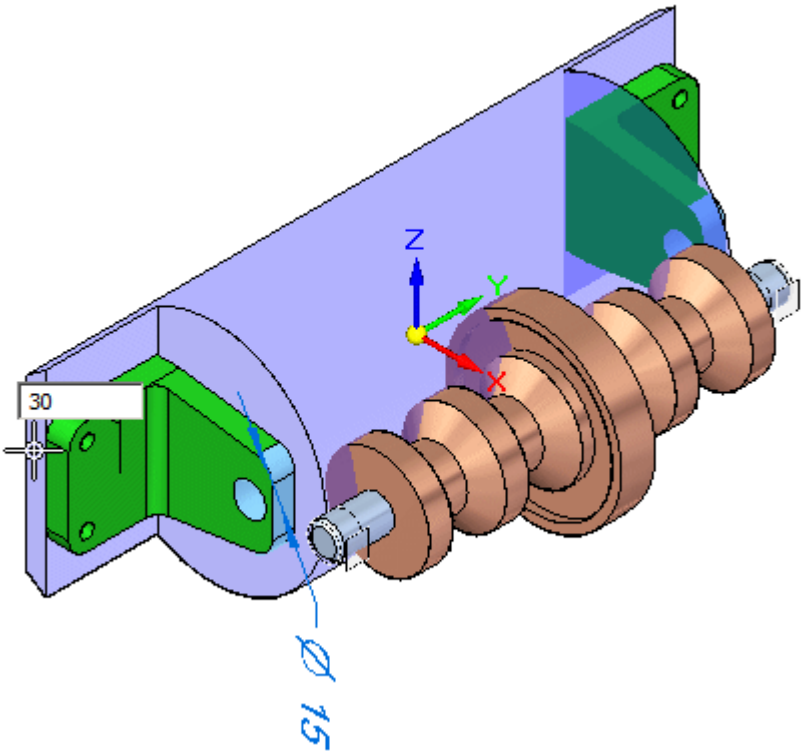
- Select the face and the cylinder shown. Move the origin of the steering wheel to the face shown.

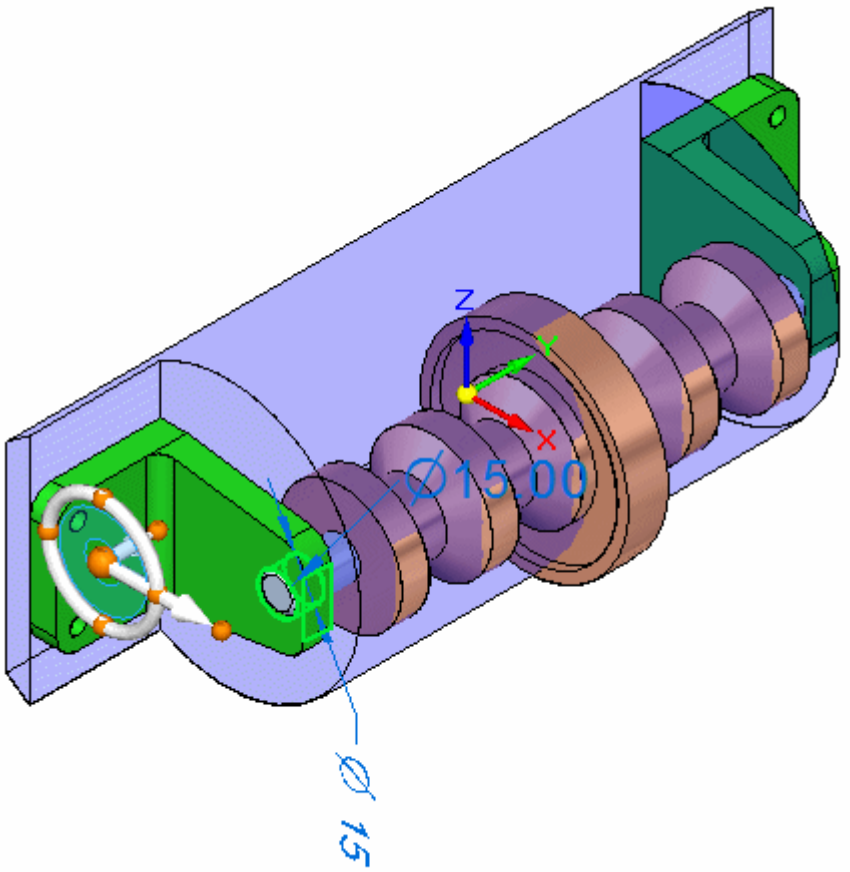
  Note

  The steering wheel can be relocated by dragging the origin knob which is the large sphere at the center.



- Drag the primary axis on the steering wheel so that the bracket becomes shorter. Enter 30.00 mm. The axial alignment between the bracket and the axle force the axle to stay aligned with the hole in the bracket.





Note

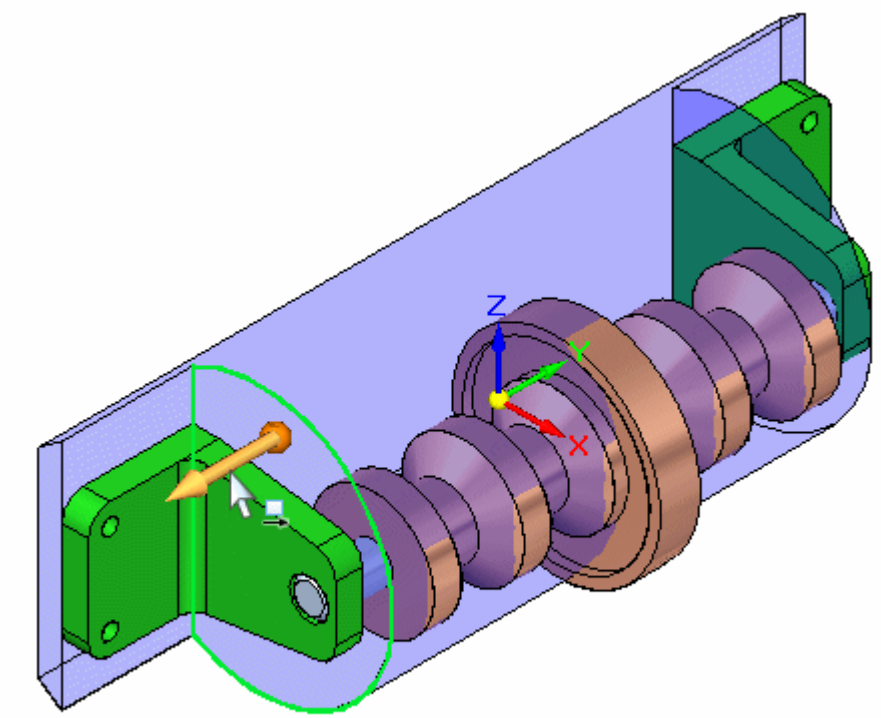
The axle moves with the bracket because of the axial align relationship used to place the axle.

- Clear the Selection.

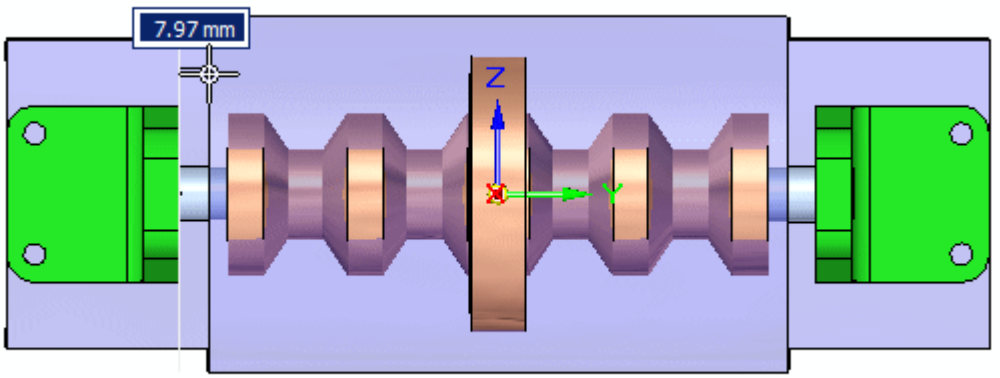
Create clearance between the bracket and plastic housing

The face of the plastic part is too close to the bracket. You will move the face inward.

- Select the face shown.



- Rotate the view to a right view and move the face somewhere between the bracket face and the next face on the shaft. Exact placement is not important. Because the part is symmetrical about the base, Live Rules are controlling the behavior such that the opposite face is also positioned correctly.

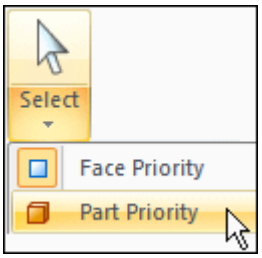


In-place activate the plastic part and create inter-part geometry for cutting the part

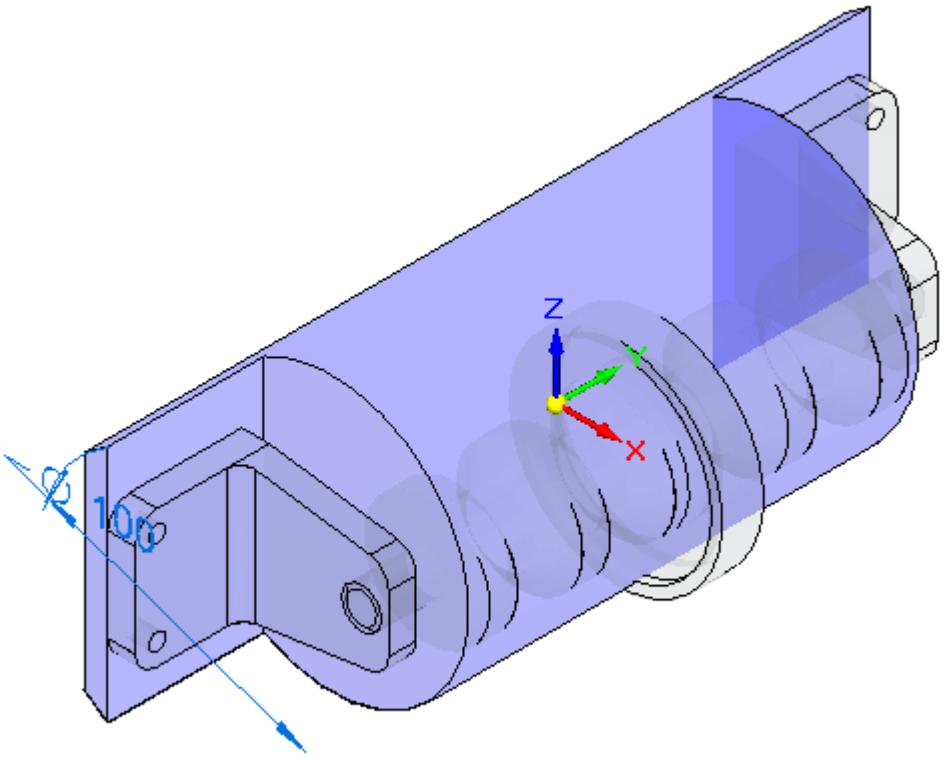
After in-place activating the plastic part, inter-part faces and an inter-part body will be created from other parts in the assembly.

- Clear the select set.

- Set the selection criteria to Part.



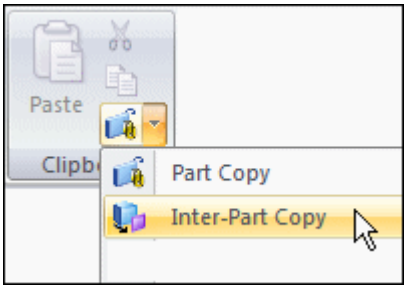
- Double-click the plastic part to in-place activate the part. You are now in the part environment but can still see the other parts in the assembly.



Note

Using Inter-Part Copy, you will copy needed geometry from the assembly. You need two planar faces to create bolt holes in the plastic part to attach the brackets. You will also need the body of *beltdrive.par*.

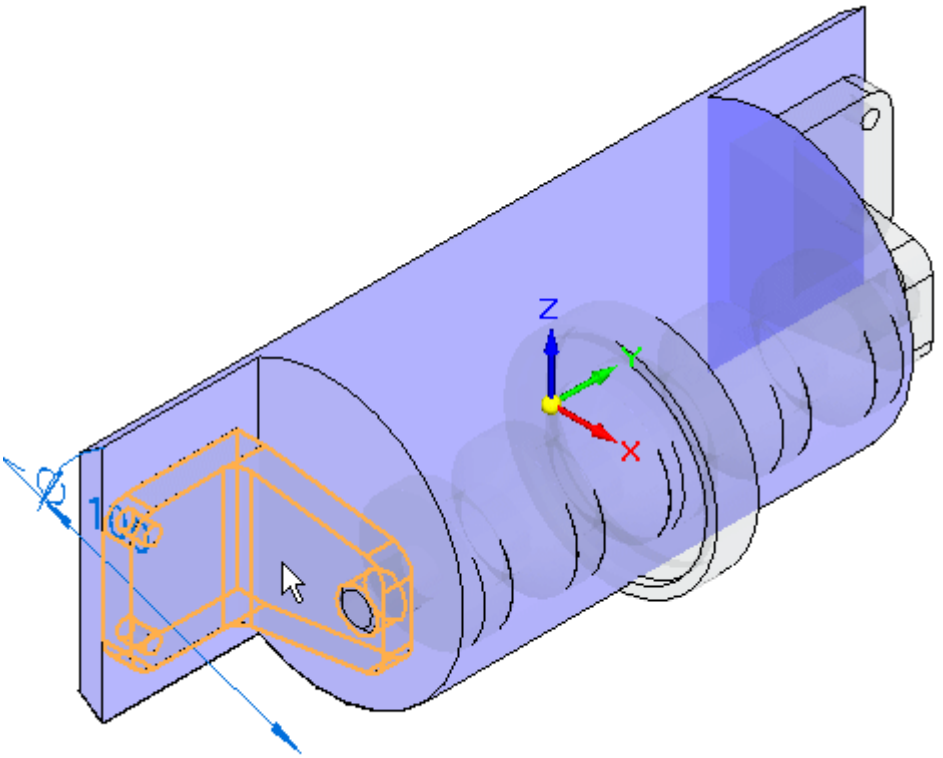
- Click the Inter-Part Copy command.



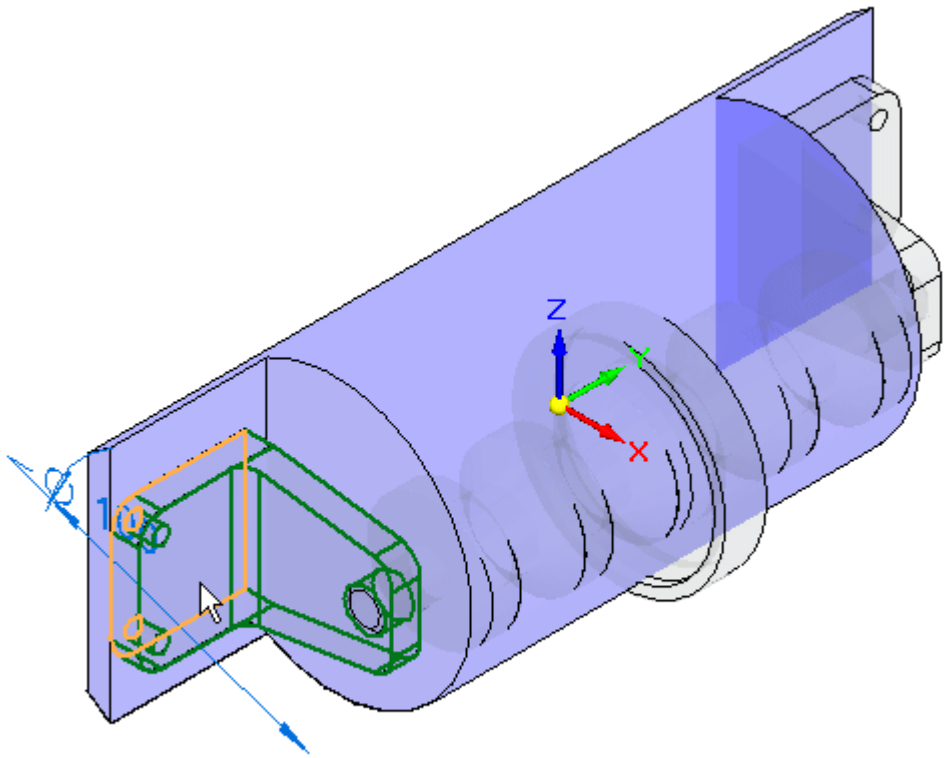
Note

Linked Inter-Part copies of surfaces can only be created in the ordered environment. The Inter-Part surface created for this exercise does not need to be linked and we will stay in the synchronous environment for this operation.

- Select the bracket.

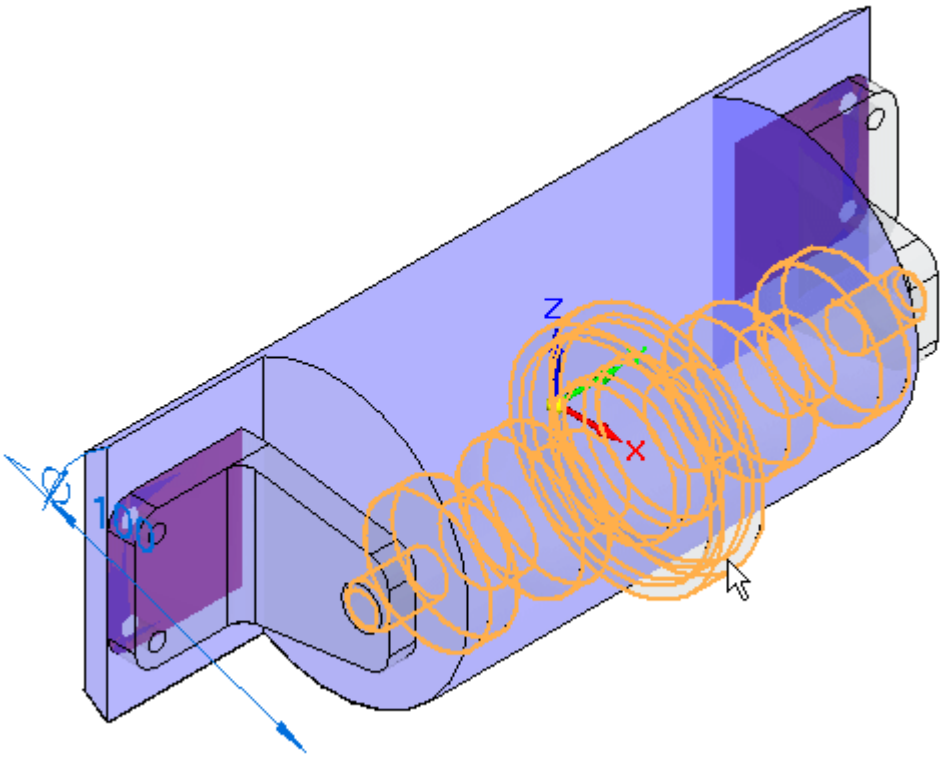


- In the Select Faces step in the command bar, select Face. Select the face shown.

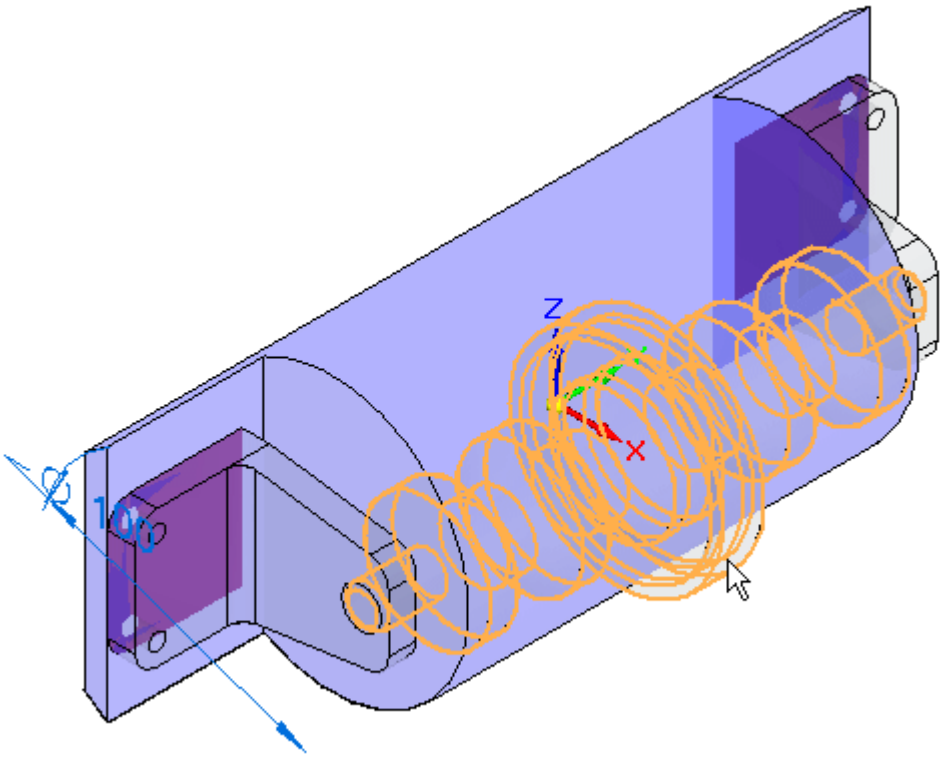


- Accept and then click Finish. Repeat for the opposite side.

- Click the Inter-Part Copy command and select the part shown.



- In the Select Faces step in the command bar, select Body. Select the whole body shown.



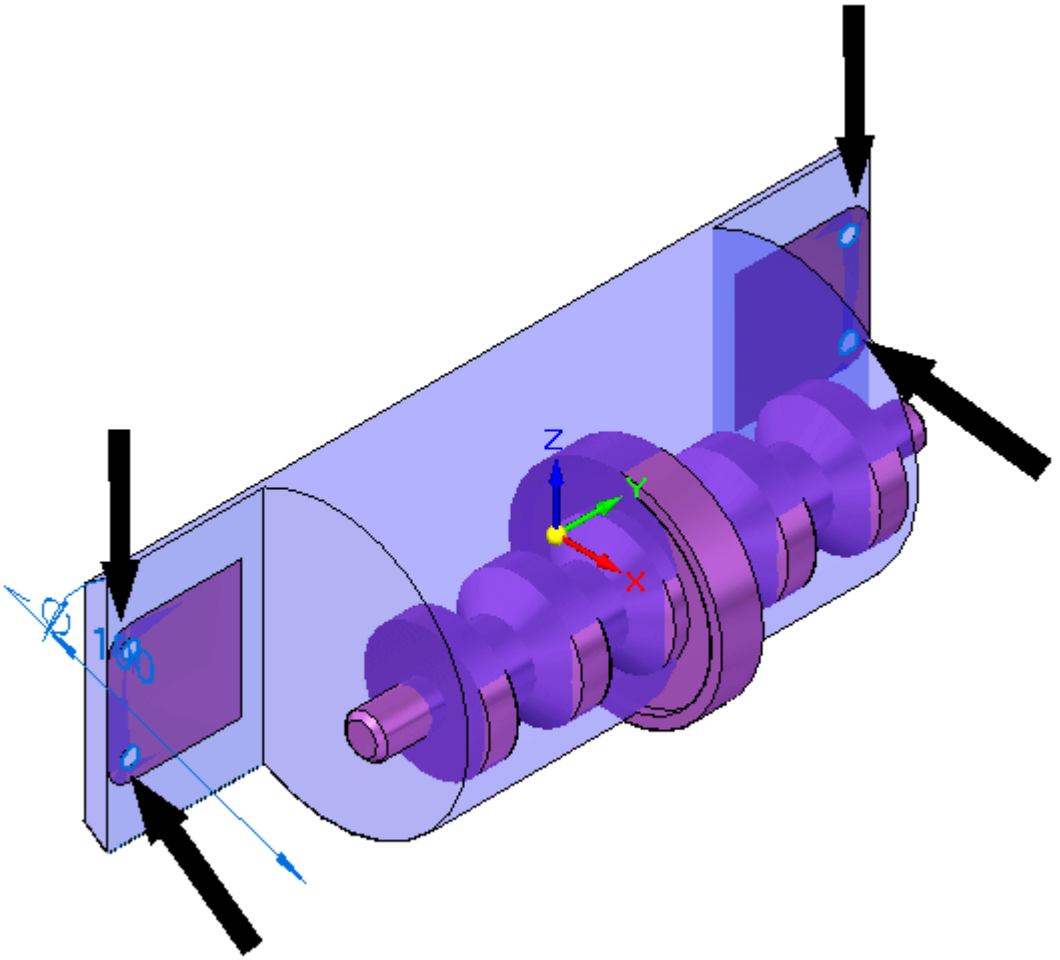
- Accept the body, then click finish. The body is created.

Cut the plastic part using the inter-part faces

The two inter-part faces and the inter-part body, and a cutout will be used to cut the plastic part.

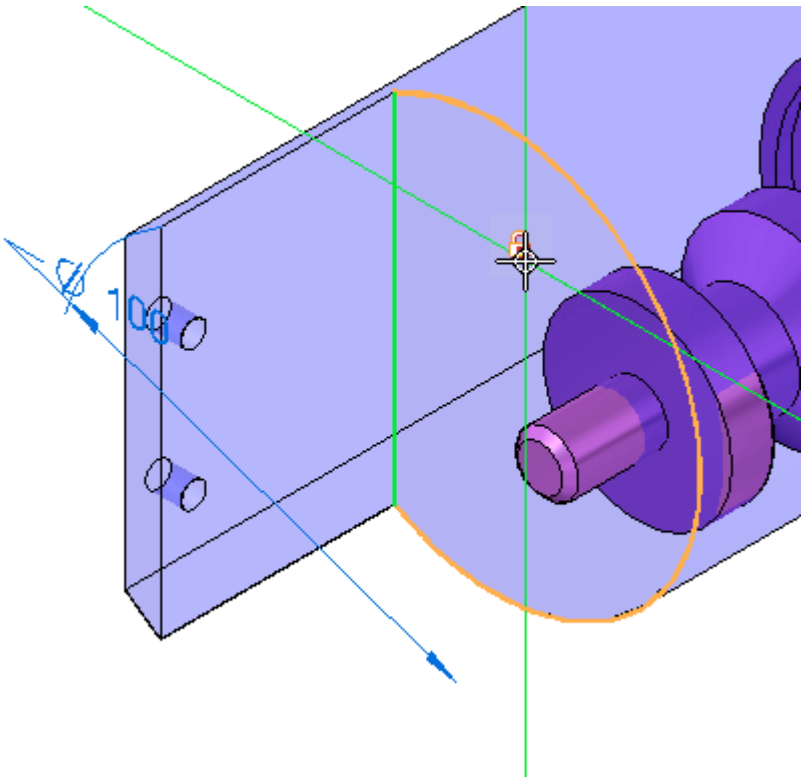
- Click the View tab and in the Show group, click Hide Previous Level. This will turn off the display of the other parts in the assembly

- Click the Sketching tab. Lock the sketch plane to the face containing the inter-part copies. Click Project to Sketch and select each of the 4 holes on the two Inter-Part faces.

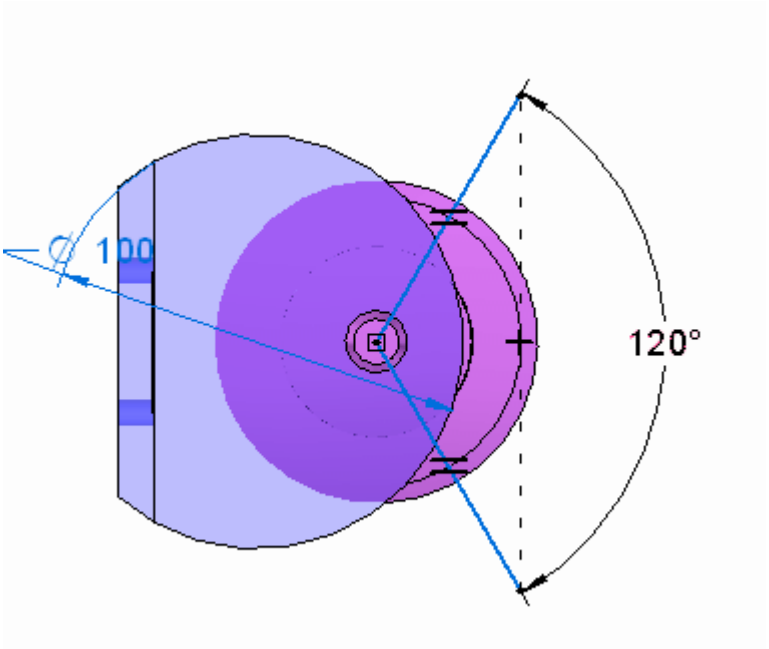


- Hide the Inter-Part Copy faces, used to create the holes, in PathFinder. Click the Extrude command. Create cutouts from each of the holes.

- Now you will draw a sketch for the first cutout in the housing. Select the sketch plane shown.



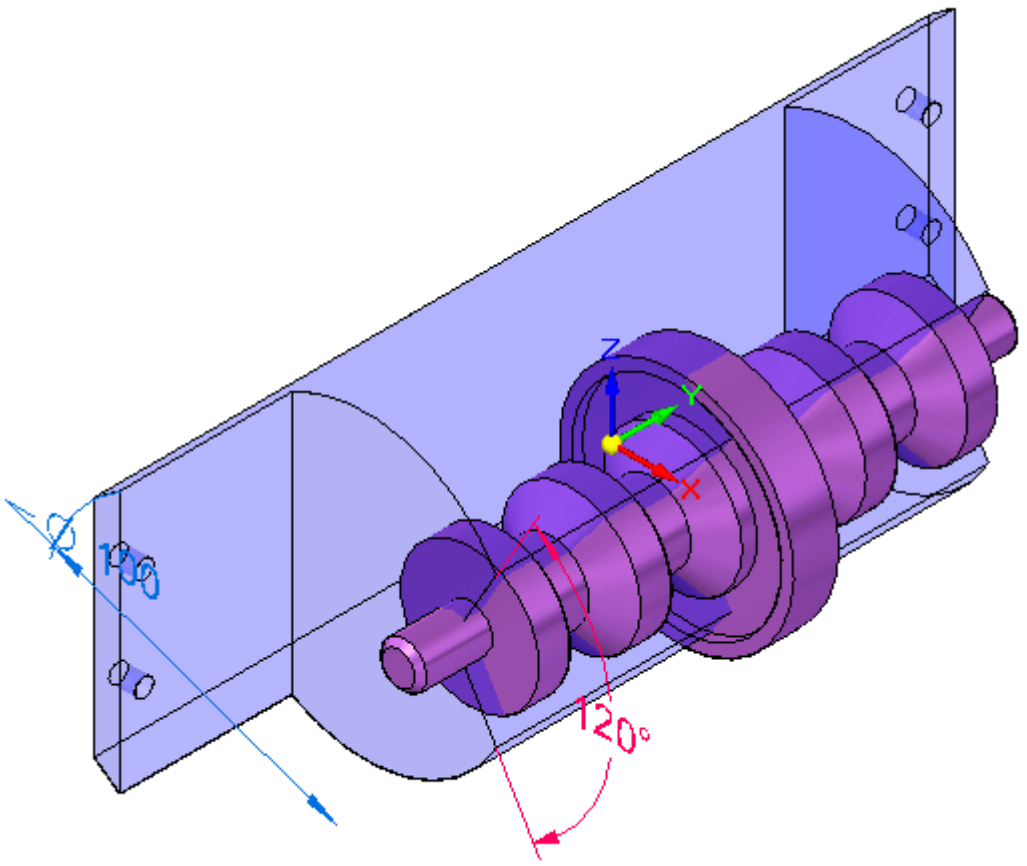
- Draw the sketch below and create an open cutout that extends the full length of the part.



Note

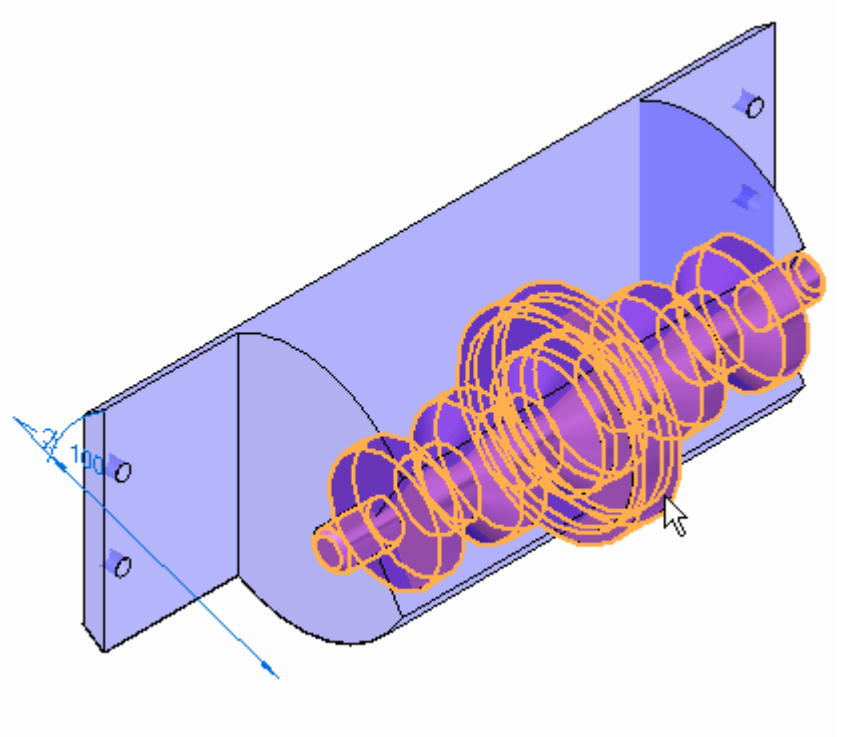
In the Relate group on the ribbon, use the Equal relationship to make the lines the same length. The angle between the lines is 120º. Use the Horizontal/Vertical relationship to line up the ends of the lines vertically. Intellisketch may put a perpendicular relationship at the intersection of the two lines. You will need to delete that relationship in order to get the 120º driving dimension placed.

The part is shown.

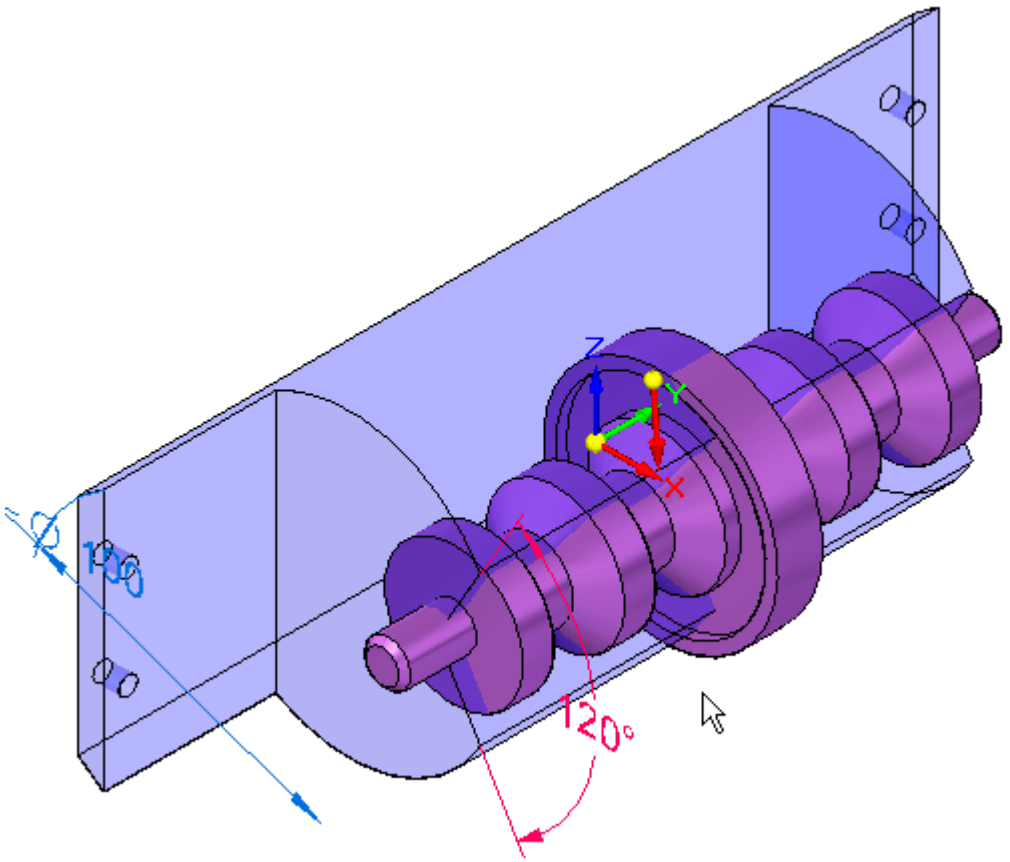


- Click the Surfacing tab. In the Surfaces group, click the Offset command.

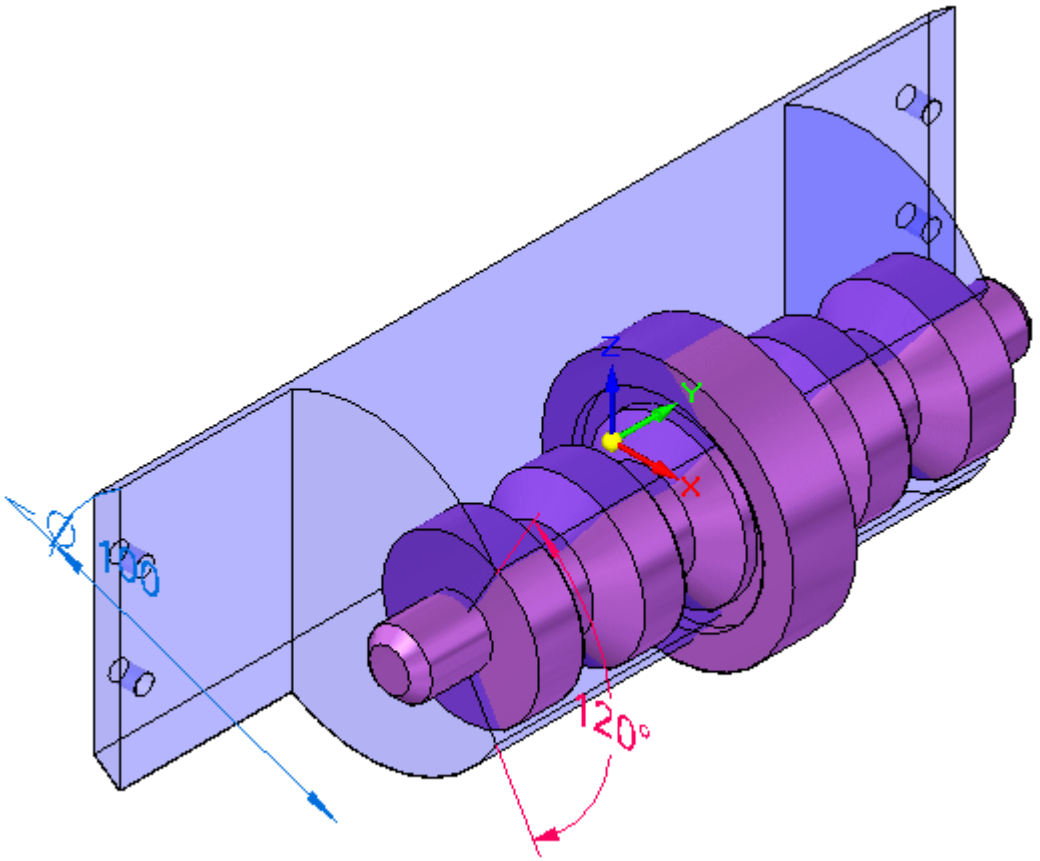
- In the Select step in the command bar, set Select to Body. Select the Inter-Part Copy shown and accept.



- Enter 3.00 mm for the offset distance. For the direction, click as shown. Then click Finish.



- The offset surface is shown. Notice it is bigger than the Inter-Part Copy.



Note

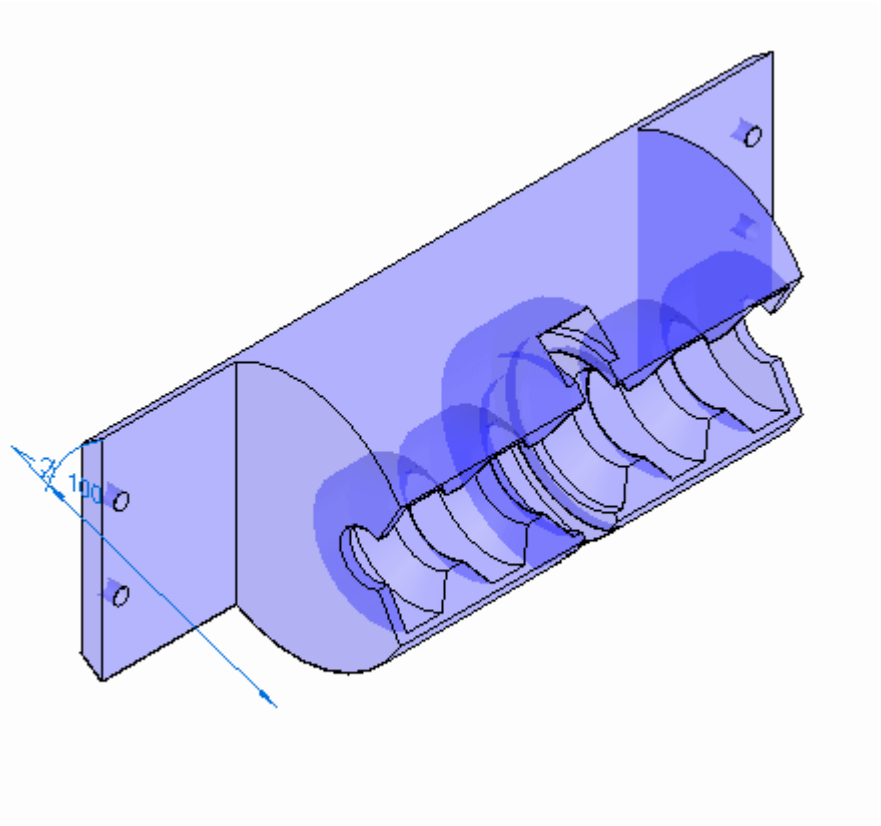
If the offset is smaller than the original part, you have chosen the wrong direction and will need to repeat the operation.

- Turn off the Inter-Part Copy of the body in PathFinder.
- Click the Surfacing tab. In the Surfaces group, click the Boolean command.

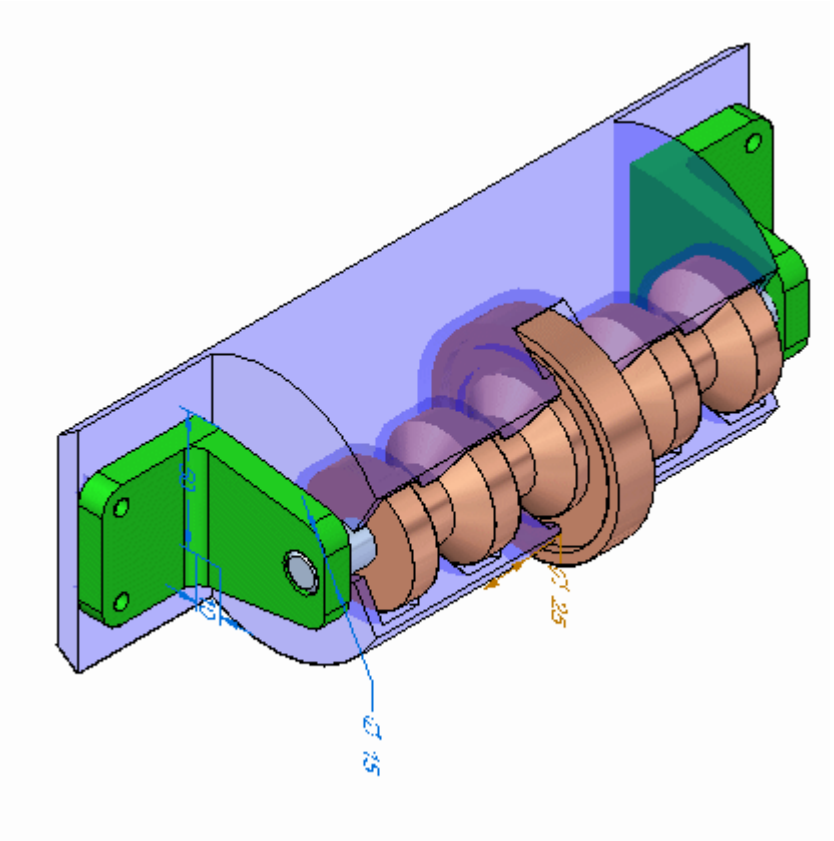
- In the command bar in the Tool Step, set the select to Body and click Subtract.
- Select the offset surface and accept. Then click Finish.

- Hide the offset surface in PathFinder.

  The part is as shown.



- Click the Home tab and then click Close and Return to return to the assembly. The assembly is as shown.

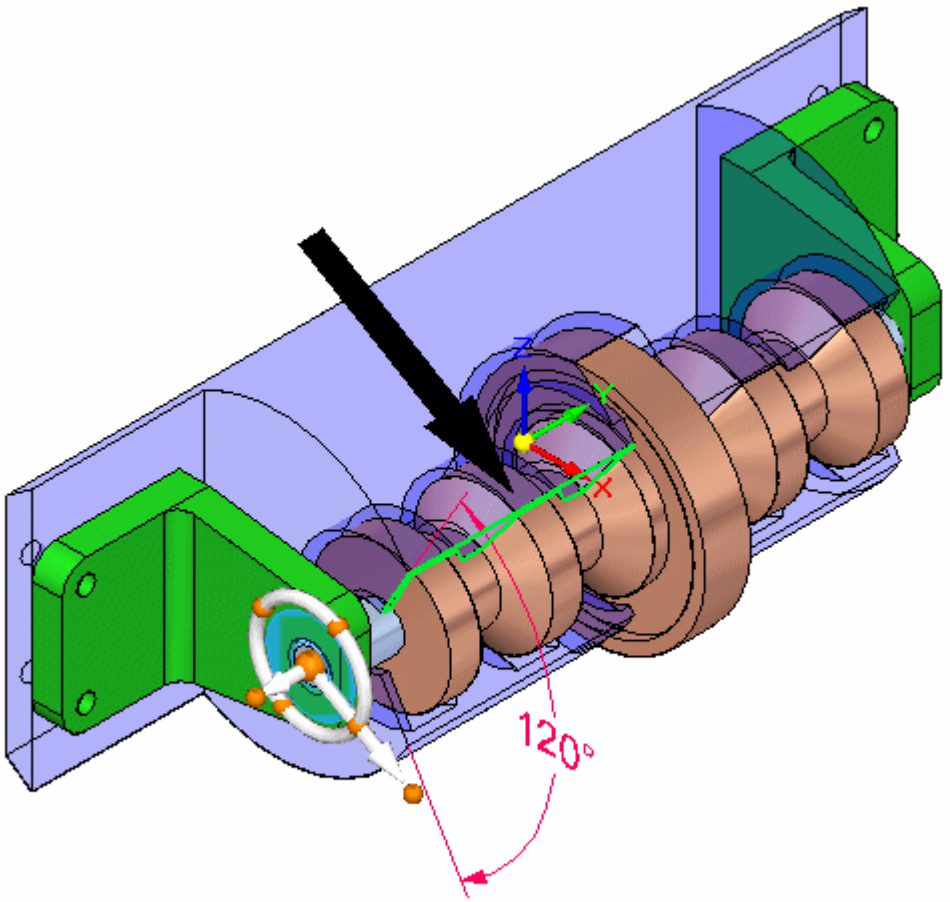


Modify the angle of the opening in the plastic part

Now you will modify the angle of the angular cut in the plastic face.

- Set the Selection Priority to Face.

- Select the face shown and move the steering wheel so that the primary axis aligns with the axis of the axle as shown.

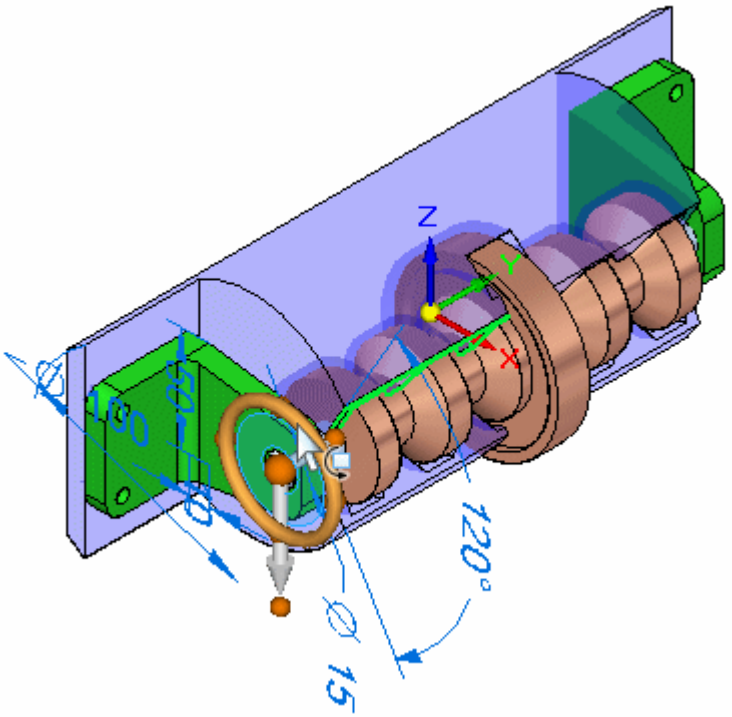


- Select the steering wheel torus as shown and rotate with the mouse. Notice the angle of the cut in the plastic part changes.

  Note

  Make sure the 120º dimension is unlocked so the face can move

This completes the activity.



Activity summary

In this activity you learned how to modify parts in the context of an assembly using Solid Edge.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. What is one advantage to modeling assemblies using synchronous components?

2. Can synchronous components in an assembly be copied using the steering wheel?

3. When using the steering wheel to move or copy an assembly component, when can live rules be used?

Answers

1. What is one advantage to modeling assemblies using synchronous components?

   Faces and components can be selected and modified directly in the assembly environment using the steering wheel and live rules.

2. Can synchronous components in an assembly be copied using the steering wheel?

   Synchronous geometry can be moved or copied using the steering wheel. Solid Edge will attempt to repair relationships that become invalid after a move if directed to do so.

3. When using the steering wheel to move or copy an assembly component, when can live rules be used?

   Live rules can be used with the steering wheel in assembly when faces are selected, and the geometry is synchronous rather than ordered.

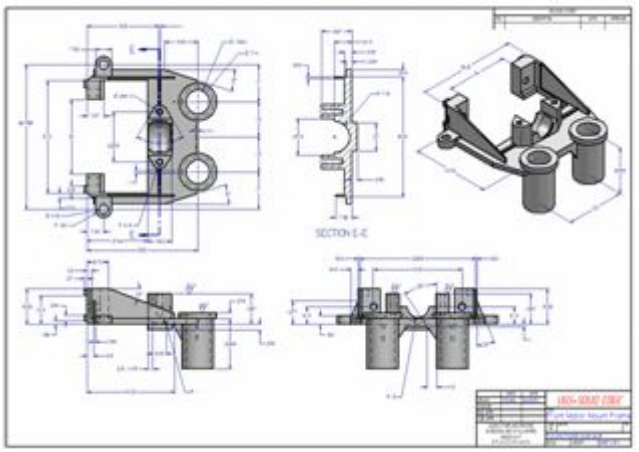
Lesson summary

In this lesson you learned how to modify parts in the context of an assembly using Solid Edge.

Lesson

9 *Creating detailed drawings*

Drafting



Course Overview

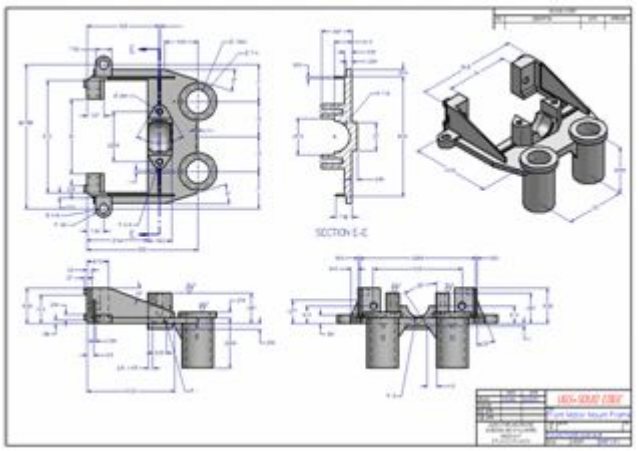
The Drafting course focuses on creating and editing drawings of 3D models. Upon completion of this course, you will be able to:

- Create drawings
- Add views to a drawing
- Create dimensions
- Create annotations

Drawing Production Overview

Overview

Drawing production is the process of formally documenting the design of a part or assembly. Solid Edge gives you a variety of tools that allow you to easily document designs during any stage of drawing production. You can create associative drawing views of 3D parts and assemblies that you can quickly update when the part or assembly changes. You can also create drawing views that consist of 2D elements drawn from scratch that you can quickly change without making changes to a part or assembly document.



A combination of the above methods also gives you the ability to meet the changing demands of your workflow. You can place an associative drawing view, which you can update when the model changes. Then, when you want to make changes to the drawing document without changing the model, you can convert the associative drawing view to a 2D element drawing view.

- Create a part drawing
- Create an assembly drawing

You can make a 2D drawing in Solid Edge using two types of drawing views: part views and 2D views. The 2D drawing can contain dimensions and other annotations that describe the size of a part or assembly, the materials used to create it, and other information.

Drawing View Types

When working from a 3D model, you can create the following types of drawing views:

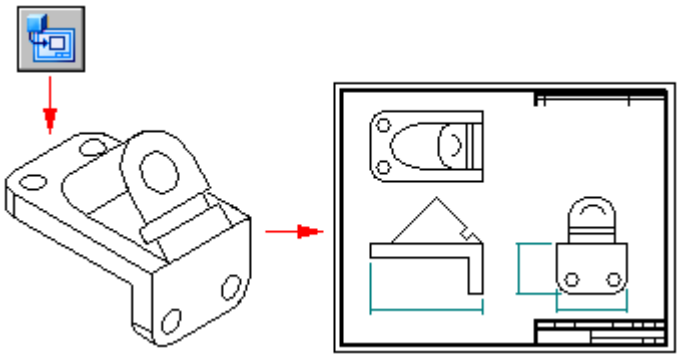
- Principal views
- Auxiliary views
- Perspective views
- Detail views (dependent and independent)
- Section views
- Broken views
- Draft quality or high quality views
- Exploded assembly drawings

When working with Solid Edge 2D Drafting, you cannot create 3D views that require a 3D model: section views, broken-out section views, and detail views.

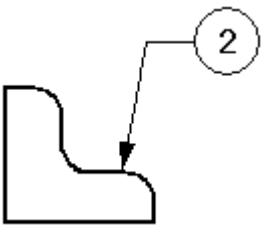
Create a part drawing

Workflow to create a part drawing

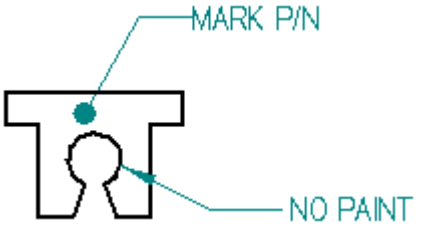
Use the following process to produce a drawing from any Solid Edge part or sheet metal document (*.par* and *.psm* file types).



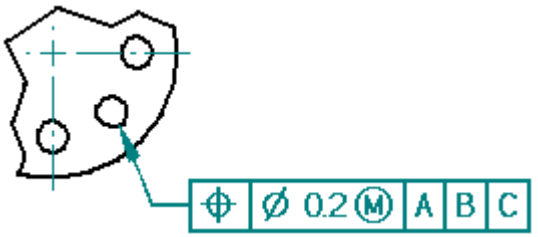
1. Open a new draft document using the *ISO Draft* template.
2. Use the View Wizard command to define and place primary part views.
3. (Optional) Create additional views as needed.
   - Auxiliary views
   - Detail views
   - Section views
   - Broken views
   - Draft quality views
4. Dimension the part views. For example, you can:
   - Retrieve dimensions and annotations from the model.
   - Use the Smart Dimension command to add dimensions.
5. Annotate the part views. For example, you can use these commands to annotate the model:
   - Place a balloon.



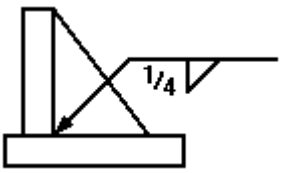
- Place a callout.



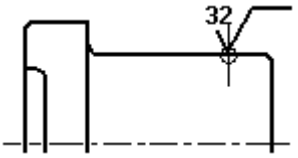
- Place a feature control frame or datum frame.



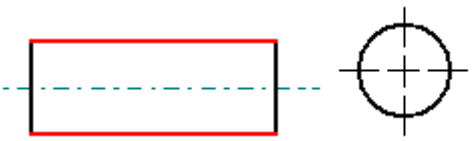
- Place an edge condition symbol.
- Define a weld symbol.



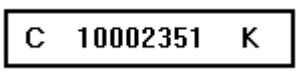
- Place a Surface Texture Symbol.



- Automatically create center lines and center marks in a drawing view.



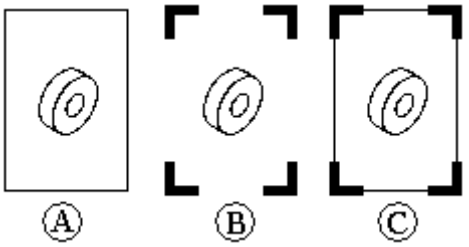
- Use the Edge Painter command to redraw, show, or hide part edges.
- Use the Text command to add notes to the drawing sheet.



6. Save the draft document.
7. Print a document.

8. When the model changes, drawing views go out-of-date. Do either of the following:

   - Use the Update Views command to update views of the model, indicated by gray borders.



     See Drawing view updates to learn about these features.

   - Use the Dimension Tracker dialog box to Review changed dimensions and annotations.

     See Tracking dimension and annotation changes to learn about these features.

Create an assembly drawing

You can choose model representations defined in the assembly model to show in a drawing view, such as an exploded model display configuration or a PMI model view. Use the following process to create an isometric drawing view of an exploded assembly with a ballooned parts list. You can do this from the assembly model or from a draft document.

1. **Start the Drawing View Wizard**

   In the assembly document, do the following:

   a. Save the assembly document.

   b. From the Application menu, select the New® Create Drawing command.

   c. In the Create Drawing dialog box, select the Run Drawing View Creation Wizard check box and click OK.

2. **Choose an embly model representation**

   In the Drawing View Creation Wizard (Drawing View Options), select one of the following from the .cfg, PMI model view, or zone list:

   - To create an exploded isometric model view, select an exploded model display configuration , and then click Finish.

     To learn how to create an exploded model configuration, see Explode an assembly automatically.

   - To communicate design, manufacturing, and functional information that has been added to a saved view of the model, select a PMI model view name , to Create a PMI drawing view.

     To learn how to create a PMI model view, see Create a PMI model view.

   - To create a user-defined view of the equipment and components in a rectangular area of a large assembly model, select a zone name , and then click Next.

   - If there is no predefined model representation to select, or to create any combination of user-defined assembly views, select No Selection, and then click Next.

3. **Place a user-defined view on the sheet**

   If the Drawing View Creation Wizard (Drawing View Orientation) is displayed:

   a. Select a named view, such as isometric, as the principal view.

   b. Click Next to choose additional views, or click Finish.

   c. Click the drawing sheet to place the view(s).

Tip

Predefined PMI model views and display configurations are placed on the drawing automatically.

4. After placing the view, you can do any of the following:

   - **Adjust the assembly display**

     Use the Display page (Drawing View Properties dialog box) to control the display of the individual parts and subassemblies in the assembly.

     To learn more, see Creating drawings of assemblies.

   - **Retrieve model dimensions and annotations**

     – If the drawing views are orthographic, you can use the Retrieve Dimensions command to extract dimensions and annotations from the model onto the drawing.

     – If the drawing views are pictorial (isometric, dimetric, or trimetric), you can use the Smart Dimension command to Place a 3D dimension on a pictorial drawing view.

5. **Add a ballooned parts list**

   Use the Home tab® Tables group® Parts List command to Create a parts list.

   Tip

   - To place a parts list that shows the assembly model item numbering schema in the table and in the balloons, select the Use assembly generated item numbers check box on the Options page (Parts List Properties dialog box. If this option is unavailable, you need to set the Create item numbers check box on the Item Numbers page (Solid Edge Options dialog box).

   - You can rearrange balloons that have been generated automatically with a parts list, so that all of the balloons are visible. To learn how, see Stack balloons.

   - If parts are missing in a parts list or a drawing view for an assembly, verify that the missing parts are not turned off in the assembly document Occurrence Properties dialog box. To learn how, see Display assembly occurrences in a drawing view or parts list.

Opening and saving draft documents

Some of the more specialized file operations that pertain to draft documents are described in this topic. For basic file operations, see Opening and saving Solid Edge documents. To learn about file operations for managed documents, see Adding Solid Edge documents to a managed library.

Opening draft documents in active mode or review (inactive) mode

You can open a draft document in two different modes: active mode or review mode. Active mode is the default. Review mode reduces the time required to open the document. To open a draft document in review mode, set the Inactivate Drawing Views For Review option in the Open File dialog box.

Active mode vs. review mode

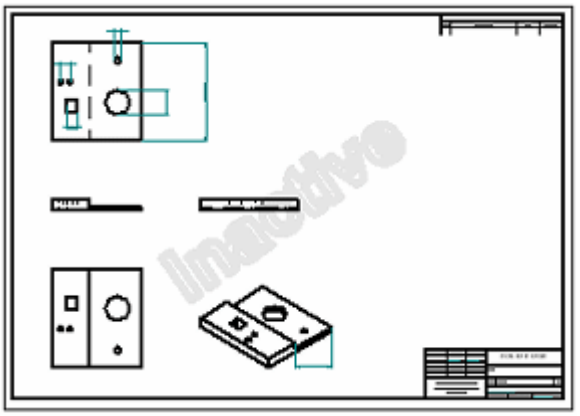
Active mode specifies that a draft document is opened with normal editing capability. All commands are available. Drawing views, parts lists, drawing tables, and other items are checked to determine whether they are out-of-date. Model geometry is live and accessible.

Review mode is intended for drawing review and printing. You can open a large draft document quickly by forgoing out-of-date checking and by limiting functionality. This also is useful when opening a managed draft document with many other documents linked to it.

In review mode:

- You can put the finishing touches on a drawing by selecting and moving 3D drawing views, adding and editing dimensions and annotations, changing their scale, and adjusting their properties.
- Functions that rely on model-derived data, such as retrieving dimensions, adding center lines automatically, editing parts lists and model-derived tables, and dimensioning to draft quality views, are disabled.
- You can create new views from geometry on the 2D Model sheet. You also can create detail views of 2D Model views. However, commands for creating new 3D drawing views are not available.
- You cannot update drawing views.

You can identify a draft document that has been opened in review mode by the **Inactive** watermark stamped on working sheets and the 2D Model sheet. Another indicator is the document title bar, which displays the following in front of the document name and revision ID: "*Draft with Inactive Drawing Views*."



Changing drawing view mode within the document

Once a document is open, you can change from one mode to the other. On the Tools tab, in the View Activation group, you can select these commands:

- Activate Drawing Views
- Inactivate Drawing Views

For example, if you open the document in review mode to print a drawing, but then decide you want to add a new view or change drawing view depth, you can select the Activate Drawing Views command. This returns the drawing to normal edit mode for you to make your changes.

Also, if you try to drag a model file into a draft document that is in review mode, a dialog box prompts whether you want to activate the drawing on-the-fly. Click Yes to change the document to active and continue creating the drawing view. Click No to end the drawing view creation command and leave the drawing in review mode.

Specifying a document open preference

You can set a preference for a draft document to open in review mode. Before you click the Open button to open the document, choose one of these options in the Open File dialog box, and then click the Save As Default button:

- Activate Drawing Views For Edit
- Inactivate Drawing Views For Review

Opening draft documents in the Solid Edge Viewer

Solid Edge provides a standalone Viewer that allows you to view draft documents without activating Solid Edge. To activate the Viewer from Windows Explorer, right-click the document you want to view, and then choose Viewer on the shortcut menu.

Saving draft documents for View and Markup and the Solid Edge Viewer

Before you can view a draft document in View and Markup or the Solid Edge Viewer, the metafile data for the document must be generated. You can do this automatically whenever you save a Draft document by setting the Include Draft Viewer Data In File option on the General page of the Options dialog box. To learn how, see Help topic Open a document in View and Markup.

Drawing sheets

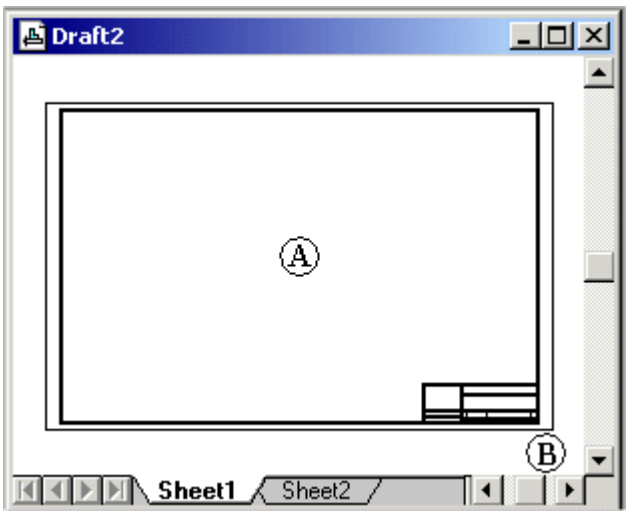
Drawing sheet overview

Drawing composition begins with choosing a drawing sheet. Drawing sheets are similar to pages in a notebook. You can place drawing views on different drawing sheets in the document. For example, you can place a front view and a right view on one drawing sheet and a section view on another drawing sheet. Both sheets are saved in the same document. To set up a drawing sheet, use the Sheet Setup command on the Application menu.

All 3D model drawing views, dimensions, and annotations are placed on the active working sheet, which has two components.

- The sheet outline (A) shows the orientation and print region of the sheet. You can change the size and orientation of the sheet outline with the Sheet Setup command.
- The area outside of the outline (B) is also part of the drawing sheet.

You also can draw, dimension, and annotate geometry on the 2D Model sheet, and then create 2D model views of the 2D design and place them on the active working sheet.



Use the following links to learn more about drawing sheets:

- Working sheets
- Background sheets
- 2D Model sheet
- Manipulating sheets
- Sheets and document templates
- Displaying drawing sheets in Draft Viewers
- Sheet scale and drawing view scale

Working sheets

The sheet where you do all of your drawing view construction is called a working sheet. You can create as many working sheets as you need. Each working sheet has a background sheet attached to it.

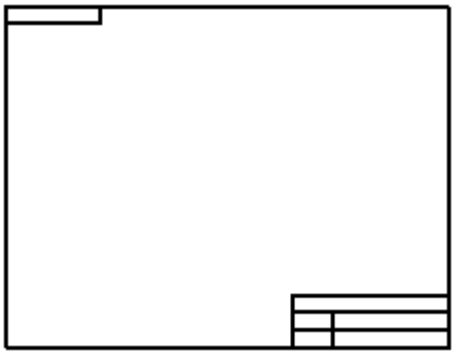
Background sheets

A background sheet is used as a backdrop to the working sheet. You can attach the same background sheet to any number of working sheets, making them useful for any geometry that you want to place on more than one drawing.

- Use the Background tab on the Sheet Setup dialog box to apply a background sheet.

- Use the View tab® Sheet Views group® Background command to format a background sheet.

When you attach a background sheet to a working sheet with the Sheet Setup command, geometry on the background sheet is displayed and printed along with the working sheet. So that the paper sizes and graphics on both sheets line up, the size of the working sheet is automatically set to the size of the background sheet you attach. A typical customized scheme would be to have a different background sheet for each standard-sized drawing (such as A, B, C, D, or A0, A1, A2, A3, A4).



Note

The graphics on the background sheet are not affected by drawing sheet scale. They are always displayed 1:1 with respect to the working sheet.

You also can add a drawing border sheet as a background to the 2D Model sheet using the Drawing Area Setup command or by dragging it directly onto the sheet.

For example, you can add a company-standard border and title block, insert a raster image of your company's logo with the Insert Object command on the Sketching tab, or draw other geometry.

2D model sheet

The 2D Model sheet is a special sheet used exclusively for working in 2D model space. It enables you to draw on the sheet and annotate at a scale appropriate for the overall size of the part you are designing, yet it prints your drawing with annotations appropriately scaled to the output sheet size you specify.

For example, you can drag a file containing 2D geometry—such as a Solid Edge .dft document or an AutoCAD .dwg or .dxf file—onto the 2D Model sheet. You can add annotations and dimensions using one drawing scale, then use the 2D Model command in the Drawing Views group to create 2D views of your design that you place on one or more working sheets at a different scale for printing.

Unlike working sheets, there is just one 2D Model sheet allowed per document. It is always the first sheet in the document, and it cannot be renamed.

- Select the View tab® Sheet Views group® 2D Model command to make this sheet available.

- The scale of the 2D Model sheet is 1:1. To annotate and dimension at a different scale than the scale of the printed drawing, without having to change the text height before printing, use the Drawing Area Setup command on the Application menu. This command automatically calculates the size and scale of your work area on the 2D Model sheet based on the printout sheet size and the width and height of your intended design.

- You can add a drawing border sheet to the 2D Model sheet. Use the Drawing Area Setup command, and select one of the drawing border block files listed on the Drawing Area dialog box in the Place Block list. Using the Drawing Area Setup command ensures that the border is placed at the correct scale for the paper it will be printed on.

  If you are not concerned with scaling the border, you can drag a file containing a drawing border onto the model sheet and click to place it.

Manipulating sheets

You can use the named tabs at the bottom of the drawing sheets to manipulate the sheets easily. You can use the tabs in the following ways:

- To select and display a drawing sheet, click a tab. The name of the displayed drawing sheet appears in bold.

- To activate a drawing sheet and set up sheet options, double-click the sheet tab.

- Right-click a drawing sheet tab to access the drawing sheet tab shortcut menu. From this menu, you can insert, delete, reorder, and rename drawing sheets.

You can use the following scroll buttons to scroll through the drawing sheet tabs.

	Scrolls to the first drawing sheet tab in the document.
	Scrolls to the last drawing sheet tab in the document.
	Scrolls to the previous drawing sheet tab in the document. To scroll through several tabs at a time, hold Shift, then click this button.
	Scrolls to the next drawing sheet tab in the document. To scroll through several tabs at a time, hold Shift, then click this button.

Sheets and document templates

You can reuse your customized background sheets by saving them in a document template. When you use the template to create a new document, all of the background sheets in the template are copied into the new document.

Displaying drawing sheets in Draft viewers

When you want to make your Draft documents available for review in Solid Edge Viewer and View and Markup, you must specify the sheets to be included in the file. Use the following check boxes on the General page (Solid Edge Options dialog box, Draft environment), to select the sheet types:

- Include Draft Viewer data in file
  - Include Working Sheets
  - Include 2D Model Sheet
  - Include Background Sheets

Sheet scale and drawing view scale

A sheet scale is a standard scale value for drawing views placed on the working sheet. Typically, the sheet scale is indicated in the drawing border title block. When you place a drawing view on the same sheet using a different scale, you can note the exception scale value in a drawing view caption.

Only working sheets can have a sheet scale other than 1.0. Background sheets, the 2D Model sheet, and draw-in-view windows have their sheet scale fixed at 1:1.

Setting the sheet scale

You can set the sheet scale when:

- **Placing the first view using the drawing View Wizard**

  When placing the first drawing view on the sheet using the View Wizard command, you can specify the sheet scale from the View Wizard command bar using the Set Sheet Scale option. When this button is selected, the sheet scale is set automatically to the scale of the first drawing view—the principal or primary view—placed on the drawing sheet. The same scale is applied automatically to all subsequent views placed on the sheet. This ensures that the scale of all drawing views on the sheet is consistent.

- **Modifying views placed using other commands**

  When you place the first drawing view using a command other than the View Wizard command, or when you have multiple views on a sheet with different view scales, you can use the Set Sheet Scale command to set the sheet scale to match any drawing view you select. This command is available from the shortcut menu when a drawing sheet tab is selected.

- **Removing sheet scale associativity**

  You can see what sheet scale is currently assigned to the drawing sheet using the Sheet Setup command. You can override a derived sheet scale by selecting the Change the sheet scale manually check box and selecting or typing a new scale value. This also removes the associativity between the first drawing view and the sheet scale.

  This command is available from the shortcut menu when a drawing sheet tab is selected.

Showing the sheet name, number, and scale on the active sheet

You can use callouts and other types of annotations to extract and display property text that identifies the sheet name, number, and scale of the active drawing sheet.

For example, you can place a callout on a shared background sheet, in the drawing border title block, so that it displays the sheet scale on each working sheet. When you place a drawing view on the same sheet using a different scale, you can note the exception scale value in a drawing view caption. You can define the caption content and control caption display using the Caption page (Drawing View Properties dialog box).

To create a callout that extracts property text, such as the Sheet Name, Sheet Number, and Sheet Scale properties, see the Help topic, Create property text. Many other properties, such as file name, title, and author, can be extracted as well.

Drawing view scale

When you model a part or assembly, you can construct the model to the full scale of the real-world object you are creating. The size of the working sheet determines the scale you should use to display the 3D part or assembly. For example, the drawing view scale for a front loader bucket part would be smaller if an A size sheet were used, because the A size border is smaller than the D size.

By default, the View Wizard calculates the best fit for the drawing views based on the model size and the sheet size. Part views, with the exception of detail views, have the same scale as the model they are created from. Before you click to place the view, you can use the View Wizard command bar to change drawing view scale:

- The default option—the Best Fit button—uses the size of the working sheet to compute the best-fit scale value needed to display of the selected part. This scale appears in the Scale box on the command bar.
- You can choose a different scale to apply to the drawing view using the Scale list on the command bar.
- The Set View Scale button changes the scale of the drawing view you are placing to match the current sheet scale.

Note

Aligned part views also share the same scale. To change the scale of an individual part view, remove the alignment with the Unalign command on the shortcut menu, and then use the Properties command on the shortcut menu to set the scale you want.

Dimensional values in drawing views

The dimensional values of the parts or assemblies in your part views measure the actual size of the model. For example, if a hole feature in a part is 25 millimeters and the drawing view scale is 2:1, when you dimension the hole feature, it will be 25 millimeters, not 50 millimeters. This means that you never have to worry about the part view scale affecting the dimensional values when you are creating a drawing.

The dimension and annotation sizes in your working sheets are independent of the drawing view scale. For example, if you define the height and size of dimension text as 0.125 inch or 3.5 millimeters, these are the actual values of the dimension text on the printed drawing.

Establishing a scaled work area on the 2D Model sheet

The scale of the 2D Model sheet is 1:1. However, you can set the size and scale of a special work area where you can annotate and dimension at a different scale than the scale of the printed drawing, without having to change the text height before printing. The Drawing Area Setup command on the Application menu automatically calculates the size and scale of your work area on the 2D Model sheet based on the printed sheet size and the width and height of your intended design.

Drawing view creation

You can make a drawing in Solid Edge using several types of drawing views: 2D part views, 2D views, and predefined 3D model views. The drawing can contain dimensions and other annotations that describe the size of a part or assembly, the materials used to create it, and other information.

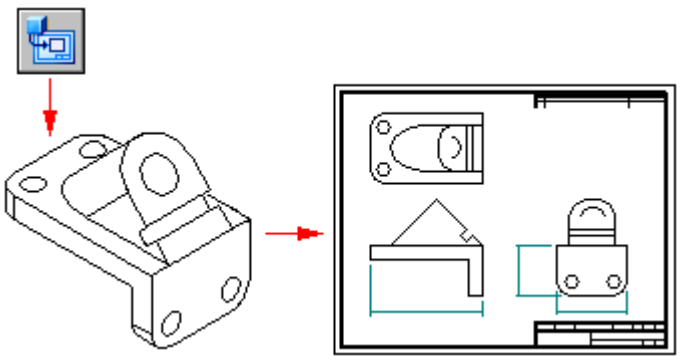
You can place any number of drawing views on a sheet. You can also modify the characteristics of a selected drawing view with the Properties command on the Edit menu or the shortcut menu.

To learn about creating a 2D view, see the Help topic, 2D views and 2D model views.

To learn about creating a 3D model view, see the Help topic, Creating 3D model views with PMI.

Part views

You can create part views of any Solid Edge part, sheet metal, or assembly document (.par, .psm, and .asm file types). Multiple part, sheet metal, and assembly documents can be used as the basis for part views in a draft document. To document foreign data, first convert the data into a Solid Edge document.



Creating a primary part view

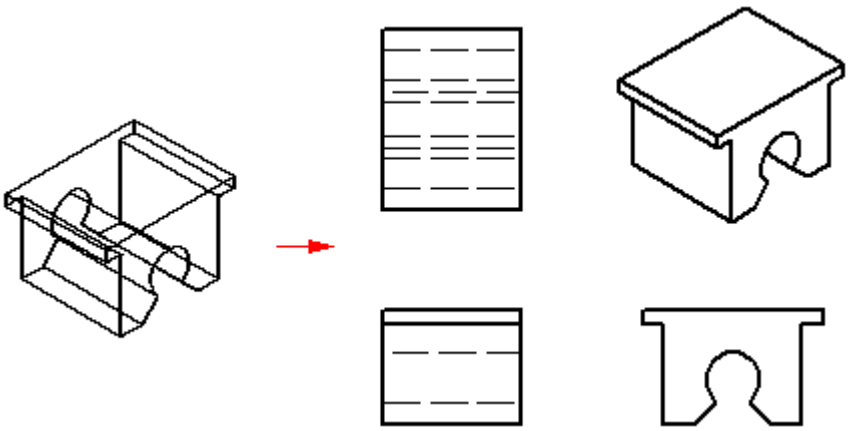
You begin creating part views by using the Drawing View Creation Wizard to create a primary view of a 3D part or assembly. A primary view is simply the first view placed on the drawing.

The Drawing View Creation Wizard displays a series of pages. The specific options you see depend upon whether you start the command from a draft or 3D model document:

- To start the Drawing View Creation Wizard from a draft document, select the Drawing View Wizard command . You are then prompted to choose a 3D part, sheet metal or assembly document as the source file for the drawing view.
- To start the Drawing View Wizard command from a part, sheet metal, or assembly model document, on the Application menu, choose New® Create Drawing.
- The Drawing View Options page sets drawing view options for the model.
- The Drawing View Orientation page is where you select a named view, such as front, dimetric, or top.
- The Custom Orientation dialog box contains view manipulation commands that you can use to create a custom view as the primary view. For example, you can define a perspective view.
- The Drawing View Layout page is where you select companion orthographic views to place with the primary view.

Placing a primary part view

When you click Finish on the Drawing View Creation Wizard, the cursor is displayed as a rectangle the size of the new part view. You can position the view anywhere on the sheet, and then click to place it. If you selected companion views from the wizard's Drawing View Layout dialog box, when you click the drawing sheet, all selected views will be placed at once.

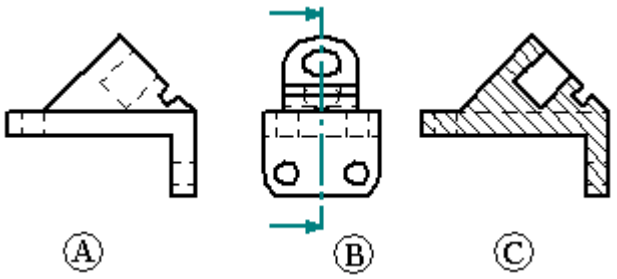


Creating additional part views

After you create one or more primary part views, you can use them to create:

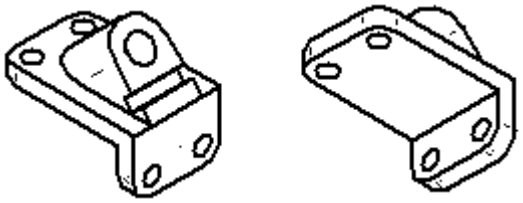
- Principal views
- Perspective views
- Auxiliary views
- Detail views
- Section views
- Broken views

You can then use those part views to create still others. For example, if you create a principal view (B) based on the primary view (A), you can create a section view (C) based on the principal view.



Setting the projection angle

The projection angle defines the appearance of a new part view that is folded from an existing part view. The projection angle is dependent on the mechanical drafting standard you use and, typically, once you set the projection angle you will rarely, if ever, need to reset it.



Mechanical drafting standards use either a first angle projection or a third angle projection for creating multi-view projections of a part on a drawing sheet. The first angle method is predominantly used by engineers and designers who follow ISO and DIN standards. The third angle method is predominantly used by engineers and designers who follow ANSI standards. You can create part views using either method.

You can set the projection angle on the Drawing Standards tab on the Options dialog box. You can also set the method you want to use in a template so that all documents created using that template conform to the standard you need.

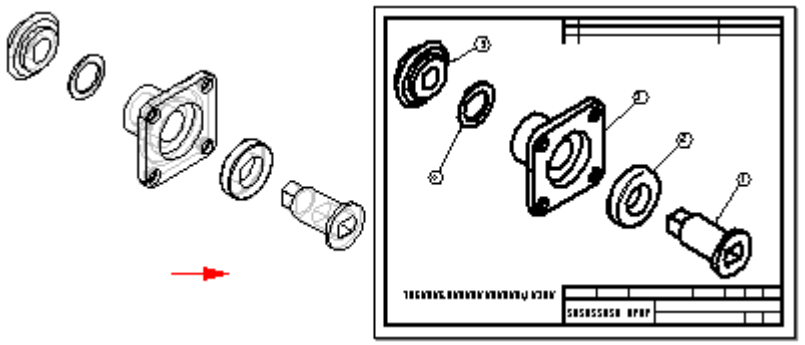
Creating drawings of assemblies

When you create a part view of an assembly, you can control the display of the individual parts and subassemblies in the assembly. For example, you may want to hide certain parts or specify that a part is displayed as a reference part. You can also control the display of weld beads and material addition features in a part view of a weldment assembly.

- You can use the Model Display Settings button on the Drawing View Wizard command bar to specify which parts you want to display in the part view before you place it on the sheet.

- After placement, you can select the part view on the drawing and edit its properties using the Properties command on the shortcut menu.

- You also can use the display configurations, PMI model views, and zones you have saved in the Assembly environment to control the display of the parts in the part view. When you select an assembly document in the Select Model dialog box of the Drawing View Wizard, you can select the display name you want to use from the .cfg, PM Model View, or Zone list on the Assembly Drawing View Options page. For example, you can use an exploded display configuration name to place a part view of an exploded assembly.



To enhance the performance of assembly drawing views, clear the Show Hidden Edges and Show Edges of Hidden Parts options on the Assembly Drawing View Options dialog box. To make these changes for all assembly drawing views, clear these options on the Edge Display tab of the Solid Edge Options dialog box. You can create a draft template file with these options cleared and use it to create all the drawing views of your assemblies without hidden lines.

Note

In the Assembly environment, you can define several types of display configurations: assembly configurations, zones, and exploded configurations.

Creating draft quality views of assemblies

You can use the Create Draft Quality Drawing Views option on the Assembly Drawing View Options page of the Drawing View Wizard to quickly create a draft-quality drawing of a complex assembly. To allow draft quality views to be quickly generated, only visible edges are created.

You can use draft quality views as input for principal views, auxiliary views, cutting planes, and broken-out section views. You can add balloons to draft quality views and create parts lists from them. You can place elements that connect to a drawing view with a leader, such as balloons and callouts. Some of the view properties, such as Hidden Edge Display, can be fixed. Others, such as Scale, can be modified.

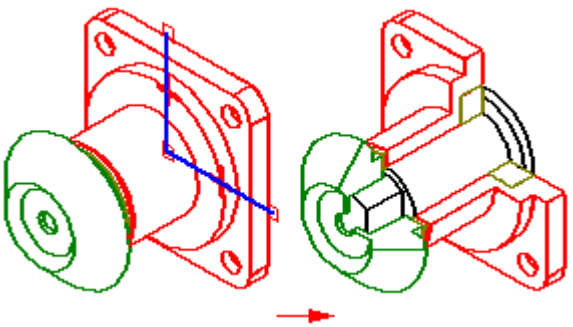
You can use the Activate Parts for Dimensioning option on the Assembly Drawing View Options dialog box of the Drawing View Wizard command to activate (load into memory) the parts in the assembly so that you can use them for dimensioning and other operations that require precision. This option is only available when Create Draft Quality Drawing Views is also checked.

Creating 2D drawing views of 3D sections

To simulate the removal of material from a 3D model and to expose internal features, you can create sectioned views of a part, sheet metal component, or assembly. To do this, use the Section command , which is located on the Product Manufacturing Information (PMI) tab in the part, sheet metal, or assembly document.

You can create a 2D drawing view directly from the 3D section view in the part, sheet metal, or assembly document using the New® Create Drawing command on the Application menu. You also can create a 2D view of the 3D section from within the Draft environment. In this case, use the Drawing View Wizard command, and then select the assembly, part, or sheet metal file that contains the 3D section view.

After you place the view on the sheet, select the Properties command from the drawing view shortcut menu, then click the Sections tab on the Drawing View Properties dialog box. Select the 3D section view from the list, and click OK. You must then select the Update View command to update the drawing view with the 3D section view.



Creating drawings of a PMI model

You can produce drawings of model views containing product manufacturing information using the Drawing View Creation Wizard. The display data contained in the model view—view orientation, 3D sections, and PMI—is captured on the drawing. PMI text copied to the drawing view retains its three-dimensional aspect.

Options on the Drawing View Wizard let you choose:

- A 3D PMI model view as the drawing view source.
- Whether to copy the model view PMI dimensions to the drawing view.
- Whether to copy the model view PMI annotations to the drawing view.

Once the drawing view is created, you can clear these options on the General page of the Drawing View Properties dialog box to turn associativity on or off with the model view:

- Include PMI Dimensions From Model Views check box.
- Include PMI Annotations From Model Views check box.

To learn how to create drawings of PMI model views, see Create a PMI drawing view.

Creating drawings of alternate assemblies

When creating a drawing of an assembly that has been converted to an alternate assembly, you can use the Drawing View Wizard (Select Family of Assembly Member) dialog box to specify the assembly member you want. When you select the member from the Family Member list, a preview of the member is displayed. When you click the Next button, you can define any other assembly drawing view options you want. For example, you can specify that the drawing view is placed as a draft quality view.

Creating drawings of weldment assemblies (.asm)

When creating a drawing of a part in a weldment assembly, you can create drawing views that document the process-specific stages of the weldment process by first saving the part to a new name using the Save Model As command.

This is useful when the part has assembly features that represent weld preparation and post-weld machining operations. For example, you may need to apply chamfers to parts in the assembly before constructing a groove weld.

Creating drawings of weldments (.pwd)

When creating a drawing of a weldment, you can create drawing views that document the process-specific stages of the weldment process. When placing a weldment drawing view, you can use the View option on the Weldment Drawing View Options dialog box to specify whether the drawing view reflects the machined view, welded view, or assembly view. For example, when you set the Machined View option, you can place drawing views that document the post-weld machining that was done to the weldment.

If you defined weld labels in the weldment document, you can use the Tie To Geometry option on the Weld Symbol command bar to extract the weld labels into the drawing.

Note

When you set the Tie To Geometry option, only edges that have had weld labels assigned to them are selectable.

Creating drawing views automatically

You also can create drawing views quickly and automatically by dragging a Solid Edge document onto a drawing sheet. You can even place an open Solid Edge document onto a drawing sheet by dragging it from your Open Documents folder in the Library.

- When you drag an assembly model onto an empty drawing sheet, an isometric view is created.
- When you drag any other model file onto an empty drawing sheet, front, top, and right views are created.

You also can drag a model onto a Quicksheet template. With a Quicksheet template, you can customize the view types and properties, save the document as a template, and reuse it with any model you want. The views remain unlinked to a model file, but retain their properties. Or you can use one of the templates delivered with Solid Edge in the Quicksheet folder. Included assembly templates (metric and English) consist of one isometric view, parts list, and auto-balloon enabled. Included part templates (metric and English) consist of front, top, and right orthogonal views, and one isometric view.

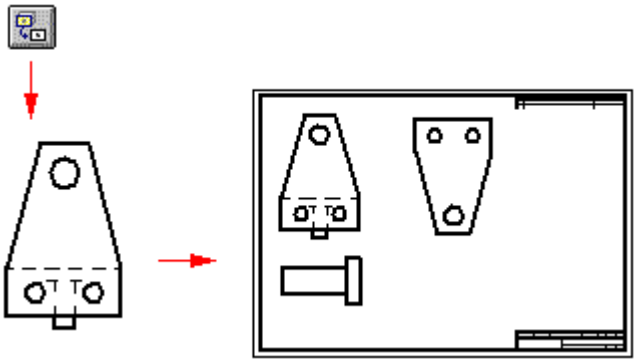
Component geometry in drawing views

You can display constructions, coordinate systems, sketches, reference planes, and center lines in drawing views created from a 3D part or assembly. For model files on which mass properties have been calculated, a center-of-mass coordinate system is available when you display coordinate systems. When the part file you are using to create the drawing view contains construction geometry, Solid Edge Draft treats it as an assembly. Like an assembly, you can expand it in the Parts List box on the Display Tab of the Drawing View Properties dialog box. You can use the Parts List Options button on the dialog box to control the display of component geometry.

You can create a query to find a specific type of model component, and then hide all instances of it in the drawing view at once. Using a query in this manner, you can quickly simplify a drawing of a complex assembly model, without having to select and hide the individual components within each assembly part. To learn how, see Help topic use a query to hide components in a drawing view.

Documenting multiple parts in one Draft document

Solid Edge allows you to document multiple parts or assemblies in a single draft document. This can be an advantage when working with an assembly. For example, instead of creating a separate draft document for the assembly and each part, you can use the Drawing View Wizard command to place drawing views of the assembly document and the individual part documents into one draft document. This makes document management and maintenance much simpler.



The Drawing View Wizard command tracks the parts and assemblies that you place in a draft document. You can click the Drawing View Wizard command to place the drawing views of the first part or assembly. The next time you click the command the Select Part dialog box is displayed. The Select Part dialog box displays the documents that are currently placed in the draft document in a folder tree structure.

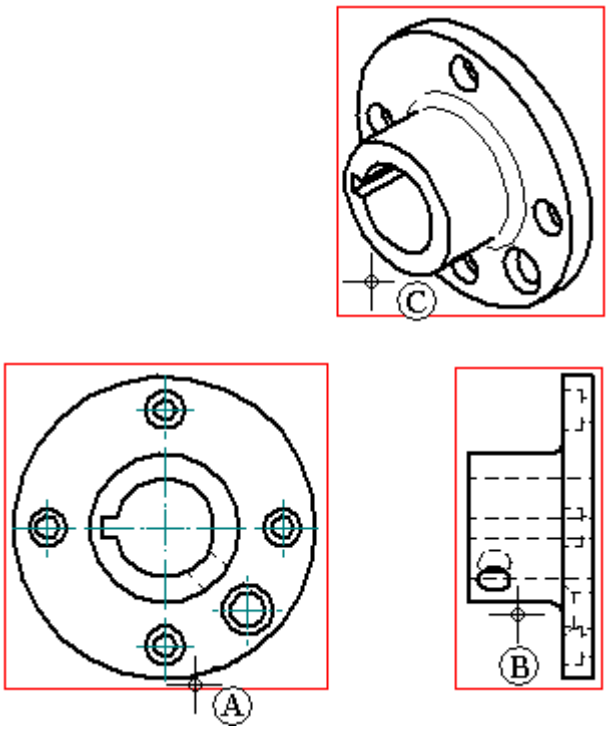
If you have placed an assembly document, you can select a part in the assembly as the basis for the next part view. If you want to create a part view for a part in a different assembly, you can use the Browse button to find the part on your computer or another computer on your network.

Principal views

Creating principal views

After you place the initial drawing views on the drawing sheet using the Drawing View Wizard, you can use the Principal View command to create additional orthogonal or pictorial drawing views using an existing drawing view.

You specify the orientation of the new drawing view using the cursor. For example, to place a new principal view using an existing orthogonal view, first select the source view (A), then position the cursor to the right, left, top, or bottom to place a new orthogonal view (B), or position the cursor diagonally to place a new pictorial view (C).



When you use the Principal View command to place new drawing views, they are aligned with and are placed at the same scale as the source view.

Note

You cannot use the Principal View command to place a new drawing view using a section view, auxiliary view, or detail view as the source view.

Principal view captions

The default principal view caption content and formatting is defined in the drawing view style that is selected on the Principal View command bar when you create the view.

After you place a principal view, you can use the Show Caption options on the Drawing View Selection command bar to show or hide the caption text. You also can modify the caption using the Caption tab (Drawing View Properties dialog box).

You can reposition a caption by selecting the view and then dragging the label to a new location.

To learn more, see the following Help topics:

- Drawing view styles
- Drawing view captions

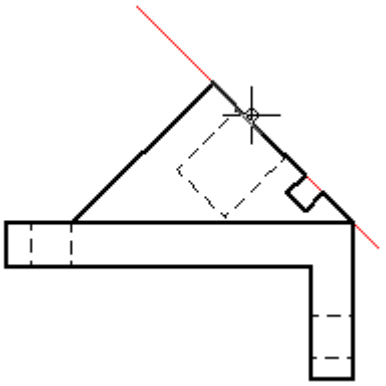
Click here if you have a question or comment.

Auxiliary views

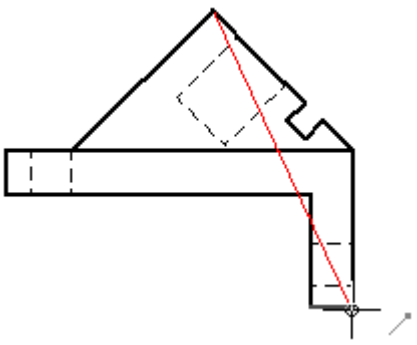
The Auxiliary View command creates a new part view that shows the part rotated 90 degrees about a folding line. The drawing view is created from the axis of this fold line. You can create auxiliary views from principal views and existing auxiliary views.

Defining a folding line

The cursor is displayed as a line that is used to define the folding line. The auxiliary view is created perpendicular to this folding line. To define the folding line, move the cursor across the drawing view to highlight an edge that is perpendicular to the desired auxiliary view.

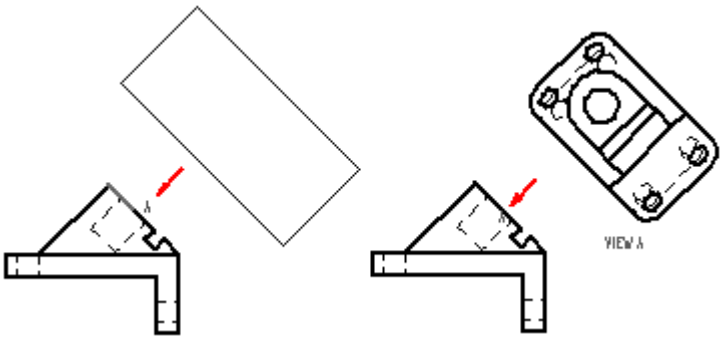


You also can define the folding line for a new auxiliary view by selecting two keypoints using existing drawing view edges. Two points are required when a single, linear element does not exist along the angle of the desired auxiliary view.



Placing the auxiliary view

After defining the folding line, the cursor is displayed as a rectangle that is roughly the size of the auxiliary view. To place the view, move the rectangle on the sheet to position the view, and then click.



Modifying the auxiliary view

After you place the auxiliary view, you can:

- Move the viewing plane line in any direction using Shift+drag.
- Change the viewing plane line type, caption, and style in the Viewing Plane Properties dialog box.

Auxiliary view and viewing plane captions

You can control caption display and formatting separately for the auxiliary view and for the viewing plane line used to create it. In addition to showing and hiding caption text using the Show Caption button on the command bar, you can change the content and formatting of a caption.

- When you select a viewing plane line, you can use the Caption tab (Viewing Plane, Detail Envelope, Cutting Plane Properties dialog box).
- When you select an auxiliary view, you can use the Caption tab (Drawing View Properties dialog box).

You can reposition a caption by selecting the view and then dragging the label to a new location.

The default viewing plane caption content and formatting is defined in the *Drawing View* style that is applied to the auxiliary view. To learn more, see the following Help topics:

- Drawing view styles
- Drawing view captions

Perspective views

Creating perspective drawing views

There are two methods for defining a perspective view to place on a drawing.

- In the model document, you can first add perspective to a window, and then use the View Orientation command to save a new named view with perspective.

  Perspective views created in this manner can be selected from the Named Views list in the Drawing View Creation Wizard (Drawing View Orientation). Look for the view name with *–Perspective* appended to it.

- In a draft document, you can create a perspective drawing view using the Custom Orientation dialog box of the Drawing View Creation Wizard.

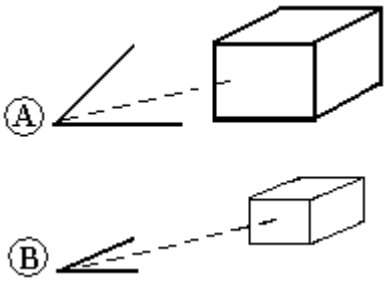
  This method creates an ad hoc perspective view to place on the drawing without opening the model document.

What is perspective?

When perspective is applied to a model view, objects that are farther away appear smaller. This is achieved through perspective angle, which makes perspective views more realistic than isometric views. In isometric views, objects in the model appear uniformly sized no matter how far they are from the viewer.

Example

As the perspective angle increases, the distance to the object decreases, making the object appear closer. The angle in the first picture (A) is wider than the angle in the second (B), so that the first picture appears closer.



There are some limitations to perspective views. You cannot:

- Create a perspective view from a camera point that is inside the model.
- Add dimensions to a perspective view.
- Generate hidden edges.
- Create additional views from a source perspective view.

Defining perspective distance and angle

Perspective is defined by the combination of the perspective angle, zoom distance, and pan. These values define the camera through which the model is viewed.

You can change all of these values in the Custom Orientation dialog box in Draft.

- To change the perspective angle, use the Perspective option. You can choose a predefined angle from the Perspective Angle list, or you can define a custom perspective angle using Shift+Ctrl while rotating the mouse wheel.

- To change the zoom distance, use the Zoom Area or Zoom options.

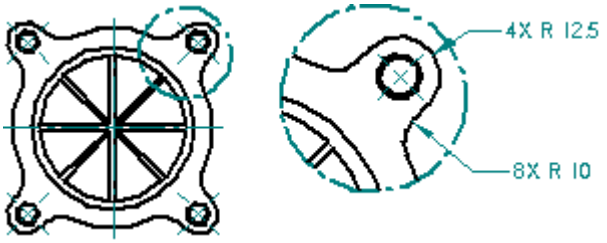
- To focus on one area of the model, use the Pan option to center that part of the model within the window.

  Note

  The Perspective command in the model document quickly adds perspective to, or removes perspective from, the model as it is currently displayed. However, you cannot change the perspective angle with this command.

Detail views

You can use the Detail View command to create an enlarged view of a specific area of an existing drawing view. You can think of a detail view as a magnifying glass focused on a special area within a drawing view.



You can create circular detail views or detail views using a closed profile you draw. You can create dependent detail views that update when the source view changes, and you can create independent detail views that do not reflect changes made in the source drawing view. Similarly, independent detail views allow you to add geometry with the Draw In View command and show or hide edges with Edge Painter without affecting the source view.

Dependent and Independent Detail Views

- Dependent detail views are tied to the source view from which they are created. To change shading, edge display, or other aspects of the dependent detail view, you must make the change in the source view and then update both views.

- Independent detail views can have different display properties than the source drawing view. For example, you can show or hide parts, display hidden lines, add shading, or draw in the independent detail view without affecting the source drawing view.

- Both dependent and independent views can be created from 3D geometry contained in principal views, auxiliary views, other detail views, section views, and broken out section views.

- You can create a dependent detail view–but not an independent one–from a 2D Model view and from a drawing view that has been converted to 2D.

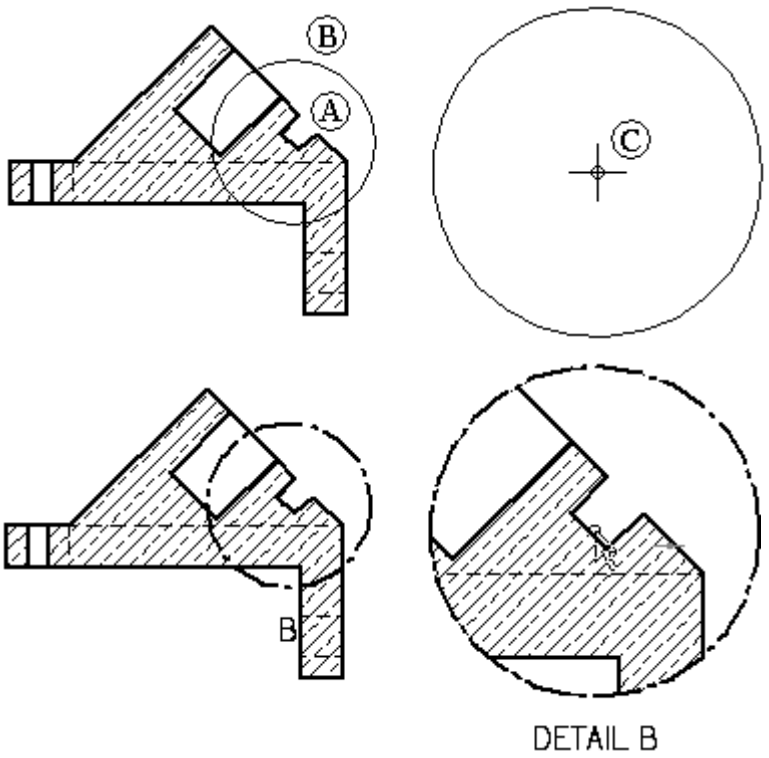
- You can not create detail views from drawing views that are out of date.

Converting dependent detail views

Once created, you can convert a dependent detail view to an independent detail view by selecting the view then selecting the Convert to Independent Detail View command on the shortcut menu. However, you can not convert an independent detail view to a dependent view.

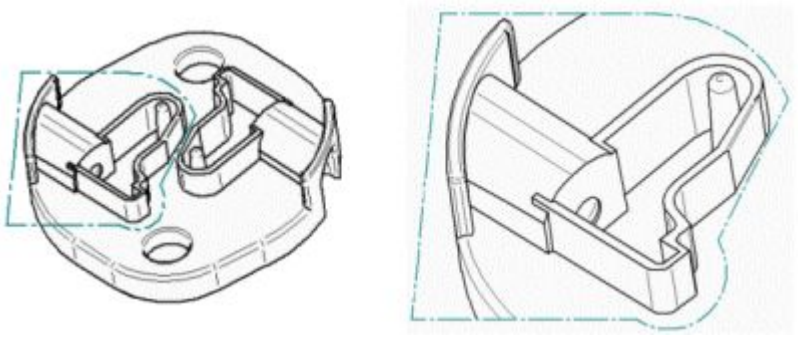
Creating a circular detail view

You define a circular detail view using the Circular Detail View option on the command bar. You can then specify the detail view envelope using three clicks of the mouse. The first click (1) defines the center of the circular area to enlarge on the source view, the second click (2) defines the diameter of the detail view circle, and the third click (3) places the detail view.



Creating a user-defined shape for a detail view

You define a user-defined shape for a detail view using Define Profile option on the command bar. You can then draw a profile the size and shape you want. Any closed profile can be a valid detail envelope.

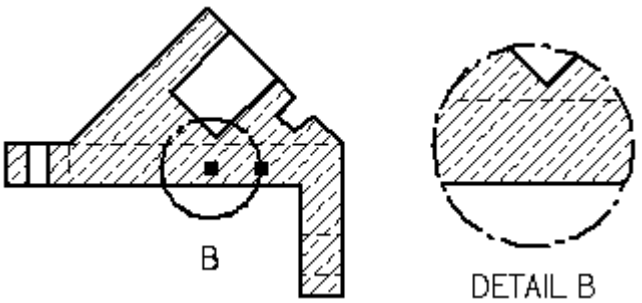


Modifying detail views

Once created, both dependent and independent views can be modified with different results. Dependent detail views are associative to the source view. When you make changes to the geometry in the dependent detail view, the source view changes. Independent detail views do not reference the source view, nor are changes made in the independent view reflected in the source view. Independent detail views can be used to show or hide parts, display hidden lines, add shading, or draw in the view without affecting the source view geometry or view properties.

Drawing view properties

To modify a dependent or independent detail view, use the Select tool and the options on the Drawing View Selection command bar to change drawing view scale, show and hide caption text, or choose a shaded or hidden line display. You also can select the Properties button to open the Drawing View Properties dialog box. The tabs that are available contain properties that you can change, which vary with detail view type.



Detail view and detail envelope captions

You can control caption display and formatting separately for the detail view and for the detail envelope. In addition to showing and hiding caption text using the Show Caption button on the command bar, you can change the content and formatting of a caption.

- When you select a detail envelope, you can use the Caption tab (Viewing Plane, Detail Envelope, Cutting Plane Properties dialog box).
- When you select a detail view, you can use the Caption tab (Drawing View Properties dialog box).

You can reposition a caption by selecting the view and then dragging the label to a new location.

The default detail envelope caption content and formatting is defined in the *Drawing View* style that is applied to the detail view. To learn more, see these Help topics:

- Drawing view styles
- Drawing view captions

Detail view tool tip

If you pause the cursor over a detail view, a tooltip identifies the name of the source geometry file, the file type, and the view type. For example, the full tooltip for an independent detail view of a screw might display: *High Quality View - Independent Detail View - AllenScrewM8.par*. The tooltip text for a dependent detail view is simply *High Quality View - Detail View - AllenScrewM8.par*.

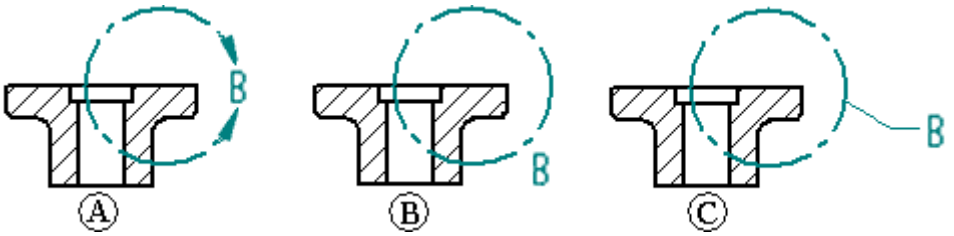
If you don't see these tooltips displayed on the drawing view, set the Show tool tips option on the Helpers tab of the Solid Edge Options dialog box.

Detail view border

You can hide the display of the border of the detail view after you place it. If you select the detail view border, and then select the Properties button on the command bar, you can clear the Show Detail View Border option in the Drawing View Properties dialog box.

Detail envelope

The detail envelope drawn on the source view in the shape of a circle or user-defined profile defines the cropping boundary of the detail view. You can use the Drawing Standards tab on the Solid Edge Options dialog box to set the display standards for the detail envelope. For example, you can specify that the detail envelope display conforms to (A) ANSI, (B) ISO/DIN/JIS, or (C) ESKD standards.



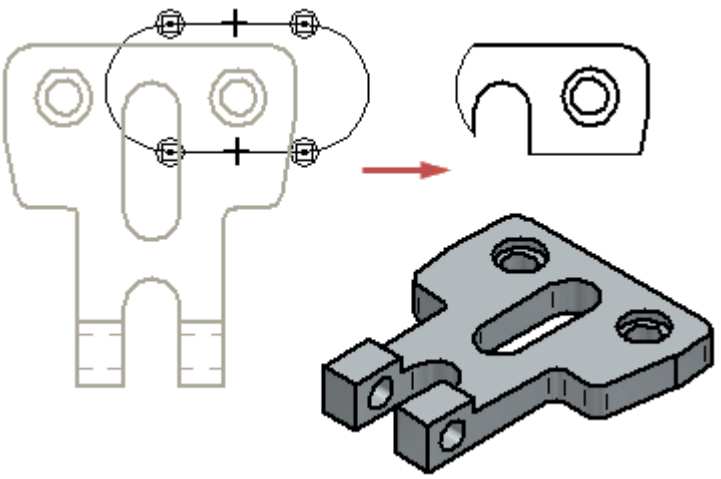
You can drag a detail envelope to change its location. However, if the detail envelope is partially or fully constrained, the detail envelope will behave according to the rules of its constraints.

You can modify the detail envelope by selecting it in the original view, and then selecting Define Profile on the command bar. You can drag the detail envelope profile handles to change the size of the detail envelope. Dependent detail views on the drawing are updated when you change the size, shape, or location of the detail envelope on the source view.

If you delete the detail envelope on the source view, the detail view is also deleted.

Displaying cropping edges

You can use the Display Cropping Edges option on the Annotation page of the Detail View Properties dialog box to specify whether edges are displayed where the drawing view boundary intersects the model. Edges are not generated where the boundary passes over holes or voids in the model.



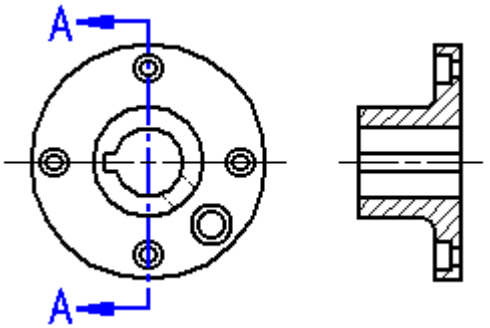
When you change this option on an existing drawing view, the drawing view becomes out of date. You can update the drawing view using the Update Views command.

Section views

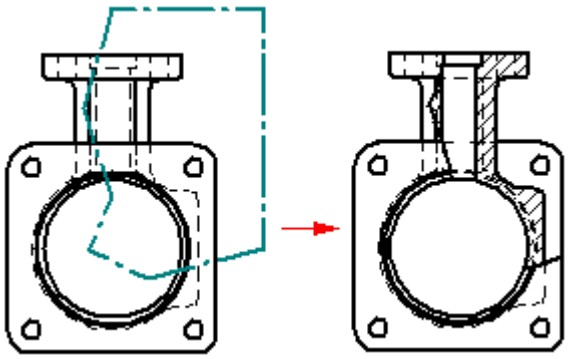
After you create a part view, you can use it to create a section view. A section view displays a cross section of the 3D part or assembly model. Sectioned areas are automatically filled.

You can create section views with the Section View command and the Broken-Out command.

Before you can create a section view with the Section View command, you must create a cutting plane on the part view you want to use as the basis for the section view using the Cutting Plane command.



You can use the Broken-Out command to create a broken-out section view of internal regions to a depth you define. This allows you to expose interior features of a part so you can document them. With the Broken-Out command you draw the profile within the command.



Selecting a part view

When you click the Cutting Plane button you are prompted to select a part view. This can be any orthographic, auxiliary, or detail view on the drawing. Click on the view geometry to select it.

Auxiliary views often show the part at the optimal orientation for making the section cut. A detail view can be useful for creating sections due to its scale.

Sections created from detail views inherit the same scale as the detail view.

Drawing a cutting plane

You draw a cutting plane using many of the drawing tools you find elsewhere in Solid Edge. When you click the Cutting Plane button and then select a part view, the command ribbon updates and displays commands for drawing a cutting plane.

A cutting plane can consist of a single line or multiple elements, such as lines and arcs. If you draw a cutting plane that consists of more than one element, the cutting plane must meet the following requirements:

- The elements must meet at their end points.
- The elements cannot form a closed region or have loops.
- The elements cannot cross each other.
- Any arcs in the cutting plane cannot be the first or last element.
- Any arcs must be connected to a line at both ends of the arc.

If you draw a cutting plane on a detail view so that it extends beyond the cropping boundary, then the geometry outside the detail view, to the extent of the cutting plane, will be included in the section view. If you draw the cutting plane so that it is completely contained within the detail view, then only that geometry will be included in the section view.

You can add dimensions and relationships between the cutting plane and the part view to control the position, size, and orientation of the cutting plane.

When you have finished drawing the cutting plane, click the Close button on the home tab. You can then dynamically define the cutting plane view direction by clicking on one side of the view to be sectioned. If you need to change the view direction, you can use the cursor to drag the cutting plane view direction lines to the opposite side of the cutting plane.

You can edit the cutting plane by double-clicking it, or right-click the cutting plane and select Properties on the shortcut menu.

Placing the section view

When you select the Section View command, you are prompted to select a cutting plane. After you select the cutting plane, a rectangle the size of the section view you are going to place is displayed on the cursor. Also, options on the command bar are activated that allow you to specify the type of section view you want to create. When you position the view and click, the section view is created so that it is aligned with the cutting plane.

> **Note**
>
> The view direction of the section view is defined by the cutting plane. The side on which you place the view, relative to the cutting plane, has no effect on view direction.

Displaying the cutting plane

After a cutting plane is created, you can control the display of cutting plane lines by selecting the cutting plane annotation and then using the options on the Cutting Plane Selection command bar and in the Cutting Plane Properties dialog box.

After a section view is placed, you can control the display of the cutting plane graphics using the following check box on the General tab (Drawing View Properties dialog box):

Show view annotation (Cutting Plane, Detail Envelope, Viewing Plane)

You also can hide the cutting plane by moving the cutting plane element to its own layer, and then hiding the layer. To learn how to do this, see the Help topic, Hide a cutting plane.

You can control the display of edges resulting from cutting plane lines created with multiple line segments using the Advanced Edge Display Options dialog box or in the Drawing View Properties dialog box. To learn how, see Show or hide cutting plane lines in section views.

Section view and cutting plane captions

You can control caption display and formatting separately for the section view and for the cutting plane. In addition to showing and hiding caption text using the Show Caption button on the command bar, you can change the content and formatting of a caption.

- When you select a cutting plane, you can use the Caption tab (Viewing Plane, Detail Envelope, Cutting Plane Properties dialog box).

- When you select a section view, you can use the Caption tab (Drawing View Properties dialog box).

You can reposition a caption by selecting the view and then dragging the label to a new location.

The default content and appearance of section view captions, cutting plane captions, and cutting plane lines are defined in the *Drawing View* style that is applied to the view. You can set these options in your custom draft templates to make it easier to create cutting plane and view plane annotations that automatically conform to your standards. To learn more, see these Help topics:

- Drawing view styles

- Drawing view captions

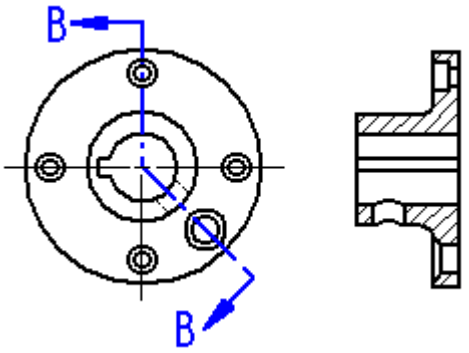
Formatting fill and hatch patterns in section views

When you place a section view, you can select a fill style to define the pattern displayed in the sectioned areas of the part. You can also specify the spacing and angle of the fill area when you place the section view. If you want more control over the properties of the fill pattern, you can create a new hatch style, then use the hatch style to define a new fill style. Hatch styles allow you to define color, line width, spacing, and angle properties to apply to a pattern.

You can control hatching on cut faces and cut ribs in a section view. See Modifying section views, below, to learn about these options.

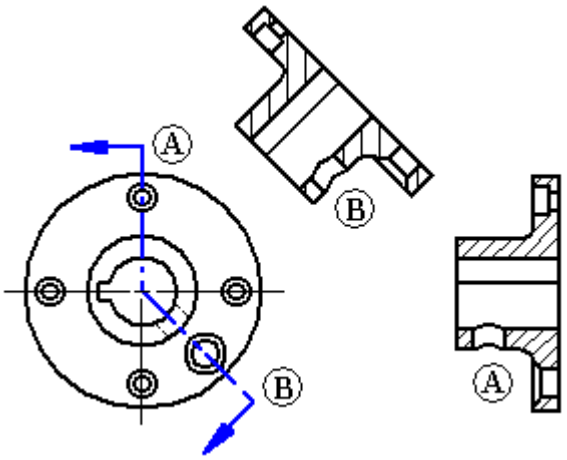
Revolved section views

On certain types of parts you can create a revolved section view to more accurately view the features on the part. To create a revolved section view, select a cutting plane consisting of two or more lines, then set the Revolved Section View option on the command bar. The Revolved Section View option is only available when you create a section view. You cannot change this option when you modify an existing section view.



Multiple segment cutting planes

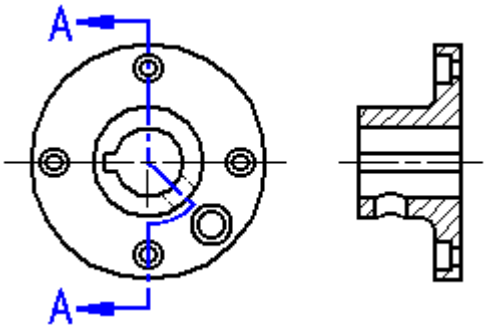
If the cutting plane is defined by multiple lines that are not orthogonal, or the first and last lines in the cutting plane are not parallel, you must specify whether the first line (A) or last line (B) in the cutting plane will be used to define the fold angle for the section view rotation. The line you select affects the placement angle of the section view.



Arcs in cutting planes

You can also include arcs in cutting planes. If an arc is included in the cutting plane, it must be connected to a line at both ends. You cannot begin or end a cutting plane with an arc. Also, when you create a section view from a cutting plane that includes an arc, the Revolved Section View option on the command bar is automatically set and cannot be cleared.

Arcs are ignored for sectioning and view creation. Rather, they serve to carry the cutting plane line from one area of the model to another.

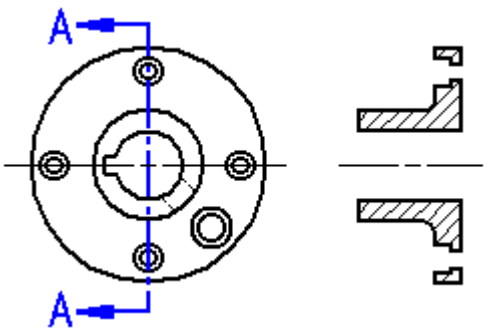


Note

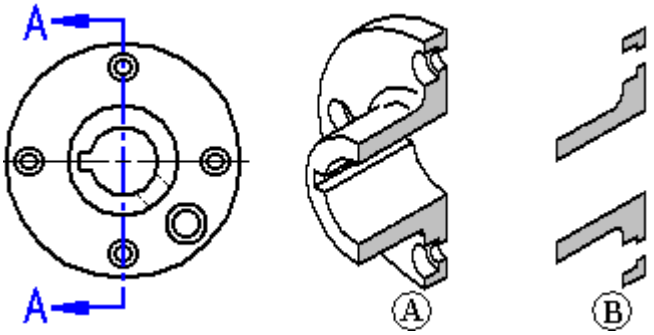
You cannot create additional section views from a section view that was generated from a cutting plane that includes an arc.

Section-only (thin-section or paper thin) views

To create a section view that does not include the geometry behind it, use the Section Only button on the command bar. This option creates a section view where only the thin slice of geometry that intersects the cutting plane is displayed. The geometry that is beyond the cutting plane is not processed or displayed. For example, you can create a section view of a part in which the keyway feature is not displayed.

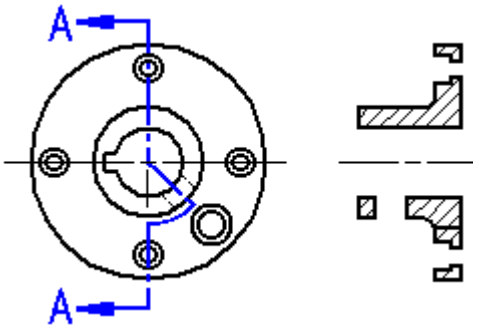


To further illustrate this, if you were to rotate a typical section view and a Section Only section view, you would see half of the part with a typical section view (A), but only a thin slice of the part with a Section Only section view (B).



This option is useful when creating sections of complex parts and assemblies where displaying the geometry behind the cutting plane would be confusing or unnecessary. Section views placed with the Section Only option also process faster than standard section views.

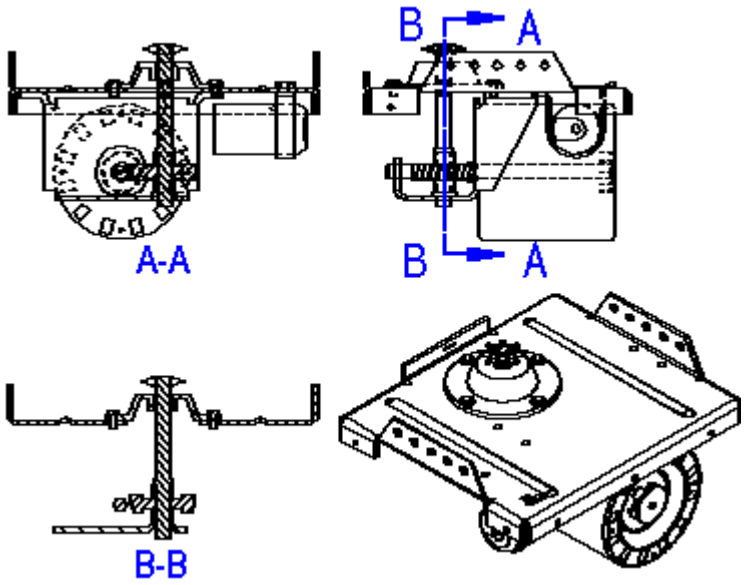
You can also create a revolved section view using the Section Only option.



To learn how, see Create a thin section view.

Thin section views of assemblies

When working with a large or complex assembly, the processing time improvement with the Section Only option can be significant because fewer parts are processed. For example, in Section A-A below, all the parts beyond the cutting plane must be processed in a standard section view, but when you set the Section Only option for Section B-B, only the parts that are intersected by the cutting plane line are processed.

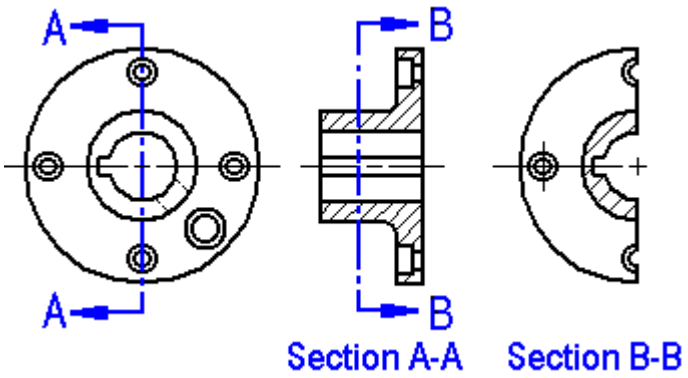


Note

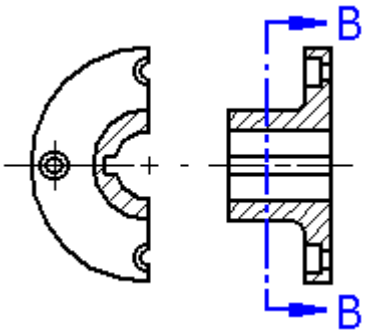
You cannot create additional section views from a Section Only section view.

Creating a section view from an existing section view

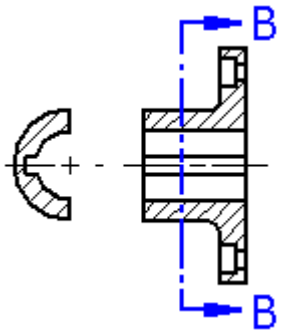
You can also create a new section view from an existing section view.



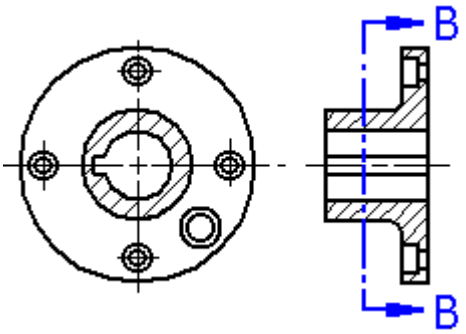
When you create a new section view from an existing section view, you can use the Section Only and Section Full Model options on the command bar to control the appearance of the new section view. For example, when you create the new section view B-B using Section A-A as the source view, there are four output options:



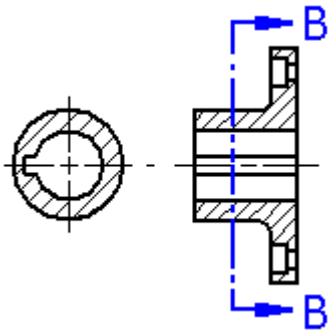
The Section Only and Section Full Model options are cleared



The Section Only option is set



The Section Full Model option is set



The Section Only and Section Full Model options are set

The Section Only and Section Full Model options are only available when you create a section view. You cannot change these options when you modify an existing section view.

Section views in assembly drawings

For assemblies, you can specify which parts you want to section by using the Model Display Settings button on the Section View command bar. After the section view is created, you can change these settings by editing the properties of the section view.

The fill angle you specify for the section view is rotated 90 degrees for each sectioned part. After the section view is created, you can edit the fill and apply different styles and overrides.

Modifying section views

Placement and alignment

You can modify the placement and alignment of the section view directly on the drawing sheet. To modify the section view's position, click and drag the view.

Hatching on cut faces

Hatching on partially visible cut faces is controlled by the Process Partially Hidden Cut Faces setting on the Advanced tab of the Drawing View Properties dialog. When you set this option and update the section view, any hatching on partially visible hidden cut faces is reprocessed. This can eliminate the need to remove excess hatching using the Draw in View function.

Hatching on cut ribs

You can use the Show rib hatching in sections option on the Advanced tab (Drawing View Property dialog box) to specify whether the ribs and rib-like features created with the Rib, Mounting Boss, Web Network, or Pattern commands are cut and hatched or not hatched.

When you choose the no hatching option, then you also can use the Override Rib Hatching dialog box to selectively identify individual ribs for display using the hatch style. See the Help topic, Set rib hatching in section views.

Many drawing standards call for cut ribs not to display with hatching in section views. You can set a file preference to honor this on the Drawing Standards tab (Solid Edge Options dialog box).

Simplifying the section drawing view

You can simplify a section or broken-out section drawing view so that the area exposed by the cutting plane is easier to see. Use the Set Drawing View Display Depth command on the drawing view's shortcut menu to set the visible display depth beyond which all model geometry will be removed by a back clipping plane.

Showing cut and uncut hardware

You can use the Cut hardware check box on the Display tab (Drawing View Properties dialog box) to specify whether hardware parts—such as nuts, bolts, and washers—are cut when intersected by the cutting plane in section views.

Displaying thread graphics

When the cut is along the axis of a hole shown in a paper-thin section drawing view, you can use the Show threads in Section Only section views option on the Annotation tab (Drawing View Properties dialog box) to display hole threads.

Note

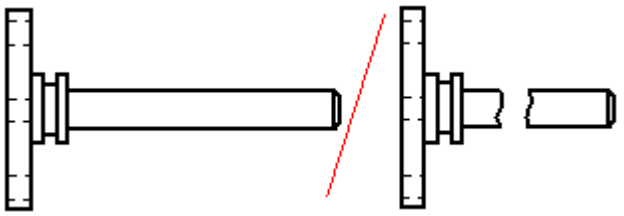
You can create internal threaded holes in the model when you use the Hole command and set the Type to Threaded on the Hole Options dialog box.

To learn about creating threaded holes in the model, see Threaded features.

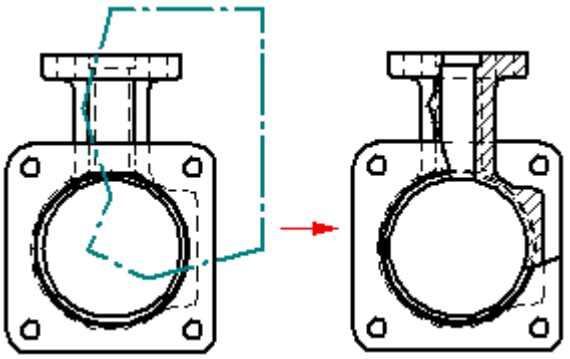
Broken views

You can create broken views in the Draft environment using the Add Break Lines command and the Broken-Out command.

You can use the Add Break Lines command on the drawing view shortcut menu to define regions you want to completely remove in a part view. This allows you to create a broken view of a long, slender part so you can display it at a larger scale.



You can use the Broken-Out command to create a broken-out section view. This exposes interior features of a part so you can document them.



Draft quality and high quality views

Views fall into two general categories: draft quality and high quality.

For assembly models, which typically are larger and more complex than part or sheet metal models, you can generate either a draft quality or a high quality view. Draft quality views usually require less processing time than high quality views, and only visible lines are created.

For part and sheet metal models, you can only generate high quality views. High quality views are the default representations of the model.

You specify whether to create a draft quality view or a high quality view, as well as other view options, in the Drawing View Wizard.

View generation options

The view generation options displayed by the Drawing View Wizard depend upon the source model file type: .asm, .par, or .psm. Once the view is generated, you can make additional modifications using the tabbed Drawing View Properties dialog box.

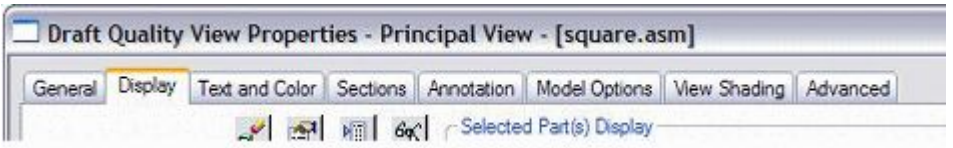
Some of the drawing view generation and display options include:

- Whether the view is a draft quality or high quality drawing view.
- Whether the assembly model and/or its parts will be generated as simplified graphics.
- Whether part or sheet metal model graphics are displayed As Designed, Simplified, or Flat Pattern.
- Whether hidden and tangent lines will be visible in orthographic and/or pictorial views.
- Whether tube center lines, if present, are generated.
- Whether to show material-removed or material-added assembly features, such as cutouts, holes, and chamfers, or weldments and protrusions.

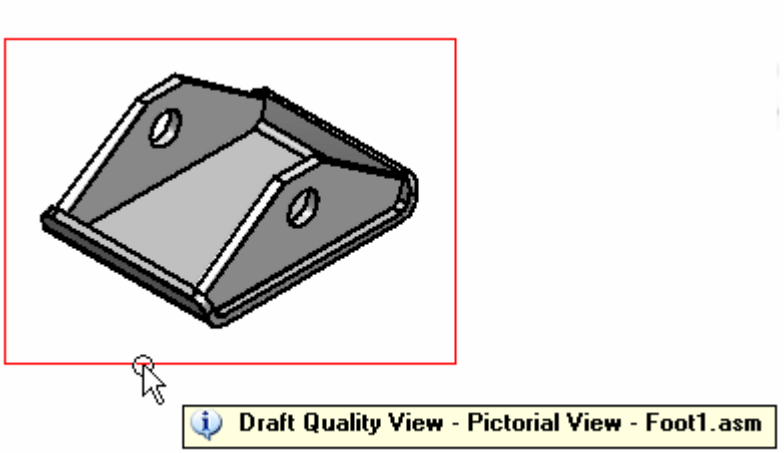
Identifying views on a drawing

If you are looking at a drawing and want information about a particular view on the drawing sheet, there are two quick ways to get it:

- You can right-click the view and select the Properties command to display the Drawing View Properties dialog box. Here, the dialog box title bar displays information about the drawing view.



- You can use the tool tip feature. To see how this works, click the Select Tool, and then place the cursor on the drawing view border and leave it there. A tool tip identifies the view quality, the view type, and the name of the source model document. For example, the full tool tip for an independent detail view of a screw might display: "High Quality View - Independent Detail View - AllenScrewM8.par." The tool tip for a draft quality drawing view is shown in this illustration.



If you do not see tool tips displayed on the drawing view, set both of these options on the Tools® Options® Helpers tab: Show Tool Tips and With Enhanced Text.

Draft quality views

Available for assembly models only, a draft quality view is a quickly generated line rendering for display and annotation in the Draft environment. Only visible edges are created. Typically, draft quality views are used to produce interim design drawings and to provide a pictorial illustration of a ballooned parts list.

Draft quality views are particularly useful when working with very large assemblies, as the time it takes to generate the view is reduced. However, when you zoom in on a draft quality view created from a large assembly, you may notice that it displays at a lower resolution.

Creating draft quality views

To create a draft quality drawing view, set the Create Draft Quality Views option on the Assembly Drawing View Options dialog box of the Drawing View Wizard.

Using draft quality views

You can use draft quality views as input for principal views, auxiliary views, cutting planes, section views, and broken-out section views.

Adding Annotations–You can add annotations such as balloons to draft quality views and create parts lists from them. You can also place elements that connect to a drawing view with a leader, such as callouts and weld symbols. For these types of annotation operations, you can use inactive parts.

Adding Dimensions–Because dimension values are generated from the 3D model, you first need to use the Activate Parts command to make the model part data available for dimensioning.

Final Drawing Production–Although draft quality views can be shown in shaded and wireframe formats, only visible lines are generated. To achieve the best appearance for final drawing production, you may want to convert the draft quality view to a high quality format. To do this, use the Convert to High Quality View command on the selected drawing view's shortcut menu.

High quality views

A high quality view is a drawing view that provides an accurate representation of the model because it is generated from Parasolid objects. High quality views may be used for precise operations, such as dimensioning, and for final drawing production.

Creating high quality views

The default settings on the Drawing View Wizard generate a high quality drawing view for assembly, part, and sheet metal models. You can start the Drawing View Wizard using the File® Create Drawing command or by selecting the Drawing View Wizard command button.

Converting draft quality to high quality views

To convert a draft quality view to a high quality view, use the Convert to High Quality View command on the selected drawing view's shortcut menu.

Drawing view manipulation

After you place a drawing view, you can manipulate it to ensure that information is presented the way you want. You also can lock a drawing view to prevent it from being manipulated accidentally.

Scaling drawing views

You can scale a drawing view with the Properties option when a drawing view is selected.

A part view shares the same scale as the part view used to create it. If you scale an aligned part view, all part views aligned with it are also scaled. If you want to scale one aligned part view without affecting the others, you must first clear the Maintain Alignment option on the shortcut menu when a drawing view is selected.

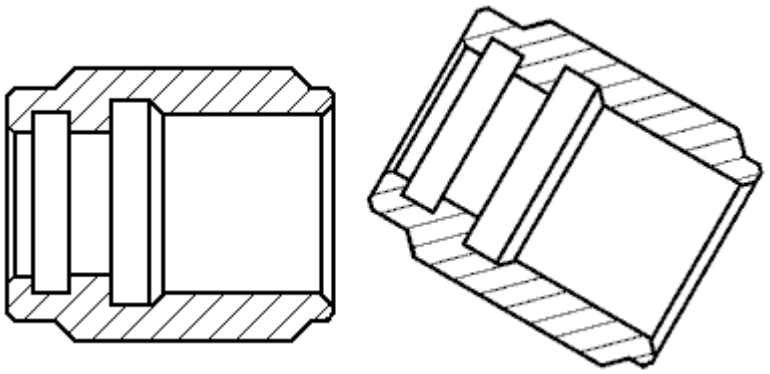
Repositioning views

You can manipulate the view positions on the drawing sheet to better organize it.

- You can move a drawing view anywhere on a drawing sheet using click+drag.
- In a multi-sheet drawing, you can move a drawing view to a different sheet by changing the Sheet number that the drawing view is assigned to on the General tab (Drawing View Properties dialog box).

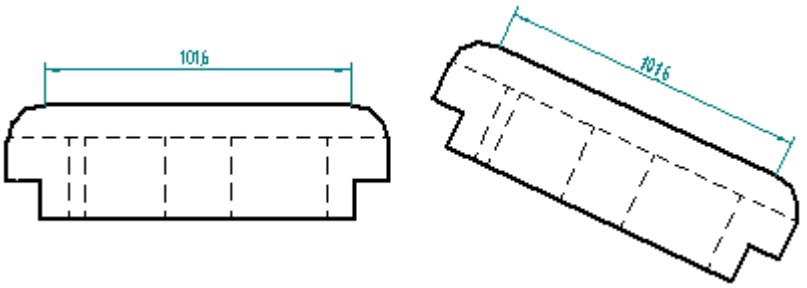
Rotating drawing views

You can rotate a drawing view with the Rotate command.



When you rotate a view, it becomes unaligned. You can use the Maintain Alignment command to restore the view to its original orientation.

Dimensions on the drawing view rotate with the view. Dimensions that use the horizontal and vertical dimension axis of the sheet are modified to use the horizontal and vertical axis of the rotated drawing view coordinate system.



You cannot perform folding, cropping, or broken view operations on rotated views and you cannot derive section or auxiliary views from a rotated view. The rotated view cannot be used as input for the Principal Views, Cutting Plane, or Auxiliary View commands.

Shading drawing views

You can shade a drawing view using the Shading and Color tab of the Drawing View Properties dialog box. You can control texture display, reflection display, and flat shading, as well as specify whether assembly override and part face colors display in the drawing view.

You can also control basic shading (color or grayscale, as well as edge display) with these command buttons, which are located on the Drawing View Selection command bar, the Auxiliary View command bar, the Section View command bar, and the Principal View command bar.

Adding graphics to the view

You can add 2D graphical elements to part views, draft views, and 2D views using the Draw In View command on the selected view's shortcut menu.

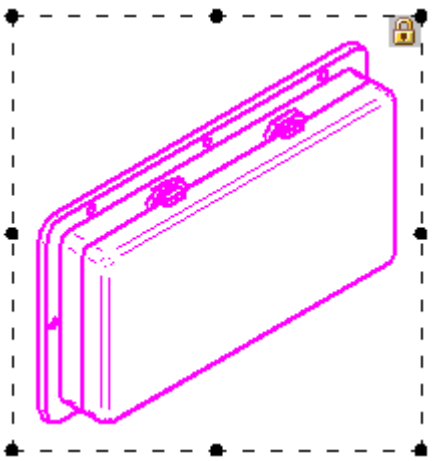
When the Draw In View window opens, choose any of the standard drawing tools to add line graphics, such as rectangles, arcs, circles, or ellipses, or add external images and pictures using the Image command on the Sketching tab.

Locking a drawing view

To prevent accidental movement of a drawing view, you can use the Lock drawing view position option that is available:

- As a check box on the General tab (Drawing View Properties dialog box), when you edit the drawing view properties.
- As a Lock button on the Drawing View Selection command bar, when you select the drawing view border.

A locked drawing view is indicated by the lock symbol displayed within the drawing view border when it is highlighted.



Locked drawing views still can be manipulated. For example, locking a drawing view does not prevent:

- Indirect movement of the locked drawing view by the Create Alignment or Maintain Alignment command.
- Explicit movement using the Move command or by changing the Sheet number.
- Copying and pasting, or deleting the drawing view. (You can use the Undo command to reverse these operations.)
- Dragging a drawing view derived from the locked view.
- Rotating a locked drawing view.

Drawing view alignment

Drawing view alignment ensures that when a source drawing view, or any of the views created from it, is moved or scaled, that the position of all related views is adjusted to maintain a horizontal/vertical or parallel/perpendicular relationship with the manipulated view. The view alignment relationship is indicated by a dashed line.

New principal, auxiliary, and section drawing views are automatically aligned to the source part view used to create them. However, when views are created from the 2D model space, you need to create and define their alignment position.

Creating and Deleting View Alignment

You can use the Create Alignment command on the shortcut menu to create alignment between drawing views based on the centers of the views or on selected keypoints within them. You can use the Delete Alignment command to delete an alignment you have created when it is no longer needed.

Unaligned Views

There may be times you want a view to be unaligned temporarily, for example:

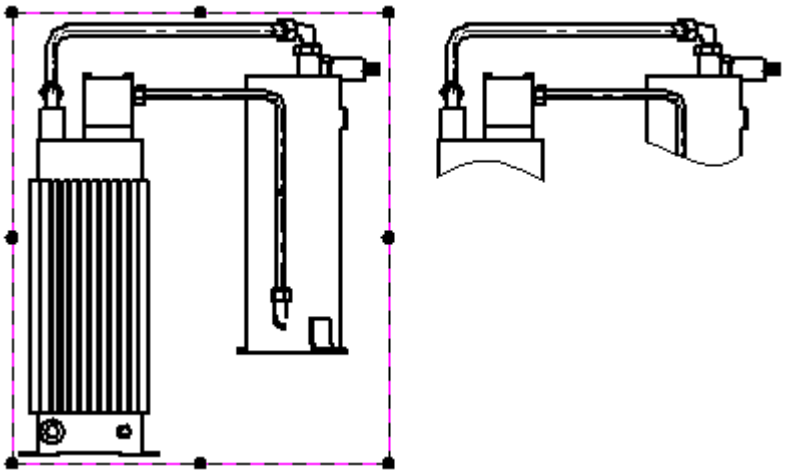
- To scale a view independently of other views
- To move the view to another sheet.

Unaligned views are noted by a jog indicator.

If you need to move a drawing view to another sheet or scale the view, you can toggle the alignment relationship off with the Maintain Alignment command on the shortcut menu. After you move or scale the part view, you can again click Maintain Alignment on the shortcut menu to re-establish the alignment constraint.

Drawing view cropping

If you want to show only part of a drawing view, you can crop the drawing view. Cropping does not change the drawing view scale. Rather, it limits the portion of the view that is displayed on the drawing sheet.



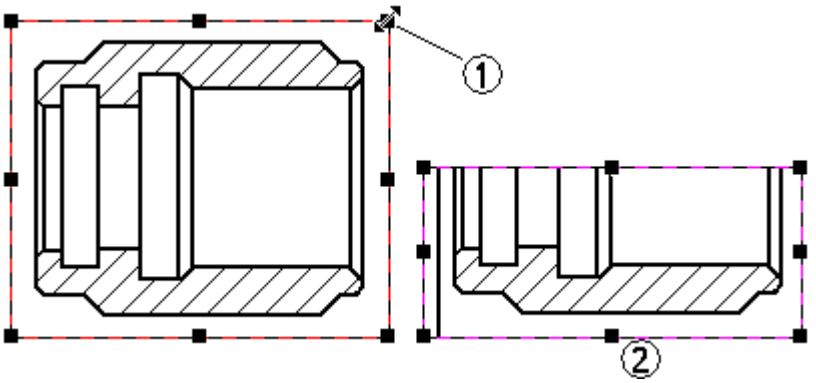
You can crop any type of drawing view except a detail view. After you create a cropped view, you can specify whether cropping edges are displayed and what edge style is used.

There are two types of cropping boundaries you can define:

- A rectangular cropping boundary.
- A custom cropping boundary.

Rectangular cropping boundary

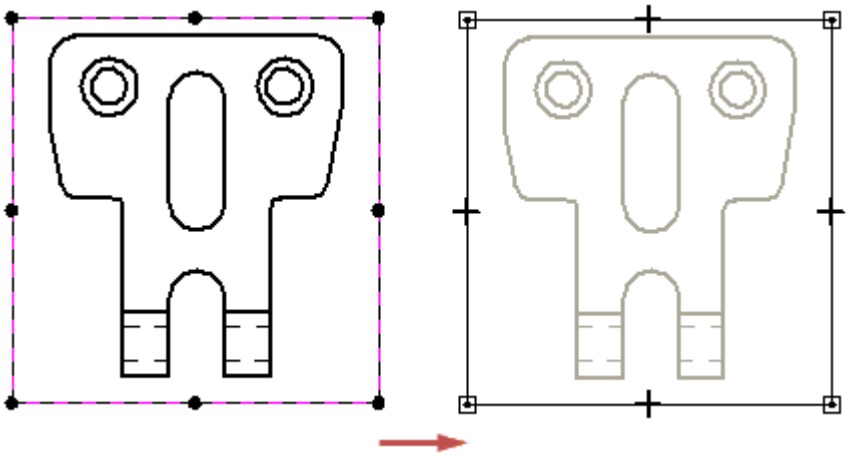
To crop a drawing view by resizing the original cropping boundary, first select it to display its border. Then drag one of the border's handles (1) until only the geometry you want to see is visible (2).



Custom cropping boundary

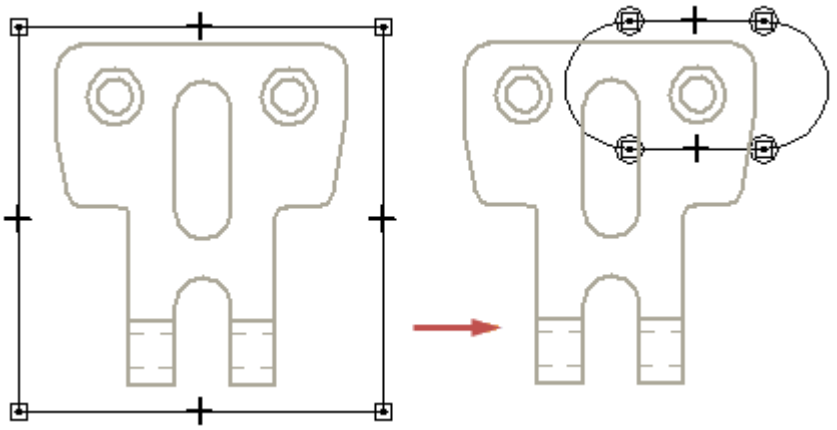
You can use the Modify Drawing View Boundary option on the Drawing View Selection command bar to draw a non-rectangular cropping boundary.

When you click the Modify Drawing View Boundary button on the command bar, the drawing view is displayed in a special cropping window. The rectangular boundary is converted to four endpoint connected line segments.



You can use the 2D drawing tools to redraw the view cropping border. You can use any combination of lines, arcs, and curves to define the cropping boundary profile. However, the new cropping boundary profile must be closed. To use a portion of the existing rectangular boundary in the custom profile, draw 2D elements that connect to the existing line segments. Use the Trim command to remove the unneeded line segments.

To draw a new boundary profile, delete all the existing line segments and then draw the new boundary using the 2D drawing tools.



When you have finished drawing the custom boundary, you can click the Close Cropping Boundary button on the Home tab to exit the cropping window.

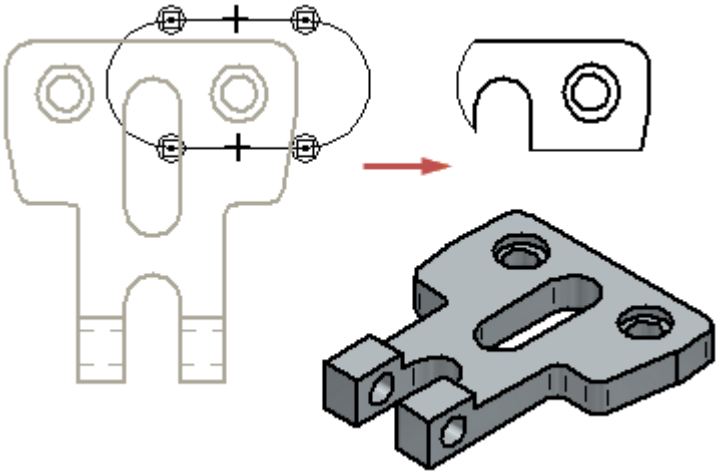
For more information, see Help topic: Example: Modify a drawing view cropping boundary.

Displaying cropping edges

When you crop a drawing view, you can use the Show boundary edges check box on the Annotation page (Drawing View Properties dialog box) to specify whether edges are displayed where the drawing view boundary intersects the model.

- When the check box is selected, the cropping boundary is displayed using a thin-line style. You can set the style using the Boundary edges style list.
- When the check box is deselected, no cropping boundary edges are displayed.

Edges are not generated where the boundary passes over holes or voids in the model.



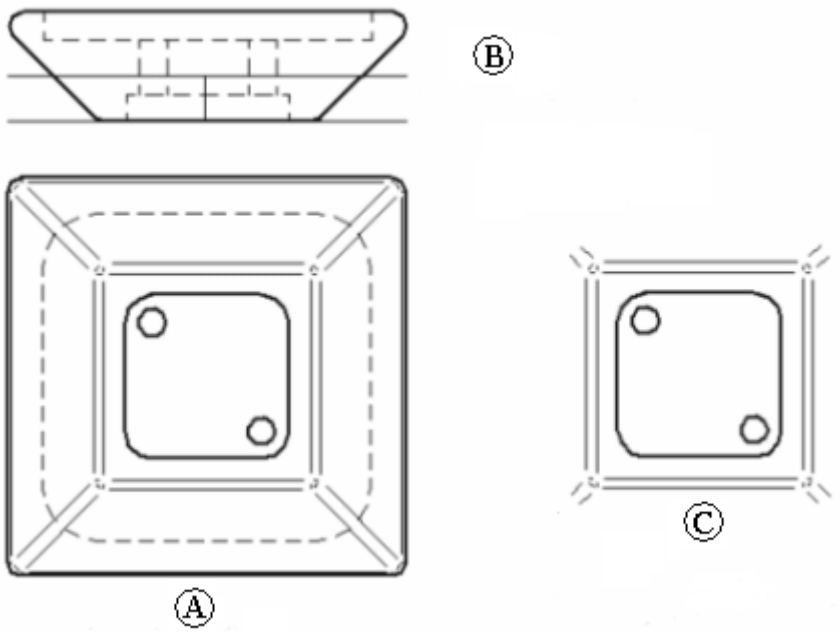
Uncropping a drawing view

You can return a cropped drawing view to its original display using the Uncrop command on the shortcut menu.

Removing Geometry from a View

By specifying a drawing view display depth for a back clipping plane, you can simplify any type of drawing view so that geometry behind the plane is removed from the view. This feature can be used, for example, to reduce the visible clutter behind a section view or a broken-out section view.

In this illustration, the hashed line in (A) indicates where the back clipping plane will be applied to the original drawing view display. The orthographic view (B) shows the dynamic line tool used to define the display depth and the location of the back clipping plane. The result (C) shows how the drawing view geometry in front of the plane was trimmed and the geometry completely behind the plane was removed.



A drawing view display depth and clipping plane can be defined for any type of view: orthographic, pictorial, section, auxiliary, and detail views. Dimensions and annotations that are attached to edges removed by the drawing view clipping plane are detached, also.

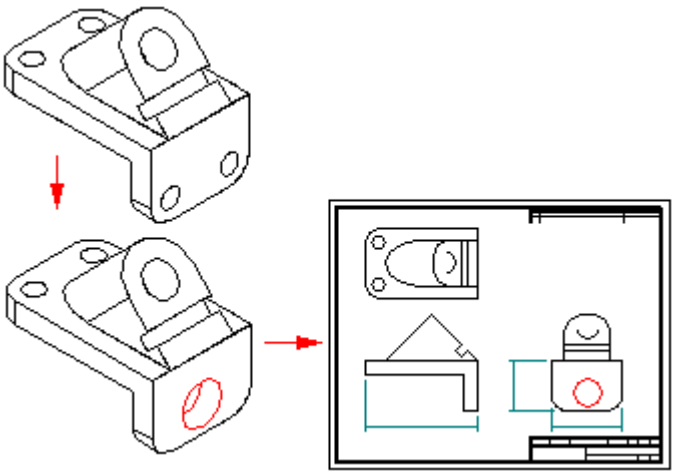
The Set Drawing View Depth command specifies a visible display depth for the drawing view, and then it applies a back clipping plane. Geometry behind the plane is removed from the drawing view when you update the view.

To adjust the location of the back clipping plane so that more or less geometry is visible, select the Set Drawing View Depth command again and then specify a different depth value.

To remove the drawing view clipping plane and restore the drawing view to its original display depth, use the Remove Defined Depth command from the drawing view's shortcut menu and then update the view.

Drawing view updates

When you change parts and assemblies depicted in part views, you can easily update the views so they match the new model geometry. This works because part views are associative to the 3D part or assembly they were created from. For example, if you add a hole to a 3D part in the Part environment and then update the part view in the Draft environment, the hole geometry is added to the 2D drawing.



When a drawing view is out-of-date with respect to the 3D model, the software displays a solid border or box around it on the drawing sheet. To update the drawing view display as well as the retrieved dimensions, use the Update Views command.

Tools for checking drawing view out-of-date status

There are several tools that work together to identify drawing view out-of-date status conditions.

- **Drawing View Tracker**

  The Drawing View Tracker checks for both out-of-date geometry in part views and out-of-date model status in the document and provides specific instructions for what to do to update them. When you open a document with out-of-date part views, Drawing View Tracker displays a warning that the views need to be updated before dimensioning.

- **Assembly Configuration Changes Make Drawing Views Out-of-Date In This Draft File option**

  This option (on the General page of the Solid Edge Options dialog box) is an automatic check for display configuration changes for all assembly views in the draft document that have the Configuration Match option enabled. Display configurations store both the show/hide and the simplified/designed status of the parts in the assembly. When this option is set, changes to an assembly configuration associated with a drawing view will make the view out-of-date. All drawing views in the document are checked automatically.

- **Configuration Check**

  This option (on the Display page of the Properties dialog box for a selected drawing view) is a manual check for display configuration changes for the assembly shown in the currently selected drawing view.

- **Configuration Match**

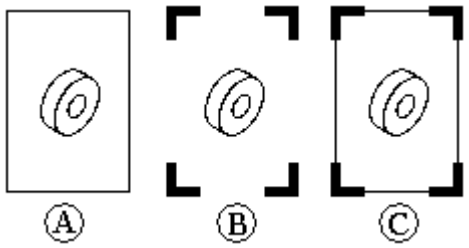
  This option (on the Display page of the Properties dialog box for a selected drawing view) controls whether show/hide part settings in the drawing view match the show/hide settings within the assembly configuration. Views without this option set will not be out-of-date after changes are made to an assembly display configuration.

Using the Drawing View Tracker

The Drawing View Tracker provides specific information on updating both out-of-date part views and out-of-date models. While a view becomes out-of-date when the 3D model to which it is associative changes, a model becomes out-of-date when links external to the Draft environment change. Out-of-date model causes may include, but are not limited to:

- A part file modified outside the context of its parent assembly file
- Broken internal links in a part file

Out-of-date model conditions cannot be resolved inside the Draft environment. Because different circumstances can cause an out-of-date model condition, the Drawing View Tracker provides step-by-step instructions for updating out-of-date models in the current document. Solid Edge displays a solid border around an out-of-date view (A), a corner border around an out-of-date model (B), and both a solid border and a corner border when both out-of-date view and out-of-date model conditions apply (C).



Correcting an out-of-date model condition usually causes an out-of-date view condition.

Failed dimensions after updating part views

When you update a part view, a dimension may fail to update because the edge it referred to is no longer displayed in the part view. For example, if you deleted a hole feature in the part model, the edge representing the hole will be removed from the part view when you update it.

When a dimension fails to update, it changes to the "failed" or detached color. The color change helps you detect failed dimensions easily, so you can edit the drawing. All failed dimensions for a part view form a single selection set, in case you want to delete them all at once.

Reattaching dimensions

Sometimes you may want to reattach failed dimensions in a drawing. For example, if you delete one of several holes that comprise a single hole feature on a part, and

the edge representing the hole was dimensioned on the drawing, the dimension will fail. Instead of deleting the dimension and placing a new dimension, you can drag and drop the dimension line handle point to one of the remaining hole edges on the part view. This saves time because any prefixes, tolerances, and other formatting on the failed dimension are applied to the new dimension. You can also drag and drop the dimension line handle point(s) to different parent object(s), even if they have not failed.

Tracking changed dimensions and annotations

Wherever possible, Solid Edge attempts to rebind dimensions and annotations that were detached after a drawing view update.

All changed dimensions and annotations, whether they have been repaired or not, are reported in the Dimension Tracker dialog box. To activate this dialog box, select the Tools® Dimensions® Track Dimension Changes command.

To learn more, see Tracking dimensions and annotations.

Drawing properties

Drawing property text

Drawing property text is text that is associative to properties in the current draft, part, or assembly file, as well as properties in models attached to the current file. Property text is variable text that is referenced and maintained without manual editing. For example, you can use property text to display a file's name and last modification date, and this information will change when you save the file or select the Update Property Text command.

You can create or edit property text while creating or editing callouts, balloons, and parts lists. To add property text, use the Property Text button on the respective dialog boxes or command bars:

In some cases, you may want to change property text to plain text that is not associative to the drawing. To convert a specific drawing property text, first select the text in the drawing, then use the Convert Property Text command on the shortcut menu.

To convert all drawing property text to plain text at once, use the Tools-Convert All Property Text command.

Drawing View Properties

Drawing view properties define every display aspect of a drawing view or a 2D Model view. They are set and modified on the Drawing View Properties dialog box. This multi-tabbed dialog box displays options that vary with the type of view you are creating or modifying and whether it is a high quality view or a draft view.

- General tab—Defines the drawing view name, scale, and display characteristics. Not all options are available for all view types.

- Display tab—Defines the part display, edge display overrides, and section view options of part views. This tab is not available when you select a 2D view.

- Text and Color tab—Defines the caption text options and dimension style for the drawing view or the detail envelope.

- Sections tab—Displays a list of the 3D sectioned cutaway views available for the drawing view. This tab is available if the drawing view is a high quality drawing view.

- Part Edge Display Defaults - Defines edge display defaults for part views. These defaults are initially derived from the settings on the Edge Display tab of the Options dialog box, as well as Drawing View Options in the Drawing View Creation Wizard (which override settings on the Display tab). However, when you save the file, these default values are saved with the view, and they override any other settings the next time you open the file.

- Annotation tab—Defines the annotation display defaults for center lines, detail borders, and drawing view captions.

- Model Options tab—Defines the drawing view options for simplified parts and assembly features.

- Shading and Color tab—Defines the shading and color options for the drawing view.

- Advanced tab—Defines advanced display and processing options for the drawing view. The settings on this Advanced tab of the Drawing View Properties dialog box take precedence over their counterparts on the Advanced Edge Display Options dialog box (Solid Edge Options® Edge Display tab® Advanced button).

Reference Parts

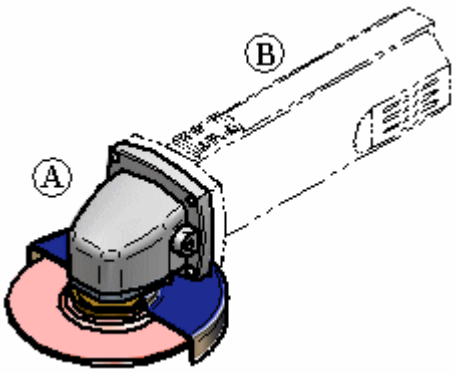
Sometimes you may want parts or subassemblies to be included on a drawing, but only for reference purposes. Reference parts typically provide a frame of reference for the components in the drawing view to a higher level assembly or to a completed product.

You can specify that a part or subassembly is a reference part when you are placing a part view of an assembly or you can edit the drawing view properties for the part view later. The Display As Reference option on the Display tab of the Drawing View Properties dialog box allows you to specify that a part or subassembly is a reference part.

Reference parts

Sometimes you may want parts or subassemblies to be included on a drawing, but only for reference purposes. Reference parts typically provide a frame of reference for the components in the drawing view to a higher level assembly or to a completed product.

For example, when creating a drawing of the head subassembly (A) for a grinder, you may want to display the case and switch (B) as reference parts to illustrate the relationship between the head subassembly and the completed product.



You can specify that a part or subassembly is a reference part when you are placing a part view of an assembly or you can edit the drawing view properties for the part view later. The Display As Reference option on the Display tab of the Drawing View Properties dialog box allows you to specify that a part or subassembly is a reference part.

In an assembly, you can also use the Occurrence Properties command to specify that an assembly occurrence is a reference part. You can then set the Derive "Display As Reference" From Assembly option on the Drawing View Properties dialog box to display the component as a reference part in the drawing.

Reference parts and parts lists

When creating a parts list of an assembly, you can use the Exclude Reference Parts option on the List Control tab on the Parts List Properties dialog box to control whether reference parts are included in the parts list.

Defining Drawing Standards

The first time you load Solid Edge at your company, you should consider setting standards to apply to the drawings you create in the Draft environment.

Although you can change the settings in the Draft environment to meet company requirements each time you create a Draft document, you will be more productive if you set up one or more Draft documents with the standard settings you need. You can then use these documents as templates for all of your drawings, making it easier for all users to conform to company standards.

When setting your drawing standards, consider the following:

- Background sheet graphics for your drawing borders
- The projection angle you want
- The thread depiction standard you want
- The edge display symbology you want for the drawing views
- The standard you want for the dimension style
- The fonts you want for text on your drawings

Creating New Documents

When you use the Document option, the working units for the new document are based on the option you selected when you loaded the software. For example, if you selected the Metric option, the working units will be metric; if you selected the English option the working units will be English.

The advantage to this approach is that graphics for the background sheets already exist in the new document. You can customize these graphics by adding your company logo and any other graphics you want.

Creating Background Sheet Graphics

Most companies use custom graphics for their drawing borders. These graphics can include title block information, zone markings, company logos, and so forth. You can create the graphics you need from scratch or you can translate graphics from AutoCAD or MicroStation using the Open command on the File menu.

If you are creating the graphics from scratch, you should consider modifying the generic background sheet graphics in the templates you use to create new documents.

These graphics have been sized correctly for the standard English and metric sheet sizes. You can easily delete and add graphics to meet your requirements. You can use the Grid command to precisely position the new graphics you place.

If you translate graphics from another CAD system, they will be placed on the working sheet. You can then cut and paste them to the background sheet.

After you have created your custom graphics for the sheet sizes you use, you can delete the background sheet graphics for any sizes you do not use. Doing this will reduce the size of your standard Draft document.

Setting the Projection Angle

When you create drawing views that are folded from an existing drawing view, they are created using either first angle or third angle projection. You can set the projection angle you want on the Options dialog box.

Setting the Thread Depiction Standard

When you create drawing views that contain threaded features, they are displayed using the ANSI or ISO standard for thread depiction. You can set the thread depiction standard you want on the Options dialog box.

> **Note**
>
> When constructing parts with industry standard threads, you should typically use the Hole or Thread commands, not the Helical Protrusion or Helical Cutout commands.
>
> Helical features require significantly more memory to construct and display in part documents, and take significantly longer to process in a drawing view. You should only use helical features where the actual shape of the helical feature is important to the design or manufacturing process, such as with springs and custom or unique threads.

Setting the Edge Display Symbology

You can set the edge display symbology for visible, hidden, and tangent edges for drawing views so they are displayed according to the standards for your company or industry. For example, your company may not show hidden edges on the drawings you create. Also you may use a different line thickness for visible and hidden edges. You can set the Edge Display options you want on the Options dialog box.

Selecting the Standard for the Dimension Style

Solid Edge is delivered with dimension styles for commonly used drawing standards including ANSI, ISO, DIN, and so forth. The Style Type option on the Style dialog box is used to choose the dimension style you want.

After you select the dimension style you want, you can modify the settings within the style to conform to the standards for your company. For example, you can choose the font, font size, working units, and so forth for the dimensions you place. You can also create new styles that are based on one of the existing styles.

Setting the Text Font

For text you place on drawings, you will want to modify the text style settings to meet your standards. You can also create new text styles for the different types of text you place. For example you may use a different font for text in the title block than the text for notes.

By creating additional styles, you can quickly change all the text settings to match your needs. Defining the text styles in your standard Draft document will also ensure that all users place text that meet the standards for your company.

Maintaining your Standard Draft Documents

After you have finished creating your standard Draft documents you should test them to ensure that they meet your standards and make any modifications that are needed. You should archive a copy in case the originals are accidentally deleted or modified. If you have multiple users at your company, you should place your standard Draft documents in the folder where the other Solid Edge templates are stored.

When you load a new version of Solid Edge in the future, you should create new standard Draft documents again. This will ensure that any enhancements made to the document structure in the software are incorporated properly.

Using Hyperlinks

Working with hyperlinks

You can use a hyperlink to link an object or element on a drawing sheet to a file or URL. You can add a hyperlink to any Draft object or element that supports user properties. Drawing views, 2D line geometry, blocks, drawing views, dimensions, and some annotations are examples of some of the items that support hyperlinks.

You can use hyperlinks to:

- Link to a company Website to obtain material information or vendor specifications.
- Link to a local file that contains detailed information about some aspect of the drawing, such as weld specifications, assembly procedures, finite element analysis calculations or design criteria.
- Link to an image file, such as a logo, an installation illustration, or a photograph of a reference part.
- Link to a database for Material Requirements Planning (MRP) or Engineering Change Notices (ECNs) to get information for the drawing title block.
- Link to another Solid Edge document.

When you click an object hyperlinked to a file, the target file opens in the default viewer assigned to that file-type. When you click an object hyperlinked to a URL, the web page associated with the URL is opened in a default browser.

Enabling hyperlink mode

To get started, you must enable hyperlinks. Selecting the Insert® HyperLink command lets you:

- Add, edit, and remove hyperlinks between objects on the drawing sheet and external files or URLs.
- Select, open, and display the targets of previously created hyperlinks on the drawing.

Hyperlink pointers

In hyperlink mode, you see two different kinds of pointers when the mouse moves across objects and elements on the drawing sheet.

When this pointer is displayed, it means a link has not been assigned to the object or element. You can left-click to select it and add a hyperlink:

When this pointer is displayed, it means there is an existing hyperlink defined for the object or element:

In this case, you can left-click to follow the link, or you can right-click to edit, remove, or view the hyperlink target name associated with the object or element.

Adding and editing hyperlinks

In hyperlink mode, you can add, edit, and remove hyperlinks from 2D objects and elements. Items that are not highlighted are not hyperlinked.

- To add a link, left-click an object, or right-click the item and select the Add/Edit Link command from its shortcut menu. The Hyperlink dialog box is displayed for you to type a source URL or a target file path name. You also can use the Browse button to locate the file through your computer file system.

- To edit a link, right-click the object and select the Add/Edit Link command from its shortcut menu.

- To remove a link, right-click the object and select the Remove Link command.

Opening hyperlinks on a drawing sheet

When you select the HyperLink command, all objects with previously defined hyperlinks are highlighted at once on the drawing sheet. This identifies the items that have attached files, such as specification documents and installation instructions, or referenced web pages.

- When you left-click an object hyperlinked to a file, the target file opens in the default viewer assigned to that file-type.

- When you left-click an object hyperlinked to a URL, the web page associated with the URL is opened in a default browser.

- To display the target name without opening it, right-click the hyperlinked object or element and look at the text displayed to the right of the Open command.

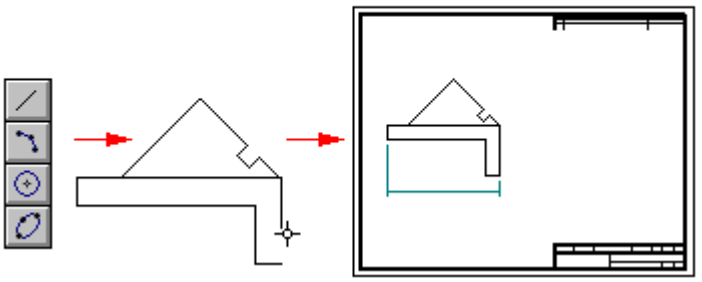
2D drawing views and 2D model views

2D drawing views

A 2D drawing view consists of two-dimensional elements. It is not associative to a 3D model. A 2D drawing view allows you to quickly create or modify a drawing view without making changes to a part or assembly document.

To create a 2D drawing view of a part or assembly, you can convert a 3D part view or you can draw the 2D graphics yourself. You also can import a 2D design file and then create 2D views from it. You can layer 2D graphics on top of a 2D view.

Whenever you add or edit 2D graphical elements, a full range of drawing tools is provided. These include drawing and relationship commands that make it easy for you to draw an accurate 2D representation of a part or assembly.



Note

For more information about 2D drawing in Solid Edge, see the Drawing 2D elements Help topic.

2D model views

2D model views are scaled 2D drawing views placed on working sheets of geometry that reside at full scale on the 2D Model sheet. You can create multiple 2D model views that reference the 2D model geometry, and you can customize the cropping boundary for each view created from the geometry on the 2D Model sheet.

Creating a 2D drawing view

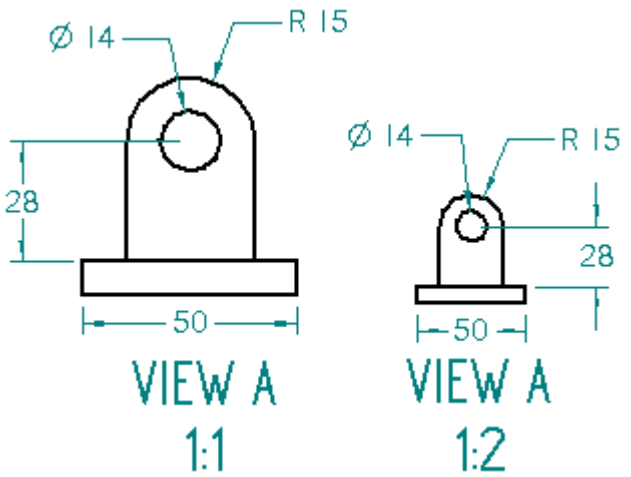
There are several commands related to creating a 2D view from existing graphics:

- 2D Model View command—Creates a 2D view that references geometry on the 2D Model sheet. Use the Drawing Area Setup command, which is available only for the 2D Model sheet, to set up a scaled work area in 2D model space.
- Convert to 2D View command—Converts a 3D part view to 2D geometry. Once you convert a part view to a 2D view, associativity to the part or assembly document cannot be retrieved.
- Draw In View command—Available for a 3D part, assembly, or sheet metal view placed on a working drawing sheet, this command opens a 2D View Edit window for you to draw in the view and to add annotations at a 1:1 scale.
- 2D View command—Superseded by the 2D Model View command, but still available through customization.

2D drawing scales

When drawing inside a 2D view placed on a working sheet, you typically work at 1:1 scale. You also can draw directly on the working sheet. If you decide later that you want to scale graphics you have drawn directly on the sheet, just move or copy them into a drawing view with the Cut, Copy, and Paste commands.

The dimension and annotation sizes on the working sheet are independent of the drawing view scale. For example, if you define the height and size of dimension text as 0.125 inches or 3.5 millimeters, these are the actual values of the dimension text on the printed drawing.



Using the 2D Model sheet

You also can work on the 2D Model sheet in 2D Model space. The Drawing Area Setup command defines a scaled work area where you can create, edit, and annotate a 2D design at a scale appropriate to the size of the part or assembly, yet print at a scale appropriate to the dimensions of your drawing sheet.

The Auto-Hide layer is available at all times when working on the 2D Model sheet.

2D Model view workflow

This workflow is used to create a 2D model view in a draft document.

First, use the 2D Model Sheet command to display the full-scale 2D Model sheet. There is one 2D Model sheet per document.

Next, use the Drawing Area Setup command to define a work space on the 2D Model sheet.

Next, place or create the design geometry on the 2D Model sheet, using any combination of design file import, dragging an existing .dft file onto the sheet, and 2D line drawing tools.

On the working drawing sheet, use the 2D Model View command to create one or more 2D model views that reference the 2D model geometry. You can customize the clipping boundary for each view created from the geometry on the 2D Model sheet, and assign a unique caption to each view.

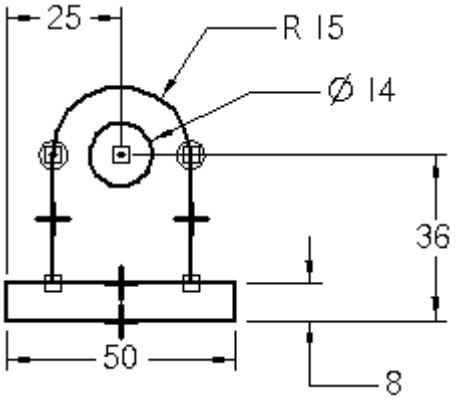
Creating detail views from a 2D model view

You can use the Detail View command to create a dependent detail view from a 2D model view or a drawing view that has been converted to 2D geometry. You can create a detail view that displays a circular envelope or a detail view with a custom boundary.

Click here to learn more about Solid Edge detail views and the procedures for creating them.

2D views and associativity

If you set the Maintain Relationships option in the Relate group on the ribbon, the graphics you draw in a 2D view can be updated associatively, similar to the profiles you draw in the Part environment. You can place driving dimensions and apply relationships to control the size and location of the elements.



Hiding construction graphics, dimensions, and annotations

When you want to hide elements in a drawing view but you do not want to assign the hidden elements to individual layers, you can use the Auto-Hide layer. You can hide construction geometry, dimensions, and certain annotations. For example, you can place dimensions on the 2D Model sheet Auto-Hide layer to drive the size of the geometry but not display when a drawing view is placed on the working sheet.

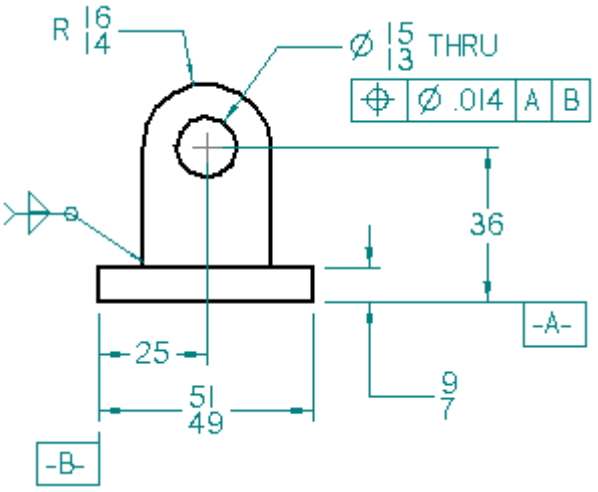
- The Auto-Hide layer is available while you are drawing and dimensioning on the 2D Model sheet. You can use the 2D Model View command to create a drawing view of the 2D Model sheet geometry, and all elements on the Auto-Hide layer are hidden automatically.

- The Auto-Hide layer also is created automatically when you right-click a drawing view and choose the Draw In View command. When you close a Draw In View window, elements on the Auto-Hide layer are hidden automatically.

Completing the 2D view

When you finish drawing in a 2D view on the working sheet, click the Return button on the command bar to close the 2D View Edit window. After you close the 2D view window, you can add driven dimensions and annotations, such as weld symbols, feature control frames, and so forth to the drawing sheet.

If you are working in 2D model space on the 2D Model sheet, you can add and edit annotations and dimensions directly on the sheet. The graphics you add on the 2D Model sheet are visible in the 2D view on the working sheet when you click the sheet tab.

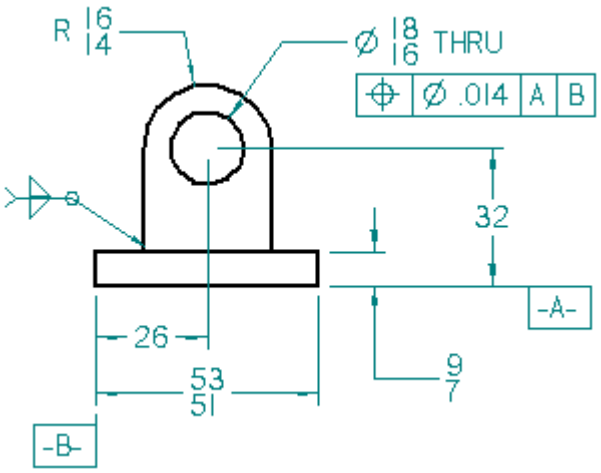


Editing 2D views

When you need to edit 3D model graphics in a 2D view, double-click the view. You can also use the Draw in View command on the shortcut menu.

If the 2D view graphics were created from the 2D Model sheet as a block, or dragged onto the sheet as a file, then you can use the Open command on the shortcut menu to open the graphics for editing. Or you can use the Unblock command to drop the block to its base elements for individual manipulation.

If you created the 2D view associatively, you can edit the driving dimensions to modify the graphics. When you close the 2D view, the driven dimensions you placed on the sheet will update.



Drawing area setup in 2D model space

In a draft document, you can draw, design, annotate, and dimension on the 2D Model sheet. The 2D Model sheet is a special sheet used exclusively for working in 2D model space. It enables you to draw on the sheet and to annotate at a scale appropriate for the overall size of the part you are designing, yet it prints your drawing with annotations appropriately scaled to the output sheet size you specify.

- To display the 2D Model sheet, select the View tab® Sheet Views group® 2D Model command, and then click the document sheet tab labeled 2D Model.

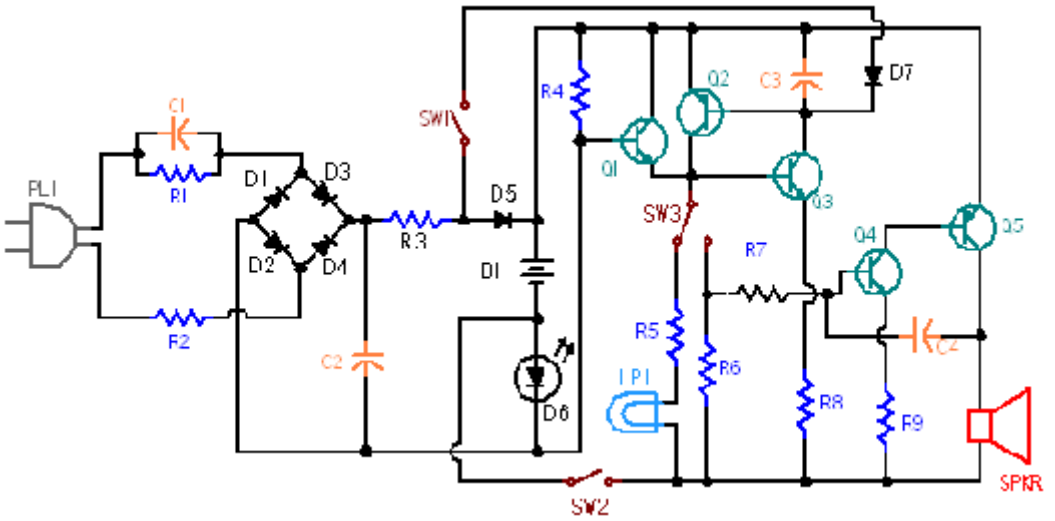
- To set the size and scale of your work area on the 2D Model sheet, select the Application menu® Drawing Area Setup command. Work area setup calculations are made automatically based on sheet size and the dimensions of your intended design.

Schematic Diagramming using Blocks and Connectors

Blocks and connectors are used together to create schematics and flow diagrams in the Draft environment. Create and arrange the blocks on the drawing first using the Block command, and then add the connectors using the Connectors command.

Using blocks

The block and connector diagramming tools assist you in developing electrical, P&ID, and other diagrams. Solid Edge provides a library of industry-standard 2D blocks and access to all of your AutoCAD blocks through on-the-fly conversion. Intelligent connectors quickly snap to keypoints on the blocks and create associative links that are easily updated.



With convenient access to block libraries and functionality via the Library window, a block can be selected and placed in the active document with different representations, or views, without the overhead of duplicated graphics and data. When a design changes, you can easily replace or delete all occurrences of a block with one command. Property text can be referenced in block labels, which in turn can be referenced in annotations such as callouts.

Differences between blocks and symbols

Symbols use embedded draft documents, whereas blocks do not.

Blocks reduce file overhead because they do not insert duplicate geometry and data into the draft document.

Like symbols, blocks can be created and edited only in the Draft environment.

Block terminology

In this table of Solid Edge block terminology, if there is a different, equivalent AutoCAD term, it is shown in parentheses.

Term	Definition
Block	A generic term for a named collection of one or more 2D elements or objects that can be selected and referenced as a single entity. A block consists of both graphics and data.

Block occurrence (instance)	A block that has been placed on a sheet in the draft document. Each occurrence references a master block and displays it at the specified location. By editing the block occurrence graphics, you edit the data in the master block. A block occurrence is generated with the Place Block or copy/paste commands.
Master block (block master)	The combined graphics and data used to define a block. A master block is like a template or prototype for block occurrences. A master block is created with the Block command and edited with the Open command.
Block view	An alternative graphical representation of a master block. For example, a switch shown in the open and closed states has two block views. A block view is created with the Add Block View command.
Block library	A collection of block files that can be used in many documents and accessed by different designers. A block library also can be a single file containing many blocks.
Block file	Files with the extension .dft, .dwg, or .dxf that contain one block or many related blocks. Block files can be imported using the AutoCAD Import Translation Wizard. Block files also can be converted to Solid Edge format by double-clicking them in the Block Library or by dragging and dropping the file onto the drawing. See Importing Existing Blocks and Placing Blocks, below.
Block label (Attribute)	An object that contains one name-value pair and can be included in a master block definition to store alphanumeric data. Label values can be predefined or specified when the block is inserted as an occurrence. Label data can be extracted from a drawing and inserted into external files. A block label is created with the Block Label command.
Block properties (Attributes)	Both block graphics and block labels possess properties. General Properties—One or more name-value pairs that pertain to the general appearance of the block. Typically, these name-value pairs identify the type of component, part, or element the block represents. Label Properties—A name-value pair that provides specific alphanumeric information, notes, sequence numbers, or other details about a block. All block properties are referenced by the same “Block Properties” property text, GBLK.

Importing existing blocks

There are several ways to import AutoCAD blocks into Solid Edge.

One method is to use the File® Open command, and then click the Options button on the File Open dialog box to select translation options. There is an option to specify whether to import AutoCAD .dwg or .dxf files as a block or as a group. The default is to translate them as a block. When importing a block with attribute text, the text is imported as Solid Edge text and is added to a group containing the block and the text. The AutoCAD Import Translation Wizard guides you through the steps.

You can drag an entire .dwg or .dxf block file directly into the Library from Windows Explorer, whether or not the Block Library functions are displayed, and the file is translated to Solid Edge block format automatically. If the file contains multiple blocks, then this on-the-fly file translation method creates multiple blocks in the Block Selection Pane. If the file contains geometry but no block definitions, then translation generates a single block from the contents of the file. To separate the contents into individual blocks, use the Unblock command.

You also can select and place individual blocks from a .dwg, .dxf, or .dft file listed in the Block Library File List. When you click one of these file types in the Block Library File List, on-the-fly file translation displays the names of all blocks in the file in the Block Selection Pane. This method lets you preview and choose the individual blocks to insert from the file directly into the Solid Edge active document.

Creating new blocks

You can create new blocks in Solid Edge using the drawing tools to create the geometry and the Block command to define the graphics as a block. Click the Block command button then follow the prompts on the Block command bar to select its contents, assign an origin point, and assign a descriptive block name. When you click Accept, the block name is added to the Block Selection Pane for use in the active document. To exit create block mode, click the Select tool or press the Esc key.

To learn how master blocks, block views, and nested blocks are identified, see the Help topic, Displaying Blocks in the Library.

To create one or more blocks from blocks in an existing draft file, you can simply click a file name in the Block Library to open it, and then drag individual blocks from it onto the drawing sheet or 2D Model sheet. Use the Unblock command to unblock the geometry, and then use the Block command to create new blocks from the geometry. Also see Adding Alternative Block Views, below.

You also can create a block and simultaneously add it to the library by selecting and dragging 2D elements from the drawing sheet into the Block Library File List. This creates a block file with a default Symbol.dft file name, and it removes the geometry from the drawing sheet. Even though the block has a default symbol name, it is still a block. You can select the block in the library, and then use the Rename command on the file's shortcut menu to rename the file. Alternatively, you can use the Edit® Copy To Library function to both create and rename the block, without removing the geometry from the drawing sheet.

To learn about block libraries, see the Help topic, Organizing Block Libraries.

Creating and placing block labels

Block labels provide alphanumeric information about the master block or block view. New block labels can be created using the Block Label command. Existing labels can be copied and pasted between blocks on different sheets and in different documents.

There are several ways you can add labels to a master block or block view. You can define a block label and then include it in a master block or block view during the block creation process. Alternatively, you can add a label to a block that you edit with the Open command. When you drag an entire .dft, .dwg, or .dxf file as a block, and if the file contains labels, then the labels are added to the master block that is created automatically in the active document.

When a block that contains a label is placed in the document, the block label attributes update in the occurrence based upon the settings defined for the label in the master block. If the label requires you to confirm or enter a value for the current instance, the Block Label Properties dialog box is displayed for you to edit the information.

Only labels contained in a top-level block of a nested block are prompted for on placement.

When a block is copied and pasted, dragged onto the drawing sheet, copied in a pattern, moved or rotated, no prompt is displayed for the new occurrences. The copied blocks have the same value as the source block.

Adding alternative block views

Each block view is a master block that defines a specific set of geometry, for example, different states, locations, and configurations. All block views share the same block properties.

To create a block view, first manipulate the graphics on the drawing using the drawing tools or view commands, then right-click the master block name in the Block Selection Pane and select the Add Block View command from its shortcut menu.

If you want to create a block view from an existing block occurrence and if the occurrence is not selectable, first use the Unblock command to unblock the occurrence, then fence-select the graphics for the block view.

It is fast and easy to create master blocks and alternative block views by dragging a .dft, .dxf, or .dwg file that has several 2D views of the same graphics into the 2D Model sheet. If the file translates as a single block rather than individual blocks, use the Unblock command first to make the graphics individually selectable. Next, use the Block command to select and define the master block, for example the front view of a sink. Then, use the Add Block View command and the fence-select technique to define alternative views, such as Sink Top View and Sink Side View.

Blocks and groups

Blocks can be organized into groups. Grouping makes it easy to select multiple entities at once, especially in a complex drawing. Individual blocks can be grouped together using the Group command.

Groups cannot be selected for inclusion in a block. However, you can include the contents of a group if you first use the Ungroup command. Also, you can locate and select an individual item within a group for inclusion in the block using either QuickPick or the Bottom Up command button on the Select Tool command bar. The object is removed from the group when it is included in the block.

Nested blocks

A nested block is a block that is included in another block.

The benefit of creating a diagram using nested blocks is that nested blocks are easy to select and place. Also, you can easily replace all of the occurrences of a sub-block within the nested block using the Replace command.

To create nested blocks, create the sub-blocks first, then fence select the sub-blocks to create another block that includes them all. For example, you can draw an arrow, create a block from it, and then include the arrow as a sub-block in other blocks.

Defining properties for block graphics and block labels

Adding properties to the master block ensures that all block occurrences carry the same attributes.

When creating new blocks, you can define properties that identify the physical aspect of the block, such as the type of component, part, or element the block represents. These properties consist of one or more name-value pairs. Block properties are accessed during master block/block view definition using the Block Options command on the Block command bar, which in turn displays the Block Properties dialog box. Properties are entered in the Name and Value fields.

When creating new labels, you can define properties that identify specific alphanumeric information, notes, sequence numbers, or other details about a block. Block label properties are entered in the Name and Value fields on the Block Label Properties dialog box, which is displayed when you click the Block Label command.

The information entered in the Name and Value fields on both the Block Properties dialog box and the Block Label Properties dialog box can be extracted into callouts, balloons, and similar annotations.

You can update master block and block occurrence properties and values. To globally edit the properties of an existing master block and all block occurrences in the active document, use the Properties command from the master block's shortcut menu in the Library.

You can add or modify properties of all of a block's occurrences in the drawing using the Properties command on the block occurrence's shortcut menu.

Block views you create inherit their properties from the master block. You cannot edit the properties of a block view in the Library, but you can edit it as a block occurrence after it is placed in the drawing.

Property edits made to occurrences in the drawing are updated to the respective source blocks in the Library.

Referencing block property text in annotations

Callouts, balloons, and similar annotations that are connected to blocks with defined properties will update to display the property text associated with that block when the block is placed. The annotations can be included in the master block or block view definition, or they can be added to a block occurrence on the drawing sheet.

To display block properties in the schematic, you must create references between the properties entered in the Block Properties dialog box and the "Block Property" property text string of the callout or balloon. To do this, first add the appropriate callout or balloon to the block. Click the Property Text button on the Callout dialog box or the Balloon dialog box to open the Select Property Text dialog box. Click From Graphic Connection as the source for the property text, then select "Block Property" from the Properties list. This displays %{Block Property|GBLK} in the Property Text field in the dialog box.

Type the block property name you entered in the Name field of the Block Properties dialog box over the BlockProperty portion of the property text string. For example, if the property name is Cost, then you replace "BlockProperty" with "Cost," so that it looks like this: %{cost|GBLK}.

Multiple levels of text can be displayed in callouts by creating multiple entries in the Callout Properties dialog box. For example: %{cost|GBLK} %{unit|GBLK}

%{model|GBLK} will display values for cost, units, and model in the callout, if values have been entered in the Value column of the Block Properties dialog box for each of these attribute Names.

Property text in nested blocks is resolved only for the top level block.

For more information about how property text is used in draft documents, see the Help topic Using Property Text

Placing blocks

Existing blocks can be dragged into the document, copied and pasted between documents, or placed using the Place Block command available from a block's shortcut menu in the Block Selection Pane. All of these methods allow you to set the scale and change the rotation of the graphics before they are placed. To learn how, see Place a block.

Individual blocks or block views can be dragged from the Block Selection Pane into the active document. Select the block name in the Block Selection Pane, drag the block to the location in the document where you want to place it, then click the left mouse button to place it. To place the same block in another location, move the mouse and click again. Click the right mouse button to end the function. Dragging a block onto the sheet is equivalent to placing a block using the Place Block command.

You can select and place a single block from an external block library file. If you set the Block Library File List to display Thumbnails, you can see what is in the file. You can drag an entire block file of type .dft, .dwg, or .dxf into the document from the Block Library File List or from Windows Explorer.

- If the file is type .dwg or .dxf, and if the file was created with one or more blocks defined, then the contents of the file are translated and placed as individual blocks in the active document. If there is one block in the file, then a single block is placed in the active document. The AutoCAD Import Translation Wizard settings control how the block is translated into Solid Edge. These are set on the Open File dialog box.

- If the file is type .dft, and if there is a single block occurrence in the file, then it is placed as a single block. If there are multiple blocks in the file, all of the graphics in the file are placed as a single block. In the latter case, you can use the Unblock command to drop the graphics to individual elements.

  Note

  When you drag a .dft file onto the sheet, only the contents of the *active sheet* of the file are copied and placed in the current draft document. If the .dft has more than one sheet, first open and save it with the sheet containing the block set as the active sheet.

Blocks are placed in the document according to the origin point initially defined for them when they are created. You can always move the block to a new location once it is placed.

Scaling block graphics

The default scale value for blocks you place with the Place Block command or by dragging them onto the sheet is 1.00. You can change this value in the Block Scale box on the command bar before you click to place the block.

When dragging an entire file into the active document, it is helpful to use the 2D Model sheet, which has infinite scale. Select the View tab® Sheet Views group® 2D Model Sheet command, and then click the 2D Model tab on the drawing to make it the active sheet. Then, drag the file onto the 2D Model sheet and set the scale value before you click to place it.

You also can view and change the scale factor of a block you have already placed on the drawing by selecting the block and then typing or selecting a new scale value in the Block Scale box on the command bar.

For sizing tips, see View and modify block scale.

Rotating block graphics

After you drag a block into the document, but before you click to place it, you can rotate it in 45° increments using these keys:

-Press the A key to rotate counterclockwise.

-Press the S key to rotate clockwise.

Editing blocks

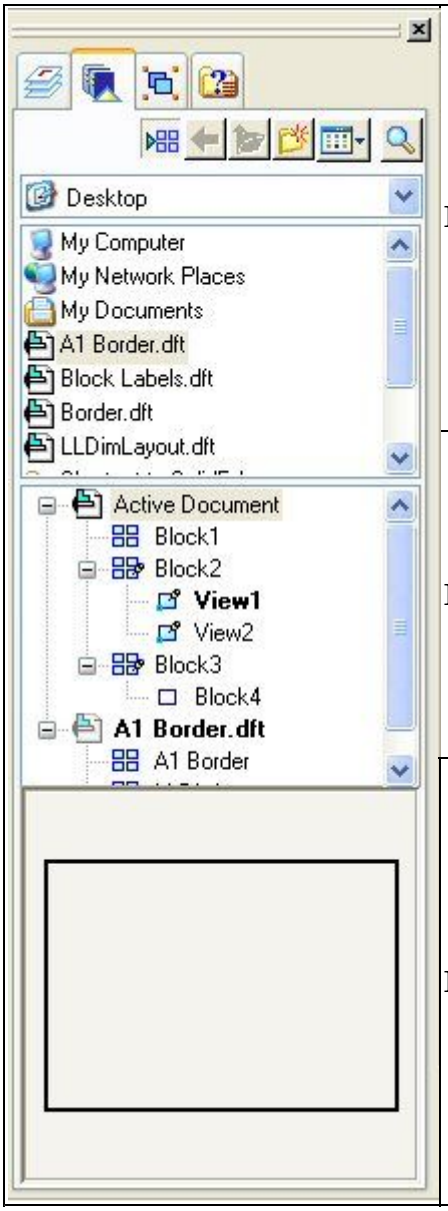
Blocks you have placed in the document can be renamed, opened for edit, deleted, replaced, and unblocked. These commands are available on the shortcut menu of the selected master block or block view in the Library, and from the shortcut menu of a block occurrence on the sheet. Behavioral differences between masters and occurrences determine whether a command is available or not.

To learn more about editing blocks, see the Help topic, Editing Blocks.

Displaying blocks in the Library

Block display in the Library

To display the Block Library, click the Show Blocks button on the Library tab of the Library window.



Block Library File List	Displays all files in the specified folder. Block library files are those with extension .dwg, .dxf, and .dft. You can display thumbnail previews of the block file contents in the Block Library File List. To change from the file list format to thumbnails, click the Views button on the Library tab. To place an entire block file as a single block into the active document, drag the file from this location onto the 2D Model sheet or the drawing sheet.
Block Selection Pane	Lists all blocks in the active document by name. Also displays individual block names contained in an external block file when you click a file name in the Block Library File List (above). To place an individual block, drag it from this location. To see the block shortcut menu, right-click in the Block Selection Pane.
Block Preview Pane	Displays a graphical preview of a block name selected in the Block Selection Pane. Also displays the contents of a file selected in the Block Library File List.

Block display

Like AutoCAD, block occurrences reside on layers. When a block is placed in a document, the occurrence is placed on the active layer.

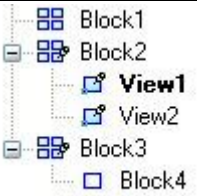
Layer display in Solid Edge is controlled from the Layers tab in the Library window. If the layer the occurrence resides on is turned off, then all block graphics are hidden, including block graphics on layers that are set to display.

To move a block to a different layer, select the block occurrence graphics, then use the Move Elements command button on the Layers tab.

To learn about layer display and control, see the Help topic, Layers overview.

Identifying block types

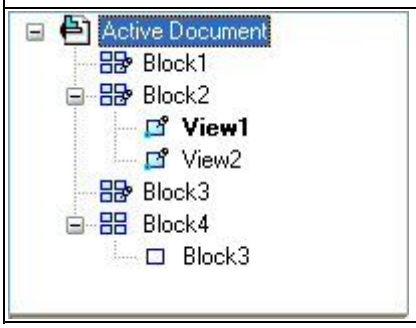
Most of the block commands are available only from the shortcut menu in the Library pane, where block names display one of these icons:

Icon	What It Means
	-No occurrences -Used -Alternate block view -Nested

The block usage indicator mark is added when you place the first occurrence of a block in the document and removed when you delete the last occurrence.

In the example below, there are multiple representations of Block2 in the active document. View1 is the source or default view of Block2. View2 is another view of Block2.

Block4 contains Block3 as a nested block. Nested blocks are identified with a glyph that is an unfilled rectangle.

Block Selection Pane	What It Means
	-Block1, Block2, Block3 are used in the document. -Block4 is not used. -View1 and View2 are alternate representations (block views) of Block2. -View2 is set as the default block view. -Block3 is used as a nested block in Block4.

A block name that is listed in boldface in the Block Selection Pane indicates it is the default representation of a block with multiple views. The default block representation is the one displayed if you drag a block from Library onto the drawing sheet. You can change or set a default block using the Set as Default command.

Organizing block libraries

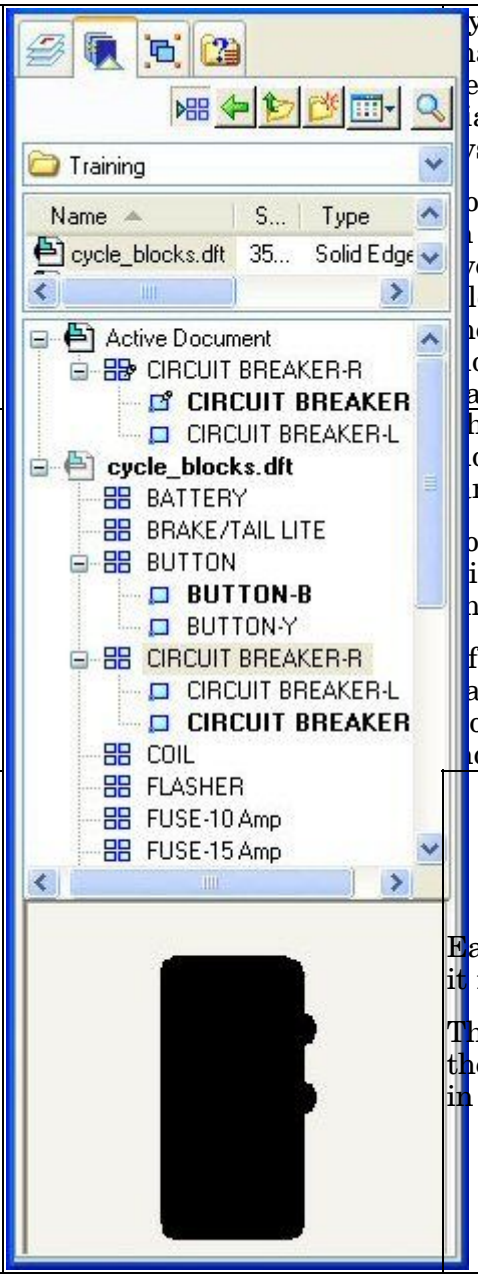
Organizing blocks in a Block Library

Blocks can be organized in any way that suits your design needs. For example, each block can be stored as a discrete Block Library file, or a group of related blocks can be stored and organized in a single file. Battery.dft might contain one battery or it might contain different types of batteries. In general, however, defining many blocks in each Block Library file results in a more efficient use of storage space than defining one block per file.

Also, a single Block Library file can contain all of the different blocks that are used in a particular type of schematic or flow diagram. This example shows how all of the

electrical components that are needed in a motorcycle schematic can be stored in one file, cycle_blocks.dft.

Files of type .dft, .dxf, and .dwg can be accessed and opened as illustrated here.

Block Library File List		ycle_blocks is the block library file hat contains all the components ecessary to build a schematic iagram of a motorcycle electrical ystem. o place a block from this file the active drawing, click the ycle_blocks.dft file name in the lock Library File List. This opens he file to display the individual lock names in the Block Selection ane, as shown at left.
Block Selection Pane		he file is comprised of individual locks for battery, brakes, fuses, mps, and so forth. o place a block in the drawing, ick the block name and then drag nd drop it into the drawing. fter the block is placed, its ame also appears in the Active ocument list with an occurrence dicator glyph, as show at left.
Block Preview Pane		Each block can be previewed before it is used. This is the graphic associated with the Circuit Breaker block selected in the Block Selection Pane, above.

Sample Schematic Block Library

A comprehensive Sample Schematic Block Library of more than 1,000 electrical and mechanical schematic blocks is included with Solid Edge. These are stored in the Sample Blocks folder, organized by design disciplines: Electrical, Mechanical, and Piping. Below these discipline-level categories are sub-folders that further organize the blocks.

Some Electrical sub-categories include:

- Analog Logic
- Circuit Protectors
- Communication and Power Generation
- Composite Assemblies
- Motors and Machines
- PCL and Static Switching
- Qualifying Symbols
- Semiconductors
- Switches and Relays
- Transformers and Inductors
- Transmisison Path
- VHF UHF SHF

To locate these schematic blocks, use the Block Library File List to browse to the Sample Blocks folder in the Solid Edge program folder, then browse through the Electrical, Mechanical, and Piping folders.

Sample drawing sheet border blocks

The Sample Blocks folder also contains a set of drawing sheet borders with title blocks for various sheet sizes. These borders also contain examples of property text and block labels, which extract information and display it in the title block.

These drawing sheet borders can be scaled and placed on the 2D Model sheet using the Drawing Area Setup command. Or you can drag and drop them onto the 2D Model sheet, a working sheet, or a background sheet.

The sample drawing sheet border blocks are also located in the Solid Edge\Sample Blocks folder, in a single file, TitleBlocks.dft.

Previewing individual sample blocks in the sample block library

You can preview the contents of a block file by clicking the block file name in the Block Library File List, then looking in the Block Preview Pane to see the graphics in the file.

Another way to preview all of the sample blocks in each category at once is to use Microsoft Explorer. Browse to the Sample Blocks folder in the Solid Edge Program folder on your desktop. Click the View icon, then set the view fly-out option to Thumbnails.

All the geometry in these draft files is on the 2D Model sheet. There is no geometry on Sheet 1. The majority of the geometry in these files is on the ’0’ zero layer.

In some files there is a ”TEXT” layer. This is the layer on which the text resides. Some files may have a ”TEXT” layer and not have text in the file.

Editing blocks

Editing blocks using the Open command

You can edit a master block from the Library window by right-clicking the block and then selecting the Open command from its shortcut menu. All elements that comprise the master block are displayed in a new edit window. Labels included in the block are displayed using the label name rather than the label value.

You can add, edit, and delete master block graphics, you can add and edit label name-value pairs, add annotations that reference block property text, and add dimensions.

You can move, rotate, scale, mirror, and stretch any of the block elements.

When you exit the edit session by clicking the Return button on the command bar, the changes are applied to the master block. If there are occurrences of the master block in the active document, they are updated, too.

Editing block occurrences

When you single-click a block occurrence:

- Edit handles are displayed. There is one handle for the block graphics and one handle for each label that can be modified in the block. If a label has been defined so that its position is locked, then no edit handle is displayed.
- You can use the Block Occurrence Selection options on the command bar to change the block name, block scale, block properties, and 2D element line style and color.

When you double-click a block occurrence:

- It is the same as selecting the Open command to open the block for editing in a Draw In View window.
- You can use any of the standard drawing commands to edit the block.

Editing labels

You can edit a label that is part of a block using the Open command on the block shortcut menu. If you select the Open command from the Library tab, then your edits update the master block. If you select the Open command from the drawing, then your edits update the block occurrence. When you click Return, all changes are saved to the block and label definition.

Editing block labels produces these results:

- If you edit a label definition in the master block, and if label formatting and location properties have been changed locally in individual block occurrences, the occurrence settings are preserved.
- Changing an existing label so that it is set to Use Same Value in All Occurrences changes the value of all occurrences to the value defined in the master block.
- Deleting a label in the master block deletes it from all occurrences.

- Adding a new label adds it to all occurrences. The default label location and value is taken from the master block.

- Changing an existing label so that the Lock Position Within Block option is set changes all the occurrence labels to the location specified in the master block.

- Moving a label that has the Lock Position Within Block option set moves all the labels in all occurrences relative to the master block origin point.

Renaming blocks and views

Blocks and views created from blocks can be renamed only from the shortcut menu in the Library. Block names and view names must be unique within the active document.

Select the block name, select the Rename command from the shortcut menu, then type the new block name over the existing block name, then press the Enter key.

Deleting blocks

Blocks can be deleted only from the shortcut menu in the Library. When you delete a block in the Block Selection Pane, all occurrences of the block in the active document, including all views of the block, are deleted with it.

You can cut and paste blocks and copy and paste blocks between documents using those commands from the selected block's shortcut menu. When pasted in the new document, a new occurrence and/or master block, are created.

Replacing blocks

A block and all its occurrences can be replaced globally with a single command, or you can choose to replace only a selected instance of the block. The replacement replaces the block graphics as well as its attributes.

The Replace command is available only from a block's shortcut menu. When you replace from the Block Selection Pane in the Library, all occurrences of the selected block in the active document are replaced. When you replace a selected block in the drawing, you can choose whether to replace that one or all instances of the block.

Unblocking blocks

The Unblock command operates on graphics in the 2D Model sheet or active drawing sheet, dropping the selected block occurrence to its individual components or elements. If the selected block is nested, only the top level block will be unblocked.

If you want to select an existing block's graphics as the basis for a new master block or another view of an existing block and the block occurrence is not selectable, use the Unblock command on the block's shortcut menu in the drawing before selecting the Block command or the Add Block View command.

If you dragged a file into the drawing and the contents of the file translated as a single block, you can separate the contents into individual elements using the Unblock command. This makes them selectable when you create a new block or add a block view.

Cut, copy, paste

You can copy and paste block occurrences between sheets and between documents. When a block occurrence is pasted into a document, the settings on the master block determine the values of the labels of the new occurrences.

Using connectors

About connectors

Connectors are a type of annotation that can be added to blocks and other 2D elements to create schematic diagrams, flow charts, and other drawings. An efficient way to use them is to create and arrange the blocks or other 2D objects on the drawing first, and then add the connectors using the Connector command.

You can also modify the appearance, location, and orientation of existing connectors by selecting a connector in the drawing and making changes on the Connector command bar and on the Connector Properties dialog box.

Connector shapes

There are four connector shape types: Line, Corner, Jump, and Step. Line and corner connectors consist of start and end handles. Jump and step connectors also contain a midpoint handle that defines the center of the step or arc.

The midpoint of the jump arc can be connected to another line, such as a wire, or to another connector segment, so that it moves with the connected element. The midpoint of the step can only be snapped to another object, not connected to it.

For more information about these shapes, see the Connector command bar Help topic.

Adding connectors

The Connector command initiates dynamic connector placement mode, in which a continuous series of connectors can be added to the drawing until you click the right mouse button, click the Select tool, or press the Esc key to exit.

Input to create a connector consists of two points. These two points can be on a block, another 2D graphic object, on a keypoint, on a grid, in free space, and even a point on another connector. The eligible points on a connector include a midpoint or start/end vertex.

Similarly, connectors can be connected to text, dimensions, leader lines, and other annotations. When you attach a jump connector to another element, both the jump and the connected element highlight to show they are connected. When the annotation moves, the connector moves with it.

Connector midpoints can be snapped to a grid during placement and editing.

Manipulating connectors

Once placed, connectors are driven by the objects they are attached to. If a connected block, element, or object is moved, the connector end point moves with it, stretching the connector line segment as needed to maintain connectivity. For line and jump connectors only, if the other end of the connector is free, then the entire connector moves with the object.

You can easily align connectors using a grid and the Snap To Grid options on the Grid Options dialog box. You can snap to a point or to a line.

While modifying an existing connector, you can select a handle or the midpoint of a jump connector and drag it, and it will snap into position. When you turn off the grid, you turn off the snap-to-grid feature.

Highlight color

When you select a connector to edit, connector handles as well as connected elements are highlighted. It is helpful to know the default highlight color scheme, as it determines how connectors and connected elements will behave when you try to modify or move them.

- The default selected connector color is purple.
- The default handle highlight color for the connector start point is red. Any parent elements that the connector is connected to are displayed in the same highlight color.
- The default handle highlight color for the connector end point is black.

Note

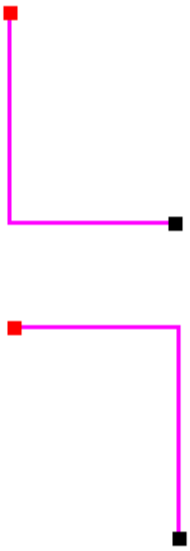
The color scheme described above is the default color scheme. You may choose a different color scheme, which can be implemented through templates or a custom Connector style. See Connector Properties to learn where these default colors are set and can be changed.

Changing connector shape and orientation

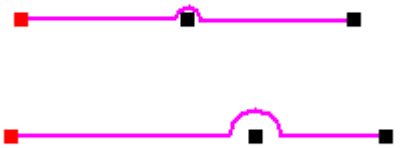
You can easily edit an existing connector.

You can change the shape of a selected connector by pressing S on the keyboard or clicking a different connector type in the Shape list on the command bar. For example, you might change a connector shape from a line to a jump where two wires cross in a diagram.

You can change the orientation of a jump, corner or step connector by pressing F on the keyboard or clicking the Flip button on the command bar.

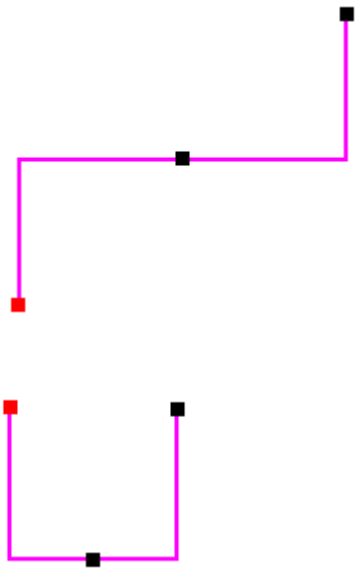


You can adjust the jump radius of a jump connector by typing a new value in the Jump Radius field on the command bar and pressing Enter to update the connector. You also can adjust the position of the jump by selecting the middle handle and moving it along the connector segment.



Only one jump per connector is allowed. However, you can create a string of connectors with one jump each, which behaves like a single connector with multiple jumps. Set the start/end terminators of the connectors in the middle to the “Blank” option. Do the same for the end terminator of the first connector and the start terminator of the end connector. For example:

You can create a U-shaped connector by placing a step-type connector, then selecting the connector middle handle and dragging it.



Cut/copy/paste a connector

A selected connector can be cut, copied, and pasted using those commands on its shortcut menu. Press the **Ctrl** key while you drag the connector to both copy and move the connector.

Rotate/mirror/scale/move a connector

Connector annotations can be rotated, mirrored, scaled, and moved using those commands. If you use these commands on a connected object, the connector segment

will change with it. If you select the connector segment itself, only the connector will change.

To move an individual connector, it is more efficient to move the connected object. You cannot fence select connectors to move them.

Disconnecting a connector

To disconnect a connector from an object, select and drag the connector handle off the object.

Connector style and properties

A connector style can be applied globally to all connectors using dimension style mapping, or you can choose to customize the connectors added to the drawing by choosing a local style and then adjusting one or more connector properties.

Connector properties that can be set include those for line segment color, width, and type, as well as for independent start and end terminator styles. You also can opt to use no terminators at all.

Selecting and applying a global connector style

To select and apply a connector annotation style globally, go to the Dimension Style tab of the Options dialog box, set the Dimension Style Mapping option, and select a style for the Connector annotation element.

Connectors share a line style with dimensions. You can set certain global defaults for connector line styles on the Dimension Style dialog box (choose Format® Style, select ”Dimension” from the Style Type list, then click the New Modify button). Here, you can make these style changes:

- Default Line Color—Select the General tab to change the default Connector line style color, which is black, for all new connectors added to the drawing.
- Default Line Type and Width—Select the Annotation tab to change the default Connector Line Type and Connector Line Width.

  Note

  Connector terminator options are set on the Connector command bar. These settings can be changed interactively as you place new connectors.

To set the connector edit handle colors, change these global settings on the Color tab of the Options dialog box:

- Highlight: Sets the edit handle color for the start of the connector segment. This also sets the highlight color for elements connected to the connector. The default color is red.
- Selected: Sets the connector line segment color for a connector that is selected. The default color is purple.
- Handle: Sets the edit handle color for the end of the connector segment, as well as for middle connector handles. The default color is black.

Overriding styles with object properties

You can override the default line segment settings for new connectors using the options on the Connector command bar and on the Connector Properties dialog box. Also, you can modify the start and end terminator styles on either the command bar or the dialog box.

Symbols overview

A frequently used drawing or drawing component can be stored as a symbol for easy reuse in other documents. You can redefine the scale, position, and orientation of the geometry after you place it. Reusing geometry makes drawing more productive and efficient, and helps you maintain accuracy and consistency throughout a project.

Blocks are similar to symbols in their creation, use, and reuse capabilities. They can be imported from AutoCAD or defined in Solid Edge and stored in global libraries. Blocks also have some advantages over symbols. For example, they can contain intelligence in the form of variable text that can be referenced in callouts and part lists. They are also "lighter" than symbols. A block can be selected from a library and placed in a document as the master block, and then different representations, or views, of that master block can be added to the same document without the overhead of additional geometry and data. For more information about blocks, see the Help topic, Using blocks.

Choosing a symbol placement method

The default method for placing a symbol in a document is Block. To change placement method, make sure that no symbol is selected on the Library tab, and then on the shortcut menu, use the Insert Symbol As shortcut command and select the placement option you want.

> **Note**
>
> If the options on the Insert Symbol As shortcut menu are not available, clear the Show Blocks option on the Library tab: .

To learn about the effect of choosing one placement method over another, see the Help topic, Symbol placement methods.

Placing symbols, images, and pictures

You can place a symbol in your document by selecting the symbol document from the Library tab, and then dragging the symbol onto the sheet. You also can copy and paste the symbol document into the draft document.

- When you drag a symbol, you can control where it is placed.
- When you copy and paste a symbol, it is automatically placed at the lower left corner of the drawing.

You can add images and pictures to draft, assembly, and part documents using the Insert Image command. You also can drag an image or picture onto the sheet, or copy and paste it.

- Image files are placed as image objects rather than symbols, but they can be sized, rotated, and moved after insertion.
- Like symbols, images can be embedded in the document or referenced as a link to an external file.

Creating symbols

The easiest way to create a symbol is to select the graphics you want to store as a symbol, then drag the graphics into the Library. Solid Edge automatically assigns a default document name to each symbol. You can rename the symbol later using the Rename command on the shortcut menu.

You can also use the Copy to Library command on the Edit menu to create a symbol. When you use the Copy to Library command, you define an origin for the symbol, which allows you to place the symbol precisely later. This command also allows you to define the symbol name you want before creating the symbol. With either method, the symbol graphics are placed in the active symbol library.

Since every new Solid Edge document contains the properties defined in the template that was used to create it, you might want to use different templates for symbol documents. Solid Edge includes basic symbol templates for metric and English unit symbols. To access them, click the More tab on the New dialog box when you create a new symbol document.

You can also create your own symbol template. Just create a new draft document using the New dialog box, implement any properties you want in every symbol, and then save the document as symbol.dft in the Template folder. It will be available on the General tab of the New dialog box the next time you create a new Solid Edge document.

Creating symbol libraries

Symbols can be stored in any folder on your computer or a computer on your network, but you should consider defining standards for where your company's symbols are stored to make it easier for everyone to use them. You define the active symbol library using the Look In option on the Library.

Manipulating symbols

You can manipulate a symbol much as you would manipulate other graphics. For example, you can edit its properties, move it, or copy it. When you manipulate a symbol, it behaves as a single unit.

Editing symbol properties

- When you edit the properties of a symbol placed using the Link, Embed, or Shared Embed method, the Symbol Properties dialog box is displayed for you to make changes.
- When you edit the properties of an object that you placed using the Geometry method, the Group Properties dialog box is displayed.
- When you edit the properties of an object that you placed using the Block method, the Block Properties dialog box is displayed.

Editing symbol graphics

- Symbols placed using the Geometry method are edited manually, as you would any 2D element.
- To edit the graphics of a symbol placed using the Link, Embed, or Shared Embed options, double-click the symbol on the drawing. The symbol document is opened

for you to edit the graphics. After you have made the changes you want, save and close the symbol document to return to the draft drawing sheet where the symbol was placed.

- To edit symbols placed using the Block method, double click the block graphics on the drawing sheet. The graphics are opened in a Draw In View window for editing. When you are done editing the block graphics, click Return to save your changes and return to the drawing sheet where the symbol was placed.

Symbol placement methods

Choosing a symbol placement method

Before you add a symbol to your document, you can specify which placement method is used. Placement method determines how a symbol behaves once it is on the drawing sheet.

- Geometry

  Note

  The Geometry option only works for draft documents and translatable documents, such as AutoCAD and Microstation. If you select the Geometry option and place another type of file, the placement option defaults to Embed.

- Link
- Embed
- Shared Embed
- Block

Inserting a symbol as geometry

This method copies the drawing elements directly into the active document without placing the elements as a symbol. The graphics are placed as a group and appear on the Groups page on the Library pane.

There is no limit to the number of symbols you can insert as geometry. Only the geometry and styles used are copied into the target draft file, so no unnecessary space is consumed.

Inserting a symbol as linked

Inserting a symbol as a link results in adding a reference to another file within the draft file. As the contents of the symbol file are not embedded in this draft file, there is no problem with increased file size. However, every time you move a draft file to another folder or machine, you must also move the linked symbol files.

Any change to the original symbol file will result in changes to all draft files that contain a link to that symbol. This can be useful in some workflows. However, you may find that you do not want a change to a symbol file to result in display changes in a released draft file.

Inserting a symbol as embedded

Inserting a symbol as embedded copies the symbol file into the draft file. When you drag a file from the Library onto the active sheet, a symbol object is created and the symbol file copied, intact, into a separate storage area within the target draft file.

Inserting a symbol as shared embedded

Inserting a symbol as shared embedded is the default mode, and includes elements of both the Embed and Link methods. It is like the Embed method in that the symbol file is copied into the target draft file. It is like the Link method in that additional insertions of the same symbol refer to the same embedding, rather than creating a new embedding. When you modify a shared embedded symbol by double-clicking the symbol on the draft sheet, all edits made to one instance will display in all other instances of the same shared embed. Because there is only one embedded file and each instance of a symbol refers to it, edits made in one are displayed in all instances of that symbol.

The shared embedded method avoids the potential disadvantages of both the embedded method and the linked method. Because the file is present, a link to it does not need to be maintained. Because the file is shared within the target draft file, multiple instances of the symbol can reuse it, so the target draft file stays smaller.

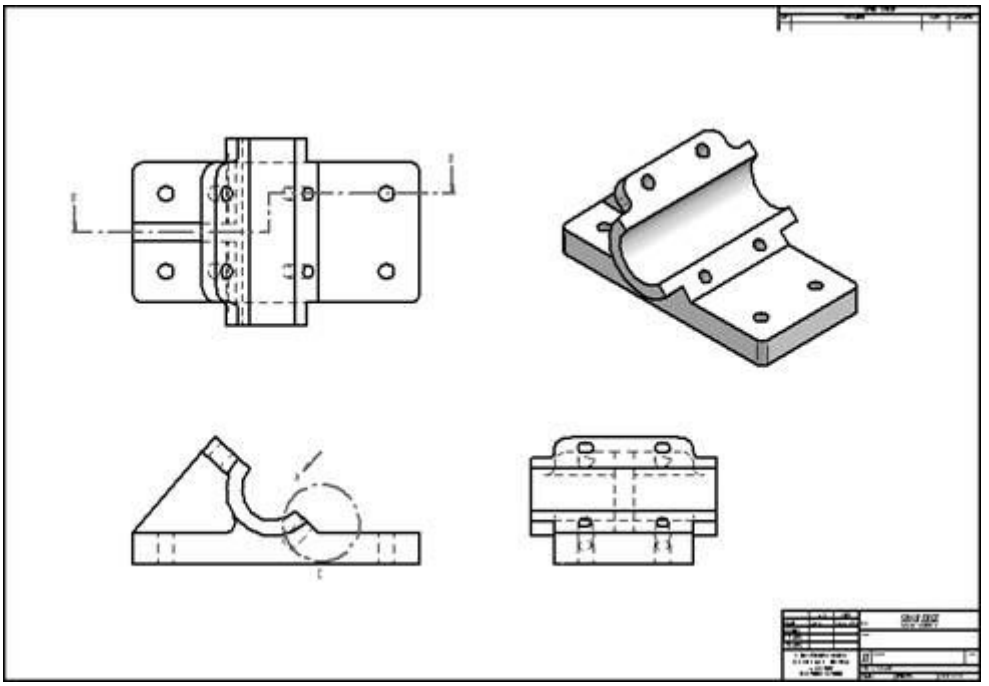
Inserting a symbol as a block

When you want to develop electrical, P&ID, and other diagrams, you should insert symbols as blocks. With blocks, you have access to the block, block label, and connector diagramming tools, as well as an extensive library of industry-standard 2D design blocks representing piping, electrical, and mechanical symbols. You also can access all of your AutoCAD-built blocks through on-the-fly conversion. The Solid Edge intelligent connectors quickly snap to keypoints on the blocks and create associative links that are easily updated.

For more information, see the Help topic, Using Blocks.

Activity: Drawing view placement

This activity covers the typical workflow for placing drawing views of a Solid Edge part. All drawings are different, but the basic approach to view creation, layout, manipulation, and editing is the same in all Solid Edge environments. In fact, the steps for placing assembly views are the same steps used for creating part views on a drawing sheet. This activity provides you with a basic understanding of the workflow used to create drawing sheets quickly and effectively.



Activity: Drawing view placement

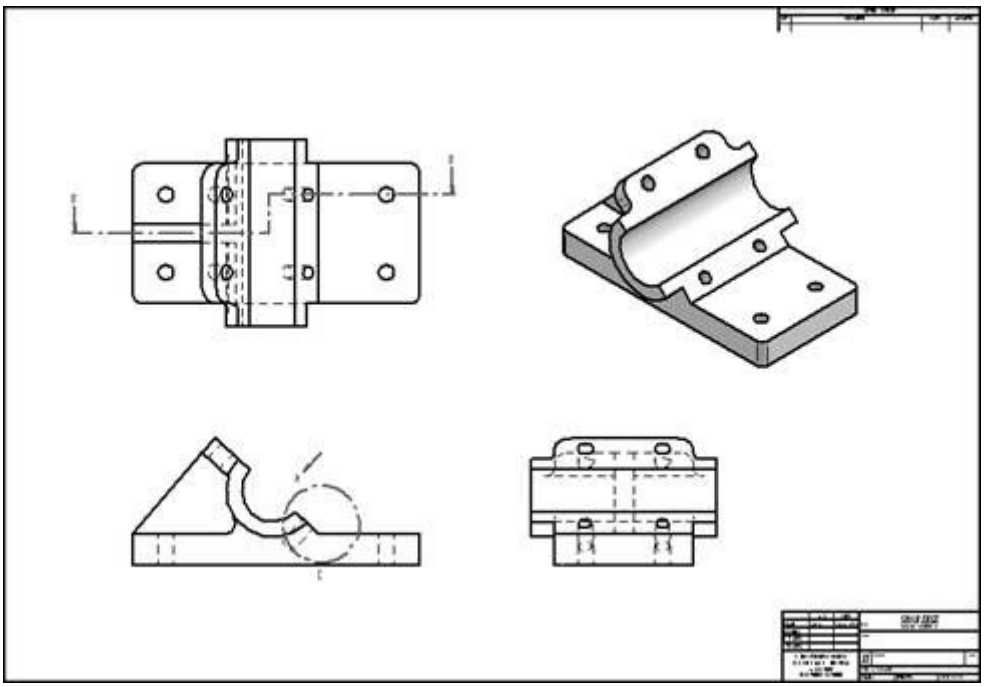
Overview

This activity covers the typical workflow for placing drawing views of a Solid Edge part. All drawings are different, but the basic approach to view creation, layout, manipulation, and editing is the same in all Solid Edge environments. In fact, the steps for placing assembly views are the same steps used for creating part views on a drawing sheet. This activity provides you with a basic understanding of the workflow used to create drawing sheets quickly and effectively.

Objectives

After completing this activity, you will be able to:

- Place multiple views of a part on a drawing sheet.
- Manipulate the views.
- Shade a drawing view.
- Modify drawing view properties.
- Create principal drawing views.
- Create Auxiliary views.
- Create Section views.
- Create Detail views.



Create a draft document

Create a new ISO draft document.

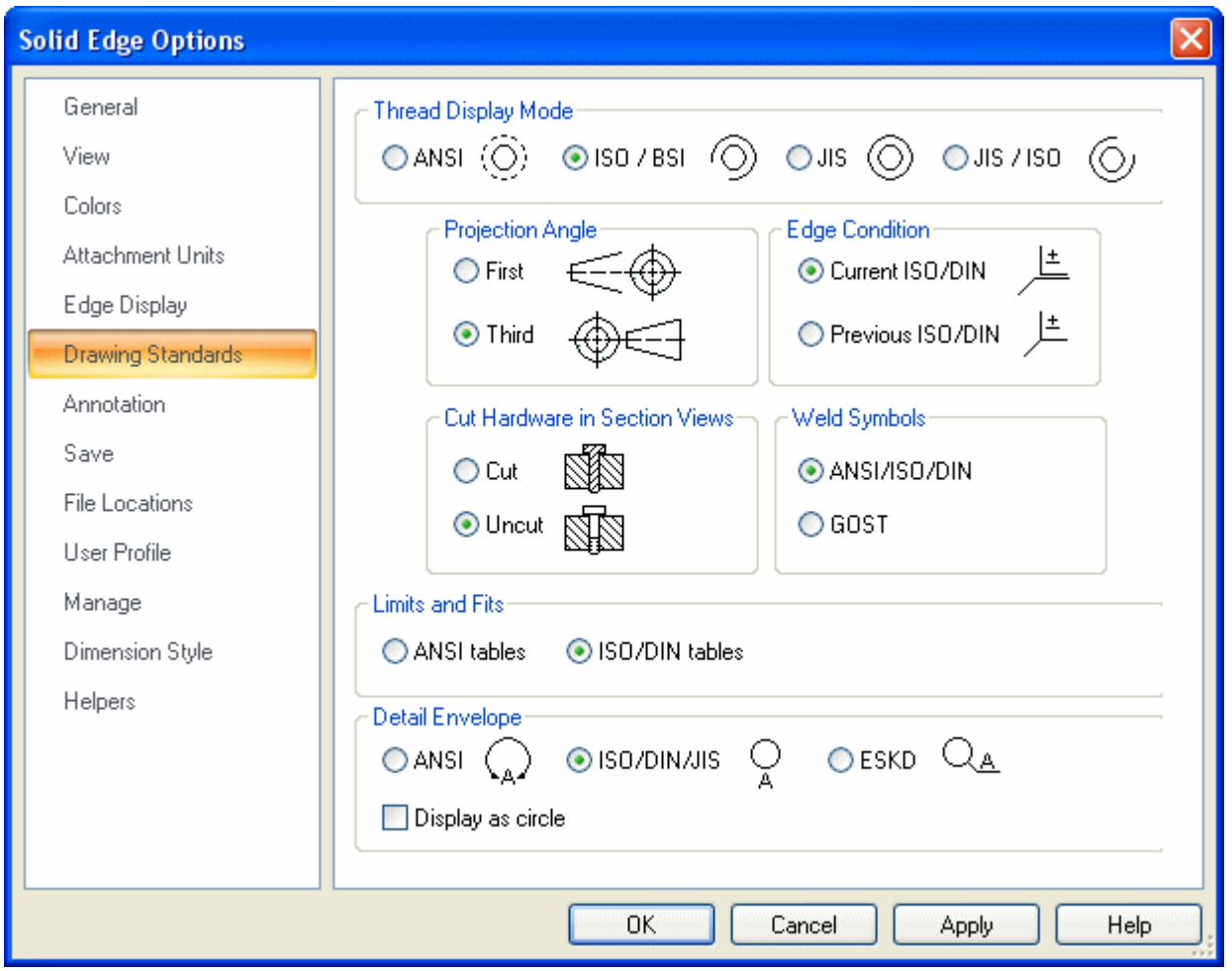
- Choose the Application button® New® ISO Draft.

Setup the background and sheet size for the drawing sheet

- Position the cursor over the *Sheet1* tab (lower left corner) and right-click. On the shortcut menu, click Sheet Setup.
- On the Sheet Setup dialog box, click the *Background* page. Set the background sheet to A1-Sheet. This sets the background and sheet size for the drafting sheet. Check the Show background button.
- Click Save Defaults to save A1-Sheet as the default border/background for this document. By saving defaults now, any new sheets created in this file will automatically default to A1-Sheet.
- Click OK.
- Choose the Fit command to display the entire drawing sheet in the active window.

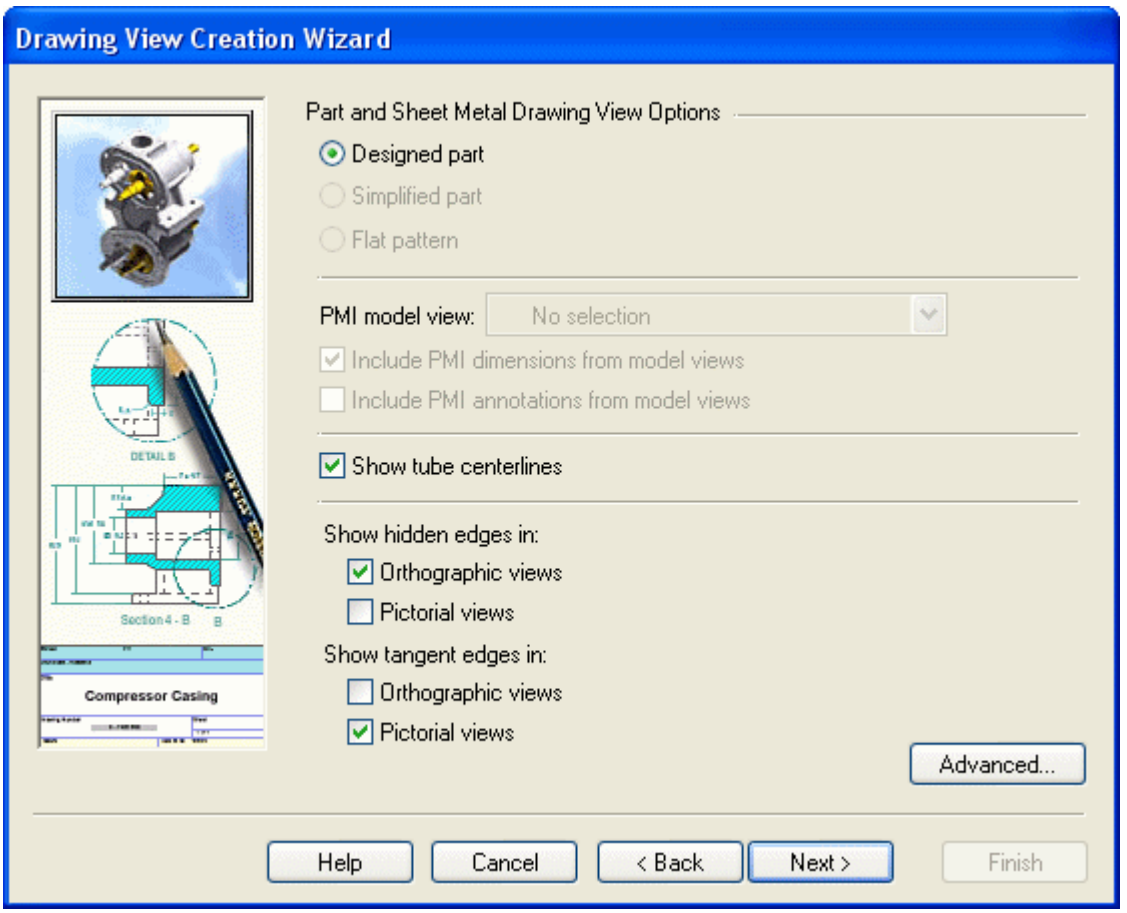
Select the drawing standards for the drawing sheet

- Click the Application button.
- Click the Solid Edge Options button.
- Click Drawing Standards. On the Drawing Standards page, set the Projection Angle to Third and the Thread Display Mode to ISO/BSI, and then click OK.



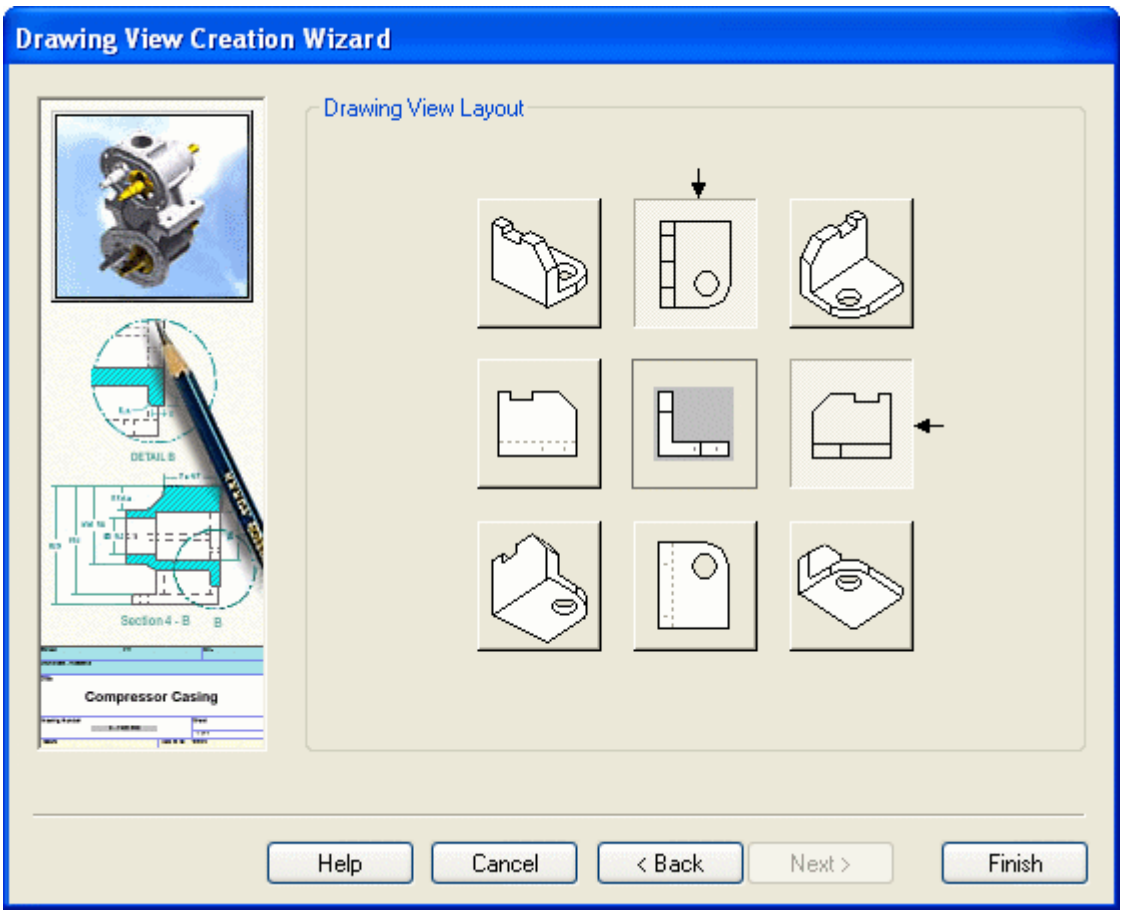
Select views in the Drawing View Creation Wizard

- On the Home tab® Drawing Views group, choose the View Wizard command .
- On the Select Model dialog box, select *bearblk.par* and click Open.
- In the Drawing View Creation Wizard, set the options as shown, and then click Next.



- Select *front* as the named view for the drawing view orientation. Click Next.

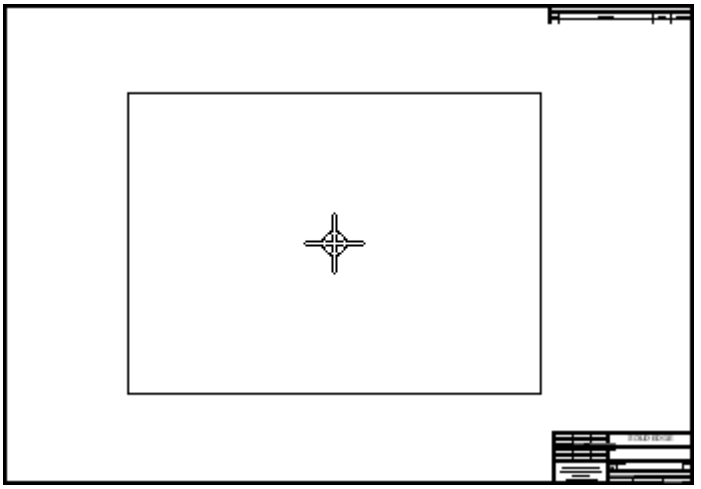
- In the Drawing View Layout dialog box, click the Right and Top view buttons as shown, and click Finish.

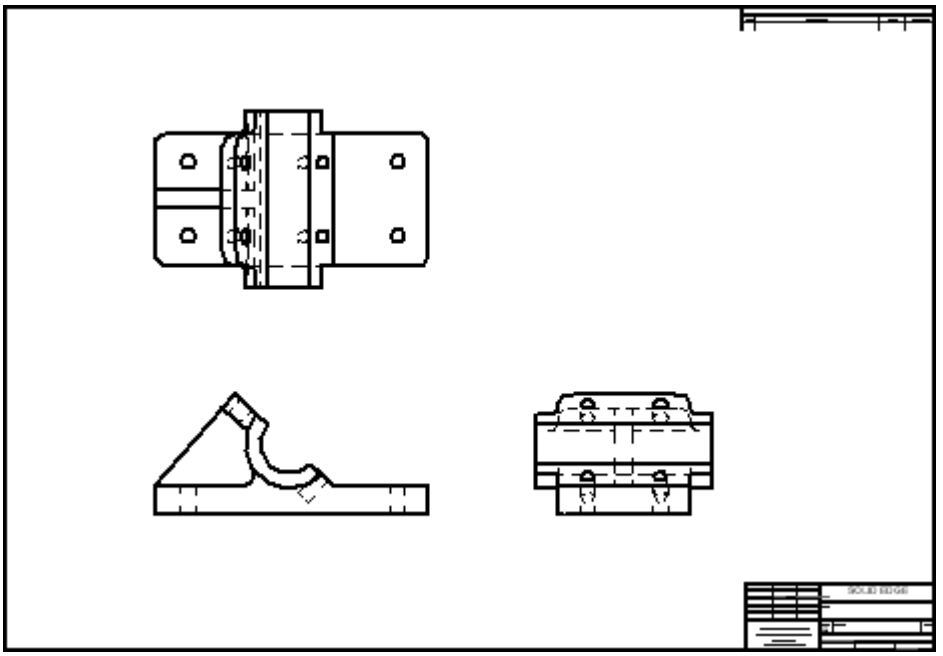


Place the views selected on to the drawing sheet

- The drawing scale is displayed in the command bar. Make sure it is set to 1:1. Solid Edge automatically assigns the scale, which makes the views as large as possible and still fit on the drawing sheet.

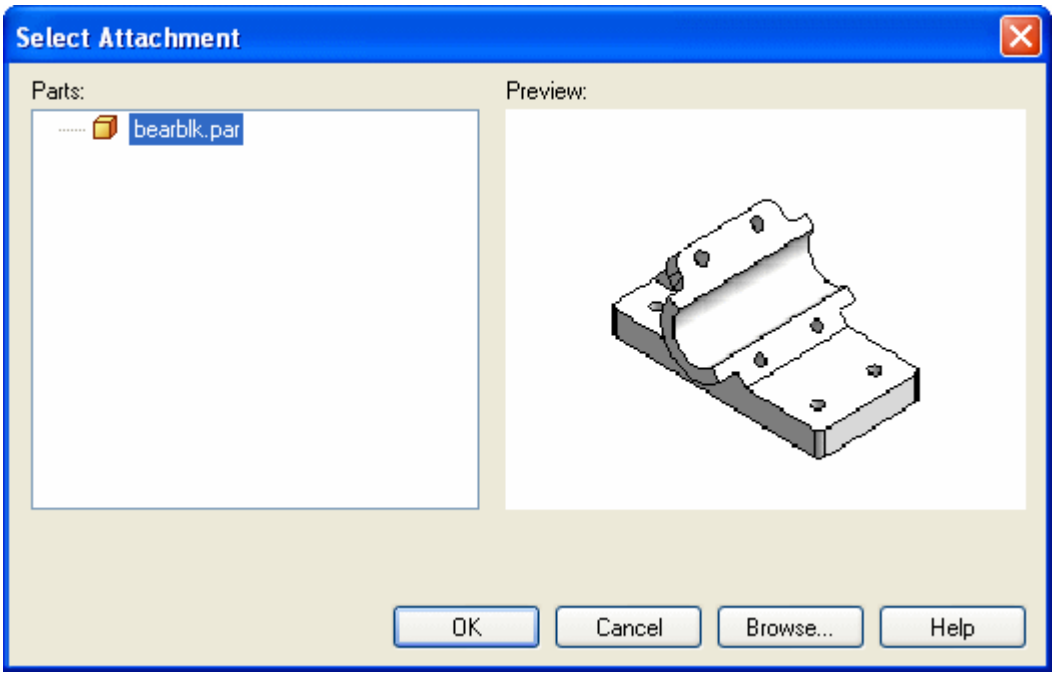
- A rectangle is attached to the cursor. Move the rectangle to the approximate center of the sheet, and click.



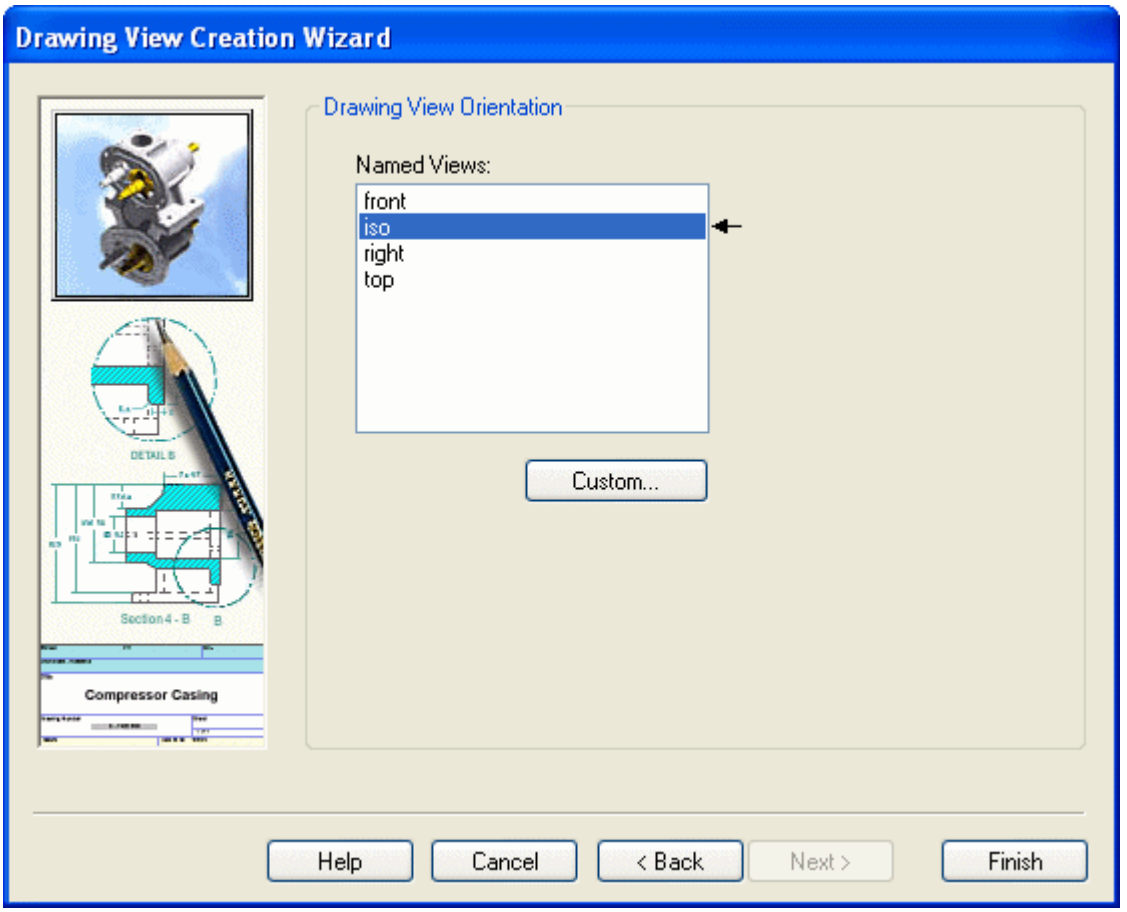


Place an additional part view on the drawing sheet

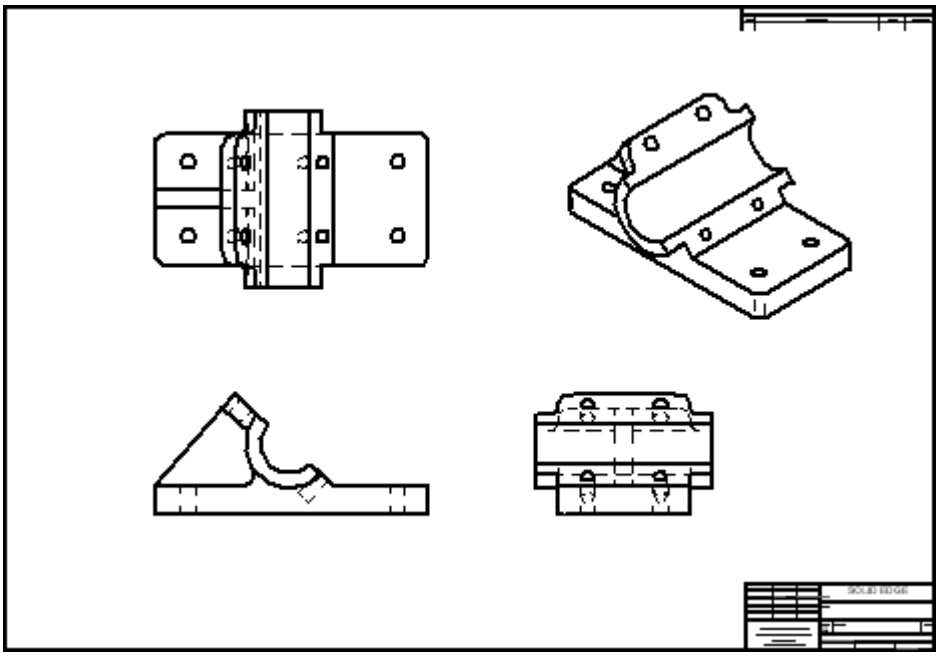
- Choose the View Wizard command .
- On the Select Attachment dialog box, select *bearblk.par*, and click OK. This enables the placement of another part view.



- Proceed through the Drawing View Creation Wizard as before, and when prompted for Named Views, click *iso*, then click Finish.



- In the command bar, set the view scale to 1:1. Then move the cursor, and click to place the view in the upper right corner of the sheet, as shown.



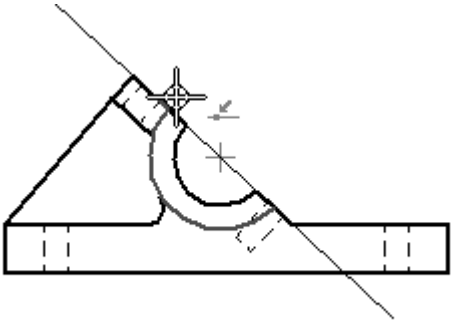
Save the drawing file

- On the Quick Access toolbar, click Save, and in the Save As dialog box, save the file as *bearblk.dft*.

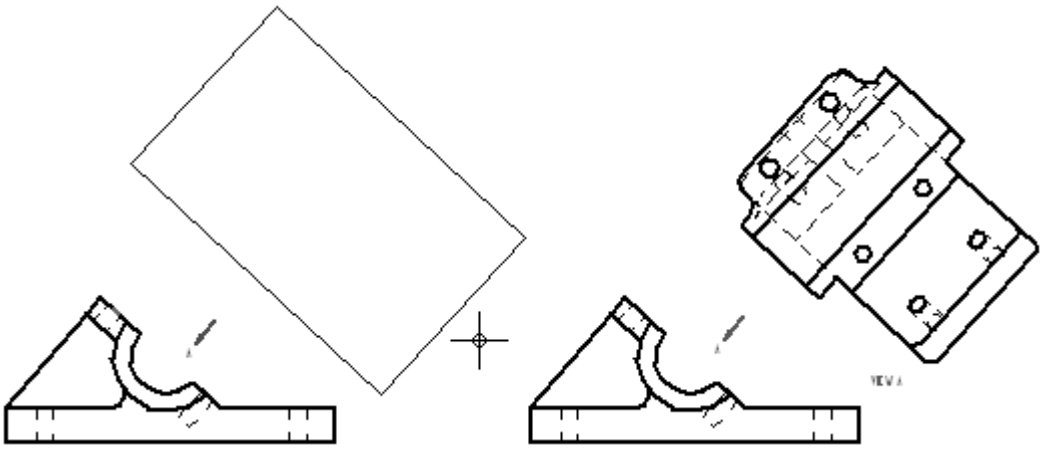
Place an auxiliary view on the drawing sheet

- On the Home tab® Drawing Views group, choose the Auxiliary command . Notice that a fold line is now attached to the cursor. If IntelliSketch locates a point, the line will disappear. Move the cursor until IntelliSketch ceases to locate a point and the line displays.

- Move the cursor across the front drawing view until the fold line attaches to the model edge as shown, then click to select this edge as the folding line.

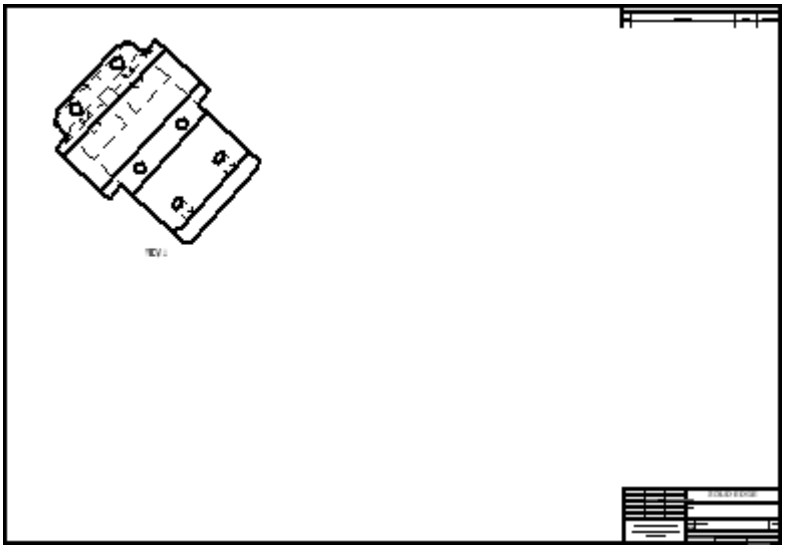


- Position the view as shown and click. This view may overlap other views because of limited space on the drawing sheet. Move the view in the next step.



Create a new drawing sheet and move the auxiliary view to the new sheet

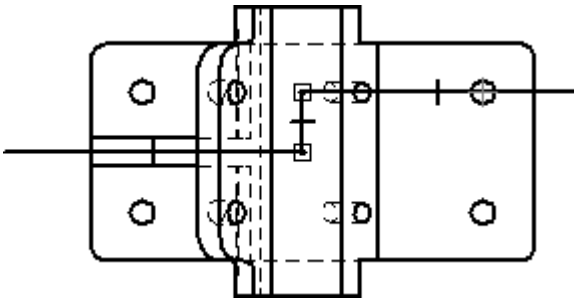
- Position the cursor over the Sheet1 tab in the lower left corner of the screen, and right-click to display the shortcut menu.
- On the shortcut menu, click Insert to create a new drawing sheet. This adds a new sheet (Sheet2) to the draft document, and Sheet2 displays. To switch between sheets, click on the tab of the sheet you want to switch to. The sheet tabs are found at the lower left corner of the window.
- Click the Sheet1 tab. This returns the view to the first drawing sheet in the draft document.
- Click the Select tool command, and position the cursor over the auxiliary view so that the view highlights and then right-click. On the shortcut menu, click Properties.
- In the High Quality View Properties dialog box, on the General page, change the sheet from Sheet1 to Sheet2, and click OK. This moves the auxiliary view to Sheet2.
- Click the Sheet2 tab to make Sheet2 the active sheet.
- Drag the auxiliary view towards the upper left corner, as shown.



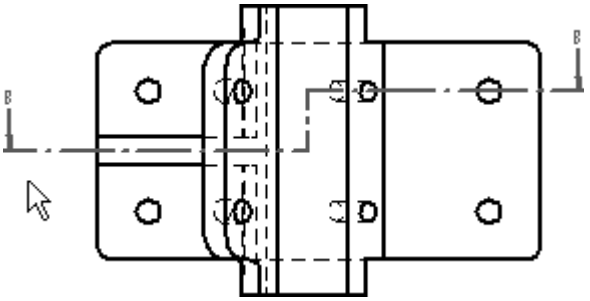
Create a cutting plane for a section view

Place a cutting plane in the top view. This cutting plane will be used to create a section view.

- Click the Sheet1 tab to make it the active sheet.
- Choose the Cutting Plane command .
- Select the Top view as the drawing view where the cutting plane will be drawn. The window changes to the Cutting Plane Line mode.
- Click the Zoom Area button, and define a zoom area around the Top view.
- Choose the Line command to draw a profile line for the cutting plane .
- Draw the sequence of lines shown in the following figure. Lock into the midpoint of the left vertical edge and the center point for the upper right hole. Use IntelliSketch relationships to locate the keypoints. If the keypoints do not highlight, make sure the *Mid* and *Center* options are checked in the IntelliSketch group. Move the cursor over the elements (without selecting them) to activate them for keypoint location. A dashed line appears when you are in line, horizontally or vertically, with the midpoint or center point of the circle.



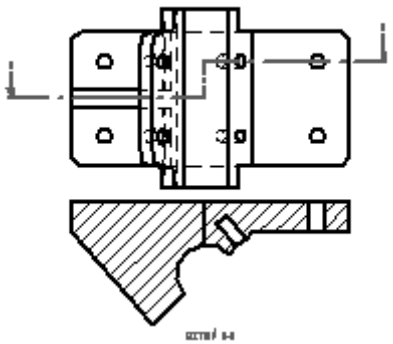
- On the Home tab® Close group, choose the Close Cutting Plane command .
- To complete the direction step, position the cursor below the drawing view, and click to position the cutting plane arrows as shown.



Create a section view

Create a section view using the cutting plane defined in the previous step.

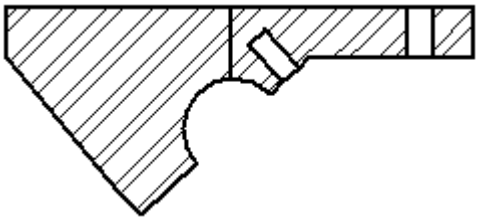
- Fit the view.
- In the Drawing Views group, choose the Section command .
- Select the cutting plane line created on the top view as cutting plane from which the section view will be created.
- On the Section view command bar, click the Model Display Settings option .
- In the dialog box, clear the *Hidden edge style* option box. Click OK on the message box and then click OK on the Drawing Properties dialog box. This turns off hidden edges in the cross section view.
- Place the cross section below the top view as shown.



- Use the Properties dialog box to move the section view to Sheet2.
- Click the Sheet2 tab to view the second sheet. Reposition the section view, below the auxiliary view.

Change the cross-hatch properties of the section view

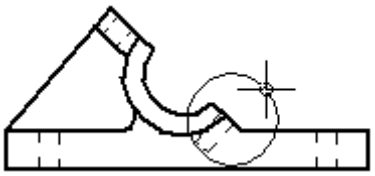
- To change the cross-hatch properties, select the view, then right-click to display the shortcut menu. Click Properties from the shortcut menu.
- In the High Quality View Properties dialog box, click the Display page.
- Under the *Show fill style* box, uncheck the *Derive from part* box. On the *Show fill style* list, select ANSI32(Steel) and then click OK on the message box and then click OK on the dialog box.



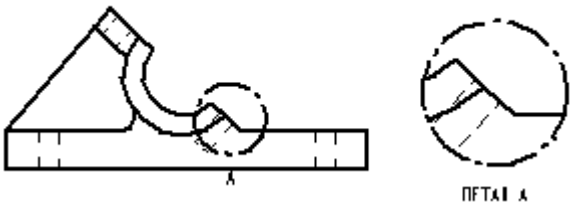
- Save the document.

Place a detail view off of the front view

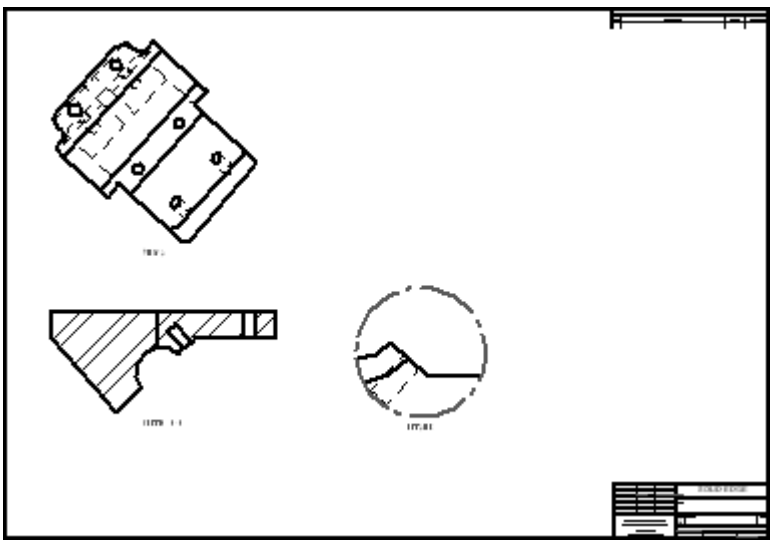
- Return to Sheet1.
- Choose the Detail command .
- Click to place the center of the detail view circle on the front view, and then click again to define the radius of the detail view circle. The view circle should resemble the one shown in the following illustration.



- Move the large circle attached to the cursor away from the front view. Click to place the detail view as shown below.

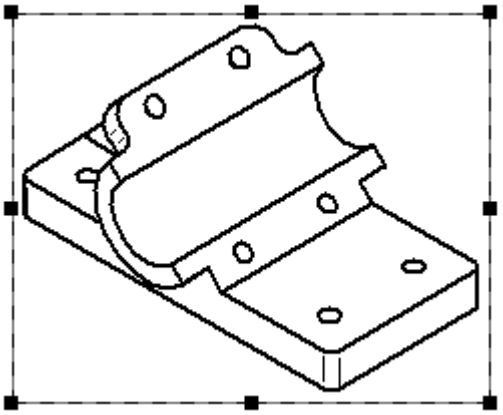


- Move the detail view to Sheet2 by changing the view properties.
- Switch to Sheet2.
- On Sheet2, position the detail view to the right of the auxiliary and section views as shown.

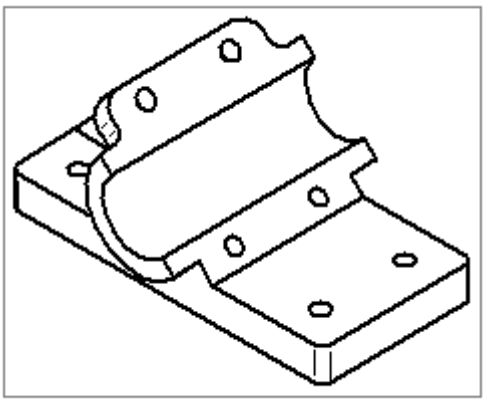


Change the display of a drawing view to shaded

- Return to Sheet1.
- Click on the iso drawing view.

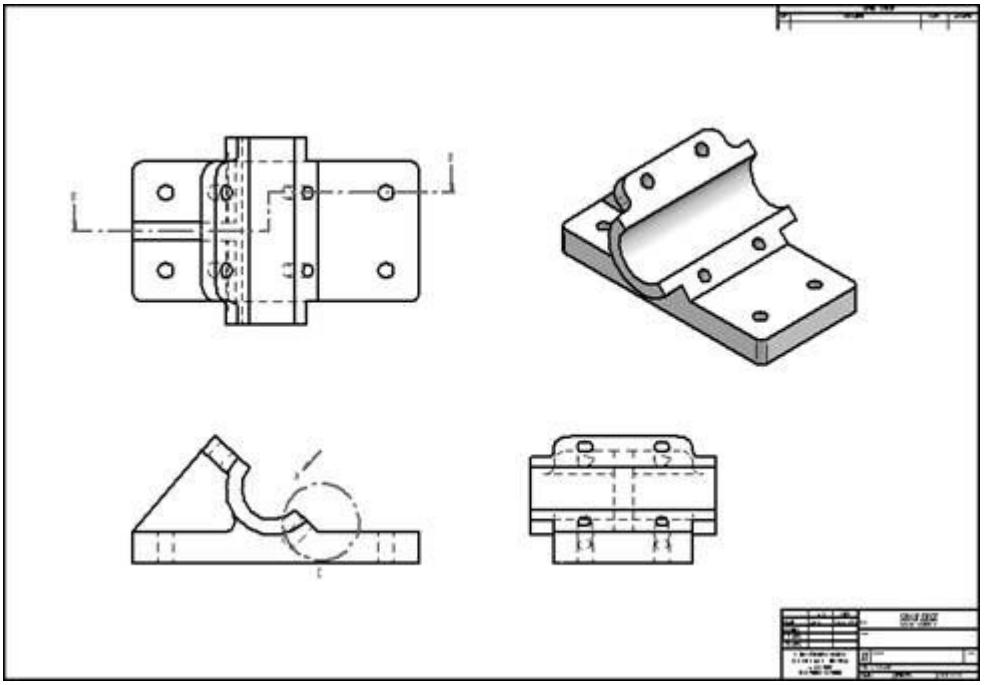


- On the Select command bar, notice the shading options list for the display of the selected drawing view. Choose the Grayscale with Visible Edges command .
- Click in an open area of the drawing sheet to deselect the iso drawing view. Notice the out-of-date border around the iso drawing view.



- In the drawing Views group, choose the Update Views command .

- The iso drawing view now displays as shaded.



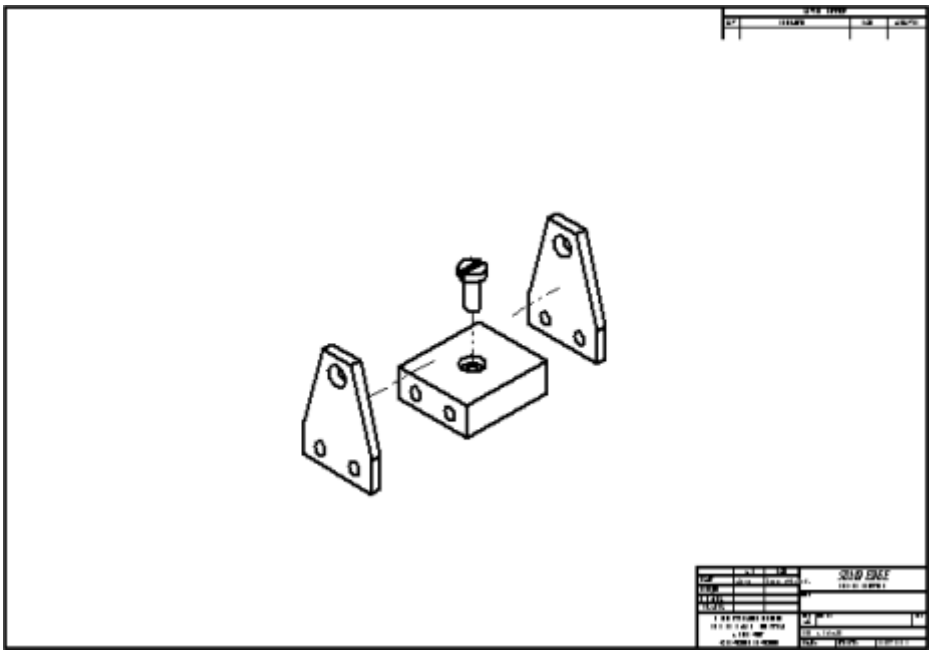
- This completes the activity. Save and close the file.

Activity summary

In this activity you learned how to place drawing views, auxiliary views, section views and detail views. You also learned how to use drawing sheets to organize the drawing views.

Activity: Assembly drawing creation

This activity demonstrates the method for creating a drawing of an exploded assembly view.



Activity: Assembly drawing creation

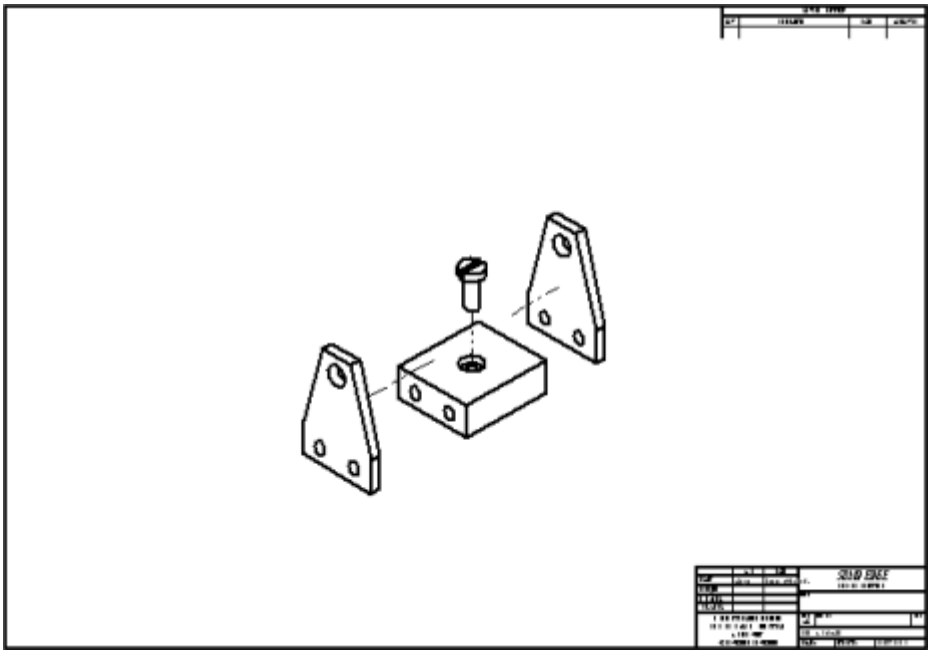
Overview

This activity demonstrates the method for creating a drawing of an exploded assembly view.

Objectives

After completing this activity, you will be able to:

- Place drawing views of an assembly.
- Create a drawing view that uses an exploded view assembly display configuration.



Create a new draft document

Create a new ISO draft document.

- Choose the Application button® New® ISO Draft.

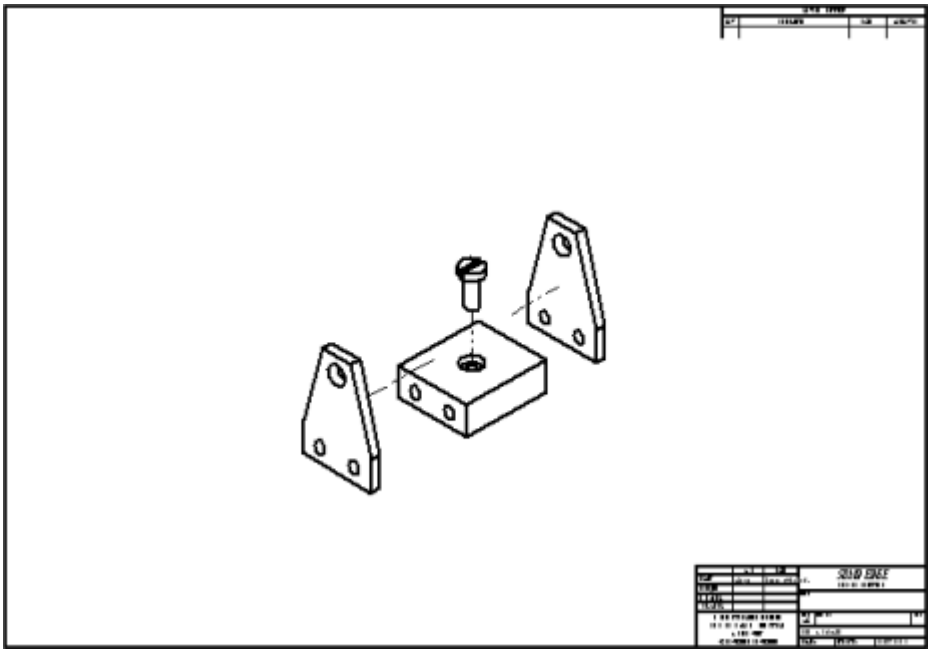
Define views to place on the drawing sheet

Use the drawing view wizard to define the type of view to place on the drawing sheet.

- Choose the View Wizard command.
- Set the Files of type: field to Assembly Document (*.asm).
- On the Select Model dialog box, select *carrier.asm* located in the training folder and click Open.
- On the Drawing View Creation Wizard, select *exploded view* from the list of Configuration or PMI model view and then click Finish.
- Use background sheet A1-sheet and a view scale of 1:1.

Place an exploded assembly view

- Place the drawing view in the center of the drawing sheet.



- Click Save and save the file as *mycarrier.dft* in the training folder.

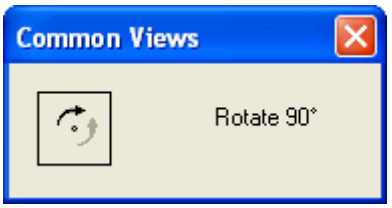
Place a front view on a new sheet

- On the Sheet tab, right-click and then click *Insert* to insert Sheet2.
- Choose the View Wizard command. The dialog box is different than the first time you executed the command because at this point you have placed a view of the assembly.
- On the Select Attachment dialog box, click OK. On the Drawing View Creation Wizard, make sure that no configuration is selected and click Next.
- On the Drawing View Orientation dialog box, click the *Custom* option.
- While in the Custom Orientation window, press the Home key to display the Isometric view.
- Click the Shaded with VHL Overlay button.

- Click the Common Views button.

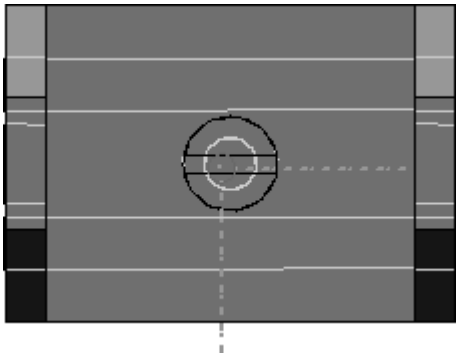
- Click Show face view as shown.

- Click Rotate 90° clockwise as shown.

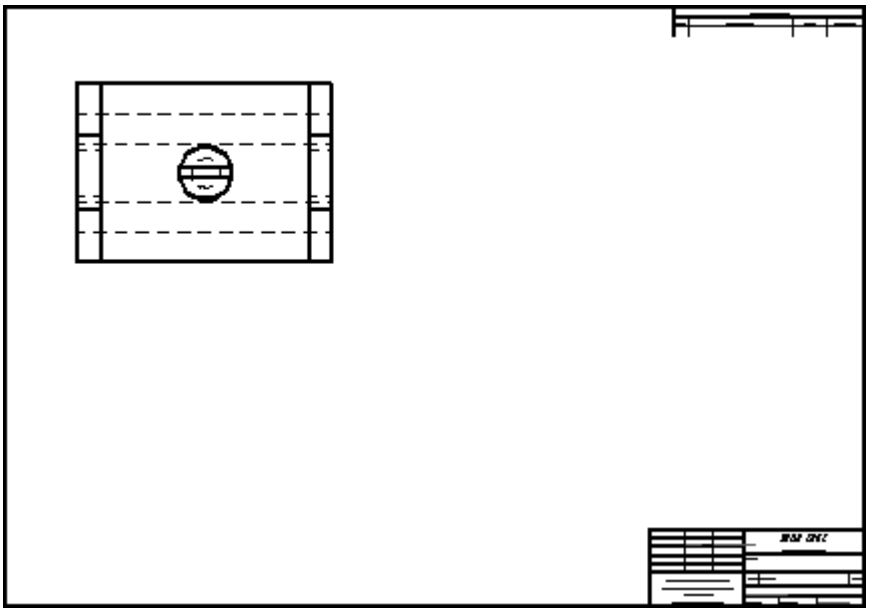


- Close the Common Views dialog box by clicking the X in the upper right corner.

- The image below shows the resulting view.



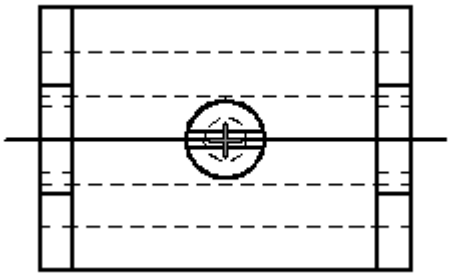
- Click Close in the Custom Orientation window, and then on the Drawing View Layout page, click Finish.
- Change the scale to 1:1.
- Place the view in the upper left region of the drawing sheet.



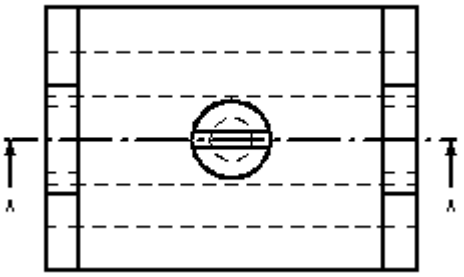
Draw a cutting plane for a section view

Draw a cutting plane on the front view that will be used to create a section view.

- Choose the Cutting Plane command .
- Click the drawing view just placed and construct a cutting line through the center of the view. The cutting plane will look similar to the illustration below.



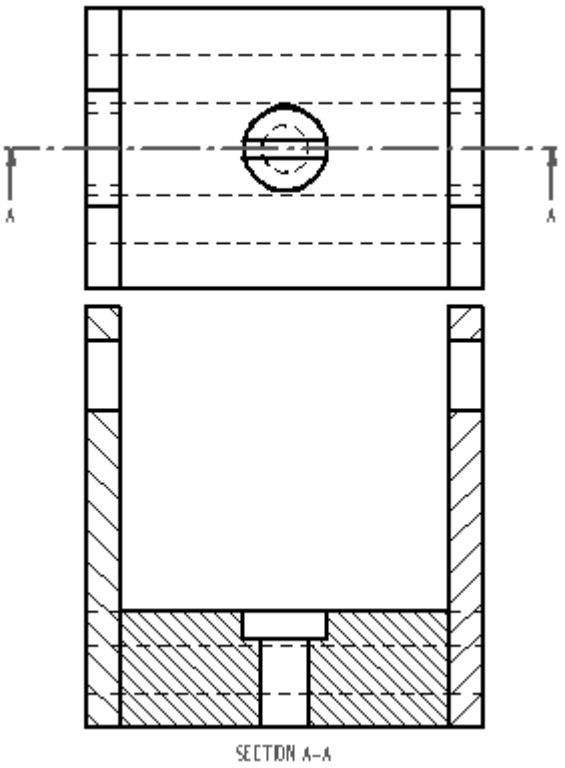
- Choose the Close Cutting Plane command .
- Move the cursor and click on the upper side of the cutting plane to define the cutting direction.



Create a section view

Create a section view using the cutting plane defined in the previous step.

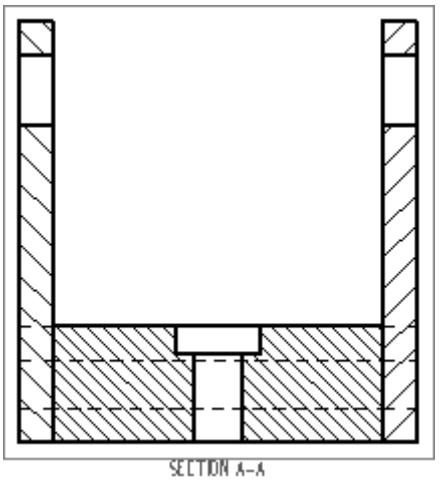
- Choose the Section command.
- Click the cutting line just constructed.
- Click the Model Display Settings option .
- On the Drawing View Properties dialog box, expand the parts list for the assembly by clicking the + symbol next to *carrier.asm*. This shows all of the parts in the assembly. If the assembly contained subassemblies, these would also display.
- Click the Part named *mtgpin.par:1*, and then uncheck the Show box. This excludes the part from the sectioning process.
- Click OK and finish placing the section view below the top view. Your drawing sheet should look similar to the following illustration. Notice that the mounting pin (*mtgpin.par*) is hidden in the section view.



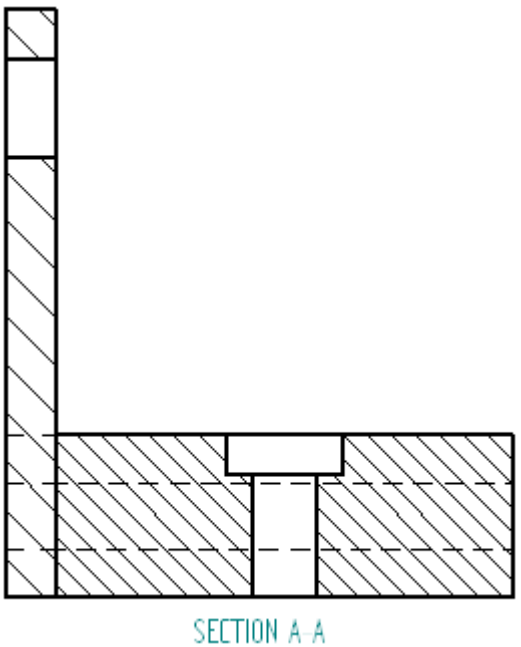
Hide a part in the drawing view

Hide another part in the drawing view. Once this is done, an out-of-date border will appear.

- Click the Select Tool and select the new section view. Right-click on it, and click Properties on the shortcut menu. On the High Quality View Properties dialog box, on the Display page, repeat the previous steps to hide *splate.par:1* and click OK. The section view should now display an out-of-date border.



- Click the Update Views command . The part file named *splate.par:1* is now hidden in the section view of the assembly and the out-of-date border is no longer displayed.



Adjust the parts display

Adjust the displayed parts again. This demonstrates how to turn on and off the display of parts in the drawing view.

- Click the Select Tool and select the section view again. Right-click on the section view, and click Properties on the shortcut menu. Click the Display page, expand the parts list for *carrier.asm*, show all parts except *mtgpin.par*, and click OK.
- Choose Update Views to update the section view. *Splate.par:1* now displays in the section view.
- This completes the activity. Save and close the file.

Activity summary

In this activity you learned how to creating a drawing of an exploded assembly view. You also learned how to control the display of assembly parts on the drawing.

Activity: Quicksheet

A quicksheet is a draft document that contains drawing views that are not linked to a model. When you drag and drop a model file from the Library tab of PathFinder or Windows Explorer onto a quicksheet template, the views populate with the model. Quicksheet templates can only be created using the Create Quicksheet Template command.

This activity shows the process for using a quicksheet.

Activity: Quicksheet

Overview

A quicksheet is a draft document that contains drawing views that are not linked to a model. When you drag and drop a model file from the Library tab of PathFinder or Windows Explorer onto a quicksheet template, the views populate with the model. Quicksheet templates can only be created using the Create Quicksheet Template command.

This activity will show you the process for using a quicksheet.

Objectives

After the activity, you will be able to:

- Create a quicksheet template.
- Populate a quicksheet template.
- Place a user-defined quicksheet in the Quicksheet template folder.

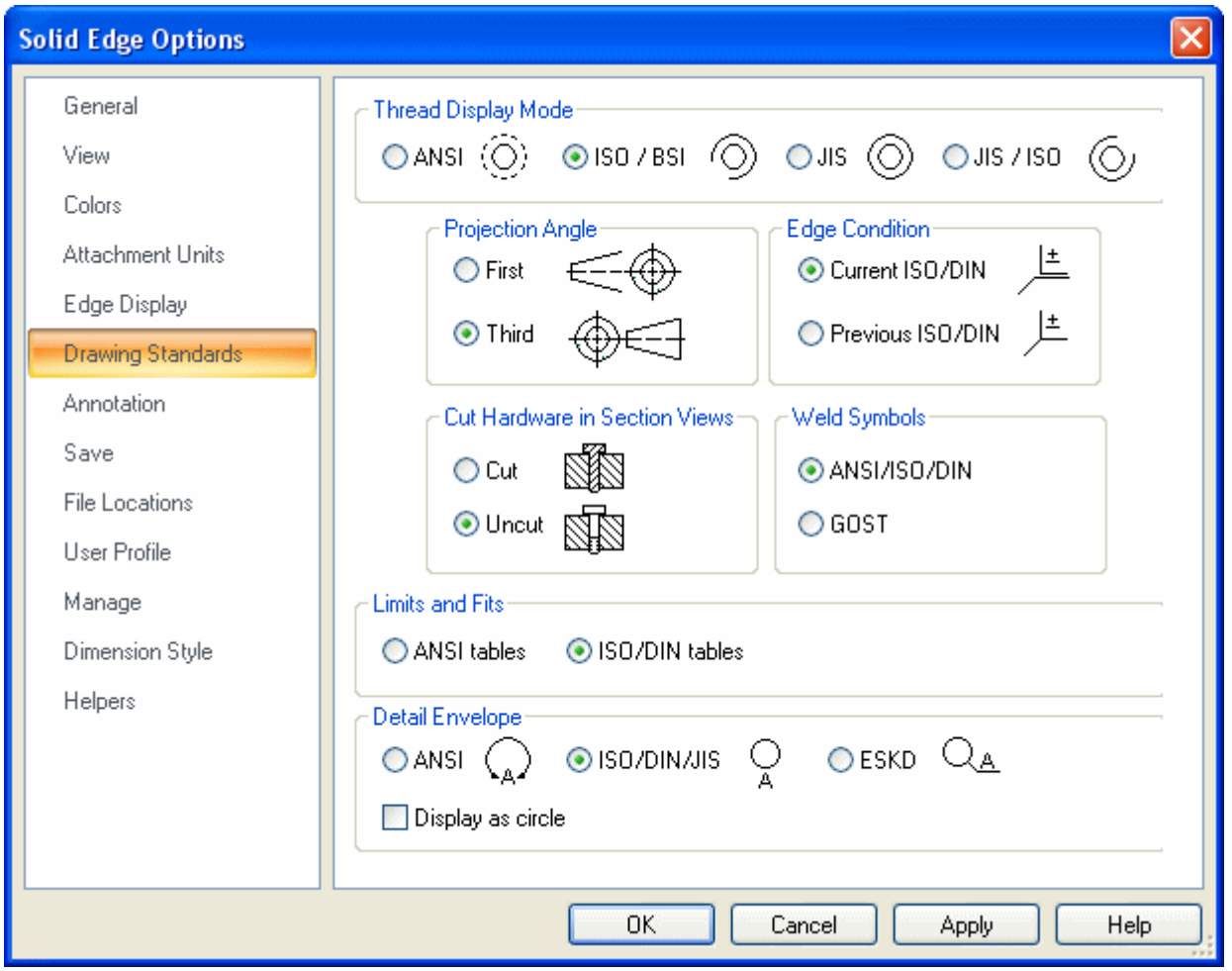
Create a new draft document

Create a new ISO draft document.

- Choose the Application button® New® ISO Draft.

Set the drawing standards

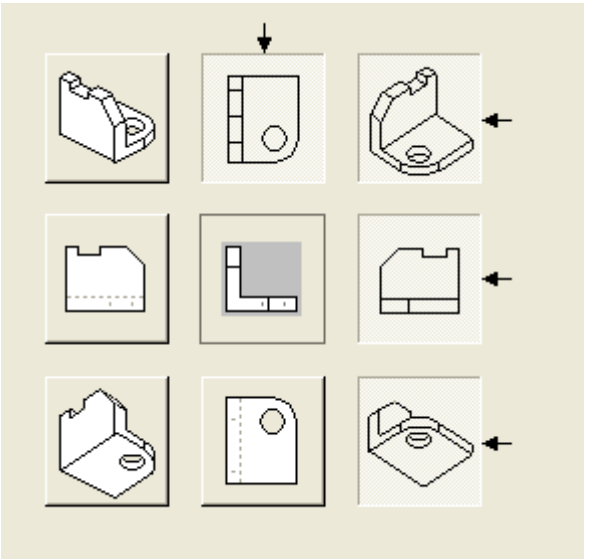
- Click the Application button.
- Click the Solid Edge Options button.
- Click Drawing Standards. On the Drawing Standards page, set the Projection Angle to Third and the Thread Display Mode to ISO/BSI, and then click OK.

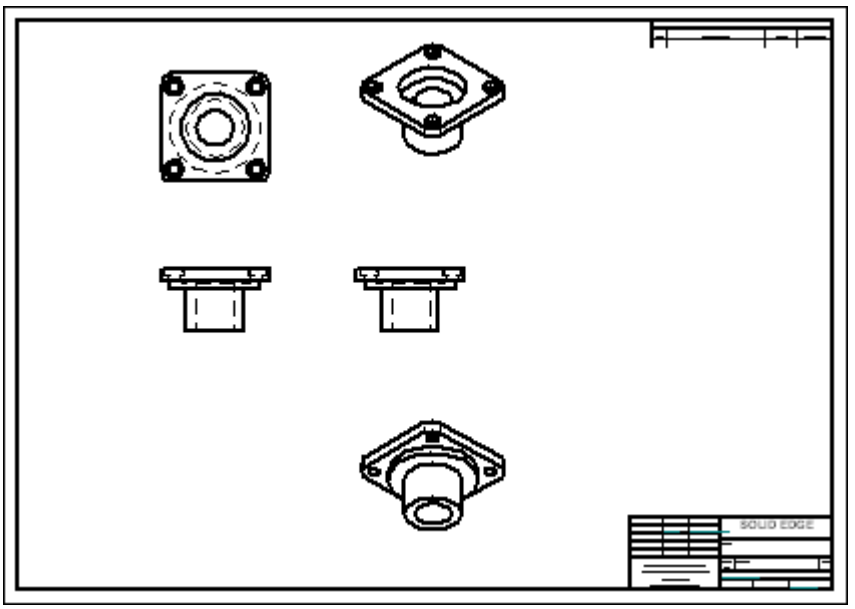


Define the drawing views

Use the Drawing View Wizard to place a drawing view on the new sheet.

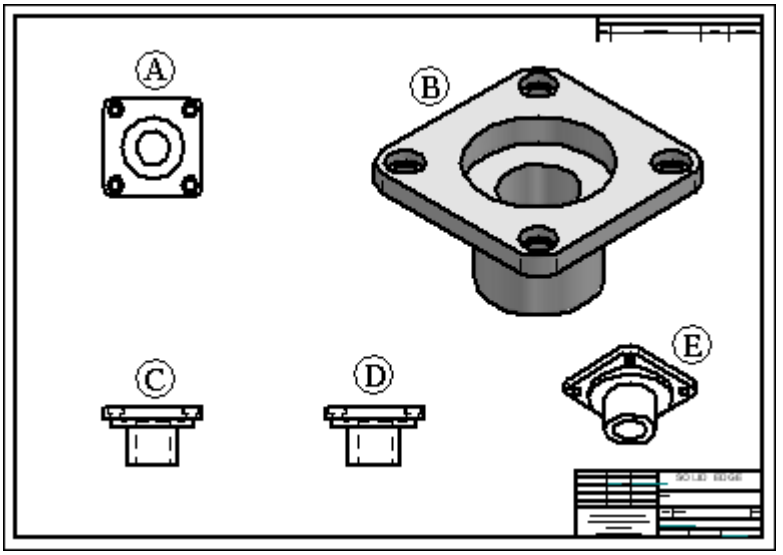
- Click the View Wizard command.
- On the Select Model dialog box, make sure the Look in: field is set to the class working folder, and set the Files of Type option to Part Document (*.par).
- Select *dr_plate.par* and click Open.
- Place the five views shown on the drawing sheet at a scale of 2:1. Use *front* drawing view option. Move the views so they fit on the sheet.



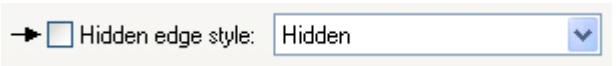


Arrange the views on the sheet

- Arrange the views as shown and edit the view properties.



View (A) – Hidden edge style turned off.



View (B) – Scale = 5:1, Shaded with Visible Edges.

Note

This drawing view configuration will be used as a quicksheet template.

Create a quicksheet template

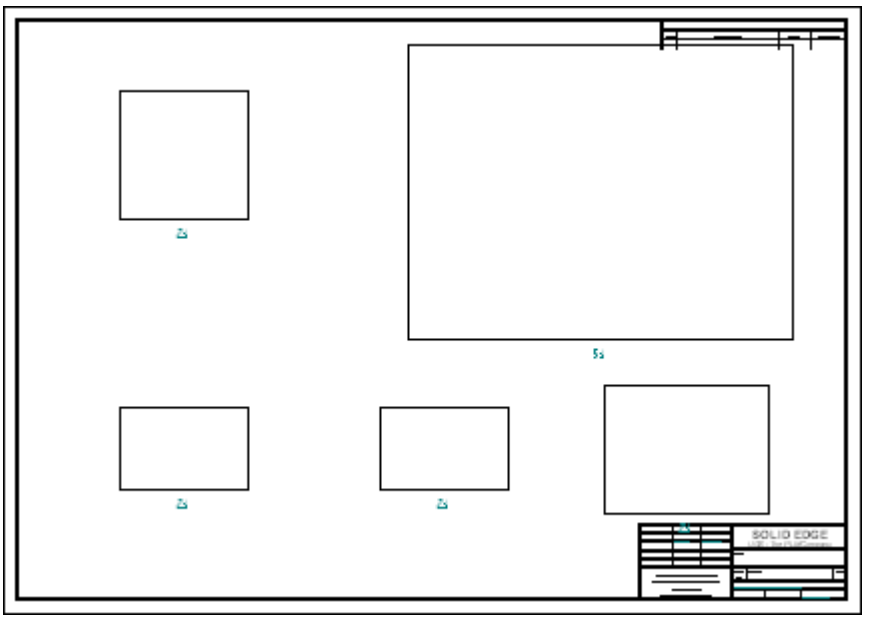
- Click the Application button and then choose the Create Quicksheet Template command.

  Note

  Command empties all drawing views and parts lists, then converts the file into a Quicksheet Template.

- Click Yes in the Create Quicksheet Template warning box

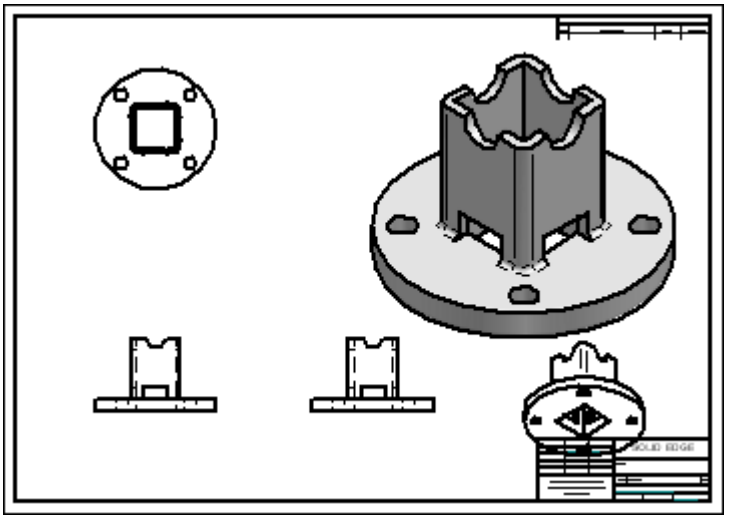
- In the Save As dialog box, save the template as *quicksheet_a.dft* in the training folder.



Populate a quicksheet template

The template *quicksheet_a.dft* is still open. You will populate this template.

- In PathFinder (Library tab), drag *dr_plate2.par* into the template.
- The results are shown.



Note

Notice in the results that a view overlaps the title block. The views will need to be adjusted to fix this.

- Save the file as *dr_plate2.dft* and then make the necessary adjustments.
- Close the file.

Place the new quicksheet template in the Solid Edge templates folder

Note

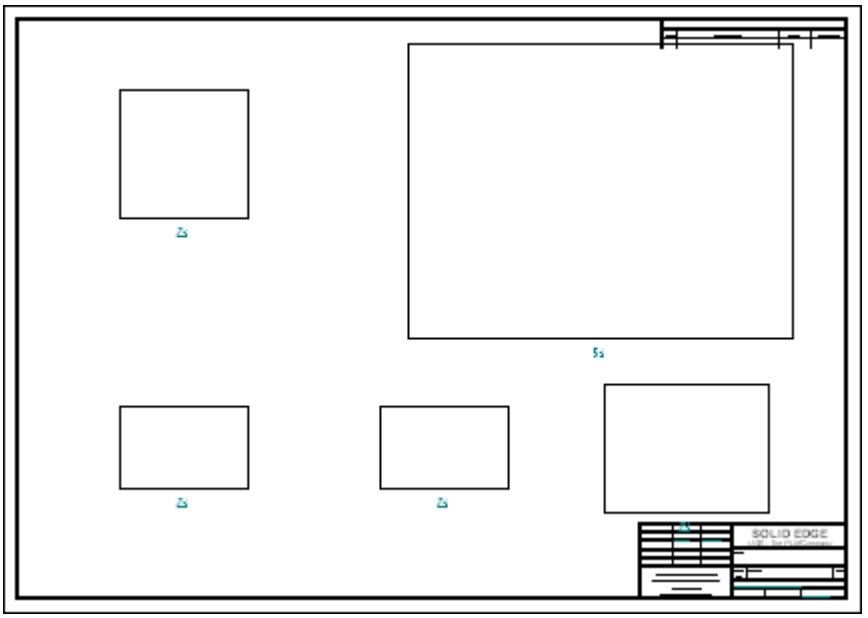
If you decide that the template will be used in a common workflow for similar type parts, it is recommended that it be added to the Solid Edge template folder for easy access.

- Copy *quicksheet_a.dft* to the Solid Edge ST4/Template/Quicksheet folder.

Create a new draft file using the quicksheet template

Create a new ISO draft file using the quicksheet template just added to the Solid Edge ST3 templates folder.

- Click the Application button.
- Click New.
- In the New dialog box, click the Quicksheet page. Select *quicksheet_a.dft* and then click OK.



- Close all files. This concludes the quicksheet activity.

Activity summary

In this activity you learned how to create and populate a quicksheet template. This tool is provided to help streamline the drawing production workflow. When you know the views needed and view property settings for similar type parts, quicksheets can reduce repetitive steps required for each drawing created.

Activity: Broken view creation

This activity covers the use of the Broken View command.

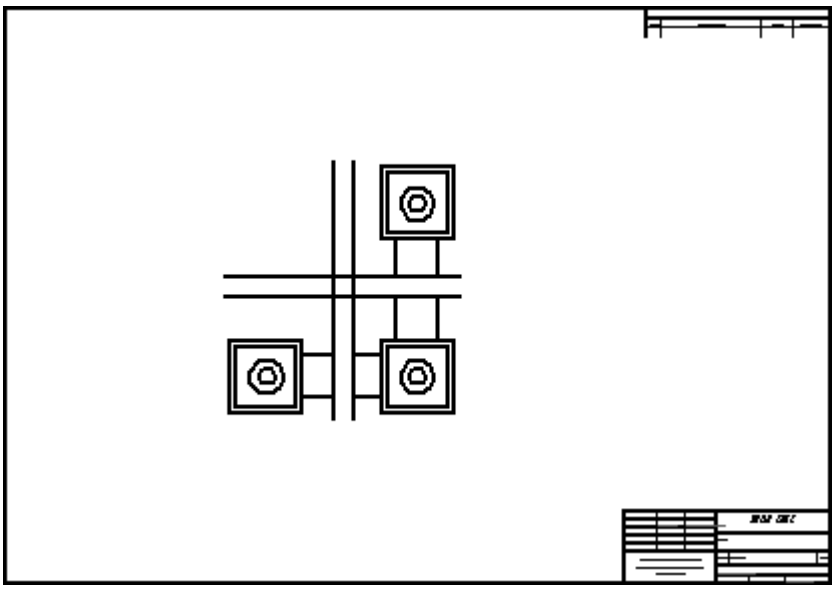
Activity: Broken view creation

Overview

This activity covers the use of the Broken View command.

Objectives

After completing this activity, you will be able to: create a broken drawing view of a part on a draft sheet in Solid Edge.



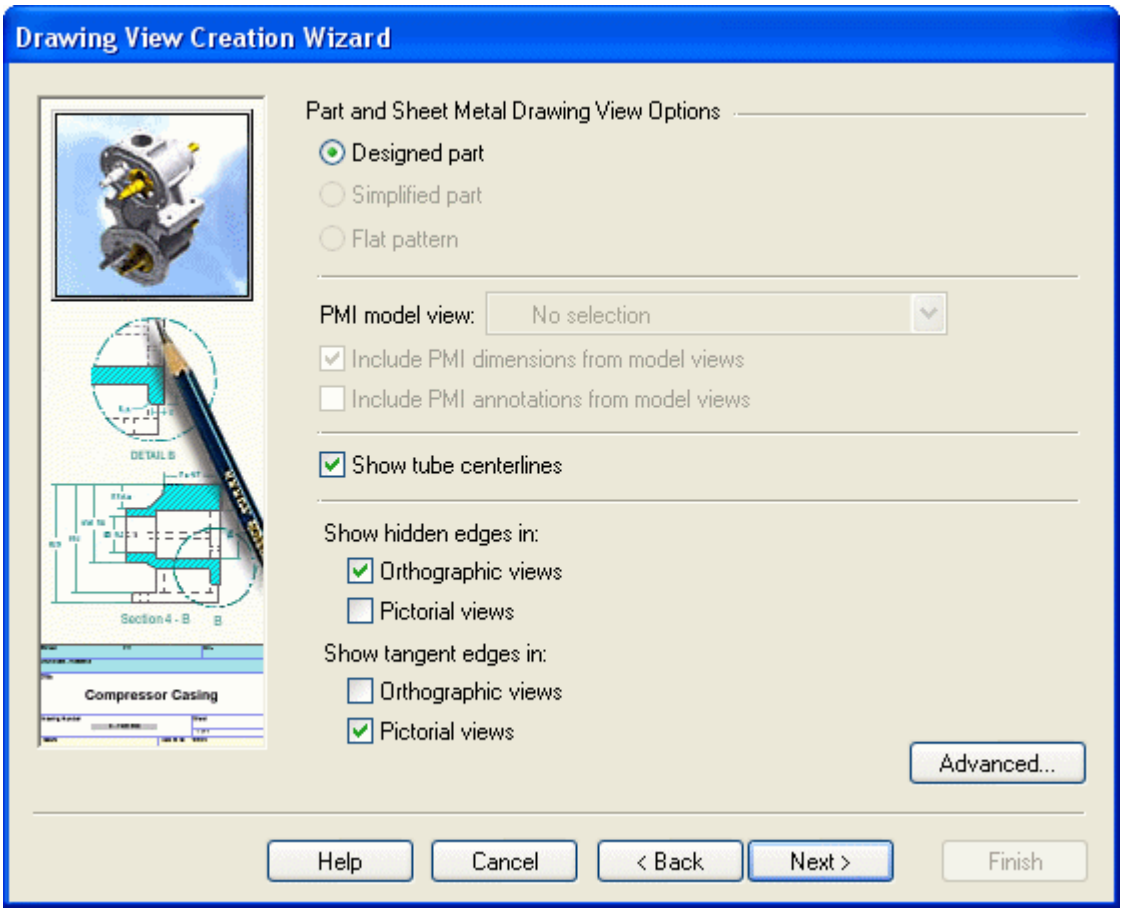
Create a new draft document

Create a new ISO draft document.

- Choose the Application button® New® ISO Draft.

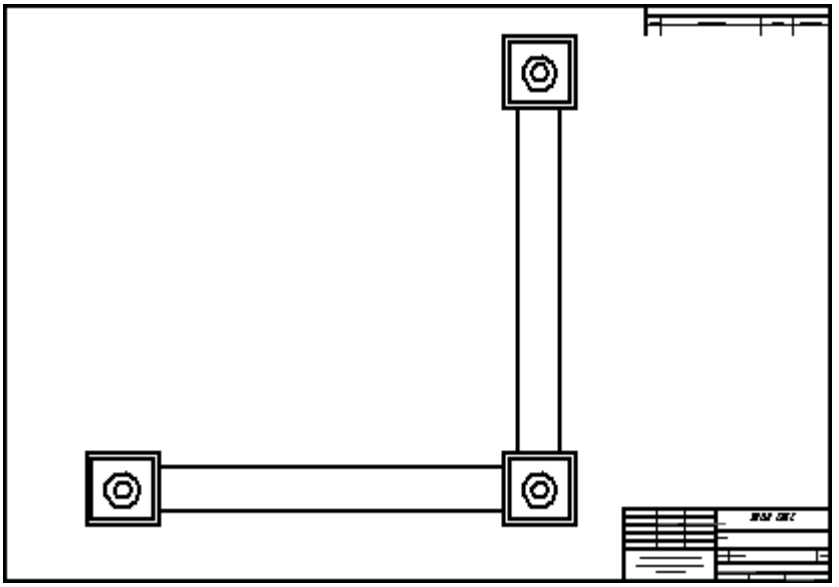
Define the drawing view

- Click the View Wizard command.
- On the Select Model dialog box, make sure the Look in: field is set to the training folder, and set the Files of type: field to Part Document (*.par).
- Select *dualbar.par* and click Open.
- In the Drawing View Creation Wizard, ensure the Part and Sheet Metal Drawing View default options are set as shown, then click Next.



- In the named Views: field, click *top*. Click Finish.

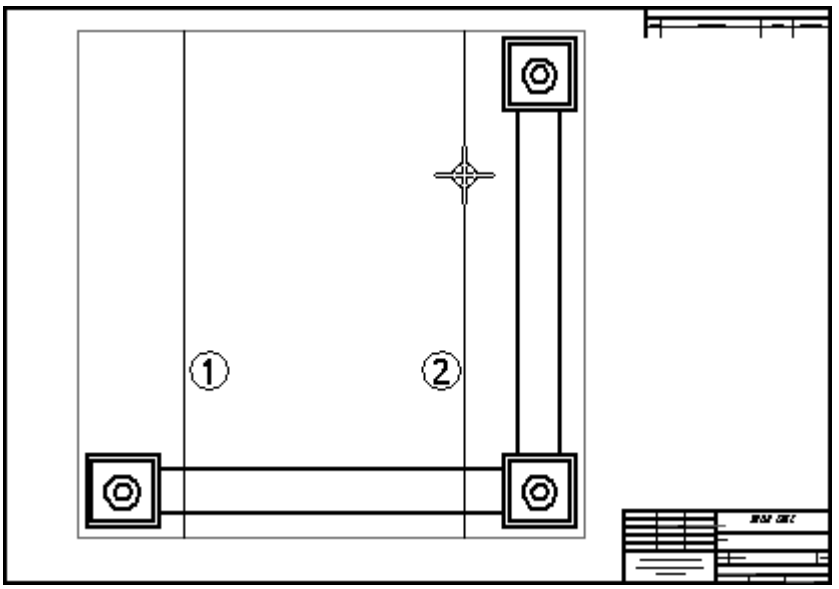
- Change the scale to 2:1 and place the drawing view on the draft sheet as shown.



Add a vertical broken region to the drawing view

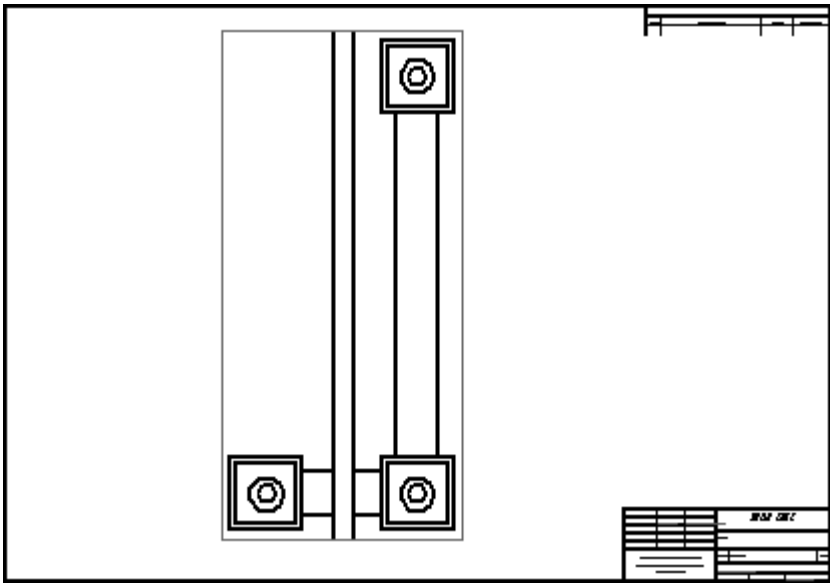
- Click the Select tool, and then right-click on the drawing view. Choose the Add Break Lines command on the short-cut menu.
- On the command bar, set the options as shown.

- Place two vertical lines representing the region to be broken as shown.

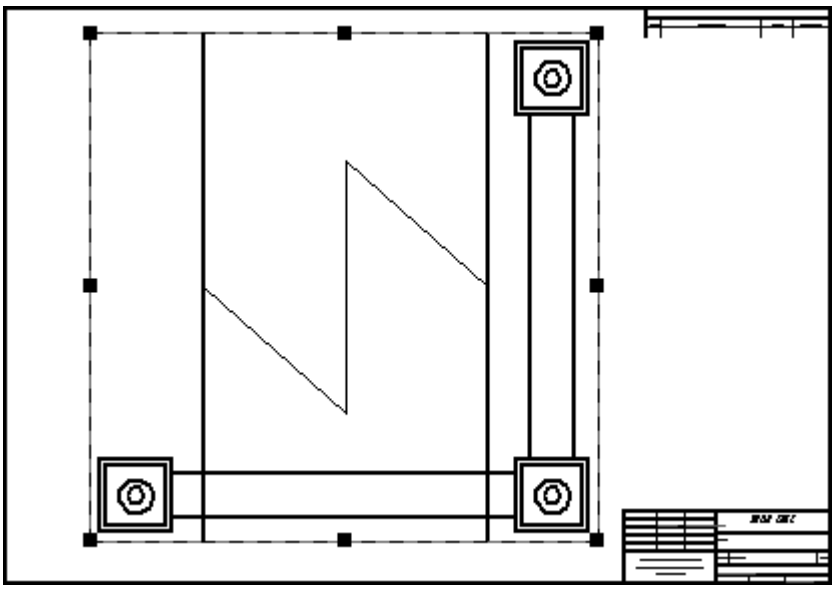


- On the command bar, click Finish to create the broken view.

- The result is shown.

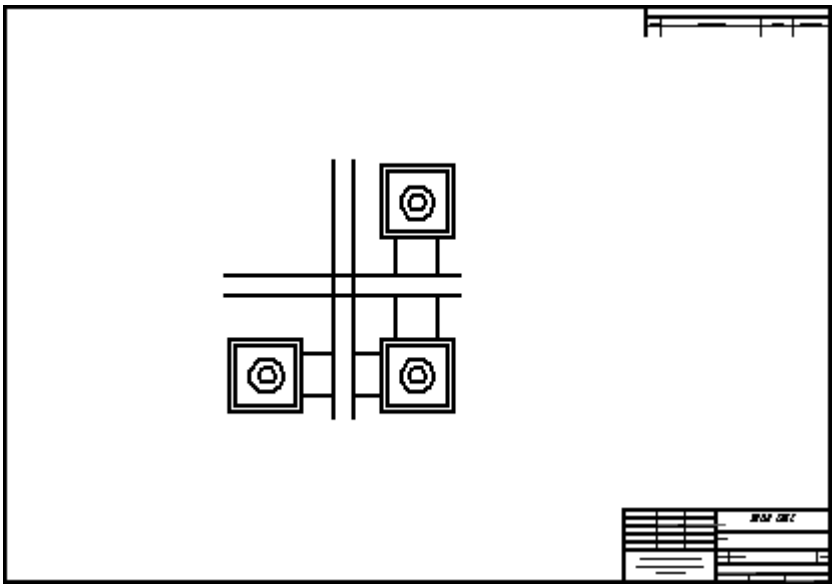


- On the command bar, click the Show Broken View button to switch the view display back to unbroken.



Place a horizontal break in the drawing view

- Use the Horizontal Break Line option to add another set of break lines to the view.



- Close the file and save as *breakline.dft*.

Place a broken view with different break line types

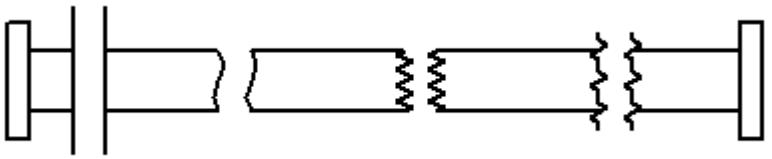
- Create a new ISO draft file and using the View Wizard command, open and place the front view of *bar.par*.
- Place four sets of break lines on the bar. Each set will be a different type.

  Straight

  Cylindrical

  Short Break

  Long Break



- This completes the activity. Save and close the file.

Activity summary

In this activity you learned how to create broken views using horizontal and vertical breaks. You also learned how to use different break line types.

Activity: Broken-out section creation

This activity demonstrates the use of the Broken-Out Section command.

Activity: Broken-out section creation

Overview

This activity covers the use of the Broken-Out Section command.

Objectives

After completing this activity, you will be able to create a broken section of a part on a draft sheet in Solid Edge.

Create a new draft document

Create a new ISO draft document.

- Choose the Application button® New® ISO Draft.

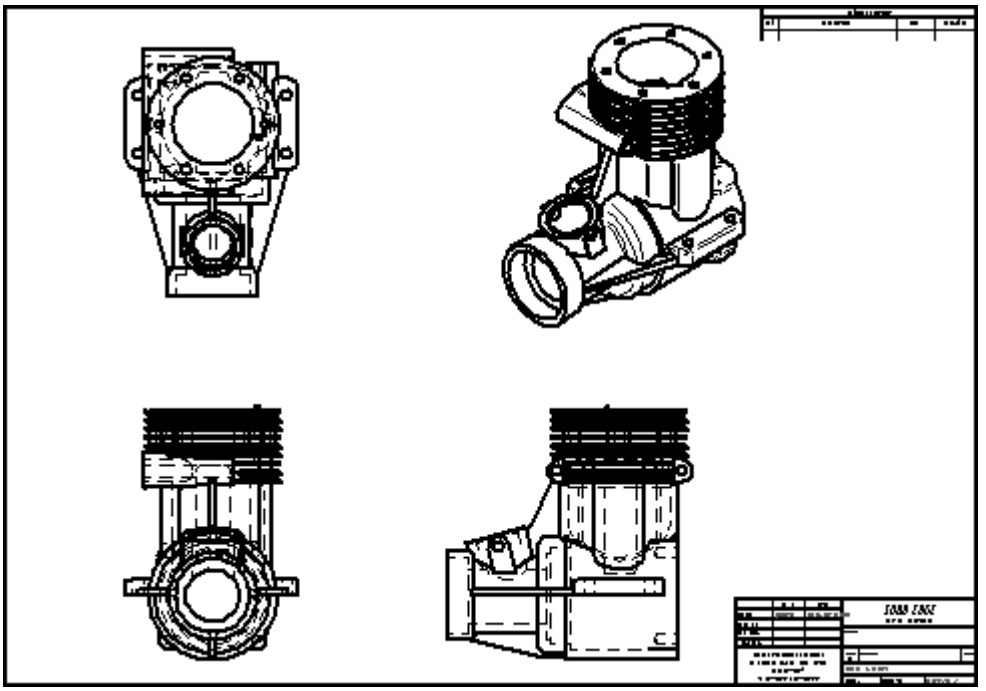
Set the drawing standards

- Click the Application button.
- Click the Solid Edge Options button.
- Click Drawing Standards. On the Drawing Standards page, set the Projection Angle to Third and the Thread Display Mode to ISO/BSI, and then click OK.

Define the drawing view

Use the View Wizard command to place a drawing view on the new sheet.

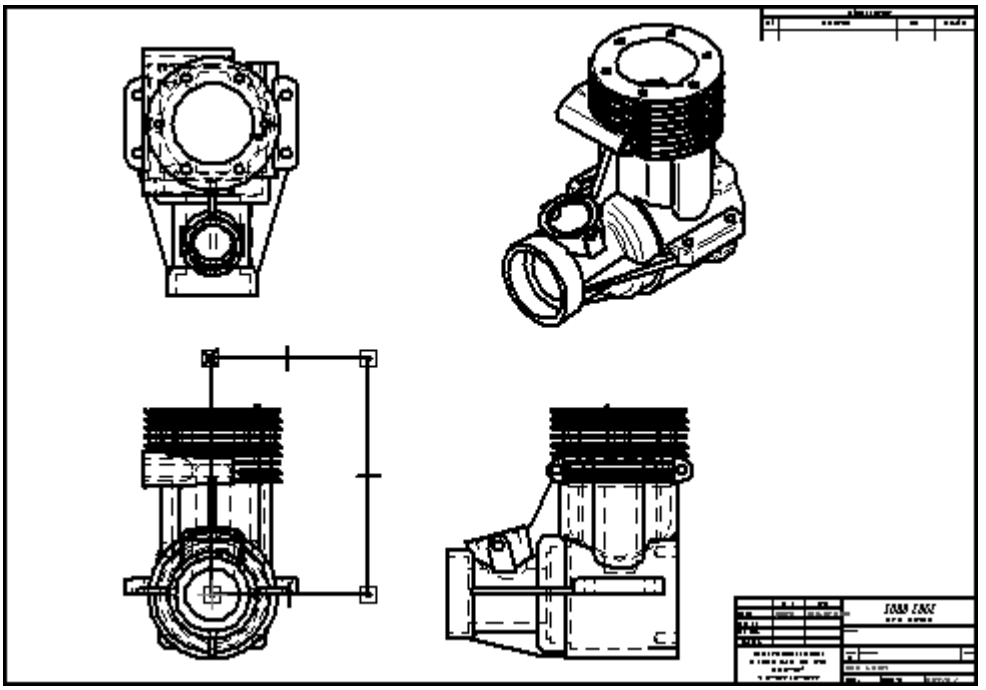
- Choose the View Wizard command.
- On the Select Model dialog box, make sure the Look in: field is set to the training folder, and set the Files of Type option to Part Document (*.par).
- Select *crankcase.par* and click Open.
- Place a top, front, right and iso view on the drawing sheet at a scale of 2:1, and then move the views so they fit on the sheet.



Define the broken-out section view

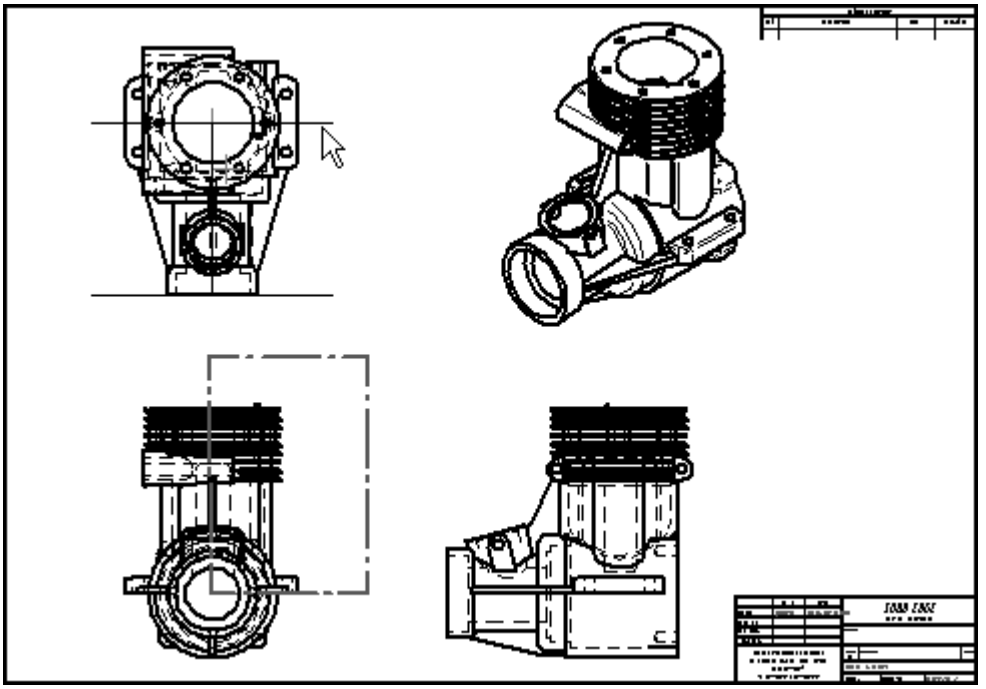
The section view will be displayed in the isometric view. Draw the profile defining the broken-out section in the front view.

- Choose the Broken-Out Section View Command .
- Select the front view. Beginning from the center of the circle, draw the profile shown.

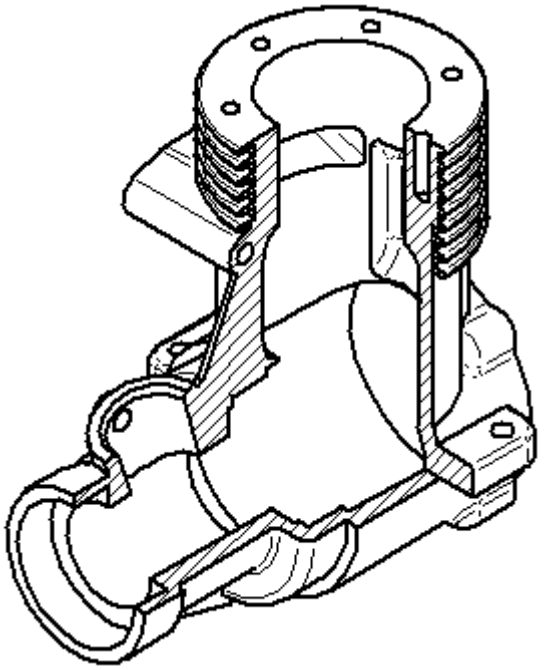


- Choose the Close Broken Out Section command .

- In the top view, define the extent of the section as shown.

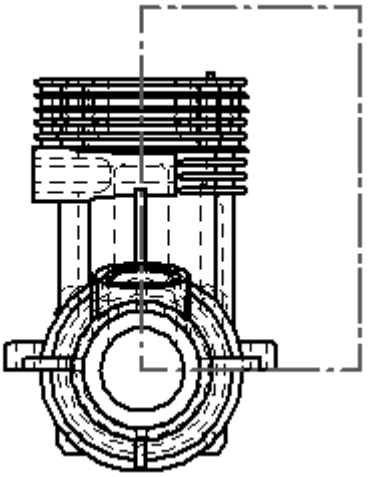


- Select the iso drawing view to apply the broken-out section to.

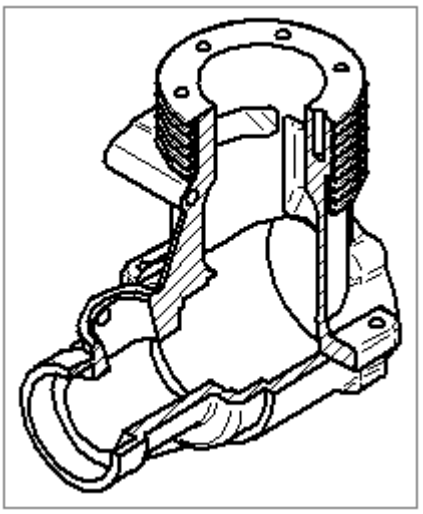


Edit the broken-out section

- Right-click the iso view and click Properties.
- In the High Quality View Properties dialog box, click the General page and check *Show Broken-Out Section view profiles* and then click OK.
- The profile for the broken-out section for the iso drawing view is shown in the front drawing view.

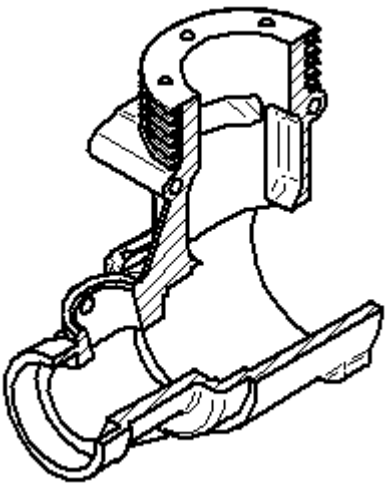


- To edit the profile, click the rectangular profile in the front view.
- Click *Modify Depth* on the command bar.
- Type 80 mm for the Depth and press the Enter key. Click Accept.
- The iso view is now out of date, signified by the box around the view.



- Click the Update View command to refresh the iso drawing view.

- The broken-out section will appear as shown.



Note

To remove a broken out section, delete the profile used to define the broken out region.

- This completes the activity. Save the file as *broken section.dft*.

Activity summary

In this activity you learned how to create a broken-out section view. You also learned how to modify the broken-out section profile to create a different broken view representation.

Lesson review

Answer the following questions:

1. Name the ways to create a draft document.

2. Describe the main steps required for creating a drawing.

3. After you create one or more primary part views, name the additional views you can create from them.

4. What does it mean when a grey border is around a drawing view?

5. What is a quicksheet?

Answers

1. Name the ways to create a draft document.

   - On the startup page, in the Create section, click the Draft icon or draft text string.
   - On the Application menu, click New® Draft.
   - On the Application menu, click New® Create Drawing.

2. Describe the main steps required for creating a drawing.

   - Create a draft document.
   - Set the drawing sheet size.
   - Start the Drawing View Wizard.
   - Select a part or an assembly to create a drawing of.
   - Select primary views to create.
   - Place views on sheet.
   - Arrange views on the drawing sheet.

3. After you create one or more primary part views, name the additional views you can create from them.

   - Principal views
   - Auxiliary views
   - Detail views
   - Section views
   - Broken views

4. What does it mean when a grey border is around a drawing view?

   The grey border means that the part or assembly has changed and the drawing view is out-of-date. To update the out-of-date drawing view, on the Home tab® Drawing Views group, choose the Update Views command

5. What is a quicksheet?

   A quicksheet is a draft document that contains drawing views that are not linked to a model. When you drag and drop a model file from the Library tab of PathFinder or Windows Explorer onto a quicksheet template, the views populate with the model. Quicksheet templates can only be created using the Create Quicksheet Template command.

Lesson summary

You can create drawings of parts and assemblies. Use the Drawing View Wizard to place the primary views on the sheet. You can rearrange views, shade views, change view scale, crop views, place dimensions and annotations on a view, and much more. Refer to Solid Edge Help if you feel you need additional information.

Dimensions, Annotations, and PMI

An essential part of the design process is adding dimensions and annotations as Product Manufacturing Information (PMI) to your drawings and model documents.

- You can add dimensions and annotations to a drawing in the Draft environment, and to a sketch in a model document.
- You can add PMI to 3D models in the Part, Sheet Metal, and Assembly environments.

Dimensioning overview

You can add dimensions to the 3D PMI model or 2D design geometry by measuring characteristics such as size, location, and orientation of elements. You can measure the length of a line, the distance between points, or the angle of a line relative to a horizontal or vertical orientation. Dimensions are associative to the 3D model or 2D elements to which they refer, so you can make design changes easily. Solid Edge provides a full complement of dimensioning tools so you can document your parts, assemblies, and drawings.

To learn about placing dimensions on the 3D model, see PMI dimensions and annotations.

In the Draft environment, you can add dimensions using the commands in the Dimension group on the Home tab or the Sketching tab. You also can create dimensions by retrieving them from part, sheet metal, and assembly models with the Retrieve Dimensions command.

You can use the dimensioning commands to place the following types of dimensions:

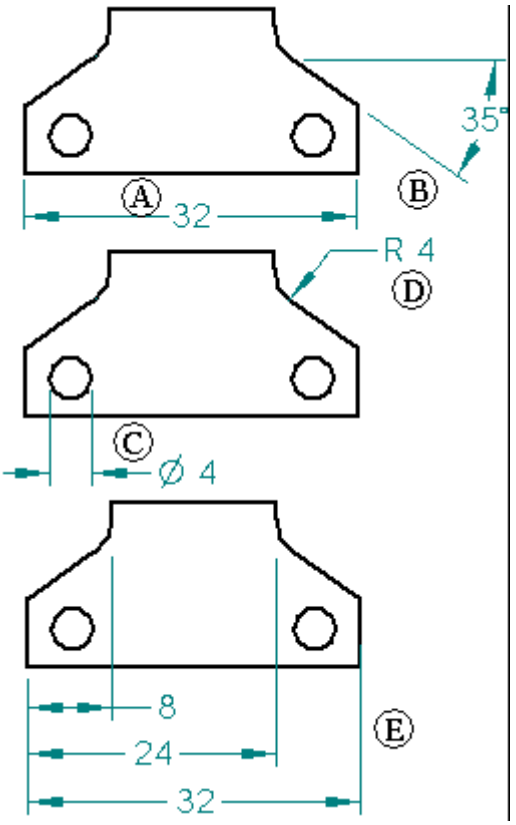
(A) Linear dimensions

(B) Angular dimensions

(C) Diameter dimensions

(D) Radial dimensions

(E) Dimension groups



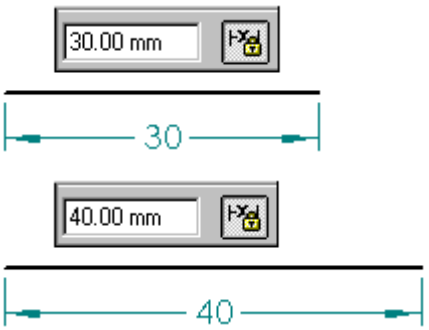
These dimension commands are available:

- Smart Dimension command
- Distance Between command
- Angle Between command
- Coordinate Dimension command
- Angular Coordinate Dimension command
- Symmetric Diameter command
- Chamfer Dimension command

Each dimension command has a command bar that sets options for placing the dimension. When you select an existing dimension, the same command bar is displayed so you can edit the dimension characteristics.

Using dimensions to control elements

You can place a dimension that controls the size or location of the element that it refers to. This type of dimension is known as a locked dimension. If you change the dimensional value of a locked dimension, the element updates to match the new value.



The value of an unlocked dimension is controlled by the element it refers to, or by a formula or variable you define. If the element, formula, or variable changes, the dimensional value updates.

Because both locked and unlocked dimensions are associative to the element they refer to, you can change the design more easily without having to delete and reapply elements or dimensions when you update the design.

Locking and unlocking dimensions

In general, you can set or clear the lock option on the Dimension command bar or on the Dimension Value Edit dialog box to specify whether a dimension is a locked dimension or an unlocked dimension.

> **Note**
>
> If the Lock button is not available, set the Maintain Relationships option in the Relate group on the Home tab or the Sketching tab.

In the Draft environment, dimensions can be placed as either locked or unlocked, depending upon the setting of the Maintain Relationships command. If Maintain Relationships is set, the dimensions are locked by default. These exceptions apply:

- Dimensions placed on part views are always unlocked.
- Dimensions placed between a 2D view and an element on the drawing sheet can only be unlocked.

Dimension color

Locked and unlocked dimensions are distinguished by color. The default colors are different in the synchronous modeling environments than they are in the Draft environment.

Changing dimension color in Draft

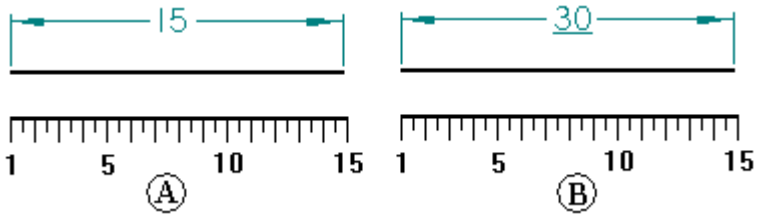
In the Draft environment, the color defined for each dimension type is part of the dimension style, which you can edit using the Style command on the View tab in the Style group. You can change the default color for locked and unlocked dimensions on the General page of the Modify Dimension Style dialog box.

- The default color for locked dimensions—Black/White—is set by the Driving Dimension option.
- The default color for unlocked dimensions—Dk Cyan—is set by the Driven Dimension option.

To learn about PMI model dimension color In synchronous models, see the Help topic Setting global PMI color and text size.

Not-to-scale dimensions

You can override the value of a driven dimension by setting its dimensional value to *not-to-scale*. For example, if you override the dimensional value that is 15 millimeters (A) to be 30 millimeters, the actual size of the line that you see would still be 15 millimeters (B). Solid Edge underlines the values of not-to-scale dimensions.

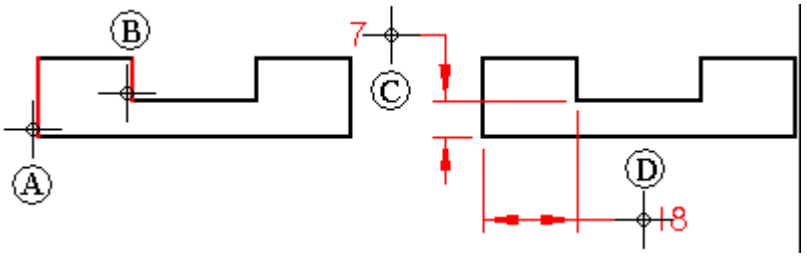


Placing dimensions

To add dimensions to elements, you can use a dimension command, such as Smart Dimension, and then select the elements you want to dimension.

As you place dimensions, the software shows a temporary, dynamic display of the dimension you are placing. This temporary display shows what the new dimension will look like if you click at the current cursor position. The dimension orientation changes depending on where you move the cursor.

For example, when you click the Distance Between command and select an origin element (A) and an element to measure to (B), the dimension dynamically adjusts its orientation depending on where you position your cursor (C) and (D).



Because you can dynamically control the orientation of a dimension during placement, you can place dimensions quickly and efficiently without having to use several commands. Each of the dimension commands uses placement dynamics that allow you to control how the dimension will look before you place it.

Note

When the IntelliSketch Intersection option is set and you select Distance Between, you can place a *driven* dimension that measures to the intersection of two elements.

Snapping to keypoints and intersection points

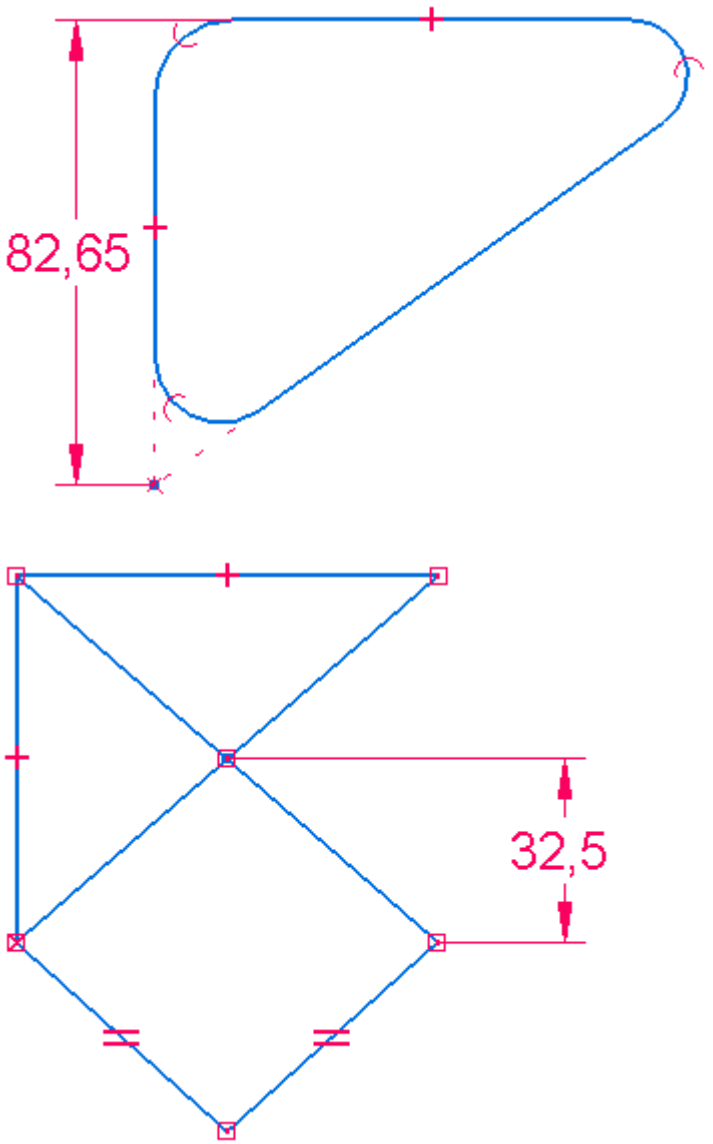
When placing a dimension, you can use shortcut keys to select and snap to keypoints or intersections. After you locate the line, circle, or other element that you want to snap to, you can press one of these shortcut keys to apply the point coordinates to the command in progress: M (midpoint), I (intersection point), C (center point), and E (endpoint).

To learn more, see Help topic Selecting and snapping to points.

Placing driving dimensions to an intersection

Sometimes you need to place a driving dimension to the intersection of two elements. You can do this by dimensioning to a profile point you create using the Point command.

For example, you can create a point at the theoretical intersection of two profile lines, and then use the Distance Between command with the By 2 Points placement option to dimension to the point you created. This results in a locked dimension, which you can use to control distance, size, or shape.



To learn how, see Place a driving 2D dimension to an intersection.

Placing dimensions with the dimension axis

The Dimension Axis command sets the orientation of the dimension axis on the drawing sheet or profile plane. You can use the new dimension axis, rather than the default axis of the drawing sheet or profile plane, while you use the Distance Between or Coordinate Dimension commands. After you define the dimension axis, you can place dimensions that run parallel to or perpendicular to the dimension axis.

Dimensioning with a grid

You can easily create and align dimensions using a grid and the Snap To Grid options on the Grid options dialog box. You can snap to a grid point or to a grid line.

While modifying an existing dimension, you can select any part of the dimension—line, text, or handle—and drag it, and it will snap into position. When you turn off the grid, you turn off the snap-to-grid feature.

Dimensioning automatically

There are two ways you can add dimensions automatically and generate geometric relationships to constrain the geometry:

- You can use the Relationship Assistant command when editing existing profiles. This is a quick method of dimensioning and setting simple geometric relationships for any 2D information brought into Solid Edge, including information from other systems.

- You can use the Auto-Dimension command when drawing new elements. The options on the Auto-Dimension page of the IntelliSketch dialog box control when the dimensions are drawn as well as whether to use dimension style mapping or not.

Using the Relationship Assistant

The Relationship Assistant command helps you finish a profile or sketch, or make it fully parametric. After applying all critical dimensions and relationships to the shape, you can use the Relationship Assistant command to apply any missing geometric or dimensional relationships to help fully constrain the model. It is a good idea to check the profile with the Show Variability option to check for degrees of freedom.

You can also use the Relationship Assistant command bar to show you how many additional relationships are required and how the shape can change based on the current relationships and dimensions.

To determine how many additional relationships are needed and how the profile or sketch can change, drag a fence around the profile, then click the Accept button on the command bar. You can then click the Show Variability button on the command bar to display the number of relationships needed. A temporary display of the profile using the highlight color is also displayed to illustrate one possibility of how the profile can change. You can click the Show Variability button repeatedly to see other variations.

Formatting dimensions

If you want two or more dimensions to look the same, you can select the dimensions and apply a style with the command bar. If you want to format dimensions so that they look unique, you can select a dimension and edit formats with the command bar or the Properties command on the shortcut menu.

To learn how to format dimension terminators, see Set Terminator Size and Shape.

You can add prefix, suffix, superfix, and subfix text and supplementary information to a dimension value using the options in the Dimension Prefix dialog box. You can use this dialog box while you place or edit a dimension. To learn how, see Add and edit dimension text.

Adding breaks to dimension projection lines

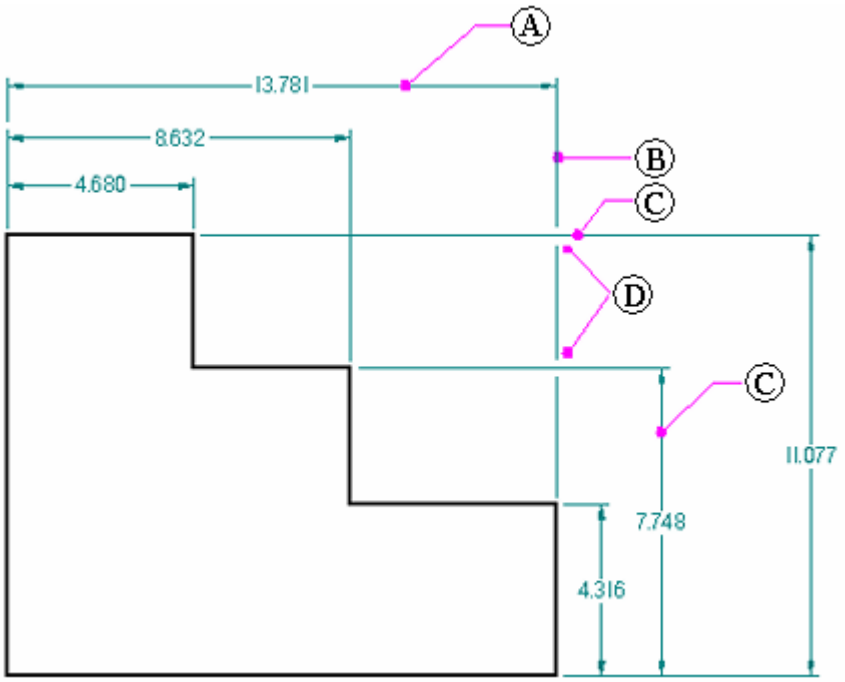
Dimensioned drawings can become cluttered and difficult to read when dimensions intersect one another. Using the Add Projection Line Break command, you can add breaks to projection lines on a selected dimension (A). The result is that break gaps (D) are inserted into the projection line (B) wherever it intersects another dimension (C). Visually, the break is represented by not drawing the projection line at the point of intersection.

(A) = selected dimension

(B) = projection line (broken)

(C) = intersecting dimensions (unbroken)

(D) = break gaps



The purpose of the projection line gap is to add visible white space and improve legibility. The size of the gap is set by the Break option on the Lines and Coordinate tab (Dimension Properties dialog box).

To add a break around dimension text that intersects other dimensions, set the Fill Text With Background Color option on the Text page (Dimension properties dialog box).

You can cut, copy, and paste a dimension with projection line break gaps as long as you select both the breaking and the broken dimensions along with the geometry.

Dimension projection lines that you have broken retain their setting during view updates, and also when you reposition the dimension text or lines for aesthetic reasons.

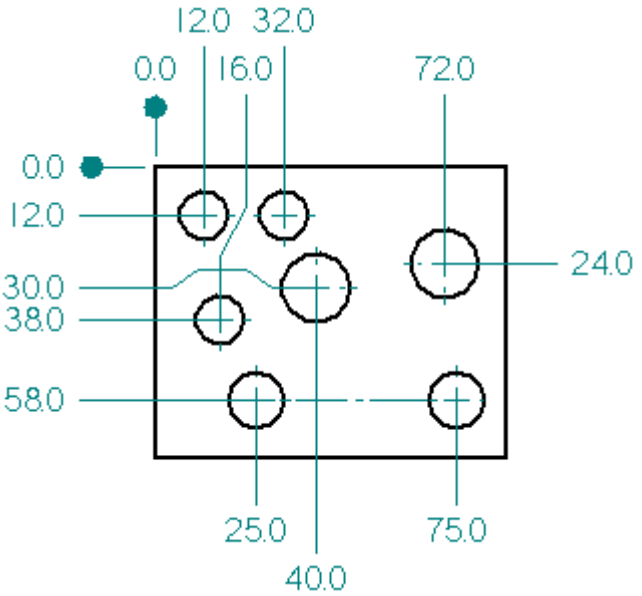
You can remove dimension line breaks using the Remove Projection Line Break command.

Adding jogs to dimension projection lines

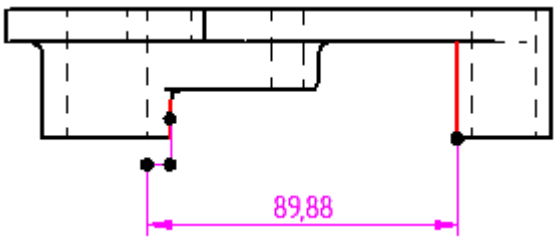
You can improve the clarity of a dimensioned drawing and avoid overlapping dimension lines by adding jogs to the dimension projection lines. This capability is supported in coordinate dimensions, linear dimensions, diameter dimensions, symmetrical diameter dimensions, and circular diameter dimensions.

- You can use Alt+click to add one or more jogs:

  To the dimension lines of a coordinate dimension.



  To the horizontal or vertical dimension projection lines of linear, symmetrical diameter, circular diameter, and distance between dimensions.



- You can remove a single jog on an existing dimension by holding the Alt key while you click a jog key point.

- You can remove all jogs on a selected dimension line or projection line using the Jog button on the command bar.

- You can drag the segment or the handle points created by the jog to change the length and orientation of the jog lines.

There are some limitations when adding jogs to stacked or chained dimensions. See the Help topic, dimension groups.

Copying dimension data

In the Solid Edge Draft environment, you can copy data such as prefix strings, dimension display types, and tolerance strings from one dimension to another. You also can copy the style properties associated with a dimension or annotation to another dimension or annotation using the Copy Attributes command.

Using the mouse scroll wheel to change dimensions

You can use the mouse scroll wheel to change a driving or system dimension. As you scroll the wheel, the dimension increases or decreases in 5 percent increments. For example, if the dimension is 100 mm, the dimension will increase or decrease by 5 mm.

You can use the mouse scroll wheel to change a dimension by selecting the dimension you want to change, and then scrolling the wheel forward to increase the dimension or backward to decrease it.

An option on the Helpers page of the Solid Edge Options dialog box controls the mouse scroll wheel function.

- If the option Enable Value Changes Using the Mouse Wheel is unchecked, you can use Ctrl+mouse wheel to change a dimension value.

- If the option is checked, you can use the mouse wheel to change a dimension value.

Using expressions in dimensions

There are many instances when the dimensions of individual features in a design are related. For example, the bend radius used to manufacture a sheet metal part is usually a function of the stock thickness. You can define and automate these types of design relationships with expressions. You can select a dimension and then use the Variables command on the Tools tab to enter a formula. When the formula is solved, the dimensional value changes to the value that the formula calculates.

You might want to use dimensions with expressions for the following purposes:

- Drive a dimension by another dimension; Dimension A = Dimension B

- Drive a dimension by a formula; Dimension A = pi * 3.5

- Drive a dimension by a formula and another dimension; Dimension A = pi * Dimension B

Setting or modifying units of measure

You can set the units of measure for a dimension by selecting the dimension and using the Properties command on the shortcut menu. You can set the units of measure for a document using the Properties® File Properties command on the Application menu.

Showing variability

The Show Variability option on the Relationship Assistant command bar shows how 2D elements can change based on their dimensions and relationships. Use the Relationship Assistant command to see the types of changes in a shape allowed by existing degrees of freedom.

To learn how, see the help topic, Show how a profile or sketch can change.

Tracking changed dimensions and annotations

When a drawing view is updated in the Solid Edge Draft environment, you can track dimensions and annotations that have been changed or deleted from the model. To open the Dimension Tracker dialog box so you can identify these changes, use the Tools tab® Assistants group® Track Dimension Changes command.

- On the drawing, every changed dimension and annotation is flagged by a balloon.
- In the Dimension Tracker dialog box, changed items are displayed in columnar format. You can sort the changes by clicking a column heading.
- You can select one or more items in the list and assign a revision name to the balloon labels on the drawing.

To learn more, see Help topic Tracking dimension and annotation changes.

Types of dimensions

A linear dimension measures the length of a line or the distance between two points or elements. You can place linear dimensions with the Coordinate, Distance Between, Smart Dimension, and Symmetric Diameter commands.

An angular dimension measures the angle of a line, the sweep angle of an arc, or the angle between two or more lines or points. You can place angular dimensions with the Angle Between and Smart Dimension commands.

A radial dimension measures the radius of elements, such as arcs, circles, ellipses, or curves. You can place a radial dimension with the Smart Dimension command.

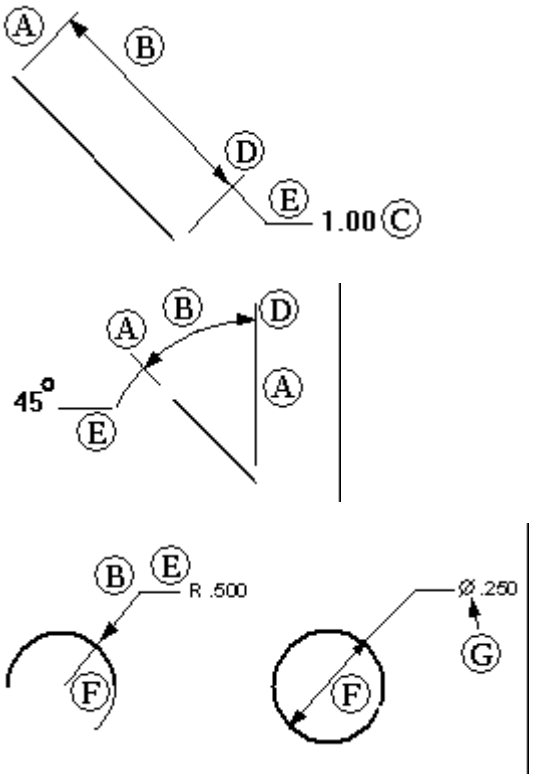
A diameter dimension measures the diameter of a circle. You can place a diameter dimension with the Smart Dimension command.

A coordinate dimension measures the distance from a common origin to one or more keypoints or elements.

You can use the following commands in Solid Edge to place dimensions:

- Smart Dimension command
- Distance Between command
- Angle Between command
- Coordinate Dimension command
- Angular Coordinate Dimension command
- Symmetric Diameter command
- Chamfer command

The components of a dimension are as follows:

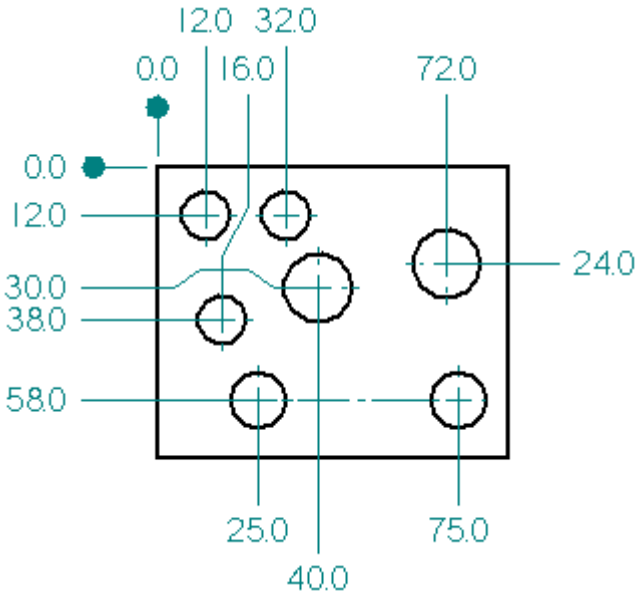


(A)	Projection line	(E)	Break line
(B)	Dimension line	(F)	Symbol
(C)	Dimensional value	(G)	Connect line
(D)	Terminator		

Coordinate dimensions

You can use the Coordinate Dimension command and Angular Coordinate Dimension command to place dimensions that measure the distance from a common origin to one or more keypoints or elements.

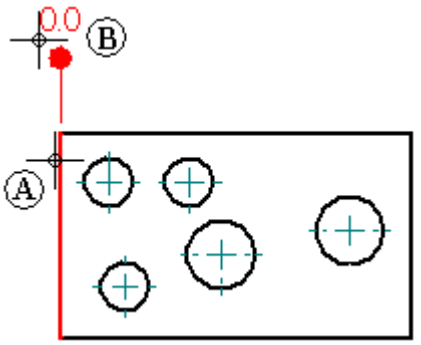
You can place coordinate dimensions in any order and on either side of the origin. You can also add, remove, and modify jogs on the dimension line to make it easy to position all the dimensions.



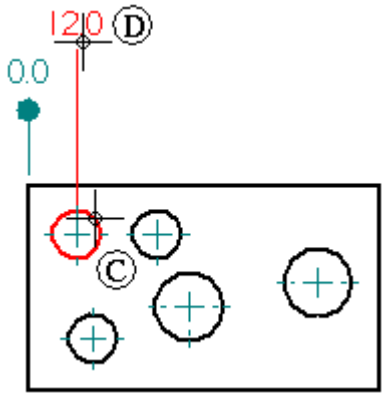
Coordinate dimensions that refer to a common origin are members of a coordinate dimension group.

Placing coordinate dimensions

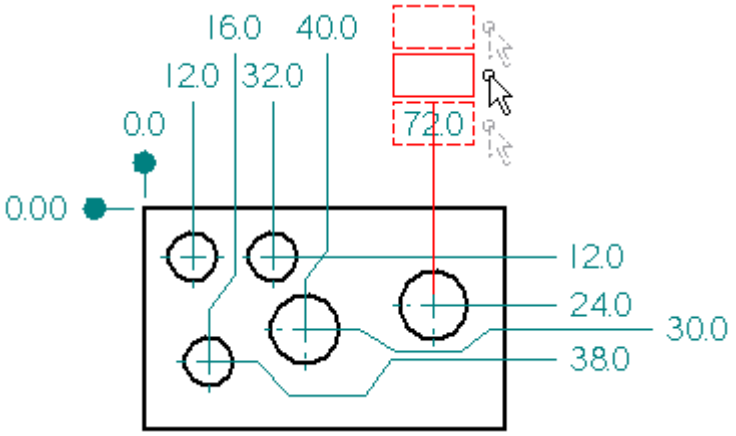
To place coordinate dimensions, you first select an origin element to establish a measure-from point (A), and then position the origin symbol (B).



You then select an element away from the origin as a measure-to point (C), and position the dimension (D). The dimension measures the distance from the origin element to the measure-to element.



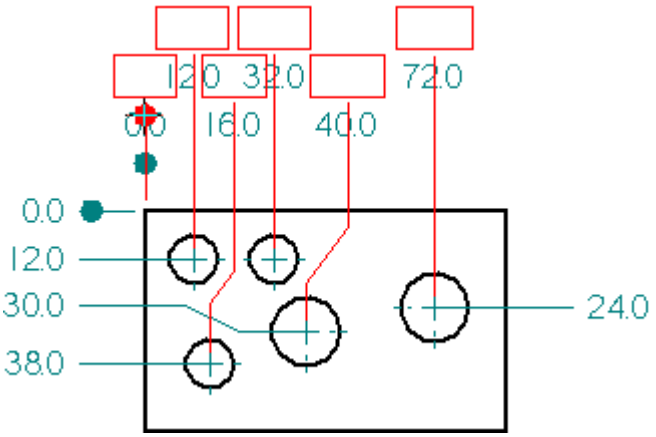
To make it easier to accurately align the dimension text for a group of coordinate dimensions, several built-in snap alignment positions allow you to align the text when placing or modifying coordinate dimensions.



You can add additional coordinate dimensions to an existing coordinate dimension group by selecting any dimension in the group as the origin, and then select an additional element to dimension.

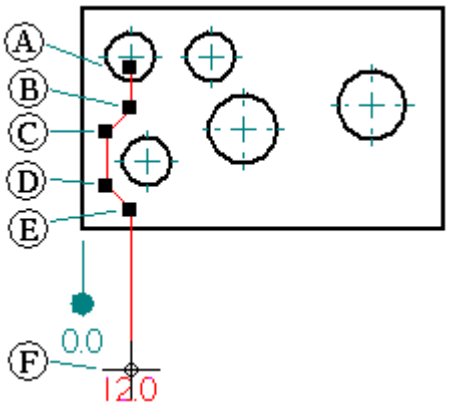
Moving coordinate dimension groups

In the Draft environment, you can move a group of coordinate dimensions by dragging the track point on the origin symbol. Select the origin, position the cursor over the track point, then drag the group to a new location.



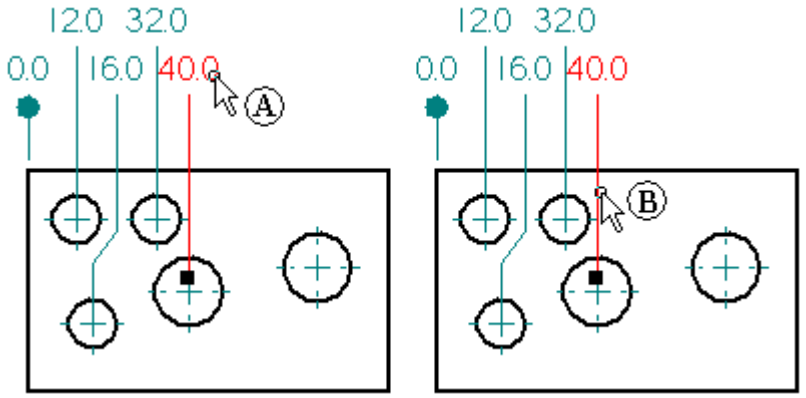
Placing coordinate dimensions with jogs

To add one or more jogs while placing a coordinate dimension, first select the element you want to dimension, then hold the Alt key and click to add the jogs. For example, to place the following 12 millimeter dimension as shown, you would first select the circle as the element to dimension (A), you then hold the Alt key and click points (B), (C), and (D) to add the jogs. You then release the Alt key and click points (E) and (F) to finish placing the dimension.

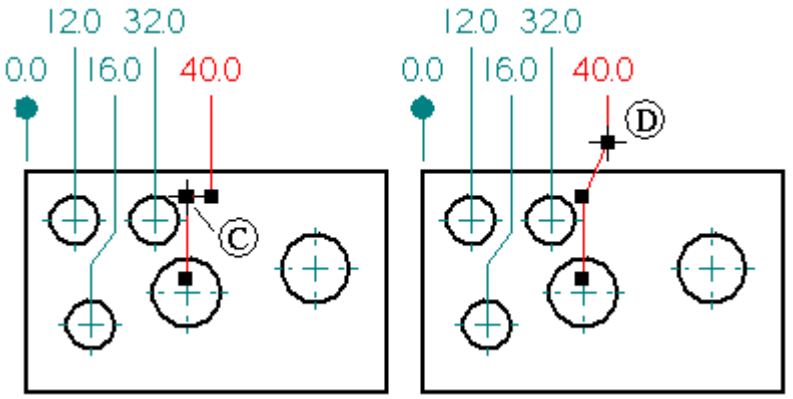


Adding jogs to coordinate dimensions

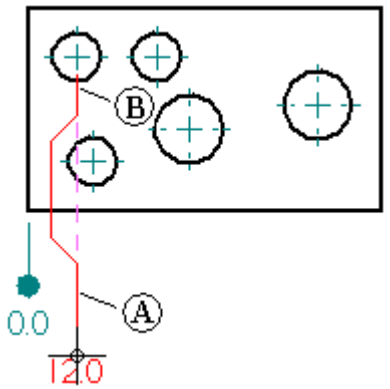
To add a jog to an existing coordinate dimension, use the Select Tool to select a coordinate dimension (A). Position the cursor over the dimension line where you want to insert the jog (B). Hold the Alt key and click.



Two vertices and a jog segment are added (C). You can modify the jog by dragging a vertex handle (D). You can also modify the jog by dragging the jog segment.

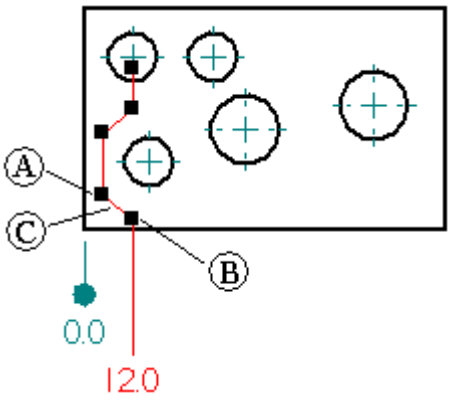


To make it easier to place coordinate dimensions with multiple jogs, the cursor snaps into alignment when the last dimension line segment (A) is aligned with the first dimension line segment (B).

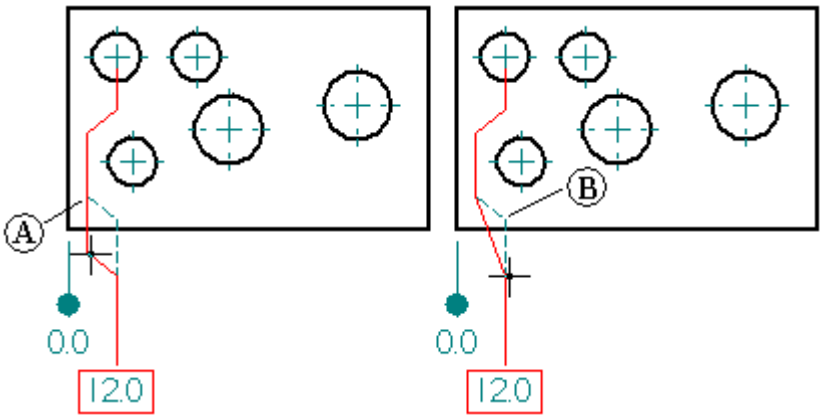


Modifying jogged coordinate dimensions

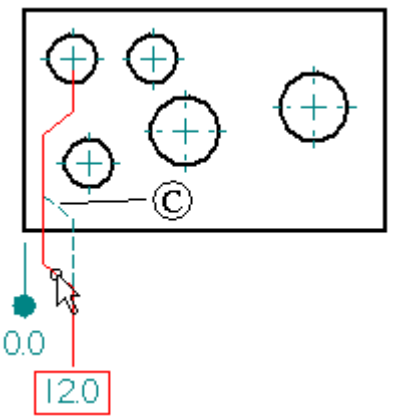
You can modify the jog on a coordinate dimension by dragging a jog vertex (A) and (B), or by dragging a jog segment (C).



The modification behavior for each jog vertex is different when you drag it. For example, when you drag the vertex farthest from the dimension text (A), you change the jog segment position. When you drag the jog vertex closest to the dimension text (B), you change the jog segment angle.



When you drag the jog segment (C), you also change the jog segment position.



Snapping coordinate dimensions to a grid

After you place coordinate dimensions using the built-in snap positions, and if you have exceeded the number of built-in snap positions, then you can adjust their alignment using a grid. To activate the grid, select the Tools® Grid command, and then set the Snap To Grid options to use grid lines or points.

If you added jogs, then you can use snap to grid to modify the location of jog handles.

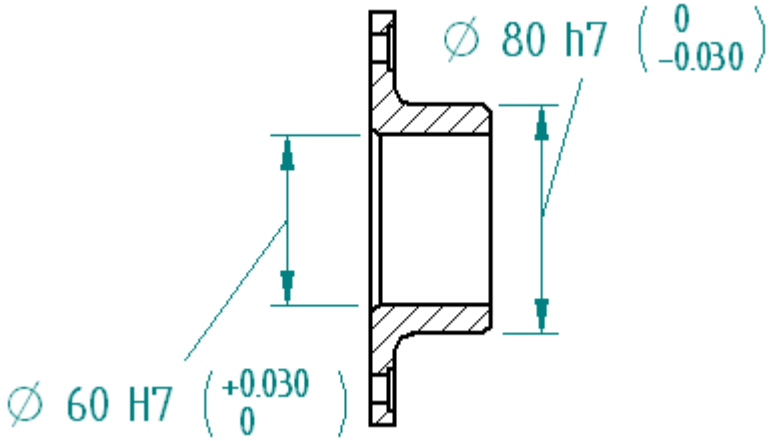
Removing jogs from coordinate dimensions

In the Draft environment, you can remove all the jogs from a coordinate dimension using the Jog button on the Dimension command bar. Use the Select Tool to select a coordinate dimension, then click the Jog button on the command bar.

You can also remove a single jog from a coordinate dimension using the Select Tool and the Alt key. Select a coordinate dimension, then position the cursor over a vertex on the jog you want to remove. Hold the Alt key and click.

Class fit dimensions

Because the tolerance specification for the proper fit between holes and shafts is such a common and critical aspect in the design and manufacture of parts, international standards bodies have established rule-based systems of tolerances for the Limits and Fits of holes and shafts.

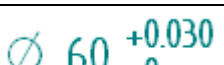


The terms hole and shaft can also be taken as referring to the space between two parallel faces of any part, such as the width of a slot, the thickness of a key, etc. Only distance dimensions are covered by the standards. The standards do not apply to angular dimensions.

Solid Edge provides ASCII text files that you can use to automatically define the limit or fit for a dimension whose type is set to Class using the dimension command bar.

Class dimension display options

When you set the dimension display type to Class, you can choose one of several methods to display the limits or fits for the dimension.

Fit	
Fit, tolerance only	
Fit with tolerance	
Fit with limits	
Fit Hole/Shaft	
User-defined (Any user-defined text is valid)	

Class fit ASCII text files

Three ASCII text files are available that provide support for ANSI and ISO class fit dimension standards:

- SE-LimitsAndFitsTableANSIinch.txt
- SE-LimitsAndFitsTableANSIMetric.txt
- SE-LimitsAndFitsTableISO.txt

By default, the files are located in the Solid Edge Program folder. You can instruct Solid Edge to look for these files in a different folder, including a folder on another machine on the network using the File Locations tab on the Options dialog box.

Note

If you edit these files, save a copy of these files before you uninstall Solid Edge.

Controlling the display of zero value tolerances

When placing a class fit dimension that displays a tolerance, you can set an option in the dimension style to inhibit the display of a tolerance that has a value of zero.

The Inhibit Display of 0.0 Values for Automatic Fit Tolerances option on the Text page controls whether zero value tolerances are displayed or hidden.

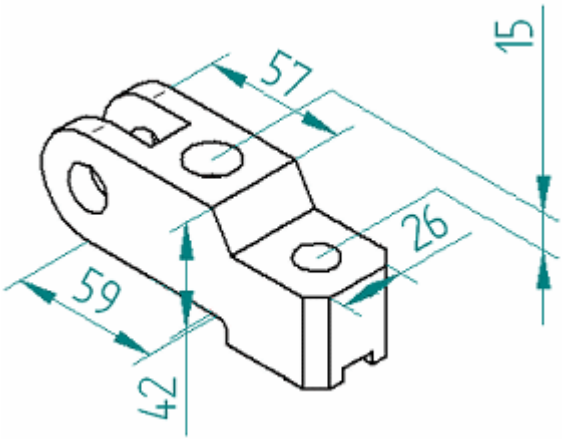
You can set this option for an individual dimension using the Properties command, or you can set it for all dimensions using the Style command.

3D pictorial drawing view dimensions

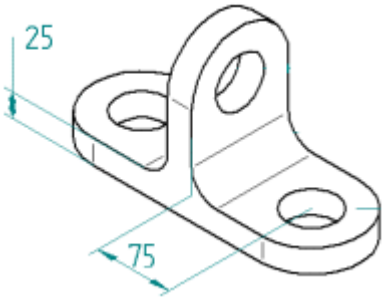
You can add 3D dimensions to a pictorial drawing view. On a drawing, 3D dimensions use the associative model to determine true distance, rather than the space on a 2D drawing. You can place a linear, radial, or angular Smart Dimension as a 3D dimension.

Note

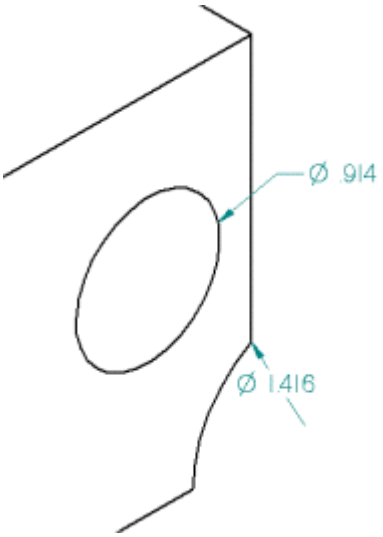
To add dimensions and annotations to 3D models, use the commands on the PMI tab on the ribbon. See the Help book, Product Manufacturing Information (PMI).



Linear 3D dimensions

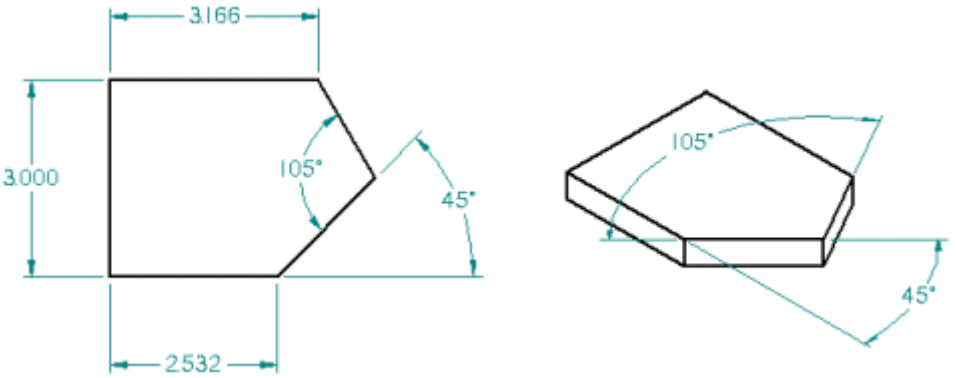


Radial 3D dimensions



For radial 3D dimensions, if the dimension is on the inside of the 3D circle or arc, then the tail of the dimension is tied to the center of the 3D circle or arc. If the dimension is on the outside of the 3D circle or arc, then the dimension line is aligned with the center of the 3D circle or arc.

Angular 3D dimensions



For angular 3D dimensions, the model planes and adjacent face planes of the lines are valid dimension planes.

Workflow

You place a 3D dimension on a pictorial drawing view using the same workflow as when you place a 2D dimension. However, if the drawing view is out of date, you must use the Update View command to make it up to date with the model before you can dimension it.

Dimensions in 3D are created relative to a dimension plane. In a drawing, this is determined by the element you select. You can change the plane at any time during dimension placement. In a drawing, change the dimension plane with the N and B keys.

Drawing View Properties dialog box

The Create 3D Dimensions In Pictorial Views check box on the General page of the Drawing View Properties dialog box controls whether 3D dimensions are placed. By default, 3D dimensions are enabled for pictorial views.

Placement guidelines on drawings

Because 3D dimensions measure actual model space, it is important to consider the perspective of the view when evaluating apparent conflicts between dimensions. For example, a cutout that appears circular in a pictorial view may actually be elliptical, and have proximate radial dimensions with different values. Moreover, when you look at a drawing, there is no way to distinguish at a glance between a 2D dimension and a 3D dimension (unless the 3D dimension has a placement that is impossible for 2D dimensions).

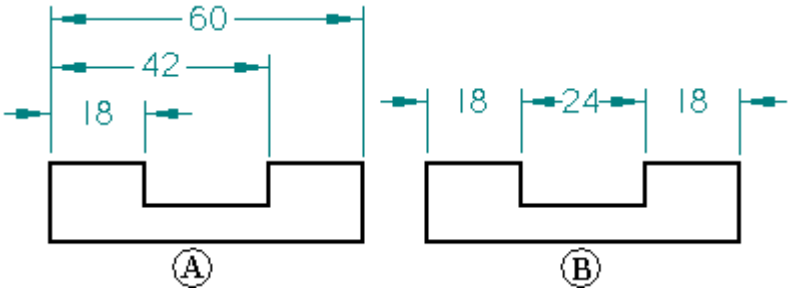
Therefore, it is possible to create a drawing with both 2D and 3D dimensions on which dimension values seem to conflict, because the 2D dimension is measuring drawing sheet space and the 3D dimension is measuring actual model space. Keep this in mind and use your knowledge about your situation and workflow to avoid creating potentially confusing drawings.

Dimension groups

You can place dimensions in dimension groups with the following commands:

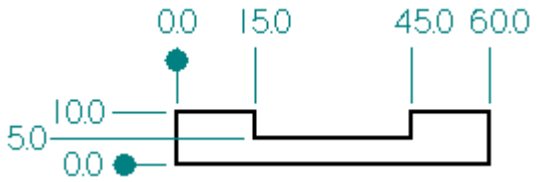
- Distance Between
- Angle Between
- Symmetric Diameter
- Coordinate Dimension

This makes the dimensions easier to manipulate on the drawing sheet. All members of a stacked or chained dimension group share the same dimension axis.

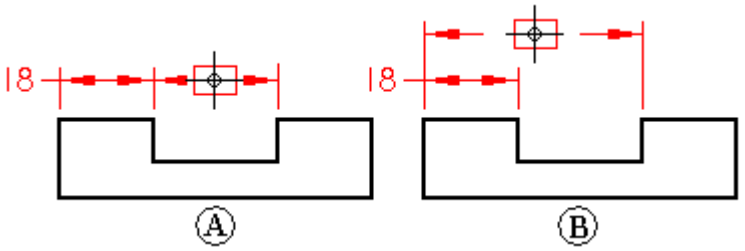


(A) Stacked dimension group
(B) Chained dimension group

A coordinate dimension group is another type of dimension group. Coordinate dimensions measure the position of key points or elements from a common origin. All the dimensions within the group measure from a common origin. You should use coordinate dimensions when you want to dimension elements in relation to a common origin or zero point.



When you place dimension groups with the Distance Between or Angle Between commands, the cursor position determines what type of dimension group will be placed. After you place the first dimension in a group and click the second element you want to measure, if the cursor is below the first dimension, then the dimension group will be a chained group (A). If the cursor is above the first dimension, then the dimension group will be a stacked group (B).



Adding jogs to dimension groups

You can use Alt+click to add jogs to the horizontal or vertical dimension projection lines, but there are some limitations when adding jogs to stacked or chained dimension groups:

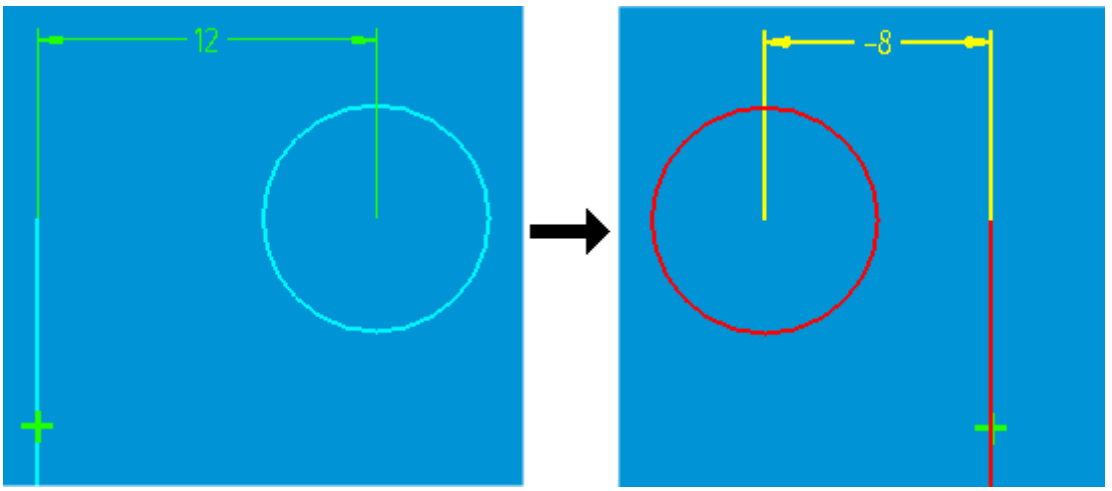
- You cannot place a jog on a shared extension line.
- In chained dimension groups, you can add a jog only to the first and last extension line.
- In stacked dimension groups, you cannot add a jog to the first—the shared—extension line.

Zero and negative dimensions

You can use zero and negative values to manipulate geometry in the following dimension types:

- Smart Dimension between two elements (or keypoints from two elements)
- Distance between two elements (or keypoints from two elements)
- Smart Dimension angle between two elements (or keypoints from two elements)
- Angle between two elements (or keypoints from two elements)

After you place one of the above dimensions, you can change it to zero or a negative value to control element placement. When you select a dimension, its parents highlight.



Zero and negative dimensions work best on fully constrained geometry. When a profile or sketch is not fully constrained, negative dimensions can be unpredictable (unexpected change of side, for example).

Unsupported dimensions

Zero and negative values are not supported for any group dimension, including linear coordinate, angular coordinate, linear stacked, linear chained, angular stacked, and angular chained. Zero and negative dimensions are also not supported for radial dimensions, diameter dimensions, and chamfer dimensions. Point constraints do not allow negative offsets.

Controlling zero and negative dimensions

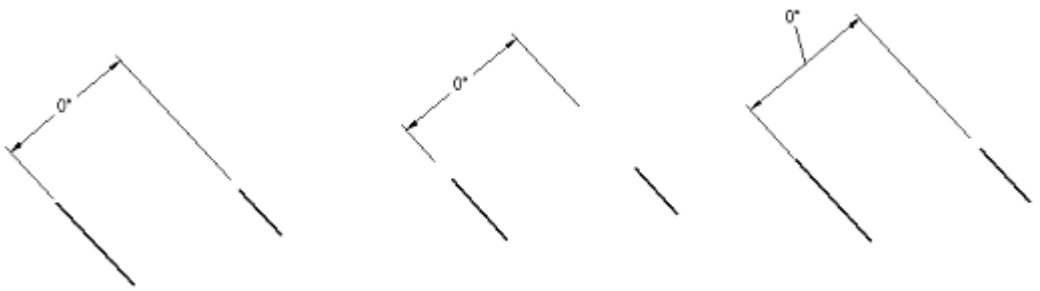
Because positive and negative values need not follow the X axis or Y axis, there is no set positive or negative direction when you use zero and negative dimension values. Rather, the direction is determined by how the dimension is placed with respect to the other relationships affecting the geometry. When you change the sign of a dimension (from positive to negative, for example), the direction the distance is measured changes relative to the geometry only. A positive value is measured in the direction in which the dimension was originally placed.

If you toggle a dimension from driving to driven when its value is negative, the dimension is displayed as positive. A driven dimension can never be negative. Dimensions retrieved from part models are positive because they are always driven, and zero dimensions are not retrieved.

Displaying zero and negative dimensions

The following conditions apply to the display of zero and negative dimensions:

- Text positions are processed as if the dimension were positive or non-zero (above, embedded, and so forth). Text position for zero values behaves as if the dimension were a very small positive value.
- Zero dimensions do not move or change the dimension break position.
- Dual unit display shows both united values with a negative sign.
- Zero angular dimensions between two non-intersecting elements display as linear dimensions (but with a degrees symbol). You can drag the ends of the extension lines with handles or move the text position as shown below.



Retrieving dimensions and annotations from a model

You can copy dimensions and annotations from a part, sheet metal, or assembly model to a drawing view using either of the following methods:

- Use the Retrieve Dimensions command to copy dimensions and annotations from the model to an existing orthogonal or section drawing view. The Retrieve Dimensions command copies PMI dimensions and annotations as well as sketch dimensions and annotations.

  To learn how, see the Help topic, Retrieve dimensions and annotations from the model.

- Use the Drawing View Wizard to generate a drawing view from any previously defined PMI model view created with the PMI tab® Model Views group® View command. This method copies only PMI elements to the drawing.

  To learn how, see the Help topic, Create a PMI drawing.

With either method, when you change the design later you can use the Update View command on the shortcut menu to update the part view and the retrieved dimensions also update. For example, if you change the size of a hole in your part, the retrieved dimension for the hole in the part view will update to the new value.

Dimension and Annotation Standards and Formats

Style mapping applies standard or custom style formats to lines, hatches, fonts, fills, dimensions, annotations, and views as you place objects that use these styles in the document. The element-to-style mapping table on the Dimension Style tab of the Options dialog box allows you to choose which style to map to which element, or it allows you to assign one style to all elements.

When the Use Dimension Style Mapping option is set on the Dimension Style tab, then the Dimension Style Mapping option is also set by default on the relevant command bars and dialog boxes used to place individual elements. You can override the mapped style for an individual element by clearing this option on the command bar.

For global impact across all design documents and drawings, you can specify drawing standards and styles in the template files used to create part, assembly, sheet metal, and draft documents. This ensures that designers apply standards that conform with company style guidelines.

Standards

The default, standard styles available are:

- ANSI
- ANSImm
- BSI
- DIN
- ISO
- JIS
- UNI

In addition, you can create and name custom styles. The style format is defined in the Style dialog box (Format-Style-Dimension style type-New button or Modify button).

Style Format Options

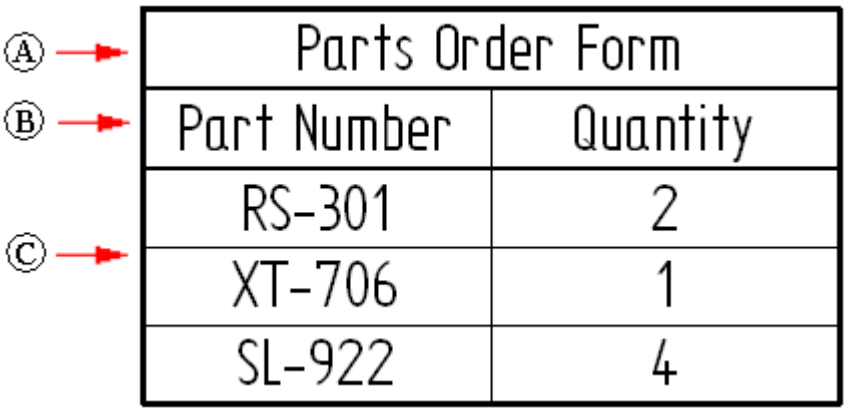
New and modified style formatting options vary widely between the type of element. Some of the style formatting options include the following:

- Lines (e.g., style, color, width)
- Units (e.g., inch, mm)
- Spacing (e.g., in a pattern)
- Delimiters (e.g., period or comma)
- Terminators (e.g., arrow, circle, dot)
- Round-off

User-defined tables

The Table command allows you to create a table that contains user-defined data.

The table consists of a title (A), column header (B), and column data (C).



Saved settings cannot be applied to user-defined tables. However, you can create a style template to specify reusable table properties—including lines and text—by creating a custom table style.

Creating a table

To create a user-defined table, use the Table command.

The command displays the Table Properties dialog box, which contains four tabs that assist you in creating the table: the General tab, Title tab, Data tab, and Sorting tab. These tabs are shared among all Solid Edge table types.

To learn more about how you can use the options on these tabs, see the following Help topics:

- Using the General tab
- Using the Title tab
- Using the Data tab
- Using the Sorting tab

Saved settings cannot be applied to user-defined tables. However, you can create a style template to specify table appearance—including lines and text—by creating a custom table style.

Creating a custom table style

You can use the Styles command to create your own, fully customized Table styles in the Draft environment and make them available for many different table applications. For example, custom table styles can be applied to parts lists, pipe lists, hole tables, bend tables, drawing notes, revision tables, and the dimension table used by families of assemblies.

You can select and apply a custom table style to a user-defined table using the Table command bar or the General page of the Table Properties dialog box.

See the Help topic, Table styles.

To learn how you can change the appearance of individual elements of a table—titles, columns, headers, and data cells—without changing the table style, see the Help topic, Formatting columns and data cells.

Using the General tab

The General page on the Properties dialog box is where you define basic information about the table or parts list. This includes where to place the table, how the table grows or shrinks, and how multi-page tables are displayed. You also can move a table to a different sheet.

Table placement and sizing

You can use either of these methods to place a table: dynamically, or by specifying a table origin point.

- You can place a table dynamically by moving the mouse until the table is located where you want it, and then clicking to fix its position.
- You can place the table at a specific origin point when you select the Enable Predefined Origin for Placement check box, and then enter sheet coordinates in the X Origin and Y Origin boxes.

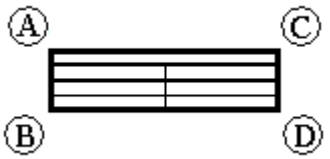
With either placement method, you can apply a Page Anchor Point to control table placement and sizing. These options are illustrated here:

(A) Top-Left

(B) Bottom-Left

(C) Top-Right

(D) Bottom-Right



- Choosing a top-left anchor point means that the top-left table corner is easily matched to the top-left corner of the working sheet.
- When the anchor point is on the left, the page gets wider on the right as columns are added. When the anchor point is on the right, the page gets wider on the left as columns are added.
- When the anchor point is on the top, the page height adjusts on the bottom. When the anchor point is on the bottom, the page height adjusts on the top.

Specifying maximum table height

You can specify the maximum table height using either of these methods:

- Selecting the Maximum Number of Rows option and typing a positive integer. Once that number is reached, a new page is created.

- Selecting the Maximum Height option for the table and typing a size value. Once that size is reached, a new page is created.

Moving table pages to working sheets

You can use the Sheet control to specify the sheet that you want the table to appear on. Use the control to place the parts list with the drawing it references.

Working with multi-page tables

In tables that have multiple pages:

- Left and right anchor points control which side of the table that pages are added.

- When new columns are added, they are added to each page.

- The Page Gap specifies the minimum distance between each page.

- You can change the Page value to place each page onto different sheets.

Using the Title tab

Use the Title tab in the Properties dialog box to add, remove, and manage the location of titles and subtitles in a table or parts list.

Creating titles

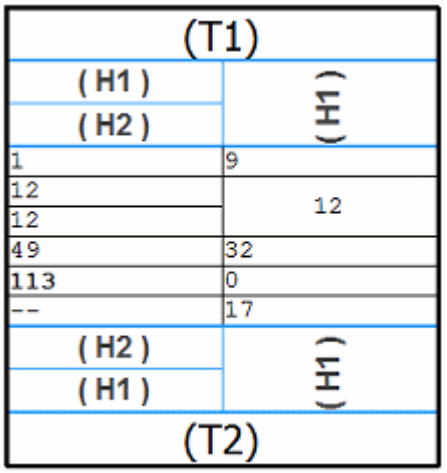
A table can have any number of titles and each title can have multiple lines of text.

You can create a table title using the Add Title button and then typing in the Title Text box. The Position option determines whether the title is displayed as a header at the top of the table, as a footer at the bottom of the table, in both locations, or not at all.

The order in which the titles are created, combined with the Position setting, determines their display order and location in the table.

Example

- If you create two titles in the Header position, then they are displayed as a title and subtitle spanning the first two rows of the table.
- If you create two titles with the first (T1) in the Header position and the second (T2) in the Footer position, then (T1) is displayed at the top of the table and (T2) is displayed at the bottom of the table.



The total number of titles is indicated by the value in the Number Of Titles box.

To learn how: Add a table title.

Modifying titles

You can modify a title by selecting its number from the Title list. Then, you can:

- Change the title by typing in the Title Text box.
- Change the location of the title in the table by selecting an option from the Position list.
- Delete the title using the Delete Title button .

Using the Data tab

You can use the Data tab in the Properties dialog box to enter data into a table or parts list, and to manipulate the format of the table.

Formatting a data column

On the Data tab, you can use the Format Column button to display the Format Column dialog box, where you can customize the format for the selected column. You can do such things as set the column width; create, position, and align a column header; align data; and show and hide columns and headers.

In the Format Column dialog box, you can use the Format Cells button to display the Format Table Cells dialog box.

- To learn how you can use the Format Column dialog box and the Format Table Cells dialog box to customize the appearance of the header rows and data cells, see the Help topic, Formatting columns and data cells.

- To learn how you can insert or delete columns and rows, move rows, drag columns from one location to another, see the Help topic, Make changes to a table or parts list.

Editing data cells

White data cells may be edited. You can double-click a cell to edit it, and press the Tab key to save the value you type.

Gray shaded data cells are disabled for direct editing, because they contain content derived from the model by property text. You can override the derived values in these cells using the following shortcut commands:

- Allow Cell Overrides—When you use this command to enter a new value, the cell is no longer associative to the model.

- Clear Cell Overrides—This command resets the value of an edited cell to its original value derived by property text.

Copying data from a spreadsheet

You can copy and paste cells from a spreadsheet into a user-defined table or into user-defined cells in system-generated tables, such as parts lists and family of parts tables.

When importing a spreadsheet, you need to ensure that the number of columns and rows are exactly the same in the table and spreadsheet or you may lose data during the copy and paste. For example, if your table contains three columns and five rows, but the spreadsheet contains four columns and six rows, the table is not large enough and data will be lost.

Using the Sorting page

You can use the Sorting page on the Properties dialog box to sort the table or parts list based on the contents of the column. To learn how, see Sort table contents.

General sorting techniques

- You can do multi-column sorting with up to three columns. For example, you can sort by column 1, then by column 5, and then by column 2.

- You can sort by ascending or descending order.

- You can use the Reverse Order of Entries option to reverse the order of the search results.

- You can add a column name to the Sort Criteria lists by first adding the column property on the Columns tab.

- Blank rows in a table may be affected by sorting.

Sort by component type

For assembly models containing piping or tubing, you may want to sort the parts list by selecting the Component Type Order option from the Sort by lists.

Sort by custom property

You can sort the parts list by custom properties that are assigned in the part and sheet metal documents, and which are then inserted as custom columns in the parts list.

To learn how, see Example: Show custom properties in a parts list.

Sort by assembly structure or item number

There are two ways you can sort the columns to show item numbers in parts lists on assembly drawings:

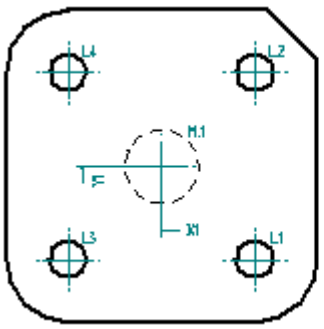
- You can select the Assembly Order criteria in the first Sort by list to match the order that is shown in Assembly PathFinder.
- You can select the Item Number criteria to sort using the item numbers generated by the Parts List command.

Hole tables

Hole tables are a useful means of defining the size and location of a hole. A hole table works much like a software spreadsheet. Holes are represented as rows in the table and dimensions of the holes as columns. Both circles and arcs are supported in hole tables.

You can create hole tables based on the following hole dimensions:

- hole size only
- hole location only
- hole size and location



Hole Table			
Hole	X	Y	Size
L1	37,5	-37,5	Φ 15
L2	37,5	37,5	Φ 15
L3	-37,5	-37,5	Φ 15
L4	-37,5	37,5	Φ 15
M1	0	0	Φ 30

Creating hole tables

To create a hole table, use the Hole Table command. On the Hole Table command bar, you can use the Hole Table Properties button to open the Hole Table Properties dialog box, where you can define the information you want to appear in the table.

Formatting a hole table

Before you place the hole table on the drawing sheet, you can use the Hole Table Properties dialog box to format it the way you want. For example, you can set properties on the Columns tab to control the column width, column title and column arrangement in your hole table. You can also set options for the size and location of the hole table, the font you want to use, whether you want to list the holes by origin or by size, and so forth. You can add callout columns to the hole table. You can change the hole table formatting later.

Using smart depth with hole table entries

You can use Smart Depth controls to intelligently describe holes in a hole table. When you use Smart Hole Depth or Smart Thread Depth for a hole table entry, the entry populates based on the data variables, template text, or other information you specify on the Smart Depth tab of the Hole Table Properties dialog box. This is useful for easily determining whether the depth or thread of a hole is finite.

Renumbering hole table entries

With the renumbering options on the List tab of the Hole Table Properties dialog box, you can determine how Solid Edge renumbers the rows in your hole table when you update it. You can choose to renumber holes, to keep previous numbers for deleted holes, or to leave blank lines for deleted holes.

Saving the hole table format

You can save a hole table format with a name you define, so you can easily use it again. To apply a saved format in another drawing, select its name from the Hole Table Properties list on the command bar.

Setting up hole properties for the hole table

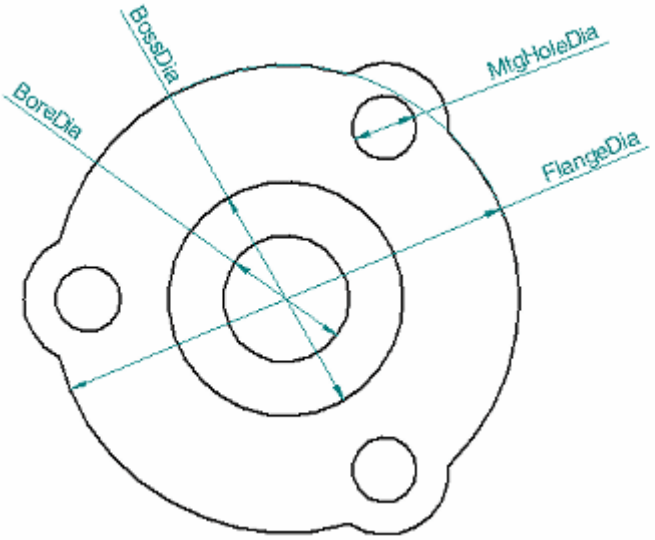
You can include hole properties such as Radial Location and Angular Location in your hole table. Use the Columns tab of the Hole Table Properties dialog box to set up a column for each property you want in the hole table.

Family of parts dimension tables on drawings

Family of parts dimension tables placed on drawings are useful for defining the size and location of features derived from similar family members. The Family Of Parts Table command automatically generates a table that contains all of the variables derived from a family of parts, and it imports the dimensional and positional data for all members of the selected family. You also can link the family member variables to dimensions on the drawing.

The family of parts table lists family member location and size data by row. Family variable labels are shown as column headings. You can easily customize the table by making formatting changes. You can insert user-defined columns into the table and extract other model information into them. For example, you can use property text to extract graphical model information to supplement the dimensional and positional values derived from the family of parts.

Family of Parts Table - Mounting Boss						
Name	FlangeDia	FlangeThick	BossDia	BossThick	BoreDia	MtgHoleDia
3Hole	130.00 mm	15.00 mm	65.00 mm	30.00 mm	35.00 mm	18.00 mm
4Hole	145.00 mm	18.00 mm	75.00 mm	40.00 mm	45.00 mm	20.00 mm
6Hole	160.00 mm	25.00 mm	85.00 mm	50.00 mm	55.00 mm	22.00 mm



Creating a family of parts table on a drawing

To create a family of parts table on a drawing, you begin by placing one or more drawing views containing a family member, and then you add dimensions to them.

Next, you select the Family Of Parts Table command, and then click a drawing view of a family member.

The command displays the Variables tab on the Family Of Parts Table Properties dialog box, where you can specify which family variables you want to include and exclude from the table.

You then can place the table on the drawing sheet, or you can first use the other options on the multi-tabbed Family Of Parts Table Properties dialog box to add a table title and make other formatting changes.

The last step is to link the drawing dimensions to the variables in the family of parts table.

> **Note**
>
> Do not create a drawing from the family of parts master document. Instead, create the drawing from one of the family members. For more information, see the Using family members in assemblies and drawings section in the Help topic, Families of Parts.

Including and excluding family variables

The Variables page on the Family Of Parts Properties dialog box is where you choose the variables that you want to display in the family of parts drawing table. These are also the variables that you can link to dimensions on the drawing.

The Variables page contains two lists of variables:

- The left-hand pane, Variables, displays all of the variables found in the Variable Table for the selected family of parts, less those variables that are listed in the right-hand pane.
- The right-hand pane, Variables Shown In Table, shows the variables that are currently selected for the drawing table.

You can remove variables from the table using the Remove button. You can add variables to the table using the Add button.

When you click OK, the data for all family members is imported, and the drawing table is ready to place on the drawing sheet.

Linking family variables to drawing dimensions

After you place the table on the drawing, you can link each of the family variables to its corresponding driven dimension on the drawing. The links are associative, so that when the member changes in the model, the dimension on the drawing goes out of date.

Each dimension can be linked to just one variable, but you can link the same variable to multiple dimensions. This enables you to illustrate the same dimension in different views.

To create a link, use the Link Variable button on the Family Of Parts Table command bar: .

To remove a link, use the Unlink Variable button on the command bar: .

Formatting a family of parts table

You can make formatting changes to a table before you click to place it, or you can place it first and then select the Properties button on the command bar or on the table shortcut menu to modify the table and data format.

Some of the formatting changes you can make include:

- Add one or more table titles of multiple lines of text.
- Hide a table row. Each row displays the values for a member of the family. You may not want to show the data for members other than the one in the drawing view.
- Hide a table column. Each column displays the family-derived values for a family variable. You may not want to show the values for a variable that does not have a corresponding dimension shown on the drawing view.
- Reorder members (rows) and variables (columns). You can move rows up and down, and you can move columns left and right.
- Change the data display order. You can do multi-column sorting with up to three columns.
- Insert one or more user-defined data columns, and specify that information such as mass, volume, and material be extracted from the model using property text strings.

  Note

  You can use property text to extract information from the Variable Table by selecting Variables From Active Document as the source in the Select Property Text dialog box. To learn how to use property text in a family of parts table, see the Extract model information using property text section in Make changes to a parts list or table.

Use the options on the Format Column dialog box to do such things as add, align, and position headers, hide columns, change column width, and align data within the table.

To learn how you can change the appearance of individual elements of a table—titles, columns, headers, and data cells—without changing the table style, see the Help topic, Formatting columns and data cells.

To learn how to change the table format, see Make changes to a parts list or table.

Updating a family of parts table

When a change to a family of parts causes a drawing table to go out of date, a thin gray border surrounds the table.

To update the table based on the model change, use the Update Family Of Parts Table command on the table shortcut menu. You also can use this command to apply formatting changes you make to an existing table.

Defining and modifying table styles

You can use the Styles command to create your own, fully customized Table styles in the Draft environment and make them available for many different table applications.

The Table style provides line style properties that control the display of table borders and grids. For example, you can change the color, type, and width of the border and grid lines. Set the Type to None if you do not want to display a table component.

For each component of a table, you also can define a text style. You can define different text styles for the table title, column headings, and cell data.

To learn more, see help topic Table styles.

To learn how to customize table styles, see Help topic Create or modify a table style.

Tracking dimension and annotation changes

Activating the Dimension Tracker

In the Solid Edge Draft environment, you can track dimensions and annotations that have changed when a drawing view is updated. The Dimension Tracker dialog box reports the changes for you to review and to label.

- You can open the Dimension Tracker dialog box at any time by choosing Tools tab® Assistants group® Track Dimension Changes from the menu. However, the contents of the dialog box are updated only when dimensions, annotations, or hole table entries have actually changed.

- The Dimension Tracker dialog box is opened automatically when you update a drawing view in which dimensions, annotations, or model-derived table entries have changed.

Using the Dimension Tracker

On the drawing, every changed dimension, annotation, and model-derived table is flagged by a balloon. On the Dimension Tracker dialog box, changed items are listed in columnar format. You can:

- Sort the changes by clicking on the column headings: ID, Element, Reason, Previous (Value), Current (Value), and Sheet. Each number in the ID column corresponds to a change balloon number on the drawing. The Element column identifies whether the item is a dimension or an annotation, and what type it is, for example, linear, coordinate, circular diameter, or balloon/callout.

- Select one or multiple items and assign a label to the corresponding balloons on the drawing using the New Revision button on the dialog box.

- Find a changed item on the drawing by clicking an item listed on the Dimension Tracker. This highlights the dimension or annotation on the drawing view. For complicated drawings, you can locate and zoom in on a changed item using the Find button.

- Remove validated items from the change list—and corresponding balloons from the drawing—using the Clear Selected or Clear All buttons.

Change reasons

The Reason column in the Dimension Tracker dialog box explains how a dimension or annotation changed when you updated a drawing view.

- **Detached – rebind failure.**

  Solid Edge was unable to find an eligible geometric element to rebind the item. The item may have been deleted.

- **Detached – no edge information.**

  The edge of the geometry was not rendered and could not be found.

- **Value changed.**

  The model feature changed size.

- **Terminator moved.**

  The terminator connect point was moved. The Annotation Moved Tolerance option on the Options tab of the Dimension Tracker dialog box specifies the distance tolerance beyond which this change is reported.

- **Geometric rebind – Reattached to available geometry.**

  The item was rebound to the nearest eligible geometric element within a preset distance tolerance.

- **Content changed.**

  A change to dimension text or other content *not* related to value was made to a PMI dimension. Examples of changes that cause the Content Changed reason to be displayed include edits to dimension prefix text, a changed dimension type and tolerance, and the addition of inspection requirements.

Revision balloons

To modify the appearance of revision balloons before they are added to the drawing, you can change these settings on the Options tab of the Dimension Tracker dialog box: Balloon Shape, Balloon Color, and Number of Sides (for n-sided balloons). Then, update the drawing view.

To alter the appearance of revision balloons already on the drawing, select the balloon and then select the Properties command on its shortcut menu. You can then edit the balloon annotation properties.

Using Copy/Paste/Undo

You can use the Copy button on the Dimension Tracker dialog box to copy all the information from the Dimension Tracker list, and then use the Paste command on the shortcut menu to paste the information to another document.

If you assign a label to a changed item and then want to revise it, you can immediately select the Edit® Undo command to restore the item to the Dimension Tracker list and the corresponding balloon to the drawing.

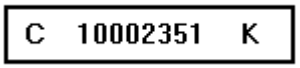
Annotations overview

An essential part of the design process is adding text, notes, and annotations. Annotations are text and graphics that give information about the design. You can add annotations to a drawing, a part, or an assembly by using the text and annotation commands in the software.

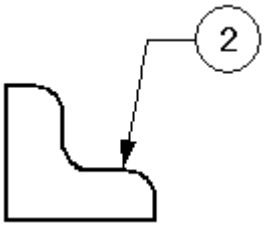
Types of annotations

To place annotations, you can use the following commands:

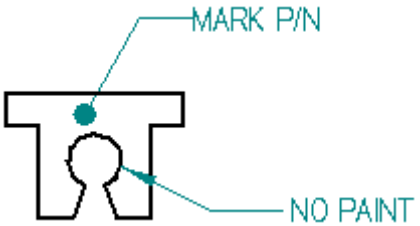
- Text



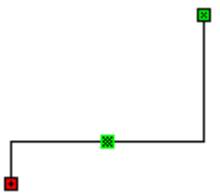
- Balloon



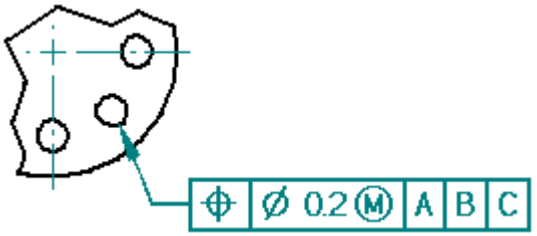
- Callout



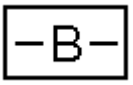
- Connector



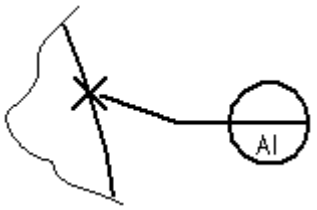
- Feature Control Frame



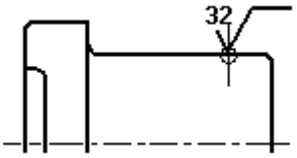
- Datum Frame



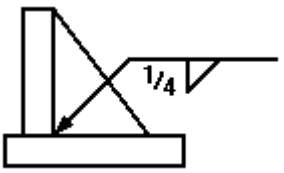
- Datum Target



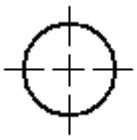
- Surface Texture



- Weld Symbol



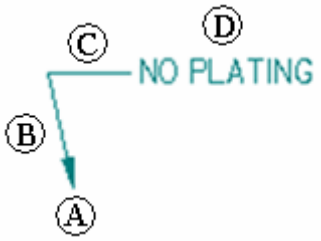
- Center Mark



- Center Line

Annotations with leaders

Annotations with leaders have the following components:



(A)	Terminator
(B)	Leader line
(C)	Break line
(D)	Annotation

You can manipulate the annotation by selecting the leader and moving parts of it. You can control the display of a leader break line and terminator and insert or delete vertices on a leader.

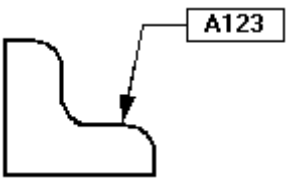
Annotations with borders

The Callout command and the Text command create annotations that can be displayed with or without a border outline. Text formatting and behavior control options are available to ensure that the content always fits within the border.

Example

To create an annotation with the appearance shown in the following illustration, you can do either of the following:

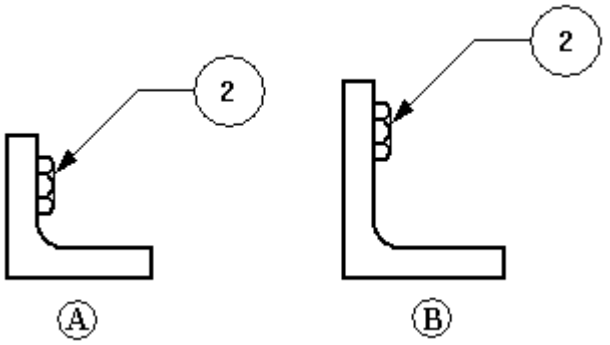
- Use the Callout command with the Show border outline option selected.
- Place a text box using the Text command, and then add a leader to it with the Leader command.



Annotations and associativity

Annotations can be associative or non-associative. An associative annotation moves when the element it is connected to moves. Text boxes differ from other annotations in that they are always non-associative.

If you attach the terminator of a leader to an element (A), the annotation moves with the element (B). If you create the leader connection point in free space, the annotation is not associative to any element in the drawing.



You can make a connected annotation non-associative by pressing the **Alt** key while you drag the terminator handle off the element.

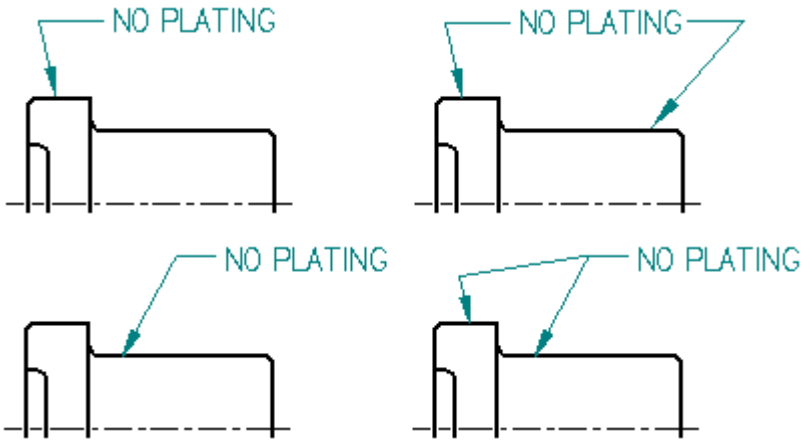
You can make a free space annotation associative by selecting the terminator of the leader and dragging it to an element. The element edge highlights to show that it is connected.

You can move a leader line connection point to free space or to another element yet retain associativity with the first element, by pressing the **Alt+Ctrl** keys while dragging the terminator handle.

Adding leaders

When placing an annotation, you can use the Leader and Break Line options on the command bar to add a leader. You also can add a leader to an existing annotation using the Leader command.

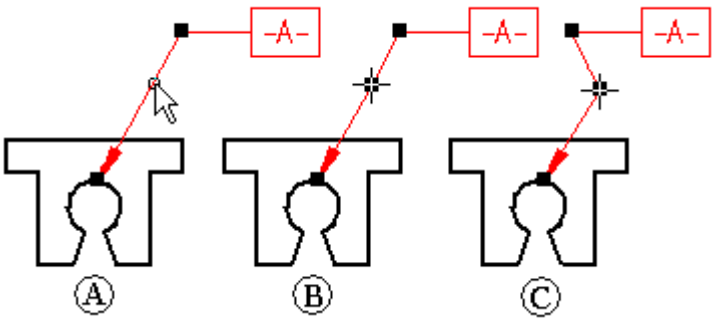
An annotation can have more than one leader. The terminator end of the annotation can point to an element or be placed in free space. The annotation end of a new leader must connect to an annotation or to the leader on an annotation.



Inserting and deleting vertices on leaders

You can insert or delete a vertex on any annotation with a leader using the **Alt** key. Vertices are edit points that you can use to manipulate the leader line.

When you insert a vertex, you split the leader into two segments. You can drag the vertex to change the orientation and angle of the leader.



You can add a vertex by selecting a leader, holding the **Alt** key, and clicking where you want to insert the edit point. To learn how, see the help topic, Insert a vertex in a leader.

You can delete a vertex by pressing the **Alt** key while you click the vertex you want to remove. To learn how, see the help topic, Delete a vertex from a leader.

Snapping to keypoints and intersection points

When placing many types of annotation and when measuring distance, you can use shortcut keys to select and snap to keypoints or intersections. After you locate the line, circle, or other element that you want to snap to, you can press one of these shortcut keys to apply the point coordinates to the command in progress: M (midpoint), I (intersection point), C (center point), and E (endpoint).

To learn more, see the help topic Selecting and snapping to points.

Formatting annotations

If you want annotations to look the same, you can apply a style by selecting it on the command bar. Text styles can be applied to text boxes. You can apply dimension styles to the following annotations:

- balloon
- callout
- feature control frame
- datum frame
- datum target
- weld symbol
- surface texture symbol
- center marks, center lines, and bolt hold circles
- connector

If you want to customize the look of one or more annotations, you can select an annotation and edit its properties with the command bar or the Properties command on the shortcut menu.

Saving annotations

When an annotation, such as a feature control frame, appears several times, you can save the settings so that you can use them again. You can save any of the settings for a feature control frame, weld symbol, or surface texture symbol in a template with a name that you specify, much like a style.

Tracking changed dimensions and annotations

When you update a drawing view in the Solid Edge Draft environment, you can identify dimensions and annotations that have been changed or deleted in the model. To open the Dimension Tracker dialog box so you can identify these changes, use the Tools® Dimensions® Track Dimension Changes command.

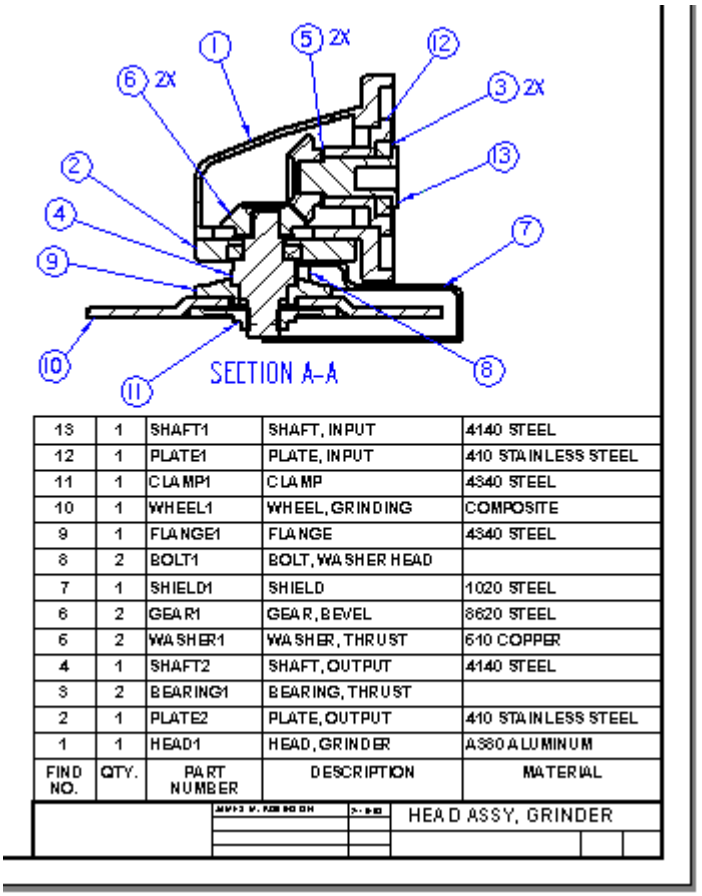
- On the drawing, every changed dimension and annotation is flagged by a revision balloon.
- On the Dimension Tracker dialog box, changed items are displayed in a columnar format. You can sort the changes by clicking a column heading.
- You can select one or more items in the list and assign a revision name to the balloon labels on the drawing.

To learn more, see Help topic Tracking dimensions and annotations.

Parts lists

Many companies include parts lists in their assembly drawings to give additional information about individual assembly components. For example, part number, material, and the quantity of parts required are typically documented in a parts list.

A Solid Edge parts list on a drawing is associative to the part view you select to create it. You can add balloons automatically to the drawing, and the balloons can be numbered to correspond to the part entries in the parts list.



FIND NO.	QTY.	PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	MATERIAL
13	1	SHAFT1	SHAFT, INPUT	4140 STEEL
12	1	PLATE1	PLATE, INPUT	410 STAINLESS STEEL
11	1	CLAMP1	CLAMP	4340 STEEL
10	1	WHEEL1	WHEEL, GRINDING	COMPOSITE
9	1	FLANGE1	FLANGE	4340 STEEL
8	2	BOLT1	BOLT, WASHER HEAD	
7	1	SHIELD1	SHIELD	1020 STEEL
6	2	GEAR1	GEAR, BEVEL	8620 STEEL
5	2	WASHER1	WASHER, THRUST	610 COPPER
4	1	SHAFT2	SHAFT, OUTPUT	4140 STEEL
3	2	BEARING1	BEARING, THRUST	
2	1	PLATE2	PLATE, OUTPUT	410 STAINLESS STEEL
1	1	HEAD1	HEAD, GRINDER	A380 ALUMINUM

Creating parts lists

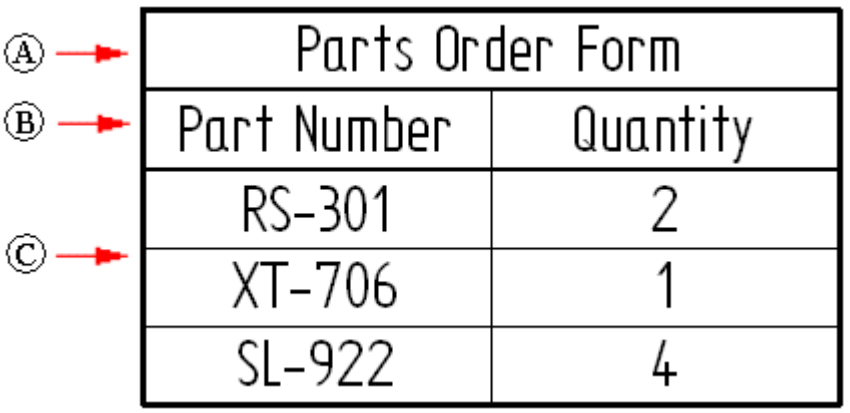
You can create a parts list by choosing the Home tab® Tables group® Parts List command , and then selecting a part view. You can place balloons on the part view automatically by selecting the Auto-Balloon button on the Parts List command bar.

To learn more about using balloons in parts lists, see the Help topic, Balloons.

Specifying content and format of a parts list

Before you place the parts list on the drawing sheet, you can use the pages on the Parts List Properties dialog box to format it the way you want. You also can change the parts list formatting after you have placed it.

The parts list consists of a title (A), column header (B), and column data (C).



- The General page is where you specify the table style, the maximum number of data rows, and where it is to be placed on the drawing sheet. See the Help topic, Using the General tab.

- The Title page is where you specify the text, formatting, and positioning of table titles and subtitles. See the Help topic, Using the Title tab.

- The Columns page is where you define the column content and initial formatting. You define content by selecting the property text that you want to extract to display in it. You can combine multiple properties in each column, and you can add simple text strings to any column. See the Help topic, Using the Columns tab.

- The Data page is where you add and remove columns and rows, and where you edit extracted information displayed in individual cells. See the Help topic, Using the Data tab.

  To learn how you can change the appearance of individual elements of a table—titles, columns, headers, and data cells—without changing the table style, see the Help topic, Formatting columns and data cells.

- Use the Balloon page to specify all aspects of balloons on the parts list:
  - Balloon shape and number of sides.
  - User-defined text and extracted property text.
  - Whether to show item number and count in the balloons.
  - Control level for duplicate auto-balloons.
  - Automatic balloon stacks for fastener system components.

- You assign the parts list item number format on the Options page. This also is where you choose whether to produce a cut length or total lengths part list for pipe and frames. See the Help topic, Using the Options tab.

- After the parts list is created, you can edit the item numbers displayed in the parts list and in the balloons using the Item Number page.

- For each part and subassembly, you can use the List Control page to specify the granularity of the parts list.

- On the Sorting page you can specify that the parts list is sorted based on the document number of the part in the assembly, by component type, material, quantity, and title. See the Help topic, Using the Sorting tab.

Item numbers in parts lists

You can include an Item Number column in the parts list, and show the part and subassembly item numbers that are used by the assembly. Item numbers are assigned in the assembly document using the Item Numbers page (Solid Edge Options dialog box).

- To use these item numbers in parts lists, you must select the Use assembly generated item numbers check box on the Options page (Parts List Properties dialog box.

- Alternatively, you can leave this option unchecked and have the Parts List command generate item numbers on the fly. You also can choose to use flat list item numbers or level based item numbers when you create an exploded parts list.

To learn more about item numbers, see the following Help topics:

- Exploded parts lists

- Item numbers in assemblies

Items without balloons (*)

An item number in the parts list that is marked by an asterisk indicates that no balloon was created automatically for it on the drawing. Items without balloons are controlled by options on the Parts List Properties dialog box:

- On the Options page, you can select the Mark Un-ballooned Items check box and specify one or more characters to display after the item number in the parts list.

  Example

  You can change the default single asterisk marker (*) to a double asterisk (**).

- On the Balloon page, you can use the Auto-Balloon options to control how many (or how few) duplicate balloons are created.

An item number balloon that displays NA represents a part that has been excluded using List Control.

Setting up part properties for the parts list

You can include part properties such as Title, Document Number, Mass, and Material in your parts lists. Use the Columns tab of the Parts List Properties dialog box to set up a column for each property you want in the parts list. The properties themselves are defined in the part and sheet metal documents, using these commands on the Application menu:

- Properties® File Properties command
- Properties® Material Table command

You also can use the Property Manager command to view and edit the document properties for a parts list. Working in a drawing of an assembly, the Property Manager command displays the document properties for all the parts in the assembly. This makes it easy to ensure that the parts list displays accurate and complete information about the assembly.

> **Note**
>
> You can define part properties without opening the part or sheet metal document in Solid Edge. Select the document in Windows Explorer, and then right-click and choose the Properties command.

For an example of how you can define a custom property and display it in a parts list, see Help topic Example: Show Custom Properties in a Parts List.

Accounting for non-graphic parts

Assemblies often contain components for which there is no model required, such as paint, grease, oil, labels, and so forth. These non-graphic parts still need to be documented in the parts list and bill of materials that are created for the assembly. In Solid Edge, you can use the File Properties command on the Application menu in the Part and Sheet Metal environments to add custom properties to an empty part document. Use the custom properties to define the required information for these types of parts. You can create two types of non-graphic parts: parts that require a unit type and quantity, and parts without a unit type and quantity.

For more information, see Non-graphic parts in assemblies.

Using multiple parts lists

You can create multiple parts lists for the same drawing. With multiple parts lists, you can have different item numbers for the same parts. You also can create parts lists that contain only specific component types (pipes, for example).

To create parts lists that share the same item numbers, you can designate an active parts list. Then, when you create other parts lists, use the Link To Active button on the Parts List command bar to link them.

You can make a different parts list the active parts list by selecting the Make Active command on the shortcut menu with the parts list selected. When you create a new parts list, it becomes the active parts list.

Renumbering parts lists

When you delete parts in an assembly and then update the parts list, the parts list is not automatically renumbered. For example, if you delete part number 10, the parts list will skip that number.

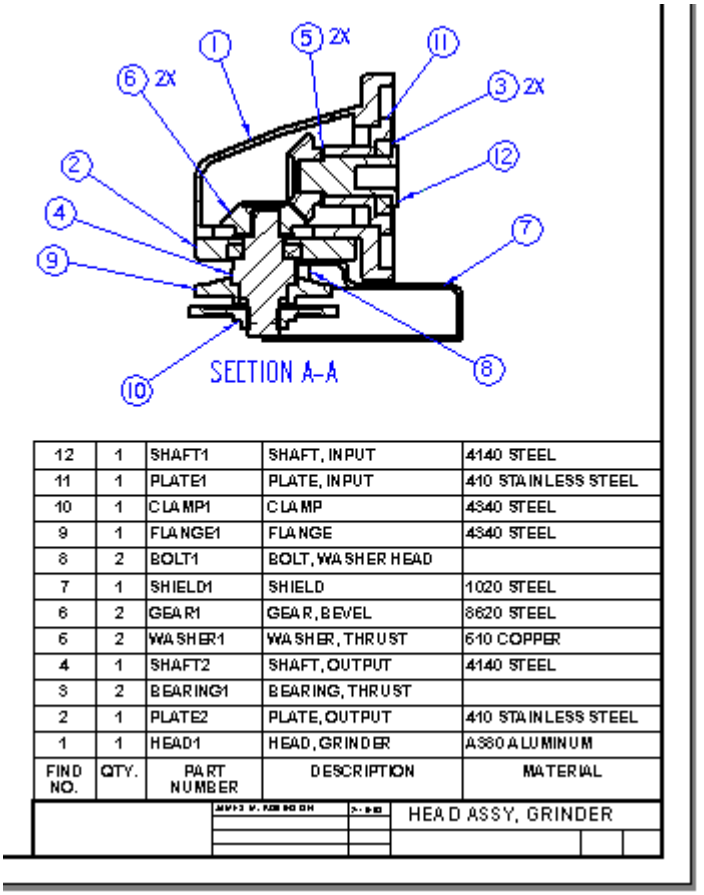
FIND NO.	QTY.	PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	MATERIAL
13	1	SHAFT1	SHAFT, INPUT	4140 STEEL
12	1	PLATE1	PLATE, INPUT	410 STAINLESS STEEL
11	1	CLAMP1	CLAMP	4340 STEEL
9	1	FLANGE1	FLANGE	4340 STEEL
8	2	BOLT1	BOLT, WASHER HEAD	
7	1	SHIELD1	SHIELD	1020 STEEL
6	2	GEAR1	GEAR, BEVEL	8620 STEEL
5	2	WASHER1	WASHER, THRUST	510 COPPER
4	1	SHAFT2	SHAFT, OUTPUT	4140 STEEL
3	2	BEARING1	BEARING, THRUST	
2	1	PLATE2	PLATE, OUTPUT	410 STAINLESS STEEL
1	1	HEAD1	HEAD, GRINDER	A380 ALUMINUM

HEAD ASSY, GRINDER

You can renumber a parts list using the Sorting tab on the Parts List Properties dialog box. If you used automatic ballooning when you created the parts list, renumbering the list also renumbers the balloons.

Note

The balloons for the deleted parts are not automatically deleted, but you can delete them manually.



FIND NO.	QTY.	PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	MATERIAL
12	1	SHAFT1	SHAFT, INPUT	4140 STEEL
11	1	PLATE1	PLATE, INPUT	410 STAINLESS STEEL
10	1	CLAMP1	CLAMP	4340 STEEL
9	1	FLANGE1	FLANGE	4340 STEEL
8	2	BOLT1	BOLT, WASHER HEAD	
7	1	SHIELD1	SHIELD	1020 STEEL
6	2	GEAR1	GEAR, BEVEL	8620 STEEL
5	2	WASHER1	WASHER, THRUST	510 COPPER
4	1	SHAFT2	SHAFT, OUTPUT	4140 STEEL
3	2	BEARING1	BEARING, THRUST	
2	1	PLATE2	PLATE, OUTPUT	410 STAINLESS STEEL
1	1	HEAD1	HEAD, GRINDER	A380 ALUMINUM

HEAD ASSY, GRINDER

Saving the parts list format

You can save a parts list format with a name you define, so you can easily use it again. Use the Saved Settings option on the General page of the Parts List Properties dialog box to name, save, and reapply your parts list format.

A quick way to reapply the parts list formatting is to use the Saved Settings list on the Parts List command bar.

Updating parts lists

Parts lists are similar to part views; when the parts list is not up-to-date, a gray outline is displayed around the parts list to indicate that it needs updating. For example, if you edit the part properties, you will have to update the parts list to

display the changes. The Update Parts List command on the shortcut menu updates the parts list.

Solid Edge does not check the file time stamp to determine whether a parts list is out-of-date. Rather, the software computes the parts list in memory from cached properties and compares it to existing parts list data. If there are differences, the parts list becomes out-of-date.

Also, if mass is included in the parts list, the software uses the geometric time stamp of the model references to determine whether the parts list is out-of-date. This out-of-date check occurs during document transition (for example, when you open or save a file), during parts list updates, and when a drawing view using the same assembly the parts list references is created, updated, or deleted.

Creating a custom table style

You can use the Style command to create your own, fully customized Table styles for parts lists. For example, you can define line color for the table border, grid, and heading dividers.

When you place a parts list on the drawing, you can select a custom table style using the Table Style list on the Parts List command bar.

For more information, see these Help topics:

- Table styles
- Create or modify a table style

Exploded parts lists

You can use the Parts List command and options in the Parts List Properties dialog box to define and place an exploded parts list on an assembly drawing.

Use the General page (or the Parts List command bar) to:

- Select the default Solid Edge Exploded parts list style from the Saved Settings list.
- Define a custom exploded parts list style.

Use the Options page to:

- Show the item numbers that were created in the assembly.

  Using item numbers from the model ensures the parts list item numbers do not change unless the model does. Otherwise, item numbers are generated on-the-fly by the Parts List command.

  Note

  You can use the assembly model item numbers when the Maintain item numbers check box is selected in the assembly document on the Item Numbers page, Solid Edge Options dialog box. To learn more, see Help topic Item numbers in assemblies.

Use the List Control page to:

- Display subassemblies and subassembly parts in an exploded parts list.

- Choose the item numbering format:
  - Level based item numbers, which indicate the hierarchy of an exploded parts list.
  - Flat list item numbers.
- Show the top level assembly in a row by itself.

Use the Columns page to:

- Select and format the Item Number data column.
- Select additional data columns—Mass (Item), Mass (Quantity), Miter Cut 1, and Miter Cut 2—when generating parts lists for assembly models containing frames, pipes, or tubes.
- Indent the item numbers or the content of any column.

Use the Sorting page to:

- Sort the item numbers in the same order that they are shown in Assembly PathFinder.

> **Note**
>
> Unless the assembly has been saved in V17 or later, the parts list order may not match the Assembly PathFinder order.

Using the Columns tab

You can use the Columns tab on the Properties dialog box to define column content in a parts list or bend table. You do this by selecting property text to be extracted from the model document.

Defining column content

You define the column content by selecting the type of property you want to extract to display in it. You can combine multiple properties in each column, and you can add simple text strings to any column.

- Parts lists—You can choose a predefined parts list-specific property, such as Item Number, Quantity, Cut Length, Total Length, Mass (Item), Mass (Quantity) and miter angle (Miter Cut 1, Miter Cut 2).

  Column totals are computed automatically when you use the Mass (Item) and Mass (Quantity) columns.
- Bend tables—You can choose any predefined property in the sheet metal bend table to add to, or remove from, the drawing bend table. These include properties for Sequence, Radius, Included Angle, (outside) Angle, Direction, and Feature.
- You can choose from any of the other file properties, such as Material, Volume, Density, Status, Document Number, and Company.
- You can add columns for special properties that are defined on the Custom tab in the File Properties dialog box in the part and sheet metal documents.

On the Columns tab in the Parts List Properties dialog box, you can find these properties in the Properties list, and you can insert a column for each special property.

- You can create custom columns by selecting the User Defined property.
- You can add simple text to the property strings in the column definition. The text is displayed in the parts list along with the property text derived values.

Creating a custom column definition

A custom column is one for which you specify the content you want to see. There are two things you need to do to create a custom column definition.

1. Use the Add Column button and select the User Defined property to define a custom column.
2. Use the Add Property button and the Properties list to select one or more types of data that you want to appear in this column. If you select multiple properties, they are added in a property text string to the dialog box.

You can add formatting to the property text string using the space bar and the Enter key. You can control the display order of extracted information by the order that you choose the property text. You also can type directly in the box to add special characters or any other fixed information that you want to appear in each cell in the custom column.

- Basic property text rules
- Property text codes for annotation and dimension text
- Format codes to modify property text output

Formatting columns

You can specify all column formatting on the Columns page. This includes column width and alignment, column heading position and alignment, and column heading text. For example, you can specify that column headings are centered but column data is left- or right-justified.

You can save all content and formatting specification settings on the Parts List Properties dialog box to be reused with another model. To save your parts list format, use the Save Settings options on the General page of the dialog box.

Modifying individual columns

Once the table is placed on the drawing, you can select a column to change its format. Use the buttons on the Data page to add new columns and rows, delete columns and rows, and edit the content of individual data cells.

- To learn how you can use the Format Column dialog box and the Format Table Cells dialog box to customize the appearance of the header rows and data cells, see the Help topic, Formatting columns and data cells.

- To learn how you can insert or delete columns and rows, move rows, drag columns from one location to another, see the Help topic, Make changes to a table or parts list.

Using the Options page

The Options page in the Parts List Properties dialog box consolidates parts list-specific content selection properties in one location. It is where you specify item numbers, component types, and whether to generate a total length parts list.

Formatting item numbers

All properties that pertain to item number formatting are specified on the Options tab. You can:

- Specify whether item numbers are derived from the assembly and maintained by the assembly, or whether item numbers are generated on-the-fly by the Parts List command. If items numbers are not derived from the assembly, you can use the Item Number tab to edit the item numbers from within the parts list.

  Tip

  You can use the Assembly Order sorting criteria on the Sorting page to display the column data in the same order as the Assembly PathFinder.

- Specify the starting item number.
- Specify the number to increment by.
- Specify whether to mark items that do not have balloons, and what identifying string to use. The default mark is an asterisk (*).
- Specify if the parts list is renumbered by changing the sort order.

  Note

  The Maintain item numbers check box on the Item Numbers page (Solid Edge Options dialog box) in the assembly document controls whether item numbers are created in the assembly.

Selecting component types

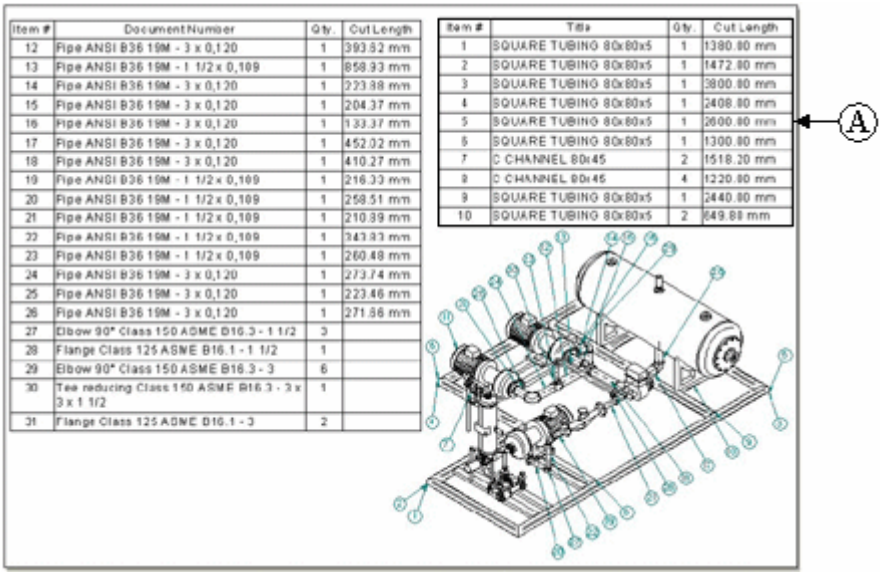
You can include and exclude component types on the parts list—parts, pipes, pipe fittings, and frame members—and you can use the Move Up and Move Down buttons to change the component type display order.

You can sort the parts list by component type when you select the Component Type Order option on the Sorting page. You also can change the display order of information derived from the model document properties. Examples of these properties include file name, item number, quantity, material type, and material properties.

Specifying a total length or cut length parts list

A total length parts list shows all pipes and frame members derived from the same component displayed as a total length on the same row.

A cut length parts list (A) shows each frame member or pipe that is a different length displayed on a different row.



Item #	Document Number	Qty.	Cut Length
12	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 3 x 0,120	1	393.82 mm
13	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 1 1/2 x 0,109	1	858.93 mm
14	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 3 x 0,120	1	223.98 mm
15	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 3 x 0,120	1	204.37 mm
16	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 3 x 0,120	1	133.37 mm
17	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 3 x 0,120	1	452.02 mm
18	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 3 x 0,120	1	410.27 mm
19	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 1 1/2 x 0,109	1	216.33 mm
20	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 1 1/2 x 0,109	1	258.51 mm
21	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 1 1/2 x 0,109	1	210.39 mm
22	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 1 1/2 x 0,109	1	343.83 mm
23	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 1 1/2 x 0,109	1	260.48 mm
24	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 3 x 0,120	1	273.74 mm
25	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 3 x 0,120	1	223.46 mm
26	Pipe ANSI B36 19M - 3 x 0,120	1	271.56 mm
27	Elbow 90° Class 150 ASME B16.3 - 1 1/2	3	
28	Flange Class 125 ASME B16.1 - 1 1/2	1	
29	Elbow 90° Class 150 ASME B16.3 - 3	6	
30	Tee reducing Class 150 ASME B16.3 - 3 x 3 x 1 1/2	1	
31	Flange Class 125 ASME B16.1 - 3	2	

Item #	Title	Qty.	Cut Length
1	SQUARE TUBING 80x80x5	1	1380.80 mm
2	SQUARE TUBING 80x80x5	1	1472.80 mm
3	SQUARE TUBING 80x80x5	1	3800.80 mm
4	SQUARE TUBING 80x80x5	1	2408.80 mm
5	SQUARE TUBING 80x80x5	1	2600.80 mm
6	SQUARE TUBING 80x80x5	1	1300.80 mm
7	C CHANNEL 80x45	2	1518.20 mm
8	C CHANNEL 80x45	4	1220.80 mm
9	SQUARE TUBING 80x80x5	1	2440.80 mm
10	SQUARE TUBING 80x80x5	2	649.88 mm

A

Note

Cut length can be synchronized with Teamcenter. The value appears as a Note in Product Structure Editor.

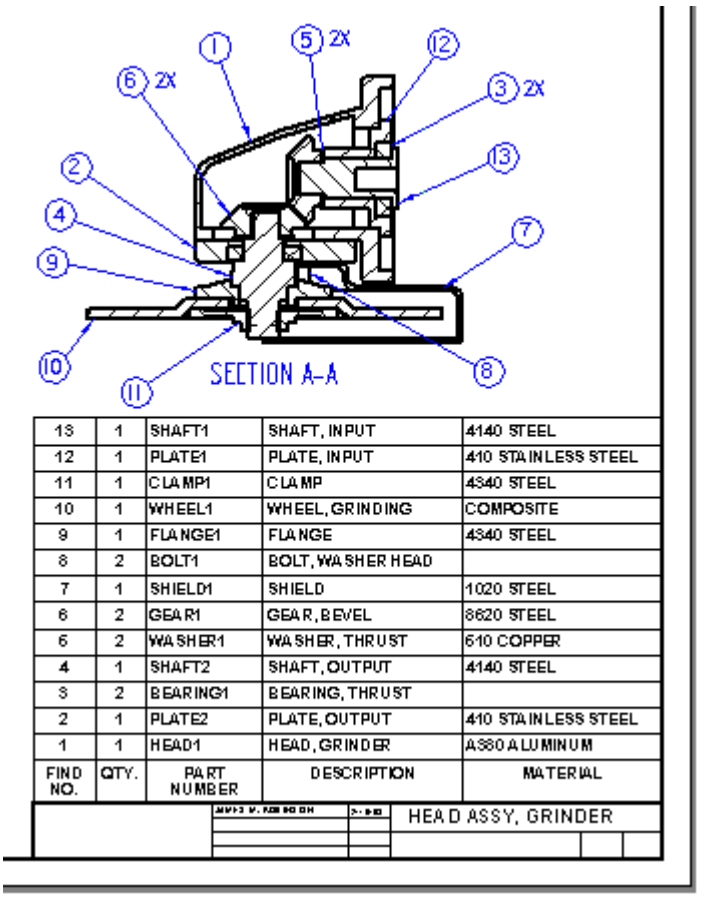
It is easy to generate either type of parts list for pipes and frames. See the Help topic, Create a total length parts list.

Balloons

Many companies include parts lists in their assembly drawings to give additional information about individual assembly components. For example, part number, material, and the quantity of parts required are typically documented in a parts list.

You can add balloons to the drawing, and the balloons can be numbered to correspond to the part entries in a parts list.

Balloons also can display property text extracted from a source file.



FIND NO.	QTY.	PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	MATERIAL
13	1	SHAFT1	SHAFT, INPUT	4140 STEEL
12	1	PLATE1	PLATE, INPUT	410 STAINLESS STEEL
11	1	CLAMP1	CLAMP	4340 STEEL
10	1	WHEEL1	WHEEL, GRINDING	COMPOSITE
9	1	FLANGE1	FLANGE	4340 STEEL
8	2	BOLT1	BOLT, WASHER HEAD	
7	1	SHIELD1	SHIELD	1020 STEEL
6	2	GEAR1	GEAR, BEVEL	8620 STEEL
5	2	WASHER1	WASHER, THRUST	510 COPPER
4	1	SHAFT2	SHAFT, OUTPUT	4140 STEEL
3	2	BEARING1	BEARING, THRUST	
2	1	PLATE2	PLATE, OUTPUT	410 STAINLESS STEEL
1	1	HEAD1	HEAD, GRINDER	A380 ALUMINUM

HEAD ASSY, GRINDER

Automatic balloons on a part view

You can automatically add balloons to a part view of an assembly based on its parts list when you choose the Parts List command and set the Auto-Balloon option on the Parts List command bar.

When you select the part view that you want to balloon, the parts list and the balloons that reference it are created automatically.

You also can create balloons automatically without placing a parts list. To learn how to do this, see the Help topic, Automatically add balloons to a part view.

Controlling duplicate balloons

You can specify varying levels of control for duplicate balloons using the Auto-Balloon options on the Balloon page (Parts List Properties dialog box). For example, when working with multiple drawing views, you can specify that no part item has more than one balloon shown in the entire document, no matter how many drawing views show the part.

Adjusting text size for automatic balloons

The appearance of automatically generated balloons is specified by options on the Balloon page (Parts List Properties dialog box). Here, for example, you can adjust the text size of the balloons *before* you add them to the drawing by typing a new value in the Text Size box.

Balloon item numbers

You can specify that balloons in a part view of an assembly display item numbers that reference the item numbers in a parts list.

- If you place the balloons before you create the parts list, the item numbers are assigned sequentially in the order you select the parts.

- If you place the balloons after you create the parts list, the item numbers in the balloons match the active parts list.

  Note

  There can be multiple parts lists on a drawing. The most recently created parts list is the active parts list.

  You can make a different parts list the active parts list by clicking Make Active on the shortcut menu with the parts list selected.

To assign item numbers, use the Balloon command and set these options on the Balloon command bar:

- Link To Parts List, which automatically generates balloons according to the active parts list.

- Item Number, which automatically generates the balloon item numbers. If you clear the Item Number option, then you can add the item numbers individually to each balloon.

- Item Count, which adds the part quantity value to the bottom half of the balloon.

You can modify the balloon item numbers and the parts list at the same time.

- To edit the item number values in the parts list and in the balloons, use the Item Number tab (Parts List Properties dialog box.

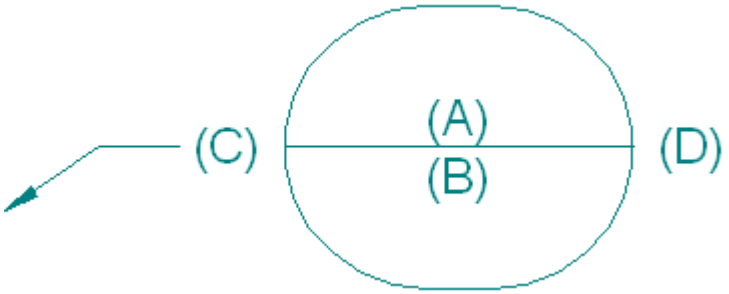
- To change the item number formatting, use the Options tab (Parts List Properties dialog box.

Balloons that reference property text

You can create balloons that reference property text information in a source document. Some examples include project, part document number, material specification, and revision.

To select the specific property text to be displayed in a new balloon, use the Property Text button on the Balloon command bar to open the Select Property Text dialog box.

You can assign property text to different text locations in the balloon—(A), (B), (C), and (D)—by adding the property text string into the Upper, Lower, Prefix, and Suffix boxes on the Balloon command bar.



Note

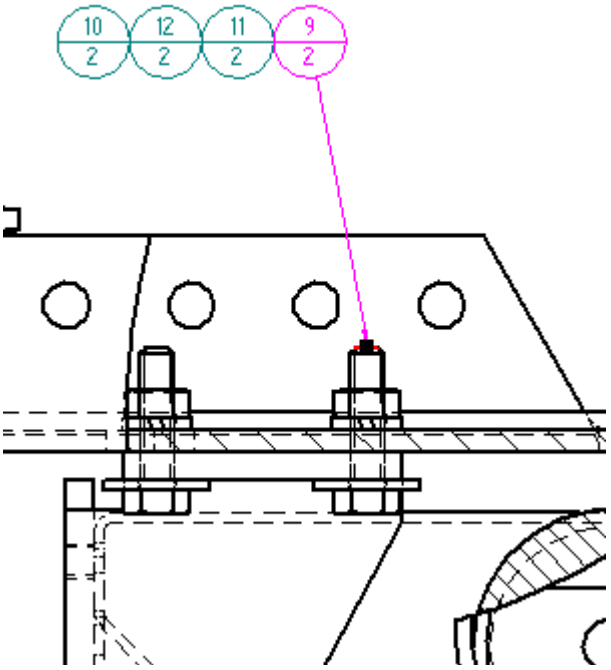
To display property text at text location (A), you must clear the Item Number option on the Balloon command bar.

To learn how to create or modify balloons so that they show a document number or other document property, see Show document properties in balloons.

Stacking balloons

When multiple balloons reference items in the same parts list group, they often overlap one another and it is difficult to see what the leaders are pointing to. The parts that comprise a fastener group, for example—bolt, washer, lock washer and nut—are small and close together. You can use the Automatically stack balloons in the selected drawing view check box on the Balloon page (Parts List Properties dialog box) to rearrange the fastener balloons into a stack, yet have each fastener part retain its associativity. If a part item number changes, its balloon also updates.

When balloons are stacked, they align vertically or horizontally, with a single leader attached to the first balloon in the stack. This example shows a horizontal stack and accompanying parts list. The first balloon is the one at right with the attached leader.

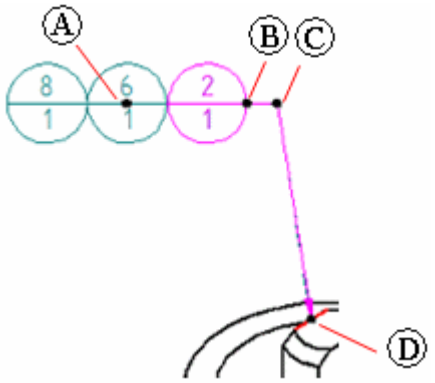


Item Number	Document Number	Material	Quantity
12	Metric hex nut style 1 ANSI B18.2.4.1M M6	Steel	2
11	Helical spring lock washer ANSI B18.21.1 heavy 1/4	Steel	2
10	Plain washer ANSI B18.22M regular 6 mm	Steel	2
9	Hex head metric machine screw ANSI B18.6.7M M6x25	Steel	2

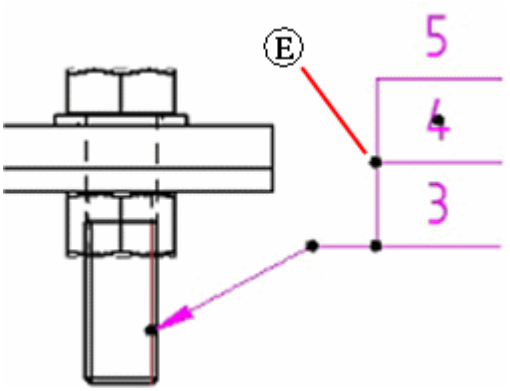
To learn how to arrange balloons in a stack automatically and manually, see the Help topic Stack balloons.

Balloon stack edit handles

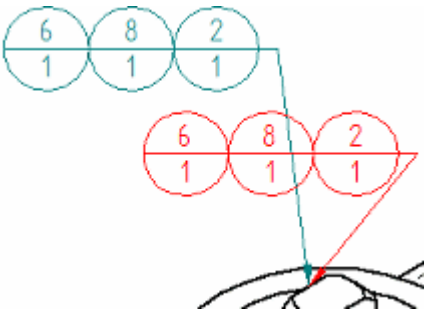
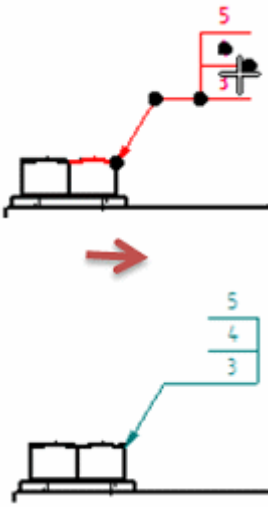
You can use the following edit handles to manipulate a balloon stack. Balloon stacks with break lines have four edit handles. Balloon stacks without break lines have three edit handles.



A vertical balloon stack with an underline balloon shape and a break line has one additional edit handle (E).



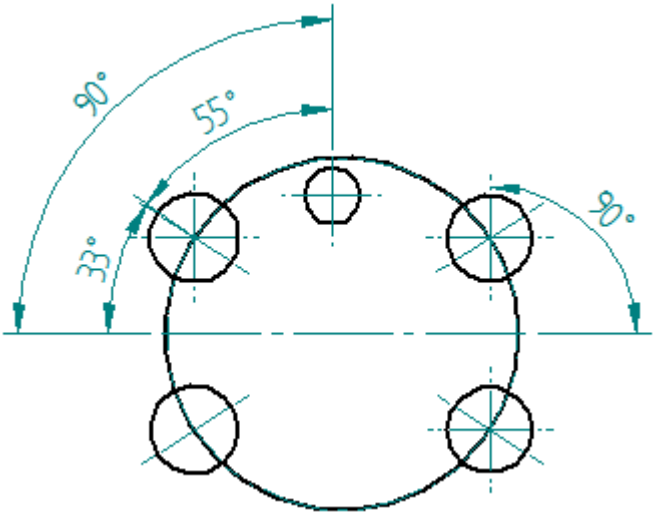
Handle location	Purpose
(A) Balloon stack edit point	Changes the stack arrangement from horizontal to vertical, or from vertical to horizontal.
(B) Break line edit point	Lengthens or shortens the break line. Flips the balloon stack and break line to the opposite side of the leader. For a stack without a leader, you can turn the break line on, drag the stack, and then turn the break line off again.

Handle location	Purpose
(C) Leader edit point	Moves the balloon stack freely by moving the break line and changing the leader line length and orientation.  Inserting vertices adds edit points. To learn how, see Move an annotation.
(D) Annotation connection point	Moves the start point of the leader along the annotated element. Pressing <Alt> disconnects the leader and removes associativity. Pressing <Alt+Ctrl> disconnects the leader, yet preserves associativity. To learn how, see Move an annotation.
(E)	Only for a vertical balloon stack with an underline balloon shape—Drags the vertical line on the stack to the opposite side of the annotation. 

Center lines, center marks, and bolt hole circles

Center lines, center marks, and bolt hole circles are used in the Draft environment to facilitate the dimensioning and annotation process. They are associative to the elements they are added to in the 2D Model sheet, working sheet, or drawing view. If the drawing view is modified, the center lines, center marks, and bolt hole circles will update their position and size accordingly.

You can use the Angle Between command to add dimensions that reference these annotations.



Adding center lines, center marks, and bolt hole circles

You can add a center line, center mark, or bolt hole circle annotation one annotation at a time, or automatically add them to all part views on the drawing sheet. For center lines and center marks, you can fence-select a group of elements to add them to.

The commands to add these annotations are located on the Home tab® Annotation group.

Automatic Center Lines command, for part views only, provides access to command bar functions that automatically add and remove both center lines and center marks.

Center Line command adds individual center lines.

Center Mark command adds center marks to one or more curved elements, such as circles, arcs, ellipses, or partial ellipses.

Bolt Hole Circle command

Modifying center lines, center marks, and bolt hole circles

You can change the appearance of an existing center mark, line, or bolt hole circle by changing its properties. Select the annotation and then use the Properties command on the shortcut menu.

Any of these annotations can be removed individually using the Delete command on the annotation shortcut menu.

Center lines and marks that were added automatically with the Automatic Center Lines command can be removed as a group by setting the Remove Lines and Marks button on the Automatic Center Lines command bar.

Reattaching detached annotations

When center lines, center marks, and bolt hole circles become detached due to changes in the model or drawing view update, they are displayed using the Error Dimension color set on the General page (Dimension Style dialog box). They also are identified in the Dimension Tracker dialog box.

You can reattach the annotations using the attachment handles that are visible when you select them. When reattached, they display using the Driven Dimension color.

Engineering fonts

The engineering fonts delivered with the software contain industry-specific fonts, special characters, and symbols that you can use to annotate engineering drawings. These fonts include degree symbols, diameter symbols, and other special characters and symbols that are not usually included in a typical word processing package.

Your choice of font should be based on the industry for which you are creating engineering drawings.

The software provides TrueType fonts; with TrueType fonts, what you see on the screen is what appears on the printed page. The screen display of the document closely matches the printed document.

Geometric tolerancing

Geometric tolerancing is a form of annotation that you can use to provide additional information about the features of a part. While dimensions and their associated tolerances give information about the acceptable variation in the size or location of a feature on a part, geometric tolerancing establishes the relationships between features on a part. For example, you can define the tolerance for the position of a hole in a part in relation to other features, or datums, on the part.

In the Draft environment, you can define the geometric tolerances with the following commands:

- The Feature Control Frame command specifies the necessary tolerance on a feature in relation to reference letters for other features of a part, called datums.
- You can identify the datums on your part using the Datum Frame command.
- You can specify datum points, lines, planes, or areas for special function or manufacturing and inspection using the Datum Frame command.

Note

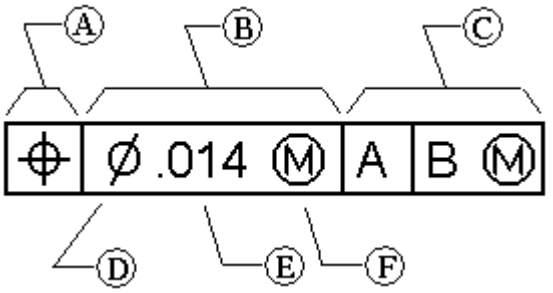
Solid Edge supports the ASME Y14.5-2009 ANSI and ISO drafting standards for geometric dimensioning and tolerance callouts. The *between* and *statistical tolerance* symbols are supported in the TrueType symbol fonts.

Feature control frames

A feature control frame is composed of two or more rectangular compartments that contain information about tolerances. The first block always contains a geometric characteristic symbol. Subsequent compartments contain tolerance values and symbols representing part variations, such as maximum material condition. You can create the feature control frame by typing text and selecting symbols from a dialog box.

You can refer to up to four datums in a feature control frame.

A feature control frame has the following parts:



(A)	Geometric characteristic symbol
(B)	Tolerance
(C)	Datum reference
(D)	Tolerance zone symbol
(E)	Tolerance value
(F	Material condition symbol

A valid feature control frame must contain these two components:

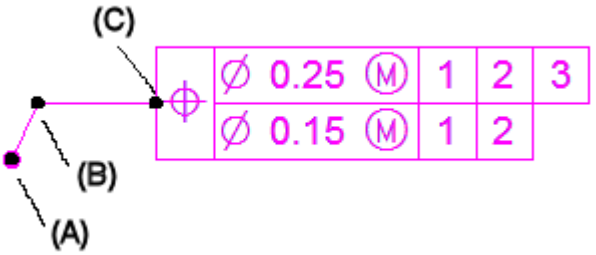
- Geometric characteristic symbol
- Tolerance

Some geometric characteristics also require a reference to a datum in the feature control frame. You can apply material conditions to the tolerance and datum references. You can also apply a diametral tolerance zone to the tolerance.

Manipulating feature control frames

Feature control frame edit handles

After you place a feature control frame, you can use the annotation edit handles to adjust its position and orientation.

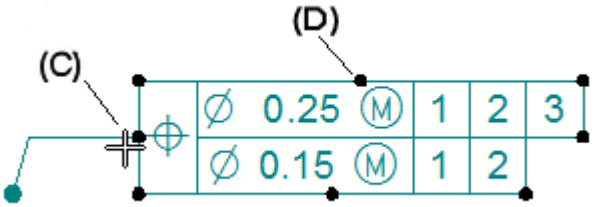


Feature control frame edit handles	
Location	**Purpose**
(A) Annotation connection point	Moves the start point of the leader along the annotated element. Pressing <Alt> disconnects the leader and removes associativity. Pressing <Alt+Ctrl> disconnects the leader, yet preserves associativity. To learn how, see Move an annotation.
(B) Leader edit point	Moves the feature control frame freely by editing the leader line. Changes the leader line length and orientation. **Note** Break line length and orientation are not affected. Inserting vertices into the leader line adds edit points. To learn how, see Move an annotation.

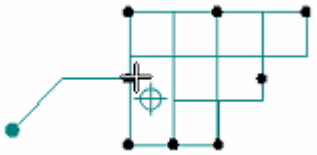
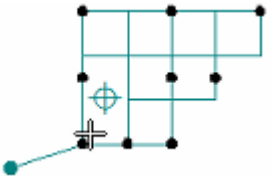
Feature control frame edit handles	
Location	**Purpose**
(C) Leader attachment point	Dragging point (C): • Lengthens or shortens the break line. • Flips the feature control frame and break line to the opposite side of the leader. • If no break line is used, flips the feature control frame in 90, 180, and 270 degree increments with respect to the entity it references.

Feature control frame snap points

You can change the leader line attachment point using snap points displayed on the feature control frame. Pressing Alt while dragging the point (C) displays the snap points so you can connect to them.



Feature control frame snap points	
Location	**Purpose**
Alt+drag (C) Leader attachment point	Pressing Alt while dragging point (C): • Displays the available leader snap points (see D, below). • Changes the connection point of the leader to the feature control frame.

Feature control frame snap points	
Location	**Purpose**
(D) Snap points	Pressing Alt while dragging the point (C) displays the following snap points: • With a break line, eight points are visible along the frame perimeter.  • Without a break line, one additional point is visible at the center of the frame. 

Command

- Feature Control Frame command

Procedures

- Place a feature control frame or datum frame
- Define feature control frame content
- Example: Add symbols to a feature control frame
- Move an annotation
- Add PMI dimensions and annotations

Overview

- Geometric tolerancing
- Annotations overview
- PMI dimensions and annotations

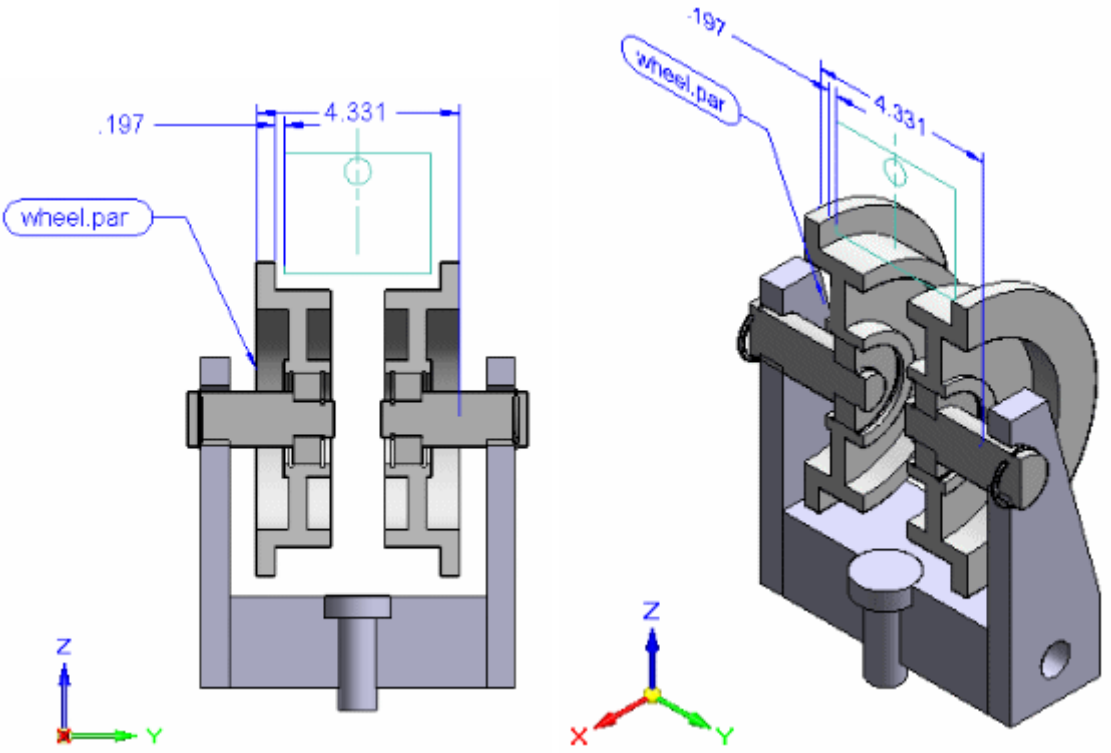
Product Manufacturing Information (PMI)

PMI overview

Product Manufacturing Information, or PMI, consists of dimensions and annotations that are added to the 3D model and can be used in the review, manufacturing, and inspection processes.

In synchronous and ordered modeling, PMI dimensions also provide an important design modification tool. By editing dimension values you can make changes to the model. You can lock and unlock dimensions to control how connected model faces respond to dimension value edits. And you can control the direction in which dimension edits are applied. This greatly simplifies the process of design, testing, and update.

The Solid Edge PMI application combines the functionality of adding dimensions and annotations, generating fully rendered 3D model views with 3D section views, drawing formatting, and publishing the information.



You can add these types of PMI:

- Dimensions—Smart Dimension, Distance Between, Angle Between, Coordinate Dimension, Angular Coordinate Dimension, Symmetric Dimension.
- Annotations—Leader, Balloon, Callout, Surface Texture Symbol, Weld Symbol, Edge Condition, Feature Control Frame, Datum Frame, Datum Target.

For more information about adding these PMI elements, see the Help topic, PMI dimensions and annotations.

You can create these types of views:

- 3D section views, which can be added to or removed from,
- 3D model views

Note

- The dimensions you add using the ordered PMI dimensioning commands are always driven dimensions.
- You can choose whether a synchronous PMI dimension added to the model should be locked or unlocked.
- The section views and model views are associative to the 3D model. When the 3D model changes, the section views and model views also update.

PMI commands

The PMI tab conveniently groups the commands you need to:

- Add PMI dimensions and annotations directly in the 3D model.
- In the ordered environment, copy 2D dimensions and annotations from a sketch to the PMI 3D model.
- Create model and section views of the 3D model.

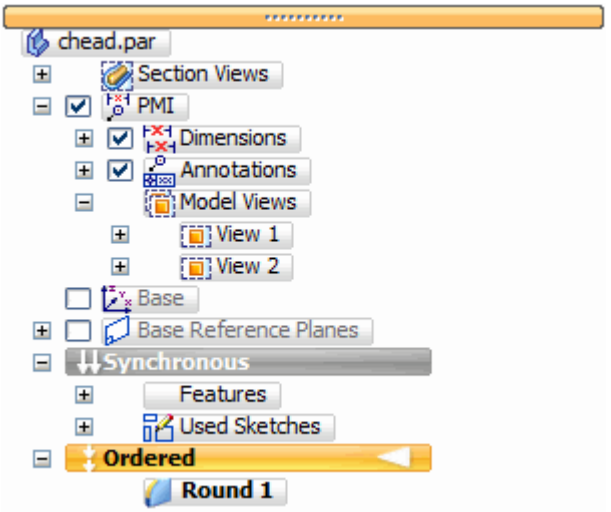
In the synchronous environment, you also can use dimension and annotation commands located on any other tabs on the ribbon to add PMI to the model, as well as to dimension sketches. It is the type of element you select (model edge or sketch geometry), not the command, that determines whether a dimension is a three-dimensional PMI dimension or a two-dimensional sketch dimension.

For information about using PMI commands, see the Help topic, Working with 3D PMI.

PathFinder, PMI, and model views

PathFinder accesses and controls all PMI elements and 3D model views for the model. If a sheet metal model has two different states, designed and flattened, for example, then the PMI and model views are owned by the model state in which they are created.

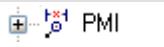
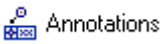
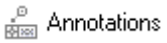
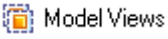
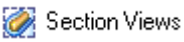
- The PMI collection located on PathFinder contains expandable sub-collections of all Dimensions, Annotations, and Model Views in the active document.



- If the PMI collection is empty, then it is not displayed in PathFinder.
- When you define a PMI model view, its name is added to the Model Views collection.
- A separate Section Views collection, located in PathFinder above the PMI collection, contains all 3D section views that have been defined in the document.
- PMI elements and section views can appear multiple times in PathFinder. When one of these items is selected, all occurrences of the item are selected.

This table explains the PMI-related icons used in PathFinder.

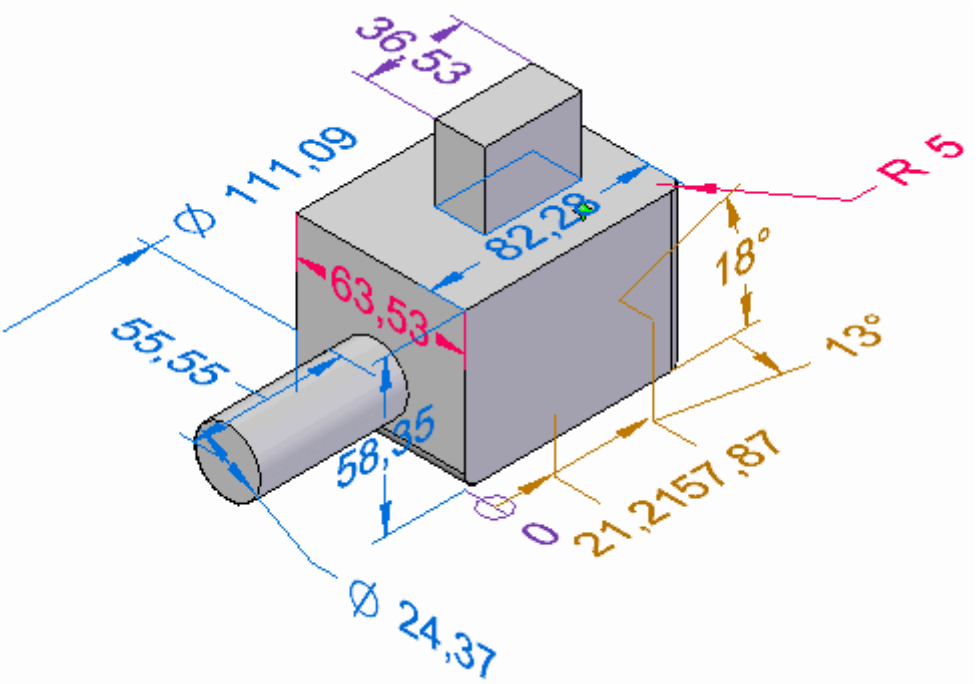
A *node* is the top-level entry in a PMI collection or in a sub-collection under a defined model view.

Legend	
	PMI collection symbol
	Dimension node, shown (in PMI or Model Views collection)
	Dimension node, hidden (in PMI or Model Views collection)
	PMI dimension element, shown
	PMI dimension locked (synchronous)
	PMI dimension element, hidden
	Annotation node, shown (in PMI or Model Views collection)
	Annotation node, hidden (in PMI or Model Views collection)
	PMI annotation element (callout symbol example), shown
	PMI annotation element (callout symbol example), hidden
	Model Views collection
	Defined model view
	Section Views collection
	Section view, applied
	Section view, unapplied

Note

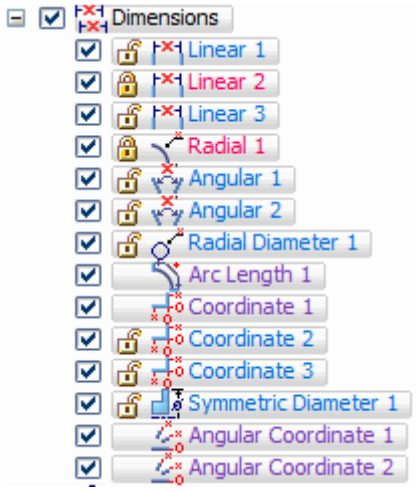
- The check box in front of each PMI element listed in PathFinder turns the element on and off. There are also Show, Hide, Show All, and Hide All commands on the shortcut menu for each group of Dimensions and Annotations.
- Model views are not shown or hidden, but instead they are applied to the graphic window using the Apply View command.
- Defined 3D sections are applied and removed using the Apply Cut command.

The following image and corresponding table explain the color codes assigned to dimensions.

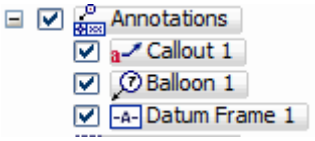


PMI dimension color codes			
Color	**Solve condition**	**Dynamic Edit?**	**Attached to**
Blue	Free	Yes	Synchronous elements
Red	Locked, dimension constrained.	Yes	Synchronous elements
Purple	Driven by other dimension or variable	No.	Ordered elements or otherwise uneditable PMI
Brown	Not available	No	Not adequately attached to any element

Within the PMI collection, different types of dimensions—for example, linear, radial, angular—display unique symbols and element names on PathFinder. Also, their respective color code is displayed.



Annotations work the same way, with their own set of symbols and specific naming conventions.



To learn more about showing and hiding PMI elements, see the Help topic, Working with 3D PMI.

Reviewing a PMI model

A special PMI model review mode allows you to review all of the model views defined in the document along with their associated PMI data. You may want to use this feature before exporting PMI models and data to View and Markup, for example.

When you select the Review Command (PMI Model Views), a PMI Model Review command bar is displayed to guide you through the review of each model view.

For more information, see the Help topic, Creating 3D model views with PMI.

Sharing a PMI model

There are many ways you can share 3D models and their attached data.

- Use the Create Drawing command to generate a drawing of the dimensioned model currently displayed in the graphics window. You also can use the Create Drawing command to generate a drawing of any model view “snapshots” you have created in the document.
- Use the Apply View command to display a model view with a special orientation in the graphics window, and then use the Print command to print it.
- Use the Save As Image command on the Application menu to save the contents of the graphic window in an image file format.

- Publish them to a format compatible with View and Markup using the Send PMI to View and Markup command. This will save the file in *.pcf* format, making it available to View and Markup.

- Publish them to Solid Edge Viewer using the Save As command to save the information to *.jt* format.

Creating drawings of a PMI model

You can use the Drawing View Wizard to produce drawings from a 3D model with PMI. The data in the model views—view orientation, 3D sections, and PMI dimensions and annotations—are copied to the drawing view. The PMI text copied to the drawing retains its three-dimensional aspect.

There are two basic ways to do this:

- You can generate the drawing from the current model representation in the graphics window.

- You can generate drawings from alternate model views that you have created using the View command. Model views allow you to apply special formatting, backgrounds, and view orientations to your model.

Once you have copied one or more PMI model views to the drawing, you can:

- Turn associativity with the model view on and off.

- Change the PMI model view currently displayed in the drawing view.

- Choose a different render mode—including color shading—for each of the model views on the drawing.

For more information, see the Help topic, Create a PMI drawing.

Working with 3D PMI

Model view creation workflow

PMI model view creation is WYSIWYG. The model orientation, render mode, annotations, and dimensions that are visible in the graphics window when you select the Model View command are what you get when the PMI model view is created.

Note

Models in an assembly must be activated before PMI can be added to them.

1. Set a PMI dimension and annotation plane. In the ordered environment, use the Lock Dimension Plane command on the PMI toolbar to set an active 3D dimension and annotation plane. Annotations and dimensions are placed parallel to this plane. You can change this dimension plane at any time while adding annotations and dimensions.

2. **Add PMI dimensions and annotations**. In the synchronous environment, sketch dimensions migrate automatically to the 3D model when you extrude a sketch region or use another command that converts the 2D region to a 3D solid. You also can add new PMI annotations and dimensions directly to the model using the commands on the PMI tab.

   See these Help topics for more information:

   - Part Modeling workflow overview
   - PMI dimensions and annotations

3. **Add PMI dimensions and annotations**. In the ordered environment, you can use the Copy To PMI command to copy 2D dimensions and annotations from a feature or sketch to the 3D model. You can edit the copied elements using the commands on their shortcut menu. You can add new PMI annotations and dimensions using the commands on the PMI tab.

   To learn more about PMI dimensions and annotations, see the Help topic, PMI dimensions and annotations.

4. **Choose a view orientation** for the model view using standard rotation, view selection, and zoom commands.

5. **Create a PMI model view**. Use the PMI tab® Model Views group® View command to capture all of this display information, assign a view name and render mode, and save the view. It adds the view name to the “Model Views” collection on PathFinder. All of the dimensions and annotations associated with the model view are listed under the model view name.

   To learn more about PMI model views, see the Help topic, Creating 3D model views with PMI.

6. **Modify the model view**. If necessary, change the model orientation and display settings.

   You can hide PMI elements that interfere with the view.

   Use the Edit Definition command on the model view shortcut menu to:

   - Change the model view name and definition using the Options button on the Edit Definition command bar.
   - Make changes to the display of parts and subassemblies in the view using the Model View Display group button on command bar.
   - Add and edit dimensions and annotations in the model view using the Model View Display group button on command bar.

   To learn how, see the Help topic, Edit a PMI model view definition.

7. **Create additional model views**. Use the Model View command to capture a new orientation and display mode for corresponding PMI. Assign a different name to this view, and choose a render mode as desired. If you change the render mode, use the Apply View command on the PathFinder shortcut menu to apply the view settings to the graphic display.

8. **Review**. Use the Review command for a graphical tour of all PMI model views.

9. **Export and publish the model view**. Use the Send PMI To View and Markup command to publish your PMI model views and open them in View and Markup.

   To learn more about publishing PMI models, see the Help topic, Publishing Product Manufacturing Information (PMI) and Model Views to View and Markup.

Adding a 3D section view to a model view

Within the context of the PMI workflow, any 3D sections applied at the time of model view creation are automatically included in the model view, but you can add or remove sections after the model view is created, too.

1. Set the section view display properties.

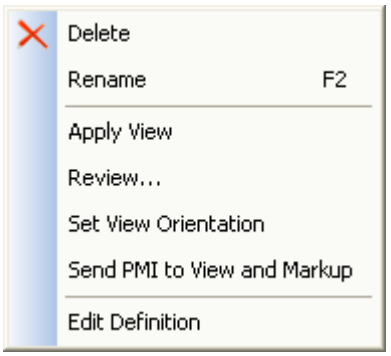
2. Display or hide the cutting plane.

3. Add the section to the model view.

For more information about using section views in PMI model views, see the Help topic, Use a 3D section view in a PMI model view.

Model view editing commands

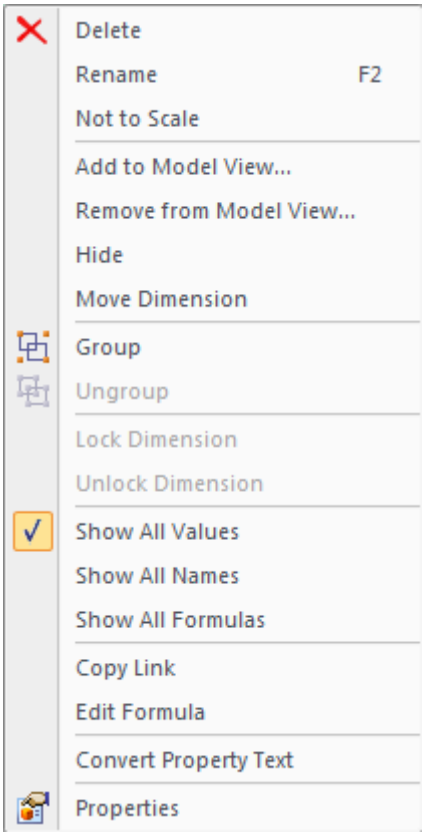
The commands you use to edit the definition and properties of a 3D model view are located on the shortcut menu of the selected model view on PathFinder. For example, the shortcut menu to manipulate model views contains these commands:



To learn how to use these commands to manipulate PMI model views, see the Help topic, Manipulate a PMI Model View.

PMI element editing commands

The commands you use to add PMI elements to 3D model views, remove PMI elements from 3D model views, and show and hide PMI elements are also located on the shortcut menu of a selected dimension or annotation in PathFinder:



To learn how to use the commands to manipulate PMI elements, see the Help topic, Display and edit PMI elements.

Whether PMI elements are visible or not is controlled by the check box ☑ preceding an element or node name, and by the Show and Hide commands on the shortcut menu.

Showing and hiding nodes and elements

When you point to the top level of a Dimensions or Annotations collection, the Show command acts as a gatekeeper for the individual PMI elements in that collection.

- If you select Hide while pointing to the Dimensions or Annotations node, then all the dimensions and annotations in the collection are immediately turned off in the display.

  Note

  Individual elements can only be made visible if the node is also set to be shown.

- If you select Show while pointing to the Dimensions or Annotations node, then the dimensions and annotations in the collection can be shown, depending upon their individual show/hide settings.

  Tip

  You can edit a model part or feature without the clutter of PMI annotations and dimensions. Use the Hide command to temporarily remove the annotations and dimensions; use the Show command to restore them.

If you set or clear the check box in front of an individual PMI element in any collection, then all instances of this PMI element are shown or hidden in the document.

See the *Display and edit PMI elements* section in the Product Manufacturing Information (PMI) overview Help topic for a table that illustrates the show and hide states of PMI-related icons.

Show or hide in a model view

If you select Hide while editing a model view, then elements that are hidden when you exit edit mode are removed from that model view's list of collected elements.

Show All and Hide All

The Show All and Hide All commands for a node are a fast way to turn on or off all of the individual dimensions or annotations in the document.

PMI dimensions and annotations

Creating PMI elements

Annotations and dimensions placed on model geometry are PMI elements. They are created in two ways.

- When you use a sketch to construct a feature, the dimensions placed on the sketch migrate to the appropriate edges on the solid body. These migrated dimensions become three-dimensional, PMI dimensions. See the Help topic, Create a dimensioned part from a sketch.

  Annotations placed on a sketch also are copied to the model.

- You can place dimensions and annotations directly on model edges at any time using any of the commands on the ribbon. In addition, the tool set on the PMI tab conveniently groups all PMI-related functions together in one place.

  Note

  The commands you use to place dimensions and annotations on sketches and on the model are the same. However, dimensions and annotations placed on 2D sketch elements and those placed on 3D model elements behave differently. The differences are most apparent during editing.

Locked and unlocked PMI dimensions

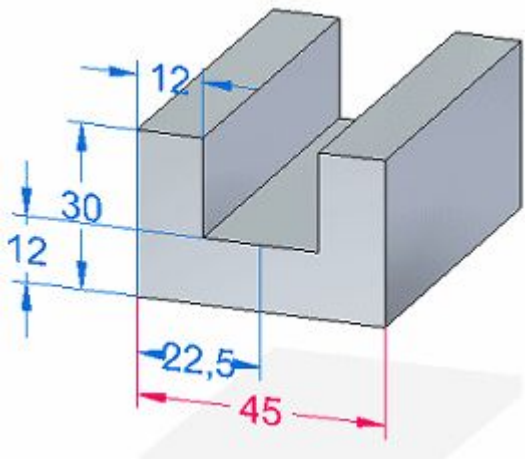
In synchronous models, you can use PMI dimensions to modify the model. You control the effect of model changes by choosing whether a dimension on a model edge is locked or unlocked, and by specifying the direction of change.

- An unlocked dimension means that when faces connected to the dimensioned edge are modified, the dimension value is allowed to change. The default color of an unlocked dimension is blue.

- A locked dimension keeps the dimension value from being changed when a connected face is moved or resized.

  A dimension must be locked before a formula or variable rule can be applied to the dimension.

  The default display color of a locked dimension is red.



In PathFinder, a locked dimension is easily identified by the lock icon .

Note

All 2D dimensions that migrate from sketches are locked.

You can edit individual dimensions to lock and unlock them, as needed to modify the model. Use the lock button on the Dimension Value Edit dialog box to change a dimension from unlocked to locked.

If the Lock button is not available, select the Maintain Relationships command.

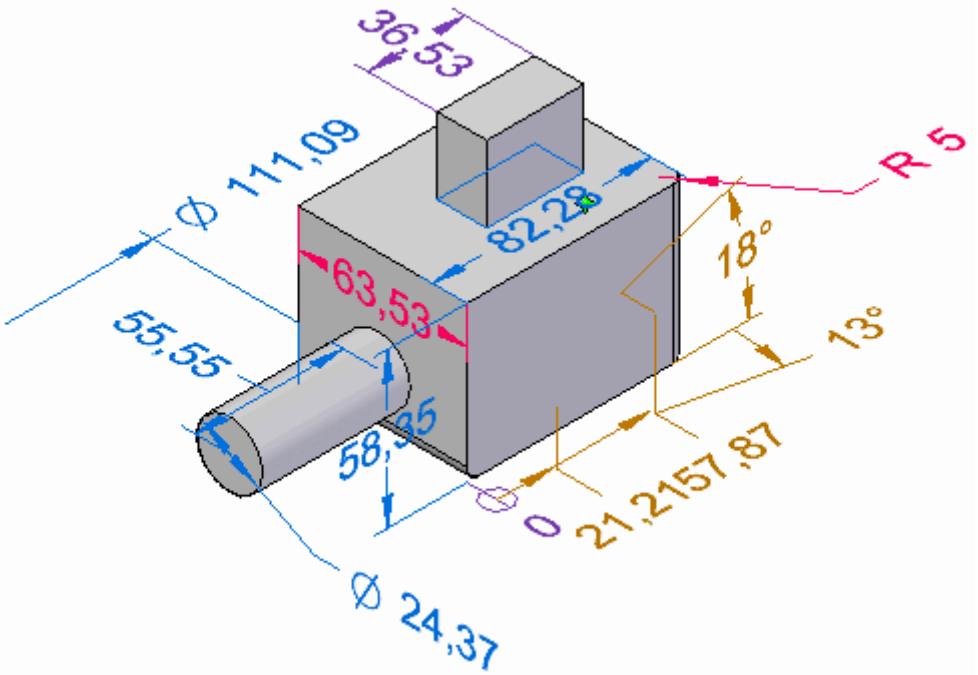
Note

Dimension locking rules

- It is better to leave dimensions unlocked, only locking values as necessary for a particular edit. When you edit the model, the edit is automatically localized, leaving uninvolved dimensions unchanged.
- in synchronous modeling, a PMI dimension must be locked before it can be driven by a formula or be used in a formula. Similarly, you cannot unlock a dimension that is controlled by a formula or is used within the formula of another dimension or variable.

To learn how you can modify a model by editing dimension values, see the Help topic, Editing model dimensions.

PMI dimension colors

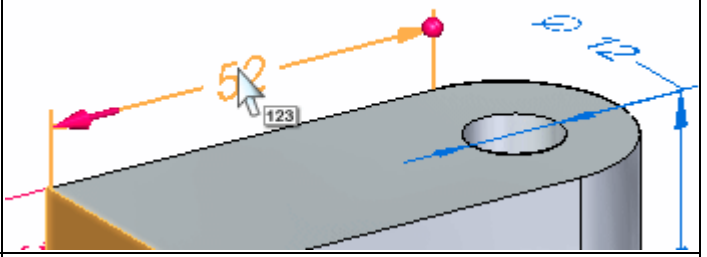
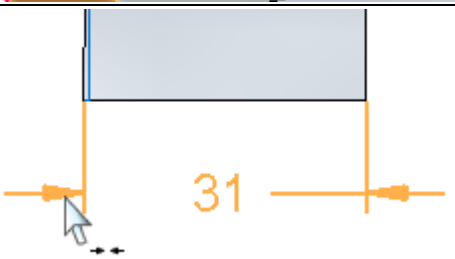
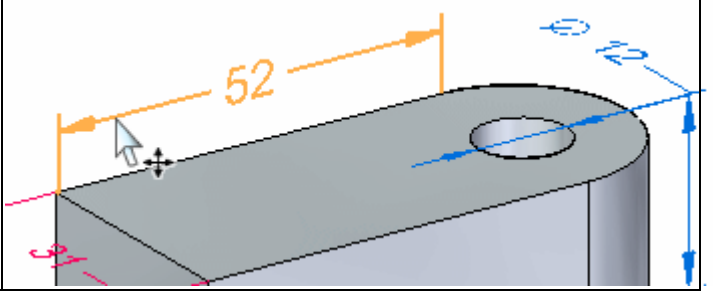


The following table explains the color codes assigned to dimensions.

PMI dimension color codes			
Color	**Solve condition**	**Dynamic Edit?**	**Attached to**
Blue	Free	Yes	Synchronous elements
Red	Locked, dimension constrained.	Yes	Synchronous elements
Purple	Driven by other dimension or variable	No.	Ordered elements or otherwise uneditable PMI
Brown	Not available	No	Not adequately attached to any element

PMI dimension edit cursors

As you move the Select cursor over a dimension, it indicates the type of operation that is available if you click at that location:

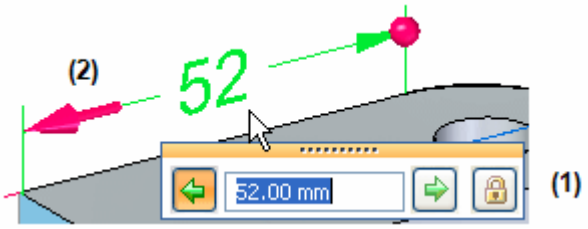
PMI dimension edit cursors			
Cursor image	**Operation**	**When is it displayed?**	**Example**
	Edit the dimension value.	Cursor is over the dimension text.	
	Drag a terminator inside or outside the extension lines.	Cursor is over a dimension terminator.	
	Modify the dimension properties.	Cursor is over a dimension line or extension line.	

PMI dimension modification handles

There are two types of dimension modification handles: a value edit handle and formatting handles.

Dimension value edit handle

- A PMI dimension value edit handle is displayed when you click the dimension text. The dimension value edit handle consists of a Dimension Value Edit dialog box (1) and 3D arrow and sphere terminators (2).

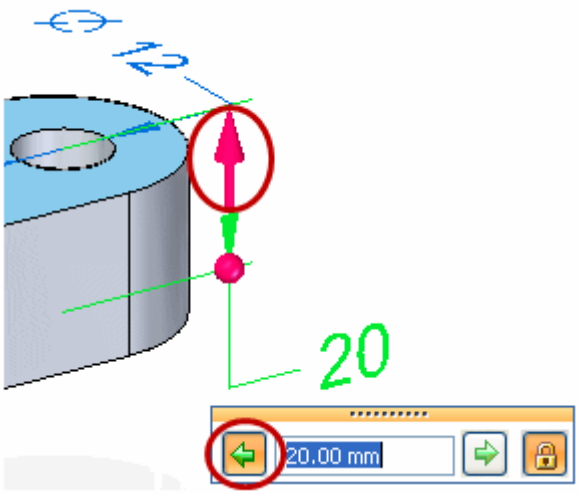


  – The dialog box is where you enter or edit the value.

  – You control the direction in which the edit is applied by clicking the arrow buttons on the dialog box or by clicking either of the 3D terminators.

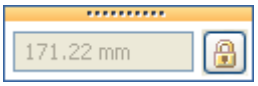
    ◊ The 3D sphere terminator indicates the stationary side.

    ◊ The default direction is indicated by the highlighted arrow button on the dialog box and by the 3D arrow terminator. Sometimes the 3D terminators are more explicit, as shown in the following example.



    To learn how to use the dimension value edit handle, see the Help topic, Resize the model by editing PMI dimension values.

- If the Dimension Value Edit dialog box is completely disabled, it means the dimension cannot be edited in its current state.



Dimension formatting handles

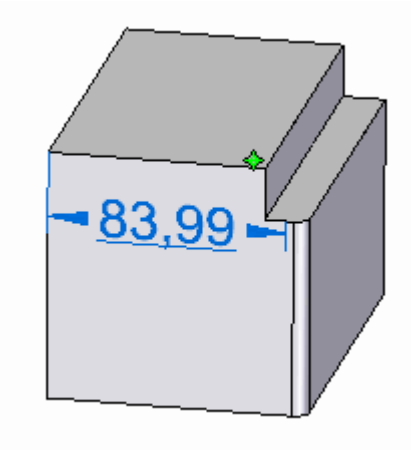
- You can change the dimension format using these handles:
  - The Edit Definition command bar and dimension formatting handles are displayed when you click a dimension line or extension line.
    - ◊ You can use the options on the Edit Definition command bar to modify the dimension properties, including tolerance, prefix, and orientation.
    - ◊ The filled circles are format handles you can drag to change the length of the dimension line and extension lines.

  - When you click a dimension terminator, such as an arrow, you can drag it outside or inside the extension lines.

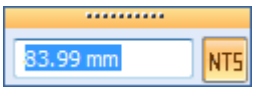
To learn how you can show and hide, edit, and manipulate PMI elements, see the Help topic, Display and edit PMI elements.

Not-to-scale dimensions

You can override the value of a driven dimension by right-clicking on the dimension and selecting *Not to Scale* from the context menu. Solid Edge underlines the values of not-to-scale dimensions.



The not-to-scale designation appears in the dimension's value edit dialog.

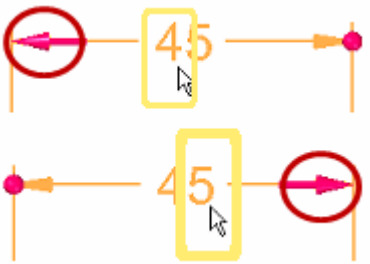


Preselection preview

When you place your cursor on a dimension value, you see two preselection preview features that show you how a dimension value edit will be applied: direction of edit and model face selection.

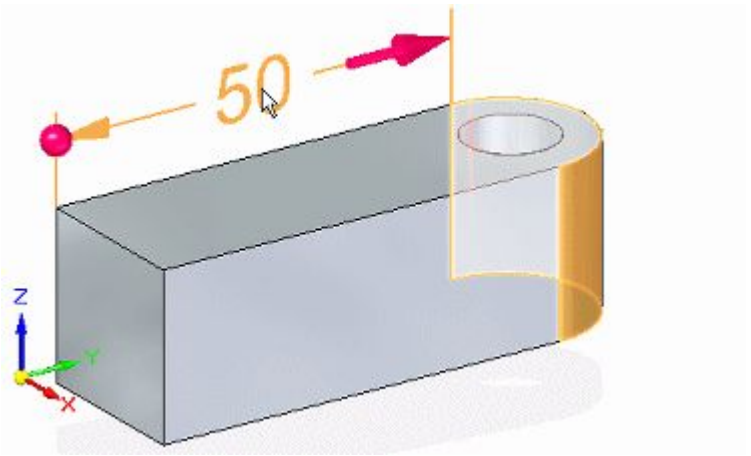
Direction preview

- Where you place your cursor prior to selecting the dimension text influences the direction in which the edit will be applied.
  - If you place the cursor on the left side of the dimension value, in this example the number 4, then the direction arrow points left. If you select the dimension value by clicking here, the edit will be applied in this direction.
  - If you place the cursor on the right side of the dimension value, in this example the number 5, then the direction arrow will point right. If you select the dimension value by clicking here, the edit will be applied in this direction.



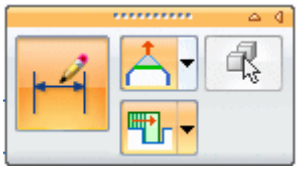
Face selection preview

You can preview what model faces will be affected when you edit a dimension value, by pointing to the dimension text without selecting it. The related model faces are highlighted for you to review them.



To change the selection set, you can set and clear relationships on the Live Rules options window.

You also can affect the outcome by changing the solve option on the Dimension Edit QuickBar.



To learn more, see these Help topics:

- Working with Live Rules
- Select faces to be modified by PMI dimension edits

Using keypoints

When placing PMI model dimensions that you want to use to change the model, you can use the 3D keypoint filter, Center And Endpoints and Midpoint. This ensures that dimensions are placed on keypoints that are valid for modifying the model. These keypoints are at the centers of circles and arcs and at the midpoints and endpoints of edges.

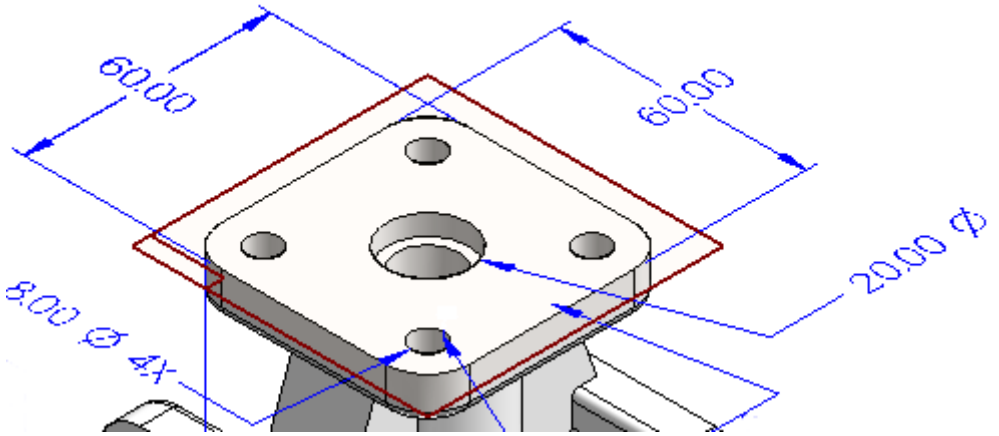
> **Note**
>
> The Center and Endpoints, and Midpoint filters use virtual vertices to derive the appropriate keypoint.

To use either of these keypoint filters during dimension placement, select the Keypoints button on the Dimension command bar, under the Other group button. Then select the desired filter.

Using a dimension plane

When you add PMI dimensions and annotations to a model, they are aligned parallel to a dimension plane. The default plane is the base plane most parallel to the screen. However, you can choose a different plane using the Lock Dimension Plane option on the command bar. This option is available when you have selected a dimension or annotation command.

Only planes you set explicitly appear in the graphics window. These are displayed in red-brown half-highlight.



To turn off a dimension plane you have set, press F3.

Using intersection points

You can use a model intersection point to place a PMI dimension. Using an intersection point:

- Makes it easy to add a dimension to a model edge that has been rounded, split, or trimmed.
- Helps the dimension rebind to the original endpoints when the model edge is rounded, split, or trimmed.

Solid Edge automatically detects the presence of intersection points. You can use the intersection point method when placing any dimension.

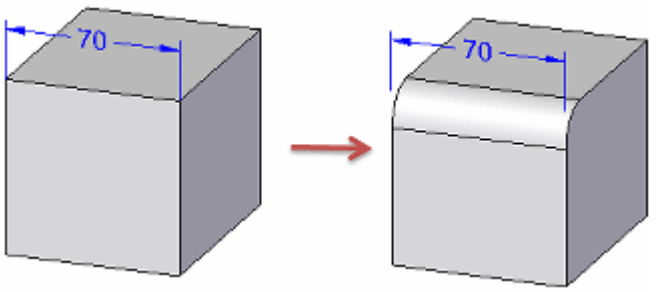
Note

To turn off Intersection Point mode, select a dimension command and press the “I” key.

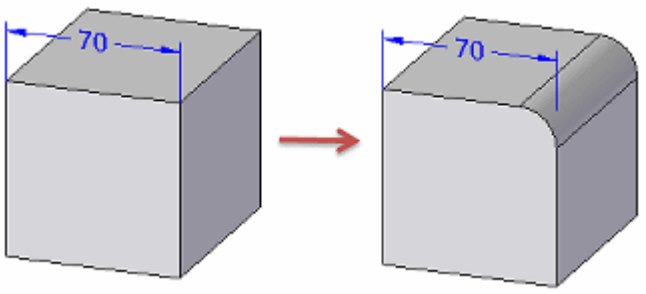
Example

Following are some examples of when you might want to place dimensions using intersection points.

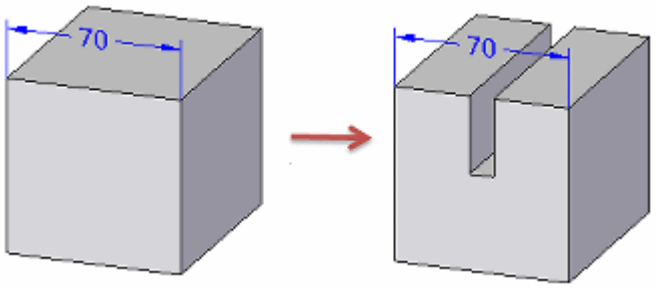
Edge modified by rounding



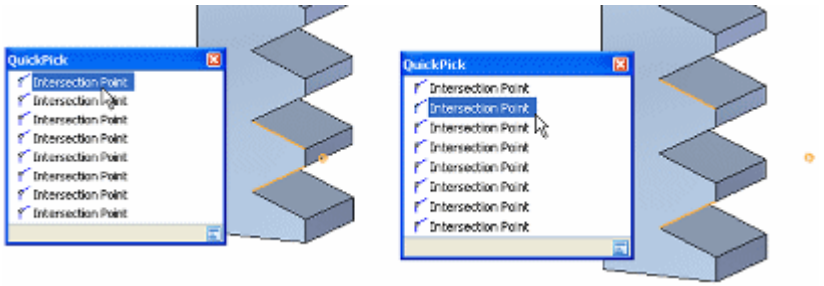
Edge modified by trimming



Edge modified by splitting



You also can use QuickPick to locate all intersection points—not just the least-distance default—as shown in the following example:



You also can place a dimension using the intersection point of a virtual center line and the surface of a cylindrical or conical object, including canted, toroid, spherical, and splined shapes. These intersection points are available on demand, without having to invoke Intersection Point mode.

To learn how to use this feature, see the Help topic, Place a PMI dimension using an intersection point.

Using a dimension axis

Sometimes you need to add a PMI element that measures along an axis that is not orthogonal to the object you are dimensioning. This may be the case when you use the Distance Between, Angle Between, Coordinate Dimension, or Symmetric Diameter command.

When one of these dimension commands is in progress, you can use the Dimension Axis option under the Properties group button on the Dimension command bar to set the dimension axis.

Adding PMI dimensions

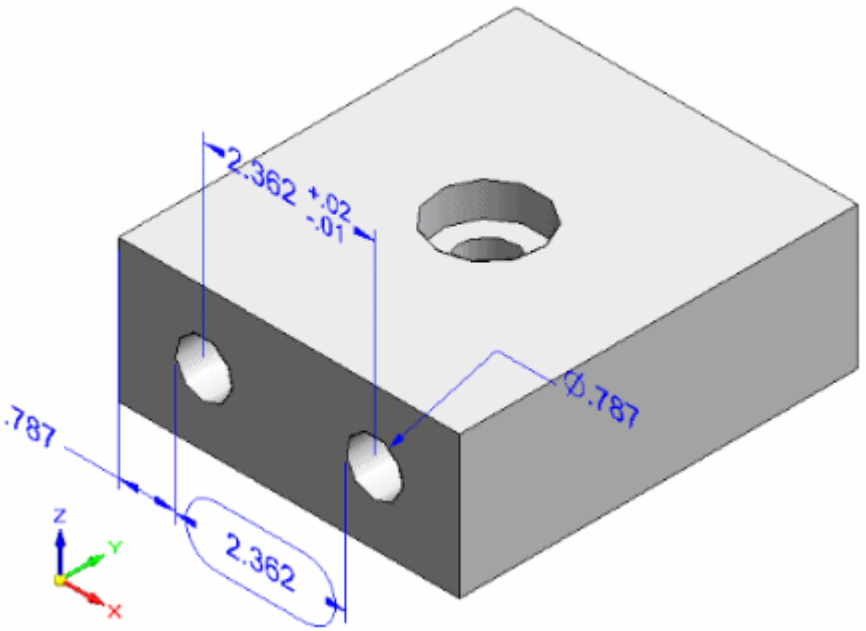
You can use the Smart Dimension command to dimension circles, arcs, and ellipses as well as linear elements.

When adding a dimension that requires two points:

- The first click determines the point to measure from.
- The second click specifies the point or element to measure to.

Dimension stacking and chaining

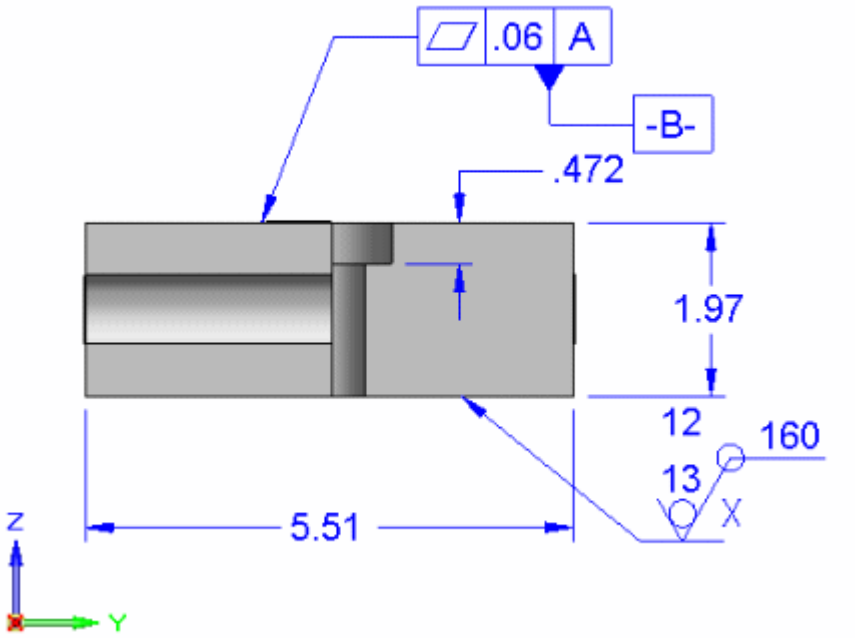
- Linear dimensions can be stacked or chained using the Distance Between command.
- Angular dimensions can be stacked or chained using the Angle Between command.
- Symmetric diameter dimensions can form a stack, not a chain.
- All dimensions in a stack or chain must be placed with respect to the same active dimension plane.
- Each stacked or chained dimension has its own entry on PathFinder.



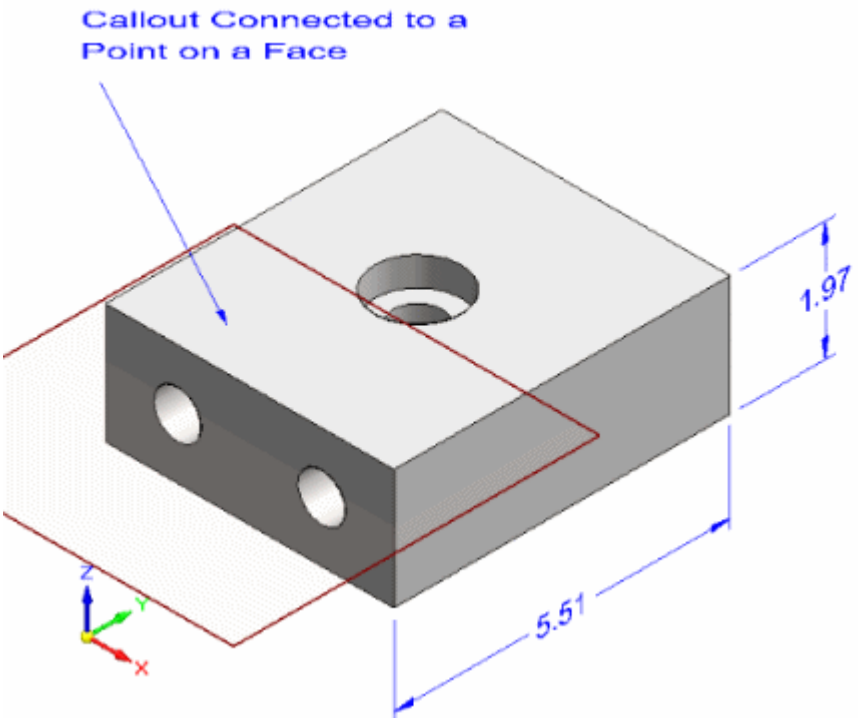
Adding PMI annotations

- You can place annotations in free space.
- You can attach annotations to model faces, surfaces, curves, edges, and sketch elements.
- You can attach annotations to existing dimensions and annotations.

Here, the datum annotation is attached to an existing feature control frame.



They also can connect to faces.



Modifying PMI format and properties

You can select and modify individual PMI elements by doing any of the following:

- When the dimension format handles are displayed, you can:

  - Modify PMI dimension round-off, dimension type, tolerance, and prefix for the selected element, using the options on the command bar.

  - Change the length of the dimension lines and dimension extension lines by selecting and dragging a red dot. You also can select and drag a dimension arrow outside the extension lines.

- Use the Properties button on the command bar or the Properties command on the shortcut menu to change formatting properties for font size, terminator type, extension line type, coordinate display, and more.

  - If you select a dimension, then the Dimension Properties dialog box is displayed.

  - If you select an annotation, then the annotation-specific dialog box is displayed.

You can make changes that affect all PMI elements at once:

- You can make interactive adjustments to PMI text size so it is easier to read when you zoom in and out of the model.

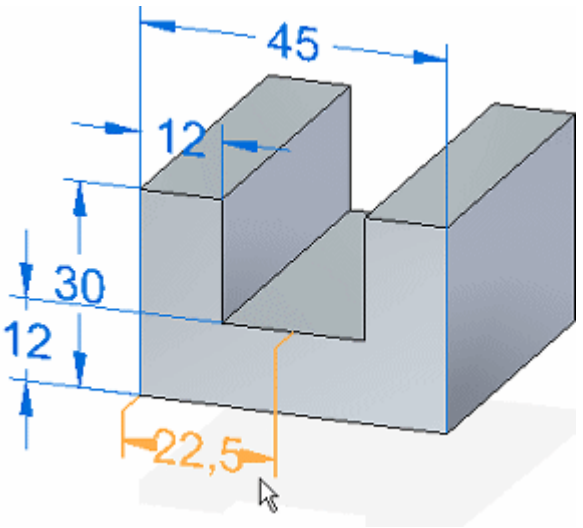
- You can change PMI element color globally by modifying the style.

To learn more, see the Help topic, PMI text size and color.

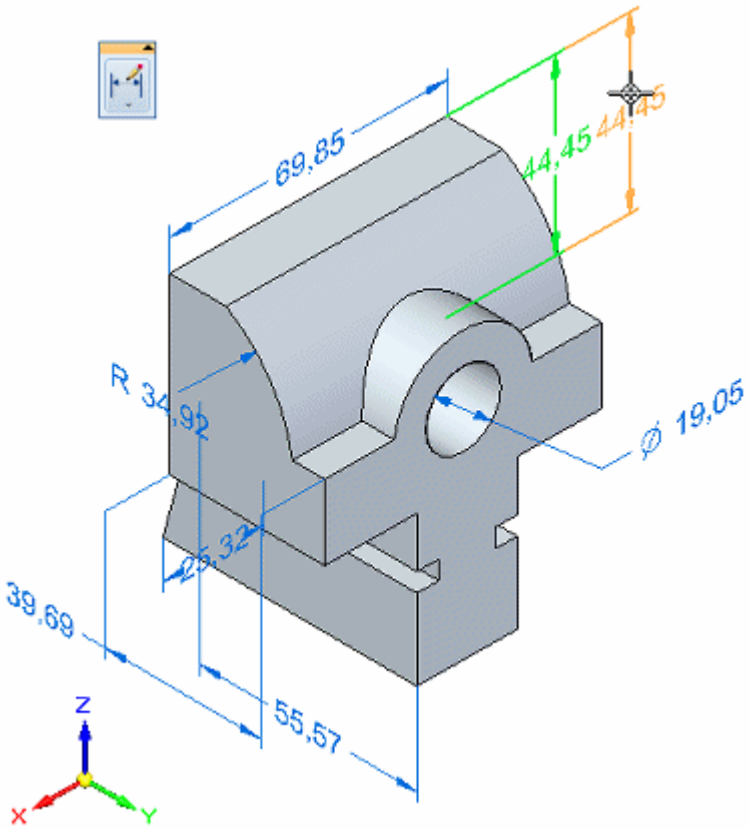
Moving a PMI element

There are several ways you can move PMI elements.

- You can move a PMI dimension or annotation using the Move Dimension command. This moves PMI elements in a direction that is normal to the plane where they reside, adding extension lines as needed.



- Placing your cursor on a PMI element and then dragging it moves the element within the plane where it resides. The element moves in different ways depending upon what part of the element you drag and whether you use the formatting handles.



- You also can use Alt+drag to detach a PMI dimension or annotation from one model element and attach it to a different model element. To learn how, see Reattach or move a dimension or annotation.

If you move an annotation that is attached to another PMI element—including stacked and chained dimensions—they move together.

Moving an annotation connected directly to a face results in translation along the face only, not off it.

To learn how to move and manipulate PMI dimensions and annotations, see the Help topic,Move PMI elements.

Using property text in PMI elements

You can extract and use property text in PMI dimensions and in callout and balloon annotations.

- To use property text in callouts and balloons, select the Property Text button on the annotation dialog box.

- To use property text in a dimension prefix, suffix, subfix, or superfix, copy and paste the property text string into the corresponding text box on the Dimension

Prefix dialog box. You can open the Dimension Prefix dialog box by clicking the Prefix button on the Dimension command bar.

- To extract hole information from hole features in a part or assembly, use the Hole Reference, Smart Depth, or Hole callout property text strings.
- You can extract bend information—Angle, Radius, and Direction—from a formed part, but not from a flat pattern.
- To update property text in PMI elements, use the PMI tab® Property Text group® Update All command.
- To convert property text strings to plain text for individual annotations and dimensions, use the Convert Property Text command on the selected element shortcut menu.
- To convert all strings in the document, you can use the PMI tab® Property Text group® Convert All command.

To learn more about property text, see the Help topic, Using property text.

PMI text size and color

Setting PMI text size

There are several ways to change the text size of PMI elements.

- Change all PMI elements and associated graphics (lines, leaders, and arrows) at once, using either of the following methods:
  - Automatically scale elements. When you use the active model style to determine text size, PMI elements scale automatically as the view is zoomed in and out. This sometimes results in PMI being too large or too small relative to the feature or component.
  - Change element size interactively. You can use the Increase PMI Font and Decrease PMI Font buttons to change the size of PMI elements based on pixel size. This has the advantage of letting you fine-tune the size interactively.
- Change the size of new elements by editing the style. You can set a default text size for all new PMI elements on the Text page of the Modify Dimension Style dialog box. You can access this dialog box using the Styles command .
- Change the size of individual PMI elements. You can override the default text size for individually selected elements using the Properties command.

You can specify the break line length and the gap between the break line and the PMI text on the Lines and Coordinates page in the dimension style and in the dimension properties.

To learn how to set and change PMI text size, see the Help topic, Change PMI text size.

Setting global PMI color

PMI dimension color is an at-a-glance indicator as to whether a dimension is locked or unlocked. You can change the global color setting for PMI dimensions. This also changes the color of PMI annotations.

You can change global PMI color settings on the Colors page of the Solid Edge Options dialog box.

- The default color of unlocked PMI dimensions is blue. It is the same as that set for all sketch elements. You can choose another color for them from the Sketch list.

- The default color of locked PMI dimensions is red. It is the same as that set for handle elements. You can choose another color for them from the Handle list.

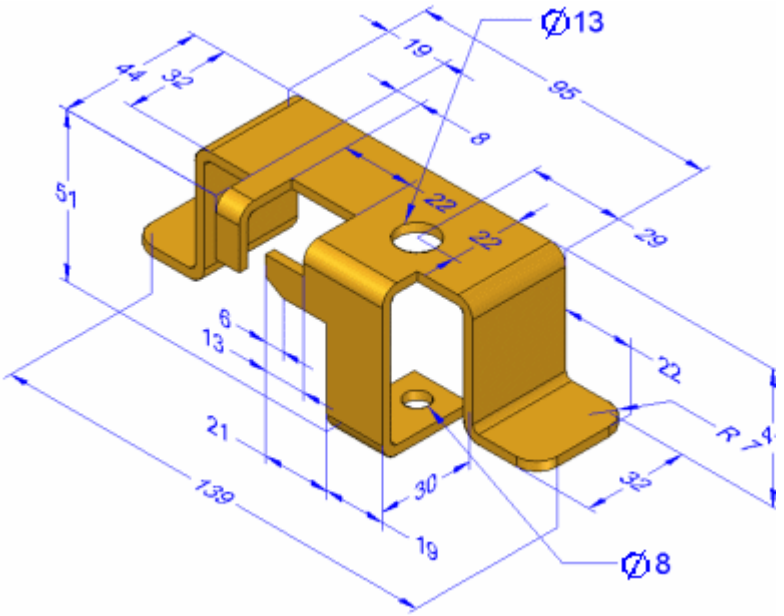
You cannot change the color of individual PMI elements.

Creating 3D model views with PMI

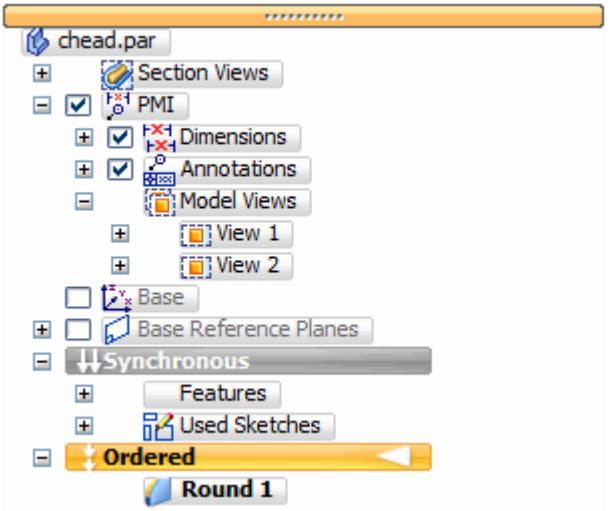
Model views help you manage the display of a part, sheet metal, or assembly model within the Product Manufacturing Information (PMI) workflow. You can define different 3D views of the model to completely communicate design, manufacturing, and functional information.

Model views can contain the following:

- Model state, for example, designed or flattened (synchronous).
- Ordered dimensions, including driving dimensions that have been copied to 3D.
- Synchronous dimensions
- Annotations
- Section views



Once defined, you can select individual model views from the Model Views collection, which is located under the PMI node on Pathfinder.



For review purposes, you can share the model view and data electronically using View and Markup or Solid Edge Viewer.

Creating model views

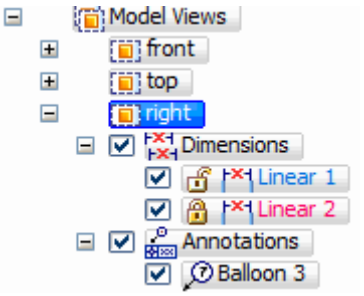
The View command creates a 3D view of the assembly, part, or sheet metal model as currently displayed in the graphics window.

- All dimensions, annotations, view settings, and section views that are displayed when you create the model view are copied to the model view.
- Each model view definition includes a view name, orientation, scale, and view extent (zoom).
- The Model View Options dialog box is where you assign initial values for view name, render mode, and section view and cutting plane display. You can change these settings by editing the model view definition.
- You access and control PMI model views using PathFinder.

- Each model view definition contains a specific list of PMI elements—types of dimensions, annotations, and included section views—that are displayed when the view is applied.

  Note

  Showing or hiding these elements in one model view applies the show or hide setting to the same elements in all model views.



For more information, see the Help topic, Working with 3D PMI.

Reviewing model views

You can review all of the model views defined in the document along with their associated PMI data using a special PMI model review mode. You can use this feature before exporting PMI models and data to View and Markup.

When you select a model view and choose the Review command on the shortcut menu, a PMI Model View Review command bar is displayed to guide you through the review of each model view.

- You can navigate through the PMI model views using these tools:
  - Step through each view using the Next and Previous arrows.
  - Jump to a specific model view by selecting its name from the Model View List.
- As you select each 3D model view, the active window temporarily changes to display the view as it was defined. This includes its show and hide states and section views that have been applied.
- When you close the review session, the graphics screen returns to its previous display.

Another way to review the contents of a model view is to select the model view name on PathFinder, and then select the Apply View command on its shortcut menu.

Adding 3D section views to model views

- The Section Views collection on PathFinder contains a list of all existing 3D section views that have been defined for the model.
- You can add an existing 3D section view to a model view using the Add To Model View command on its shortcut menu.
- Similarly, you can remove a section view from the model view you are editing using the Remove From Model View command.

Modifying a PMI model view

When you select the Edit Definition command on the model view's shortcut menu, the model view is displayed in a special edit environment. The Model View command bar provides access to two levels of editing functions for the PMI model view.

- Using the Model View Options dialog box, you can change the view name, choose a different rendering mode, and change the section view and cutting plane display settings.
- Selecting the Model View Display group button places you in model view creation and edit mode, where you can:
  - Change the show or hide visibility and display properties of individual PMI elements.
  - Add new PMI annotations and dimensions to the model view.

    Note

    - While you are in this edit mode, you cannot use the modeling commands.
    - Except for view orientation and render mode, changes made in this edit mode are WYSIWYG.
      - ◊ PMI elements and section views that are hidden are automatically removed from the model view.
      - ◊ PMI elements and section views that are added and shown are automatically added to the model view.

When you exit model view edit mode, your changes are applied to the model view and the normal modeling commands are made available again.

Sending a PMI model view to View and Markup

You can share 3D model views containing PMI data by electronically publishing them to a format compatible with View and Markup or Solid Edge Viewer.

- Use the Send PMI to View and Markup command to save the file in .pcf format, which is opened in View and Markup.

- Alternatively, you can use the Save As command on the Application menu to save the information to .jt format.

  Note

  The Send PMI to View and Markup command sends all the model views in the file to View and Markup.

Publishing PMI and model views to View and Markup

To make Product Manufacturing Information, or PMI, and model views available for display in View and Markup or Solid Edge Viewer, the information must be published. You can publish the information with the Send PMI to View and Markup command, or you can use the Save As command to save the information to .jt format.

Using Send PMI To View and Markup

You can quickly publish information with the Send PMI To View and Markup command, which is available on the shortcut menu when a model view is selected in PathFinder. This sends all PMI data and model views defined in the active document to a *.pcf* file. The file is opened automatically in View and Markup. Any PMI data that is not associated with a model view is not displayed in the viewer.

Using Save As

To publish information with the Save As command, you must first set the Save PMI Data option on the Solid Edge to JT Translation Options dialog box, and then save the document to *.jt* format. All model views and PMI information associated with a model view are saved to the *.jt* document.

Once saved, you can open the *.jt* document in the viewer. A list of the model views and associated PMI information is displayed in the Model Views page on PathFinder.

> **Note**
>
> When the Save PMI Data option is selected, other *jt* save options are disabled and the appropriate options are set to support PMI data. Precise geometry is always sent when the Save PMI Data option is selected even if the Include Precise Geometry option is not set.

Only graphic topology supported by the viewer is written to the*.jt* file. The following items are controlled by model views, but are not written to the *.jt* file.

- Coordinate systems
- Reference planes
- Sketches and profiles
- References axis
- PMI section views

Property text codes

You can add symbols and reference data to annotation text and dimension text. When a dialog box such as the Callout dialog box or the Dimension Prefix dialog box provides buttons to do so, you can click the buttons to insert the symbols. In some cases, when the dialog box does not provide a button interface to insert the symbol directly, you can type a three-character symbol code instead.

For many types of annotations, such as text boxes, feature control frames, weld symbols, and hole tables, as well as dimension text and drawing view captions, you can avoid typing symbol codes using the Select Symbols and Values dialog box.

The following tables are organized by category:

- Symbols
- Values

The three-character code in the left-most column displays the corresponding symbol shown in the right-most column, or it fetches the matching value from the model. The codes must be typed exactly as listed. They are valid for the Solid Edge ANSI Symbol and Solid Edge ISO Symbol fonts.

Symbols

Geometric characteristic symbols		
Code	**Represents**	**Displays this symbol**
%FL	Flatness	
%SR	Straightness	
%CI	Circularity	
%CY	Cylindricity	
%PP	Perpendicularity	
%AN	Angularity	
%PR	Parallelism	
%PS	Profile of a Surface	
%PL	Profile of a Line	
%CR	Circular Runout	
%TR	Total Runout	
%PO	Position	
%CO	Concentricity	
%SY	Symmetry	

Material condition symbols		
Code	**Represents**	**Displays this symbol**
%MC	Maximum	
%LC	Least	
%SC	Regardless of Feature Size	
%RC	Reciprocity Condition	

Tolerance zone symbols		
Code	**Represents**	**Displays this**
%PZ	Projected	
%TZ	Tangent Plane	
%FZ	Free State	
%ER	Envelope Requirement	
%UD	Profile Unequally Disposed	
%IN	Independency	
%TL	Translation	

Dimensioning symbols		
Code	**Represents**	**Displays this**
%DI	Diameter	
%DG	Degree	
%BT	Between	
%ST	Statistical Tolerance	
%CF	Continuous Feature	
%SQ	Square	
%CB	Counterbore	
%SF	Spotface	
%CS	Countersink	
%DP	Depth	
%IL	Initial Length	
%AL	Arc Length	
%PM	Plus Minus	
%AN	Taper Angle	
%A2	Taper Angle 2	
%A3	Taper Angle 3	
%A4	Taper Angle 4	
%SG	Symmetric Taper Angle	
%S2	Symmetric Taper Angle 2	
%Gd **Note** The second letter is lowercase.	Material Thickness	

GOST weld symbols		
Code	**Represents**	**Displays this**
%FW	Fillet Weld	
%HW	Heat	
%HB	Heat Back	
%SW	Smooth	
%SB	Smooth Back	
%SN	Stagger Chain	
%SK	Stagger Check	
%UL	Not All Around	
%NU	Number	
%DA	Diameter	
%PN	Plus Minus	
%DR	Degree	

Other symbols		
Code	**Represents**	**Displays this**
%CL	Centerline	
%PT	Parting Line	
%OV	Oval	
%RL	Rectangle	
%RA	Rotated View (ESKD standard)	
%CA	Rotated View Counterclockwise (GB standard)	
%C2	Rotated View Clockwise (GB standard)	

Values

Hole references		
Code	**Represents**	**Fetches this hole data**
%HC	Hole Callout	For example, displays hole diameter and depth symbols plus extracted values:
%HS	Hole Size	<Hole Size Value>
%HD	Hole Depth	<Hole Depth Value>
%BS	Counterbore Size	<Counterbore Size Value>
%BD	Counterbore Depth	<Counterbore Depth Value>
%SS	Countersink Size	<Countersink Size Value>
%SA	Countersink Angle	<Countersink Angle Value>
%TS	Thread Size	<Thread Size Value>
%TD	Thread Depth	<Thread Depth Value>
%ZH	Smart Hole Depth	<Smart Hole Value>
%ZT	Smart Thread Depth	<Smart Thread Depth Value>

Bend References		
Code	**Represents**	**Fetches this bend data**
%BA	Bend Angle	<Bend Outside Angle Value>
%BN	Bend Angle Unsigned	<Bend Angle Unsigned Value>
%IA	Included Angle	<Bend Inside Angle Value>
%BR	Bend Radius	<Bend Radius Value>
%BO	Bend Direction	<Bend Direction Value>
%BI	Bend Sequence	<Bend Sequence Number>
%BQ	Bend Quantity	<Number of Bends>

Drawing View References		
Code	**Represents**	**Fetches this drawing view information**
%VA	View Annotation Name	<View Annotation Name>
%LN	Annotation Sheet Number	<View Annotation Sheet Number>
%VS	View Scale	<Drawing View Scale Value>
%VR	Angle of Rotation	<Drawing View Rotation Angle>
%VN	Drawing View Sheet Number	<Drawing View Sheet Number>

Weld Bead References		
Code	**Represents**	**Fetches this weld bead data**
%TT	Target Thickness	<Weld Bead Target Thickness Value>
%GL	Gap Length	<Weld Bead Gap Length Value>
%BL	Bead Length	<Weld Bead Length Value>
%NB	Number of Beads	<Number of Weld Beads>
%PI	Pitch	<Weld Bead Pitch Value>

Other

Miscellaneous		
Code	**Represents**	**Fetches this hole data**
%RT	Carriage Return	Inserts a new line.

Activity: Retrieving and placing dimensions

Overview

This activity covers the workflow of placing dimensions and annotations on a drawing. An existing drawing file is used to dimension and annotate.

Objectives

In this activity you will:

- Retrieve dimensions from the Model.
- Update out-of-date drawing views.
- Use the Drawing View Tracker.
- Place dimensions on a drawing.
- Modify dimensions on a drawing.
- Place annotations on a drawing.

Activity: Retrieving and placing dimensions

Overview

This activity covers the workflow of placing dimensions and annotations on a drawing sheet. An existing drawing file is used to dimension and annotate.

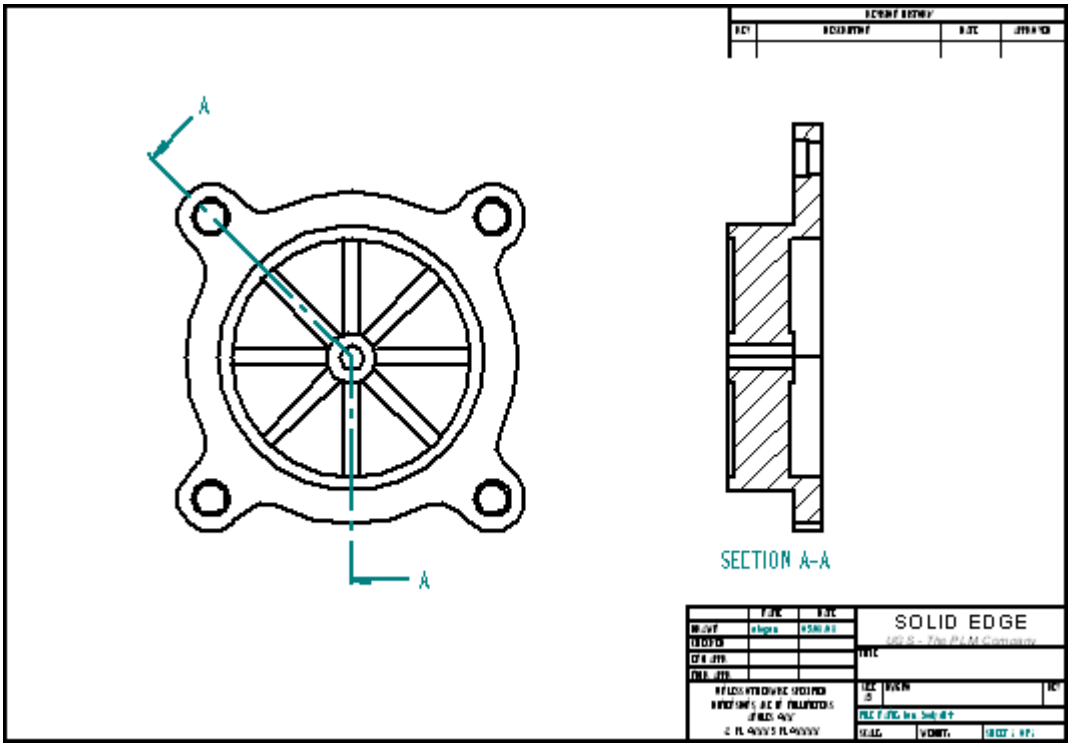
Objectives

In this activity you will:

- Retrieve dimensions from the model.
- Update out-of-date drawing views.
- Use the Drawing View Tracker.
- Place dimensions on a drawing sheet.
- Modify dimensions on a drawing sheet.
- Place annotations on a drawing.

Open a draft file

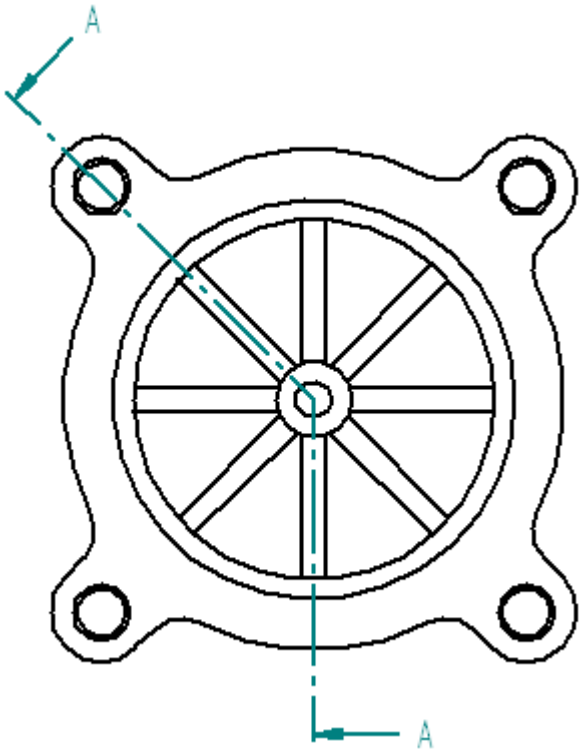
- Open *fan_body.dft*.



Retrieve dimensions

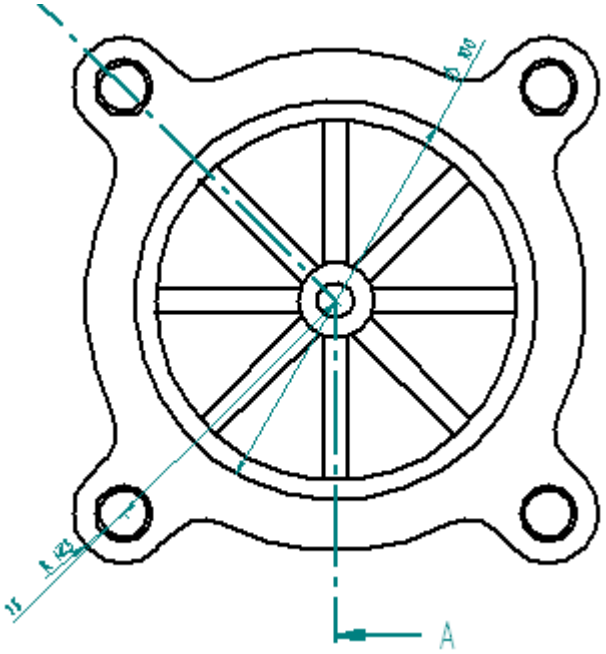
Begin the activity by working on the front view. Retrieve dimensions from the part model.

- Choose the Zoom Area command. Zoom in on the drawing view as shown.



- On the Home tab® Dimension group, choose the Retrieve Dimensions command .

- Click the drawing view to retrieve dimensions contained in the part model.

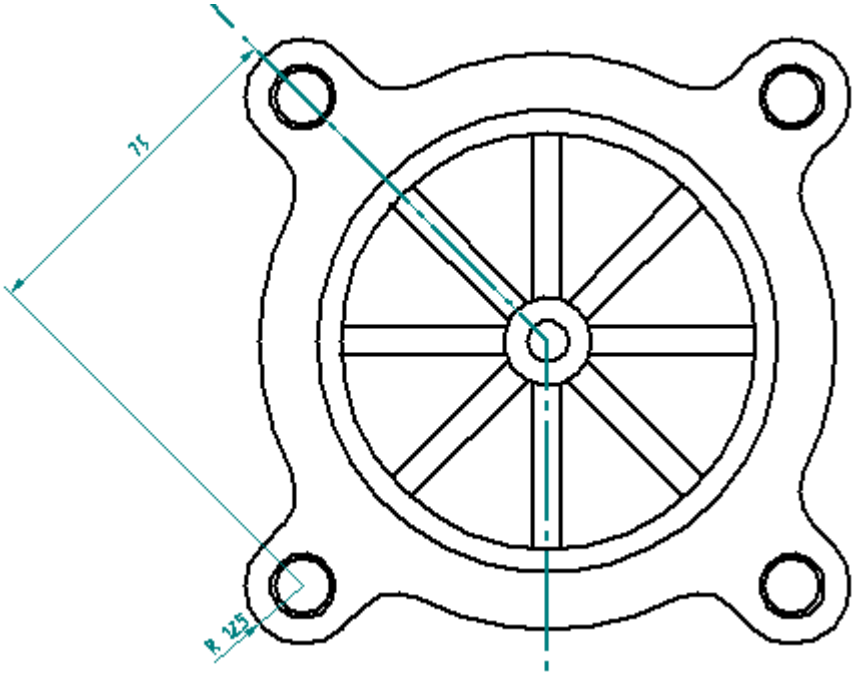


Modify the retrieved dimensions

Delete and replace a dimension. Reposition a dimension.

- Click the Select tool and then delete the 100 mm diameter dimension. Replace this dimension on the cross section view later in the activity.

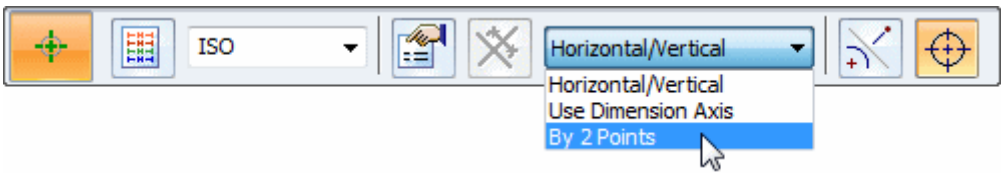
- Reposition the 75 mm dimension. Click the dimension value and drag it inside the dimension projection lines. Click the dimension line and drag it to the position shown.



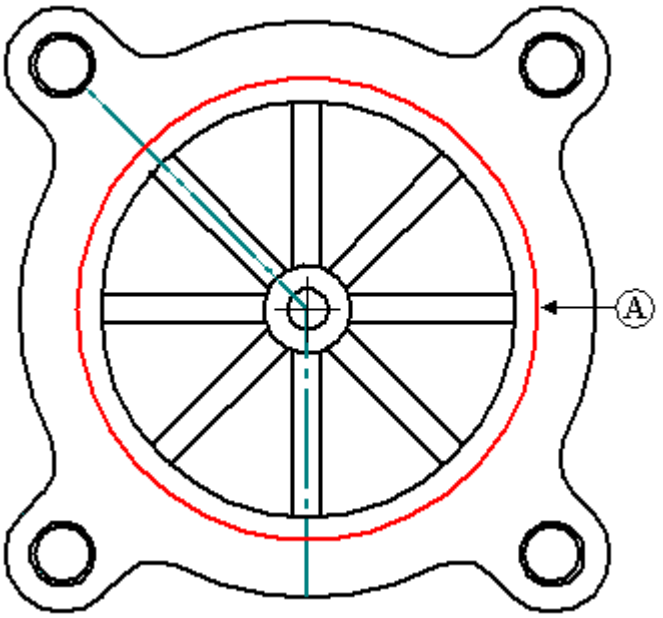
Place center marks

Place a center mark in the center of the part and on each of the counterbored holes.

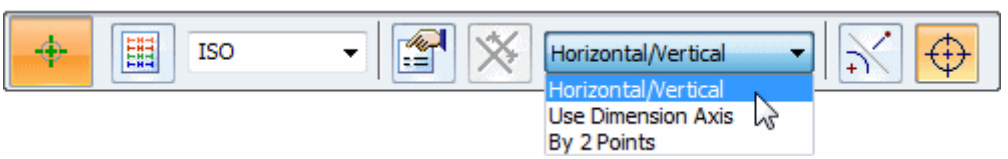
- On the Home tab® Annotation group, choose the Center Mark command .
- On the command bar, select the Projection Lines button .
- Select the By 2 Points option.



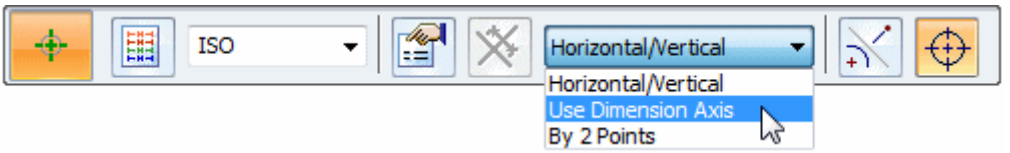
- For the first point, click circle (A).



- For the second point, click the center of the upper right counterbored hole to place the center mark.
- Repeat these two steps for the three remaining counterbored holes.
- To place the first center mark on the interior circle, change the dimension type to Horizontal/Vertical and select circle (A).

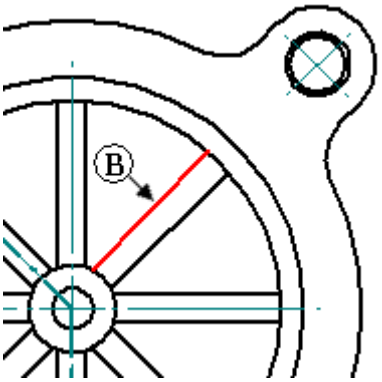


- To place the center marks between the diagonal ribs, change the orientation to Use Dimension Axis.

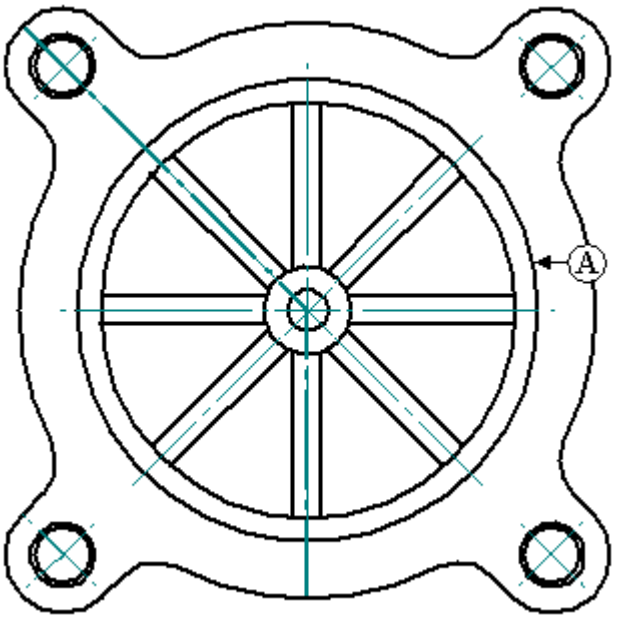


- On the command bar, click the Dimension Axis option .

- Click the 45° line (B). This will enable you to place center marks parallel and perpendicular to this line.



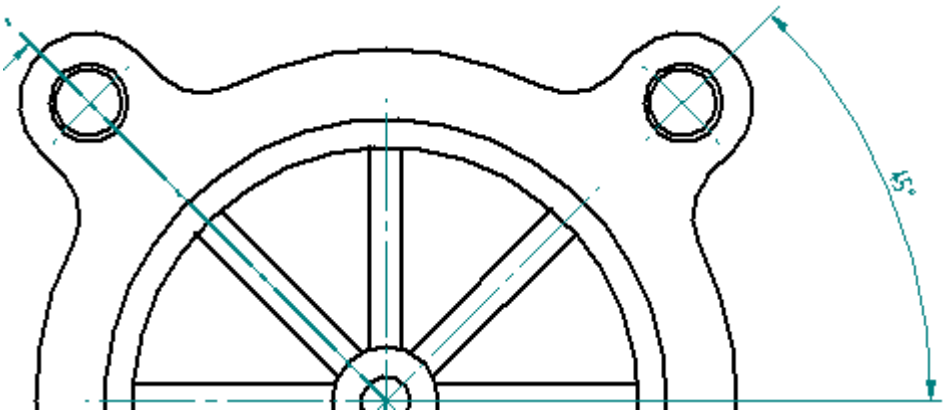
- Place the 45° center marks by selecting circle (A).



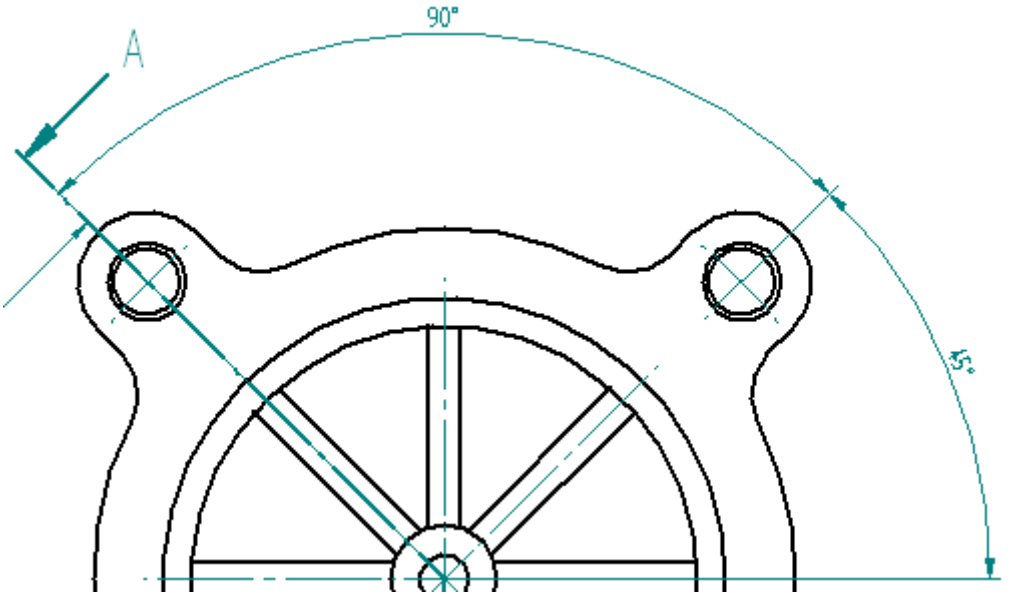
Place angular dimensions

Place angular dimensions on the holes measured from the right horizontal centerline.

- On the Home tab® Dimension group, choose the Angle Between command .
- Place an angular dimension from the right horizontal centerline to the 45° center mark line on the upper right counterbore hole.



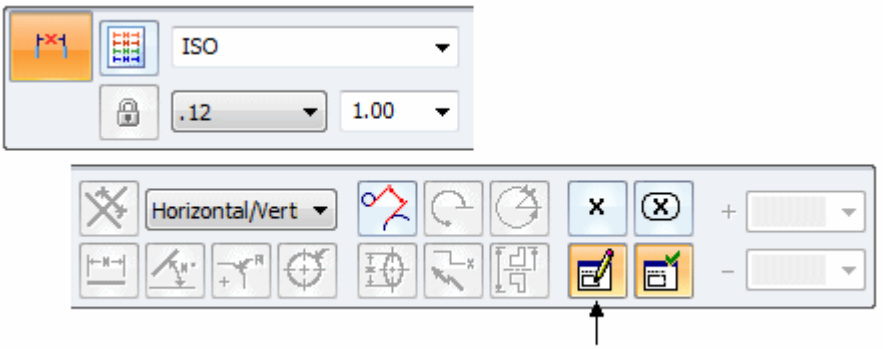
- Do not end this command. Continue using the same origin. Select the angled center mark line on the upper left side counterbore hole, and place the string 90° dimension.



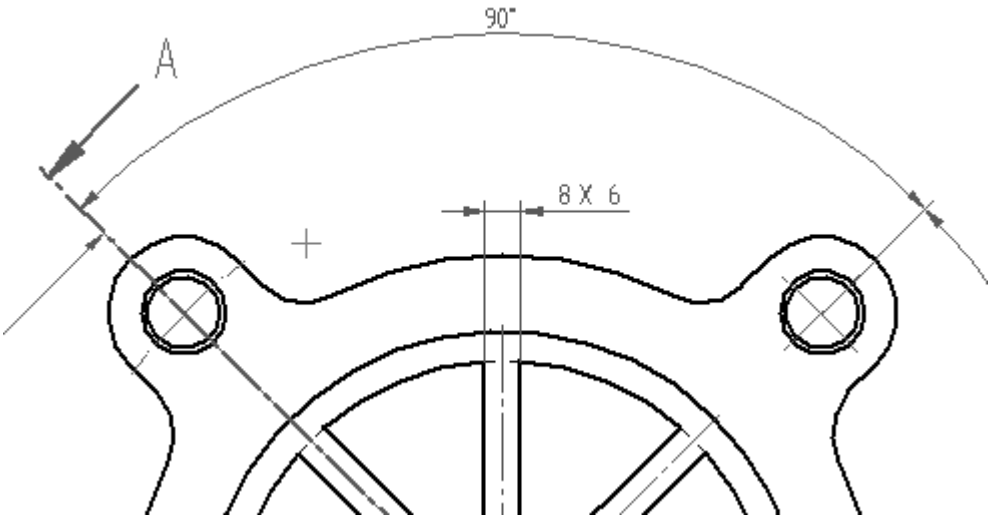
Place a linear dimension and add a prefix

Dimension the fin thickness. Add a prefix to the dimension.

- On the Home tab® Dimension group, choose the Distance Between command .
- On the command bar, click the Prefix option. Type 8 X in the Prefix field and click OK.



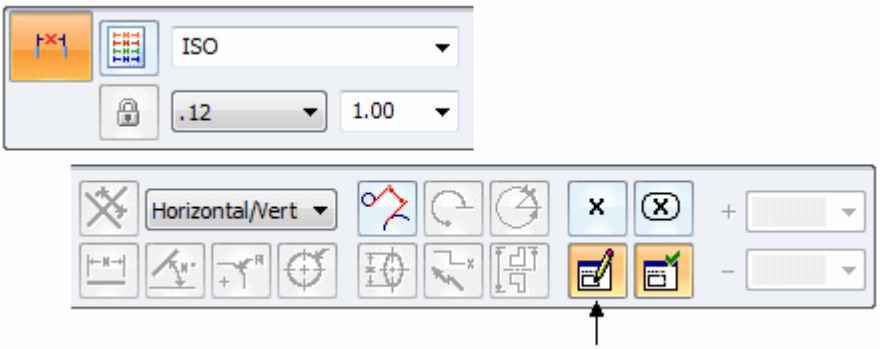
- Set the dimension orientation to Horizontal/Vertical and select the two vertical lines illustrated below to place the new dimension. Click to position the dimension. This is the thickness dimension for each of the eight fins.



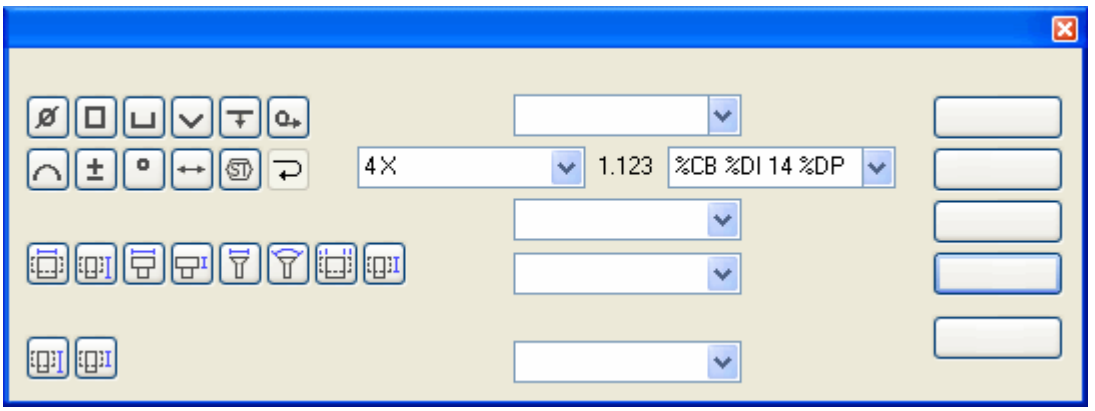
Place a Smart dimension and add prefix, suffix and special characters

Add a SmartDimension to the bottom right hole. Set a prefix and suffix for the dimension and also add special characters to include in the dimension display.

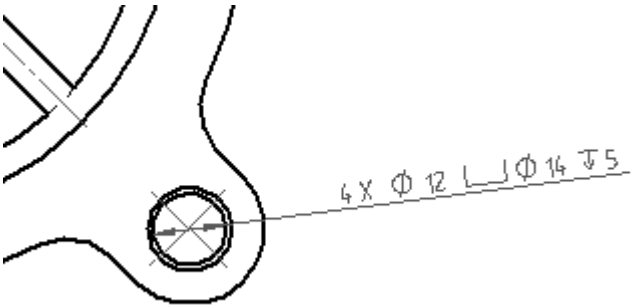
- Choose the Smart Dimension command .
- Click the Dimension Prefix option.



- Set the Prefix to 4 X.
- Click the Suffix field, and do the following:
  - Click the Counterbore symbol ⌴ from the special characters, and press the spacebar on the keyboard.
  - Click the Diameter symbol ⌀, press the space bar on the keyboard, and type 14.
  - Press the spacebar.
  - Click the Depth symbol ↧, press the spacebar, and type 5. This sets the suffix to the diameter and depth of the counterbored hole.
  - Click OK to accept these inputs. The Special characters are displayed with a % sign as part of the character in the Suffix field. But the symbol is actually placed on the drawing.



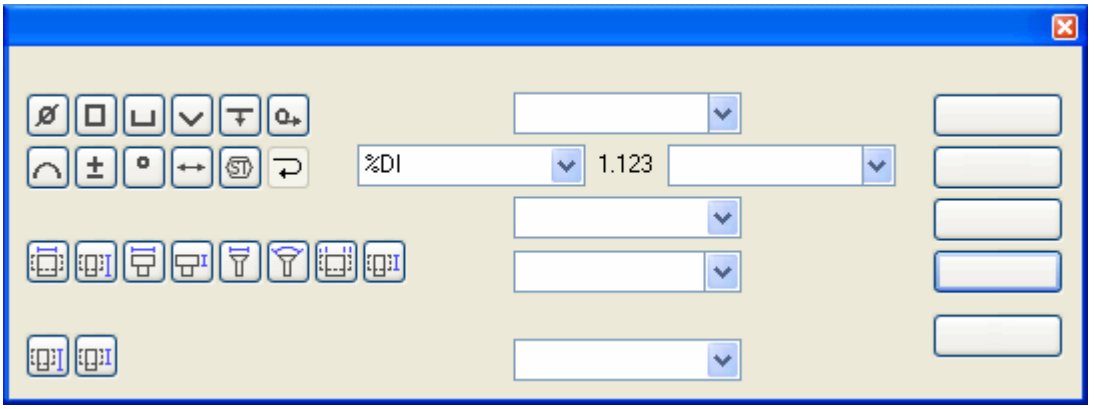
- Select the through hole in the lower right counterbore hole. Any dimensions placed after this one will exhibit the same prefix and suffix until you clear the Prefix field in the Dimension Prefix dialog box.



Dimension a section view

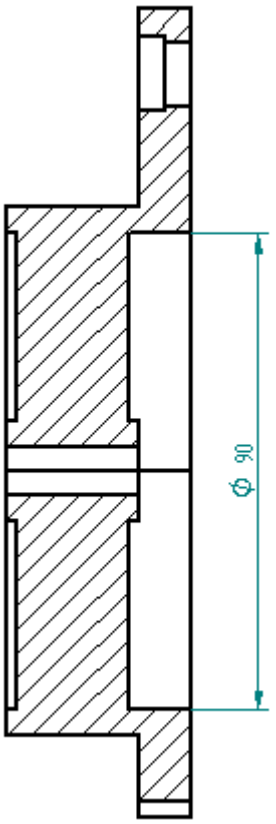
Place a distance between dimension with a prefix option on the section view.

- Choose the Distance Between command, and click the Dimension Prefix option. Click the Clear button, and then set the Prefix to a diameter symbol. Click OK.



- Fit the view and then zoom in on the section view. Right-click to exit the zoom area command.

- Select the two horizontal lines (flanked by white area and crosshatching), and place the dimension to the right of the view as shown. Even though this is a linear dimension, the diameter symbol can be used as a prefix.



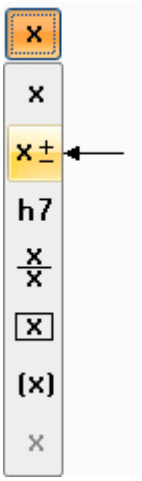
- Save the document.

Edit a dimension and add a tolerance

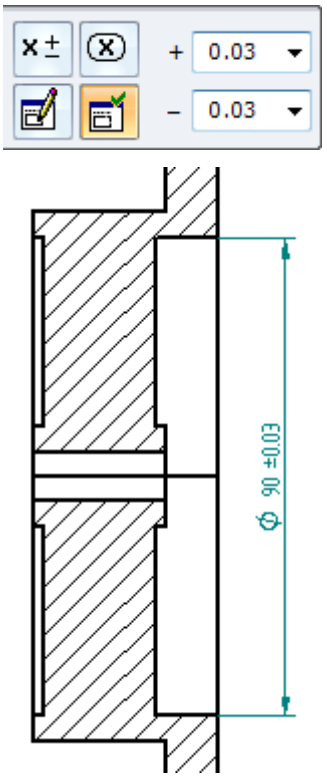
Edit the dimension placed in the previous step and place a tolerance on the dimension.

- Using the Select tool, click the 90 mm diameter dimension in the section view. The command bar changes to edit definition mode to make a change to the selected dimension.

- Click Dimension Type, and click the Tolerance option to edit the upper and lower tolerance.



- Type 0.03 in the Upper and Lower tolerance boxes. The dimension changes to show a plus/minus on the tolerance because the upper and lower values are the same. If the upper and lower tolerance values differ, the two tolerances display as separate items.

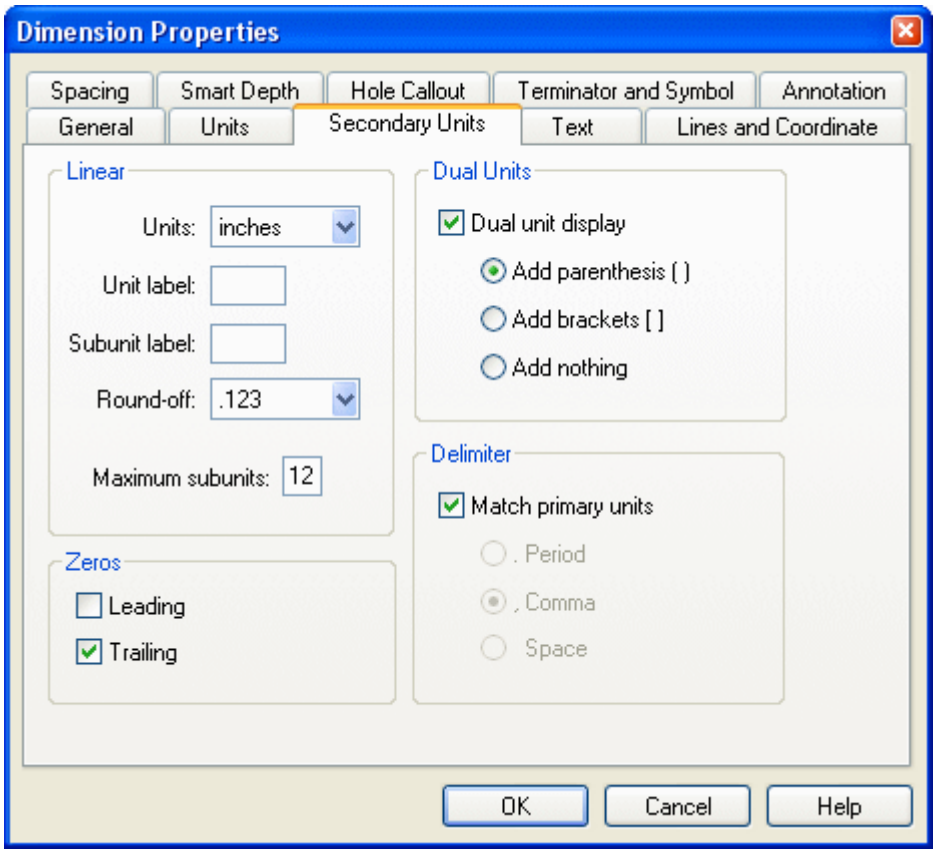


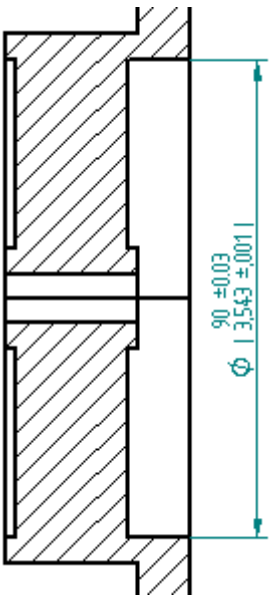
Use the dual unit dimension display

Edit the dimension and apply a dual unit dimension style.

- Click the Select tool and then, right-click on the 90 mm diameter dimension in the section view. Click Properties on the shortcut menu to display the Dimension Properties dialog box. Changes here will only change the property of the dimension selected. To modify all dimensions, click the Styles command in Style group and make the changes.

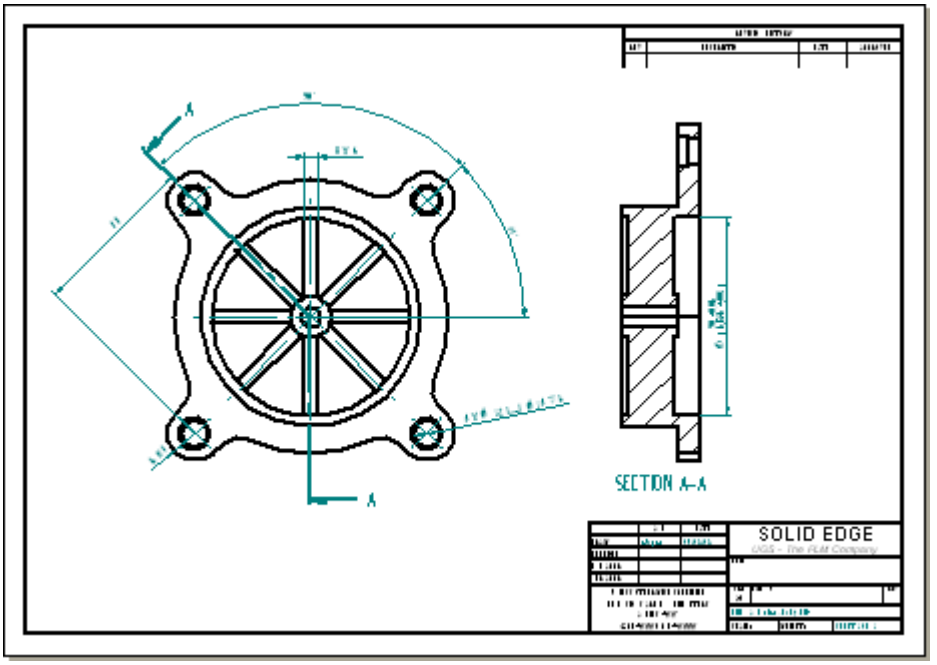
- Click the Secondary Units tab, and then set the Dual unit display and the Add parenthesis ( ) boxes. Click OK. The 90 mm dimension updates to show the dual units.





Fit the drawing sheet

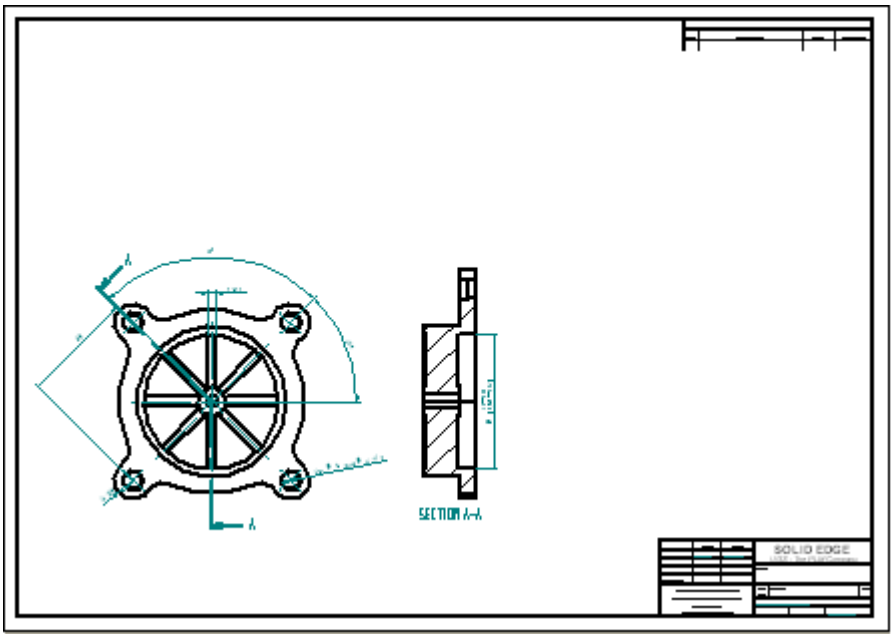
- Choose Fit to fit the drawing sheet.



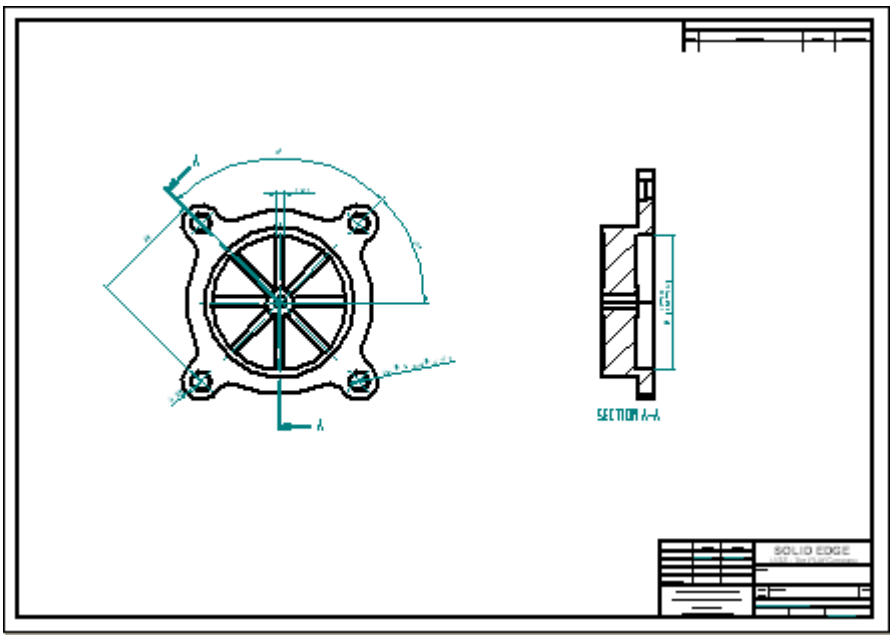
Change sheet size

Notice that the drawing is too crowded. Change the drawing border to a larger size.

- Right-click on the Sheet1 tab, and from the shortcut menu, click Sheet Setup.
- Click the Background tab and change the background sheet to A2-Sheet. Click OK.
- Fit the window again.



- Reposition the views on the drawing sheet.



Close the draft file

- Save and close the file.

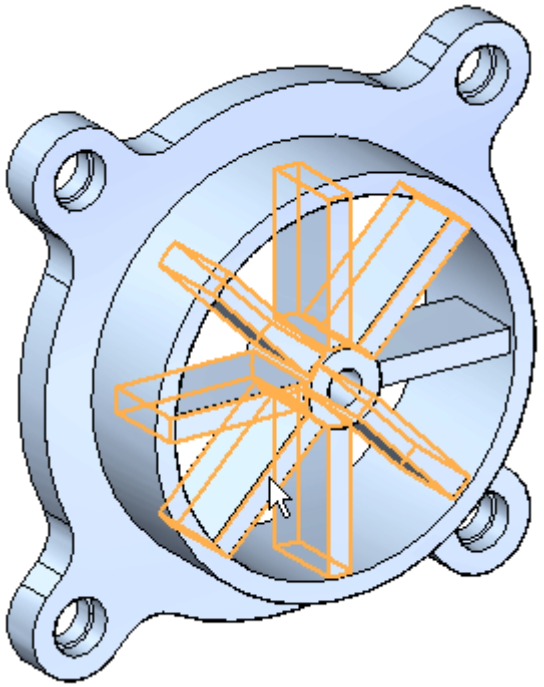
Open part file used to create drawing views

Open *fan_body.par* that was used to generate the drawing views. Make a change to *fan_body.par*. When reopening the draft file, the changes are made obvious with the out-of-date drawing views.

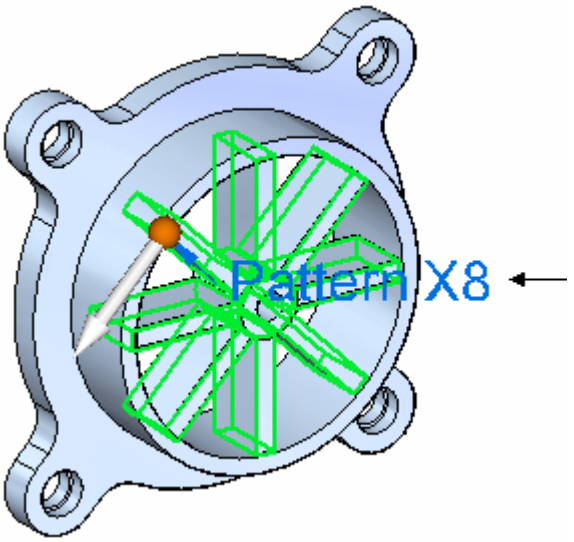
- Open *fan_body.par*.

Edit a circular pattern feature

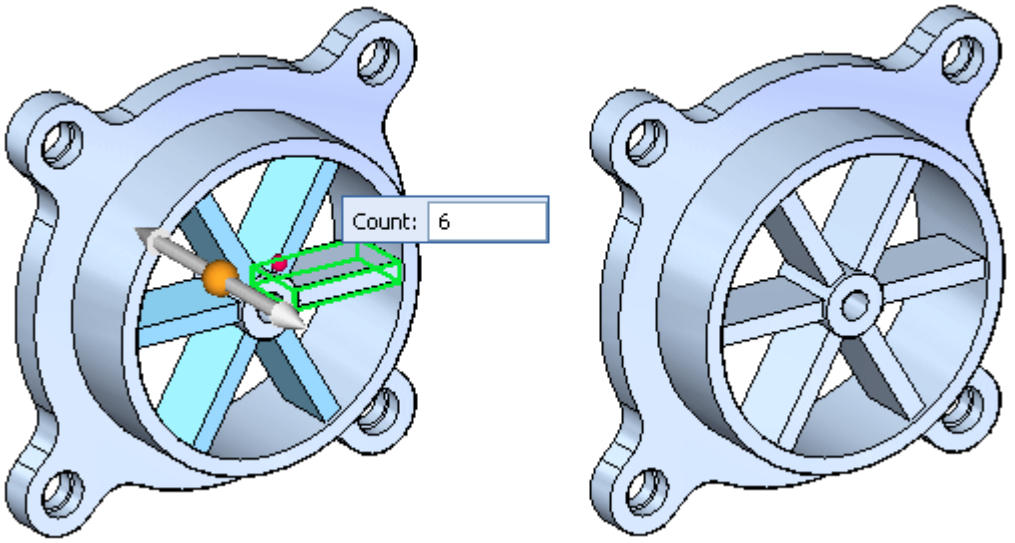
- Notice the 8 fins on the fan. Select the circular pattern of fins. Use QuickPick or PathFinder to select the pattern.



- Click the on the *Pattern X8* text.



- Type 6 in the pattern count edit handle and then press the Enter key.



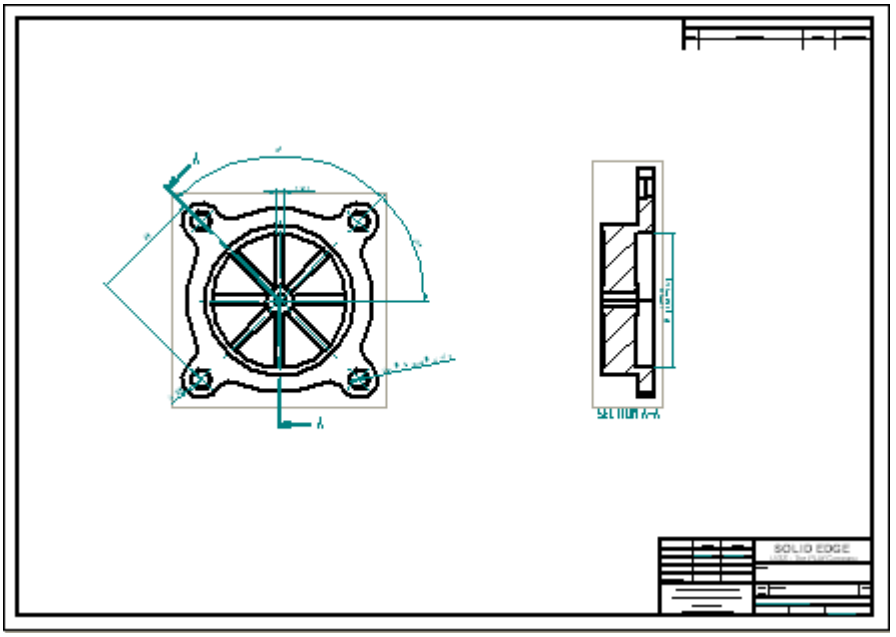
- Save and close the file.

Open draft file

Open *fan_body.dft* created earlier in this activity to observe how the file behaves after *fan_body.par* was edited.

- Open *fan_body.dft*. Notice the Drawing Views dialog box. This box informs you that one or more of the current drawing views are out-of-date. It also tells you to go to the Drawing View Tracker command to get more information about the status of the drawing views.

- Click OK. Notice the box that surrounds the drawing views. This box indicates that the views are out-of-date.



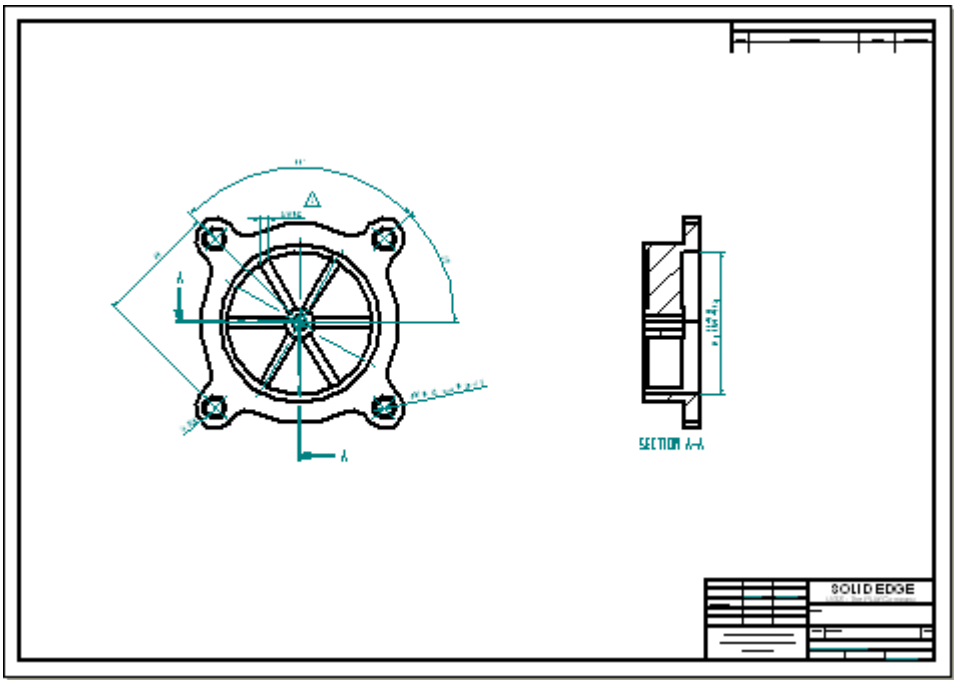
Use Drawing View Tracker

- On the Tools tab® Assistants group, choose the Drawing View Tracker command. The Drawing View Tracker shows which drawings are out-of-date. When you click on an entry, more information displays in the Update Instructions box about that view.

- In the Drawing View Tracker dialog box, click the Update Views button . You could also select a single drawing view from the Drawing View Tracker dialog box and update that view by selecting Update View from the shortcut menu.

- Click Close to dismiss the Dimension Tracker dialog box.

- Now notice that the drawing views update to reflect the change to the number of fins on the fan. Also notice that the boxes indicating out-of-date drawing views are no longer displayed.



- Fit the drawing sheet.

- Save the file. This completes the activity. However, you may continue to place additional views or dimensions for extra practice.

Activity summary

In the activity you learned how to place dimensions and annotations on a drawing. You also learned how to edit a part and then update the drawing views to reflect the changes.

Activity: Placing annotations

Overview

This activity covers the workflow of placing annotations on a drawing. An existing drawing file is used to annotate.

Objectives

In this activity you will place geometric tolerances and finish symbols.

Activity: Placing annotations

Overview

This activity covers the workflow of placing annotations on a drawing. An existing drawing file is used to annotate.

Objectives

In this activity you will place geometric tolerances and finish symbols.

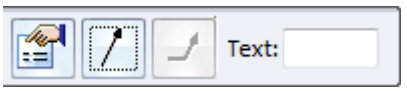
Open draft file

- Open *annotation_fan.dft*.

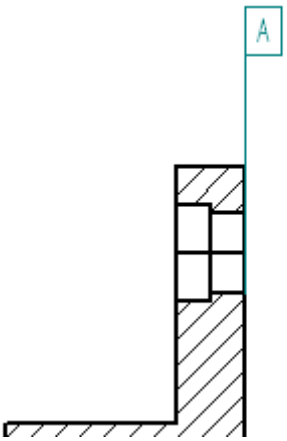
Place a datum frame

Place a datum frame on the right drawing view.

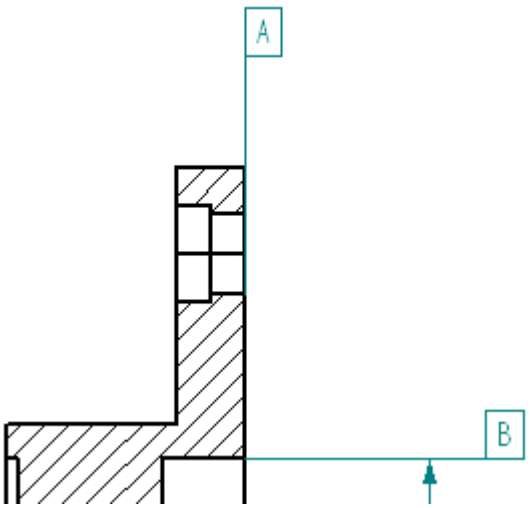
- On the Home tab® Annotation group, choose the Datum Frame command .
- On the command bar, cancel the selection of the Leader and Break Line options. Type A in the Text box and set the Dimension Style box to ISO.



- Select the right vertical edge on the cross-section view and place the datum frame as shown. If you want the minus sign to display before and behind the letter A in the datum frame (-A-), on the View tab, choose Styles® Modify to invoke the Modify Dimension Style dialog box. Then click the Annotation tab and set the Dashes on Datum Text option.

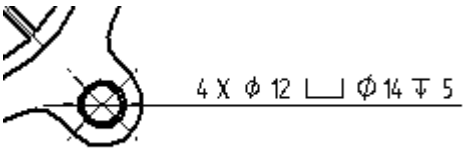


- On the command bar in the Text box, change A to B and then click the diameter dimension on the cross section view and place the datum frame as illustrated.



Reposition a dimension

- Click the Select tool, and reposition the dimension on the counterbored hole as shown below. Reposition the dimension horizontal.

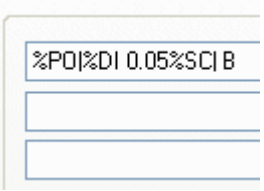


Place a feature control frame

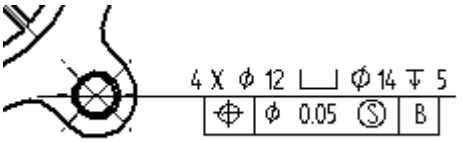
- On the Home tab® Annotation group, choose the Feature Control Frame command .
- Click the Position symbol, and click the Divider symbol.

- Click the Diameter symbol, press the space bar, type in 0.05, and then press the space bar again.

- Click the Material conditions: S and click the Divider Symbol. Press spacebar and then type B in the content field. The dialog box should match the following illustration.



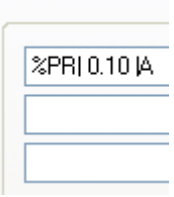
- In the Save settings: field, type *Position B 0.05*.
- Click Save to save these settings as Position B 0.05. If prompted, click yes to overwrite the file that already exists.
- Click OK.
- On command bar, clear the selection of the Leader and Break Line options.
- Select the diameter dimension on the lower right counterbore, and place the geometric tolerance as shown.



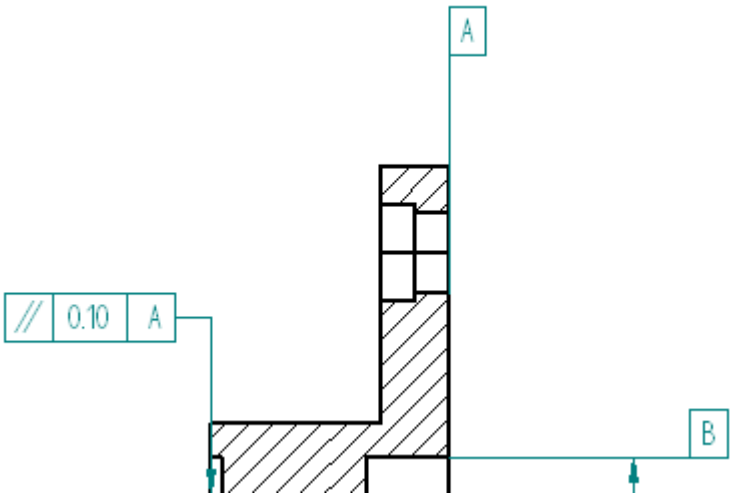
Place another feature control frame

- Click the Feature Control Frame Properties .

- Click the Parallelism symbol and create a callout of 0.10 mm to datum A. Be sure to add the dividers as shown.



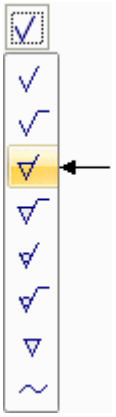
- Click OK and set the Leader and Break Line options. Place the feature control frame on the left side of the cross section view as shown.



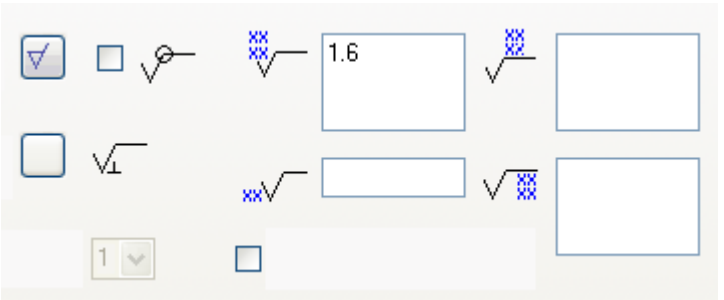
- Save the file.

Place a surface texture symbol

- On the Home tab® Annotation group, choose the Surface Texture Symbol command .
- Select the Symbol type: for a *machined* finish.

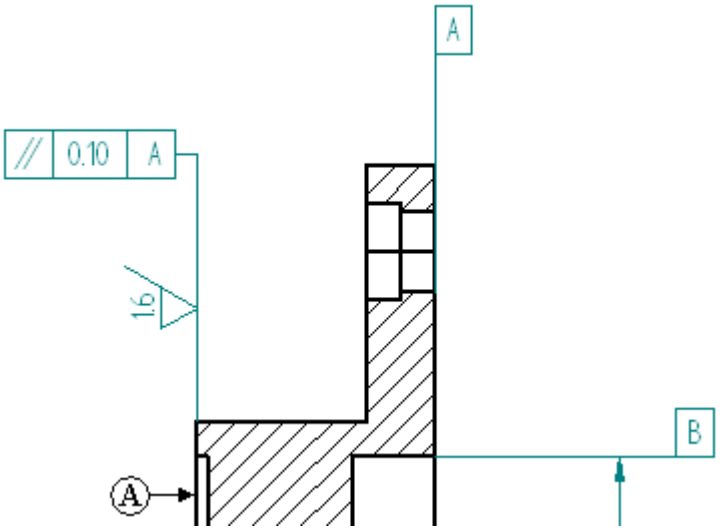


- Type 1.6 in the value field shown and click OK.



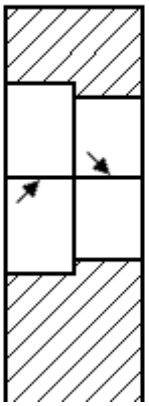
- On the command bar, clear the selection of the Leader.

- Place the surface finish symbol on the left vertical object line of the cross sectioned part. Click the edge (A).



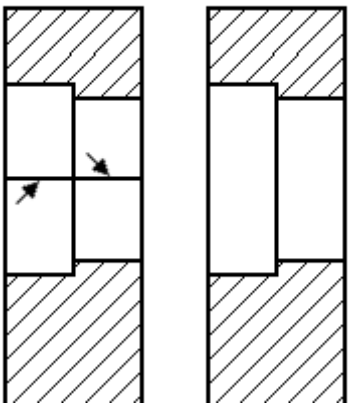
Hide an edge in the drawing view

The section cut produced extra edges in the section view. Hide those edges.



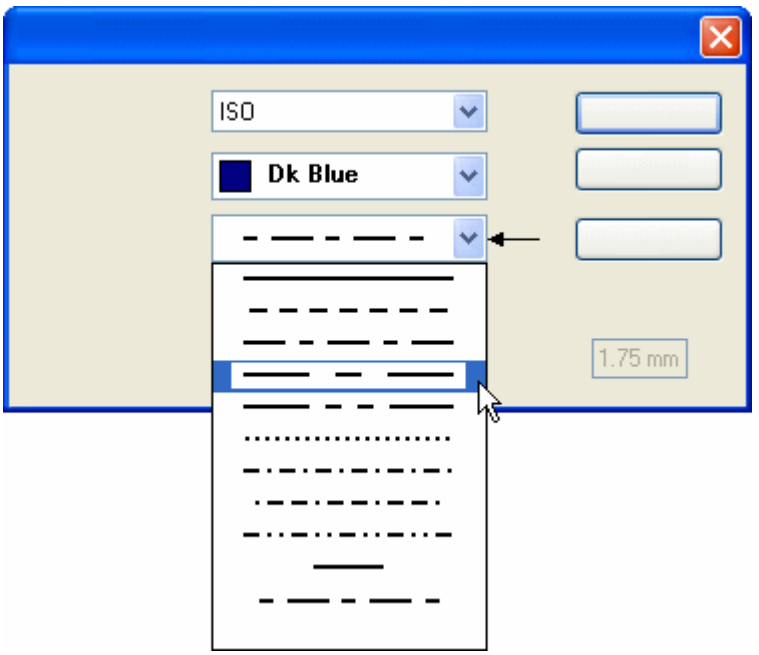
- On the Home tab® Edges group, choose the Hide Edges command.

- Click the two edges shown.

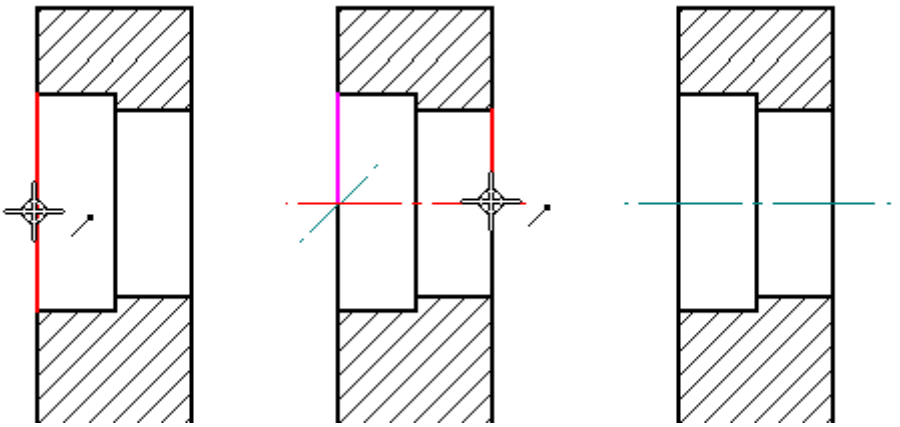


Place a centerline on the section view

- On the Home tab® Annotation group, choose the Center Line command .
- On the command bar, make sure the Dimension Style is set to ISO and the Placement options field is set to By 2 Points.
- On the command bar, click the Center Line properties button .
- On the Center Line & Mark Properties dialog box, click the Line Type shown and click OK.

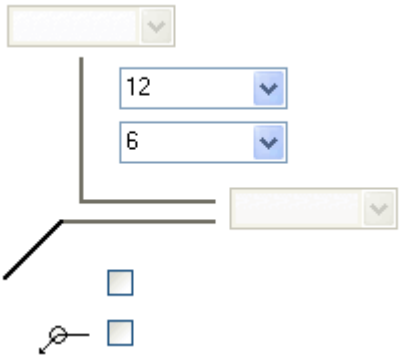


- Place the Centerline through the center of the counterbored hole by selecting a keypoint on each end of the hole. Use IntelliSketch to locate the keypoint of the vertical line.



Place an edge condition on the section view

- Choose the Edge Condition command .
- In the Edge Conditions properties dialog box, type 12 in the Upper tolerance field and 6 in the Lower tolerance field. Click OK.



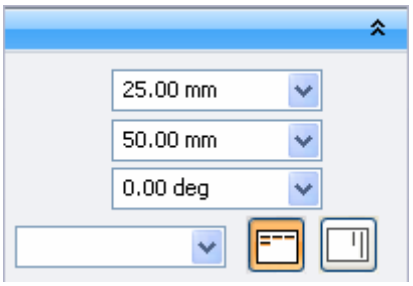
- Select the lower horizontal edge on the cross section view edge and place the symbol as shown below. You may have to select the edge condition after placement and select the handles to reposition the text as shown.

- Fit the drawing sheet.
- Save the file.

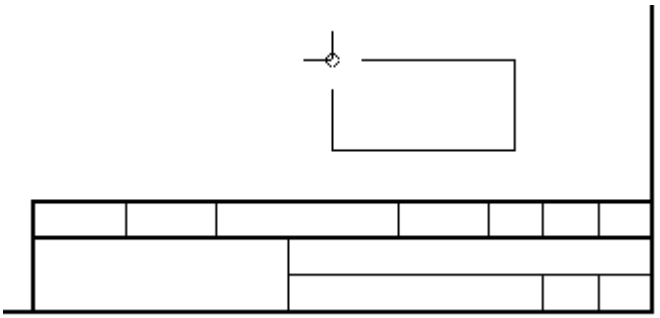
Add notes to the drawing sheet

Notes can be added to a drawing sheet using text boxes. However, you can also use a word processor to create the notes, and then copy and paste the notes directly into Solid Edge.

- Choose the Text command .
- Set Height to 25 mm and Width to 50 mm.

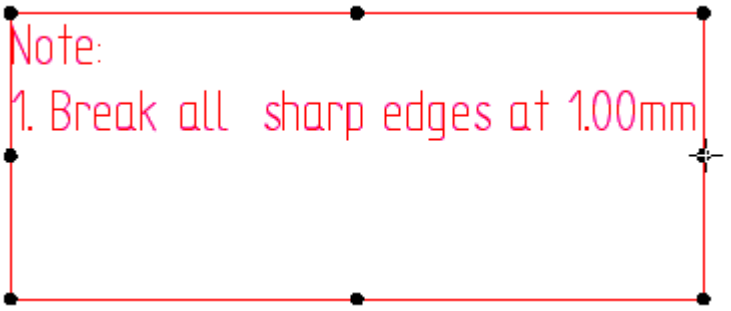


- Click to place the text box above the title block as shown. You may want to use the Zoom Area command to view the text.

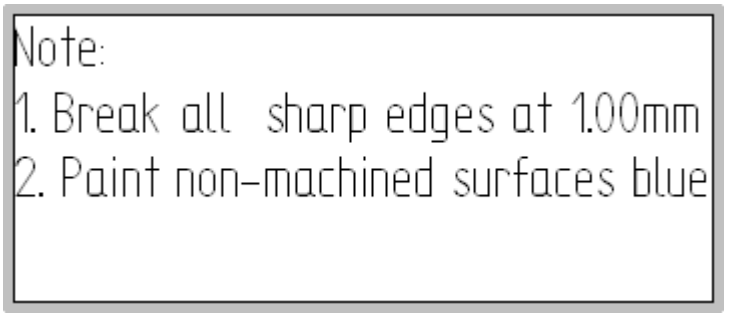


- Now that a text box is on the drawing sheet, you will now enter text. Type the text shown in the illustration in the Text box. After typing “NOTE:” press the Enter key to start a new line for the first note. Also notice that the last character wraps to a new line. This is because the text box is not wide enough for the sentence.

- To modify the text box width, click the Select Tool command and identify the text box border of the text box. Select and hold one of the graphic handles, and drag it out to widen the text box. You can also identify the text box with the Select Tool command and then change its width on the ribbon bar.



- To add the second note, identify the end of the first note with the Select tool, press the Enter key, and then type the next note.



- Save and close the file. This completes the activity.

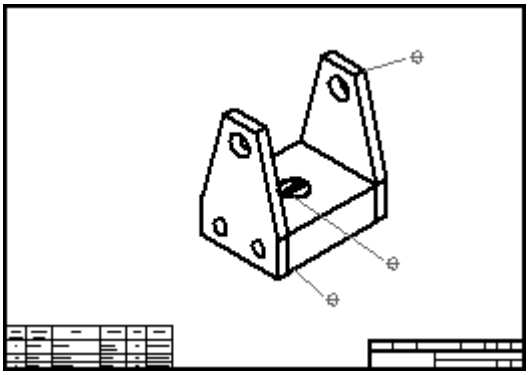
Activity summary

In the activity you learned how to place geometric tolerances and assign surface texture symbols to the drawing.

Activity: Placing a parts list

Overview

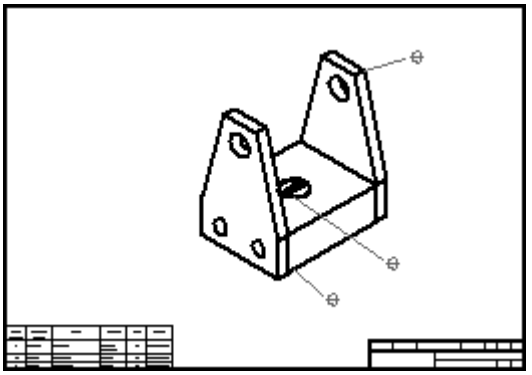
This activity demonstrates the process for placing an assembly parts list on a drawing sheet.



Activity: Placing a parts list

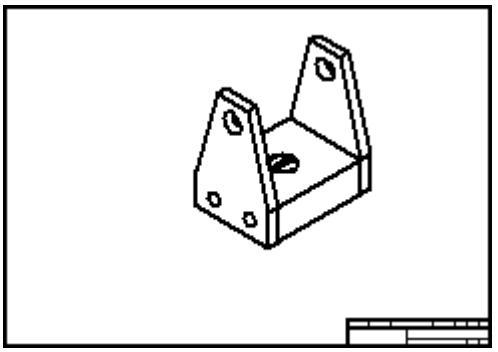
Overview

This activity demonstrates the process for placing an assembly parts list on a drawing sheet.



Open draft file

- Open *carrier.dft* located in the training course folder.
- If the Drawing Views dialog box informs you of an out-of-date drawing view, click OK.
- On the Home tab® Drawing Views group, choose the Update Views command .



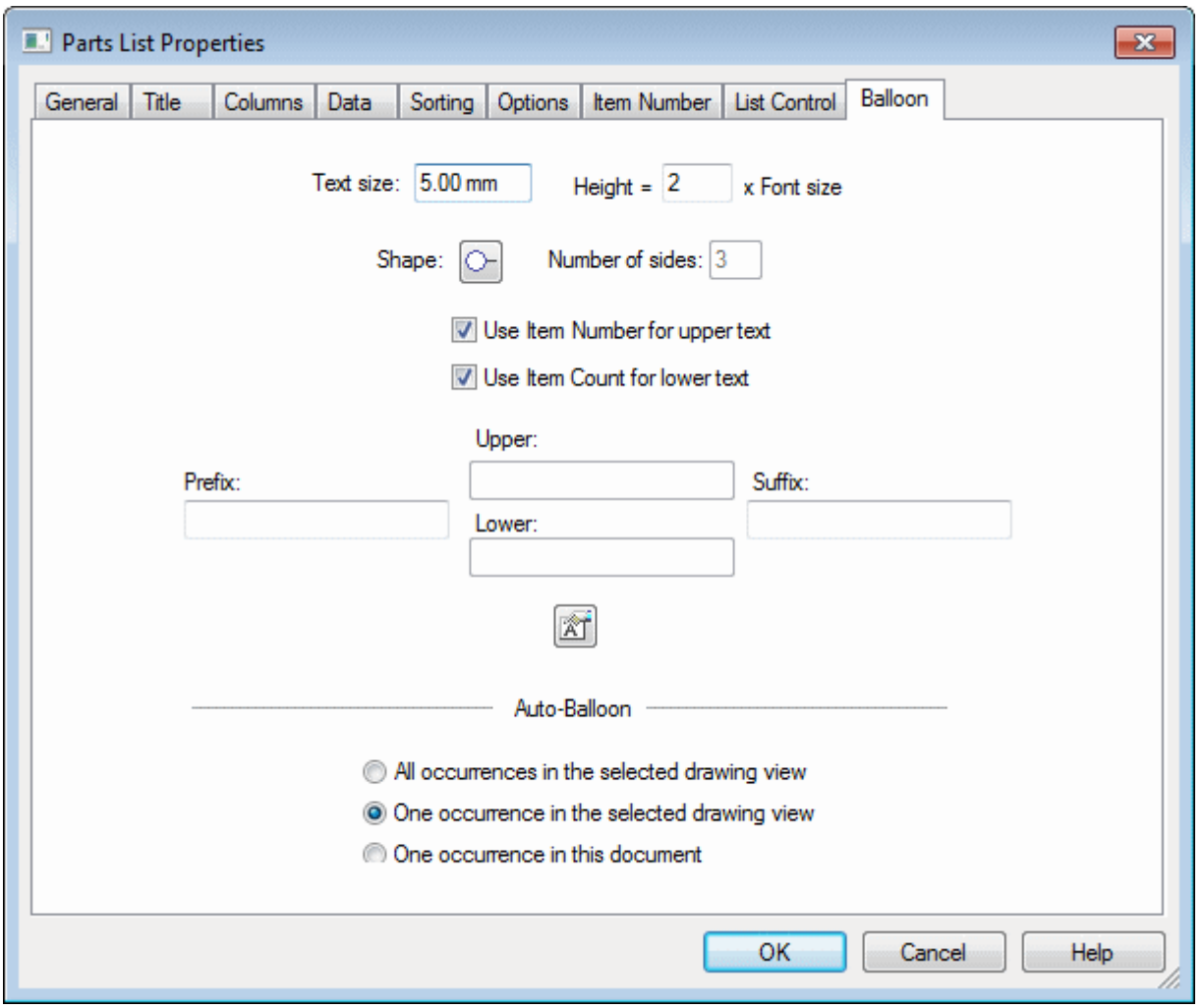
Set the parts list option for auto ballooning

Turn on the auto-balloon option.

- In the On the Home tab® Tables group, choose the Parts List command .
- Select the Drawing view.
- On the Parts List command bar, make sure the Auto-Balloon button is selected.

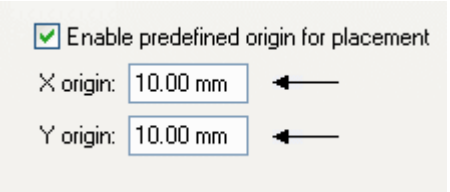
Set the balloon properties

- On the Parts List command bar, click the Properties button .
- Click the Balloon page. Type 5 for the Text Size. Use the default balloon shape. The settings shown will place balloons which contain the item number and count.



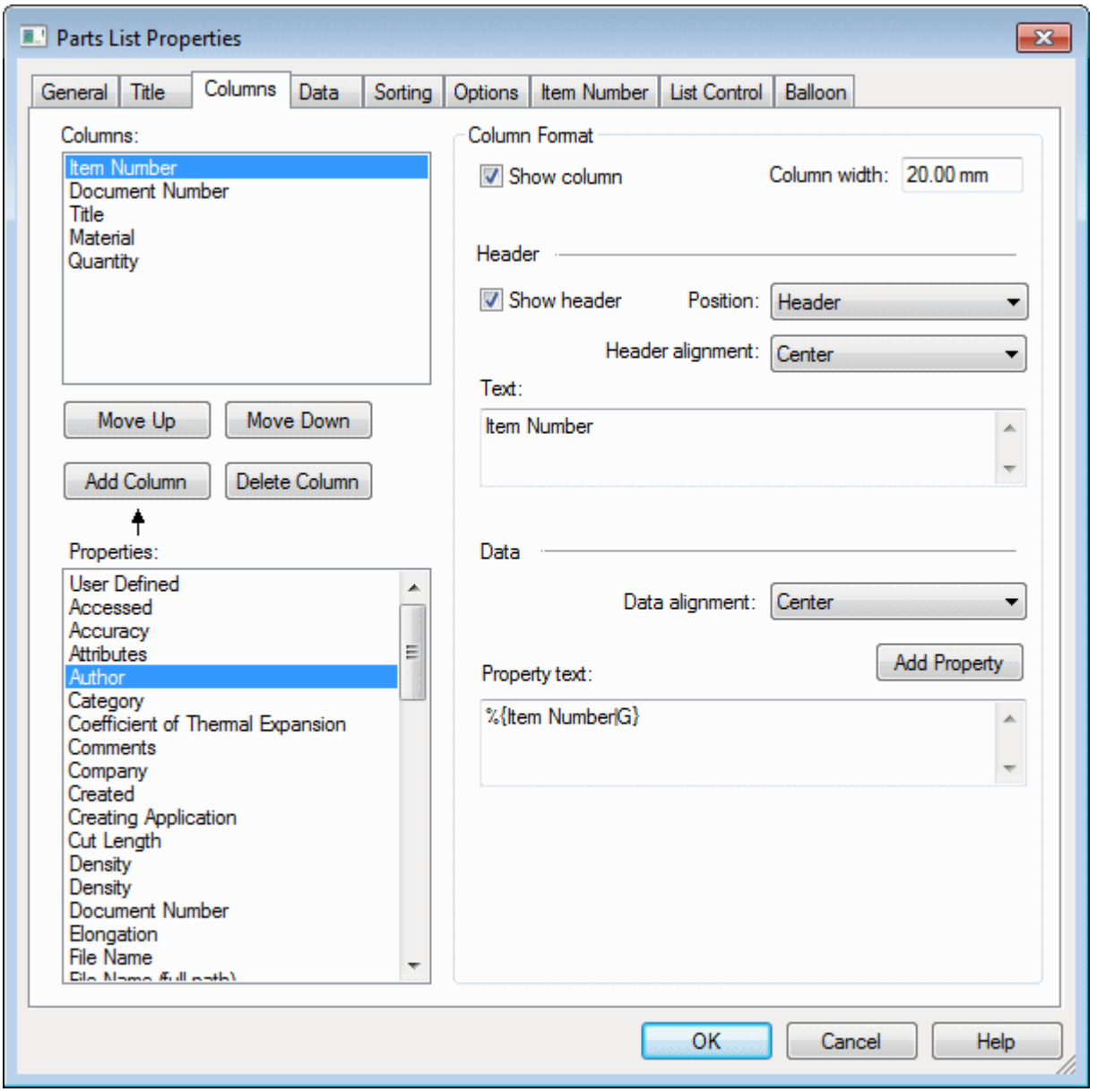
Define location of the parts list

- Click the General page.
- In the Location fields, type 10 in the X origin: and Y origin: fields. Click the *Enable predefined origin for placement box*. This fixes the offset distances of the parts list from the lower left corner of the draft sheet.

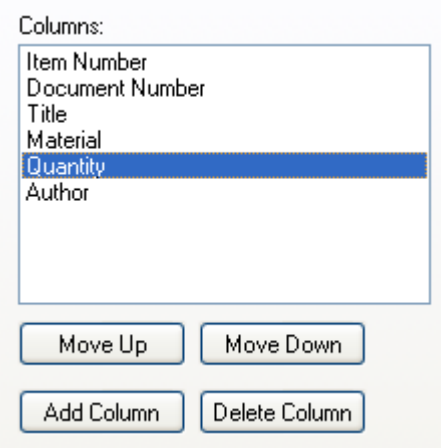


Define the parts list columns

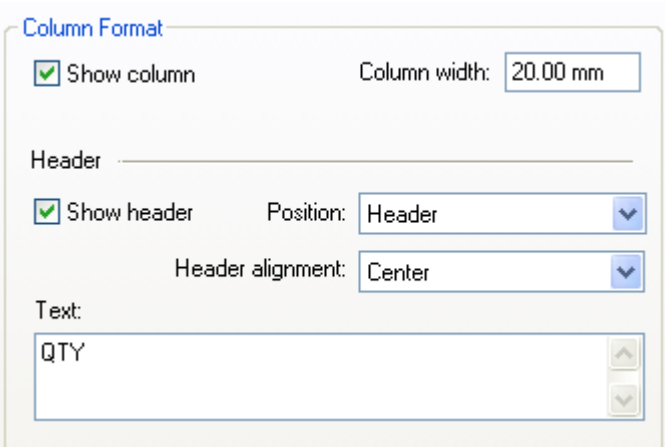
- Click the Columns page.
- Select Author from the Properties list, and click the Add Column button to add this to the columns list.



- Click on Quantity in the Columns list.



- Type QTY in the Text: field under Column Format.



- Click OK.

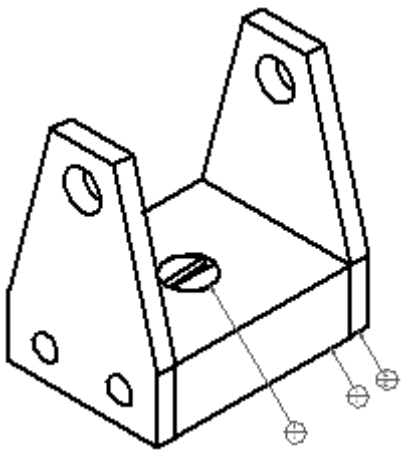
Place the parts list on drawing

Now that the options are set, place the parts list on the drawing sheet.

- Click Place List on the command bar to include parts list with balloons.
- Click in the drawing sheet window to place the parts list and balloons.
- Zoom in on the Parts List in the lower left corner of the drawing.

Item Number	Document Number	Title	Material	QTY	Author
1	SP-2070	Side Plate	6061-T6 Aluminum	2	Paul McGrath
2	C-3701	Cross Head	Bronze	1	Dwight Yorke
3	MP-101	Mounting Pin	Copper	1	Dwight Yorke

- Notice the Author field is added on the right end of the parts list, and the column header for Quantity is labeled as QTY. You can control the order of the columns by right-clicking the parts list and then click Properties. Click the columns page. Select the column from the list and then click the move up or move down buttons.
- Click Fit. Then zoom in on the drawing view. Notice that balloons are placed on the parts, and the balloon numbers correspond to those in the parts list. To reposition the balloons, click the Select Tool command, and drag the balloons to a new location.



- Save and close the file. This completes the activity.

Activity summary

In this activity you learned how to create a parts list with ballooning. You learned how to format the parts list.

Summary

The Drafting application provides for the creation of drawings. Views and dimensions that are placed on a drawing are associative to the 3D model and update when changes are made to the model.

In this course you:

- Created drawings
- Added views to a drawings
- Dimensioned drawing views
- Placed annotations on drawings
- Placed a parts list on a drawing.

Lesson

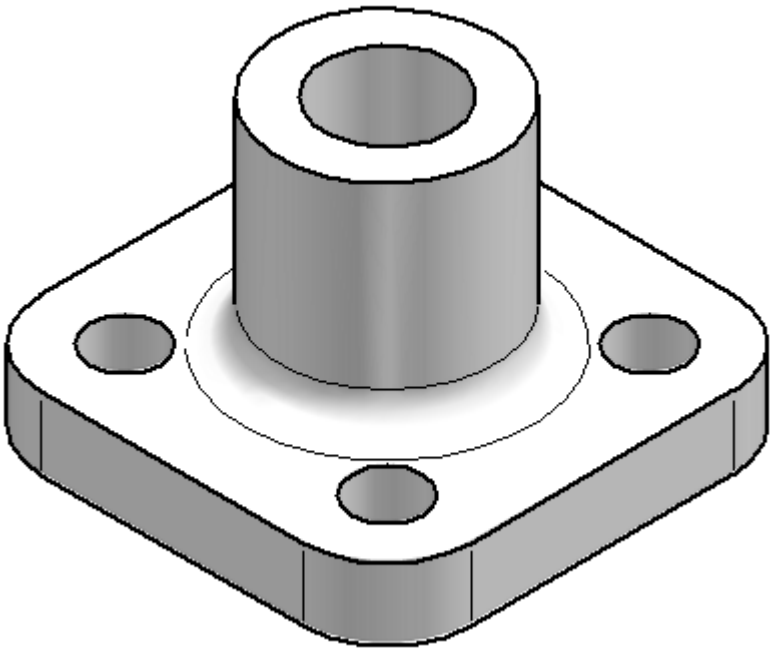
10 Practicing your skills with projects

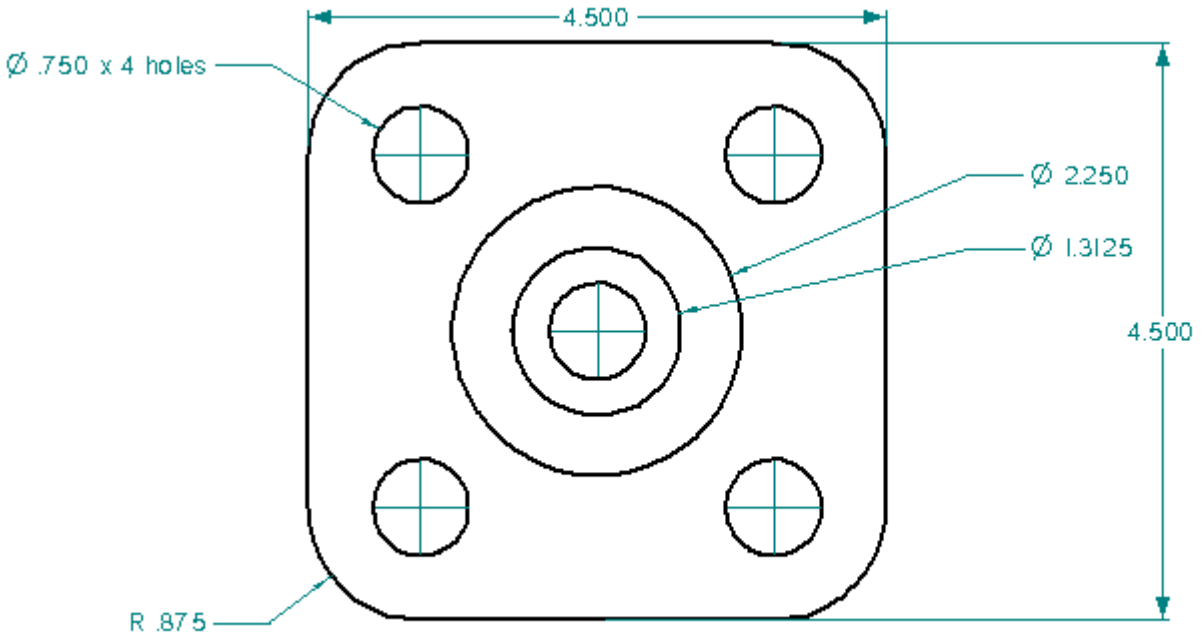
Additional modeling projects

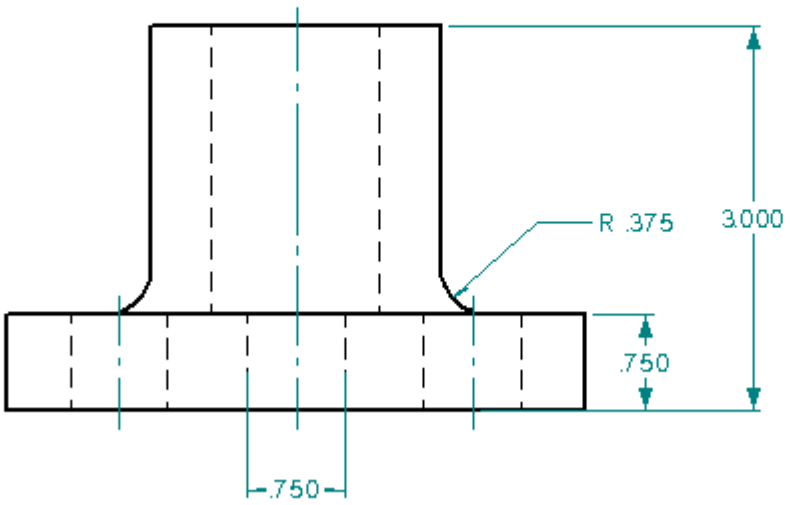
Introduction

This section contains additional parts for modeling practice. You can create each part in this section in several different methods using a variety of commands in Solid Edge. There is no correct or incorrect method to create these parts. Experiment with different commands and options in an effort to learn as much about each command as possible. There is an isometric view of each part to give you a better idea as to what the finished part looks like. There are also principal views that contain the dimensions you neede to create the part. There may be more dimensions than you need on the drawings.

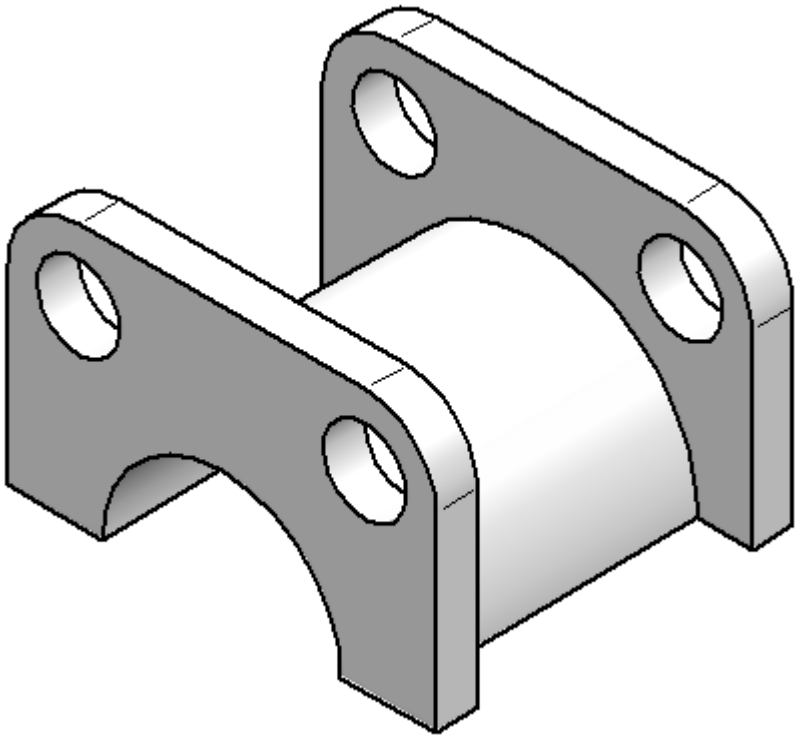
Base plate

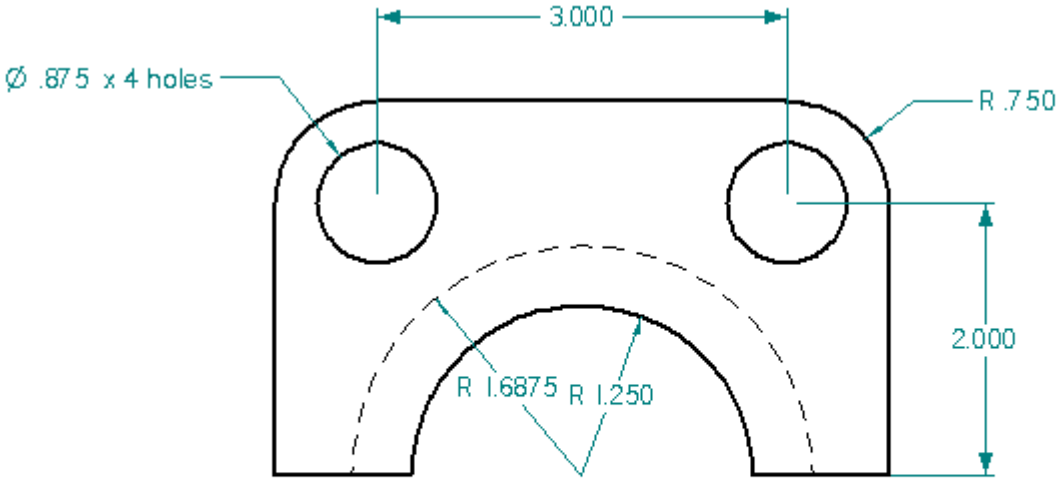


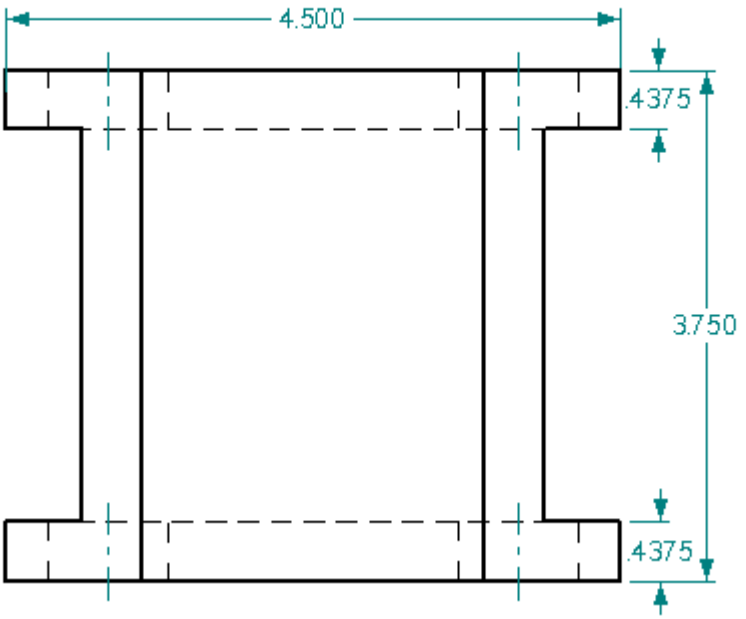

4.500
Ø .750 x 4 holes
Ø 2.250
Ø 1.3125
4.500
R .875


R .375
3.000
.750
.750

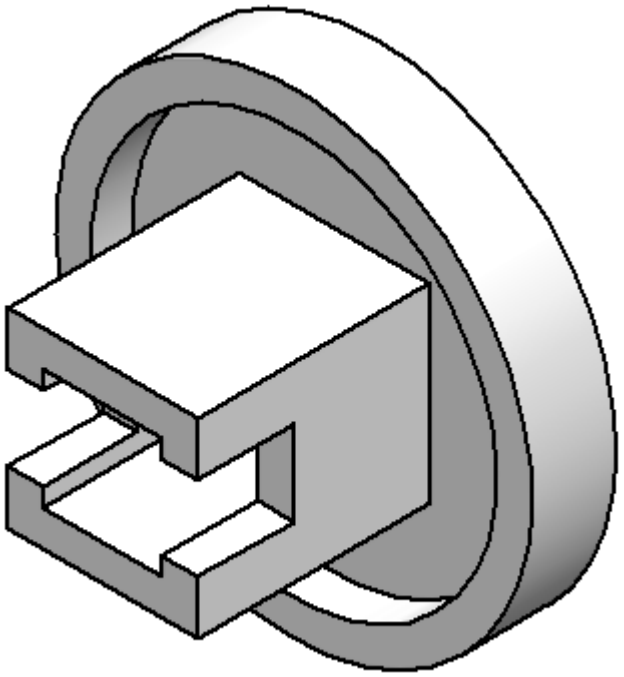
Bearing block A

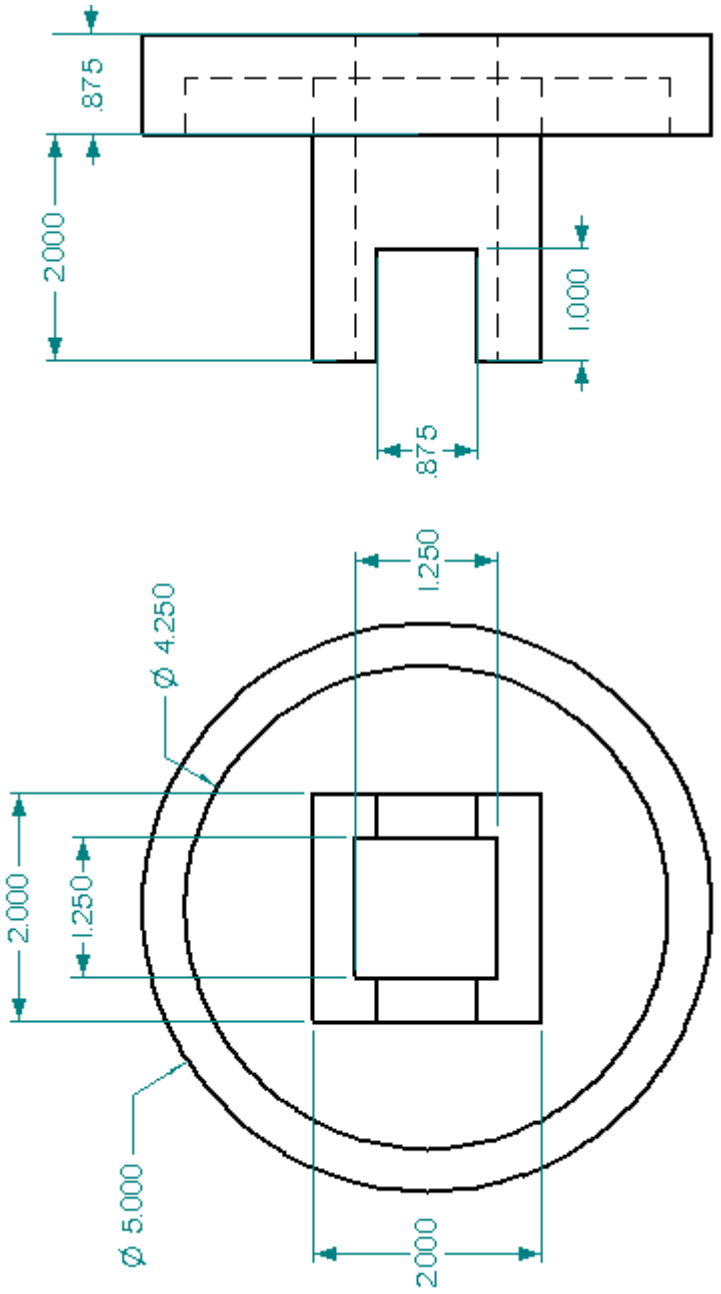



3.000
Ø .875 x 4 holes
R .750
2.000
R 1.6875
R 1.250

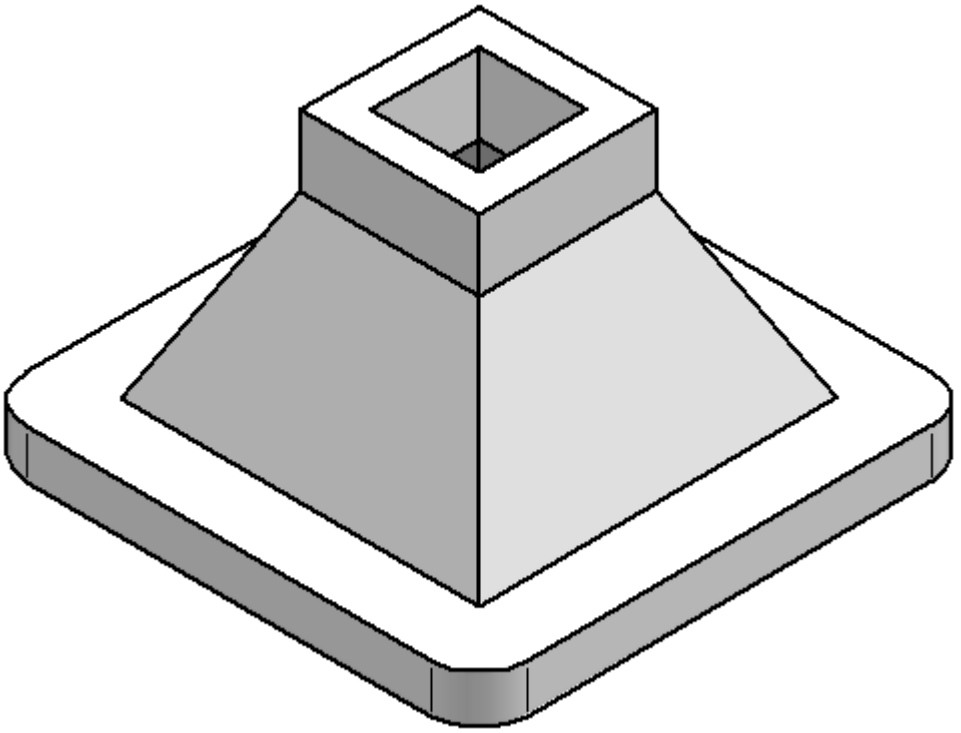

4.500
.4375
3.750
.4375

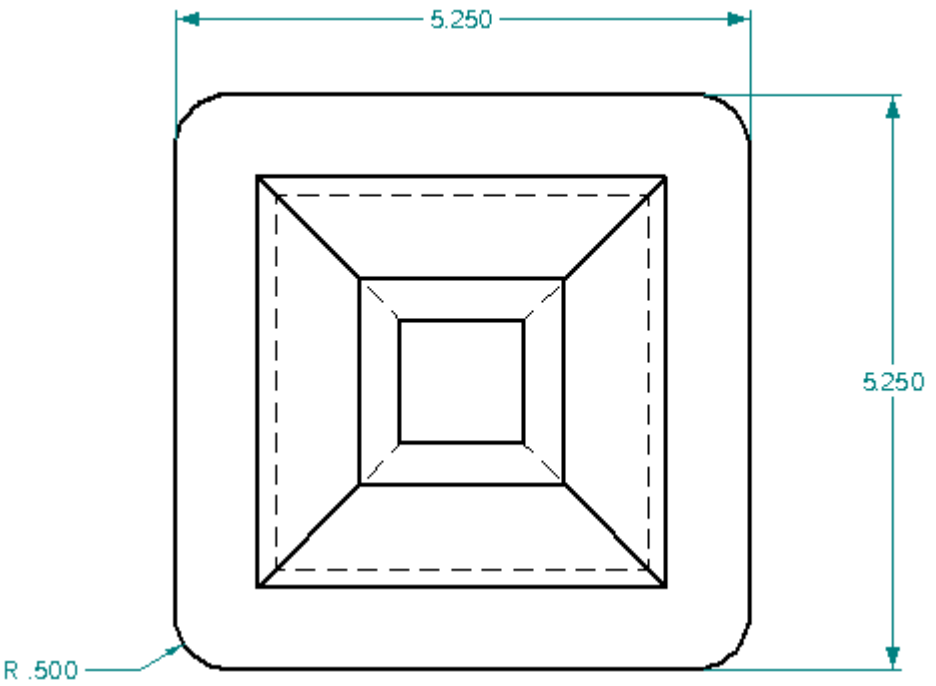
Bearing block B

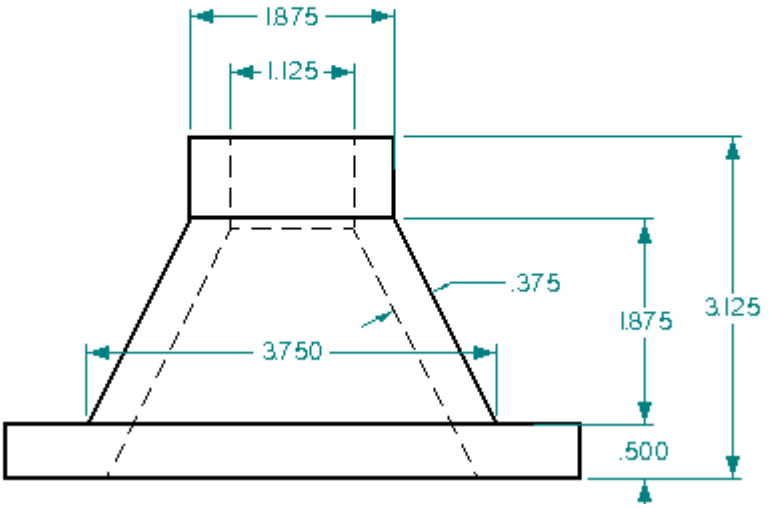



.875
2.000
1.000
.875
1.250
Ø 4.250
2.000
1.250
Ø 5.000
2.000

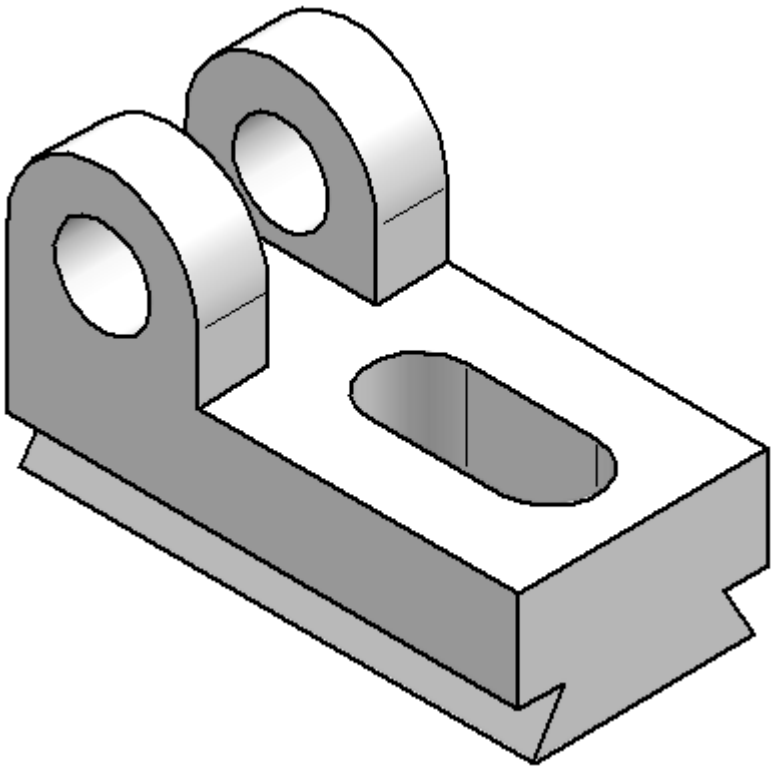
Column base

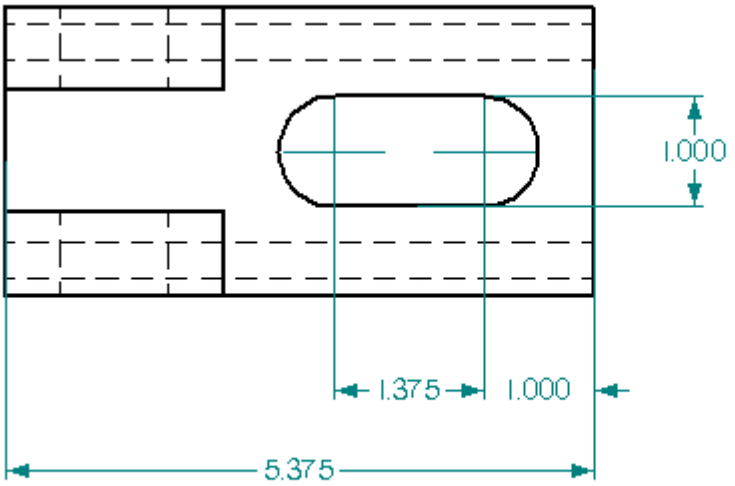


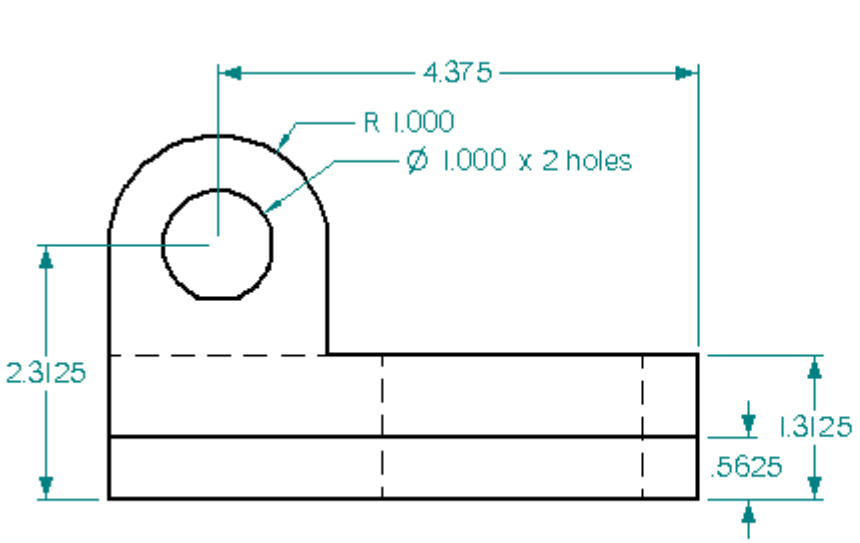

5.250
5.250
R .500

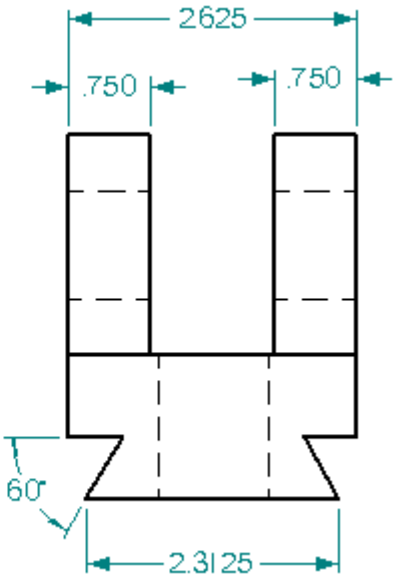

1.875
1.125
.375
1.875
3.125
3.750
.500

Dovetail bracket

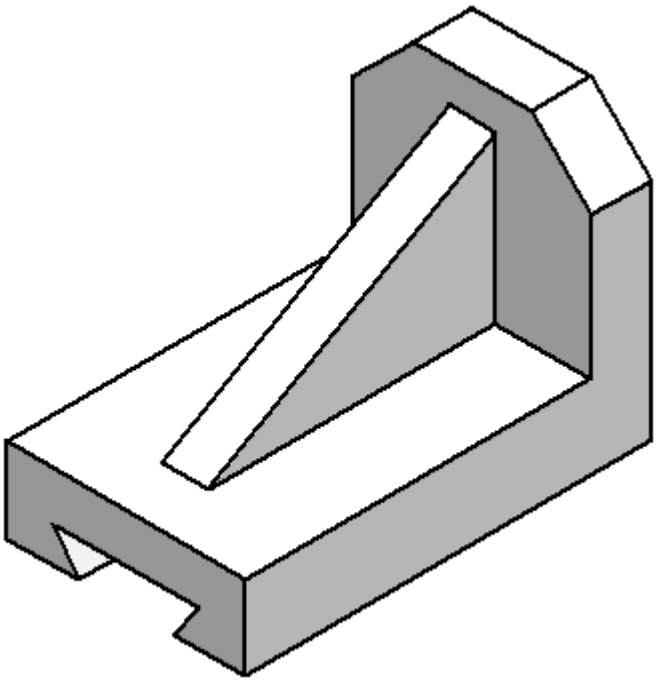


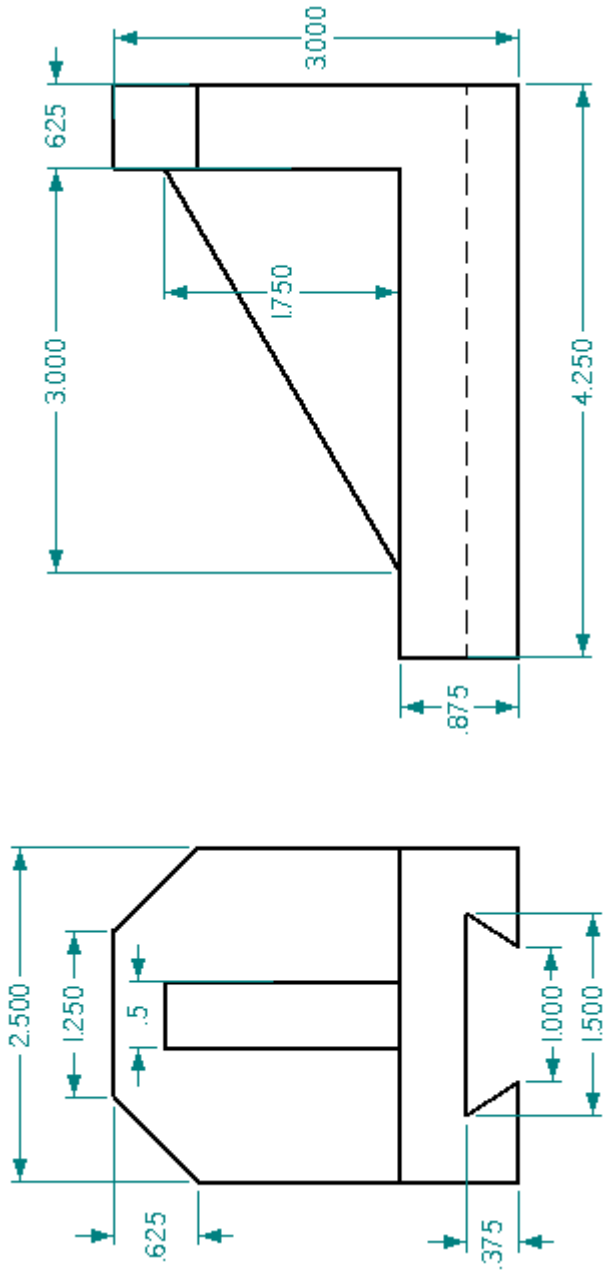

1.000
1.375
1.000
5.375


4.375
R 1.000
Ø 1.000 x 2 holes
2.3125
1.3125
.5625

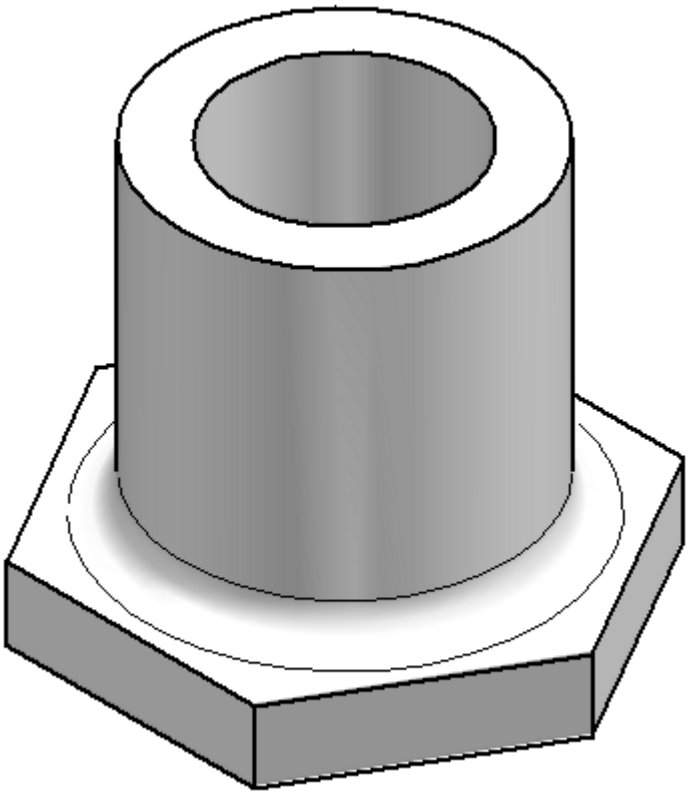

2625
.750
.750
60°
2.3125

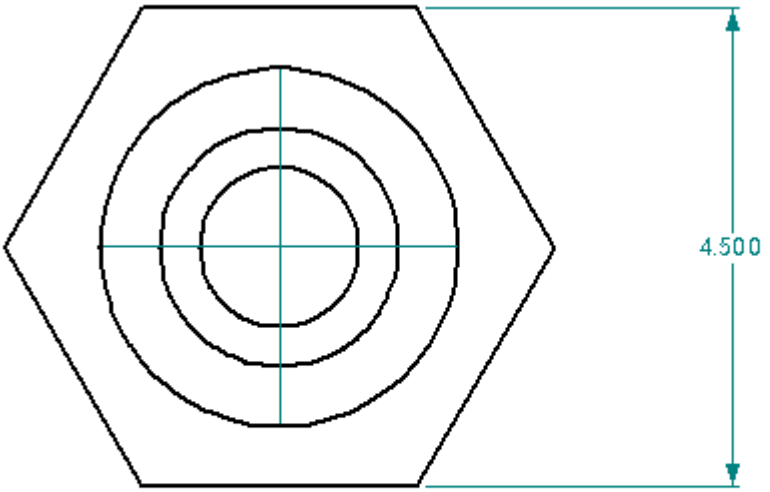
Dovetail stop

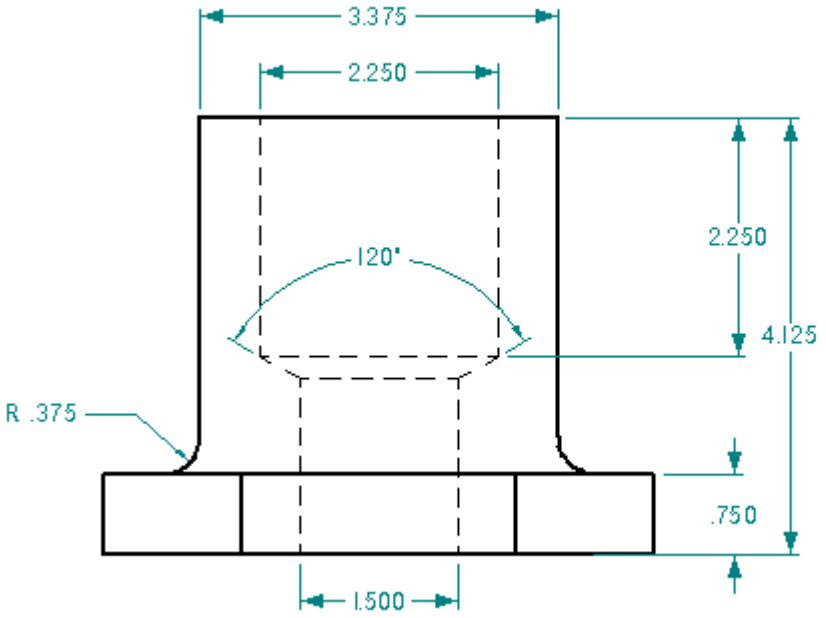



3.000
.625
1.750
3.000
4.250
.875
2.500
1.250
.5
1.000
1.500
.625
.375

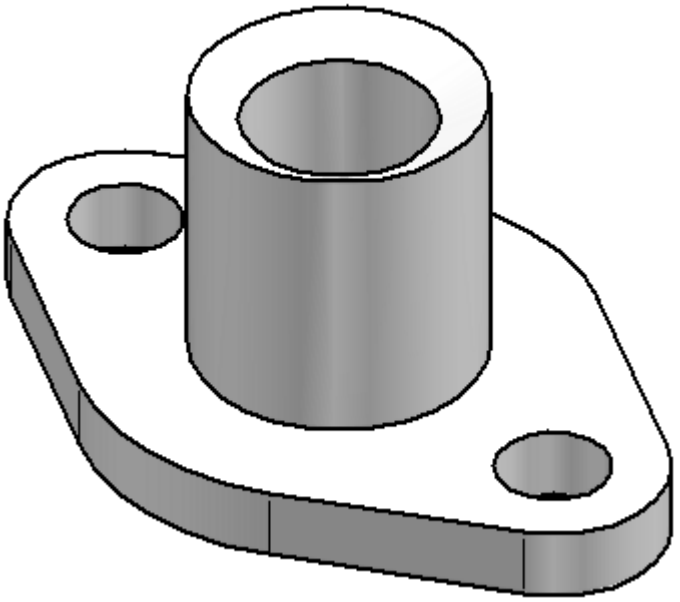
Gland blank

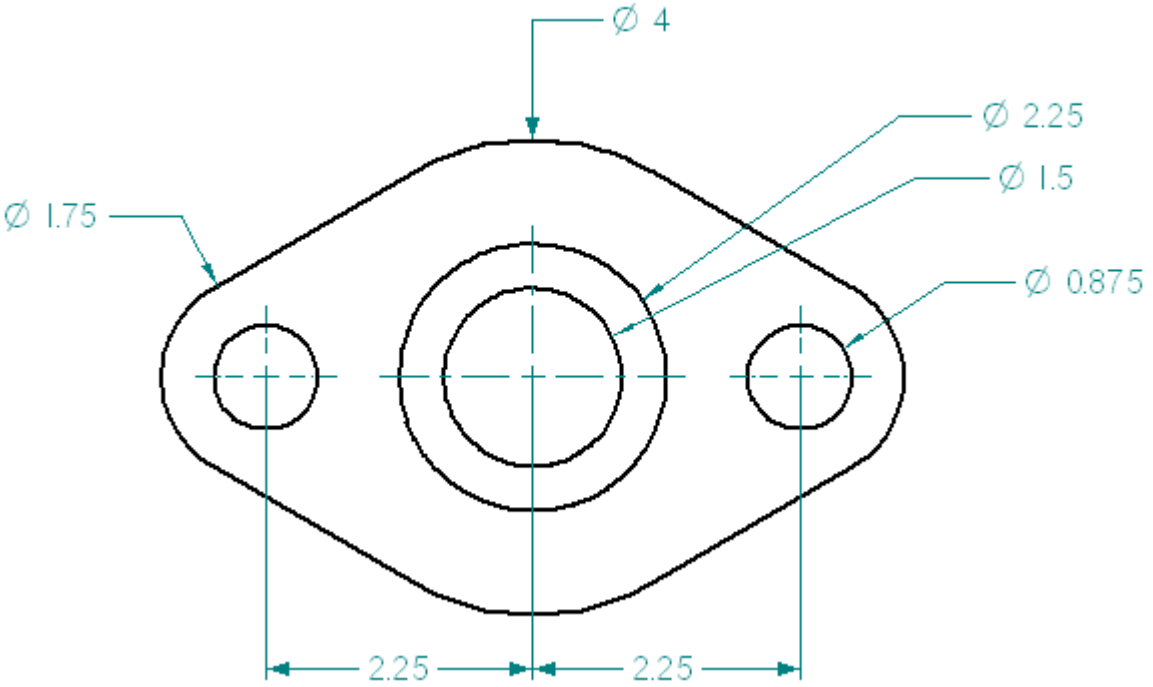


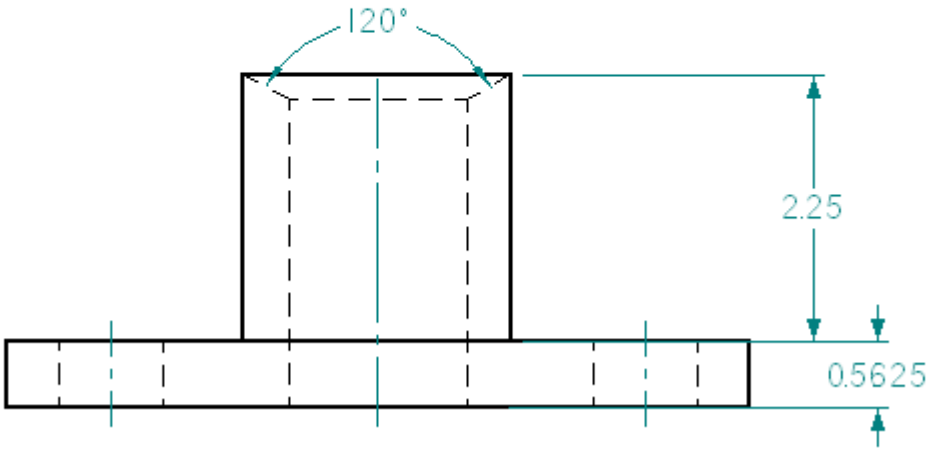

4.500


3.375
2.250
2.250
120°
4.125
R .375
.750
1.500

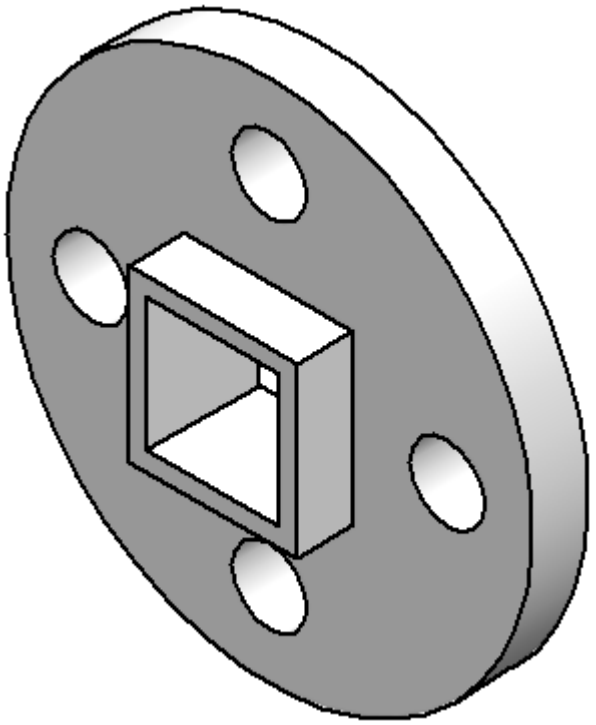
Gland

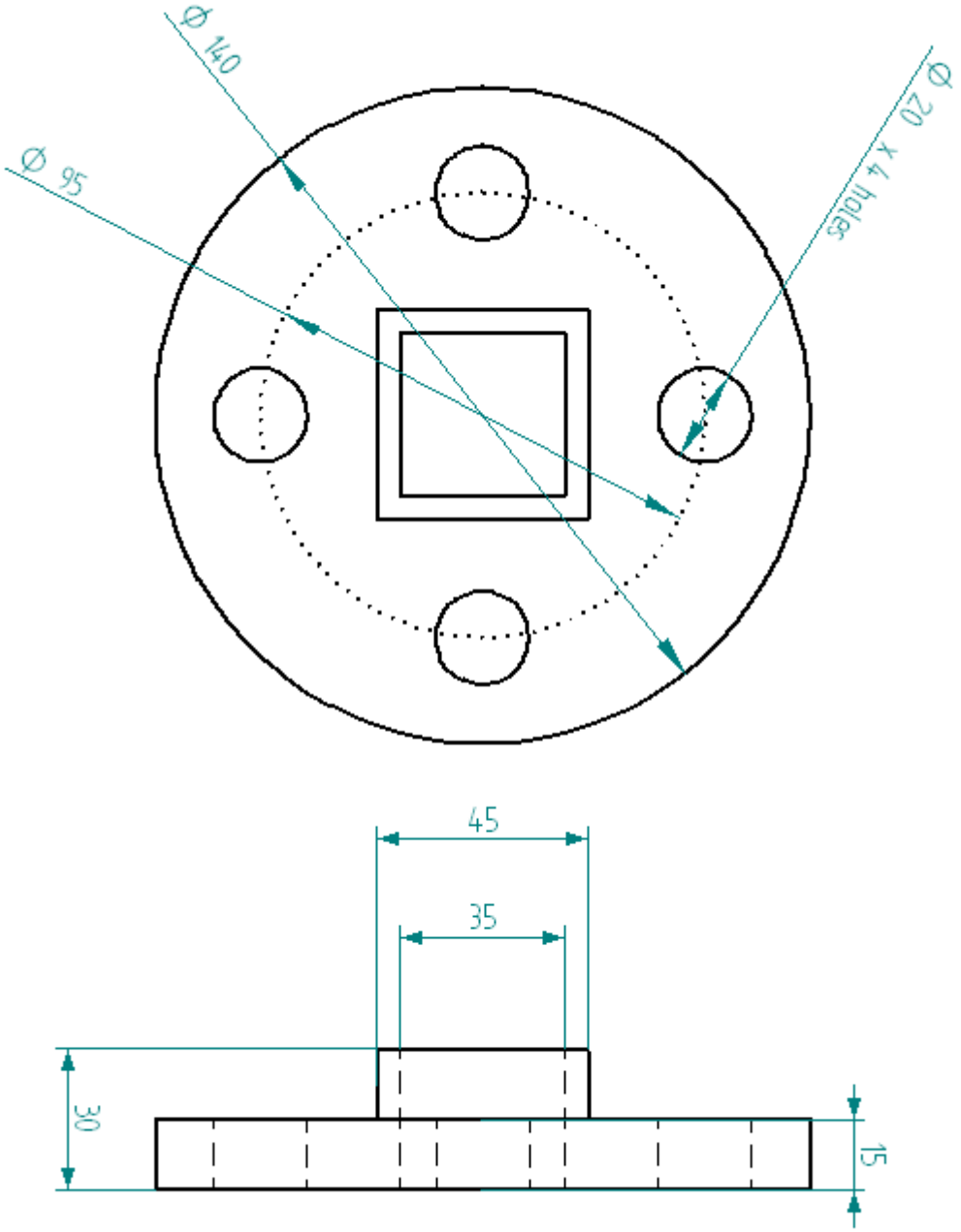



Ø 4
Ø 2.25
Ø 1.5
Ø 1.75
Ø 0.875
2.25
2.25

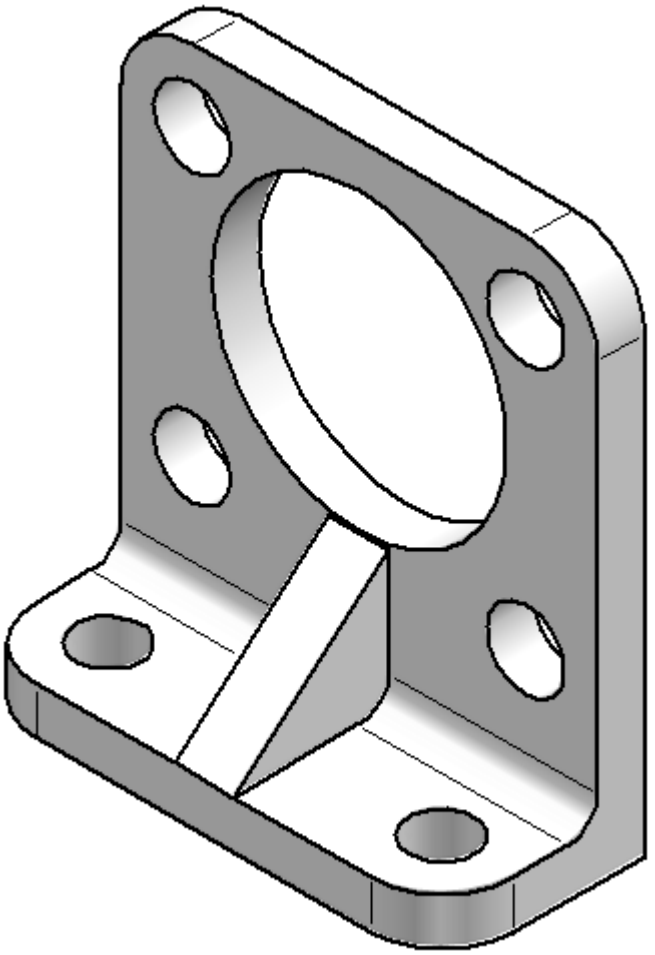

120°
2.25
0.5625

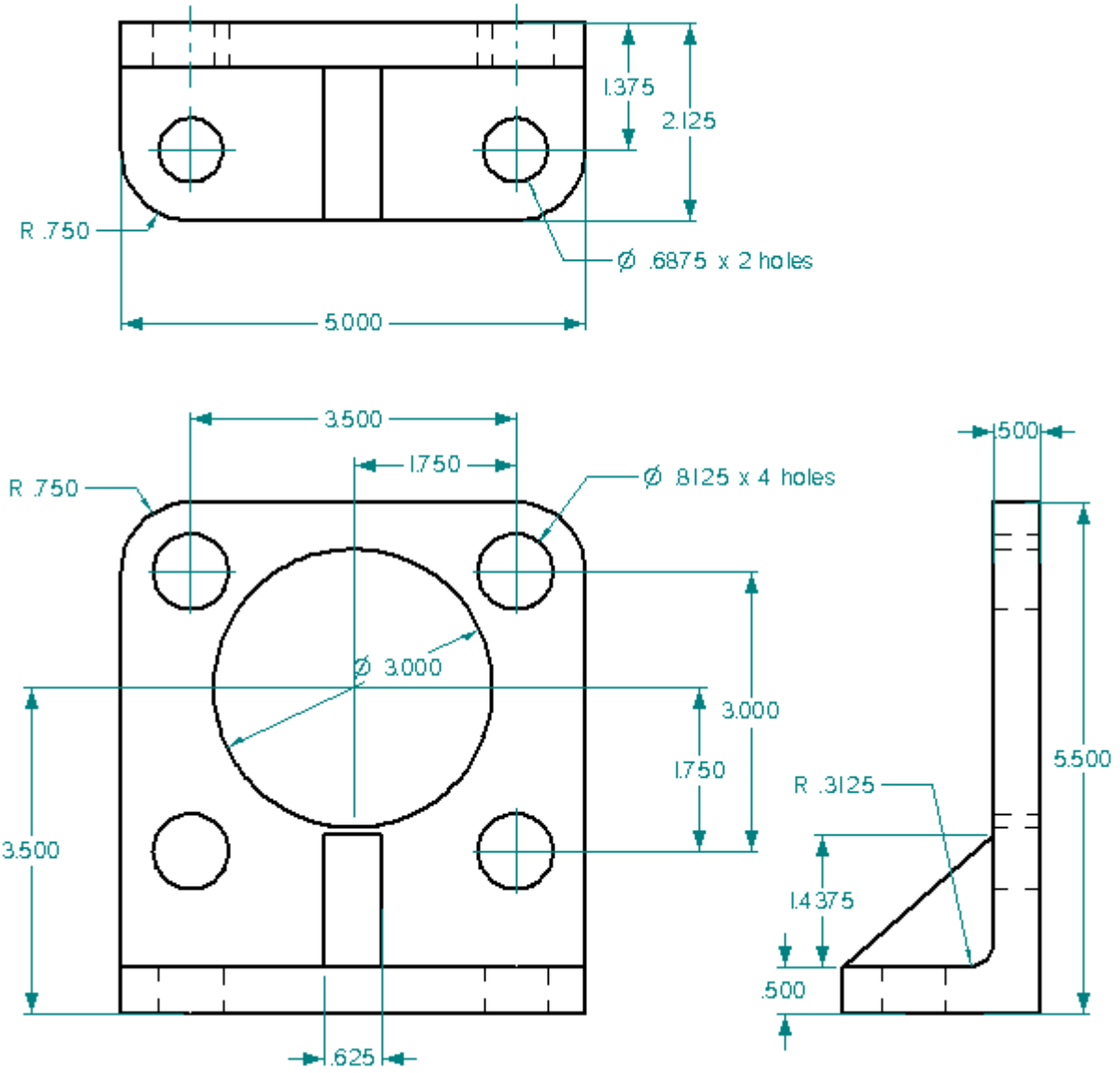
Guide plate



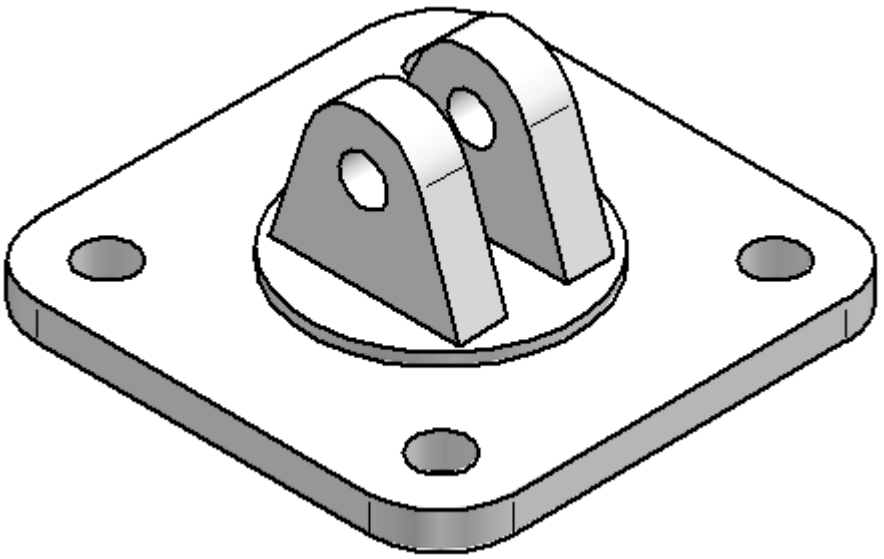

Ø 140
Ø 95
Ø 20 x 4 holes
45
35
30
15

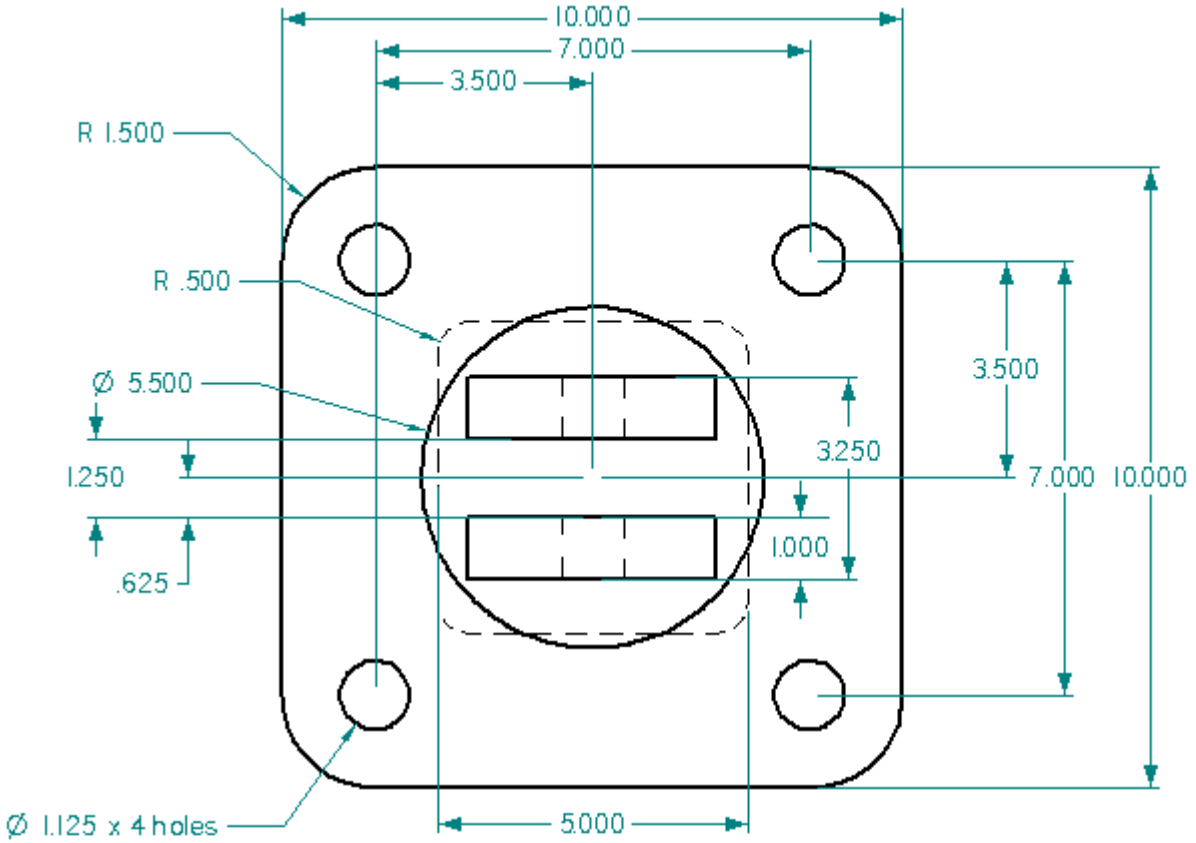
Head attachment

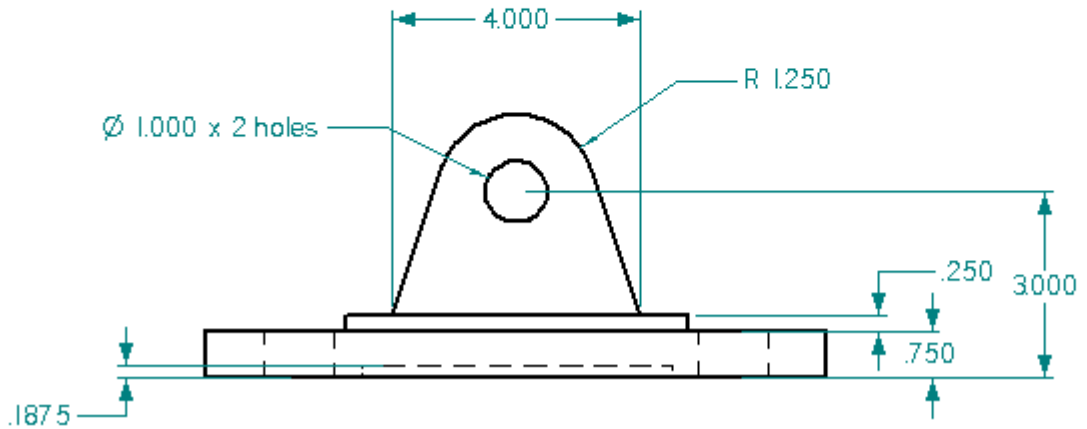



1.375
2.125
R .750
Ø .6875 x 2 holes
5.000
3.500
1.750
Ø .8125 x 4 holes
R .750
Ø 3.000
3.000
1.750
3.500
.625
.500
5.500
R .3125
1.4375
.500

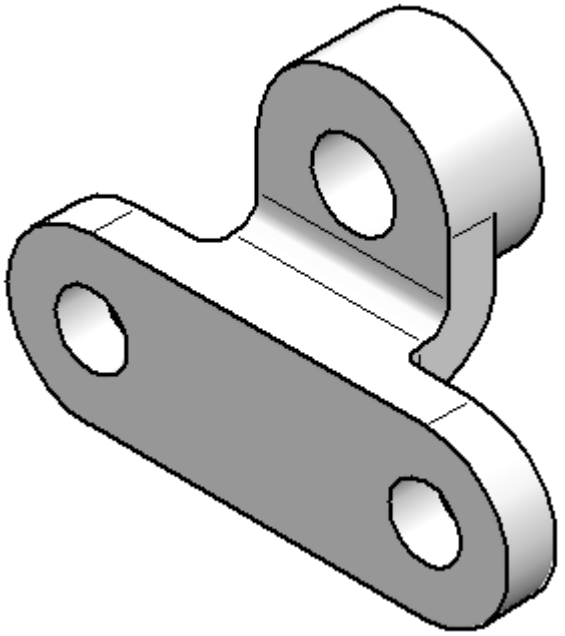
Head yoke

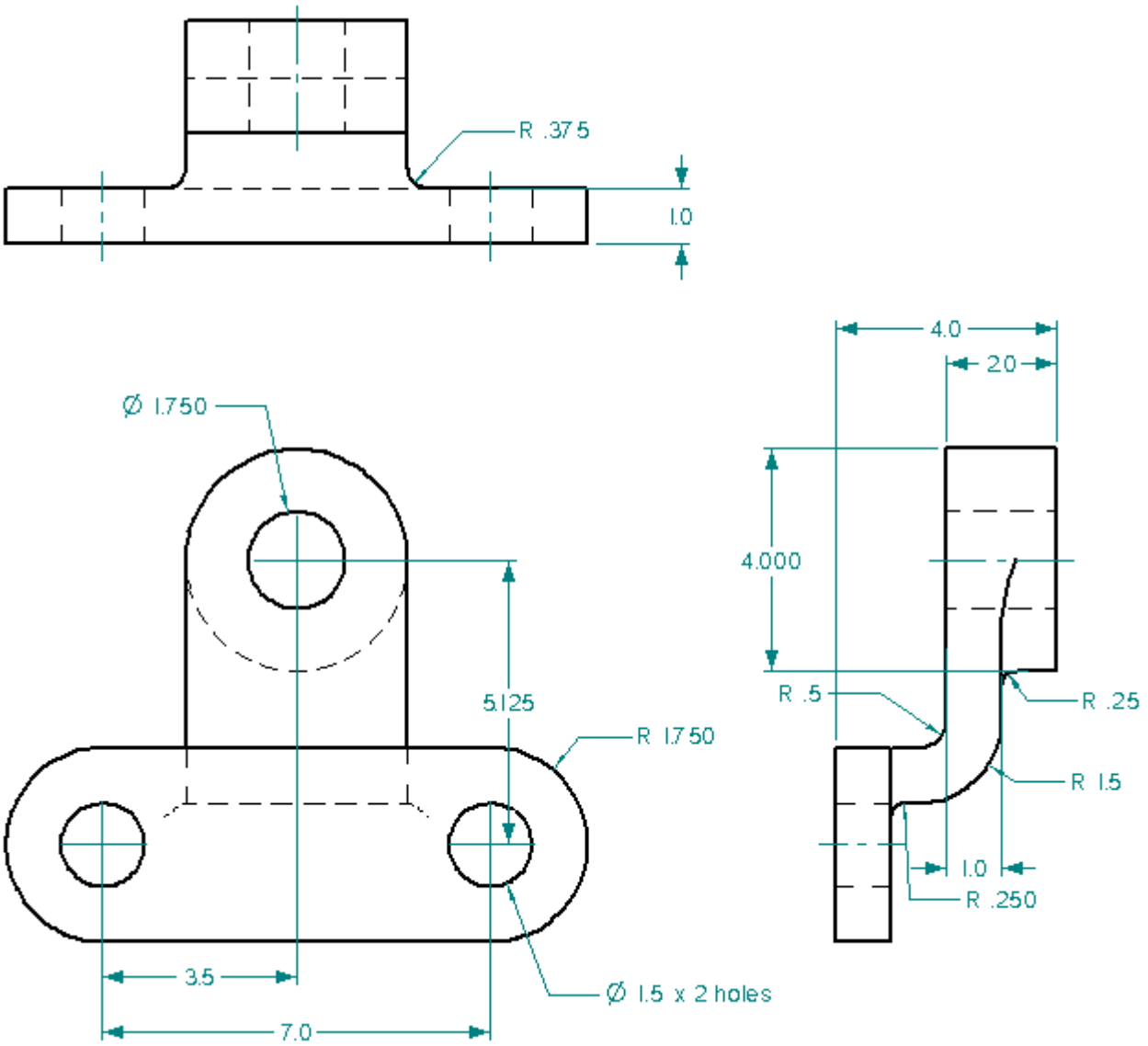



10.000
7.000
3.500
R 1.500
R .500
Ø 5.500
1.250
.625
3.250
1.000
3.500
7.000
10.000
Ø 1.125 x 4 holes
5.000

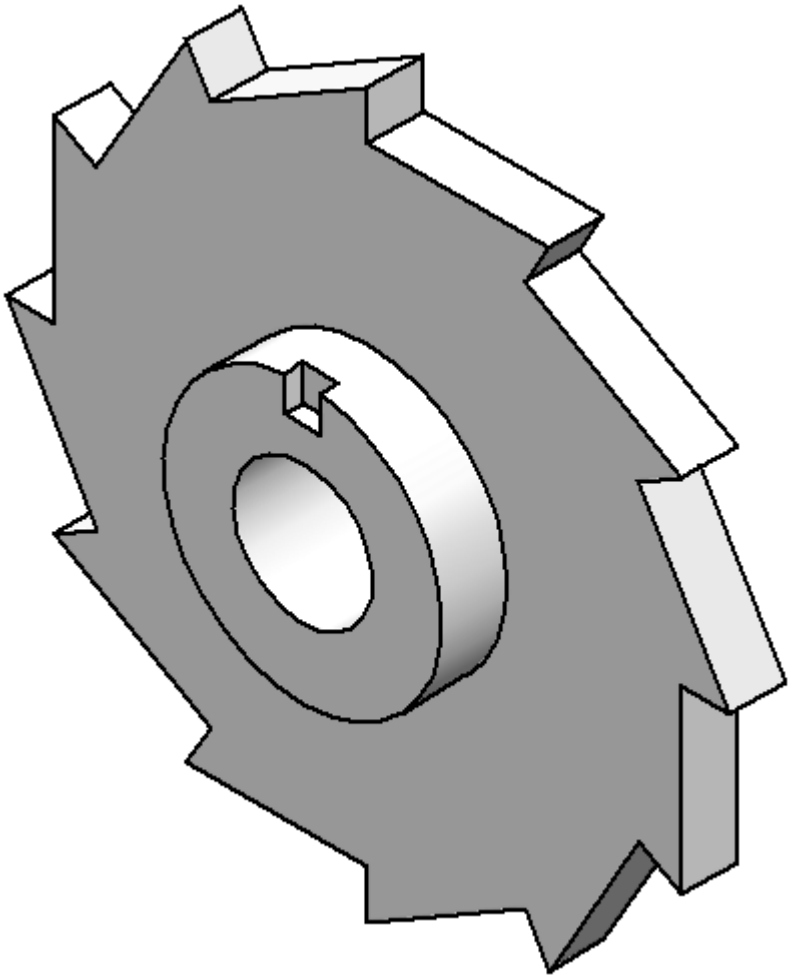

4.000
R 1.250
Ø 1.000 x 2 holes
.250
3.000
.750
.1875

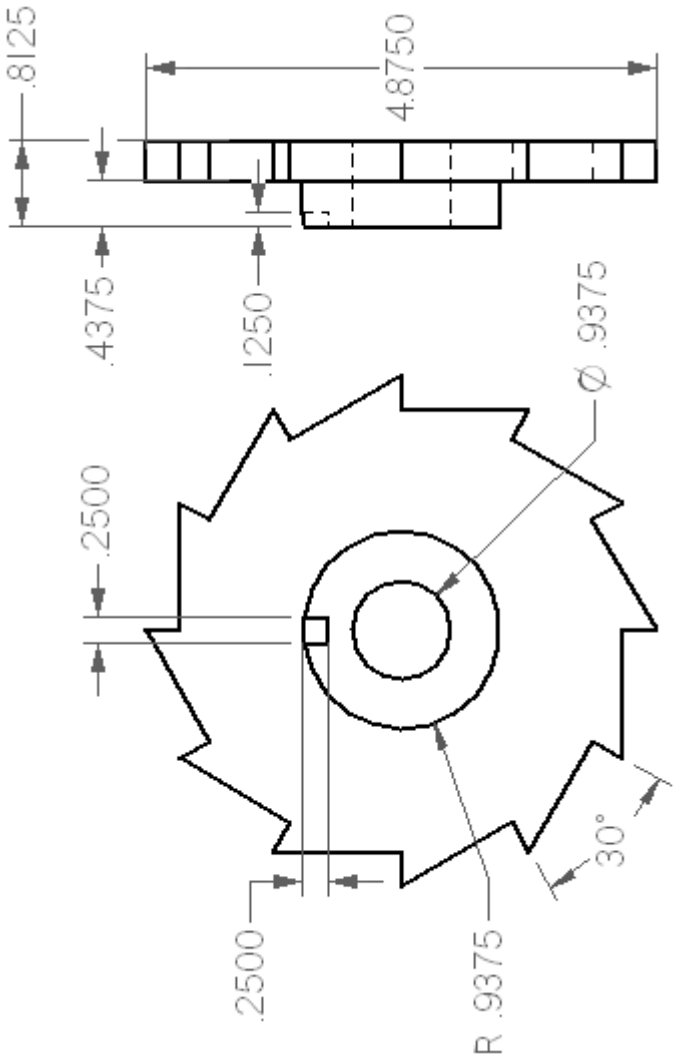
Rod support



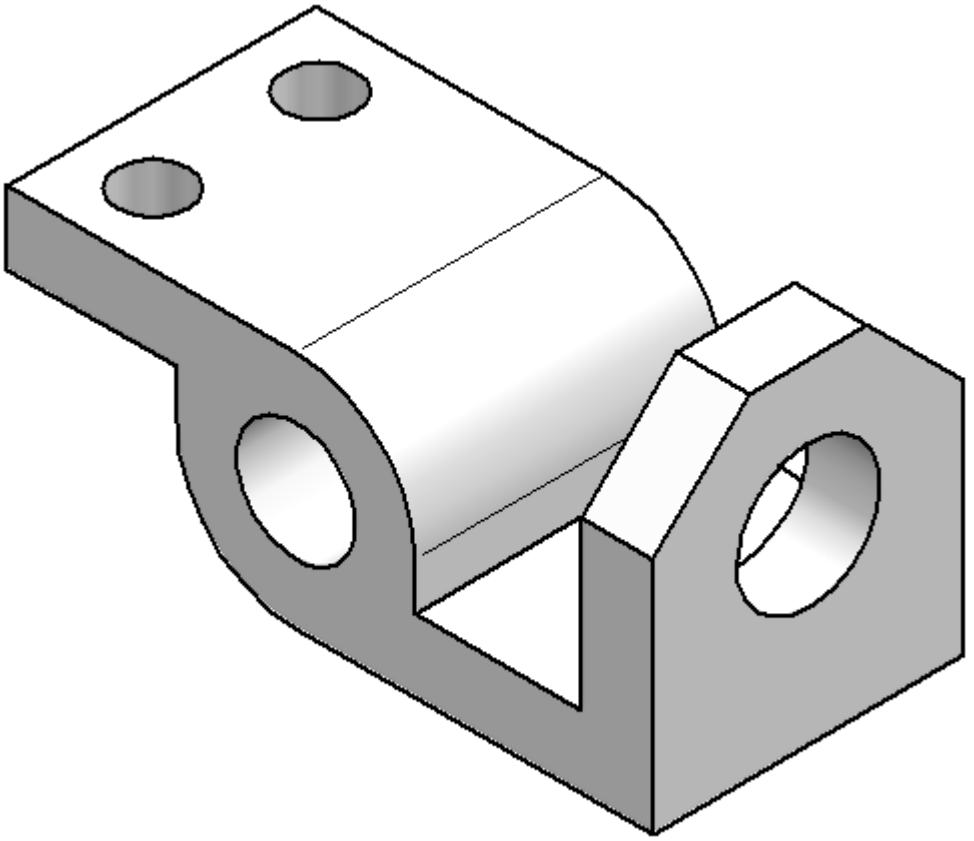

R .375
1.0
Ø 1.750
5.125
R 1.750
3.5
7.0
Ø 1.5 x 2 holes
4.0
2.0
4.000
R .5
R .25
R 1.5
1.0
R .250

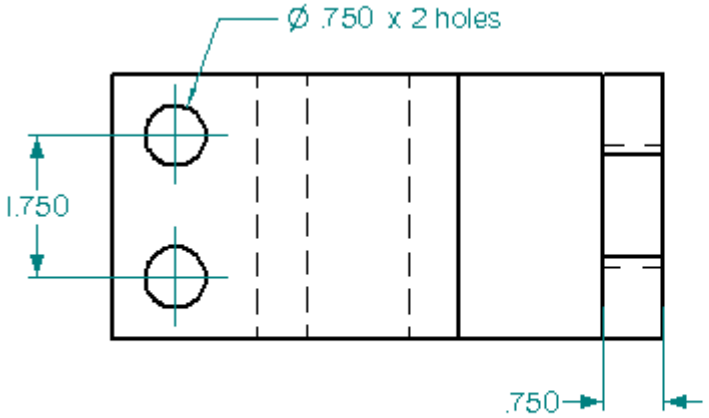
Saw blade

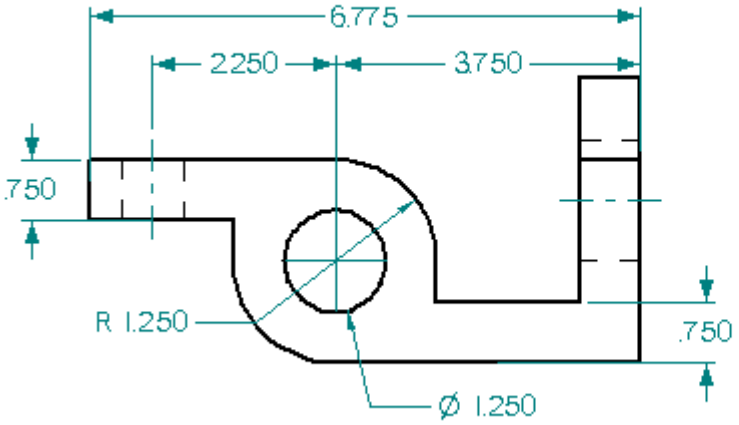


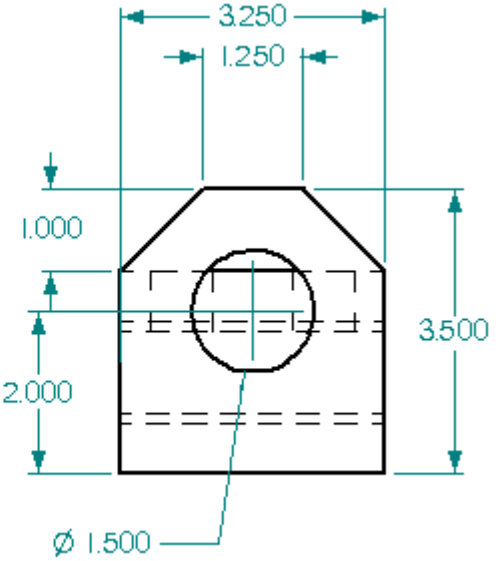

.8125
4.8750
.4375
.1250
Ø .9375
.2500
30°
.2500
R .9375

S-bracket

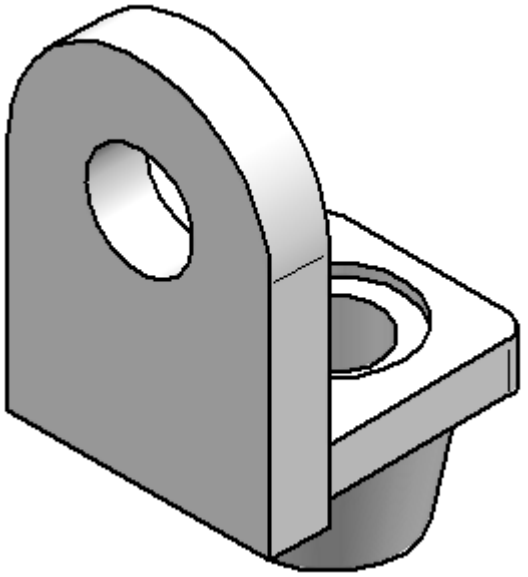


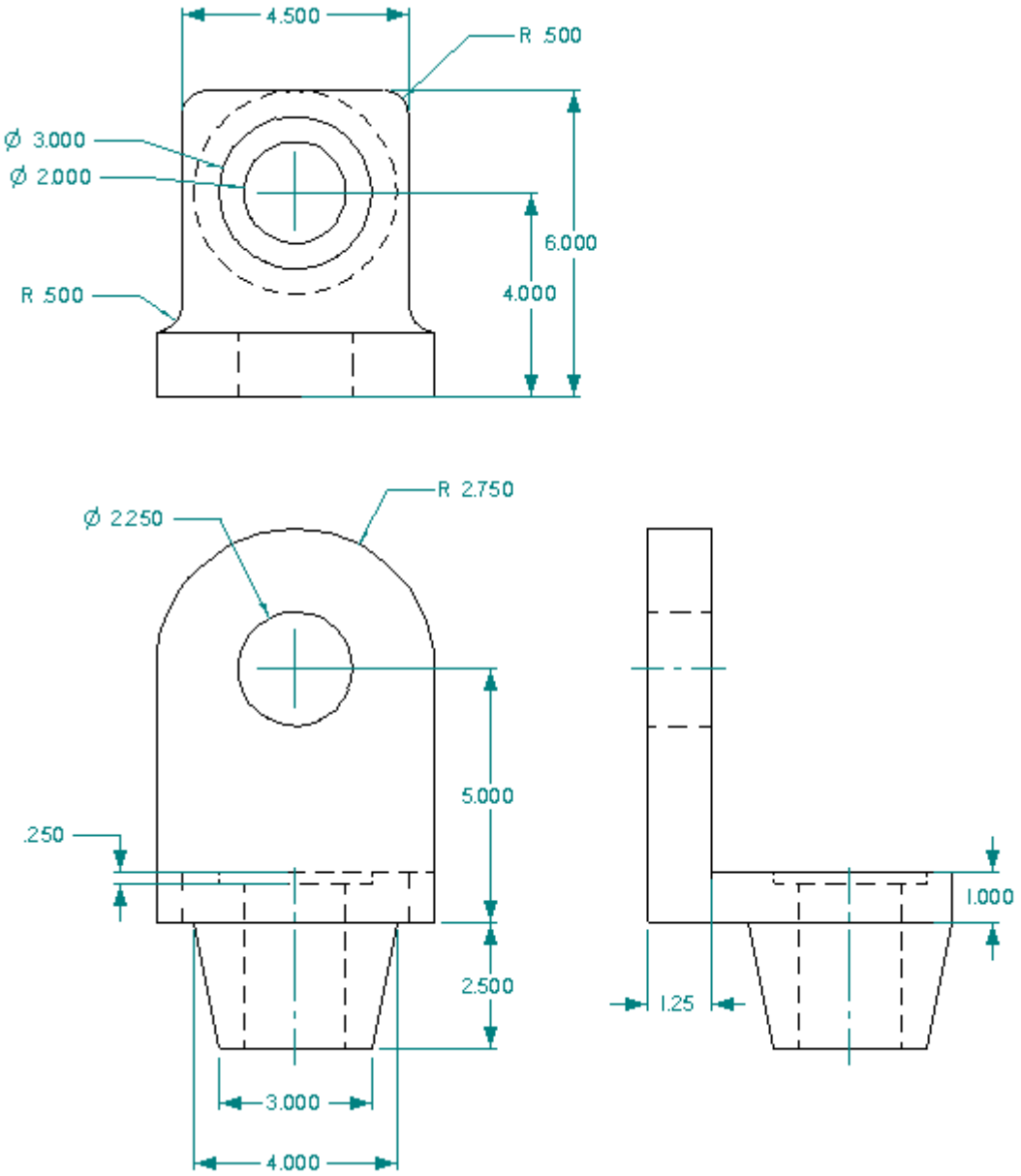

Ø .750 x 2 holes
1.750
.750


6.775
2.250
3.750
.750
R 1.250
.750
Ø 1.250

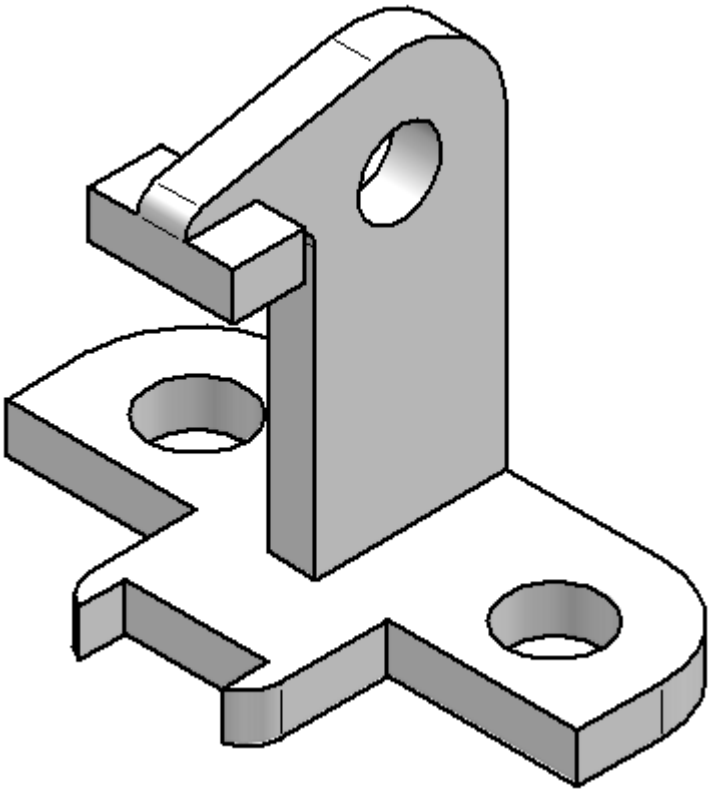

3.250
1.250
1.000
2.000
3.500
Ø 1.500

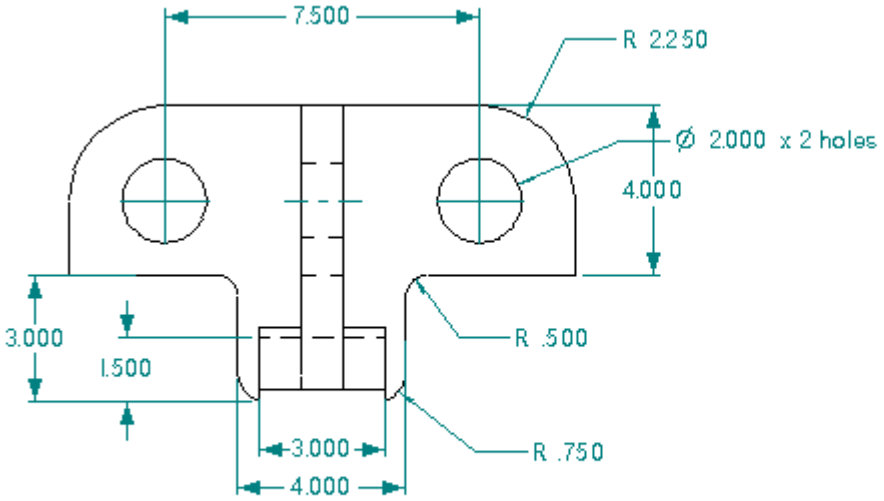
Side beam bracket

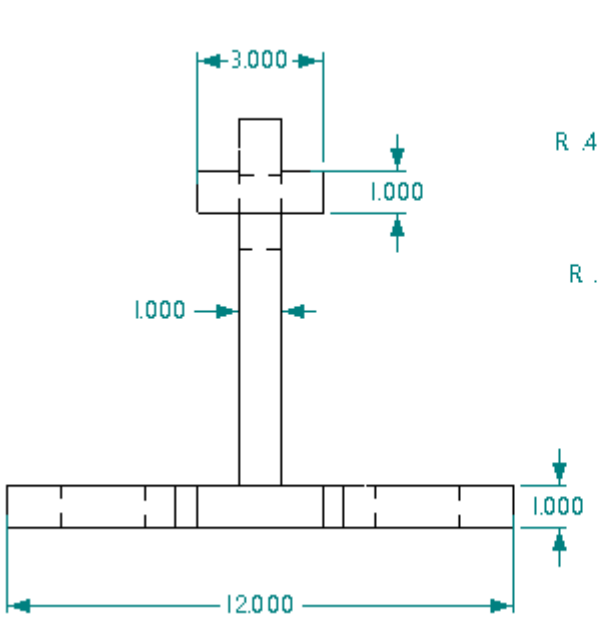


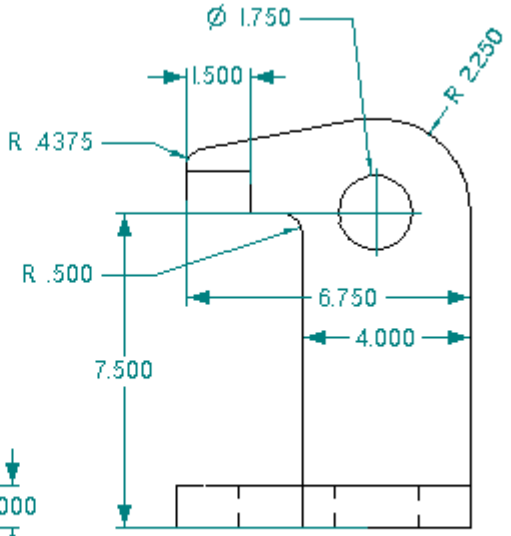

4.500
R .500
Ø 3.000
Ø 2.000
6.000
4.000
R .500
R 2.750
Ø 2.250
5.000
.250
2.500
3.000
4.000
1.000
1.25

Slide stop

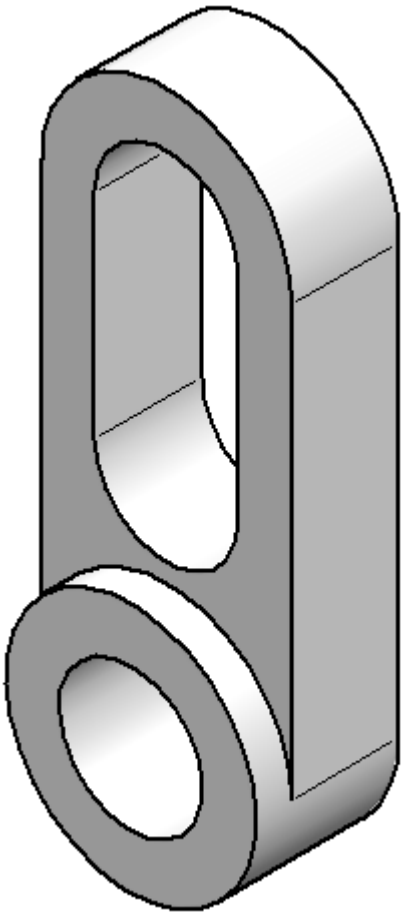


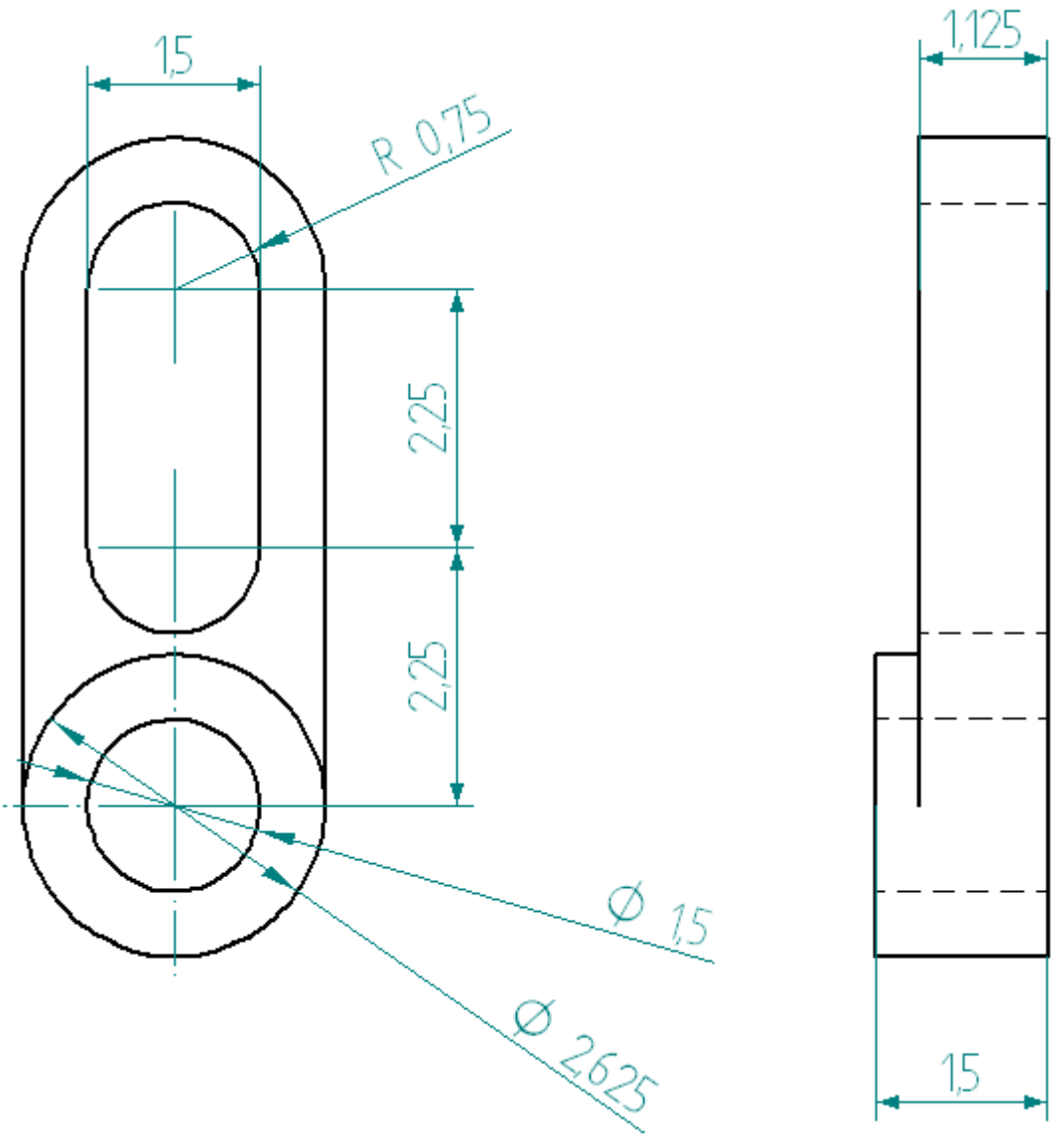

7.500
R 2.250
Ø 2.000 x 2 holes
4.000
3.000
1.500
R .500
3.000
4.000
R .750


3.000
1.000
1.000
1.000
12.000

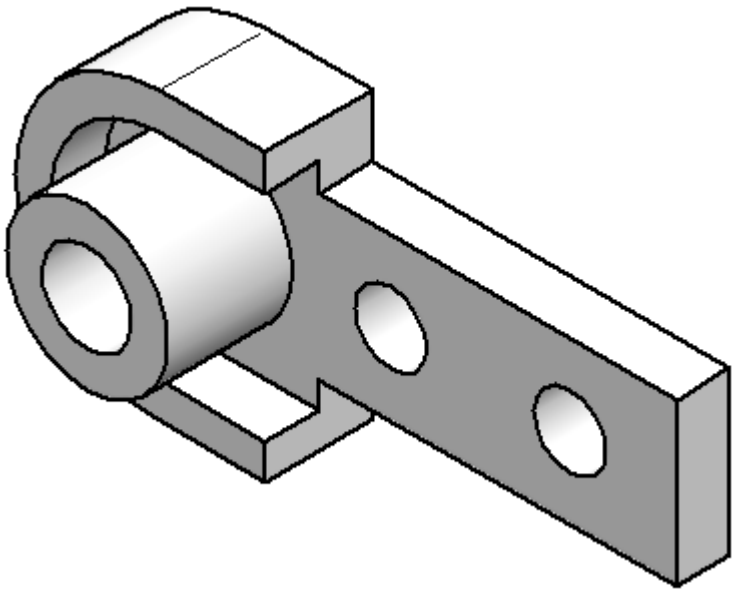

Ø 1.750
1.500
R 2.250
R .4375
R .500
6.750
4.000
7.500

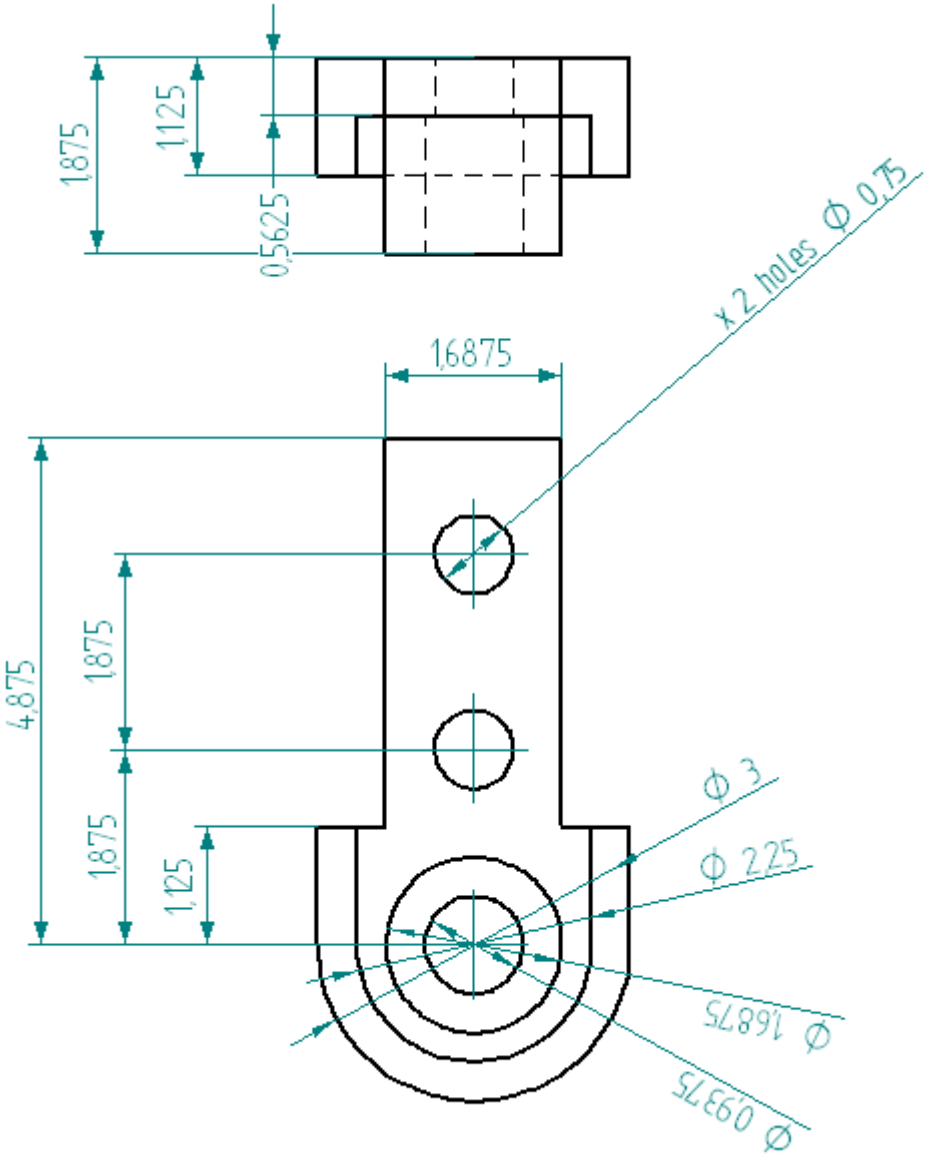
Slotted link



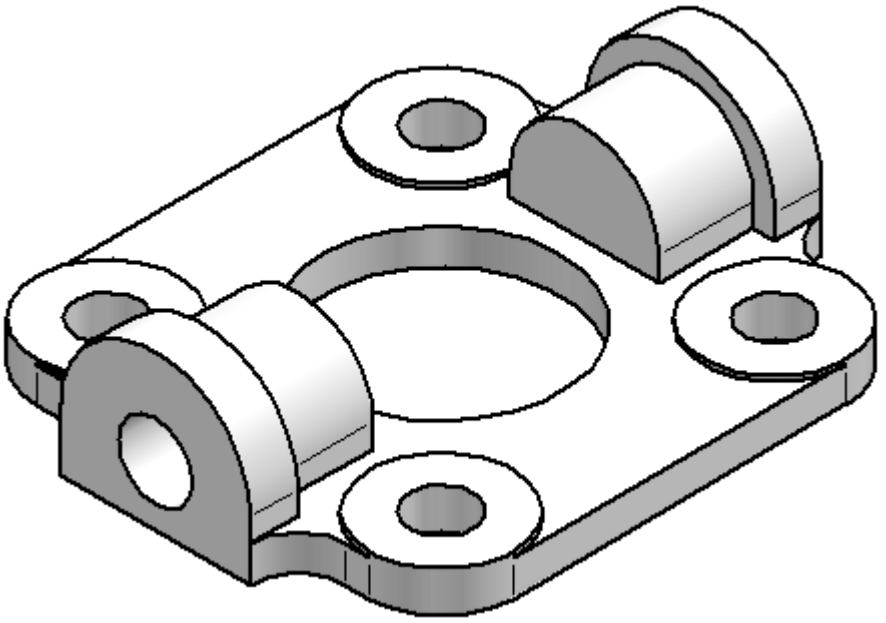

1,5
R 0,75
2,25
2,25
Ø 1,5
Ø 2625
1,125
1,5

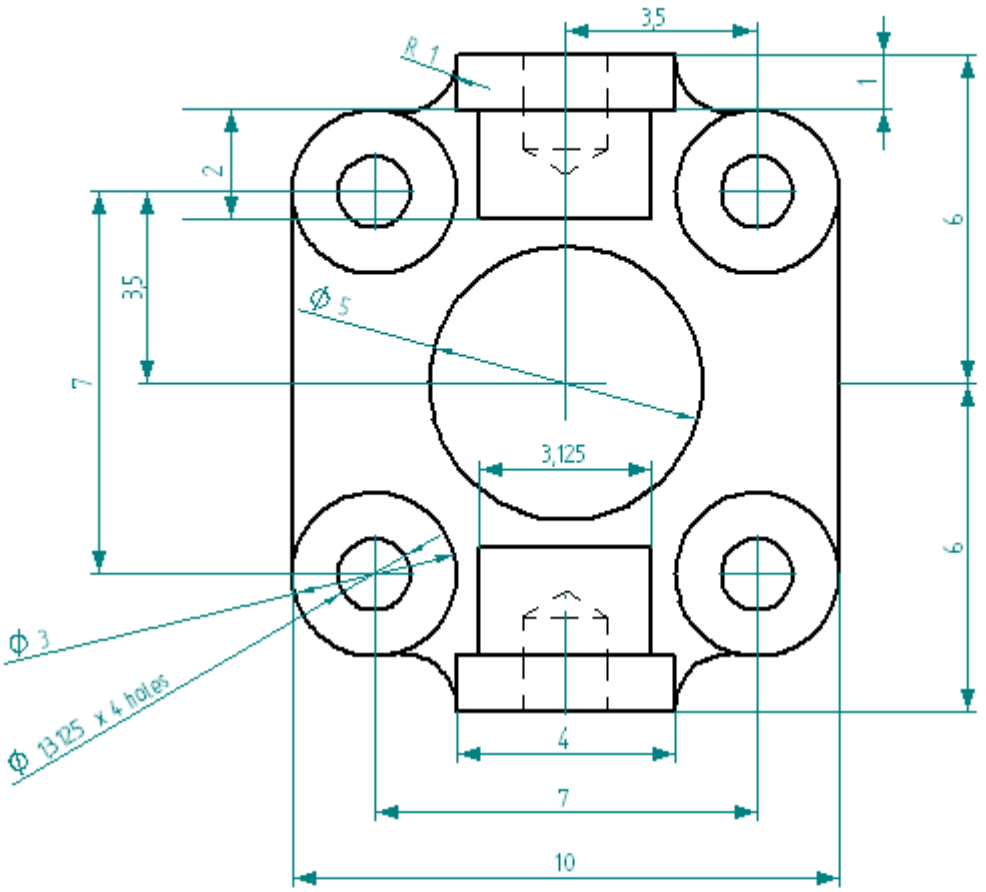
Swivel plate

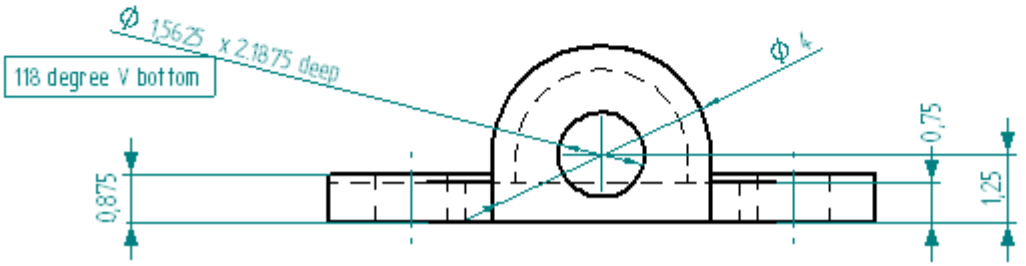



1,875
1,125
0,5625
1,6875
x 2 holes Ø 0,75
4,875
1,875
1,875
1,125
Ø 3
Ø 2,25
Ø 1,6875
Ø 0,9375

Trunnion plate

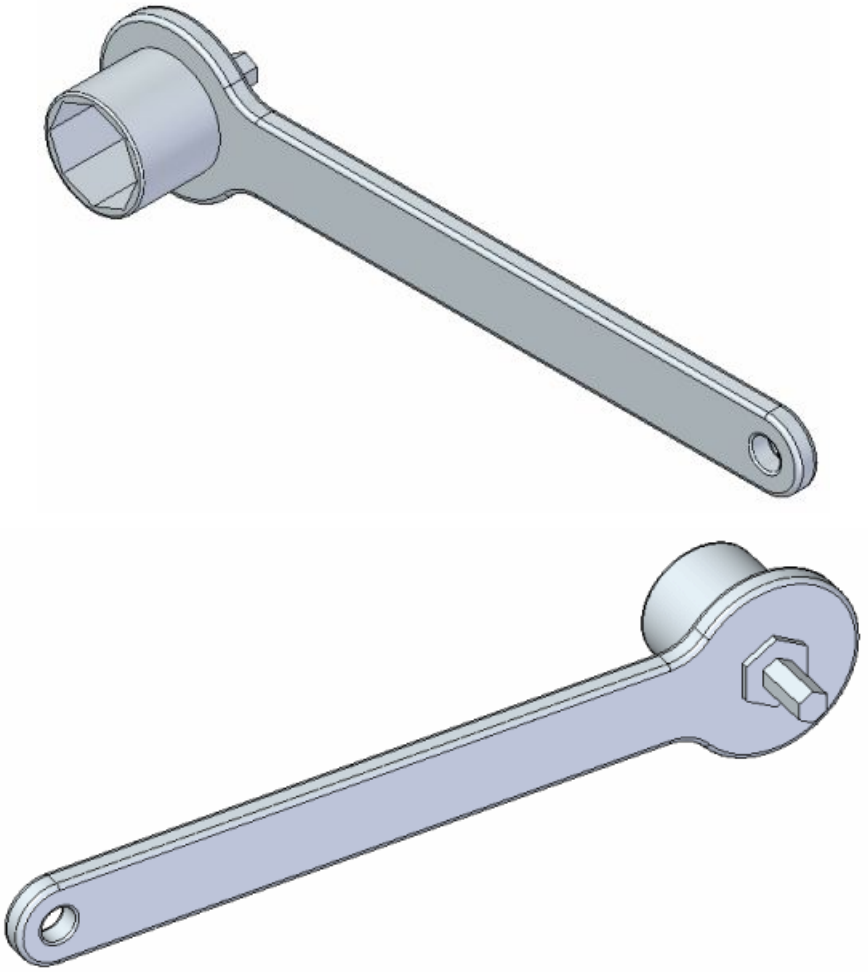



3,5
R 1
1
2
6
3,5
7
Ø 5
3,125
6
Ø 3
Ø 3,125 x 4 holes
4
7
10


Ø 1,5625 x 2,1875 deep
118 degree V bottom
Ø 4
0,75
0,875
1,25

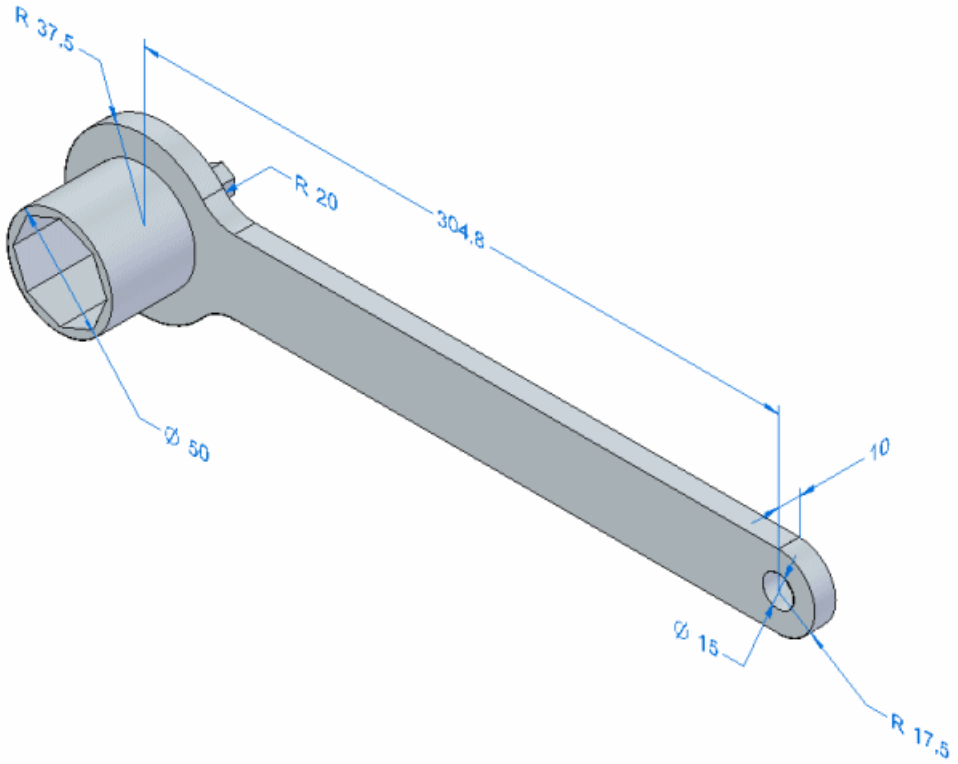
Activity: Construct a bicycle hand tool

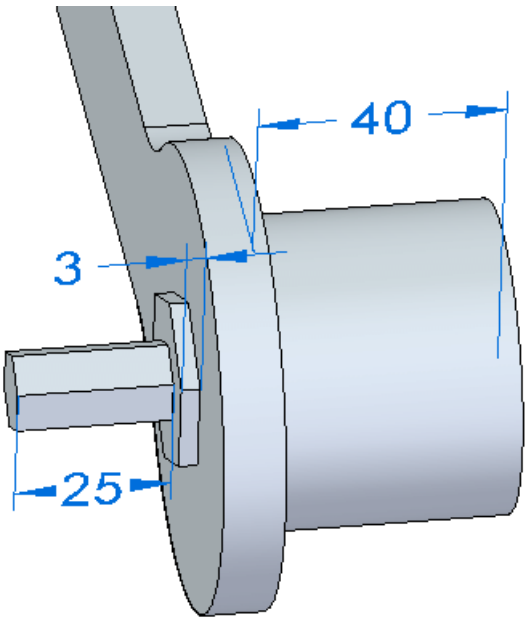
Model a specialized wrench for removing the pedal cranks from a bicycle.

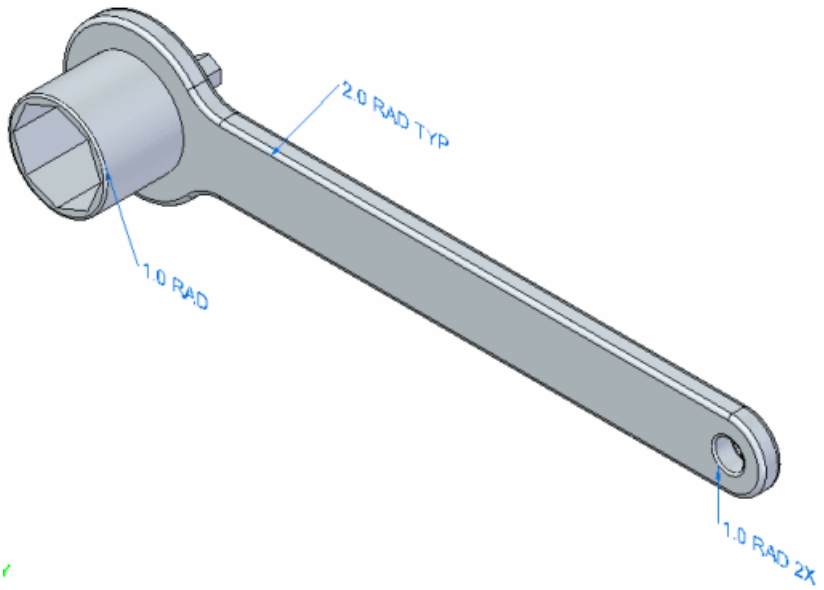


Major dimensions

- Use the following dimensions when constructing the overall shape of the tool.

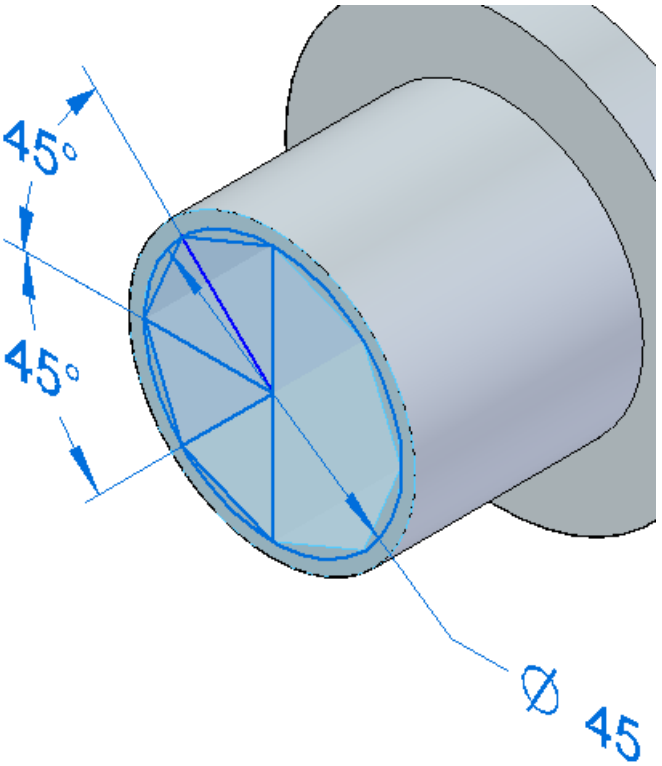


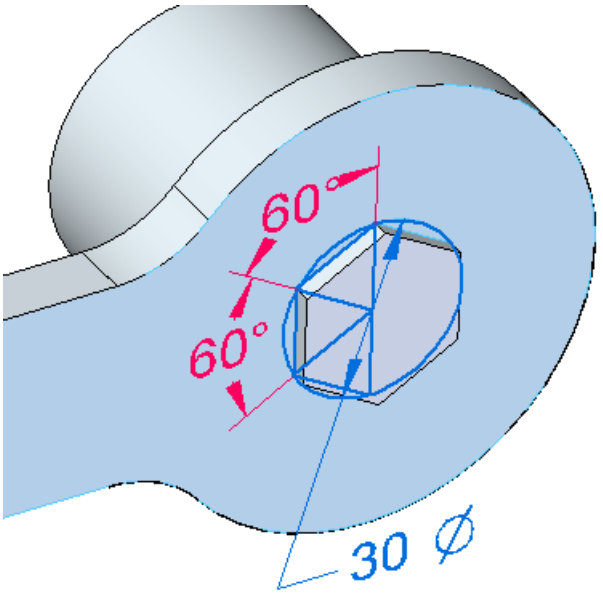


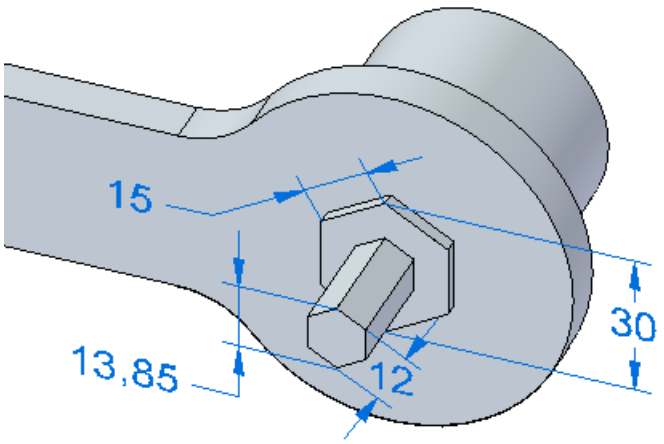

2.0 RAD TYP
1.0 RAD
1.0 RAD 2X

Socket and wrench dimensions

- Use the following dimensions when constructing the socket and Allen wrench.

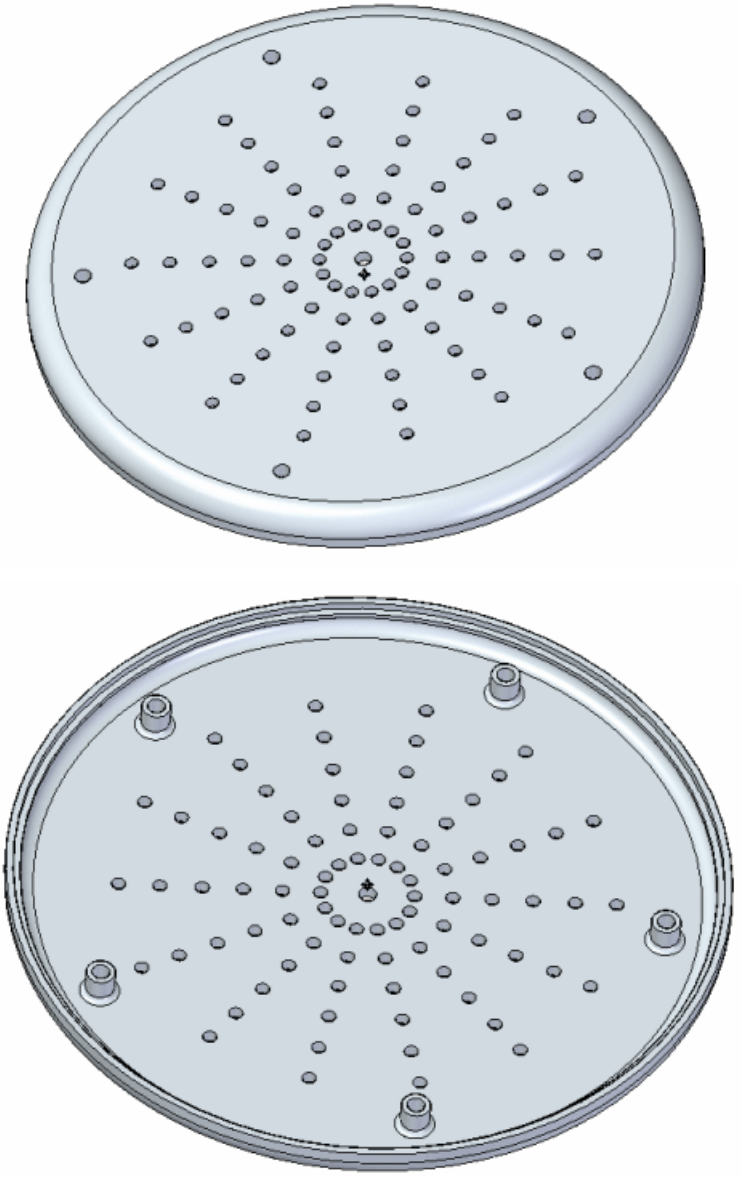




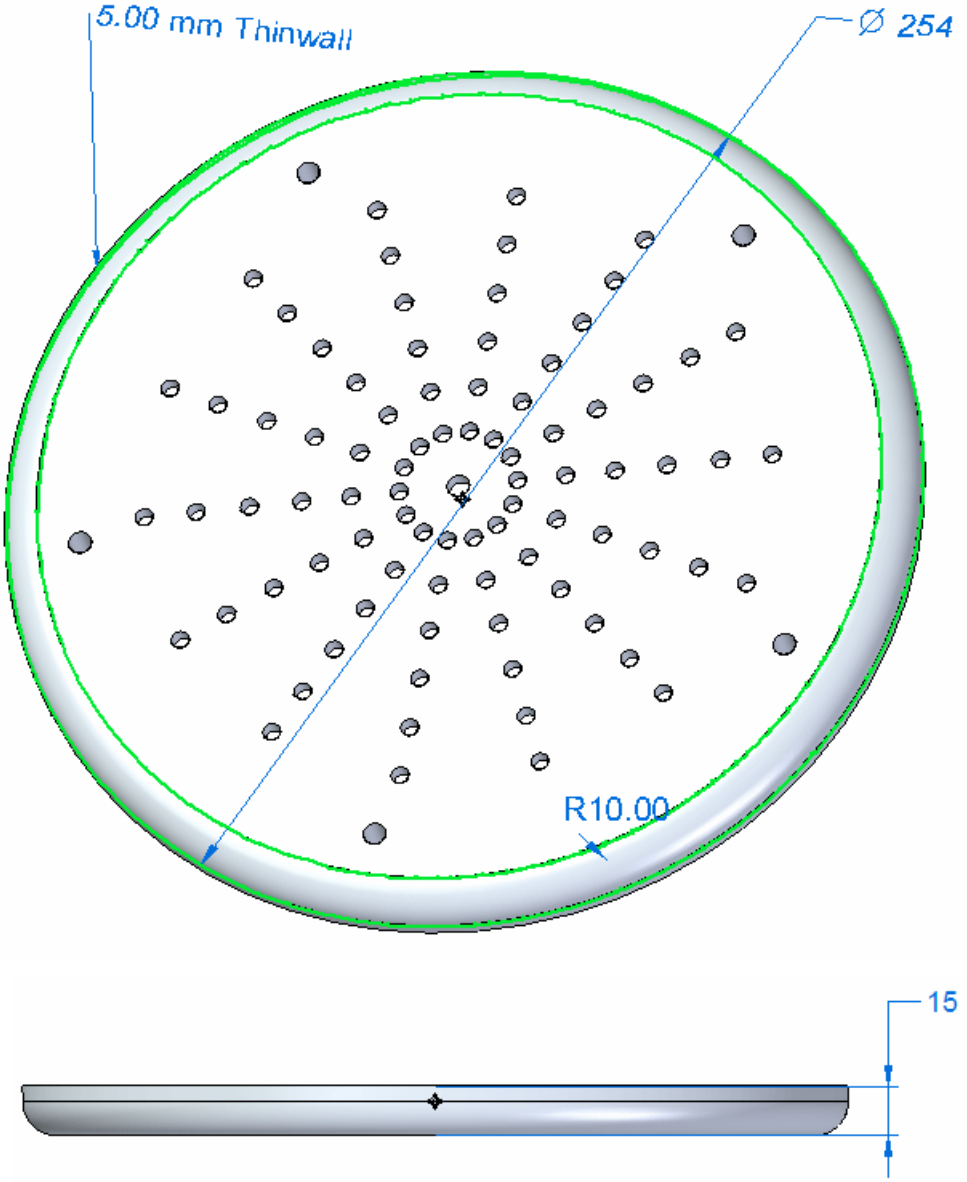

15
30
13,85
12

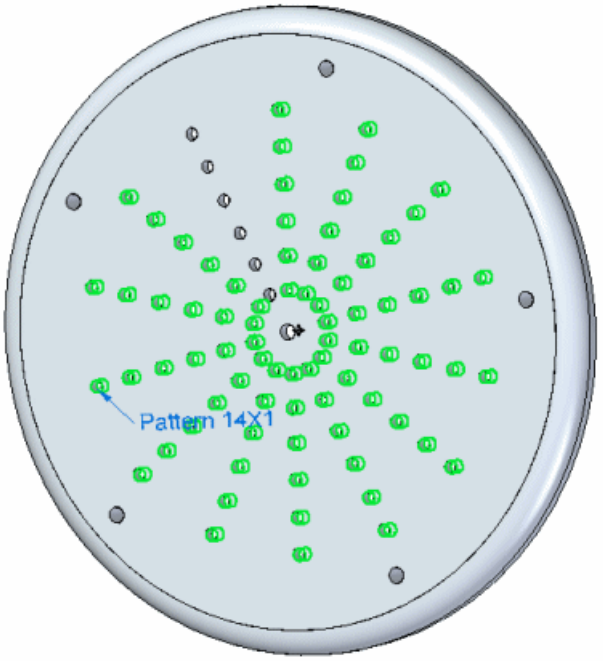
Activity: Construct an intercom speaker cover

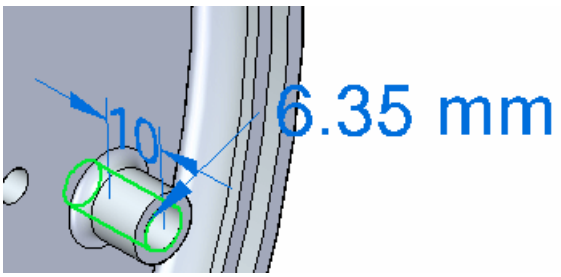
Create a cover plate for a ceiling-mounted intercom speaker.

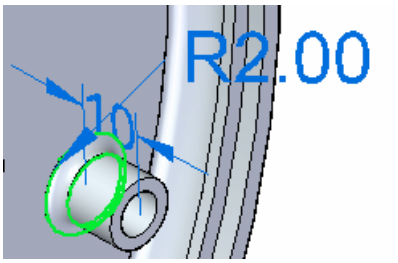


Major Dimensions



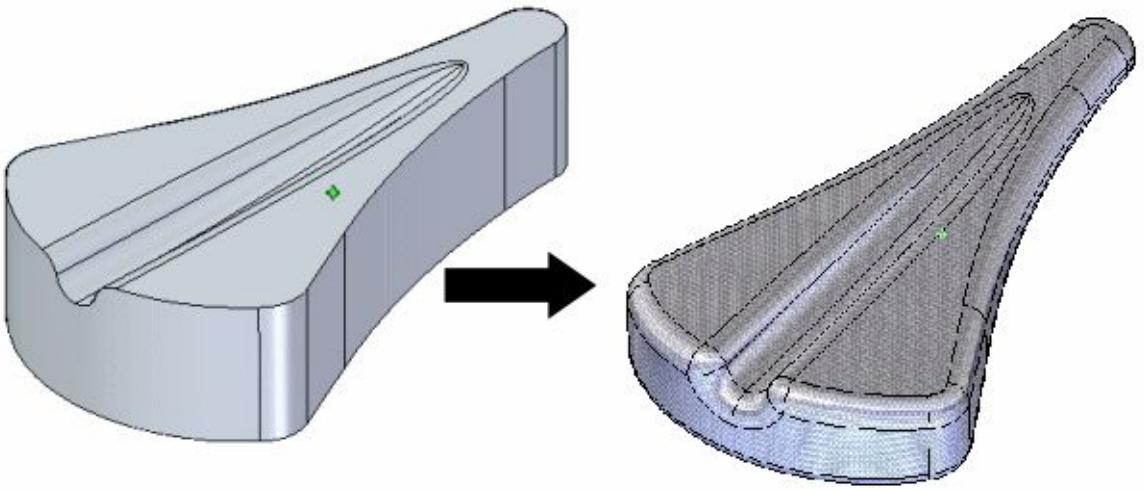

Pattern 14X1


10
6.35 mm

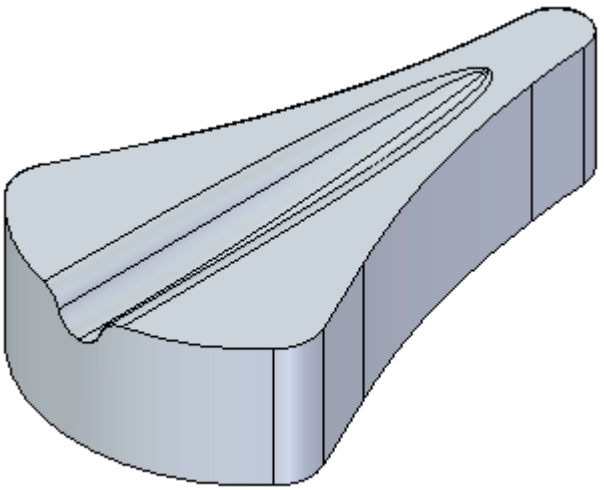

R2.00
10

Activity: Construct a bicycle saddle shell

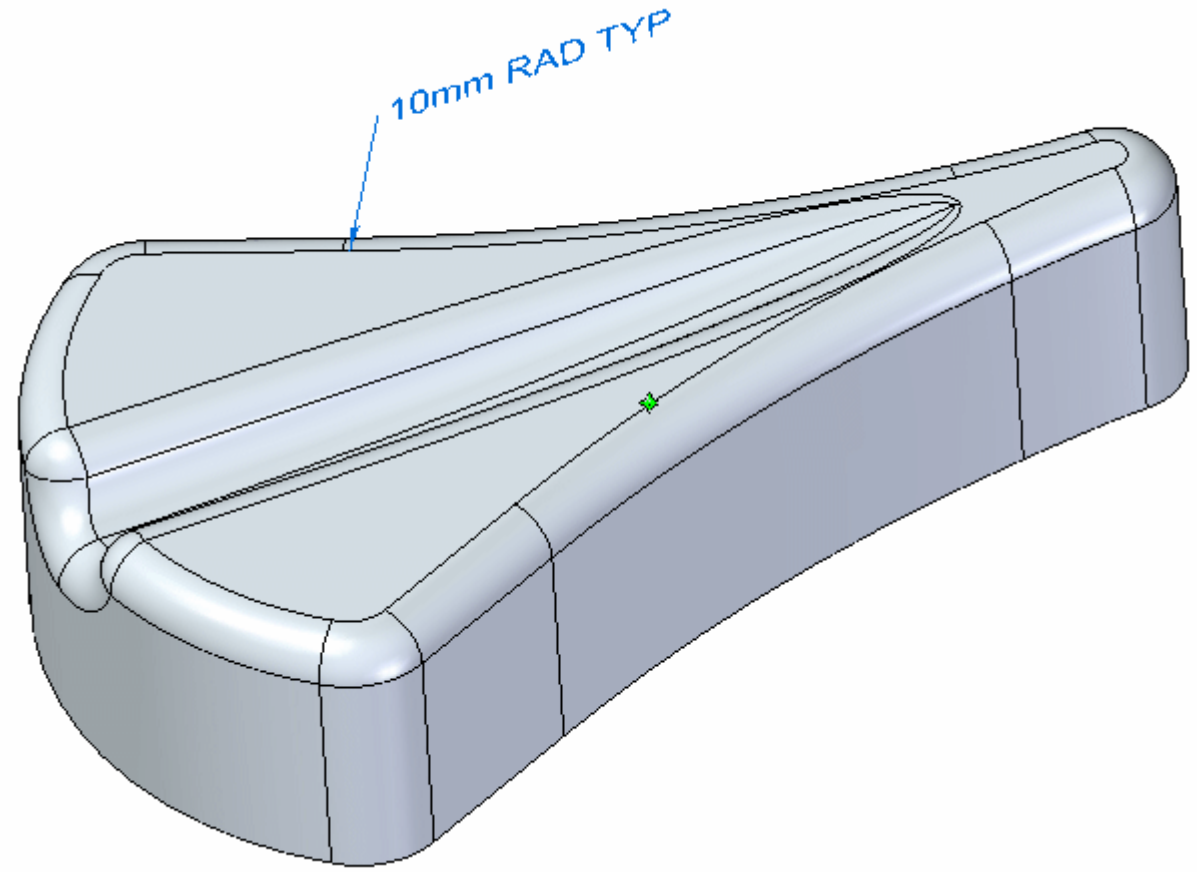
Transform a basic model into an anatomically correct shell for a bicycle saddle.

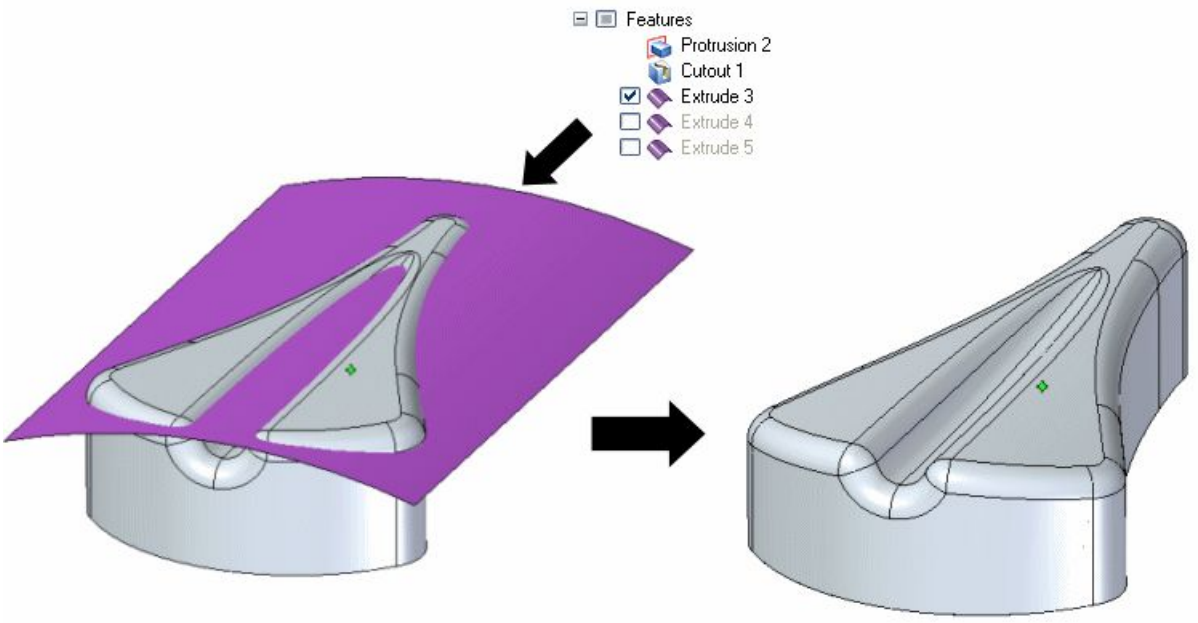


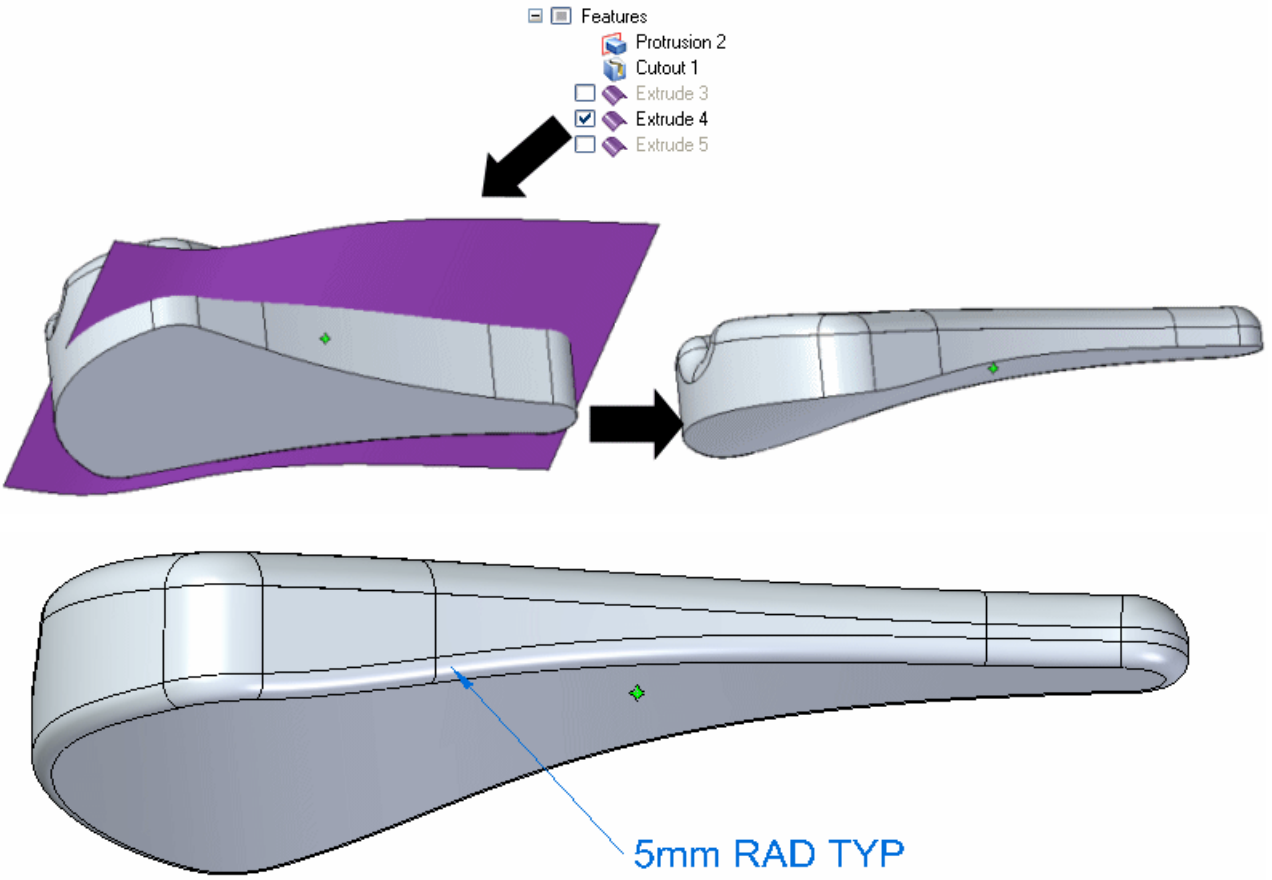
- Open *saddle_ex.par* from the downloaded zip file *spse01550.zip*.

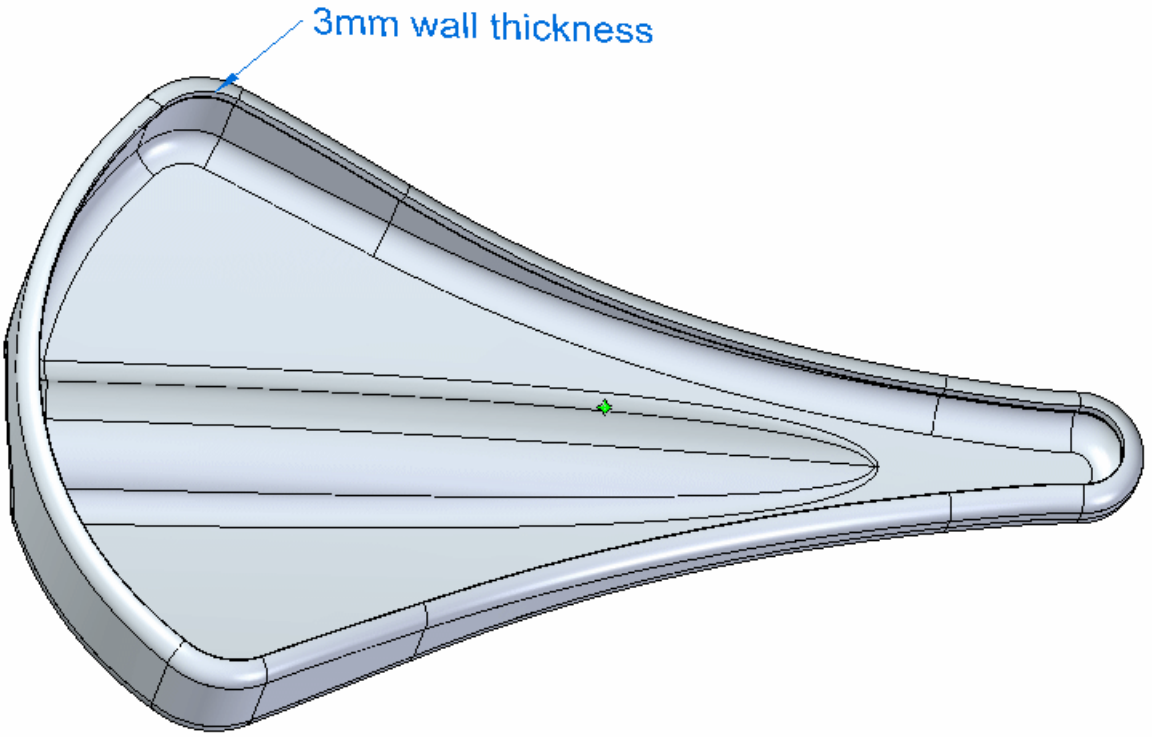


- Some hints:

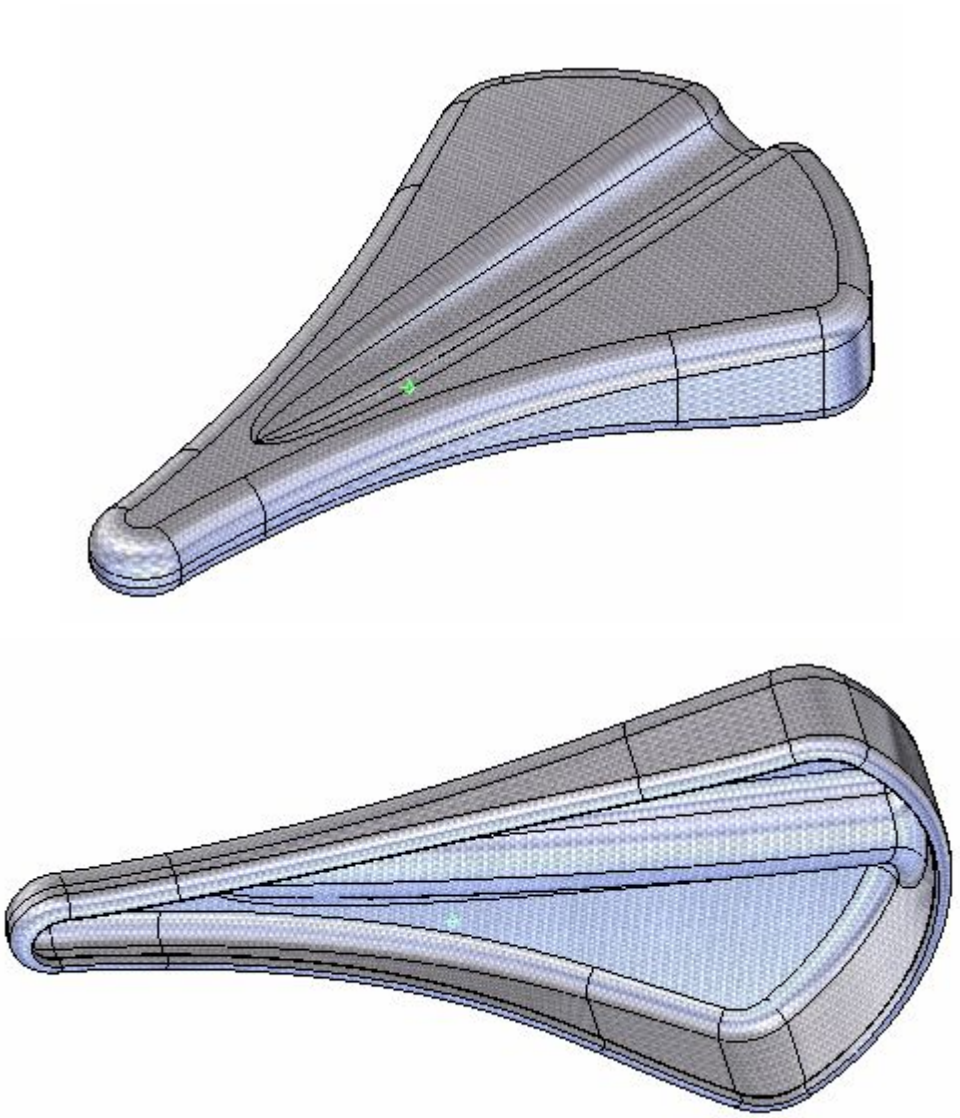

10mm RAD TYP


Features
Protrusion 2
Cutout 1
Extrude 3
Extrude 4
Extrude 5


Features
Protrusion 2
Cutout 1
Extrude 3
Extrude 4
Extrude 5
5mm RAD TYP


3mm wall thickness

- Finished saddle:

  Note

  Applying a texture is optional. See the Help topic on “Style Command” to learn more.